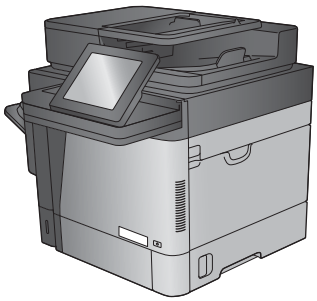
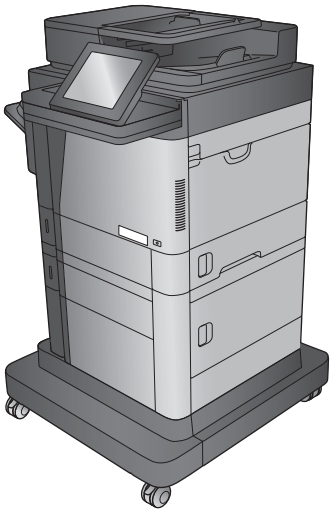
LaserJet Enterprise MFP M630

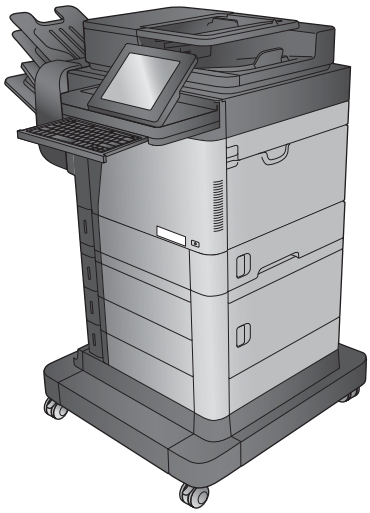
Repair Manual



M630dn
M630h



M630f



M630z

www.hp.com/support/ljMFPM630

For product theory and troubleshooting information, see the Troubleshooting Manual.



HP LaserJet Enterprise MFP M630

Repair Manual

Copyright and License

© 2014 Copyright Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation, or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Edition 1, 9/2014

Trademark Credits

Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows® XP, and Windows Vista® are U.S. registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Conventions used in this guide

TIP: Helpful hints or shortcuts.

Reinstallation tip: Reinstallation helpful hints, shortcuts, or considerations.

NOTE: Information that explains a concept or how to complete a task.

IMPORTANT: Information that help the user to avoid potential product error conditions.

CAUTION: Procedures that the user must follow to avoid losing data or damaging the product.

WARNING! Procedures that the user must follow to avoid personal injury, catastrophic loss of data, or extensive damage to the product.

For additional service and support information

HP service personnel, go to the Link Service Access Work Bench (SAW) at http://h41302.www4.hp.com/km/saw/home.do.

Channel partners, go to Link HP Channel Services Network (CNS) at https://h30125.www3.hp.com/hpcsn.

- Install and configure
- Product specifications
- Up to date control-panel message (CPMD) troubleshooting
- Solutions for product issues and emerging issues
- Remove and replace part instructions and videos
- Service advisories
- Warranty & regulatory information

Table of contents

1 Removal and replacement 1
For additional service and support information 2
Removal and replacement strategy 3
Considerations during removal and replacement 3
Required tools 5
Types of screws 5
Service approach 5
Before performing service 6
After performing service 6
Parts removal order 6
Customer self-repair (CSR) assemblies 7
Toner cartridge 8
Introduction 8
Step 1: Remove the toner cartridge 8
Step 2: Unpack the replacement toner cartridge 9
Step 3: Install the toner cartridge 10
Parts Return 13
Staple cartridge (for models with a stapler/stacker) 14
Introduction 14
Step 1: Remove the staple cartridge 14
Step 2: Unpack the replacement staple cartridge 15
Step 3: Install the staple cartridge 16
Parts Return 17
Backside background selector 18
Introduction 18
Step 1: Remove the backside background selector 18
Step 2: Unpack the replacement backside background selector 20
Step 3: Install the backside background selector 21
Parts Return 22
Formatter 23
Introduction 23
Step 1: Remove the formatter 24

Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD) or solid-state memory (SSM) 25
Identify the component type 25
Remove the HDD 26
Remove the SSM 27
Step 3: Remove the DIMM 28
Step 4: Remove the fax PCA 29
Step 5: Unpack the replacement formatter 30
Step 6: Install the HDD or SSM 31
Step 7: Install the DIMM 34
Step 8: Install the fax PCA 36
Step 9: Install the formatter 37
Step 10: Test the installation 38
Parts Return 39
Hard-disk drive (HDD) or solid-state memory (SSM) 25
Introduction 40
Step 1: Remove the formatter 40
Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD) or solid-state memory (SSM) 25
Identify the component type 42
Remove the HDD 43
Remove the SSM 44
Step 3: Unpack the replacement HDD or SSM 45
Step 4: Install the HDD or SSM 45
Install the HDD 46
Install the SSM 49
Step 5: Install the formatter 37
Step 6: Test the installation 51
Step 7: Reinstall the product firmware 52
Parts Return 53
Memory DIMM 54
Introduction 54
Step 1: Remove the formatter 54
Step 2: Remove the memory DIMM 55
Step 3: Unpack the replacement DIMM 56
Step 4: Reinstall the memory DIMM 57
Step 5: Install the formatter 37
Step 6: Test the installation 59
Parts Return 60
Fax printed-circuit assembly (PCA) 61
Introduction 61
Step 1: Remove the formatter 61
Step 2: Remove the fax PCA 62

Step 3: Unpack the replacement fax PCA 64
Step 4: Install the fax PCA 65
Step 5: Install the formatter 37
Step 6: Test the installation 66
Parts Return 67
Output bin and bin base assembly 68
Introduction 68
Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly 68
Step 2: Unpack the replacement output bin and bin base assembly 68
Step 3: Install the output bin and bin base assembly 69
Parts Return 69
Duplex accessory 70
Introduction 70
Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox 70
Step 2: Remove the duplex accessory 72
Step 3: Unpack the replacement duplex accessory 73
Step 4: Install the duplex accessory 73
Step 5: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox 74
Step 6: Turn the product power on 75
Parts Return 75
Fuser-entrance guide 76
Introduction 76
Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox 76
Step 2: Remove the duplex accessory 78
Step 3: Remove the fuser-entrance guide 79
Step 4: Unpack the replacement fuser-entrance guide 80
Step 5: Install the fuser-entrance guide 80
Step 6: Install the duplex accessory 80
Step 7: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox 81
Step 8: Turn the product power on 82
Parts Return 82
Fuser 83
Introduction 83
Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox 83
Step 2: Remove the duplex accessory 85
Step 3: Remove the fuser-entrance guide 86
Step 4: Remove the fuser 87
Step 5: Unpack the replacement fuser 87
Step 6: Install the fuser 87
Step 7: Install the fuser-entrance guide 88
Step 8: Install the duplex accessory 88

Step 9: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox 89
Step 10: Turn the product power on 90
Step 11: Reset the supplies counter 90
Parts Return 91
Control-panel assembly 92
Introduction 92
Step 1: Remove the control panel 93
Step 2: Remove the keyboard (M630z only) 97
Step 3: Unpack the replacement control-panel assembly 101
Step 4: Install the keyboard (M630z only) 102
Step 5: Install the control-panel assembly 105
Parts Return 109
Keyboard assembly (M630z only) 92
Introduction 92
Step 1: Remove the control panel 111
Step 2: Remove the keyboard 97
Step 3: Unpack the replacement keyboard assembly 118
Step 4: Install the keyboard 102
Step 5: Install the control-panel assembly 122
Parts Return 126
Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers 127
Introduction 127
Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers 127
Step 2: Unpack the replacement rollers 131
Step 3: Install the Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers 132
Parts Return 136
Tray 2-5 pickup and feed rollers 137
Introduction 137
Step 1: Remove the Tray 2 - 5 pickup and feed rollers 137
Step 2: Unpack the replacement rollers 140
Step 3: Install the Tray 2 - 5 pickup and feed rollers 141
Parts Return 143
Transfer roller 144
Introduction 144
Step 1: Remove the transfer roller 144
Step 2: Unpack the replacement roller 148
Step 3: Install the transfer roller 149
Parts Return 151
Document-feeder maintnenance kit 152
Introduction 152
Step 1: Remove the document-feeder rollers 152

Step 2: Remove the document-feeder separation pad 154
Step 3: Unpack the replacement rollers and separation pad 155
Step 4: Install the document-feeder separation pad 156
Step 5: Install the document-feeder rollers 159
Step 6: Reset the supplies counter 160
Parts Return 160
Document feeder white backing 161
Introduction 161
Step 1: Remove the document feeder white backing 161
Step 2: Unpack the replacement document feeder white backing 162
Step 3: Install the document feeder white backing 164
Parts Return 168
Document feeder and image scanner assemblies 169
Document-feeder mylar strip 170
Introduction 170
Step 1: Remove the document-feeder mylar strip 170
Step 2: Unpack the replacement mylar strip 173
Step 3: Install the document-feeder mylar strip 173
Parts Return 175
Document-feeder roller cover 176
Reinstall the document-feeder roller cover 181
Scanner rear cover 182
Introduction 182
Step 1: Remove the scanner rear cover 182
Step 2: Install the scanner rear cover 183
Step 3: Turn the product power on 184
Scanner control board (SCB) 185
Introduction 185
Step 1: Remove the scanner rear cover 185
Step 2: Remove the SCB 186
Step 4: Unpack the replacement SCB 192
Step 4: Install the SCB 193
Step 5: Install the scanner rear cover 199
Step 6: Turn the product power on 200
Parts Return 200
Document feeder 201
Introduction 201
Step 1: Remove the backside background selector 202
Step 2: Remove the scanner rear cover 203
Step 3: Remove the SCB 204
Step 4: Remove the document feeder 210

Step 5: Unpack the replacement document feeder 211
Step 6: Install the document feeder 212
Step 7: Install the SCB 213
Step 8: Install the scanner rear cover 219
Step 9: Install the backside background selector 221
Step 10: Install the document feeder white backing 223
Step 11: Reset the supplies counters and calibrate the scanner 227
Parts Return 228
Document-feeder hinge assembly 229
Remove the document-feeder hinge assembly 229
Image scanner assembly 230
Introduction 230
Step 1: Remove the scanner rear cover 231
Step 2: Remove the SCB 231
Step 3: Remove the document feeder 237
Step 4: Remove the image scanner assembly 238
Step 5: Unpack the replacement image scanner assembly 246
Step 6: Install the image scanner assembly 247
Step 7: Install the document feeder 254
Step 8: Install the SCB 256
Step 9: Install the scanner rear cover 262
Step 10: Install the replacemnt document feeder white backing 223
Step 11: Reset the supplies counters and calibrate the scanner 271
Parts Return 271
Covers, doors, tray, and external panels (product base) 272
Identification and location (product base) 273
Front cover 274
Introduction 274
Step 1: Remove the front cover 274
Step 2: Unpack the replacement front cover 277
Step 3: Install the front cover 277
Step 4: Turn the product power on 281
Parts Return 281
Envelope feeder cover 282
Image scanner cable cover 283
Introduction 283
Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover 283
Step 2: Unpack the replacement image scanner cable cover 284
Step 3: Install the image scanner cable cover 285
Step 4: Turn the product power on 286
Parts Return 286

Tray 1 cover 287
Introduction 287
Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 cover 287
Step 2: Unpack the replacement Tray 1 cover 290
Step 3: Install the Tray 1 cover 291
Step 4: Turn the product power on 293
Parts Return 294
Tray 295
Side-rear cover 296
Introduction 296
Step 1: Remove the formatter 24
Step 2: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox 297
Step 3: Remove the duplex accessory 299
Step 4: Remove the side-rear cover 300
Step 5: Unpack the replacement side-rear cover 301
Step 6: Install the side-rear cover 301
Step 7: Install the duplex accessory 302
Step 8: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox 303
Step 9: Install the formatter 37
Step 10: Test the installation 305
Parts Return 306
Front-left cover and logo panel assembly 307
Remove the front-left cover and logo panel assembly 307
Install the front-left cover and logo panel assembly 310
Power-switch assembly 314
Introduction 314
Step 1: Remove the front cover 314
Step 2: Remove the power-switch assembly 317
Step 3: Unpack the replacement power-switch assembly 317
Step 4: Install the power-switch assembly 318
Step 5: Install the front cover 318
Step 6: Turn the product power on 322
Parts Return 322
Rear-right cover 323
Introduction 323
Step 1: Remove the rear-right cover 323
Step 2: Unpack the replacement rear-right cover 324
Step 3: Install the rear-right cover 325
Step 4: Turn the product power on 326
Parts Return 326
Rear-left cover 327

Introduction 327
Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover 327
Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover 328
Step 3: Remove the rear-left cover 329
Step 4: Unpack the replacement rear-left cover 330
Step 5: Install the rear-left cover 331
Step 6: Install the rear-right cover 332
Step 7: Install the image scanner cable cover 333
Step 8: Turn the product power on 334
Parts Return 334
Rear-top cover 335
Introduction 335
Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover 335
Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover 336
Step 3: Remove the rear-left cover 337
Step 4: Remove the rear-top cover 338
Step 5: Unpack the replacement rear-top cover 339
Step 6: Install the rear-top cover 340
Step 7: Install the rear-left cover 341
Step 8: Install the rear-right cover 342
Step 9: Install the image scanner cable cover 343
Step 10: Turn the product power on 344
Parts Return 344
Right-lower door 345
Introduction 345
Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 cover 345
Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover 348
Step 3: Remove the right-lower door 349
Step 4: Unpack the replacement right-lower door 351
Step 5: Install the right-lower door 351
Step 6: Install the rear-right cover 353
Step 7: Install the Tray 1 cover 354
Step 8: Turn the product power on 356
Parts Return 357
Document-feeder hinge cover 358
Remove the document-feeder hinge cover 358
Install the document-feeder hinge cover 360
Main assemblies 361
Registration assembly 362
Cassette-door-open detection switch (SW105) 363
Introduction 363

Step 1: Remove the cassette-door-open detection switch 363
Step 2: Unpack the replacement switch assembly 365
Step 3: Install the cassette-door-open detection switch 366
Step 4: Turn the product power on 368
Parts Return 368
Reverse assembly upper guide assembly 369
Install the reverse assembly upper guide assembly 370
Reverse assembly 371
Laser/scanner assembly 375
Remove the laser/scanner assembly 375
Cartridge sensor assembly 378
Remove the cartridge sensor assembly 378
Temperature sensor 380
Remove the temperature sensor 380
DC controller shield-plate assembly 382
Introduction 382
Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover 382
Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover 383
Step 3: Remove the rear-top cover 384
Step 4: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly 385
Step 5: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly 386
Step 6: Install the rear-top cover 387
Step 7: Install the rear-right cover 388
Step 8: Install the image scanner cable cover 389
Step 9: Turn the product power on 390
DC controller 391
Introduction 391
Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover 392
Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover 392
Step 3: Remove the rear-top cover 393
Step 4: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly 394
Step 5: Remove the DC controller 395
Step 6: Unpack the replacement DC controller 397
Step 7: Install the DC controller 398
Step 8: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly 399
Step 9: Install the rear-top cover 399
Step 10: Install the rear-right cover 400
Step 11: Install the image scanner cable cover 401
Step 12: Turn the product power on 402
Parts Return 402
Tray 1 pickup assembly 403

Introduction 403
Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover 404
Step 2: Remove the rear-top cover 404
Step 3: Remove the Tray 1 cover 405
Step 4: Remove the rear-right cover 408
Step 5: Remove the right-lower door 409
Step 6: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly 411
Step 7: Remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly 412
Step 8: Unpack the replacement Tray 1 pickup assembly 414
Step 9: Install the Tray 1 pickup assembly 415
Step 10: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly 417
Step 11: Install the right-lower door 418
Step 12: Install the rear-right cover 420
Step 13: Install the Tray 1 cover 421
Step 14: Install the rear-top cover 423
Step 15: Install the image scanner cable cover 424
Step 16: Turn the product power on 425
Parts Return 425
Interconnect board (ICB) 426
Introduction 426
Step 1: Remove the formatter 24
Step 2: Remove the image scanner cable cover 428
Step 3: Remove the rear-right cover 428
Step 4: Remove the rear-top cover 429
Step 5: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly 430
Step 6: Remove the ICB 431
Step 7: Unpack the replacement interconnect board 433
Step 8: Install the ICB 434
Step 9: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly 436
Step 10: Install the rear-top cover 437
Step 11: Install the rear-right cover 438
Step 12: Install the image scanner cable cover 439
Step 13: Install the formatter 37
Step 14: Test the installation 441
Parts Return 442
Feed motor (M101) 443
Introduction 443
Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover 443
Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover 444
Step 3: Remove the rear-top cover 445
Step 4: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly 446

Step 5: Remove the feed motor 447
Step 6: Unpack the replacement feed motor 448
Step 7: Install the feed motor 448
Step 8: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly 449
Step 9: Install the rear-top cover 450
Step 10: Install the rear-right cover 451
Step 11: Install the image scanner cable cover 452
Step 12: Turn the product power on 453
Parts Return 453
Drum motor (M102) 454
Remove the drum motor 454
Fuser motor (M299) 455
Remove the fuser motor 455
Main fan (FN101) 456
Remove the main fan 456
Laser/scanner fan (FN102) 458
Remove the laser/scanner fan 458
Install the laser/scanner fan 459
Cartridge front-side fan (FN103) 460
Remove the cartridge front-side fan 460
Install the cartridge front-side fan 461
Low-voltage power supply fan (FN104) 462
Remove the low-voltage power supply fan 462
Install the low-voltage power supply fan 463
Reverse assembly fan (FN105) 464
Remove the reverse assembly fan 464
Cartridge fan (FN301) 467
Remove the cartridge fan 467
Install the cartridge fan 470
Interlock switch assembly (SW101 and SW106) 471
Remove the interlock switch assembly 471
Output accessory detection switch (SW104) 474
Remove the output accessory detection switch 474
Low-voltage power supply (LVPS) 479
Introduction 479
Step 1: Remove the formatter 24
Step 2: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox 481
Step 3: Remove the duplex accessory 482
Step 4: Remove the side-rear cover 483
Step 5: Remove the image scanner cable cover 484
Step 6: Remove the rear-right cover 485

Step 7: Remove the rear-left cover 486
Step 8: Remove the rear-top cover 487
Step 9: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly 488
Step10: Remove the ICB 489
Step 11: Remove the LVPS 491
Step 12: Unpack the replacement LVPS 496
Step 13: Install the LVPS 498
Step 14: Install the ICB 503
Step 15: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly 505
Step 16: Install the rear-top cover 506
Step 17: Install the rear-left cover 507
Step 18: Install the rear-right cover 508
Step 19: Install the image scanner cable cover 509
Step 20: Install the side-rear cover 510
Step 21: Install the duplex accessory 511
Step 22: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox 511
Step 23: Install the formatter 37
Step 24: Test the installation 514
Parts Return 515
Lifter base assembly 516
Remove the lifter base assembly 516
Lifter assembly 518
Remove the lifter assembly 518
High-voltage power supply (HVPS) 521
Introduction 522
Step 1: Remove the formatter 24
Step 2: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox 523
Step 3: Remove the duplex accessory 525
Step 4: Remove the fuser-entrance guide 526
Step 5: Remove the fuser 527
Step 6: Remove the front cover 527
Step 7: Remove the side-rear cover 529
Step 8: Remove the image scanner cable cover 530
Step 9: Remove the rear-right cover 531
Step 10: Remove the rear-left cover 532
Step 11: Remove the rear-top cover 533
Step 12: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly 534
Step 13: Remove the DC controller 535
Step 14: Remove the ICB 537
Step 15: Remove the LVPS 539
Step 16: Remove the HVPS 544

Step 17: Unpack the replacement HVPS 551
Step 18: Install the HVPS 551
Step 19: Install the LVPS 561
Step 20: Install the ICB 566
Step 21: Install the DC controller 568
Step 22: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly 569
Step 23: Install the rear-top cover 570
Step 24: Install the rear-left cover 571
Step 25: Install the rear-right cover 572
Step 26: Install the side-rear cover 573
Step 27: Install the image scanner cable cover 574
Step 28: Install the front cover 575
Step 29: Install the fuser 578
Step 30: Install the fuser-entrance guide 579
Step 31: Install the duplex accessory 579
Step 32: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox 580
Step 33: Install the formatter 37
Step 34: Test the installation 582
Parts Return 583
Feed roller assembly 584
Remove the feed roller assembly 584
Pickup drive assembly 585
Introduction 585
Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox 586
Step 2: Remove the Tray 1 cover 587
Step 3: Remove the image scanner cable cover 590
Step 4: Remove the rear-right cover 591
Step 5: Remove the rear-left cover 592
Step 6: Remove the rear-top cover 593
Step 7: Remove the right-lower door 594
Step 8: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly 596
Step 9: Remove the DC controller 597
Step 10: Remove the feed motor 598
Step 11: Remove the pickup drive assembly 599
Step 12: Unpack the replacement pickup drive assembly 599
Step 13: Install the pickup drive assembly 600
Step 14: Install the feed motor 601
Step 15: Install the DC controller 601
Step 16: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly 602
Step 17: Install the right-lower door 603
Step 18: Install the rear-top cover 605

Step 19: Install the rear-left cover 606
Step 20: Install the rear-right cover 607
Step 21: Install the image scanner cable cover 608
Step 22: Install the Tray 1 cover 609
Step 23: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox 611
Step 24: Turn the product power on 613
Parts Return 613
Cassette pickup assembly 614
Introduction 615
Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox 615
Step 2: Remove the Tray 1 cover 616
Step 3: Remove the cassette-door-open detection switch 619
Step 4: Remove the image scanner cable cover 621
Step 5: Remove the rear-right cover 622
Step 6: Remove the rear-left cover 623
Step 7: Remove the rear-top cover 624
Step 8: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly 625
Step 9: Remove the DC controller 626
Step 10: Remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly 628
Step 11: Remove the feed motor 630
Step 12: Remove the pickup drive assembly 631
Step 13: Remove the cassette pickup assembly 631
Step 14: Unpack the replacement cassette pickup assembly 635
Step 15: Install the cassette pickup assembly 635
Step 16: Install the pickup drive assembly 639
Step 17: Install the feed motor 640
Step 18: Install the Tray 1 pickup assembly 640
Step 19: Install the DC controller 643
Step 20: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly 644
Step 21: Install the rear-top cover 645
Step 22: Install the rear-left cover 646
Step 23: Install the rear-right cover 647
Step 24: Install the image scanner cable cover 648
Step 25: Install the cassette-door-open detection switch 649
Step 26: Install the Tray 1 cover 651
Step 27: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox 653
Step 28: Turn the product power on 655
Parts Return 655
Optional input and output accessories 656
1x500-sheet paper feeder 657
Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 658

Left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 659
Remove the left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 659
Right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 663
Remove the right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 663
Right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 666
Remove the right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 666
Front-upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 667
Remove the front-upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 667
Pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 669
Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 669
Install the pickup drive assembly 670
Pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 671
Remove the pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 671
Install the pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 674
Lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 675
Remove the lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 675
Lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 676
Remove the lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 676
Controller printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 678
Remove the controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 678
1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet 679
Rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 680
Stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 681
Stock box and rails (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 682
Remove the stock box and rails 682
Left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 684
Remove the left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 684
Front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 685
Remove the front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 685
Right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 686
Remove the right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 686
Right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 687
Right center cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 689
Remove the right center cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 689
Right-door hinge cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 690
Remove the right-door hinge cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 690
Pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 692

Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 692
Install the paper drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 694
Paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 692
Remove the paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 695
Install the paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 698
Lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 699
Remove the lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 699
Lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 700
Remove the lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) ... 700
Controller printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 702
Remove the controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 702
2,500-sheet high capacity input (HCI) 704
Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 705
Right door (HCI optional paper feeder) 706
Right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 707
Remove the right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 707
Right lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 708
Remove the right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 708
Front upper cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 709
Right front cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 710
Remove the right front cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 710
Left cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 711
Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 712
Remove the Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 712
Install the Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 715
Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 716
Remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 716
Install the Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 715
Tray 5 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 720
Remove the Tray 5 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 720
Pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 722
Remove the pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 722
Install the pickup drive assembly 723
Tray 3 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 724
Remove the Tray 3 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 724
Tray 4 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 726

Remove the Tray 4 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 726
Tray 3 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 728
Remove the Tray 3 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 728
Tray 4 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 729
Remove the Tray 4 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 729
Tray 5 lifter drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 730
Remove the Tray 5 lifter drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 730
Controller printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (HCI optional paper feeder) 731
Remove the controller PCA (HCI optional paper feeder) 731
Stapling mailbox 732
Front cover (stapling mailbox) 733
Rear cover (stapling mailbox) 734
Handle assembly (stapling mailbox) 735
Remove the handle assembly 735
Top cover (stapling mailbox) 737
Remove the top cover 737
Output bin 3 (stapling mailbox) 738
Output bin assembly cover (stapling mailbox) 740
Remove the output bin assembly cover 740
Driver printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (stapling mailbox) 742
Output bin sensor printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (stapling mailbox) 744
Remove the output bin sensor PCA 744
Stapler assembly (stapling mailbox) 745
Remove the stapler assembly 745
Jogger assembly (stapling mailbox) 746
Remove the jogger assembly 746
Output bin solenoid (stapling mailbox) 747
Remove the output bin solenoid 747
Output bin assembly (stapling mailbox) 749
Remove the output bin assembly 749
Stage top assembly (stapling mailbox) 751
Remove the stage top assembly 751
Install the stage top assembly 760
Stage assembly (stapling mailbox) 761
Remove the stage assembly 761
Output bin 3 drive assembly (stapling mailbox) 764
Remove the output bin 3 drive assembly 764

2 Parts and diagrams 769
For additional service and support information 770
Order parts, accessories, and supplies 771

Ordering information 771
Related documentation 771
Supplies part numbers 772
Customer self-repair kits 772
Service replacement kits 774
Accessories 775
How to use the parts lists and diagrams 776
Document feeder and scanner components 778
Document feeder components 780
Document feeder components (1 of 2) 780
Document feeder components (2 of 2) 782
Scanner control board (SCB) 784
Control panel 786
Covers 788
Upper plate assembly 790
Internal components 792
Internal components (1 of 5) 792
Internal components (2 of 5) 794
Internal components (3 of 5) 796
Internal components (4 of 5) 798
Internal components (5 of 5) 800
High-voltage power supply 802
1x500-sheet paper feeder 804
1x500-sheet paper feeder covers 804
1x500-sheet paper feeder components 806
1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet 808
1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers 808
1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components 810
2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder 812
2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers 812
2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) 814
2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) 816
Stapling mailbox 818
Stapling mailbox covers 818
Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) 820
Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) 822
Envelope feeder 824
Envelope feeder covers 824
Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) 826
Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) 828
Alphabetical parts list 830

Numerical parts list 843

Index 857

List of tables

Table 1-1 Identification and location (product base) 273
Table 2-1 Ordering information 771
Table 2-2 Related documentation and software 771
Table 2-3 Supplies part numbers 772
Table 2-4 Customer self-repair kits 772
Table 2-5 Service replacement kits 774
Table 2-6 Accessories 775
Table 2-7 Document feeder and scanner components 779
Table 2-8 Document feeder components (1 of 2) 781
Table 2-9 Document feeder components (2 of 2) 783
Table 2-10 Scanner control board (SCB) 785
Table 2-11 Control panel 787
Table 2-12 Covers 789
Table 2-13 Upper plate assembly 791
Table 2-14 Internal components (1 of 5) 793
Table 2-15 Internal components (2 of 5) 795
Table 2-16 Internal components (3 of 5) 797
Table 2-17 Internal components (4 of 5) 799
Table 2-18 Internal components (5 of 5) 801
Table 2-19 High-voltage power supply 803
Table 2-20 1x500-sheet paper feeder covers 805
Table 2-21 1x500-sheet paper feeder components 807
Table 2-22 1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers 809
Table 2-23 1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components 811
Table 2-24 2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers 813
Table 2-25 2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) 815
Table 2-26 2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) 817
Table 2-27 Stapling mailbox covers 819
Table 2-28 Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) 821
Table 2-29 Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) 823
Table 2-30 Envelope feeder covers 825
Table 2-31 Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) 827

Table 2-32 Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) 829

List of figures

Figure 1-1 Screwdrivers 5
Figure 1-2 Open the top cover 9
Figure 1-3 Remove the toner cartridge 9
Figure 1-4 Recycle and unpack 10
Figure 1-5 Rock the toner cartridge 10
Figure 1-6 Remove the protective shield 11
Figure 1-7 Remove the sealing tape 11
Figure 1-8 Install the toner cartridge 12
Figure 1-9 Close the top cover 13
Figure 1-10 Slide the stapler/stacker away from the product 14
Figure 1-11 Open the staple-cartridge door 15
Figure 1-12 Remove the staple cartridge 15
Figure 1-13 Recycle and unpack 16
Figure 1-14 Install the cartridge and close the stapler door 16
Figure 1-15 Slide the stapler back to the product 16
Figure 1-16 Open the document-feeder door 18
Figure 1-17 Rotate the input tray up 19
Figure 1-18 Release two tabs 19
Figure 1-19 Remove the backside background selector 20
Figure 1-20 Recycle and unpack 20
Figure 1-21 Install the background selector 21
Figure 1-22 Rotate the input tray down 21
Figure 1-23 Close the document-feeder door 22
Figure 1-24 Remove the formatter 24
Figure 1-25 Remove the formatter 24
Figure 1-26 Remove the HDD 26
Figure 1-27 Release the clip 27
Figure 1-28 Remove the clip 27
Figure 1-29 Remove the SSM 28
Figure 1-30 Release two clips 28
Figure 1-31 Remove the DIMM 29
Figure 1-32 Locate the fax PCA 29

Figure 1-33 Release the connector end of the fax PCA 30
Figure 1-34 Remove the fax PCA 30
Figure 1-35 Recycle and unpack 31
Figure 1-36 Press down on the HDD 32
Figure 1-37 Install the black plastic HDD case 32
Figure 1-38 Make sure that the HDD is flat against the formatter 33
Figure 1-39 Install the SSM 33
Figure 1-40 Install the retainer clip 34
Figure 1-41 Rotate the retainer 34
Figure 1-42 Insert the DIMM into the holder 35
Figure 1-43 Install the DIMM 35
Figure 1-44 Make sure that the retaining clips snap into place 36
Figure 1-45 Insert the fax port into the holder 36
Figure 1-46 Install the fax PCA 37
Figure 1-47 Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot 37
Figure 1-48 Tighten the two thumbscrews 38
Figure 1-49 Verify that the formatter is functioning 39
Figure 1-50 Remove the formatter 41
Figure 1-51 Remove the formatter 41
Figure 1-52 Remove the HDD 43
Figure 1-53 Release the clip 44
Figure 1-54 Remove the clip 44
Figure 1-55 Remove the SSM 45
Figure 1-56 Check the HDD for foam pads 46
Figure 1-57 Install the HDD 46
Figure 1-58 Check the HDD installation 47
Figure 1-59 Install the foam pads 47
Figure 1-60 Press down on the HDD 48
Figure 1-61 Install the HDD 48
Figure 1-62 Check the HDD installation 49
Figure 1-63 Install the SSM 49
Figure 1-64 Install the retainer clip 50
Figure 1-65 Rotate the retainer 50
Figure 1-66 Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot 51
Figure 1-67 Tighten the two thumbscrews 51
Figure 1-68 Remove the formatter 55
Figure 1-69 Remove the formatter 55
Figure 1-70 Release two clips 56
Figure 1-71 Remove the DIMM 56
Figure 1-72 Insert the DIMM into the holder 57
Figure 1-73 Install the DIMM 58

Figure 1-74 Make sure that the retaining clips snap into place 58
Figure 1-75 Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot 59
Figure 1-76 Tighten the two thumbscrews 59
Figure 1-77 Verify that the formatter is functioning 60
Figure 1-78 Remove the formatter 62
Figure 1-79 Remove the formatter 62
Figure 1-80 Locate the fax PCA 63
Figure 1-81 Release the connector end of the fax PCA 63
Figure 1-82 Remove the fax PCA 64
Figure 1-83 Insert the fax port of the fax PCA into the holder 65
Figure 1-84 Install the fax PCA 65
Figure 1-85 Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot 66
Figure 1-86 Tighten the two thumbscrews 66
Figure 1-87 Verify that the formatter is functioning 67
Figure 1-88 Remove the output bin 68
Figure 1-89 Install the output bin 69
Figure 1-90 Remove the output bin 71
Figure 1-91 Remove the stapling mailbox 72
Figure 1-92 Remove the duplex accessory 73
Figure 1-93 Install the duplex accessory 74
Figure 1-94 Install the output bin 74
Figure 1-95 Install the stapling mailbox 75
Figure 1-96 Remove the output bin 77
Figure 1-97 Remove the stapling mailbox 78
Figure 1-98 Remove the duplex accessory 79
Figure 1-99 Remove the fuser-entrance guide 79
Figure 1-100 Install the fuser-entrance guide 80
Figure 1-101 Install the duplex accessory 81
Figure 1-102 Install the output bin 81
Figure 1-103 Install the stapling mailbox 82
Figure 1-104 Remove the output bin 84
Figure 1-105 Remove the stapling mailbox 85
Figure 1-106 Remove the duplex accessory 86
Figure 1-107 Remove the fuser-entrance guide 86
Figure 1-108 Remove the fuser 87
Figure 1-109 Install the fuser 88
Figure 1-110 Install the fuser-entrance guide 88
Figure 1-111 Install the duplex accessory 89
Figure 1-112 Install the output bin 89
Figure 1-113 Install the stapling mailbox 90
Figure 1-114 Remove third party devices 93

Figure 1-115 Tilt the control panel up 93
Figure 1-116 Remove the cover 94
Figure 1-117 Slide the keyboard out 94
Figure 1-118 Disconnect two connectors 95
Figure 1-119 Remove one screw 95
Figure 1-120 Slide the control panel to the right 96
Figure 1-121 Remove the control-panel assembly 96
Figure 1-122 Place the control-panel assembly on a flat surface 97
Figure 1-123 Release the flat cable 97
Figure 1-124 Disconnect the flat cable 98
Figure 1-125 Tilt the screen down 98
Figure 1-126 Slide the keyboard tray out 99
Figure 1-127 Turn the control panel face-down 99
Figure 1-128 Remove the keyboard 100
Figure 1-129 Recycle and unpack 101
Figure 1-130 Align the edges of the tray with the slots in the control panel 102
Figure 1-131 Slide the keyboard tray in 102
Figure 1-132 Turn the control panel face-up 103
Figure 1-133 Tilt the screen up 103
Figure 1-134 Position the flat cable in the connector 104
Figure 1-135 Close the latch to lock the flat cable into position 104
Figure 1-136 Verify that the cable is securely fastened in the connector 105
Figure 1-137 Install the cable and wire harness 105
Figure 1-138 Insert the tabs on the control panel into the slots 106
Figure 1-139 Slide the control panel to the left 106
Figure 1-140 Slide the keyboard out 107
Figure 1-141 Connect two connectors 107
Figure 1-142 Install the screw 108
Figure 1-143 Install the cover 108
Figure 1-144 Install third party devices 109
Figure 1-145 Test the keyboard 109
Figure 1-146 Tilt the control panel up 111
Figure 1-147 Remove the cover 111
Figure 1-148 Slide the keyboard out 112
Figure 1-149 Disconnect two connectors 112
Figure 1-150 Remove one screw 113
Figure 1-151 Slide the control panel to the right 113
Figure 1-152 Remove the control-panel assembly 114
Figure 1-153 Place the control-panel assembly on a flat surface 115
Figure 1-154 Release the flat cable 115
Figure 1-155 Disconnect the flat cable 116

Figure 1-156 Tilt the screen down 116
Figure 1-157 Slide the keyboard tray out 117
Figure 1-158 Turn the control panel face-down 117
Figure 1-159 Remove the keyboard 118
Figure 1-160 Align the edges of the tray with the slots in the control panel 119
Figure 1-161 Slide the keyboard tray in 119
Figure 1-162 Turn the control panel face-up 120
Figure 1-163 Tilt the screen up 120
Figure 1-164 Position the flat cable in the connector 121
Figure 1-165 Close the latch to lock the flat cable into position 121
Figure 1-166 Verify that the cable is securely fastened in the connector 122
Figure 1-167 Install the cable and wire harness 122
Figure 1-168 Insert the tabs on the control panel into the slots 123
Figure 1-169 Slide the control panel to the left 123
Figure 1-170 Slide the keyboard out 124
Figure 1-171 Connect two connectors 124
Figure 1-172 Install the screw 125
Figure 1-173 Install the cover 125
Figure 1-174 Test the keyboard 126
Figure 1-175 Turn the power off 128
Figure 1-176 Remove the envelope feeder or the environment cover 128
Figure 1-177 Open the separation roller cover 129
Figure 1-178 Remove the separation roller 129
Figure 1-179 Remove one screw 130
Figure 1-180 Remove the bushing 130
Figure 1-181 Remove the roller cover 131
Figure 1-182 Remove the rollers 131
Figure 1-183 Open the separation roller cover 132
Figure 1-184 Install the separation roller 133
Figure 1-185 Install the rollers 133
Figure 1-186 Install the roller cover 134
Figure 1-187 Install the bushing 134
Figure 1-188 Install one screw 135
Figure 1-189 Install the envelope feeder or the environment cover 135
Figure 1-190 Turn the power on 136
Figure 1-191 Turn the power off 138
Figure 1-192 Identify the product model 138
Figure 1-193 Remove the tray or trays 139
Figure 1-194 Locate the pickup and feed rollers 140
Figure 1-195 Remove the rollers 140
Figure 1-196 install the rollers 141

Figure 1-197 Install the tray or trays 142
Figure 1-198 Turn the power on 143
Figure 1-199 Turn the power off 145
Figure 1-200 Open the top cover 146
Figure 1-201 Remove the toner cartridge 147
Figure 1-202 Remove the transfer roller 148
Figure 1-203 Install the transfer roller 149
Figure 1-204 Install the toner cartridge 150
Figure 1-205 Turn the power on 151
Figure 1-206 Open the document-feeder door 153
Figure 1-207 Open the access door 153
Figure 1-208 Remove the document-feeder roller 154
Figure 1-209 Release one tab 154
Figure 1-210 Remove the document-feeder separation pad 155
Figure 1-211 Check the spring 155
Figure 1-212 Position the separation pad on the product 156
Figure 1-213 Check the spring 157
Figure 1-214 Check the tabs 157
Figure 1-215 Install the separation pad 158
Figure 1-216 Install the document-feeder roller 159
Figure 1-217 Rotate the roller up 159
Figure 1-218 Close the access door 160
Figure 1-219 Open the document feeder 161
Figure 1-220 Remove the white backing 162
Figure 1-221 Remove remaining adhesive 162
Figure 1-222 Place the white backing on the scanner 164
Figure 1-223 Peel off the adhesive backing 164
Figure 1-224 Place the two mylar-spacer strips onto the adhesive 165
Figure 1-225 Peel off the adhesive backing 165
Figure 1-226 Verify that the white backing is correctly aligned 166
Figure 1-227 Close the document feeder and press down 166
Figure 1-228 Open the document feeder 167
Figure 1-229 Press along the white backing 167
Figure 1-230 Peel off the protective sheet 168
Figure 1-231 Close the document feeder 168
Figure 1-232 Turn the power off 171
Figure 1-233 Open the document feeder cover 171
Figure 1-234 Locate the mylar strip 172
Figure 1-235 Remove the mylar strip 172
Figure 1-236 Remove any remaining adhesive 173
Figure 1-237 Install the document-feeder mylar strip 174

Figure 1-238 Press down firmly on the strip 174
Figure 1-239 Close the document feeder cover 175
Figure 1-240 Turn the power on 175
Figure 1-241 Open the document-feeder cover 176
Figure 1-242 Remove four screws 176
Figure 1-243 Note the location of the tabs 177
Figure 1-244 Release two tabs 177
Figure 1-245 Remove the cover 178
Figure 1-246 Remove three springs 178
Figure 1-247 Slide the shaft and rollers to the left 179
Figure 1-248 Move the document-feeder roller assembly out of the way 179
Figure 1-249 Release one hinge pin 180
Figure 1-250 Remove the document-feeder roller cover 180
Figure 1-251 Check the roller shaft 181
Figure 1-252 Check the document-feeder roller cover and document-feeder roller assembly 181
Figure 1-253 Remove two screws 182
Figure 1-254 Remove the cover 183
Figure 1-255 Install the cover 183
Figure 1-256 Install two screws 184
Figure 1-257 Remove two screws 186
Figure 1-258 Remove the cover 186
Figure 1-259 Disconnect four connectors 187
Figure 1-260 Release four retainers 187
Figure 1-261 Remove one screw and the ground wire 188
Figure 1-262 Remove one screw 188
Figure 1-263 Release one retainer 189
Figure 1-264 Partially slide the SCB out 189
Figure 1-265 Release three connectors 190
Figure 1-266 Remove the FFC 190
Figure 1-267 Release two tabs 191
Figure 1-268 Remove the ferrite and holder 191
Figure 1-269 Remove the FFC 192
Figure 1-270 Remove the SCB 192
Figure 1-271 Install the SCB 193
Figure 1-272 Connect the FFC 194
Figure 1-273 Install the ferrite and holder 194
Figure 1-274 Check the two tabs 195
Figure 1-275 Connect the FFC 195
Figure 1-276 Connect three connectors 196
Figure 1-277 Slide the SCB in 196
Figure 1-278 Fasten one retainer 197

Figure 1-279 Install one screw 197
Figure 1-280 Install the ground wire and one screw 198
Figure 1-281 Install the wire harnesses 198
Figure 1-282 Connect four connectors 199
Figure 1-283 Install the cover 199
Figure 1-284 Install two screws 200
Figure 1-285 Open the document-feeder door 202
Figure 1-286 Rotate the input tray up 202
Figure 1-287 Release two tabs 203
Figure 1-288 Remove the backside background selector 203
Figure 1-289 Remove two screws 204
Figure 1-290 Remove the cover 204
Figure 1-291 Disconnect four connectors 205
Figure 1-292 Release four retainers 205
Figure 1-293 Remove one screw and the ground wire 206
Figure 1-294 Remove one screw 206
Figure 1-295 Release one retainer 207
Figure 1-296 Partially slide the SCB out 207
Figure 1-297 Release three connectors 208
Figure 1-298 Remove the FFC 208
Figure 1-299 Release two tabs 209
Figure 1-300 Remove the ferrite and holder 209
Figure 1-301 Remove the FFC 210
Figure 1-302 Remove the SCB 210
Figure 1-303 Loosen two screws 211
Figure 1-304 Remove the document feeder 211
Figure 1-305 Route the document feeder FFC and cables 212
Figure 1-306 Install the document feeder 213
Figure 1-307 Tighten two screws 213
Figure 1-308 Install the SCB 214
Figure 1-309 Connect the FFC 214
Figure 1-310 Install the ferrite and holder 215
Figure 1-311 Check the two tabs 215
Figure 1-312 Connect the FFC 216
Figure 1-313 Connect three connectors 216
Figure 1-314 Slide the SCB in 217
Figure 1-315 Fasten one retainer 217
Figure 1-316 Install one screw 218
Figure 1-317 Install the ground wire and one screw 218
Figure 1-318 Install the wire harnesses 219
Figure 1-319 Connect four connectors 219

Figure 1-320 Install the cover 220
Figure 1-321 Install two screws 220
Figure 1-322 Install the background selector 221
Figure 1-323 Rotate the input tray down 221
Figure 1-324 Close the document-feeder door 222
Figure 1-325 Place the white backing on the scanner 223
Figure 1-326 Peel off the adhesive backing 223
Figure 1-327 Place the two mylar-spacer strips onto the adhesive 224
Figure 1-328 Peel off the adhesive backing 224
Figure 1-329 Verify that the white backing is correctly aligned 225
Figure 1-330 Close the document feeder and press down 225
Figure 1-331 Open the document feeder 226
Figure 1-332 Press along the white backing 226
Figure 1-333 Peel off the protective sheet 227
Figure 1-334 Close the document feeder 227
Figure 1-335 Remove the document-feeder hinge assembly 229
Figure 1-336 Remove two screws 231
Figure 1-337 Remove the cover 231
Figure 1-338 Disconnect four connectors 232
Figure 1-339 Release four retainers 232
Figure 1-340 Remove one screw and the ground wire 233
Figure 1-341 Remove one screw 233
Figure 1-342 Release one retainer 234
Figure 1-343 Partially slide the SCB out 234
Figure 1-344 Release three connectors 235
Figure 1-345 Remove the FFC 235
Figure 1-346 Release two tabs 236
Figure 1-347 Remove the ferrite and holder 236
Figure 1-348 Remove the FFC 237
Figure 1-349 Remove the SCB 237
Figure 1-350 Loosen two screws 238
Figure 1-351 Remove the document feeder 238
Figure 1-352 Release the scanner latch 239
Figure 1-353 Open the image scanner assembly 239
Figure 1-354 Remove one screw 240
Figure 1-355 Release one tab 240
Figure 1-356 Remove one screw 241
Figure 1-357 Remove the scanner cable cover 241
Figure 1-358 Feed the cables through the opening 242
Figure 1-359 Disconnect one connector 242
Figure 1-360 Close the image scanner assembly 243

Figure 1-361 Remove one screw 243
Figure 1-362 Release the cover 244
Figure 1-363 Release three tabs 244
Figure 1-364 Remove the cover 245
Figure 1-365 Remove three screws 245
Figure 1-366 Slide the image scanner assembly until it stops 246
Figure 1-367 Remove the scanner assembly 246
Figure 1-368 Install the lower scanner cover tab 247
Figure 1-369 Install the scanner assembly 248
Figure 1-370 Slide the image scanner assembly as shown 248
Figure 1-371 Install three screws 249
Figure 1-372 Install one screw 249
Figure 1-373 Engage the tabs 250
Figure 1-374 Engage three tabs 250
Figure 1-375 Install one screw 251
Figure 1-376 Install one screw 251
Figure 1-377 Release the scanner latch 252
Figure 1-378 Open the image scanner assembly 252
Figure 1-379 Connect one connector 253
Figure 1-380 Feed the cables through the opening 253
Figure 1-381 Install the scanner cable cover 254
Figure 1-382 Install one screw 254
Figure 1-383 Route the document feeder FFC and cables 255
Figure 1-384 Install the document feeder 255
Figure 1-385 Tighten two screws 256
Figure 1-386 Install the SCB 256
Figure 1-387 Connect the FFC 257
Figure 1-388 Install the ferrite and holder 257
Figure 1-389 Check the two tabs 258
Figure 1-390 Connect the FFC 258
Figure 1-391 Connect three connectors 259
Figure 1-392 Slide the SCB in 259
Figure 1-393 Fasten one retainer 260
Figure 1-394 Install one screw 260
Figure 1-395 Install the ground wire and one screw 261
Figure 1-396 Install the wire harnesses 261
Figure 1-397 Connect four connectors 262
Figure 1-398 Install the cover 262
Figure 1-399 Install two screws 263
Figure 1-400 Open the document feeder 264
Figure 1-401 Remove the white backing 264

Figure 1-402 Remove remaining adhesive 265
Figure 1-403 Place the white backing on the scanner 265
Figure 1-404 Peel off the adhesive backing 266
Figure 1-405 Place the two mylar-spacer strips onto the adhesive 266
Figure 1-406 Peel off the adhesive backing 267
Figure 1-407 Verify that the white backing is correctly aligned 267
Figure 1-408 Close the document feeder and press down 268
Figure 1-409 Open the document feeder 268
Figure 1-410 Press along the white backing 269
Figure 1-411 Peel off the protective sheet 269
Figure 1-412 Close the document feeder 270
Figure 1-413 Identification and location (product base) 273
Figure 1-414 Remove two screws 275
Figure 1-415 Release two tabs 275
Figure 1-416 Release the right-upper corner 276
Figure 1-417 Slide the cover to the right 276
Figure 1-418 Remove the cover 277
Figure 1-419 Note of the location of the tabs 278
Figure 1-420 Align four tabs 278
Figure 1-421 Slide the cover to the left 279
Figure 1-422 Engage one locking pin 279
Figure 1-423 Engage two tabs 280
Figure 1-424 Check cover installation 280
Figure 1-425 Install two screws 281
Figure 1-426 Remove the envelope feeder cover 282
Figure 1-427 Remove one screw 284
Figure 1-428 Remove the cover 284
Figure 1-429 Install the cover 285
Figure 1-430 Install one screw 286
Figure 1-431 Secure the outer retaining pins 288
Figure 1-432 Release two outer retaining pins 288
Figure 1-433 Release one pin 289
Figure 1-434 Release the left-side spring 289
Figure 1-435 Release the right-side spring 290
Figure 1-436 Remove the cover 290
Figure 1-437 Install the cover 291
Figure 1-438 Engage the right-side spring 292
Figure 1-439 Engage the left-side spring 292
Figure 1-440 Engage two outer retaining pins 293
Figure 1-441 Remove the low adhesive tape 293
Figure 1-442 Open the tray 295

Figure 1-443 Remove the tray 295
Figure 1-444 Remove the formatter 297
Figure 1-445 Remove the formatter 297
Figure 1-446 Remove the output bin 298
Figure 1-447 Remove the stapling mailbox 299
Figure 1-448 Remove the duplex accessory 300
Figure 1-449 Remove one screw 300
Figure 1-450 Remove the side-rear cover 301
Figure 1-451 Recycle and unpack 301
Figure 1-452 Install the side-rear cover 302
Figure 1-453 Install one screw 302
Figure 1-454 Install the duplex accessory 303
Figure 1-455 Install the output bin 303
Figure 1-456 Install the stapling mailbox 304
Figure 1-457 Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot 305
Figure 1-458 Tighten the two thumbscrews 305
Figure 1-459 Verify that the formatter is functioning 306
Figure 1-460 Remove two screws 307
Figure 1-461 Note the locations of the tabs and pins 308
Figure 1-462 Release one tab 308
Figure 1-463 Release two tabs 309
Figure 1-464 Release the assembly 309
Figure 1-465 Remove the assembly 310
Figure 1-466 Separate the logo panel and front-left cover 310
Figure 1-467 Note the locations of the tabs and pins 311
Figure 1-468 Align the hook tabs on the top of the assembly 311
Figure 1-469 Position the tab on the assembly behind the fan duct 312
Figure 1-470 Install the assembly 312
Figure 1-471 Verify that the left-side tab is correctly installed 313
Figure 1-472 Verify that the reverse assembly fan is correctly installed 313
Figure 1-473 Remove two screws 315
Figure 1-474 Release two tabs 315
Figure 1-475 Release the right-upper corner 316
Figure 1-476 Slide the cover to the right 316
Figure 1-477 Remove the cover 317
Figure 1-478 Remove the power-switch assembly 317
Figure 1-479 Install the power-switch assembly 318
Figure 1-480 Note of the location of the tabs 319
Figure 1-481 Align four tabs 319
Figure 1-482 Slide the cover to the left 320
Figure 1-483 Engage one locking pin 320

Figure 1-484 Engage two tabs 321
Figure 1-485 Check cover installation 321
Figure 1-486 Install two screws 322
Figure 1-487 Remove three screws 324
Figure 1-488 Remove the cover 324
Figure 1-489 Install the cover 325
Figure 1-490 Install three screws 326
Figure 1-491 Remove one screw 328
Figure 1-492 Remove the cover 328
Figure 1-493 Remove three screws 329
Figure 1-494 Remove the cover 329
Figure 1-495 Remove three screws 330
Figure 1-496 Remove the cover 330
Figure 1-497 Install the cover 331
Figure 1-498 Install three screws 332
Figure 1-499 Install the cover 332
Figure 1-500 Install three screws 333
Figure 1-501 Install the cover 333
Figure 1-502 Install one screw 334
Figure 1-503 Remove one screw 336
Figure 1-504 Remove the cover 336
Figure 1-505 Remove three screws 337
Figure 1-506 Remove the cover 337
Figure 1-507 Remove three screws 338
Figure 1-508 Remove the cover 338
Figure 1-509 Remove one screw 339
Figure 1-510 Remove the cover 339
Figure 1-511 Install the cover 340
Figure 1-512 Install one screw 341
Figure 1-513 Install the cover 341
Figure 1-514 Install three screws 342
Figure 1-515 Install the cover 342
Figure 1-516 Install three screws 343
Figure 1-517 Install the cover 343
Figure 1-518 Install one screw 344
Figure 1-519 Secure the outer retaining pins 346
Figure 1-520 Release two outer retaining pins 346
Figure 1-521 Release one pin 347
Figure 1-522 Release the left-side spring 347
Figure 1-523 Release the right-side spring 348
Figure 1-524 Remove the cover 348

Figure 1-525 Remove three screws 349
Figure 1-526 Remove the cover 349
Figure 1-527 Rotate the stopper 350
Figure 1-528 Remove the shaft 350
Figure 1-529 Remove the door 351
Figure 1-530 Install the door 352
Figure 1-531 Install the shaft 352
Figure 1-532 Rotate the stopper 353
Figure 1-533 Install the cover 353
Figure 1-534 Install three screws 354
Figure 1-535 Install the cover 354
Figure 1-536 Engage the right-side spring 355
Figure 1-537 Engage the left-side spring 355
Figure 1-538 Engage two outer retaining pins 356
Figure 1-539 Remove the low adhesive tape 356
Figure 1-540 Remove one screw 358
Figure 1-541 Release the corner of the cover 359
Figure 1-542 Remove the document feeder hinge cover 359
Figure 1-543 Install the document-feeder hinge cover 360
Figure 1-544 Remove the registration assembly and grounding plate 362
Figure 1-545 Remove the registration assembly 362
Figure 1-546 Remove two screws 364
Figure 1-547 Remove the cover 364
Figure 1-548 Remove one screw 365
Figure 1-549 Remove the switch 365
Figure 1-550 Connect one connector 366
Figure 1-551 Install one screw 367
Figure 1-552 Install the cover 367
Figure 1-553 Install two screws 368
Figure 1-554 Remove the reverse assembly upper guide assembly 369
Figure 1-555 Install the reverse assembly upper guide assembly 370
Figure 1-556 Remove one screw and the cover 371
Figure 1-557 Release one tab and one clip 371
Figure 1-558 Rotate the cover 372
Figure 1-559 Remove the cover 372
Figure 1-560 Disconnect two connectors 373
Figure 1-561 Remove two screws 373
Figure 1-562 Lift up the front of the assembly 374
Figure 1-563 Remove the reverse assembly 374
Figure 1-564 Remove the cover 375
Figure 1-565 Disconnect one connector 376

Figure 1-566 Disconnect one connector 376
Figure 1-567 Remove the laser/scanner assembly 377
Figure 1-568 Remove the cover 378
Figure 1-569 Remove the cartridge sensor assembly 379
Figure 1-570 Remove the antistatic spring 380
Figure 1-571 Disconnect one connector 381
Figure 1-572 Remove the temperature sensor 381
Figure 1-573 Remove one screw 383
Figure 1-574 Remove the cover 383
Figure 1-575 Remove three screws 384
Figure 1-576 Remove the cover 384
Figure 1-577 Remove one screw 385
Figure 1-578 Remove the cover 385
Figure 1-579 Remove six screws 386
Figure 1-580 Disconnect one connector and remove the shield 386
Figure 1-581 Install the shield and connect one connector 387
Figure 1-582 Remove six screws 387
Figure 1-583 Install the cover 388
Figure 1-584 Install one screw 388
Figure 1-585 Install the cover 389
Figure 1-586 Install three screws 389
Figure 1-587 Install the cover 390
Figure 1-588 Install one screw 390
Figure 1-589 Remove one screw 392
Figure 1-590 Remove the cover 392
Figure 1-591 Remove three screws 393
Figure 1-592 Remove the cover 393
Figure 1-593 Remove one screw 394
Figure 1-594 Remove the cover 394
Figure 1-595 Remove six screws 395
Figure 1-596 Disconnect one connector and remove the shield 395
Figure 1-597 Disconnect all of the connectors 396
Figure 1-598 Remove two screws and release one tab 396
Figure 1-599 Remove the DC controller 397
Figure 1-600 Install the DC controller 398
Figure 1-601 Connect all of the connectors 398
Figure 1-602 Install the shield and connect one connector 399
Figure 1-603 Remove six screws 399
Figure 1-604 Install the cover 400
Figure 1-605 Install one screw 400
Figure 1-606 Install the cover 401

Figure 1-607 Install three screws 401
Figure 1-608 Install the cover 402
Figure 1-609 Install one screw 402
Figure 1-610 Remove one screw 404
Figure 1-611 Remove the cover 404
Figure 1-612 Remove one screw 405
Figure 1-613 Remove the cover 405
Figure 1-614 Secure the outer retaining pins 406
Figure 1-615 Release two outer retaining pins 406
Figure 1-616 Release one pin 407
Figure 1-617 Release the left-side spring 407
Figure 1-618 Release the right-side spring 408
Figure 1-619 Remove the cover 408
Figure 1-620 Remove three screws 409
Figure 1-621 Remove the cover 409
Figure 1-622 Rotate the stopper 410
Figure 1-623 Remove the shaft 410
Figure 1-624 Remove the door 411
Figure 1-625 Remove six screws 411
Figure 1-626 Disconnect one connector and remove the shield 412
Figure 1-627 Remove three screws and the Tray 1 gear cover 412
Figure 1-628 Disconnect two connectors 413
Figure 1-629 Release the wire harnesses 413
Figure 1-630 Remove four screws 414
Figure 1-631 Remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly 414
Figure 1-632 Install the Tray 1 pickup assembly 415
Figure 1-633 Install four screws 416
Figure 1-634 Install the wire harnesses in the guide 416
Figure 1-635 Connect two connectors 417
Figure 1-636 Install the Tray 1 gear cover 417
Figure 1-637 Install the shield and connect one connector 418
Figure 1-638 Remove six screws 418
Figure 1-639 Install the door 419
Figure 1-640 Install the shaft 419
Figure 1-641 Rotate the stopper 420
Figure 1-642 Install the cover 420
Figure 1-643 Install three screws 421
Figure 1-644 Install the cover 421
Figure 1-645 Engage the right-side spring 422
Figure 1-646 Engage the left-side spring 422
Figure 1-647 Engage two outer retaining pins 423

Figure 1-648 Remove the low adhesive tape 423
Figure 1-649 Install the cover 424
Figure 1-650 Install one screw 424
Figure 1-651 Install the cover 425
Figure 1-652 Install one screw 425
Figure 1-653 Remove the formatter 427
Figure 1-654 Remove the formatter 427
Figure 1-655 Remove one screw 428
Figure 1-656 Remove the cover 428
Figure 1-657 Remove three screws 429
Figure 1-658 Remove the cover 429
Figure 1-659 Remove one screw 430
Figure 1-660 Remove the cover 430
Figure 1-661 Remove six screws 431
Figure 1-662 Disconnect one connector and remove the shield 431
Figure 1-663 Disconnect four connectors 432
Figure 1-664 Disconnect three connectors 432
Figure 1-665 Remove two screws 433
Figure 1-666 Remove the ICB 433
Figure 1-667 Recycle and unpack 434
Figure 1-668 Install the ICB 434
Figure 1-669 Install two screws 435
Figure 1-670 Connect three connectors 435
Figure 1-671 Connect four connectors 436
Figure 1-672 Install the shield and connect one connector 436
Figure 1-673 Remove six screws 437
Figure 1-674 Install the cover 437
Figure 1-675 Install one screw 438
Figure 1-676 Install the cover 438
Figure 1-677 Install three screws 439
Figure 1-678 Install the cover 439
Figure 1-679 Install one screw 440
Figure 1-680 Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot 440
Figure 1-681 Tighten the two thumbscrews 441
Figure 1-682 Verify that the formatter is functioning 442
Figure 1-683 Remove one screw 444
Figure 1-684 Remove the cover 444
Figure 1-685 Remove three screws 445
Figure 1-686 Remove the cover 445
Figure 1-687 Remove one screw 446
Figure 1-688 Remove the cover 446

Figure 1-689 Remove six screws 447
Figure 1-690 Disconnect one connector and remove the shield 447
Figure 1-691 Remove the feed motor 448
Figure 1-692 Install the feed motor 449
Figure 1-693 Install the shield and connect one connector 449
Figure 1-694 Remove six screws 450
Figure 1-695 Install the cover 450
Figure 1-696 Install one screw 451
Figure 1-697 Install the cover 451
Figure 1-698 Install three screws 452
Figure 1-699 Install the cover 452
Figure 1-700 Install one screw 453
Figure 1-701 Remove the drum motor 454
Figure 1-702 Remove the fuser motor 455
Figure 1-703 Release two tabs 456
Figure 1-704 Remove the fan duct 456
Figure 1-705 Remove two screws and the cover 457
Figure 1-706 Remove the main fan 457
Figure 1-707 Remove the laser/scanner fan 458
Figure 1-708 Install the laser/scanner fan 459
Figure 1-709 Remove the cartridge front-side fan 460
Figure 1-710 Install the cartridge front-side fan 461
Figure 1-711 Remove the low-voltage power supply fan 462
Figure 1-712 Install the low-voltage power supply fan 463
Figure 1-713 Remove one in-line connector 464
Figure 1-714 Disconnect one in-line connector 464
Figure 1-715 Release the fan and duct 465
Figure 1-716 Remove the fan and duct 465
Figure 1-717 Separate the fan from the duct 466
Figure 1-718 Release two tabs 467
Figure 1-719 Remove the fan duct 467
Figure 1-720 Remove two screws and the cover 468
Figure 1-721 Disconnect one connector 468
Figure 1-722 Release the fan duct 469
Figure 1-723 Remove the fan duct 469
Figure 1-724 Remove the cartridge fan 470
Figure 1-725 Install the cartridge fan 470
Figure 1-726 Remove the Tray 1 gear cover 471
Figure 1-727 Disconnect two connectors 472
Figure 1-728 Remove one screw 472
Figure 1-729 Release one tab 473

Figure 1-730 Remove the assembly 473
Figure 1-731 Remove five screws and the plate 474
Figure 1-732 Remove one screw 475
Figure 1-733 Remove the guide 475
Figure 1-734 Remove four screws 476
Figure 1-735 Remove five screws 476
Figure 1-736 Release one tab 477
Figure 1-737 Remove the sheet-metal plate 477
Figure 1-738 Remove one screw 478
Figure 1-739 Remove the output accessory detection switch 478
Figure 1-740 Remove the formatter 480
Figure 1-741 Remove the formatter 481
Figure 1-742 Remove the output bin 481
Figure 1-743 Remove the stapling mailbox 482
Figure 1-744 Remove the duplex accessory 483
Figure 1-745 Remove one screw 483
Figure 1-746 Remove the side-rear cover 484
Figure 1-747 Remove one screw 484
Figure 1-748 Remove the cover 485
Figure 1-749 Remove three screws 485
Figure 1-750 Remove the cover 486
Figure 1-751 Remove three screws 486
Figure 1-752 Remove the cover 487
Figure 1-753 Remove one screw 487
Figure 1-754 Remove the cover 488
Figure 1-755 Remove six screws 488
Figure 1-756 Disconnect one connector and remove the shield 489
Figure 1-757 Disconnect four connectors 489
Figure 1-758 Disconnect three connectors 490
Figure 1-759 Remove two screws 490
Figure 1-760 Remove the ICB 491
Figure 1-761 Remove the sheet-metal plate 491
Figure 1-762 Remove one screw 492
Figure 1-763 Remove the guide 492
Figure 1-764 Remove four screws 493
Figure 1-765 Remove two screws 493
Figure 1-766 Release one tab 494
Figure 1-767 Remove the sheet-metal plate 494
Figure 1-768 Disconnect seven connectors 495
Figure 1-769 Remove three screws 495
Figure 1-770 Release one tab 496

Figure 1-771 Remove the LVPS 496
Figure 1-772 Recycle and unpack 497
Figure 1-773 Install the LVPS 498
Figure 1-774 Check one tab 498
Figure 1-775 Install three screws 499
Figure 1-776 Connect seven connectors 499
Figure 1-777 Install the sheet-metal plate 500
Figure 1-778 Check one tab 500
Figure 1-779 Install five screws 501
Figure 1-780 Install four screws 501
Figure 1-781 Install the guide 502
Figure 1-782 Install one screw 502
Figure 1-783 Install the sheet-metal plate 503
Figure 1-784 Install the ICB 503
Figure 1-785 Install two screws 504
Figure 1-786 Connect three connectors 504
Figure 1-787 Connect four connectors 505
Figure 1-788 Install the shield and connect one connector 505
Figure 1-789 Remove six screws 506
Figure 1-790 Install the cover 506
Figure 1-791 Install one screw 507
Figure 1-792 Install the cover 507
Figure 1-793 Install three screws 508
Figure 1-794 Install the cover 508
Figure 1-795 Install three screws 509
Figure 1-796 Install the cover 509
Figure 1-797 Install one screw 510
Figure 1-798 Install the side-rear cover 510
Figure 1-799 Install one screw 511
Figure 1-800 Install the duplex accessory 511
Figure 1-801 Install the output bin 512
Figure 1-802 Install the stapling mailbox 513
Figure 1-803 Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot 514
Figure 1-804 Tighten the two thumbscrews 514
Figure 1-805 Verify that the formatter is functioning 515
Figure 1-806 Disconnect one connector 516
Figure 1-807 Remove the lifter assembly 517
Figure 1-808 Remove one spring 517
Figure 1-809 Release the wire harnesses 518
Figure 1-810 Remove the the guide 519
Figure 1-811 Disconnect one connector and remove one spring 519

Figure 1-812 Remove the lifter assembly 520
Figure 1-813 Remove the formatter 523
Figure 1-814 Remove the formatter 523
Figure 1-815 Remove the output bin 524
Figure 1-816 Remove the stapling mailbox 525
Figure 1-817 Remove the duplex accessory 526
Figure 1-818 Remove the fuser-entrance guide 526
Figure 1-819 Remove the fuser 527
Figure 1-820 Remove two screws 527
Figure 1-821 Release two tabs 528
Figure 1-822 Release the right-upper corner 528
Figure 1-823 Slide the cover to the right 529
Figure 1-824 Remove the cover 529
Figure 1-825 Remove one screw 530
Figure 1-826 Remove the side-rear cover 530
Figure 1-827 Remove one screw 531
Figure 1-828 Remove the cover 531
Figure 1-829 Remove three screws 532
Figure 1-830 Remove the cover 532
Figure 1-831 Remove three screws 533
Figure 1-832 Remove the cover 533
Figure 1-833 Remove one screw 534
Figure 1-834 Remove the cover 534
Figure 1-835 Remove six screws 535
Figure 1-836 Disconnect one connector and remove the shield 535
Figure 1-837 Disconnect all of the connectors 536
Figure 1-838 Remove two screws and release one tab 536
Figure 1-839 Remove the DC controller 537
Figure 1-840 Disconnect four connectors 537
Figure 1-841 Disconnect three connectors 538
Figure 1-842 Remove two screws 538
Figure 1-843 Remove the ICB 539
Figure 1-844 Remove the sheet-metal plate 539
Figure 1-845 Remove one screw 540
Figure 1-846 Remove the guide 540
Figure 1-847 Remove four screws 541
Figure 1-848 Remove two screws 541
Figure 1-849 Release one tab 542
Figure 1-850 Remove the sheet-metal plate 542
Figure 1-851 Disconnect seven connectors 543
Figure 1-852 Remove three screws 543

Figure 1-853 Release one tab 544
Figure 1-854 Remove the LVPS 544
Figure 1-855 Release two tabs 545
Figure 1-856 Remove the fan duct 545
Figure 1-857 Remove the cover 546
Figure 1-858 Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws 546
Figure 1-859 Remove two screws and release one tab 547
Figure 1-860 Release the guide 547
Figure 1-861 Remove the guide 548
Figure 1-862 Release the wire harnesses and remove four screws 548
Figure 1-863 Feed the wire harnesses through the hole 549
Figure 1-864 Feed the wire harnesses through the hole 549
Figure 1-865 Remove the HVPS 550
Figure 1-866 Remove one screw and release the wire harness 550
Figure 1-867 Remove the feed assembly 551
Figure 1-868 Recycle and unpack 551
Figure 1-869 Check the drive belts and belt shafts 552
Figure 1-870 Check the foot and slot 552
Figure 1-871 Install the feed assembly 553
Figure 1-872 Verify the feed assembly installation 553
Figure 1-873 Install five screws 554
Figure 1-874 Connect one wire harness and install one screw and release 554
Figure 1-875 Partially install the HVPS 555
Figure 1-876 Feed the wire harnesses through the hole 555
Figure 1-877 Feed the wire harnesses through the hole 556
Figure 1-878 Install four screws and install the wire harnesses 556
Figure 1-879 Install the guide 557
Figure 1-880 Check the guide 557
Figure 1-881 Install two screws 558
Figure 1-882 Install four screws and connect two connectors 558
Figure 1-883 Install the cover 559
Figure 1-884 Install the fan duct 559
Figure 1-885 Check two tabs 560
Figure 1-886 Install the LVPS 561
Figure 1-887 Check one tab 561
Figure 1-888 Install three screws 562
Figure 1-889 Connect seven connectors 562
Figure 1-890 Install the sheet-metal plate 563
Figure 1-891 Check one tab 563
Figure 1-892 Install five screws 564
Figure 1-893 Install four screws 564

Figure 1-894 Install the guide 565
Figure 1-895 Install one screw 565
Figure 1-896 Install the sheet-metal plate 566
Figure 1-897 Install the ICB 566
Figure 1-898 Install two screws 567
Figure 1-899 Connect three connectors 567
Figure 1-900 Connect four connectors 568
Figure 1-901 Install the DC controller 568
Figure 1-902 Connect all of the connectors 569
Figure 1-903 Install the shield and connect one connector 569
Figure 1-904 Remove six screws 570
Figure 1-905 Install the cover 570
Figure 1-906 Install one screw 571
Figure 1-907 Install the cover 571
Figure 1-908 Install three screws 572
Figure 1-909 Install the cover 572
Figure 1-910 Install three screws 573
Figure 1-911 Install the side-rear cover 573
Figure 1-912 Install one screw 574
Figure 1-913 Install the cover 574
Figure 1-914 Install one screw 575
Figure 1-915 Note of the location of the tabs 575
Figure 1-916 Align four tabs 576
Figure 1-917 Slide the cover to the left 576
Figure 1-918 Engage one locking pin 577
Figure 1-919 Engage two tabs 577
Figure 1-920 Check cover installation 578
Figure 1-921 Install two screws 578
Figure 1-922 Install the fuser 579
Figure 1-923 Install the fuser-entrance guide 579
Figure 1-924 Install the duplex accessory 580
Figure 1-925 Install the output bin 580
Figure 1-926 Install the stapling mailbox 581
Figure 1-927 Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot 582
Figure 1-928 Tighten the two thumbscrews 582
Figure 1-929 Verify that the formatter is functioning 583
Figure 1-930 Remove the feed roller assembly 584
Figure 1-931 Remove the output bin 586
Figure 1-932 Remove the stapling mailbox 587
Figure 1-933 Secure the outer retaining pins 588
Figure 1-934 Release two outer retaining pins 588

Figure 1-935 Release one pin 589
Figure 1-936 Release the left-side spring 589
Figure 1-937 Release the right-side spring 590
Figure 1-938 Remove the cover 590
Figure 1-939 Remove one screw 591
Figure 1-940 Remove the cover 591
Figure 1-941 Remove three screws 592
Figure 1-942 Remove the cover 592
Figure 1-943 Remove three screws 593
Figure 1-944 Remove the cover 593
Figure 1-945 Remove one screw 594
Figure 1-946 Remove the cover 594
Figure 1-947 Rotate the stopper 595
Figure 1-948 Remove the shaft 595
Figure 1-949 Remove the door 596
Figure 1-950 Remove six screws 596
Figure 1-951 Disconnect one connector and remove the shield 597
Figure 1-952 Disconnect all of the connectors 597
Figure 1-953 Remove two screws and release one tab 598
Figure 1-954 Remove the DC controller 598
Figure 1-955 Remove the feed motor 599
Figure 1-956 Remove the pickup drive assembly 599
Figure 1-957 Install the pickup drive assembly 600
Figure 1-958 Check the pickup drive assembly gears 601
Figure 1-959 Install the feed motor 601
Figure 1-960 Install the DC controller 602
Figure 1-961 Connect all of the connectors 602
Figure 1-962 Install the shield and connect one connector 603
Figure 1-963 Remove six screws 603
Figure 1-964 Install the door 604
Figure 1-965 Install the shaft 604
Figure 1-966 Rotate the stopper 605
Figure 1-967 Install the cover 605
Figure 1-968 Install one screw 606
Figure 1-969 Install the cover 606
Figure 1-970 Install three screws 607
Figure 1-971 Install the cover 607
Figure 1-972 Install three screws 608
Figure 1-973 Install the cover 608
Figure 1-974 Install one screw 609
Figure 1-975 Install the cover 609

Figure 1-976 Engage the right-side spring 610
Figure 1-977 Engage the left-side spring 610
Figure 1-978 Engage two outer retaining pins 611
Figure 1-979 Remove the low adhesive tape 611
Figure 1-980 Install the output bin 612
Figure 1-981 Install the stapling mailbox 612
Figure 1-982 Remove the output bin 615
Figure 1-983 Remove the stapling mailbox 616
Figure 1-984 Secure the outer retaining pins 617
Figure 1-985 Release two outer retaining pins 617
Figure 1-986 Release one pin 618
Figure 1-987 Release the left-side spring 618
Figure 1-988 Release the right-side spring 619
Figure 1-989 Remove the cover 619
Figure 1-990 Remove two screws 620
Figure 1-991 Remove the cover 620
Figure 1-992 Remove one screw 621
Figure 1-993 Remove the switch 621
Figure 1-994 Remove one screw 622
Figure 1-995 Remove the cover 622
Figure 1-996 Remove three screws 623
Figure 1-997 Remove the cover 623
Figure 1-998 Remove three screws 624
Figure 1-999 Remove the cover 624
Figure 1-1000 Remove one screw 625
Figure 1-1001 Remove the cover 625
Figure 1-1002 Remove six screws 626
Figure 1-1003 Disconnect one connector and remove the shield 626
Figure 1-1004 Disconnect all of the connectors 627
Figure 1-1005 Remove two screws and release one tab 627
Figure 1-1006 Remove the DC controller 628
Figure 1-1007 Remove three screws and the Tray 1 gear cover 628
Figure 1-1008 Disconnect two connectors 629
Figure 1-1009 Release the wire harnesses 629
Figure 1-1010 Remove four screws 630
Figure 1-1011 Remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly 630
Figure 1-1012 Remove the feed motor 631
Figure 1-1013 Remove the pickup drive assembly 631
Figure 1-1014 Remove one screw and the cassette rail 632
Figure 1-1015 Remove seven screws 632
Figure 1-1016 Disengage the cover retainer 633

Figure 1-1017 Remove the sheet-metal plate 633
Figure 1-1018 Remove one screw 634
Figure 1-1019 Disconnect two connectors and remove one screw 634
Figure 1-1020 Remove the cassette pickup assembly 635
Figure 1-1021 Install the cassette pickup assembly 636
Figure 1-1022 Install one screw and connect two connectors 636
Figure 1-1023 Install one screw 637
Figure 1-1024 Install the sheet-metal plate 637
Figure 1-1025 Engage the cover retainer 638
Figure 1-1026 Install seven screws 638
Figure 1-1027 Install the cassette rail and one screw 639
Figure 1-1028 Install the pickup drive assembly 639
Figure 1-1029 Check the pickup drive assembly gears 640
Figure 1-1030 Install the feed motor 640
Figure 1-1031 Install the Tray 1 pickup assembly 641
Figure 1-1032 Install four screws 641
Figure 1-1033 Install the wire harnesses in the guide 642
Figure 1-1034 Connect two connectors 642
Figure 1-1035 Install the Tray 1 gear cover 643
Figure 1-1036 Install the DC controller 643
Figure 1-1037 Connect all of the connectors 644
Figure 1-1038 Install the shield and connect one connector 644
Figure 1-1039 Remove six screws 645
Figure 1-1040 Install the cover 645
Figure 1-1041 Install one screw 646
Figure 1-1042 Install the cover 646
Figure 1-1043 Install three screws 647
Figure 1-1044 Install the cover 647
Figure 1-1045 Install three screws 648
Figure 1-1046 Install the cover 648
Figure 1-1047 Install one screw 649
Figure 1-1048 Connect one connector 649
Figure 1-1049 Install one screw 650
Figure 1-1050 Install the cover 650
Figure 1-1051 Install two screws 651
Figure 1-1052 Install the cover 651
Figure 1-1053 Engage the right-side spring 652
Figure 1-1054 Engage the left-side spring 652
Figure 1-1055 Engage two outer retaining pins 653
Figure 1-1056 Remove the low adhesive tape 653
Figure 1-1057 Install the output bin 654

Figure 1-1058 Install the stapling mailbox 654
Figure 1-1059 Remove the rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 658
Figure 1-1060 Left cover tab locations (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 659
Figure 1-1061 Release one tab (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 660
Figure 1-1062 Release one tab (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 660
Figure 1-1063 Release three tabs (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 661
Figure 1-1064 Locate three tabs (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 661
Figure 1-1065 Remove the left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 662
Figure 1-1066 Left cover tab locations (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 663
Figure 1-1067 Release one tab (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 664
Figure 1-1068 Release four tabs (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 664
Figure 1-1069 Locate three tabs (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 665
Figure 1-1070 Remove the right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 665
Figure 1-1071 Remove two screws (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 666
Figure 1-1072 Remove the cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 666
Figure 1-1073 Remove three screws (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 667
Figure 1-1074 Remove the front-upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 668
Figure 1-1075 Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 669
Figure 1-1076 Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 669
Figure 1-1077 Gears on the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 670
Figure 1-1078 Remove the tray rail (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 671
Figure 1-1079 Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 672
Figure 1-1080 Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 672
Figure 1-1081 Remove one screw and disconnect three connectors (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 673
Figure 1-1082 Remove one screw (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 673
Figure 1-1083 Remove the pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 674
Figure 1-1084 Gears on the paper drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 674
Figure 1-1085 Disconnect one connector (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 675
Figure 1-1086 Remove the lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 675
Figure 1-1087 Disconnect one connector and remove one spring (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 676
Figure 1-1088 Remove the sheet-metal plate (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 676
Figure 1-1089 Remove the lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 677
Figure 1-1090 Remove the controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 678
Figure 1-1091 Remove the rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 680
Figure 1-1092 Remove the stopper (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 681
Figure 1-1093 Remove the stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 681
Figure 1-1094 Remove four screws (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 682
Figure 1-1095 Remove the stock box (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 682
Figure 1-1096 Remove the stock box rails (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 683
Figure 1-1097 Remove the left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 684
Figure 1-1098 Remove the front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 685

Figure 1-1099 Remove the right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 686
Figure 1-1100 Remove the stopper (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 687
Figure 1-1101 Release the link arm (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 687
Figure 1-1102 Remove the right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 688
Figure 1-1103 Remove the right center cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 689
Figure 1-1104 Remove the screws (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 690
Figure 1-1105 Release two tabs (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 691
Figure 1-1106 Remove the right-door hinge cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 691
Figure 1-1107 Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 692
Figure 1-1108 Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 693
Figure 1-1109 Paper drive assembly gears (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 694
Figure 1-1110 Remove the tray rail (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 695
Figure 1-1111 Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 696
Figure 1-1112 Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 696
Figure 1-1113 Disconnect connectors and remove the screw (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 697
Figure 1-1114 Remove the paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 697
Figure 1-1115 Gears on the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 698
Figure 1-1116 Disconnect connector (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 699
Figure 1-1117 Remove the lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 699
Figure 1-1118 Disconnect one connector and remove one spring (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 700
Figure 1-1119 Remove the sheet-metal plate (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 701
Figure 1-1120 Remove the lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 701
Figure 1-1121 Disconnect three connectors (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 702
Figure 1-1122 Remove the controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 703
Figure 1-1123 Remove rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 705
Figure 1-1124 Remove the stopper (HCI optional paper feeder) 706
Figure 1-1125 Remove the right door (HCI optional paper feeder) 706
Figure 1-1126 Remove the right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 707
Figure 1-1127 Remove the screws (HCI optional paper feeder) 708
Figure 1-1128 Remove the right lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 708
Figure 1-1129 Remove the front upper cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 709
Figure 1-1130 Remove the screw (HCI optional paper feeder) 710
Figure 1-1131 Remove the right front cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 710
Figure 1-1132 Remove the left cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 711
Figure 1-1133 Remove the tray rail (HCI optional paper feeder) 712
Figure 1-1134 Remove the pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 713
Figure 1-1135 Disconnect connectors and remove the screw (HCI optional paper feeder) 713
Figure 1-1136 Remove the Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 714
Figure 1-1137 Paper drive assembly gears (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 715
Figure 1-1138 Remove the tray rail (HCI optional paper feeder) 716
Figure 1-1139 Remove the pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 717

Figure 1-1140 Disconnect connectors and remove the screw (HCI optional paper feeder) 717
Figure 1-1141 Remove the latch holder (HCI optional paper feeder) 718
Figure 1-1142 Remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 718
Figure 1-1143 Paper drive assembly gears (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 719
Figure 1-1144 Remove the tray rail (HCI optional paper feeder) 720
Figure 1-1145 Disconnect connectors and remove the screw (HCI optional paper feeder) 720
Figure 1-1146 Remove the Tray 5 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 721
Figure 1-1147 Remove the pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 722
Figure 1-1148 Gears on the pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 723
Figure 1-1149 Disconnect connector (HCI optional paper feeder) 724
Figure 1-1150 Remove the Tray 3 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 724
Figure 1-1151 Remove the lifter base assembly spring (HCI optional paper feeder) 725
Figure 1-1152 Disconnect connector (HCI optional paper feeder) 726
Figure 1-1153 Remove the Tray 4 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 726
Figure 1-1154 Remove the lifter base assembly spring (HCI optional paper feeder) 727
Figure 1-1155 Disconnect connectors (HCI optional paper feeder) 728
Figure 1-1156 Remove the Tray 3 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 728
Figure 1-1157 Disconnect connectors (HCI optional paper feeder) 729
Figure 1-1158 Remove the Tray 4 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 729
Figure 1-1159 Remove the Tray 5 lifter drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 730
Figure 1-1160 Remove the controller PCA (HCI optional paper feeder) 731
Figure 1-1161 Remove the front cover (stapling mailbox) 733
Figure 1-1162 Remove the lever assembly (stapling mailbox) 733
Figure 1-1163 Remove the rear cover (stapling mailbox) 734
Figure 1-1164 Remove one spring (stapling mailbox) 735
Figure 1-1165 Remove the bushing (stapling mailbox) 735
Figure 1-1166 Remove the bushing (stapling mailbox) 736
Figure 1-1167 Remove the handle assembly (stapling mailbox) 736
Figure 1-1168 Remove the top cover 737
Figure 1-1169 Remove two stoppers (stapling mailbox) 738
Figure 1-1170 Reinstall the two stoppers (stapling mailbox) 738
Figure 1-1171 Remove the output bin (stapling mailbox) 739
Figure 1-1172 Remove the PCA cover (stapling mailbox) 740
Figure 1-1173 Remove the output bin assembly cover (stapling mailbox) 741
Figure 1-1174 Remove the PCA cover (stapling mailbox) 742
Figure 1-1175 Release the wire harnesses (stapling mailbox) 742
Figure 1-1176 Remove the PCA (stapling mailbox) 743
Figure 1-1177 Remove the bushing (stapling mailbox) 744
Figure 1-1178 Remove the output bin sensor PCA (stapling mailbox) 744
Figure 1-1179 Remove the interlock assembly (stapling mailbox) 745
Figure 1-1180 Remove the stapler assembly (stapling mailbox) 745

Figure 1-1181 Disconnect two connectors (stapling mailbox) 746
Figure 1-1182 Remove the jogger assembly (stapling mailbox) 746
Figure 1-1183 Remove the output bin solenoid and sheet-metal plate (stapling mailbox) 747
Figure 1-1184 Remove the output bin solenoid (stapling mailbox) 748
Figure 1-1185 Remove the output-bin flapper assembly (stapling mailbox) 749
Figure 1-1186 Remove two screws (stapling mailbox) 750
Figure 1-1187 Remove the output bin assembly (stapling mailbox) 750
Figure 1-1188 Remove the PCA cover (stapling mailbox) 751
Figure 1-1189 Disconnect four connectors (stapling mailbox) 752
Figure 1-1190 Remove the rear-rail assembly (stapling mailbox) 752
Figure 1-1191 Remove the sheet-metal plate (stapling mailbox) 753
Figure 1-1192 Remove the gear stopper (stapling mailbox) 753
Figure 1-1193 Remove one gear and the belt (stapling mailbox) 754
Figure 1-1194 Release one spring and remove the swing gear (stapling mailbox) 754
Figure 1-1195 Remove one gear and remove the belt (stapling mailbox) 755
Figure 1-1196 Remove the sensor flag (stapling mailbox) 755
Figure 1-1197 Remove the guide (stapling mailbox) 756
Figure 1-1198 Remove one gear (stapling mailbox) 756
Figure 1-1199 Replace the guide (stapling mailbox) 757
Figure 1-1200 Remove the guide (stapling mailbox) 757
Figure 1-1201 Remove the stage top assembly and right door (stapling mailbox) 758
Figure 1-1202 Remove the stopper (stapling mailbox) 758
Figure 1-1203 Remove the right door and inlet guide (stapling mailbox) 759
Figure 1-1204 Remove the paper feed guide (stapling mailbox) 759
Figure 1-1205 Install the stage top assembly (stapling mailbox) 760
Figure 1-1206 Remove two belts and five gears (stapling mailbox) 761
Figure 1-1207 Pull out the shaft (stapling mailbox) 762
Figure 1-1208 Disconnect one connector (stapling mailbox) 762
Figure 1-1209 Remove the stage assembly (stapling mailbox) 763
Figure 1-1210 Remove the stamp assembly (stapling mailbox) 763
Figure 1-1211 Remove the PCA cover (stapling mailbox) 764
Figure 1-1212 Disconnect two connectors (stapling mailbox) 765
Figure 1-1213 Remove one spring (stapling mailbox) 765
Figure 1-1214 Remove the tray support (stapling mailbox) 766
Figure 1-1215 Remove the lifter lever (stapling mailbox) 766
Figure 1-1216 Remove the output bin 3 drive assembly (stapling mailbox) 767
Figure 2-1 Document feeder and scanner components 778
Figure 2-2 Document feeder components (1 of 2) 780
Figure 2-3 Document feeder components (2 of 2) 782
Figure 2-4 Scanner control board (SCB) 784
Figure 2-5 Control panel 786

Figure 2-6 Covers 788
Figure 2-7 Upper plate assembly 790
Figure 2-8 Internal components (1 of 5) 792
Figure 2-9 Internal components (2 of 5) 794
Figure 2-10 Internal components (3 of 5) 796
Figure 2-11 Internal components (4 of 5) 798
Figure 2-12 Internal components (5 of 5) 800
Figure 2-13 High-voltage power supply 802
Figure 2-14 500-sheet paper feeder covers 804
Figure 2-15 1x500-sheet paper feeder components 806
Figure 2-16 1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers 808
Figure 2-17 1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components 810
Figure 2-18 2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers 812
Figure 2-19 2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) 814
Figure 2-20 2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) 816
Figure 2-21 Stapling mailbox covers 818
Figure 2-22 Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) 820
Figure 2-23 Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) 822
Figure 2-24 Envelope feeder covers 824
Figure 2-25 Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) 826
Figure 2-26 Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) 828

1 Removal and replacement

- For additional service and support information
- Removal and replacement strategy
- Customer self-repair (CSR) assemblies
- Document feeder and image scanner assemblies
- Covers, doors, tray, and external panels (product base)
- Main assemblies
- Optional input and output accessories

For additional service and support information

HP service personnel, go to the Link Service Access Work Bench (SAW) at http://h41302.www4.hp.com/km/saw/home.do.

Channel partners, go to Link HP Channel Services Network (CNS) at https://h30125.www3.hp.com/hpcsn.

- Install and configure
- Product specifications
- Up to date control-panel message (CPMD) troubleshooting
- Solutions for product issues and emerging issues
- Remove and replace part instructions and videos
- Service advisories
- Warranty & regulatory information

Removal and replacement strategy

Considerations during removal and replacement

This chapter describes the removal and replacement of field-replaceable units (FRUs) only.

Replacing FRUs is generally the reverse of removal. Notes are included to provide directions for difficult or critical replacement procedures.

HP does not support repairing individual subassemblies or troubleshooting to the printed-circuit assembly (PCA) component level.

WARNING! Never operate or service the product with the protective cover removed from the laser scanner assembly. The reflected beam, although invisible, can cause damage the eyes.

The sheet-metal parts can have sharp edges. Be careful when handling sheet-metal parts.

Turn the product off, wait 5 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product. *If this warning is not followed*, severe injury and damage to the product can result. The power must be on for certain functional checks during troubleshooting. However, the power cord must be disconnected during parts removal. AC voltage is still present inside the product when the power switch is in the off position. The power cord must be *disconnected* before servicing the product.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Look for the ESD reminder when removing product parts. Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground *before* touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.

Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the product.

Do not bend or fold the flat flexible cables (FFCs) during removal or installation.

Incorrectly routed or loose wire harnesses might interfere with other internal components or assemblies and be damaged, pinched, or frayed. Make sure that wire harnesses are correctly routed and retained when installing assemblies.

Do not expose the toner cartridge (or toner cartridges), to strong light even for a short time.

IMPORTANT: When an assembly is removed that includes a rating plate or tag (or a product code label), make sure to transfer the plate or tag (or code label) to the replacement assembly.

NOTE: To install a self-tapping screw, first turn it counterclockwise to align it with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn it clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. If a self-tapping screw-hole becomes stripped, repair the screw-hole or replace the affected assembly.

Always take note of the length, diameter, color, type, and location of each removed screw. Make sure that screws are installed in the original location they were removed from during reinstallation.

During assembly removal and replacement, or if the product is moved, remove the toner cartridge or cartridges.

Toner is a non-poisonous substance composed of plastic and a small number of colored components. If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove. Toner easily breaks down vinyl materials—avoid letting toner contact with vinyl.

During assembly removal and replacement, or if the product is moved, remove the tray cassette or casettes.

TIP: For clarity, some figures in this chapter show assemblies removed that are not required to be removed to service the product (for example, the scanner and document feeder assemblies). The procedures in this manual are correct for this product.

Required tools

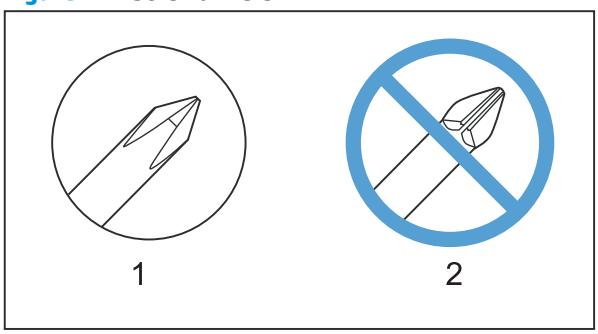
- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152-mm (6-in) shaft length

NOTE: For the best fit, use a JIS #2 Phillips screwdriver for the stapler/stacker.

- Small, flat-blade screwdriver
- Needle-nose pliers
- ESD strap (if one is available)
- Penlight

CAUTION: Always use a Phillips screwdriver (callout 1). Do not use a Pozidriv screwdriver (callout 2) or any motorized screwdriver. These can damage screws or screw threads.

Figure 1-1 Screwdrivers



Types of screws

WARNING! Make sure that assemblies are replaced with the correct screw type. Using the incorrect screw (for example, substituting a long screw for the correct shorter screw) can cause damage to the product or interfere with product operation. Do not intermix screws that are removed from one assembly with the screws that are removed from another assembly.

For a complete list of screw types and part numbers, see the Parts chapter.

Service approach

The product uses a field repair strategy. Defective parts are diagnosed and replaced at the Field Replaceable Unit (FRU) assembly level. Repair normally begins by using the product internal diagnostics and the following two-step process:

1. Isolate the problem to the major system (for example, the network or server, or the product).
2. Troubleshoot the problem by using the procedures in the troubleshooting chapter.

After locating a faulty part, the product can usually be repaired at the assembly level by replacing FRUs. Some mechanical assemblies might need to be repaired at the subassembly level. Hewlett-Packard Company does not support replacement of components on the printed circuit assembles.

The user replaces toner cartridges as they are depleted. Additional instructions about other user-replaceable parts are provided in this section.

The product tracks the amount of use on the customer-replaceable supplies by keeping a page count. The product prompts the user to replace certain items when a supply is depleted or a specific number of pages has been printed.

Swapping toner cartridges between products might cause a misrepresentation of supply life values and is not recommended.

Before performing service

⚠ **WARNING!** Turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product. *If this warning is not followed, severe injury and damage to the product can result.* The power must be on for certain functional checks during troubleshooting. However, the power supply should be disconnected during parts removal.

1. Remove all paper.
2. Place the product on an ESD mat (if available). If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touching the sheet-metal chassis to provide a staic ground *before* touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.
3. Remove the toner cartridge or toner cartridges.
4. Remove the trays.

After performing service

1. Reinstall the toner cartridge or toner cartridges.
2. Reinstall the trays.
3. Return all paper to the trays.
4. Plug in the power cable and turn on the product.
5. Perform print-quality tests by printing from a host computer, the scanner glass, and the document feeder.

Parts removal order

If needed, a list at the beginning of a removal procedure lists all of the assemblies that must be removed to reach the target assembly. Use these lists to determine which parts must be removed before removing other parts.

For procedures and/or steps that require identifying the right, left, or rear side of the product, face the front of the product for correct orientation.

Customer self-repair (CSR) assemblies

- Toner cartridge
- Staple cartridge (for models with a stapler/stacker)
- Backside background selector
- Formatter
- Hard-disk drive (HDD) or solid-state memory (SSM)
- Memory DIMM
- Fax printed-circuit assembly (PCA)
- Output bin and bin base assembly
- Duplex accessory
- Fuser-entrance guide
- Fuser
- Control-panel assembly
- Keyboard assembly (M630z only)
- Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers
- Tray 2-5 pickup and feed rollers
- Transfer roller
- Document-feeder maintnenance kit
- Document feeder white backing

Toner cartridge

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the toner cartridge
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement toner cartridge
- Step 3: Install the toner cartridge
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides instructions about removing and replacing toner cartridge.

Before servicing

To order a replacement assembly, use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product. To order the kit, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Toner cartridge kit part numbers	
CF281X High-capacity replacement toner cartridge	Toner cartridge kit with instruction guide
CF281A Standard-capacity replacement toner cartridge	

Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

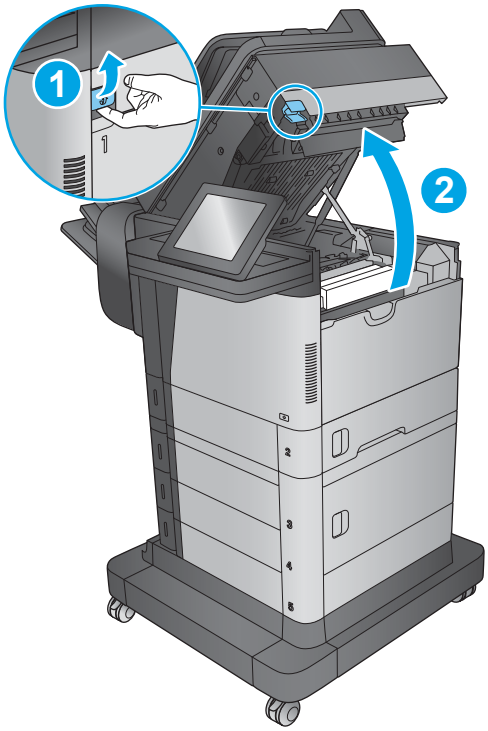
⚠ **CAUTION:** To prevent damage to the toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the product for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.

Step 1: Remove the toner cartridge

1. Pull the top cover release lever (callout 1) to open the top cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-2 Open the top cover

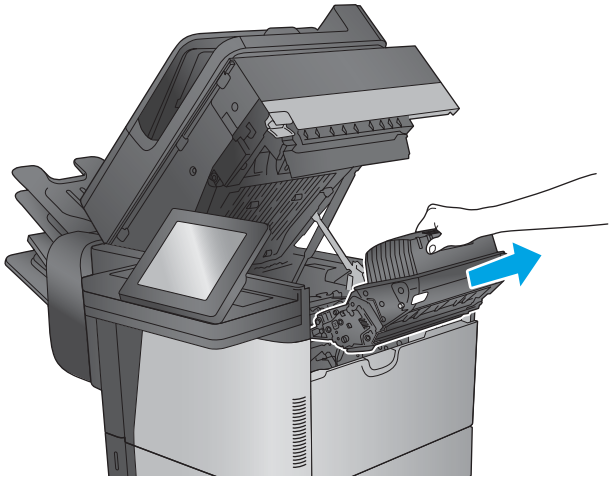


2. Grasp the handle of the used toner cartridge and pull out to remove it.

Reinstallation tip: Align the toner cartridge with its slot, and then insert the toner cartridge into the product.

Close the top cover.

Figure 1-3 Remove the toner cartridge



Step 2: Unpack the replacement toner cartridge

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

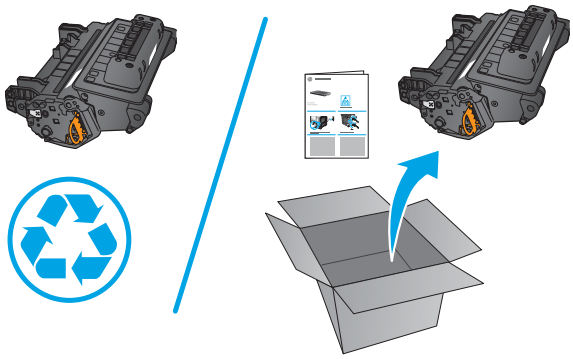
www.Product return and recycling.

CAUTION: To prevent damage to the replacement toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the product for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

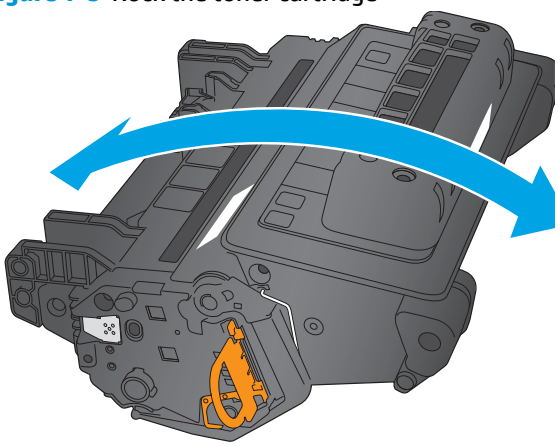
Figure 1-4 Recycle and unpack



Step 3: Install the toner cartridge

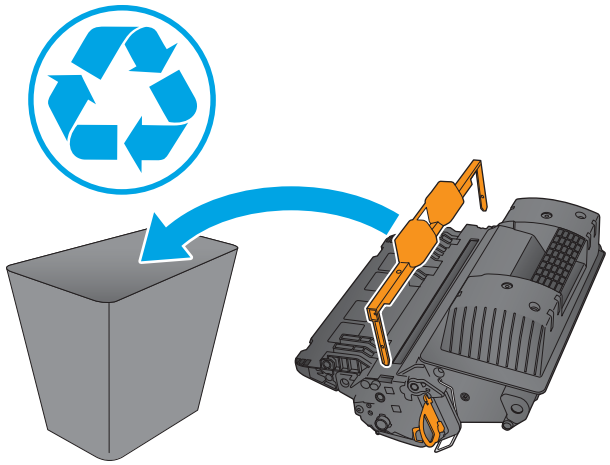
1. Hold both ends of the toner cartridge and rock it 5-6 times.

Figure 1-5 Rock the toner cartridge



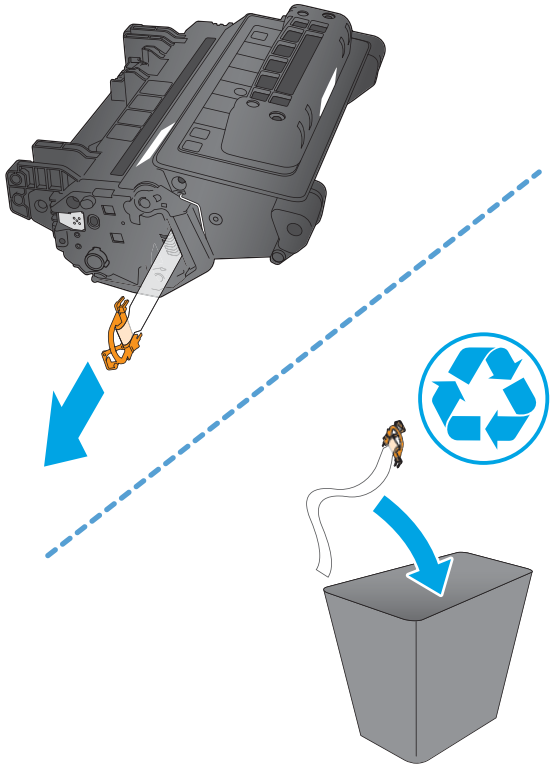
2. Remove the protective shield from the toner cartridge.

Figure 1-6 Remove the protective shield



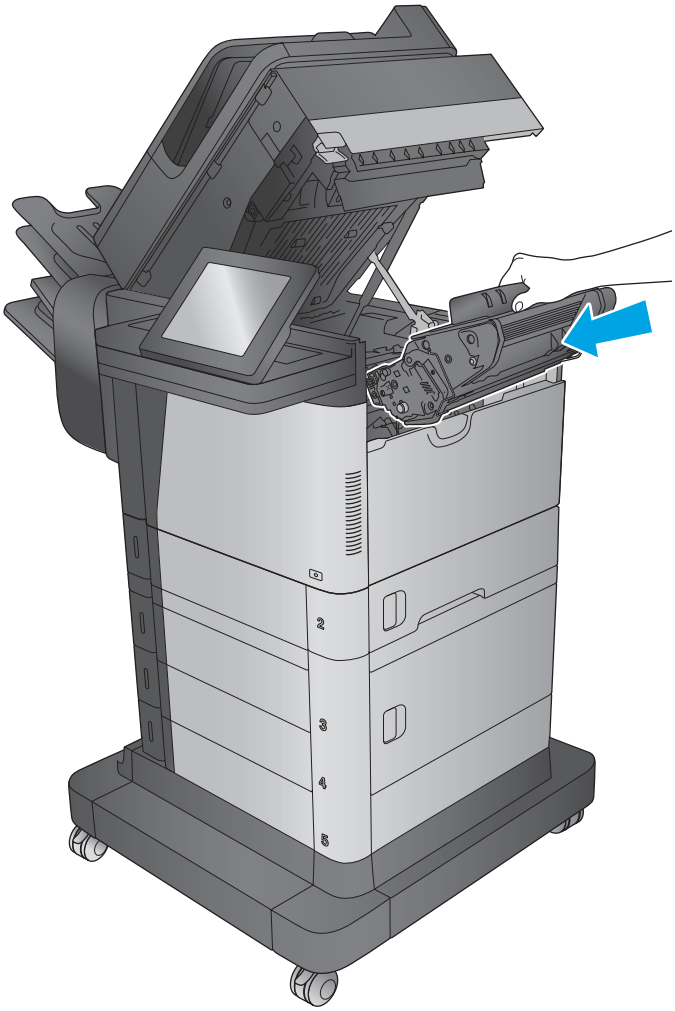
3. Pull on the orange tab to remove the toner sealing tape. Completely remove the sealing tape from the cartridge.

Figure 1-7 Remove the sealing tape



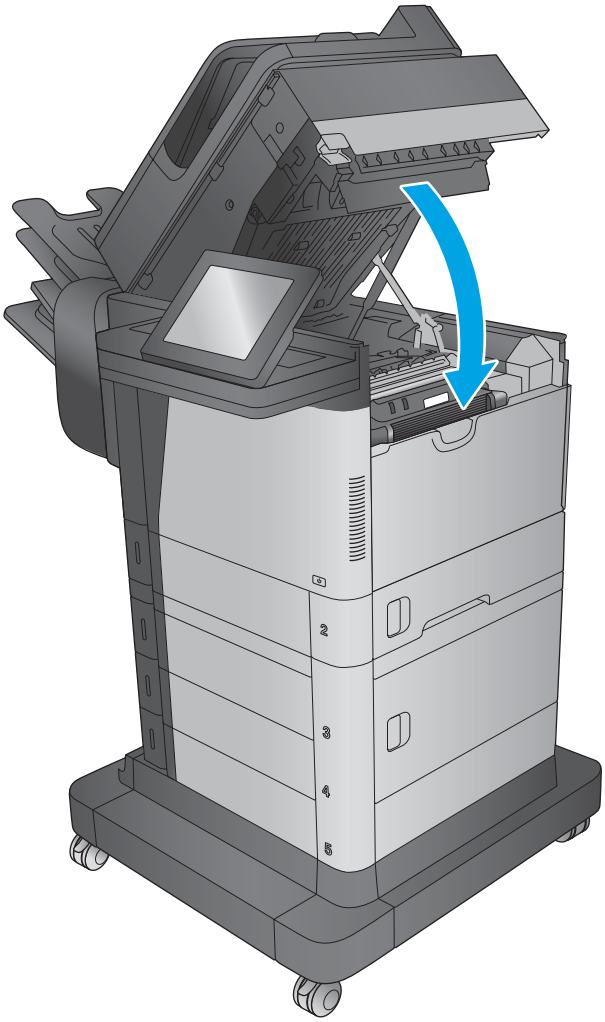
4. Align the toner cartridge with its slot, and then insert the toner cartridge into the product.

Figure 1-8 Install the toner cartridge



5. Close the top cover.

Figure 1-9 Close the top cover



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Staple cartridge (for models with a stapler/stacker)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the staple cartridge
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement staple cartridge
- Step 3: Install the staple cartridge
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides instructions about removing and replacing the staple cartridge.

Before servicing

To order a replacement assembly, use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product. To order the kit, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Staple cartridge kit part numbers	
C8091A	HP staple cartridge refill kit with instruction guide

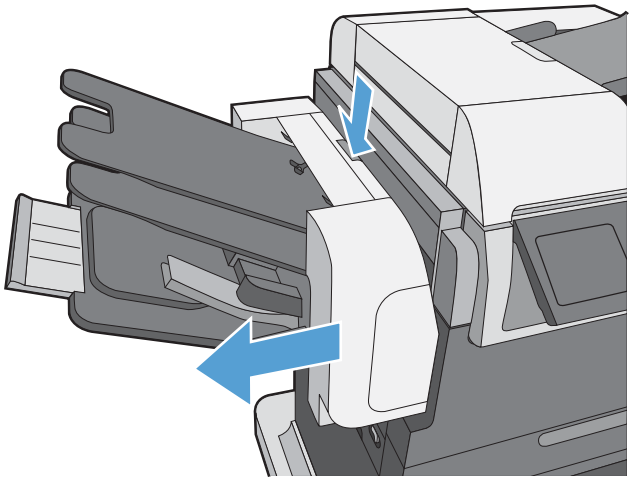
Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

Step 1: Remove the staple cartridge

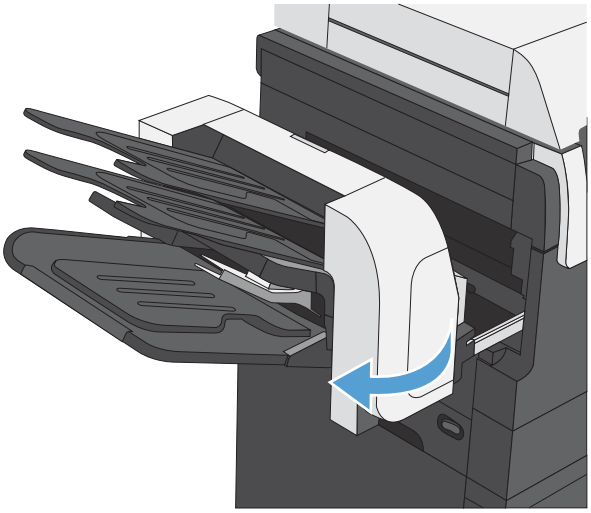
1. Press the release latch, and then slide the stapler/stacker away from the product.

Figure 1-10 Slide the stapler/stacker away from the product



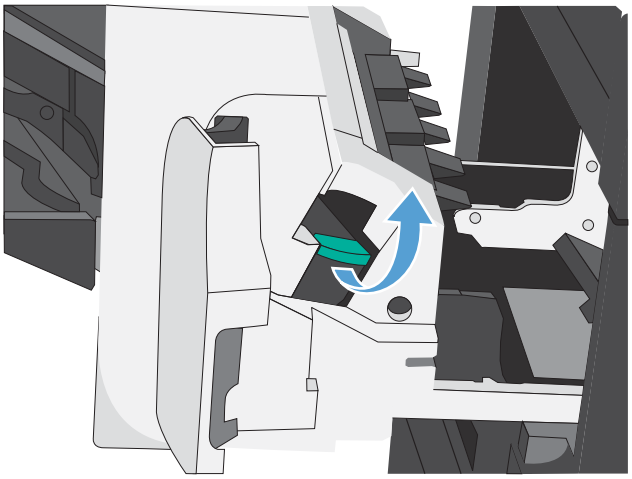
2. Open the staple-cartridge door.

Figure 1-11 Open the staple-cartridge door



3. Lift up on the staple-cartridge green handle, and then pull the cartridge out of the stapler to remove it.

Figure 1-12 Remove the staple cartridge



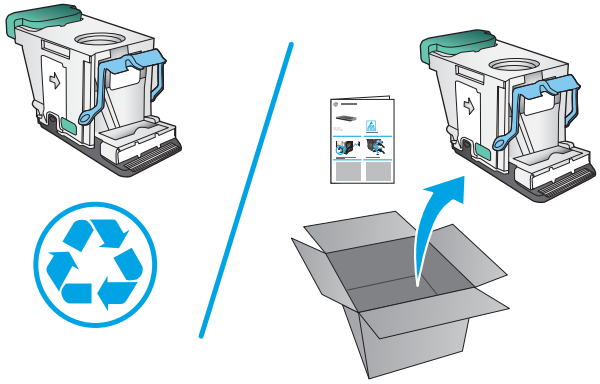
Step 2: Unpack the replacement staple cartridge

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

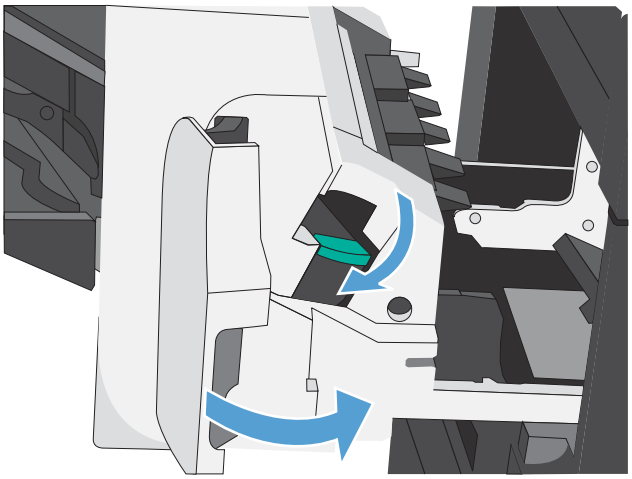
Figure 1-13 Recycle and unpack



Step 3: Install the staple cartridge

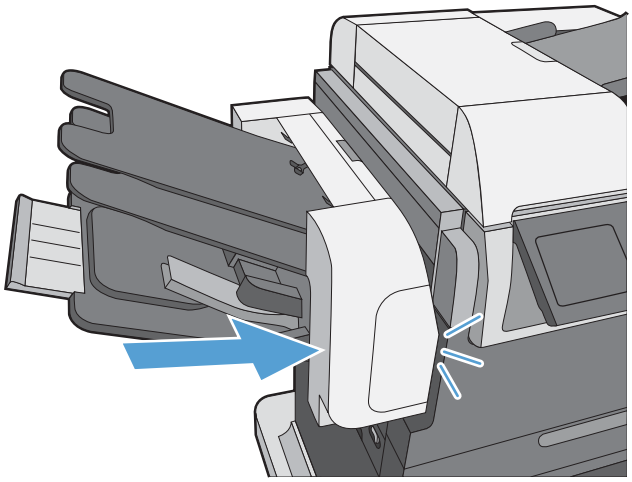
1. Insert the staple cartridge, push down on it to snap it into place, and then close the staple-cartridge door.

Figure 1-14 Install the cartridge and close the stapler door



2. Slide the stapler/stacker toward the product until it latches in place.

Figure 1-15 Slide the stapler back to the product



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Backside background selector

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the backside background selector
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement backside background selector
- Step 3: Install the backside background selector
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides instructions about removing and replacing the backside background selector.

Before servicing

To order a replacement assembly, use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product. To order the kit, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Staple cartridge kit part numbers	
5851-5022	Backside background selector kit with instruction guide

Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

Step 1: Remove the backside background selector

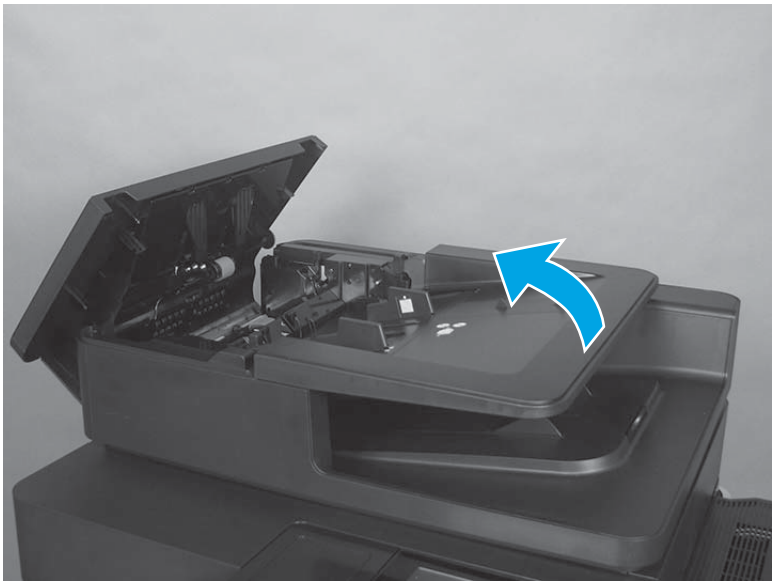
1. Open the document-feeder door.

Figure 1-16 Open the document-feeder door



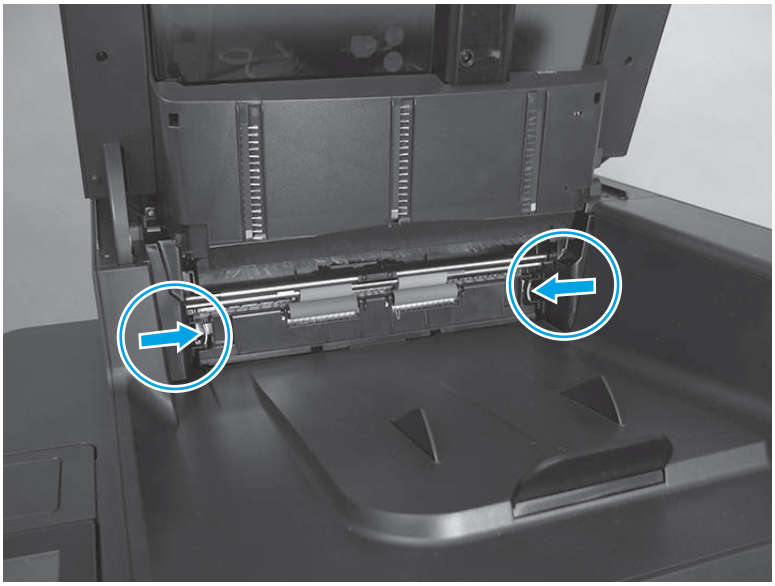
2. Rotate the input tray up.

Figure 1-17 Rotate the input tray up



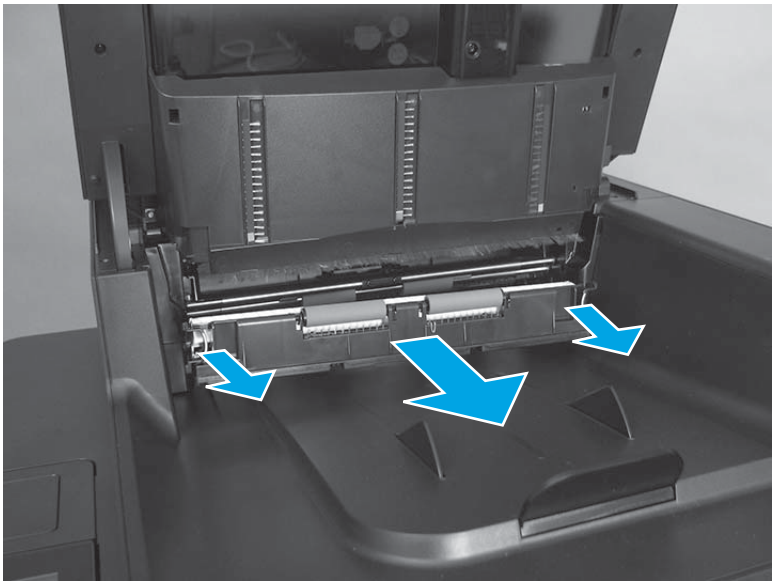
3. Release two tabs.

Figure 1-18 Release two tabs



4. Slide the backside background selector away from the product to remove it.

Figure 1-19 Remove the backside background selector



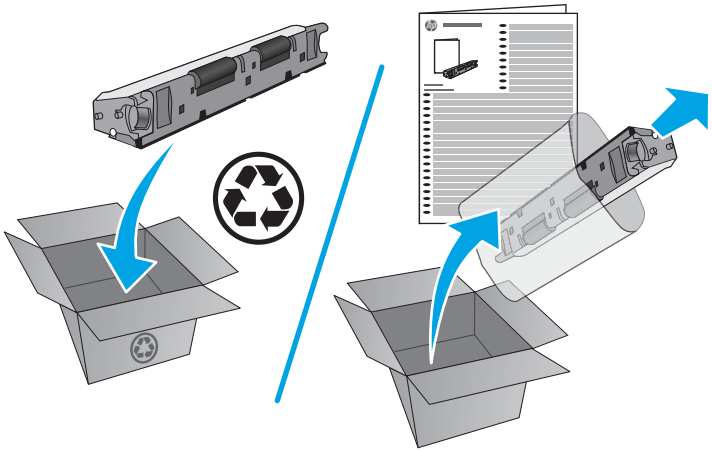
Step 2: Unpack the replacement backside background selector

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

Figure 1-20 Recycle and unpack

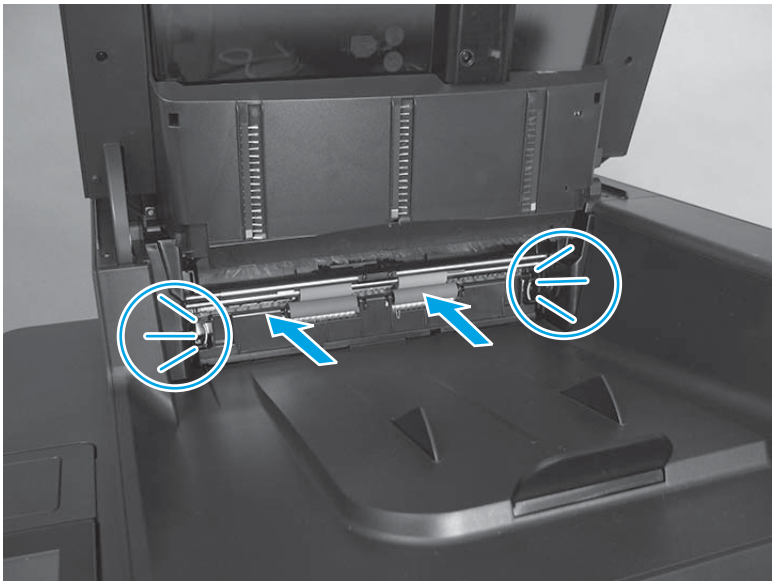


Step 3: Install the backside background selector

1. Push in on the background selector until the tabs snap into place.

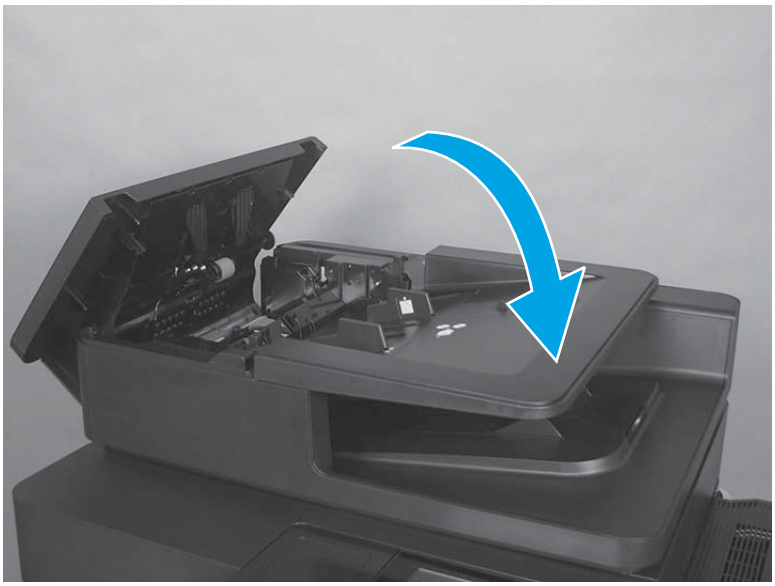
Reinstallation tip: If jams occur after the assembly is installed, make sure that the assembly is fully seated.

Figure 1-21 Install the background selector



2. Rotate the input tray down.

Figure 1-22 Rotate the input tray down



3. Close the document-feeder door.

Figure 1-23 Close the document-feeder door



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Formatter

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter
- Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD) or solid-state memory (SSM)
- Step 3: Remove the DIMM
- Step 4: Remove the fax PCA
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement formatter
- Step 6: Install the HDD or SSM
- Step 7: Install the DIMM
- Step 8: Install the fax PCA
- Step 9: Install the formatter
- Step 10: Test the installation
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the formatter.

To replace the formatter, remove the hard-disk drive (HDD) or solid-state memory (SSM) storage device, the DIMM, and the fax printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (if installed) from the defective formatter and then install them on the replacement formatter.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Formatter kit part numbers	
B3G85-67901	Formatter kit with instruction guide
B3G85-67902 (China/India)	Formatter kit with instruction guide (China/India only)

Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

CAUTION: This product contains components that can be damaged by electrostatic discharge (ESD). To reduce the chance of ESD damage, place the product on an ESD mat (if available), and wear an ESD wrist strap connected to a grounded surface. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis before touching an ESD-sensitive part.

IMPORTANT: Do not replace the formatter, DC controller, and hard-disk drive/solid-state memory simultaneously during a single product servicing. Doing so might cause the product to become unstable or inoperable.

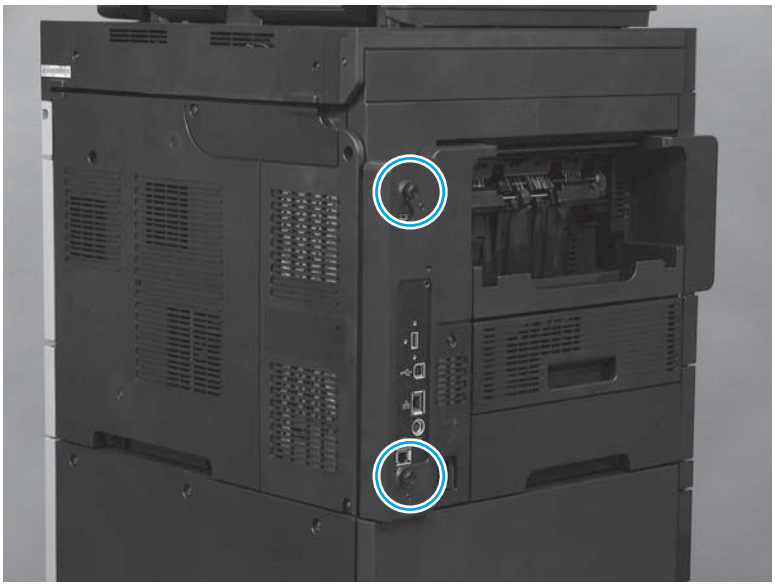
Step 1: Remove the formatter

1. Do the following steps:
   a. Turn off the product.
   b. Disconnect the power cable.

   WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

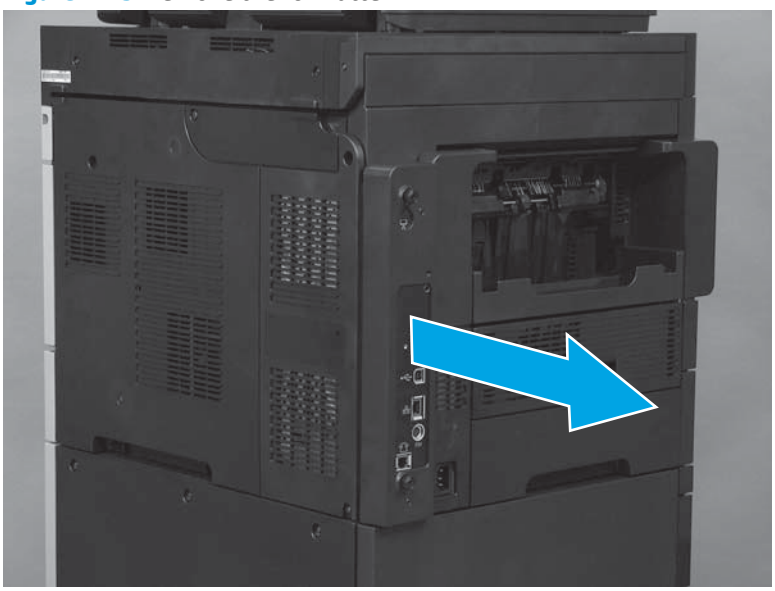
   c. Disconnect all cables and accessories attached to the formatter.
2. Loosen the two thumbscrews on the formatter.

Figure 1-24 Remove the formatter



3. Slide the formatter straight out of the product to remove it.

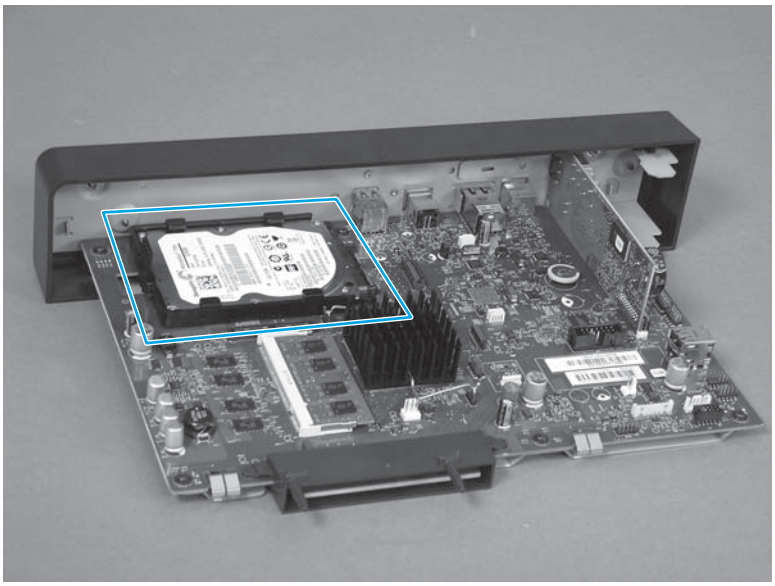
Figure 1-25 Remove the formatter



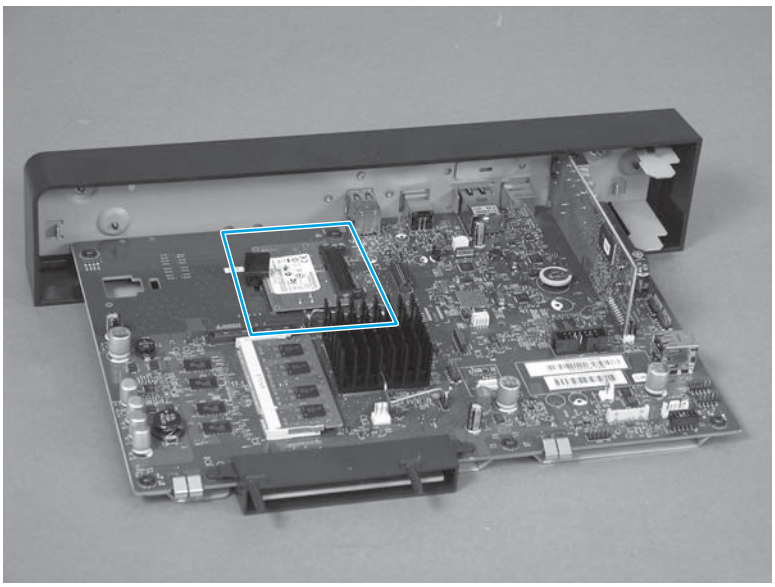
Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD) or solid-state memory (SSM)

Identify the component type

- Hard-disk drive (HDD). See Remove the HDD on page 26.



- Solid-state memory (SSM). See Remove the SSM on page 27.

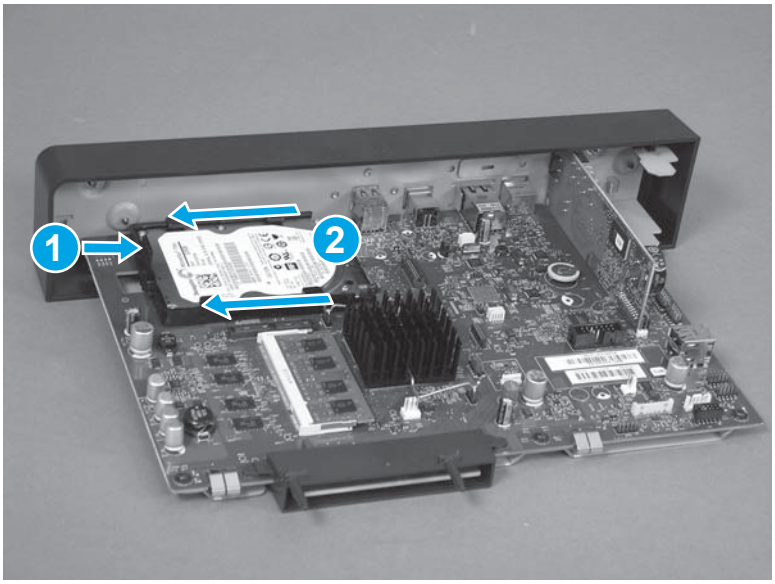


Remove the HDD

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

- Push and hold the locking lever (callout 1) toward the HDD to release it, and then slide the black plastic HDD case in the direction of the arrows (callout 2) to remove the HDD.

Figure 1-26 Remove the HDD

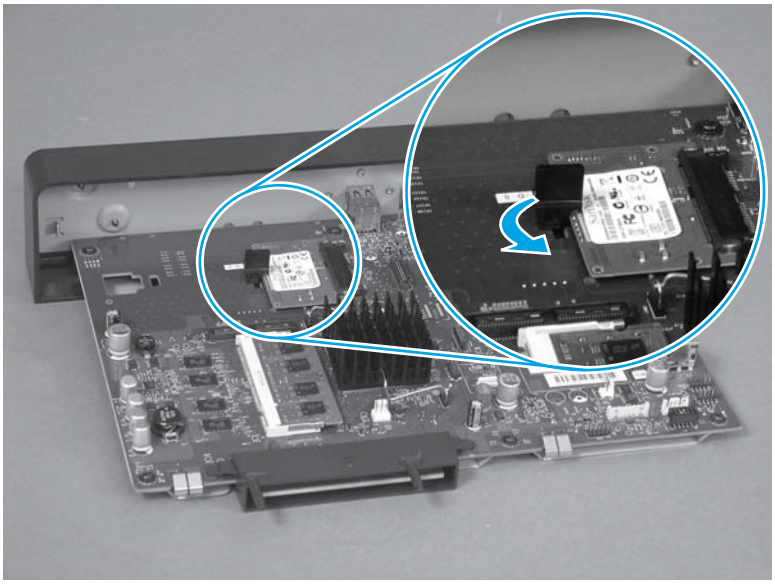


Remove the SSM

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

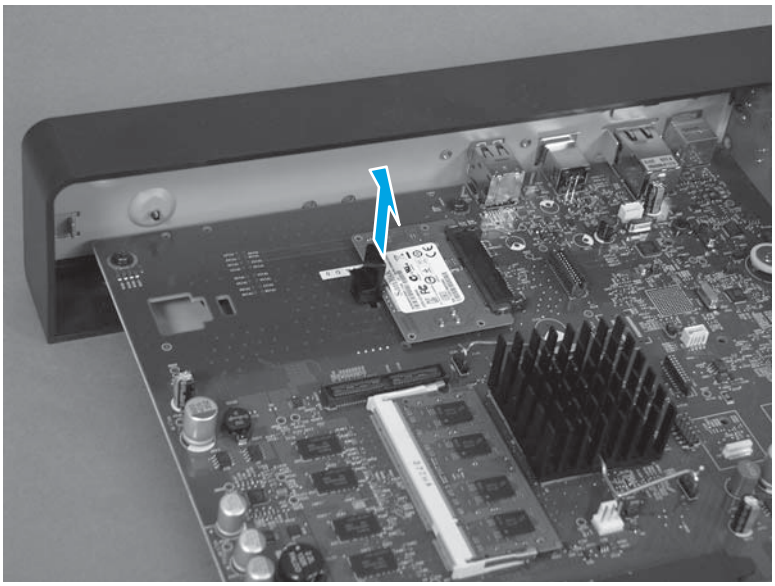
1. Rotate the retainer clip to release it.

Figure 1-27 Release the clip



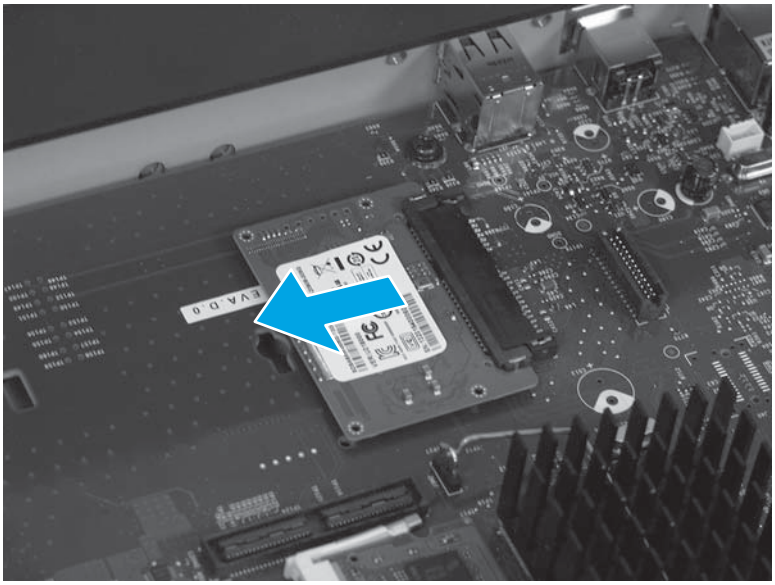
2. Lift the retainer clip up to remove it.

Figure 1-28 Remove the clip



3. Slide the SSM away from the connector to remove it.

Figure 1-29 Remove the SSM

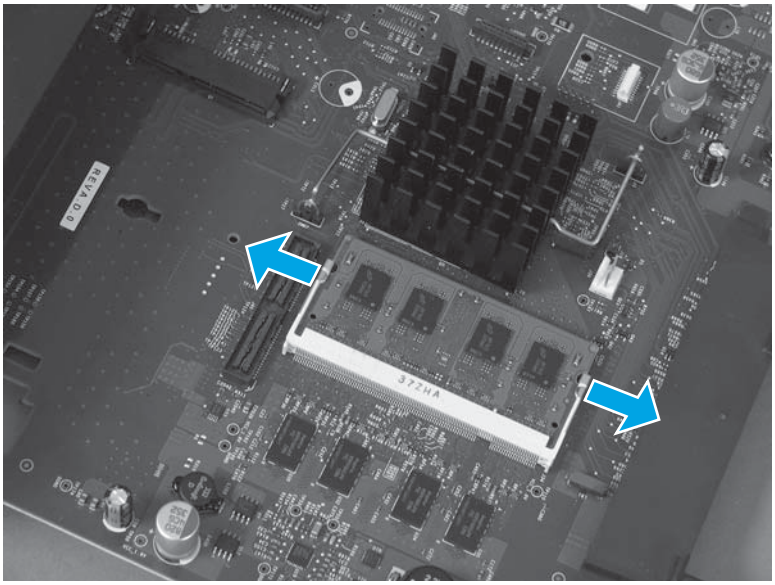


Step 3: Remove the DIMM

⚠ **CAUTION:** ESD sensitive assembly.

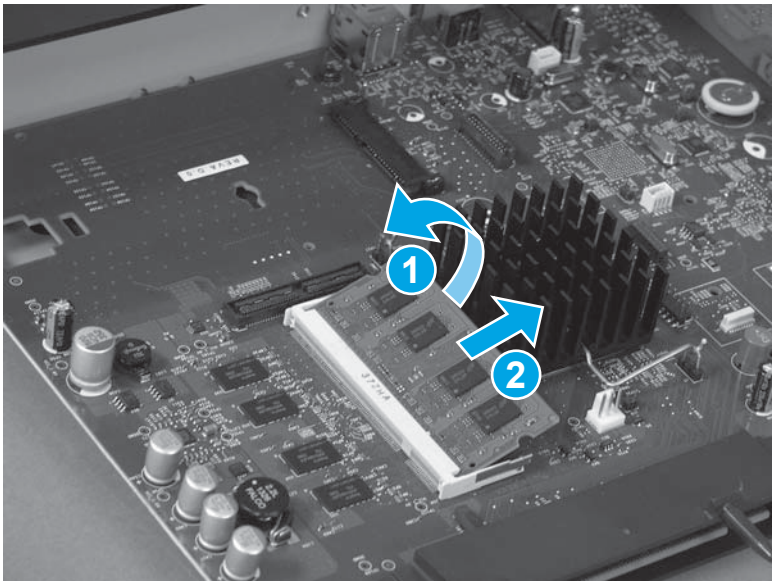
1. Release two clips.

Figure 1-30 Release two clips



2. Rotate the DIMM upward (callout 1), and then remove it (callout 2).

Figure 1-31 Remove the DIMM



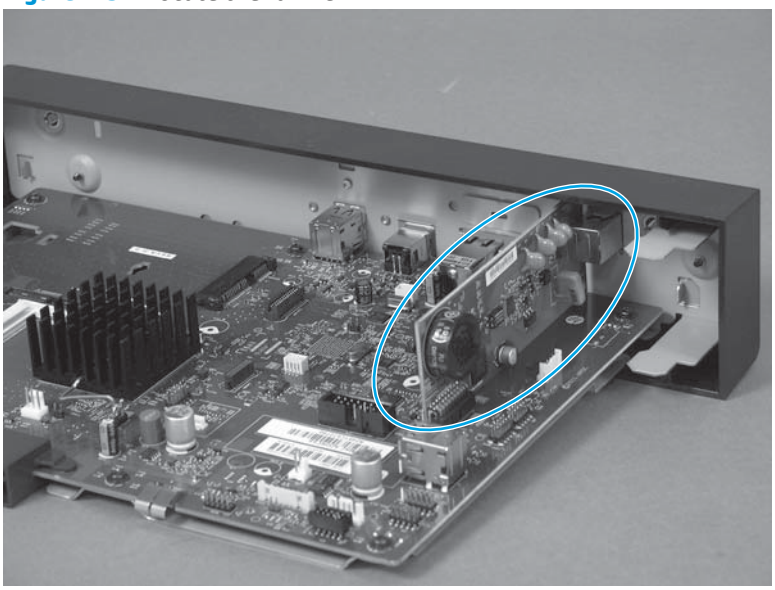
Step 4: Remove the fax PCA

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

NOTE: If your product does not have a fax PCA, go to Step 5: Unpack the replacement formatter on page 30.

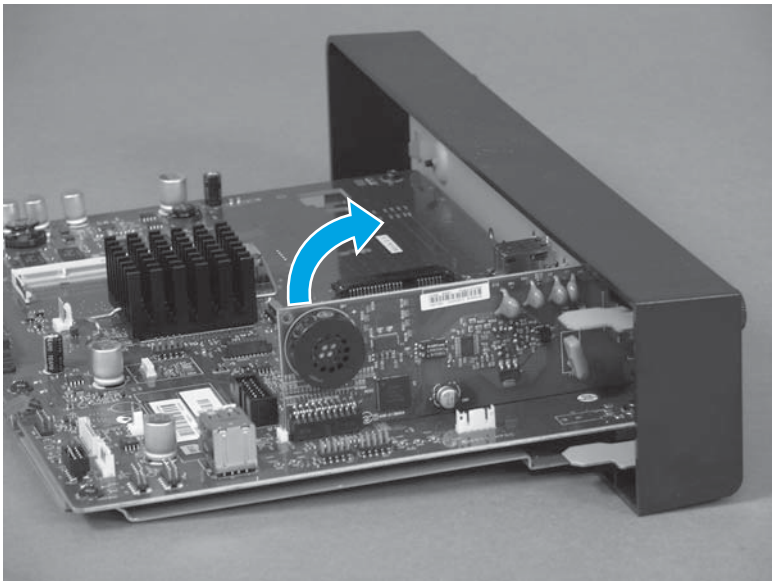
1. Locate the fax PCA that is installed on the formatter.

Figure 1-32 Locate the fax PCA



2. Rotate the connector end (away from the phone port) of the fax PCA up and away from the formatter to release it.

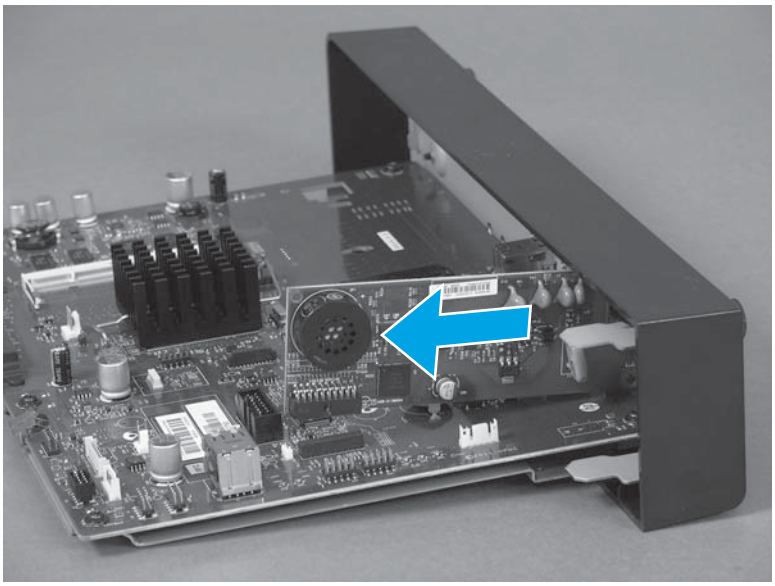
Figure 1-33 Release the connector end of the fax PCA



3. Carefully remove the fax PCA from the formatter bracket.

NOTE: Set this part aside. It will be installed on the replacement formatter.

Figure 1-34 Remove the fax PCA



Step 5: Unpack the replacement formatter

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

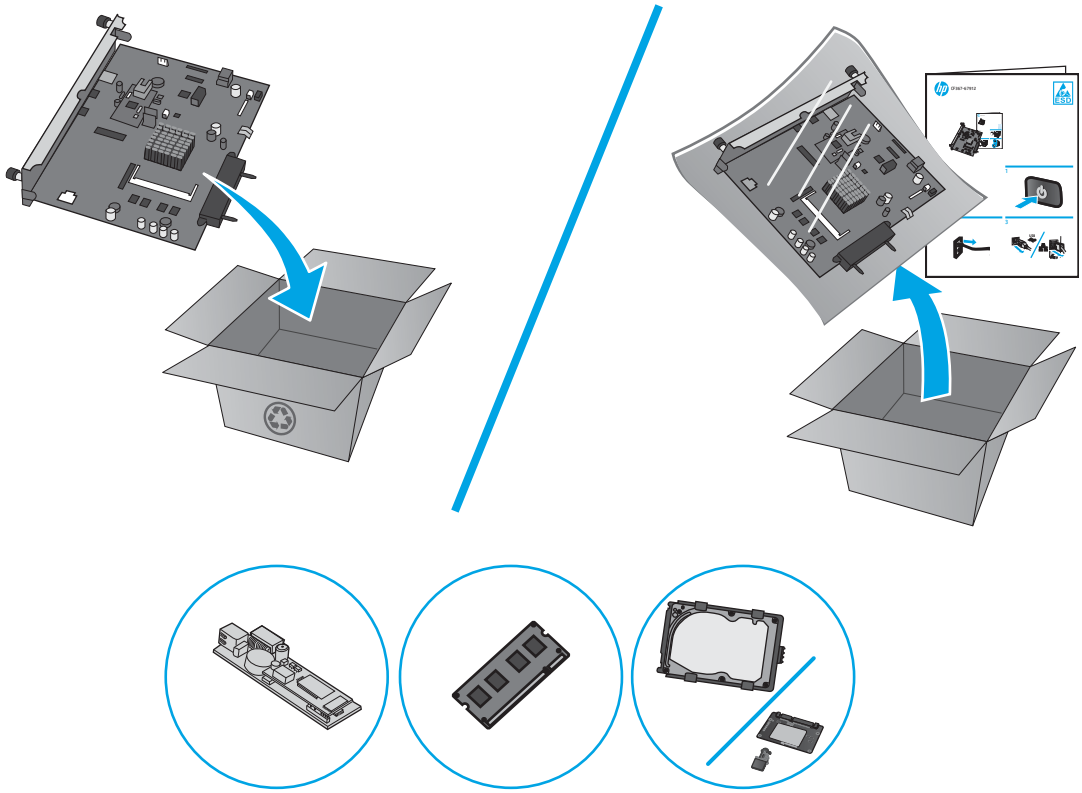
www.Product return and recycling.

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

Do not dispose of the HDD or SSM, DIMM, or fax PCA (fax models only) that were removed earlier.

Figure 1-35 Recycle and unpack



Step 6: Install the HDD or SSM

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

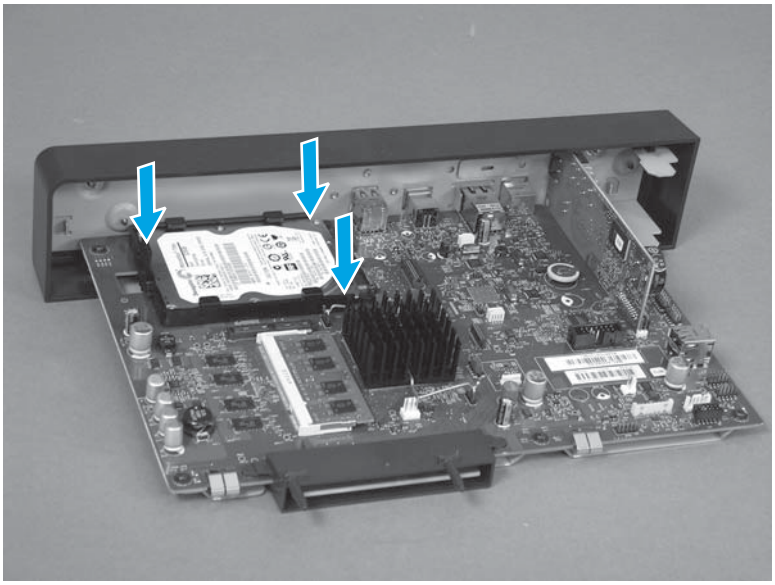
1. To install the HDD, do the following steps:

   a. If foam pads are installed on the backside of the HDD, press down on the connector-side corners of the HDD and on the locking lever to compress the foam.

   CAUTION: Do not press down on the center of the HDD.

   NOTE: If there are no foam pads installed on the backside of the HDD, skip this step.

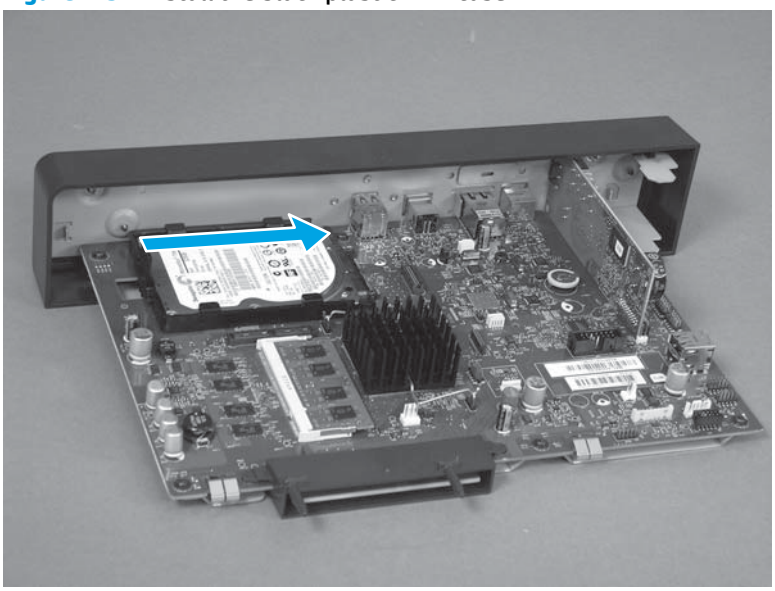
Figure 1-36 Press down on the HDD



b. Slide the HDD into the connector on the formatter.

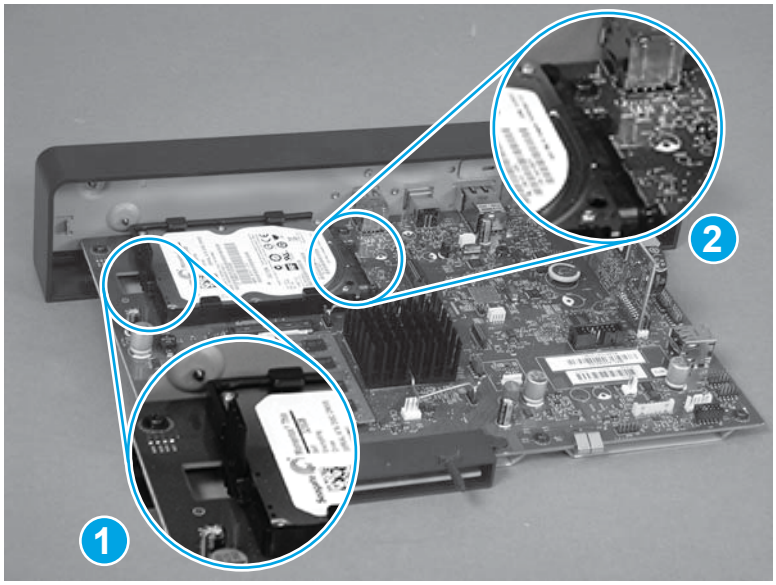
NOTE: If foam pads are installed on the backside of the HDD, make sure that they are compressed enough to allow the HDD to easily slide into the connector, and that the locking lever fits into the slot on the formatter.

Figure 1-37 Install the black plastic HDD case



c. When correctly installed, the HDD locking lever (callout 1) and the connector (callout 2) are securely fastened. Make sure that locking lever prevents the HDD from moving, and that the HDD is fully seated in the connector.

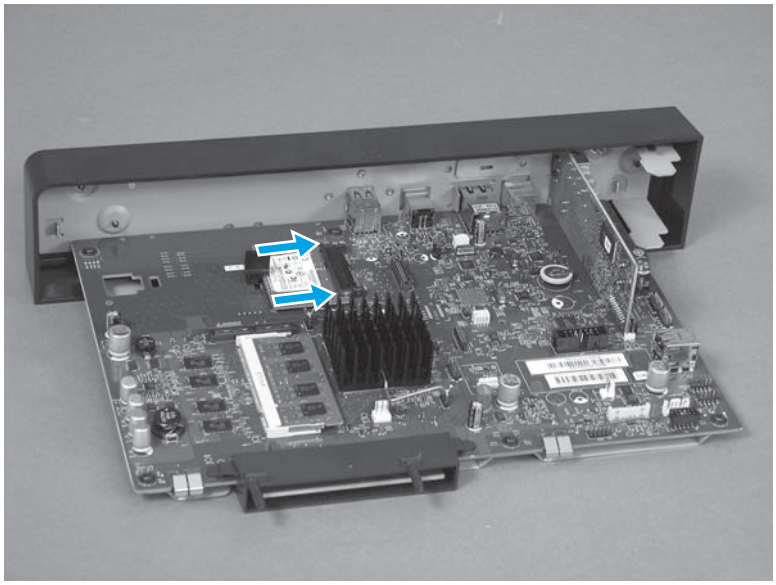
Figure 1-38 Make sure that the HDD is flat against the formatter



2. To install the SSM, do the following steps:

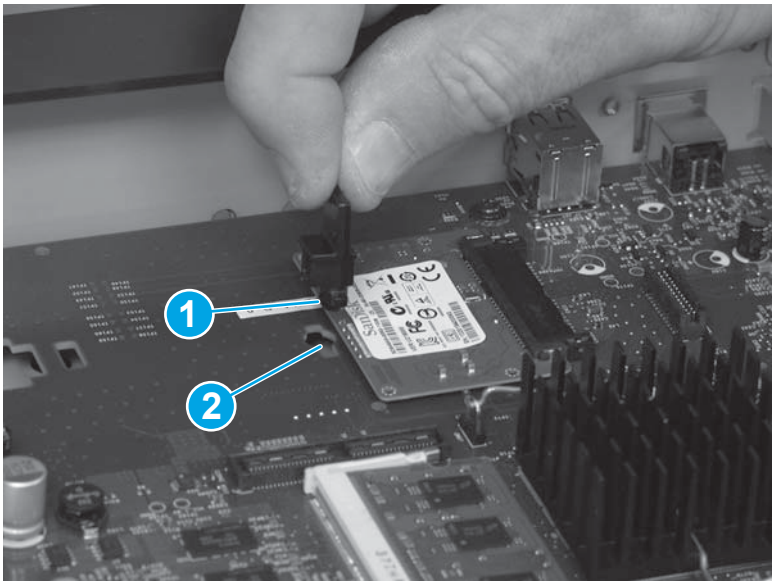
a. Slide the SSM in the direction of the arrow to install it.

Figure 1-39 Install the SSM



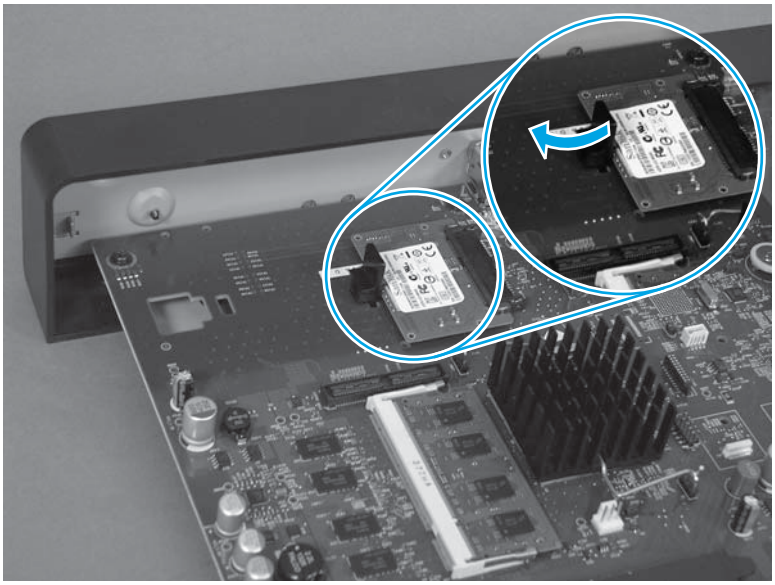
b. Position the retainer clip (callout 1) in the slot (callout 2).

Figure 1-40 Install the retainer clip



c. Rotate the retainer clip to lock it.

Figure 1-41 Rotate the retainer



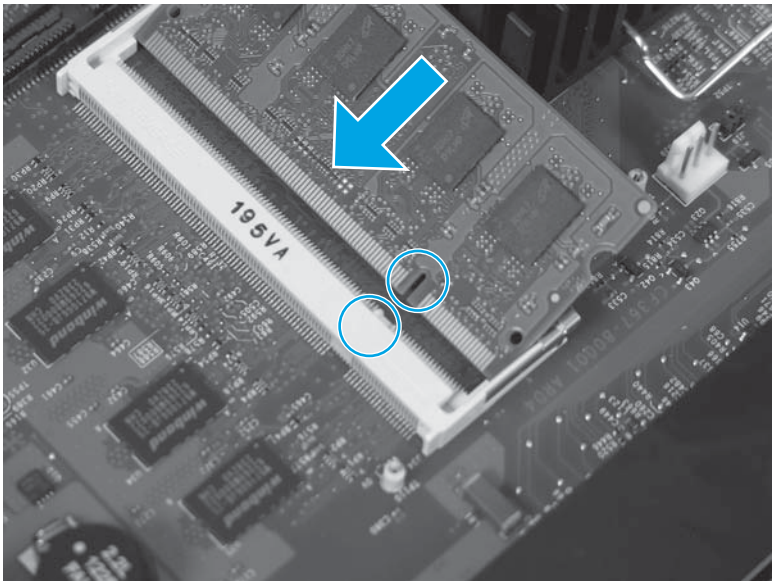
Step 7: Install the DIMM

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Carefully insert the DIMM at an angle into the holder on the formatter.

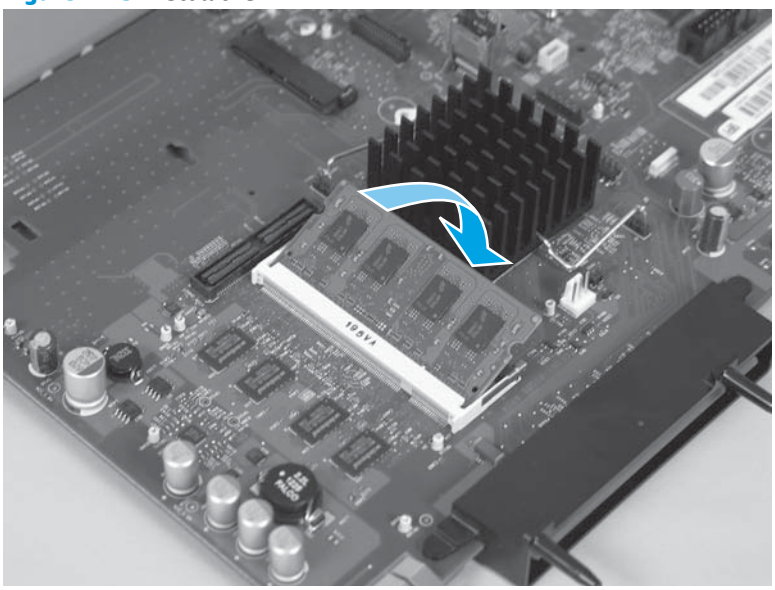
NOTE: Position the DIMM so that the slot in the DIMM is aligned with the tab in the holder.

Figure 1-42 Insert the DIMM into the holder



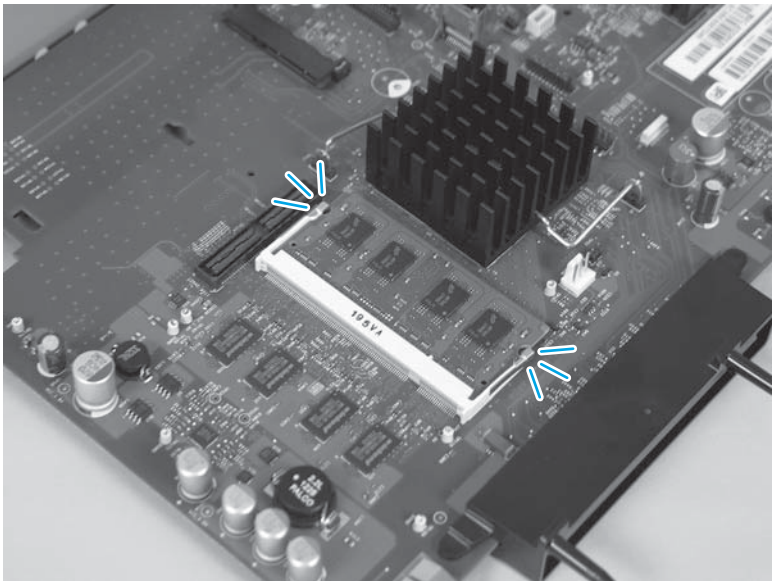
2. Rotate the DIMM in the direction of the arrow to install it.

Figure 1-43 Install the DIMM



3. When the DIMM is installed make sure that the retaining clips on the right and left sides of the DIMM snap into place.

Figure 1-44 Make sure that the retaining clips snap into place



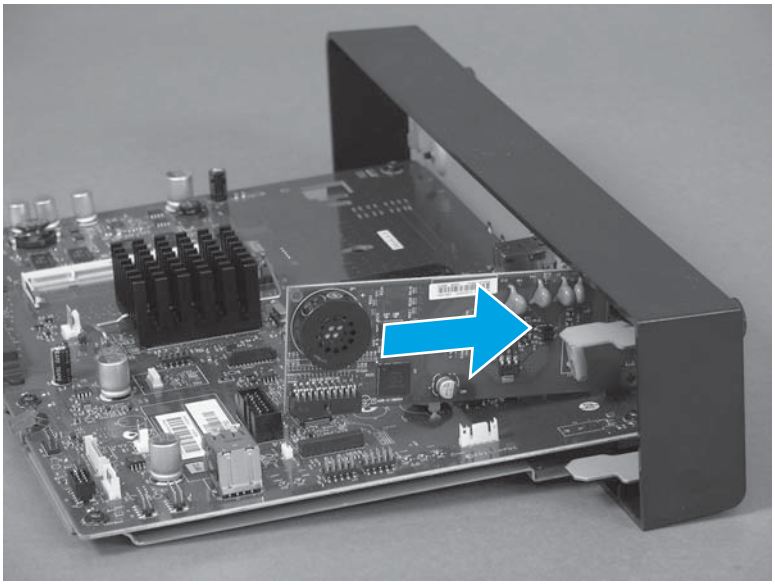
Step 8: Install the fax PCA

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

NOTE: If your product does not have a fax PCA, go to Step 9: Install the formatter on page 37.

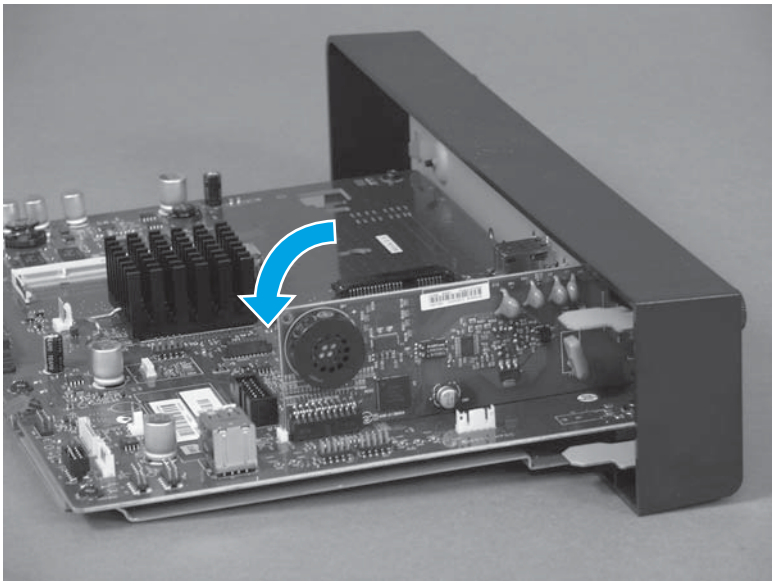
1. Insert the fax port of the fax PCA into the holder on the formatter tray.

Figure 1-45 Insert the fax port into the holder



2. Rotate the connector end of the fax PCA in the direction of the arrow to install it.

Figure 1-46 Install the fax PCA

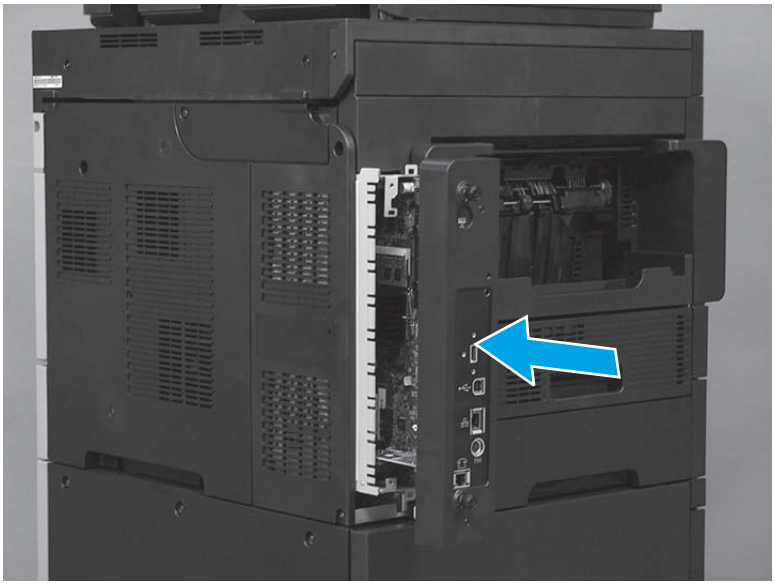


Step 9: Install the formatter

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

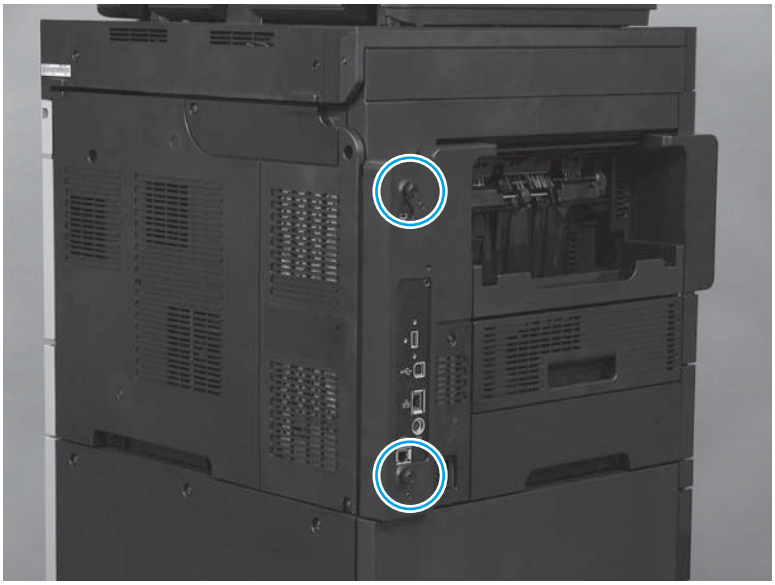
1. Align the formatter with the guides at the top and bottom of the formatter cage and push the formatter into the slot until it is fully seated.

Figure 1-47 Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot



2. Finger-tighten the two thumbscrews.

Figure 1-48 Tighten the two thumbscrews



Step 10: Test the installation

1. Do the following steps:

   a. Reconnect all cables to the formatter.

   b. Plug in the power cord.

2. Turn on the product.

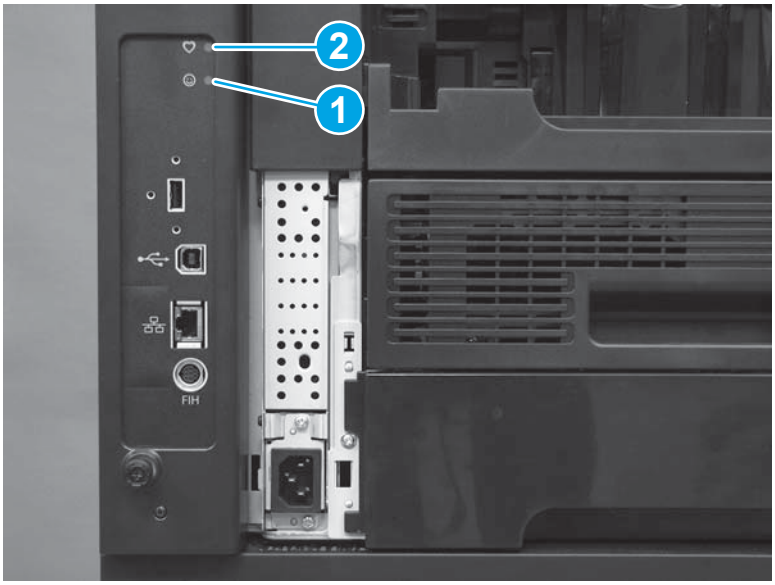
TIP: If the product does not initialize when the power is turned on, make sure that the memory DIMM is correctly installed.

To verify that the formatter is correctly installed, observe the following functions of the LEDs on the formatter:

- The heartbeat LED (callout 1) illuminates if the formatter is functioning correctly.
  - While the product is initializing, the heartbeat LED illuminates solid red for about one second, and then turns solid green for about twenty seconds.
  - After the initialization sequence is complete, the heartbeat LED blinks continuously if the printer is functioning correctly.
- The connectivity LED (callout 2) indicates that the formatter is completely seated. It illuminates green when the product power is turned on and stays green if the formatter is properly seated.

If the LEDs do not correctly function, turn the product power off, remove the formatter, and then reinstall it (make sure that the formatter is fully seated before tightening the thumbscrews).

Figure 1-49 Verify that the formatter is functioning



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Hard-disk drive (HDD) or solid-state memory (SSM)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter
- Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD) or solid-state memory (SSM)
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement HDD or SSM
- Step 4: Install the HDD or SSM
- Step 5: Install the formatter
- Step 6: Test the installation
- Step 7: Reinstall the product firmware
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the HDD or SSM.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Formatter kit part numbers	
B3G85-67903	HDD kit with instruction guide
B3G84-67907	SSM kit with instruction guide

Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

CAUTION: This product contains components that can be damaged by electrostatic discharge (ESD). To reduce the chance of ESD damage, place the product on an ESD mat (if available), and wear an ESD wrist strap connected to a grounded surface. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis before touching an ESD-sensitive part.

IMPORTANT: Do not replace the formatter, DC controller, and hard-disk drive/solid-state memory simultaneously during a single product servicing. Doing so might cause the product to become unstable or inoperable.

Step 1: Remove the formatter

1. Do the following steps:

a. Turn off the product.

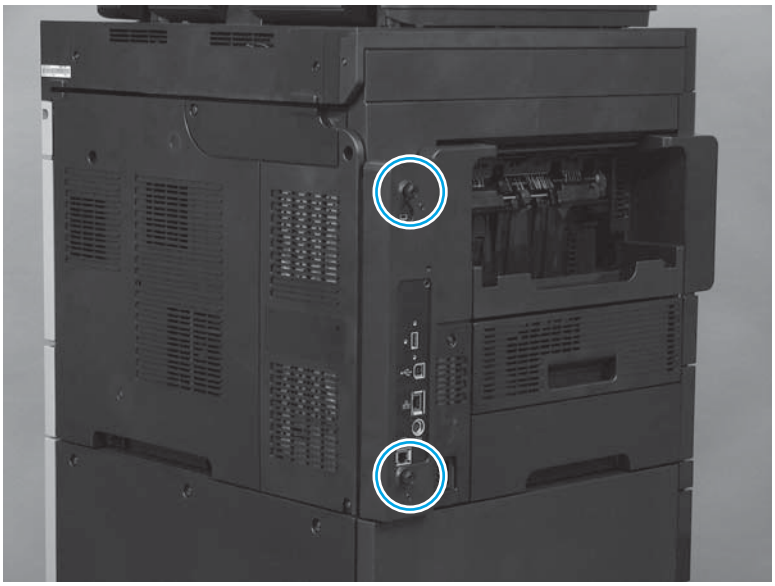
b. Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

c. Disconnect all cables and accessories attached to the formatter.

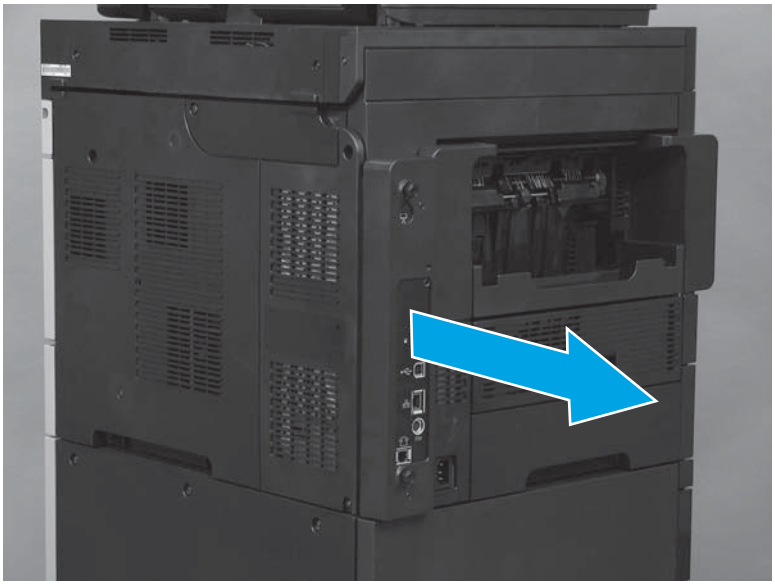
2. Loosen the two thumbscrews on the formatter.

Figure 1-50 Remove the formatter



3. Slide the formatter straight out of the product to remove it.

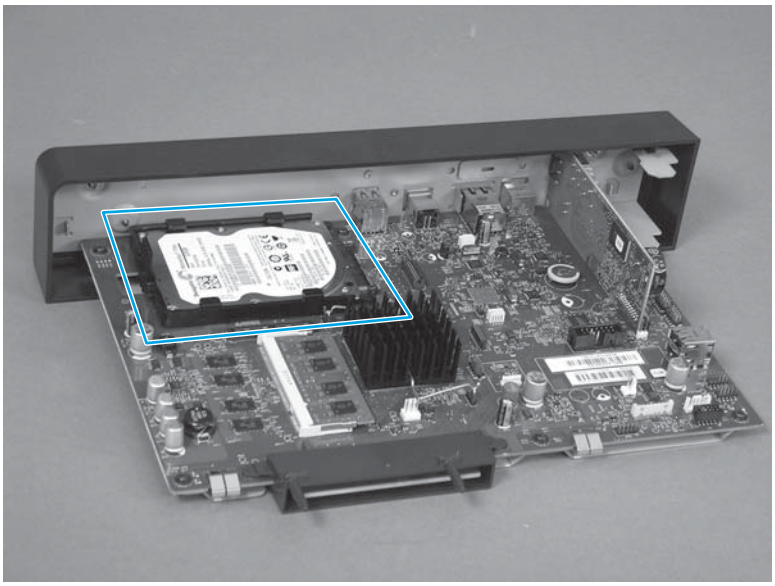
Figure 1-51 Remove the formatter



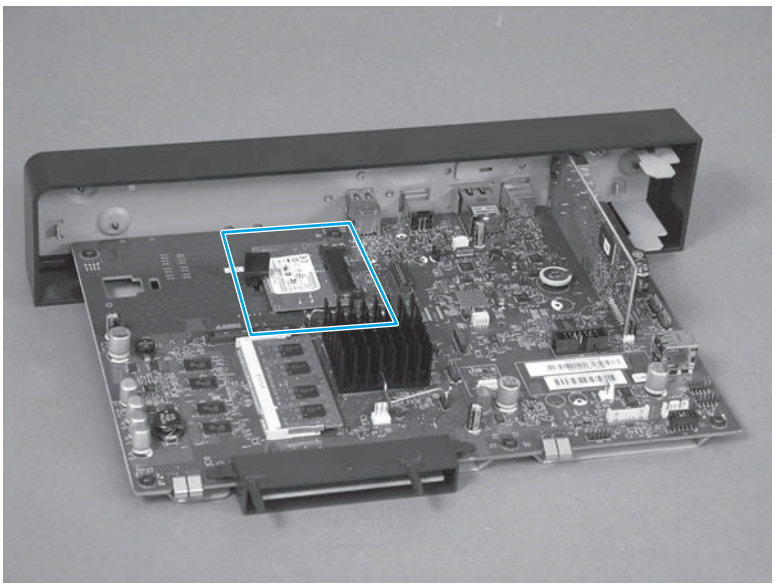
Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD) or solid-state memory (SSM)

Identify the component type

- Hard-disk drive (HDD). See Remove the HDD on page 43.



- Solid-state memory (SSM). See Remove the SSM on page 44.

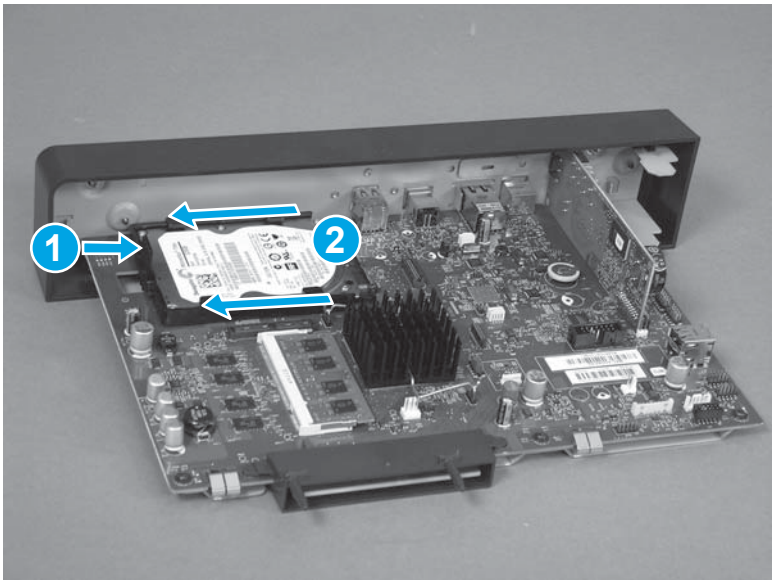


Remove the HDD

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

- Push and hold the locking lever (callout 1) toward the HDD to release it, and then slide the black plastic HDD case in the direction of the arrows (callout 2) to remove the HDD.

Figure 1-52 Remove the HDD

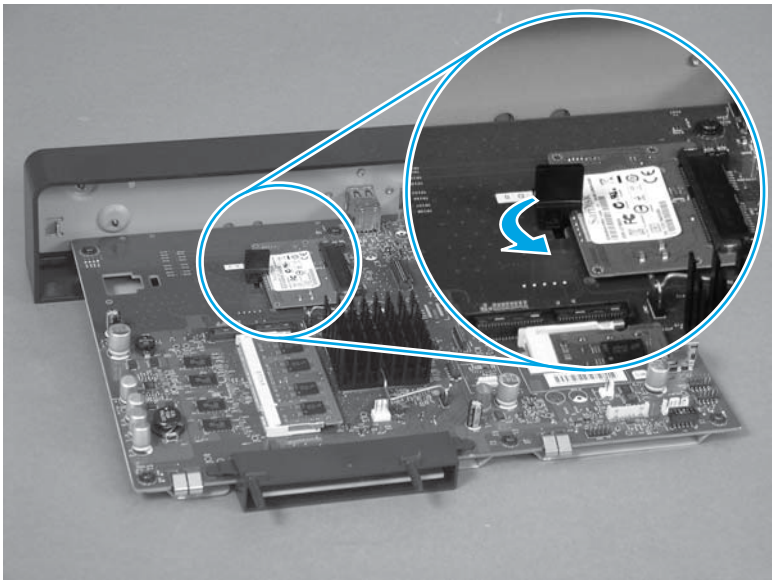


Remove the SSM

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

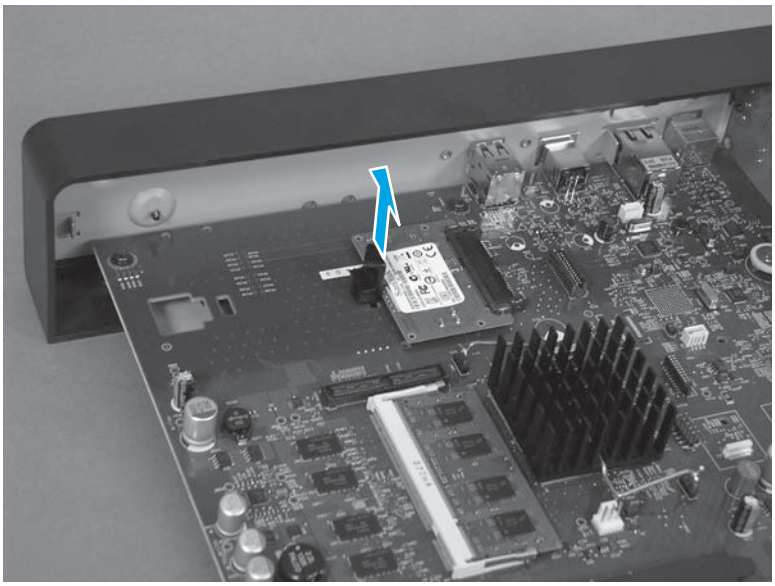
1. Rotate the retainer clip to release it.

Figure 1-53 Release the clip



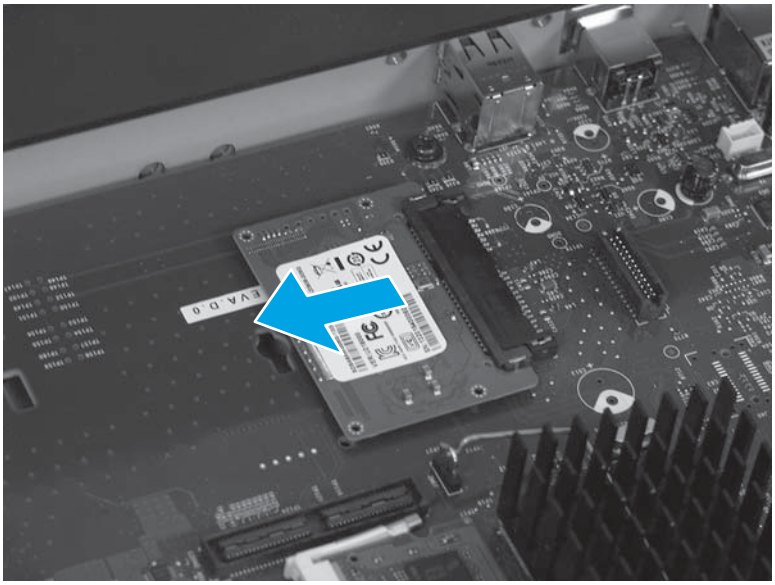
2. Lift the retainer clip up to remove it.

Figure 1-54 Remove the clip



3. Slide the SSM away from the connector to remove it.

Figure 1-55 Remove the SSM

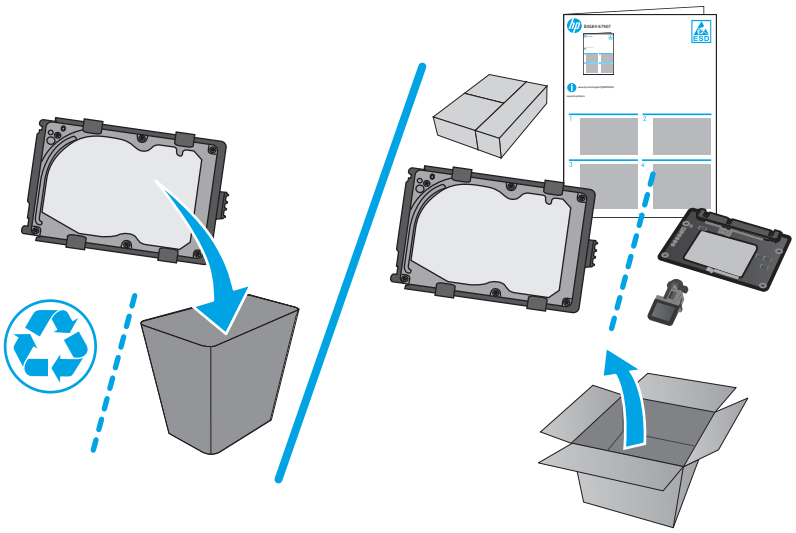


Step 3: Unpack the replacement HDD or SSM

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

Product return and recycling

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 4: Install the HDD or SSM

To install a HDD, go to Install the HDD on page 46.

To install a SSM, go to Install the SSM on page 49.

Install the HDD

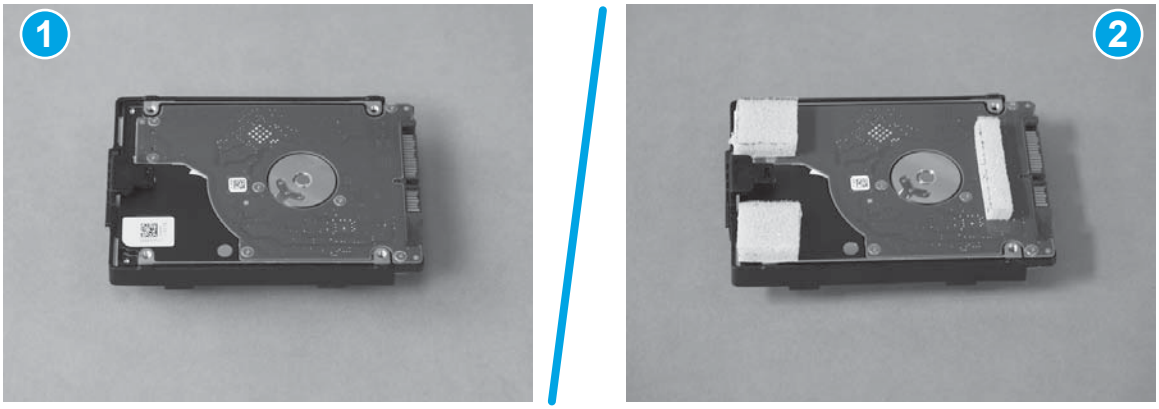
CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

1. To install a HDD, do the following steps:

   Look at the underside of the removed defective HDD.

   - If the HDD *does not* have foam pads installed (callout 1), go to step 2.
   - If the HDD *does* have foam pads installed (callout 2), go to step 3.

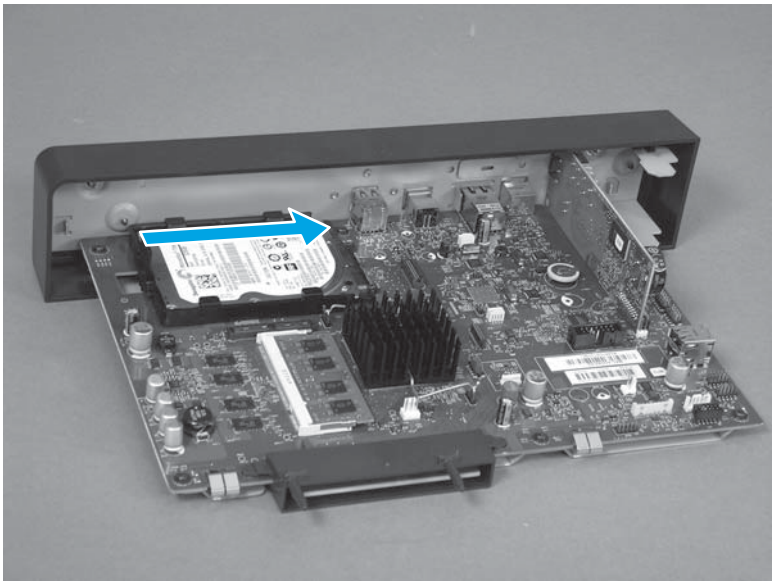
   Figure 1-56 Check the HDD for foam pads



2. Install a HDD without foam pads:

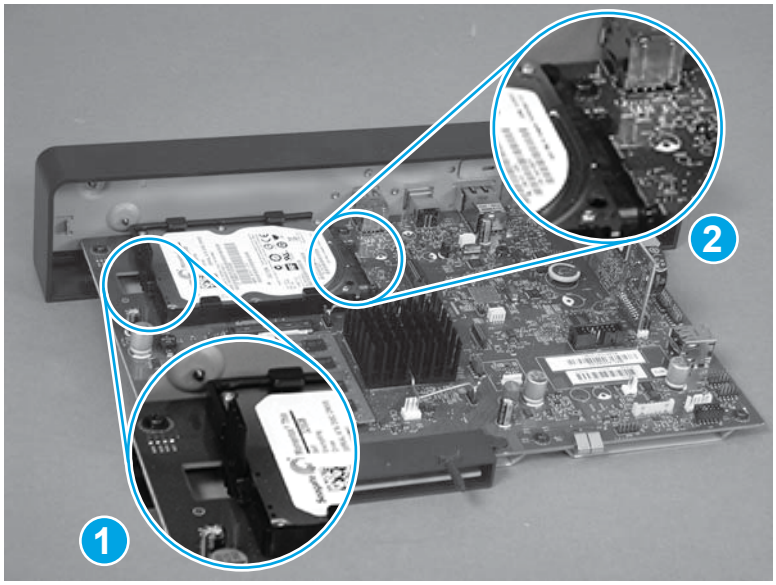
   a. Position the replacement HDD on the formatter, and then slide the HDD into the connector on the formatter.

   Figure 1-57 Install the HDD



b. When correctly installed, the HDD locking lever (callout 1) and the connector (callout 2) are securely fastened. Make sure that locking lever prevents the HDD from moving, and that the HDD is fully seated in the connector.

Figure 1-58 Check the HDD installation

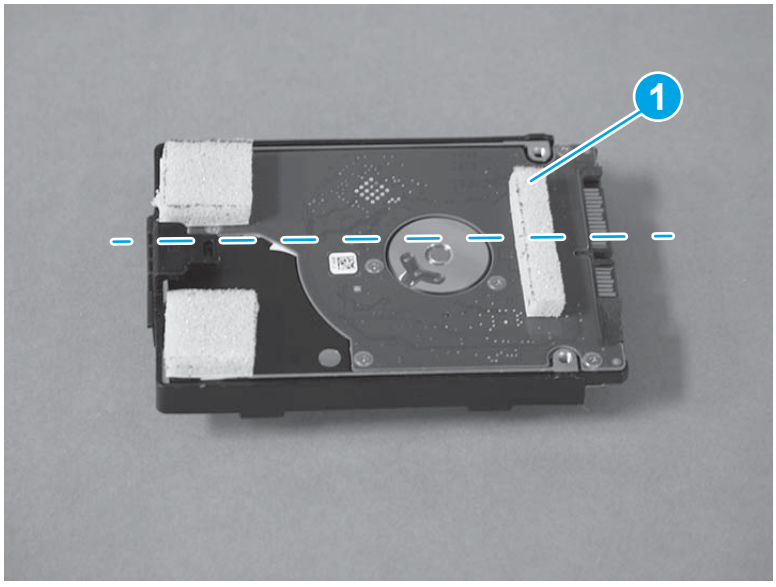


3. Install a HDD with foam pads:

a. Working with one foam pad at a time, carefully separate it from the other foam pads while removing it from the protective backing. Adhere the pads to the backside of the replacement HDD as shown

NOTE: Center the long rectangular foam (callout 1) near the connector end of the HDD.

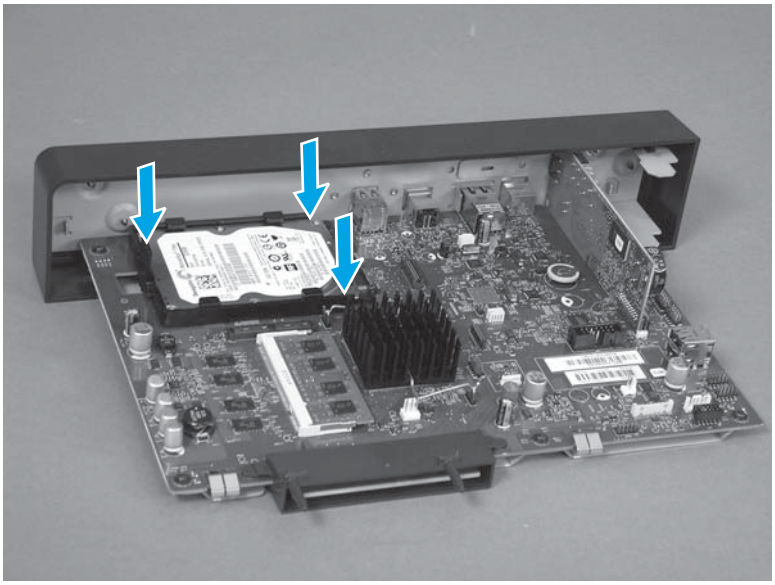
Figure 1-59 Install the foam pads



b. Carefully press down on the connector-side corners of the HDD and on the locking lever to compress the foam on the backside of the HDD.

CAUTION: Do not press down on the center of the HDD.

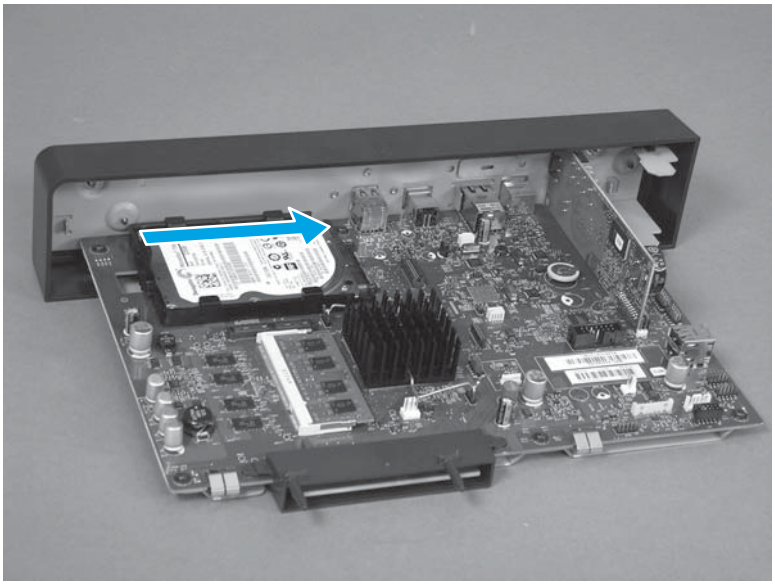
Figure 1-60 Press down on the HDD



c. With the foam on the backside of the HDD compressed, slide the HDD into the connector on the formatter.

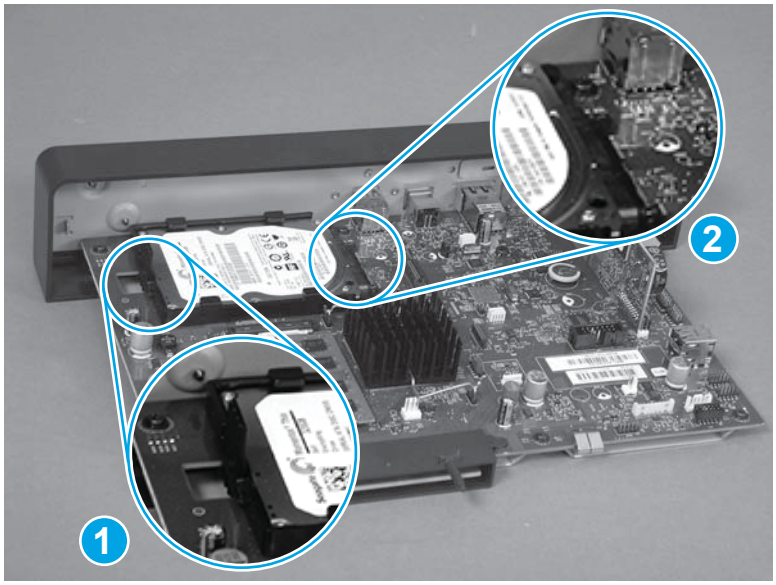
NOTE: Make sure that the foam pads are compressed enough to allow the HDD to easily slide into the connector, and that the locking lever fits into the slot on the formatter.

Figure 1-61 Install the HDD



d. When correctly installed, the HDD locking lever (callout 1) and the connector (callout 2) are securely fastened. Make sure that locking lever prevents the HDD from moving, and that the HDD is fully seated in the connector.

Figure 1-62 Check the HDD installation

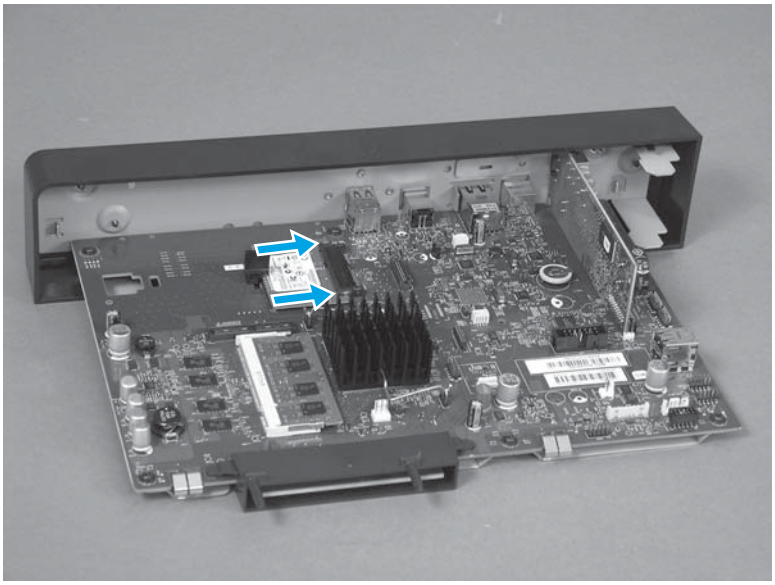


Install the SSM

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

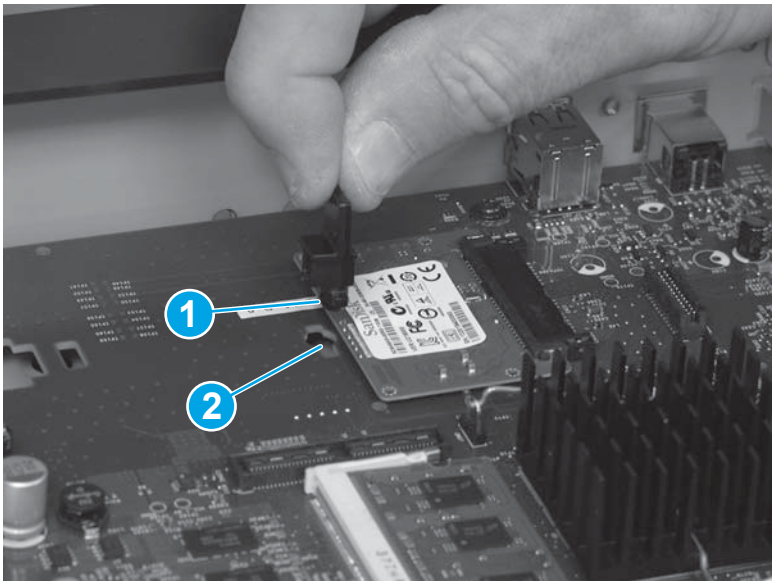
1. Position the SSM on the formatter, and then slide the SSM in the direction of the arrow to install it.

Figure 1-63 Install the SSM



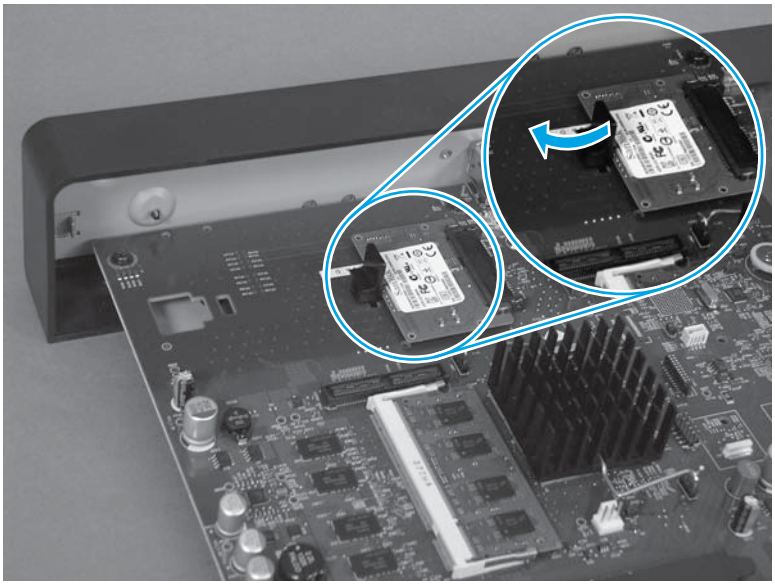
2. Position the retainer clip (callout 1) in the slot (callout 2).

Figure 1-64 Install the retainer clip



3. Rotate the retainer clip to lock it.

Figure 1-65 Rotate the retainer

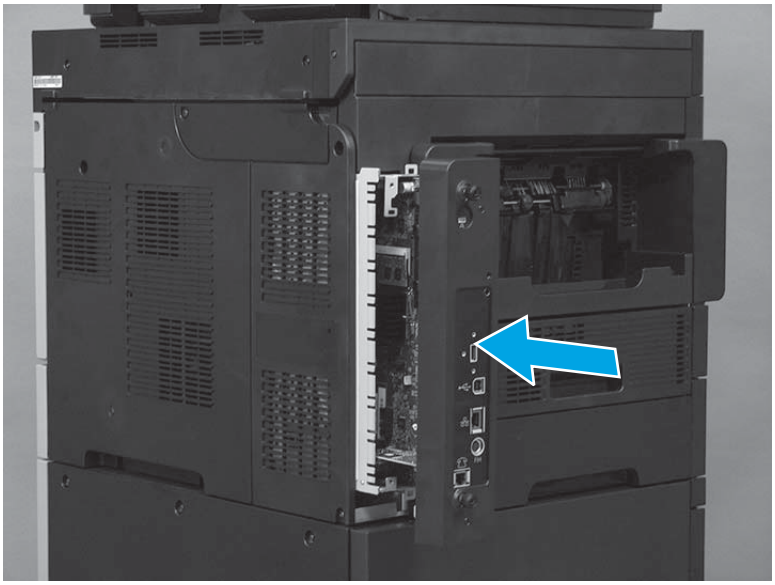


Step 5: Install the formatter

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

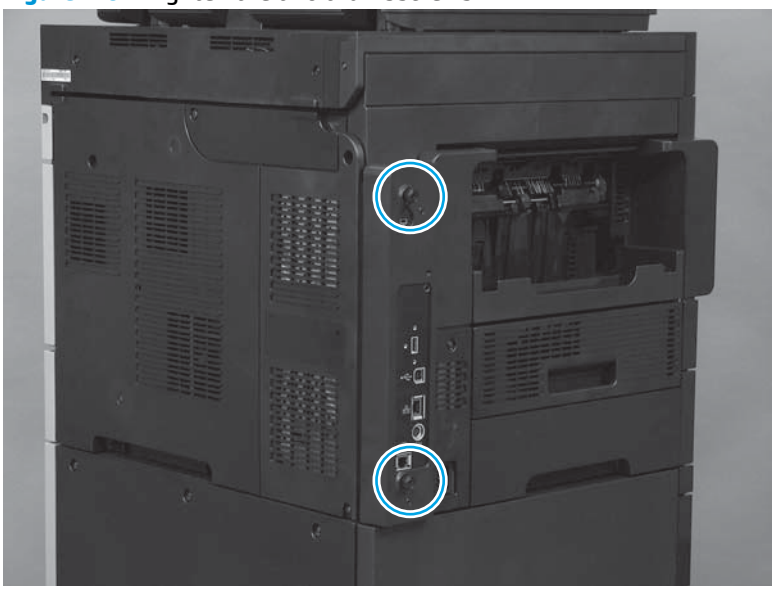
1. Align the formatter with the guides at the top and bottom of the formatter cage and push the formatter into the slot until it is fully seated.

Figure 1-66 Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot



2. Finger-tighten the two thumbscrews.

Figure 1-67 Tighten the two thumbscrews



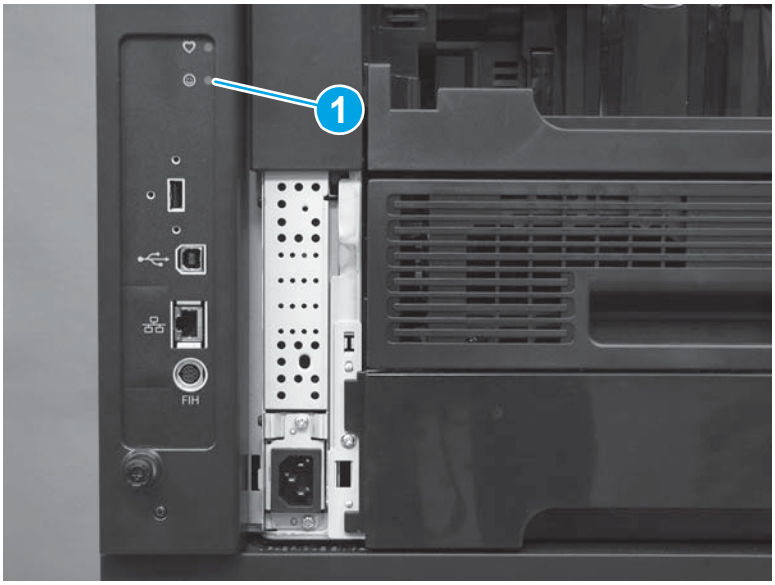
Step 6: Test the installation

1. Do the following steps:
   a. Reconnect all cables to the formatter.
   b. Plug in the power cord.
2. Turn on the product.

To verify that the formatter is correctly installed, observe the following function of the connectivity LED on the formatter.

- The connectivity LED (callout 1) indicates that the formatter is completely seated. It illuminates green when the product power is turned on and stays green if the formatter is properly seated.

If the LED does not correctly function, turn the product power off, remove the formatter, and then reinstall it (make sure that the formatter is fully seated before tightening the thumbscrews).



Step 7: Reinstall the product firmware

1. Turn off the product.
2. Do the one of the following:
   - In the U.S., go to www.hp.com/support/ljMFPM630.
     a. Select **Drivers**, **Software**, and **Firmware**, and then select **Cross operating system** (BIOS, Firmware, Diagnostics, etc.).
     b. Locate the firmware download, and then select **Download**.
   - Outside the U.S., go to www.hp.com/support.
     a. Select your country/region.
     b. Select **Product Support & Troubleshooting**.
     c. Enter the product name, and then select **Search**. Select **Drivers**, **Software**, and **Firmware**, and then select **Cross operating system** (BIOS, Firmware, Diagnostics, etc.).
     d. Locate the firmware download, and then select **Download**.
3. Copy the firmware upgrade file to the root directory of a USB flash drive. The firmware upgrade file has a .bdl extension.
4. Insert the USB flash drive into the USB port on the product control panel.
5. Turn on the product.

6. The following message displays on the control panel: **Error: 99.09.63 Incorrect Disk**. Touch the OK button to continue.
7. Wait for the Pre-Boot menu to appear on the control-panel display, and then touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to **3 Administrator**. Touch the OK button to select it.
8. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to **6 Manage Disk**. Touch the OK button to select it.
9. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to **+ 6 Boot Device**. Touch the OK button to select it.
10. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to **2 Erase / Unlock**. Touch the OK button to select it.
11. The message **Proceed with Requested Action** displays. Touch the OK button to select it.
12. Touch the back ⮌ button to return to the **Pre-Boot** menu home screen.
13. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to **3 Administrator**. Touch the OK button to select it.
14. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to **1 Download**. Touch the OK button to select it.
15. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to **3 USB Thumbdrive**. Touch the OK button to select it.
16. Several .bdl files might be listed. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to the firmware upgrade file that was downloaded previously. Touch the OK button to select it.
17. Wait while the file transfers. When the transfer is complete, the message **Complete** displays on the screen.
18. Turn the product off, remove the USB flash drive, and then turn the product on. Wait for several minutes while the product initializes. If the upgrade is unsuccessful, try sending the firmware upgrade file again.

NOTE: If the upgrade fails again, contact HP support at www.hp.com/support/ljMFPM630.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Memory DIMM

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter
- Step 2: Remove the memory DIMM
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement DIMM
- Step 4: Reinstall the memory DIMM
- Step 5: Install the formatter
- Step 6: Test the installation
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the memory dual-inline memory module (DIMM).

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

DIMM kit part number	
B3G85-67909	2GB memory DIMM kit with instruction guide
B3G85-67910	1GB memory DIMM kit with instruction guide

Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

CAUTION: This product contains components that can be damaged by electrostatic discharge (ESD). To reduce the chance of ESD damage, place the product on an ESD mat (if available), and wear an ESD wrist strap connected to a grounded surface. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis before touching an ESD-sensitive part.

Step 1: Remove the formatter

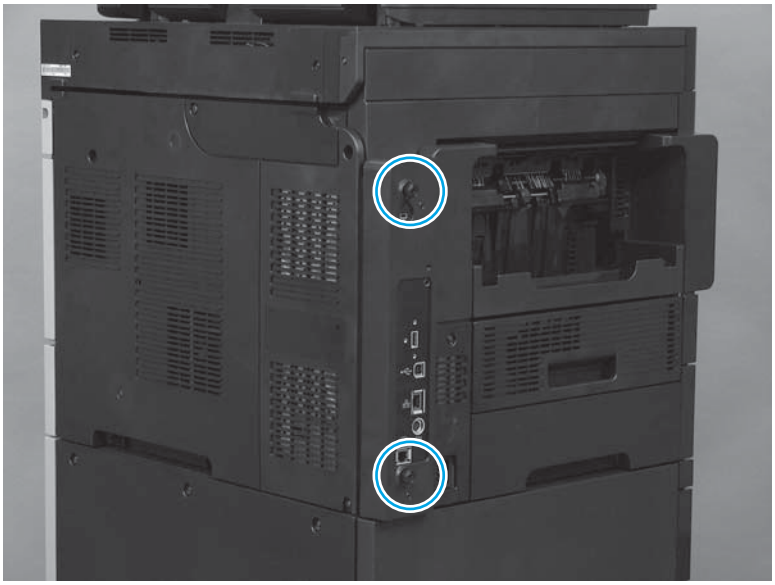
1. Do the following steps:
   a. Turn off the product.
   b. Disconnect the power cable.

      WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

   c. Disconnect all cables and accessories attached to the formatter.

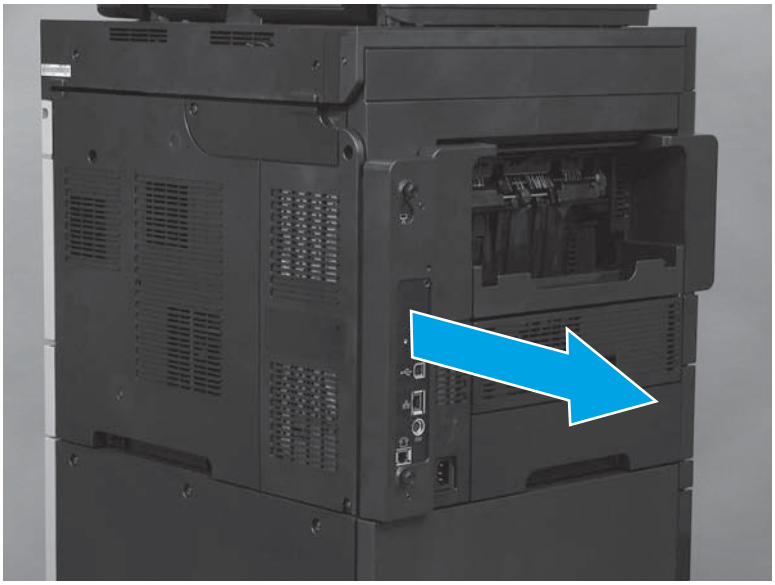
2. Loosen the two thumbscrews on the formatter.

Figure 1-68 Remove the formatter



3. Slide the formatter straight out of the product to remove it.

Figure 1-69 Remove the formatter

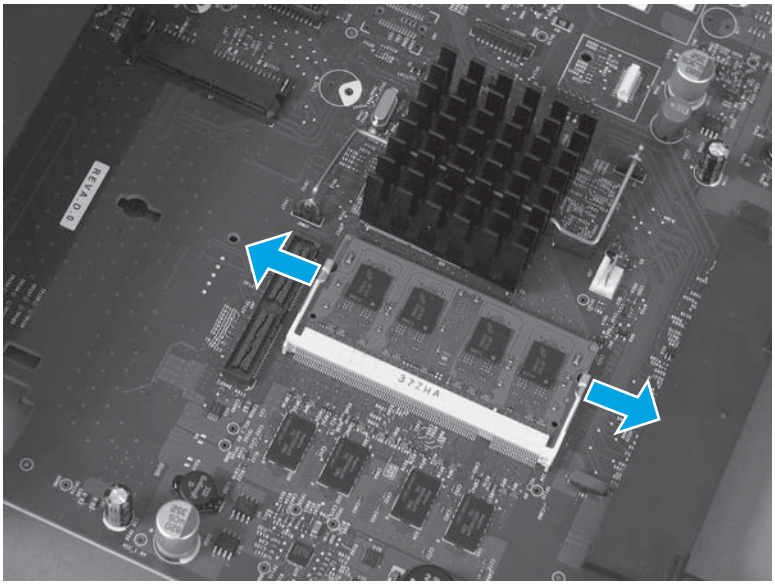


Step 2: Remove the memory DIMM

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

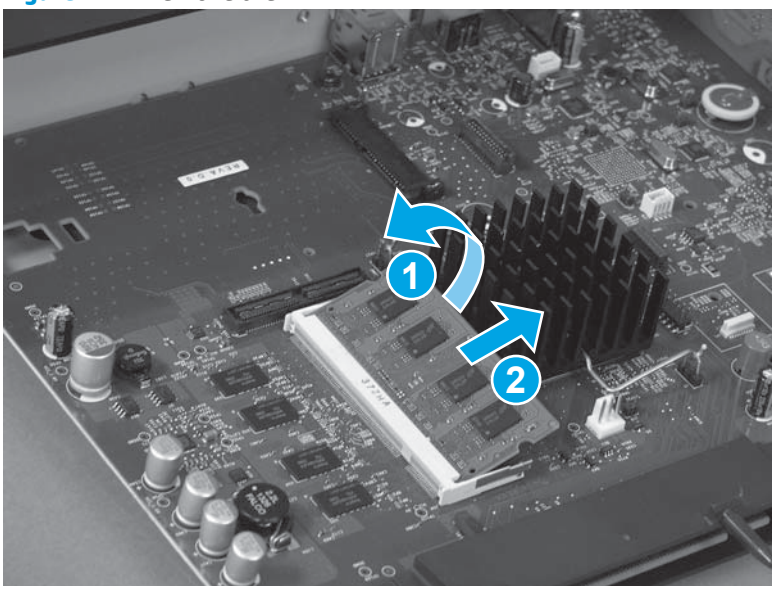
1. Release two clips.

Figure 1-70 Release two clips



2. Rotate the DIMM upward (callout 1), and then remove it (callout 2).

Figure 1-71 Remove the DIMM



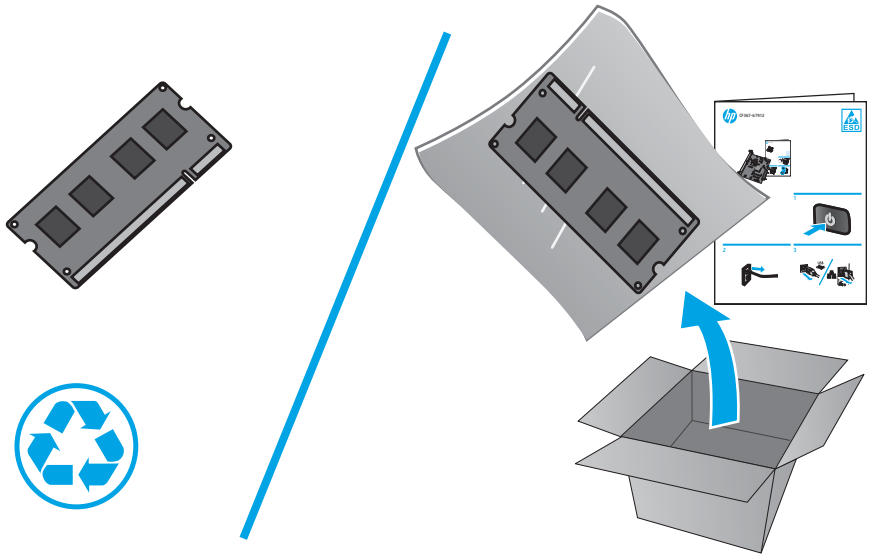
Step 3: Unpack the replacement DIMM

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

www.Product return and recycling.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



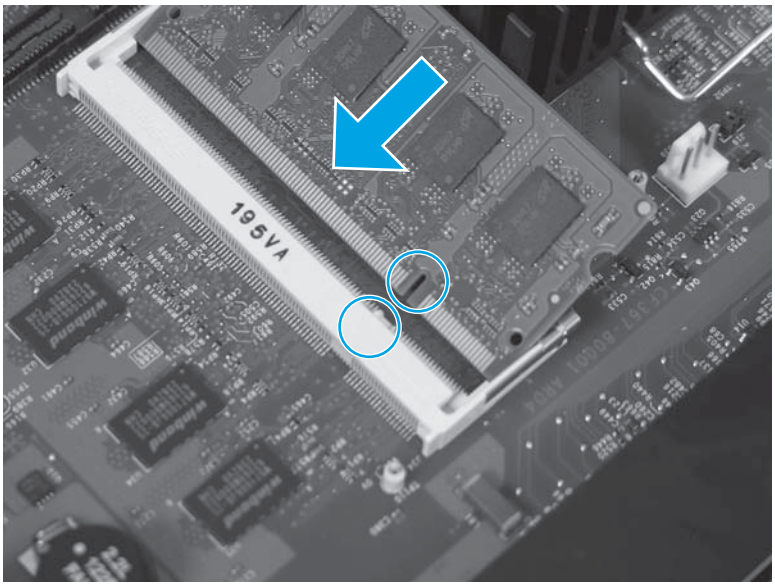
Step 4: Reinstall the memory DIMM

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Carefully insert the DIMM at an angle into the holder on the formatter.

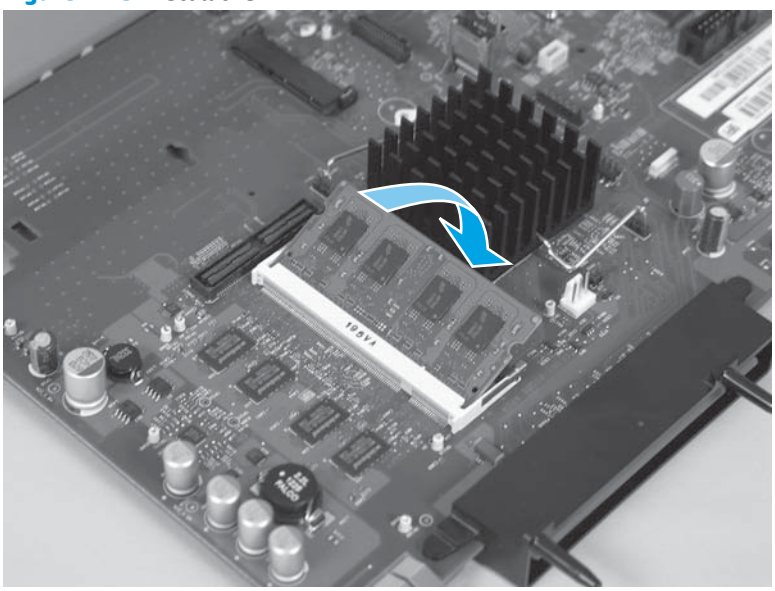
NOTE: Position the DIMM so that the slot in the DIMM is aligned with the tab in the holder.

Figure 1-72 Insert the DIMM into the holder



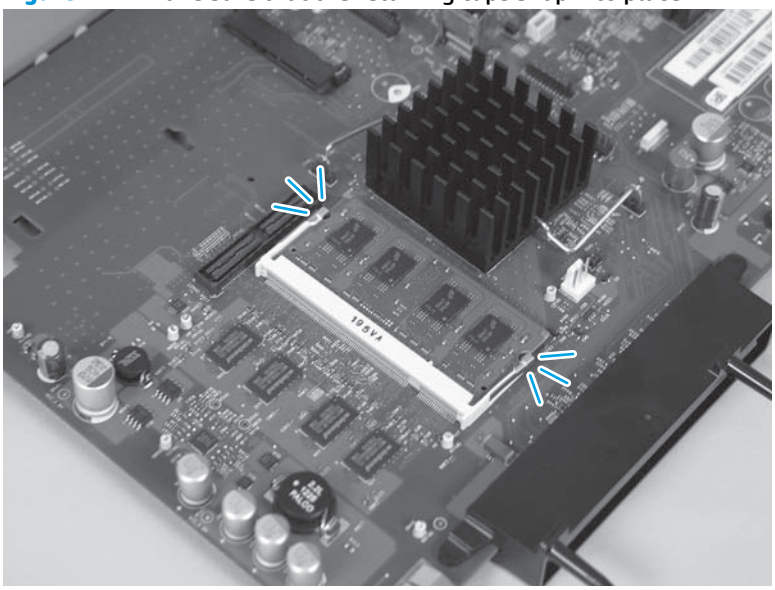
2. Rotate the DIMM in the direction of the arrow to install it.

Figure 1-73 Install the DIMM



3. When the DIMM is installed make sure that the retaining clips on the right and left sides of the DIMM snap into place.

Figure 1-74 Make sure that the retaining clips snap into place

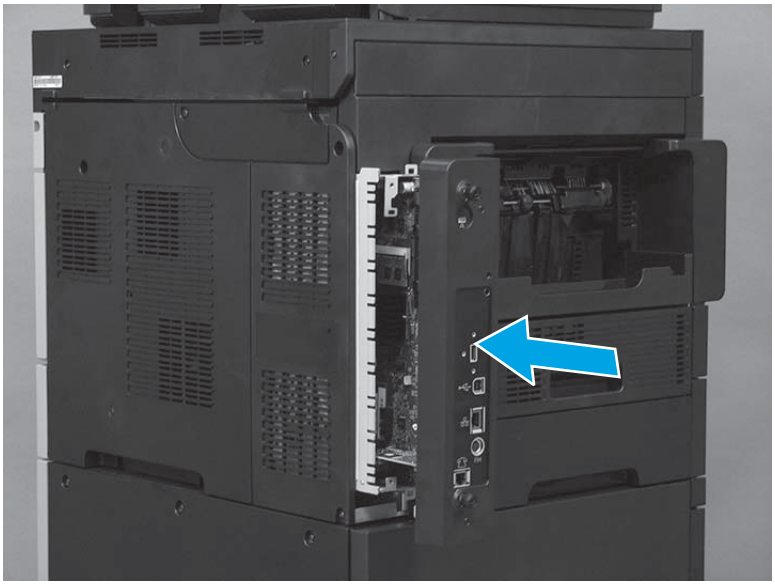


Step 5: Install the formatter

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

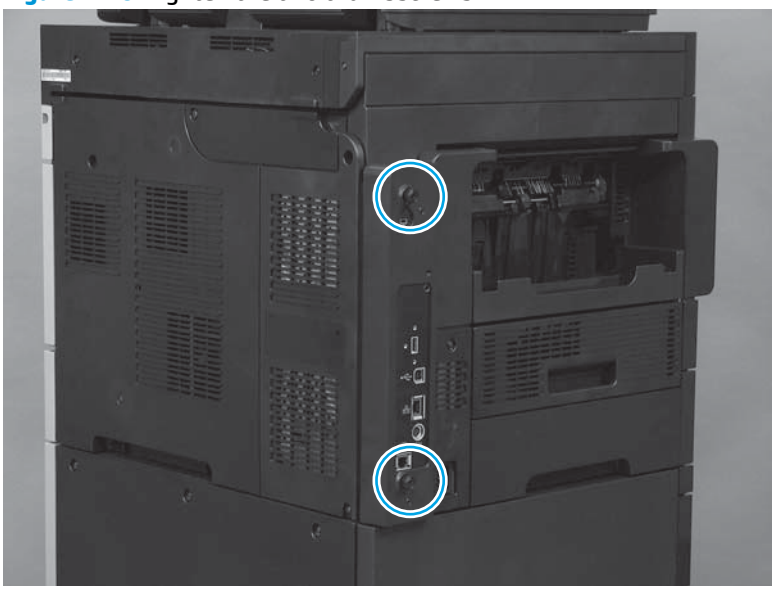
1. Align the formatter with the guides at the top and bottom of the formatter cage and push the formatter into the slot until it is fully seated.

Figure 1-75 Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot



2. Finger-tighten the two thumbscrews.

Figure 1-76 Tighten the two thumbscrews



Step 6: Test the installation

1. Do the following steps:
   a. Reconnect all cables to the formatter.
   b. Plug in the power cord.
2. Turn on the product.

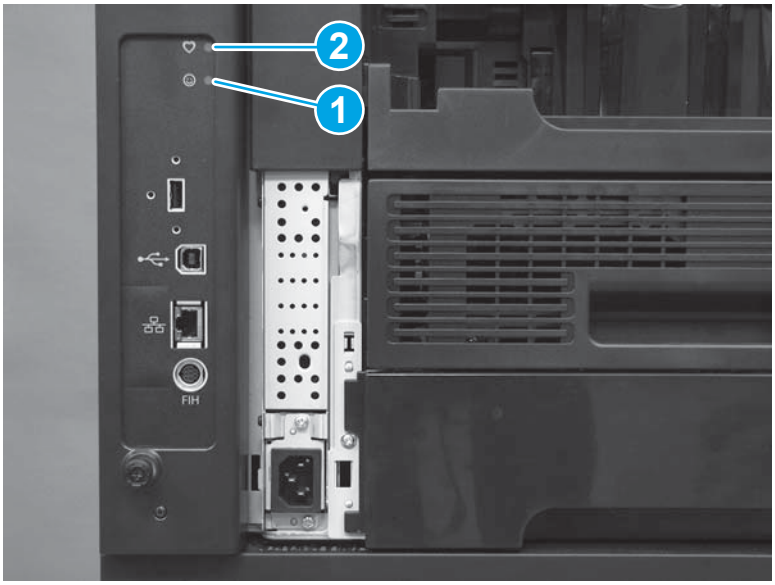
TIP: If the product does not initialize when the power is turned on, make sure that the memory DIMM is correctly installed.

To verify that the formatter is correctly installed, observe the following functions of the LEDs on the formatter:

- The heartbeat LED (callout 1) illuminates if the formatter is functioning correctly.
  - While the product is initializing, the heartbeat LED illuminates solid red for about one second, and then turns solid green for about twenty seconds.
  - After the initialization sequence is complete, the heartbeat LED blinks continuously if the printer is functioning correctly.
- The connectivity LED (callout 2) indicates that the formatter is completely seated. It illuminates green when the product power is turned on and stays green if the formatter is properly seated.

If the LEDs do not correctly function, turn the product power off, remove the formatter, and then reinstall it (make sure that the formatter is fully seated before tightening the thumbscrews).

Figure 1-77 Verify that the formatter is functioning



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Fax printed-circuit assembly (PCA)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter
- Step 2: Remove the fax PCA
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement fax PCA
- Step 4: Install the fax PCA
- Step 5: Install the formatter
- Step 6: Test the installation
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the fax PCA.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Fax PCA kit part numbers	
A2W77-67910	Fax PCA kit with instruction guide

Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

CAUTION: This product contains components that can be damaged by electrostatic discharge (ESD). To reduce the chance of ESD damage, place the product on an ESD mat (if available), and wear an ESD wrist strap connected to a grounded surface. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis before touching an ESD-sensitive part.

Step 1: Remove the formatter

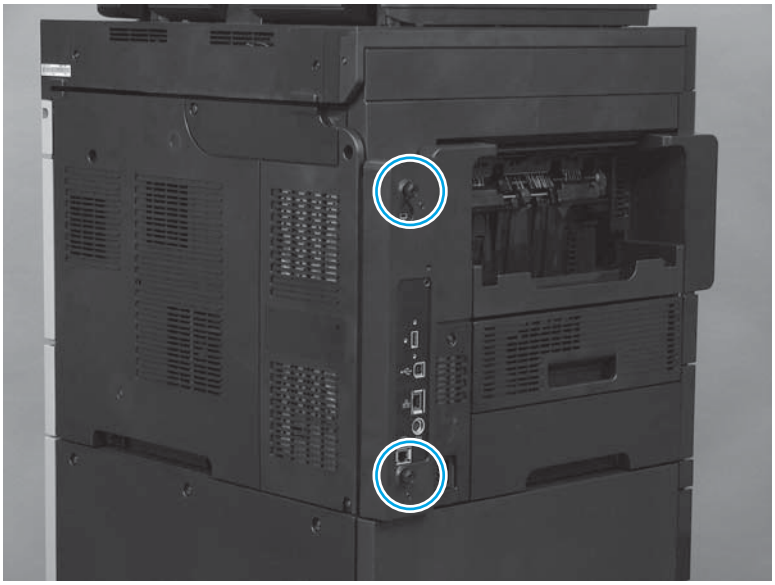
1. Do the following steps:
   a. Turn off the product.
   b. Disconnect the power cable.

      WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

   c. Disconnect all cables and accessories attached to the formatter.

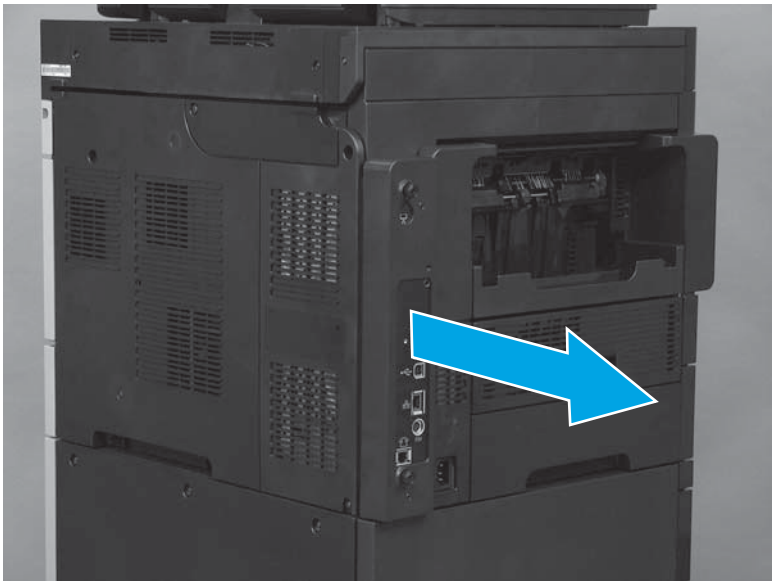
2. Loosen the two thumbscrews on the formatter.

Figure 1-78 Remove the formatter



3. Slide the formatter straight out of the product to remove it.

Figure 1-79 Remove the formatter

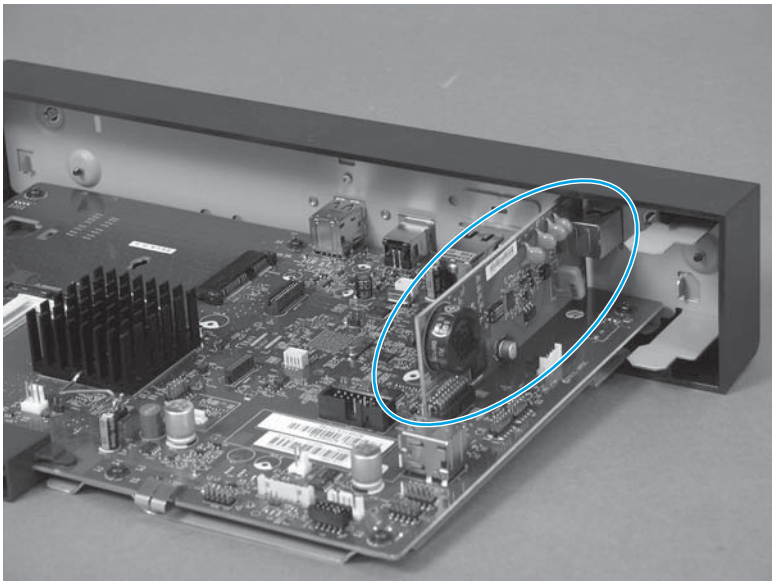


Step 2: Remove the fax PCA

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

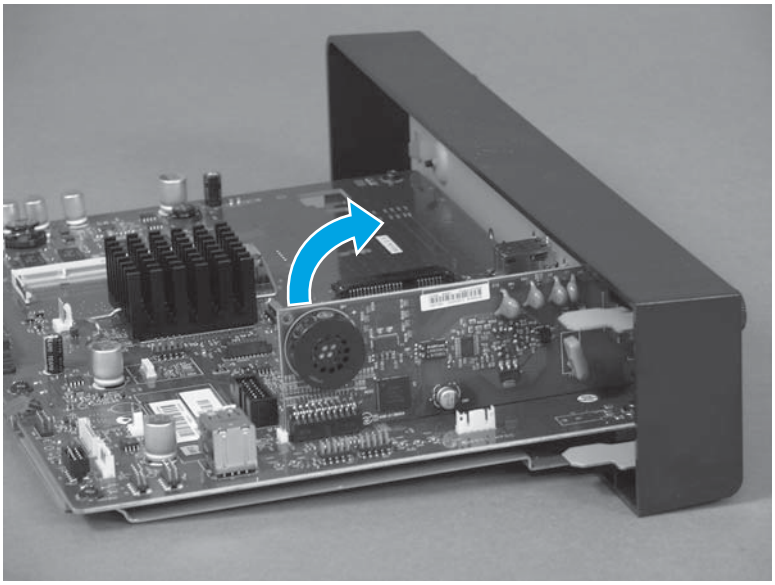
1. Locate the fax PCA that is installed on the formatter.

Figure 1-80 Locate the fax PCA



2. Rotate the connector end (away from the phone port) of the fax PCA up and away from the formatter to release it.

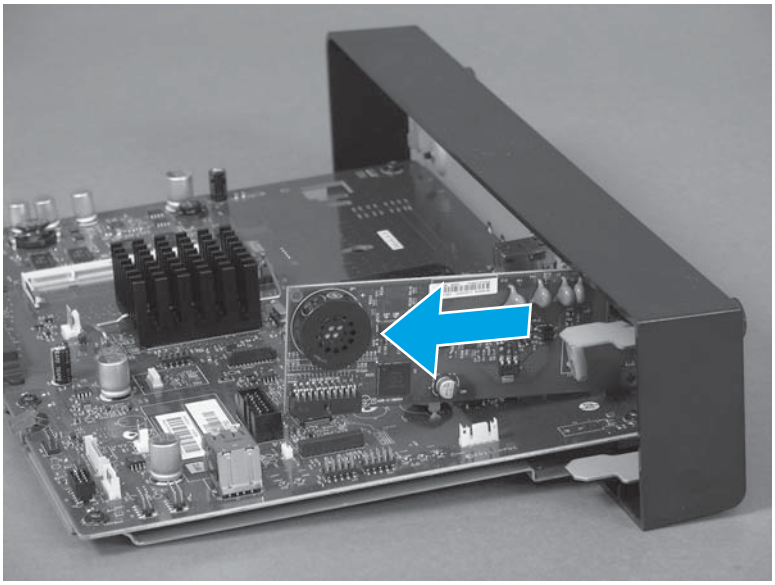
Figure 1-81 Release the connector end of the fax PCA



3. Carefully remove the fax PCA from the formatter bracket.

NOTE: Set this part aside. It will be installed on the replacement formatter.

Figure 1-82 Remove the fax PCA

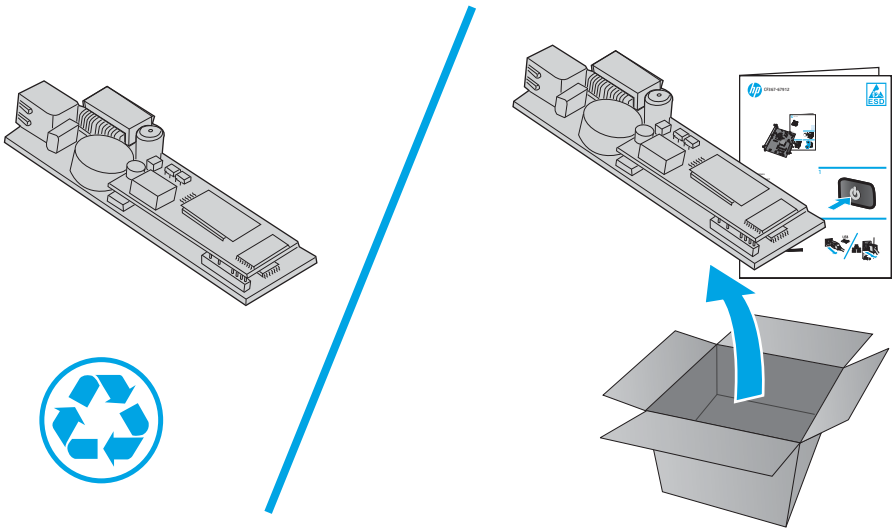


Step 3: Unpack the replacement fax PCA

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

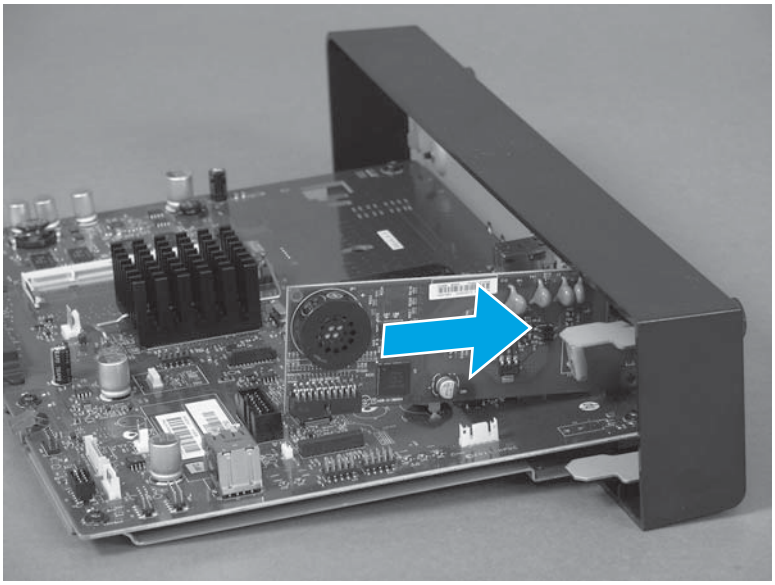


Step 4: Install the fax PCA

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

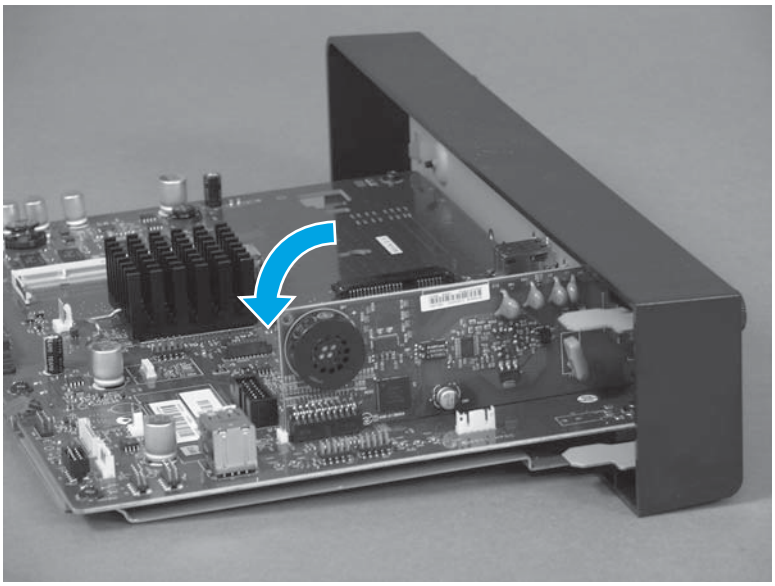
1. Insert the fax port of the fax PCA into the holder on the formatter tray.

Figure 1-83 Insert the fax port of the fax PCA into the holder



2. Rotate the connector end of the fax PCA in the direction of the arrow to install it.

Figure 1-84 Install the fax PCA

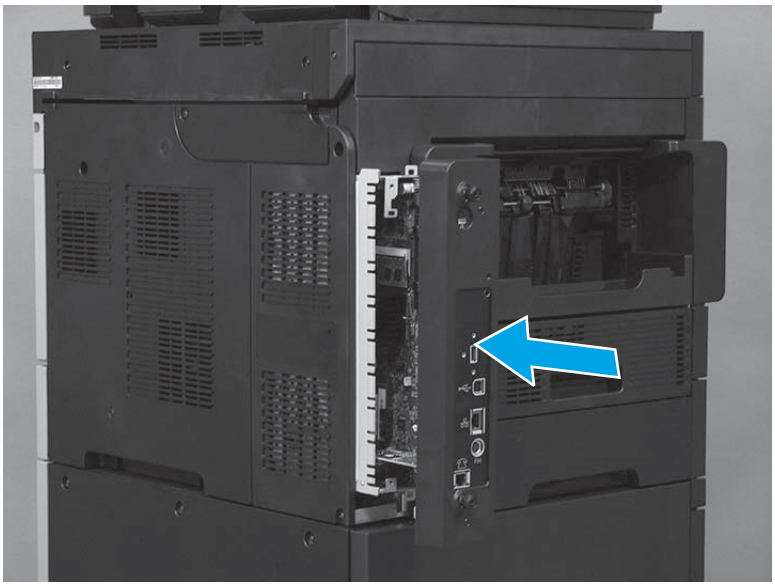


Step 5: Install the formatter

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

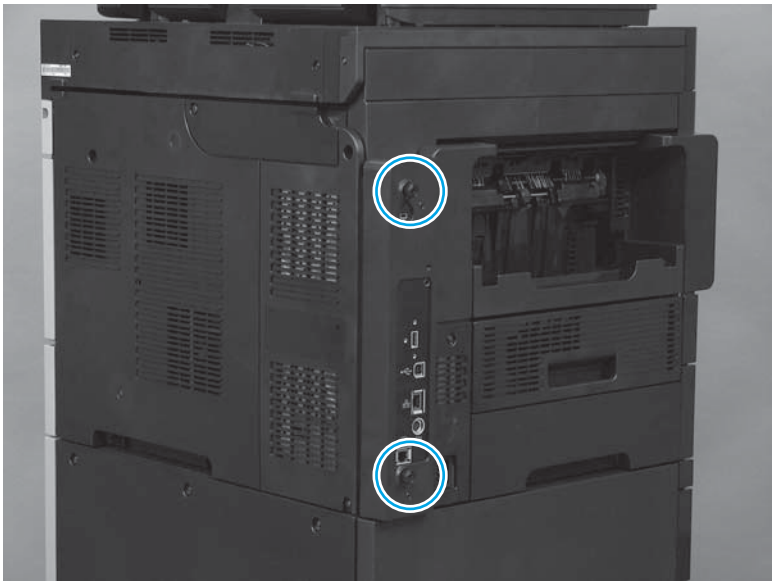
1. Align the formatter with the guides at the top and bottom of the formatter cage and push the formatter into the slot until it is fully seated.

Figure 1-85 Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot



2. Finger-tighten the two thumbscrews.

Figure 1-86 Tighten the two thumbscrews



Step 6: Test the installation

1. Do the following steps:

a. Reconnect all cables to the formatter.

b. Plug in the power cord.

2. Turn on the product.

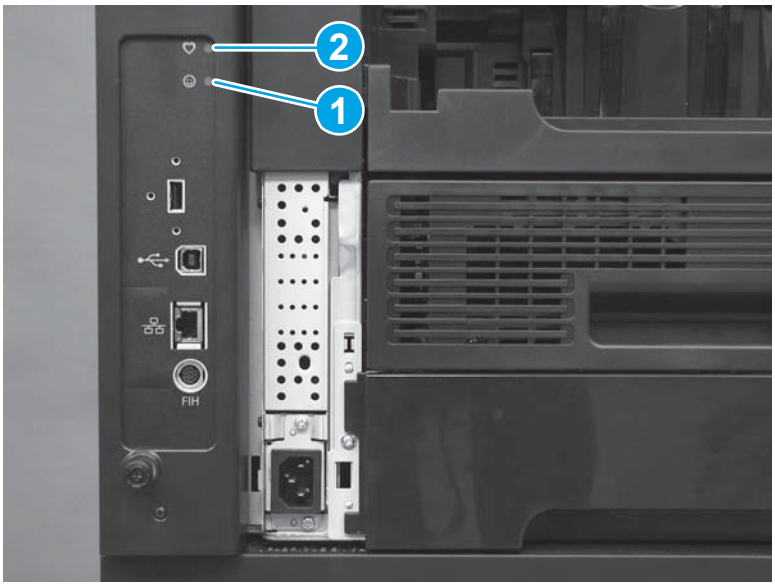
TIP: If the product does not initialize when the power is turned on, make sure that the memory DIMM is correctly installed.

To verify that the formatter is correctly installed, observe the following functions of the LEDs on the formatter:

- The heartbeat LED (callout 1) illuminates if the formatter is functioning correctly.
  - While the product is initializing, the heartbeat LED illuminates solid red for about one second, and then turns solid green for about twenty seconds.
  - After the initialization sequence is complete, the heartbeat LED blinks continuously if the printer is functioning correctly.
- The connectivity LED (callout 2) indicates that the formatter is completely seated. It illuminates green when the product power is turned on and stays green if the formatter is properly seated.

If the LEDs do not correctly function, turn the product power off, remove the formatter, and then reinstall it (make sure that the formatter is fully seated before tightening the thumbscrews).

Figure 1-87 Verify that the formatter is functioning



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Output bin and bin base assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement output bin and bin base assembly
- Step 3: Install the output bin and bin base assembly
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the output bin and bin base assembly.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Output bin and bin base assembly part number	
B3G84-69702	Output bin assembly kit with instruction guide

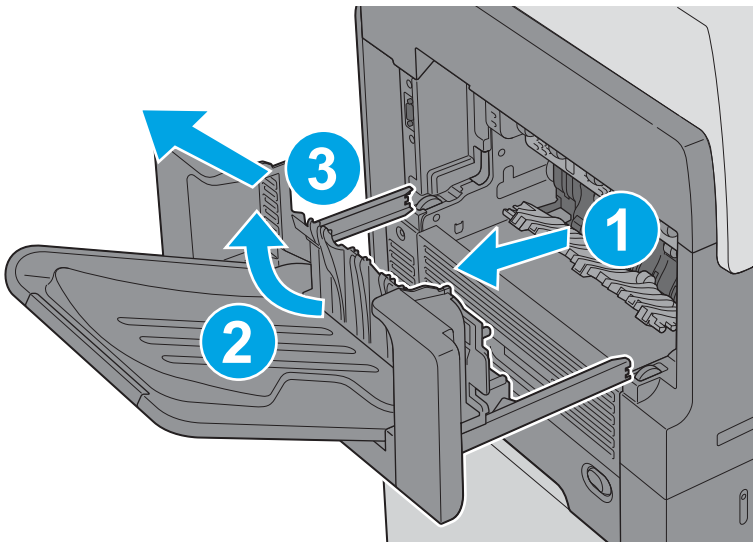
Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly

▲ Slide the bin base away from the product (callout 1) until it stops, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-88 Remove the output bin

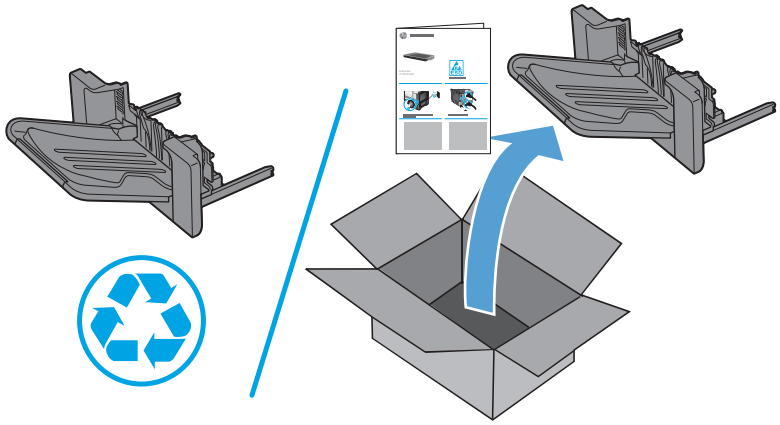


Step 2: Unpack the replacement output bin and bin base assembly

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

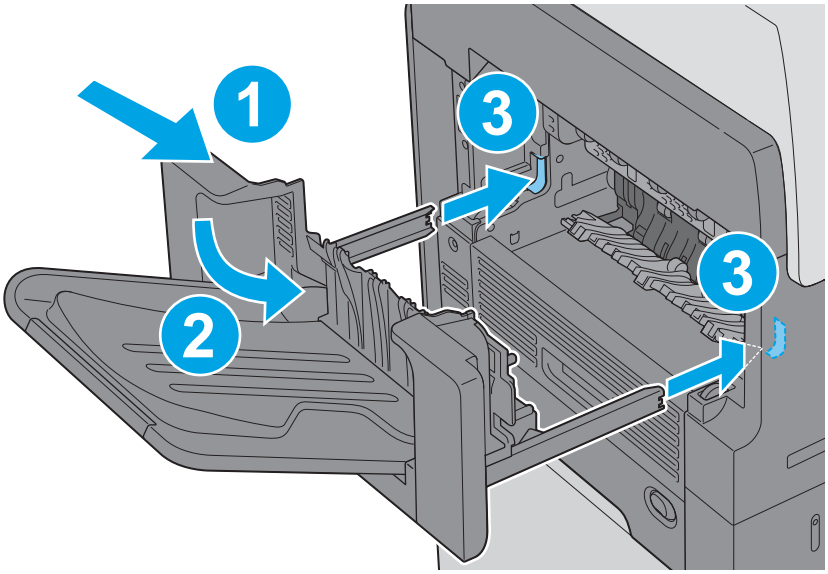
NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 3: Install the output bin and bin base assembly

▲ Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), and then slide the bin base into the product.

Figure 1-89 Install the output bin



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Duplex accessory

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox
- Step 2: Remove the duplex accessory
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement duplex accessory
- Step 4: Install the duplex accessory
- Step 5: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox
- Step 6: Turn the product power on
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the duplex accessory.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Duplex accessory part number	
B3G84-67903	Duplex accessory kit with instruction guide

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

Required tools

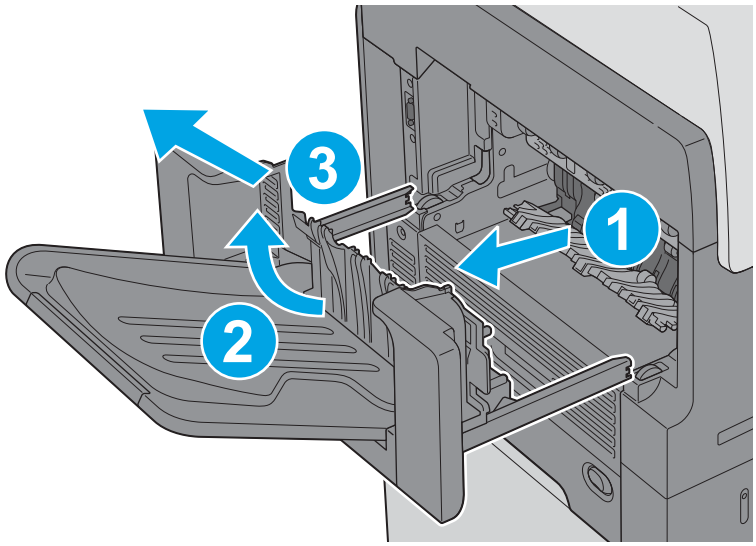
No special tools are required to install this kit.

Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

▲ Do one of the following steps:

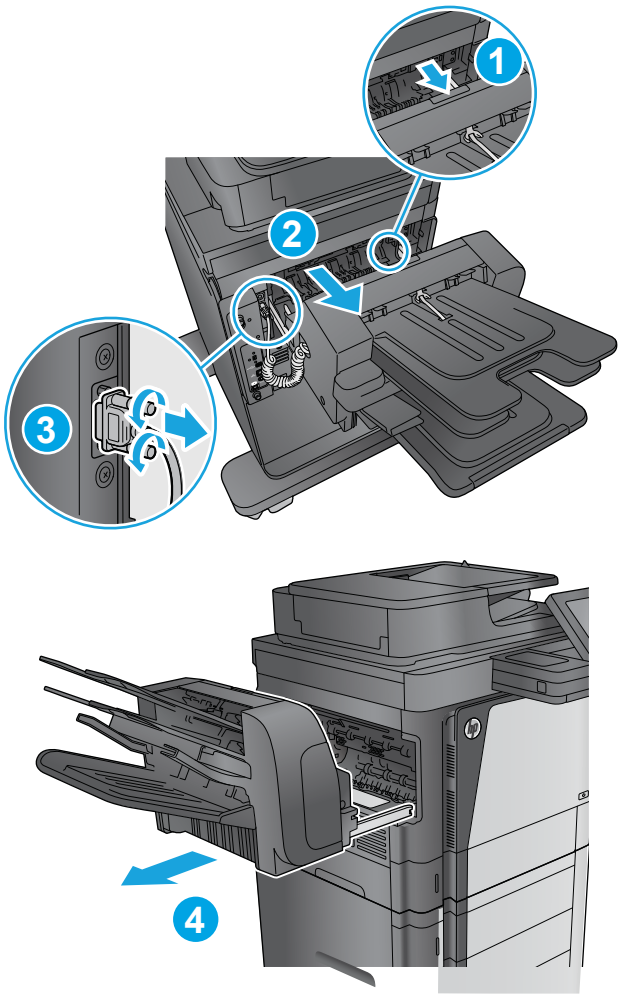
a. **M630dn and M630f**: Slide the bin base away from the product (callout 1) until it stops, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-90 Remove the output bin



b. **M630z**: Press the latch (callout 1), pull the stapling mailbox away from the product (callout 2), disconnect the interface cable (callout 3), and then remove the stapling mailbox (callout 4).

Figure 1-91 Remove the stapling mailbox

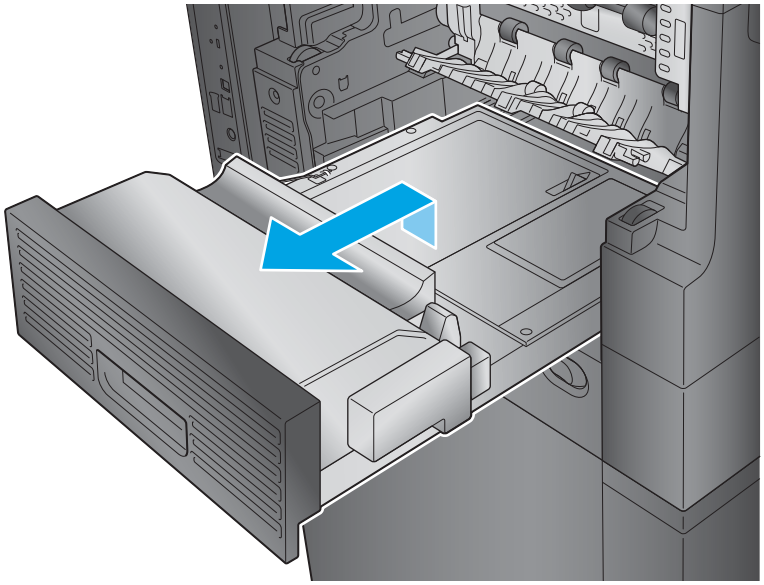


Step 2: Remove the duplex accessory

▲ Slide the duplex assembly away from the product, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails, and then remove it.

NOTE: Locate the duplexer at the left-hand side of the product.

Figure 1-92 Remove the duplex accessory

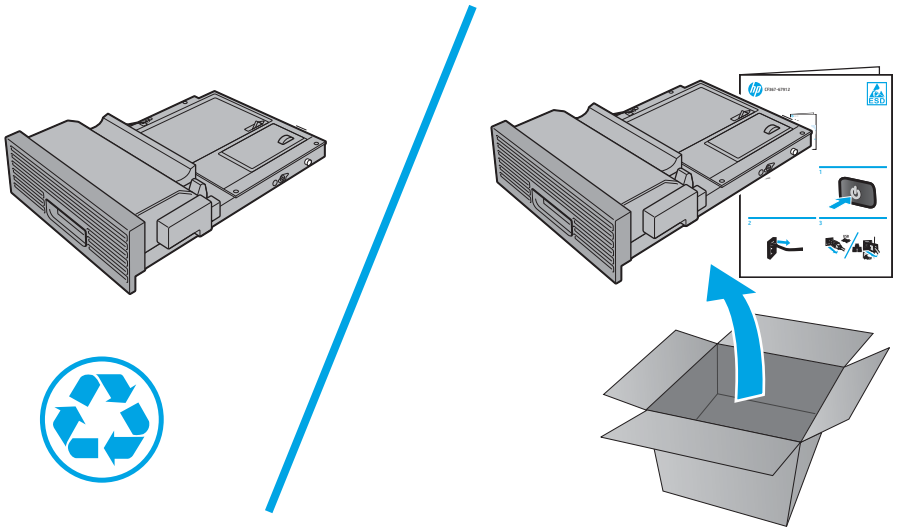


Step 3: Unpack the replacement duplex accessory

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the assembly.



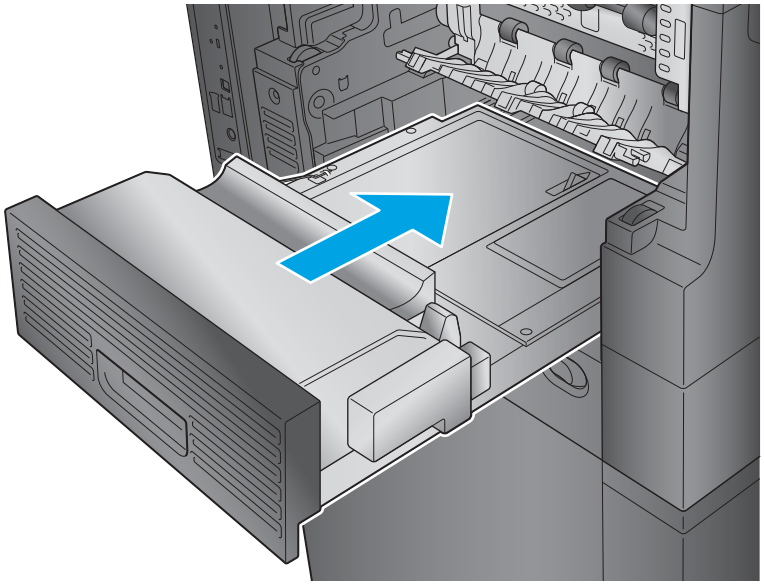
Step 4: Install the duplex accessory

- Position the duplex assembly on the product at a slight angle, engage the slide rails, and then slide the duplex assembly all of the way into the product to install it.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that the duplex accessory is full installed.

NOTE: After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed duplex accessory.

Figure 1-93 Install the duplex accessory

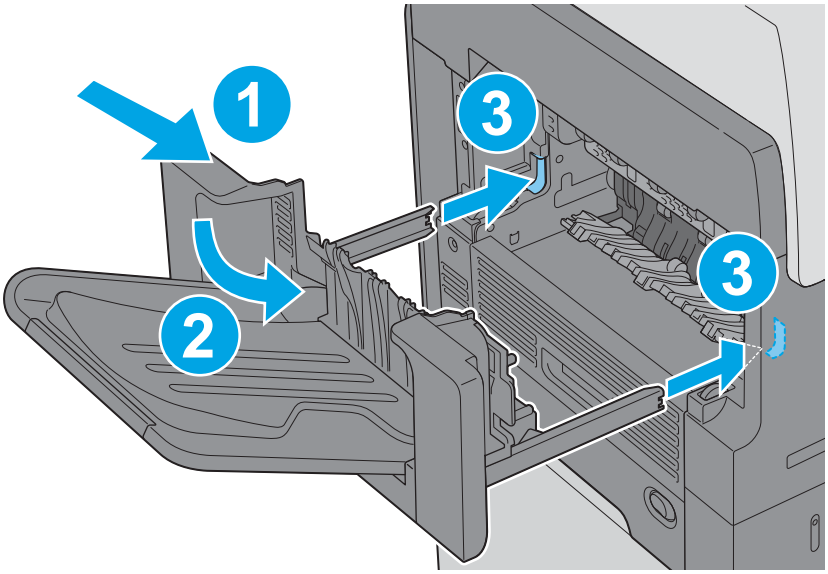


Step 5: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

▲ Do one of the following:

a. **M630dn and M630f**: Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), and then slide the bin base into the product.

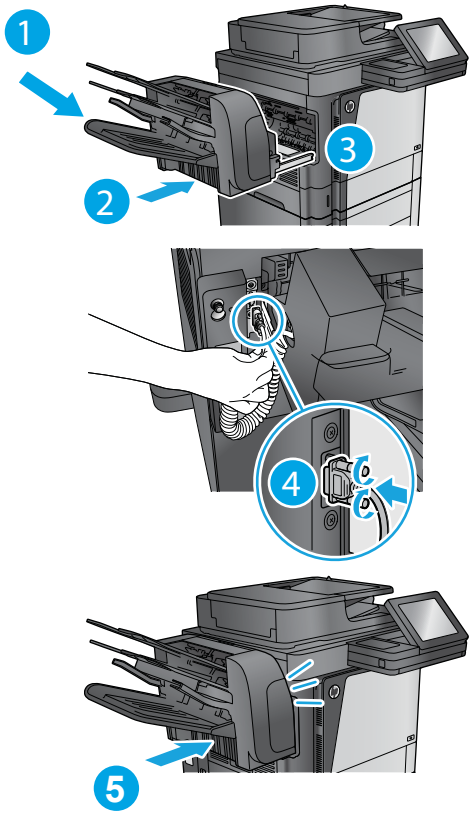
Figure 1-94 Install the output bin



b. **M630z**: Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), connect the interface cable (callout 4). and then slide the stapling mailbox (callout 5) into the product.

TIP: After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed stapling mailbox.

Figure 1-95 Install the stapling mailbox



Step 6: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Fuser-entrance guide

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox
- Step 2: Remove the duplex accessory
- Step 3: Remove the fuser-entrance guide
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement fuser-entrance guide
- Step 5: Install the fuser-entrance guide
- Step 6: Install the duplex accessory
- Step 7: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox
- Step 8: Turn the product power on
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the fuser-entrance guide.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Fuser-entrance guide kit part numbers	
B3G84-67904	Fuser-entrance guide kit with instruction guide

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

Required tools

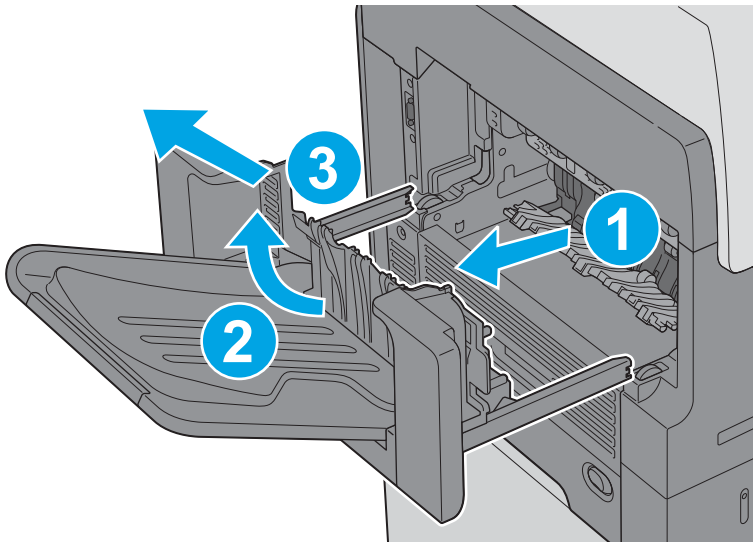
No special tools are required to install this kit.

Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

▲ Do one of the following steps:

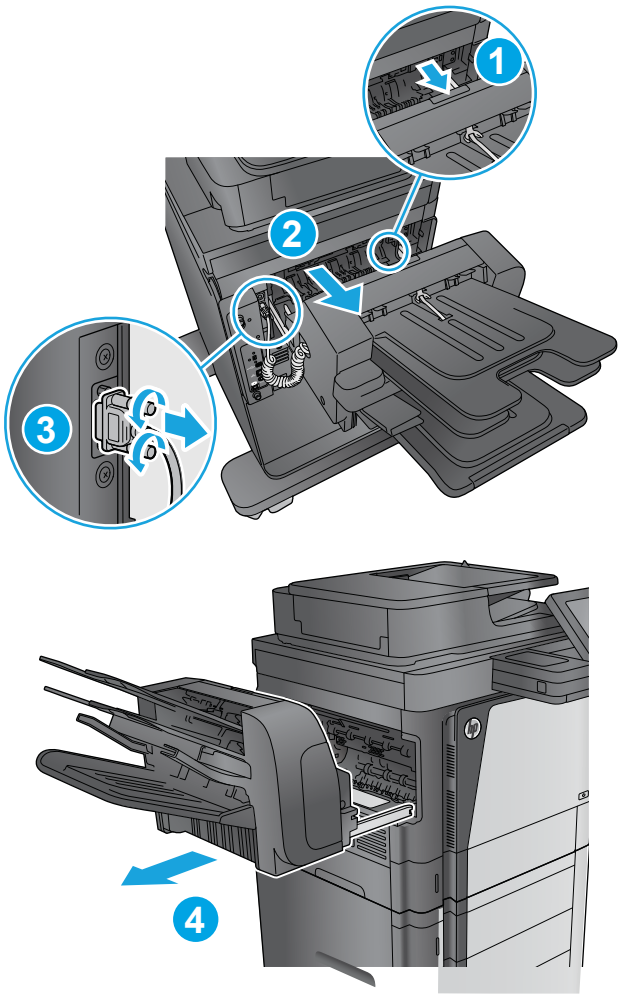
a. **M630dn and M630f**: Slide the bin base away from the product (callout 1) until it stops, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-96 Remove the output bin



b. **M630z**: Press the latch (callout 1), pull the stapling mailbox away from the product (callout 2), disconnect the interface cable (callout 3), and then remove the stapling mailbox (callout 4).

Figure 1-97 Remove the stapling mailbox

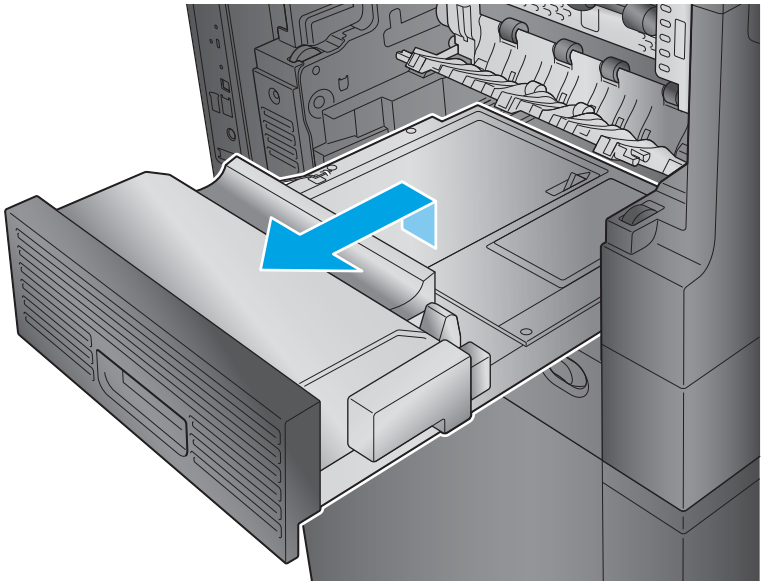


Step 2: Remove the duplex accessory

▲ Slide the duplex assembly away from the product, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails, and then remove it.

NOTE: Locate the duplexer at the left-hand side of the product.

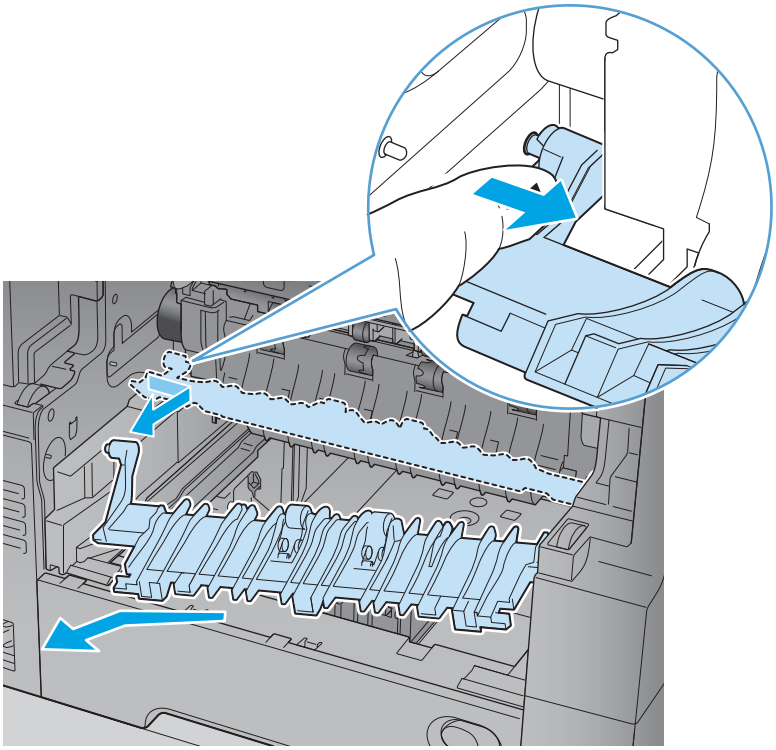
Figure 1-98 Remove the duplex accessory



Step 3: Remove the fuser-entrance guide

1. Flex the rear hinge-pin of the fuser-entrance guideuntil it clears the mounting hole in the product chassis.
2. Rotate the rear of the guide away of the product and slide the guide to the left to release the front hinge-pin. Remove the fuser-entrance guide.

Figure 1-99 Remove the fuser-entrance guide

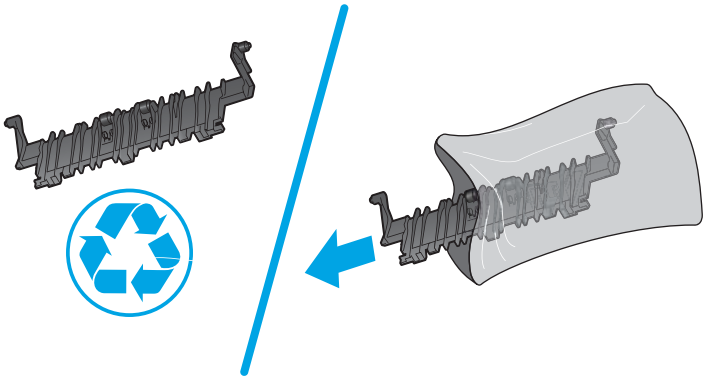


Step 4: Unpack the replacement fuser-entrance guide

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

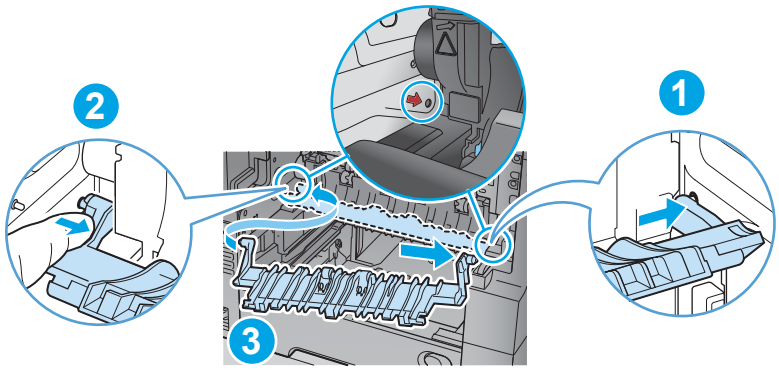
NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 5: Install the fuser-entrance guide

1. Position the front hinge-pin of the fuser-entrance guide in the mounting hole in the product chassis (callout 1).
2. Slightly flex the rear hinge pin (callout 2), rotate the guide into the product (callout 3) to install it.

Figure 1-100 Install the fuser-entrance guide



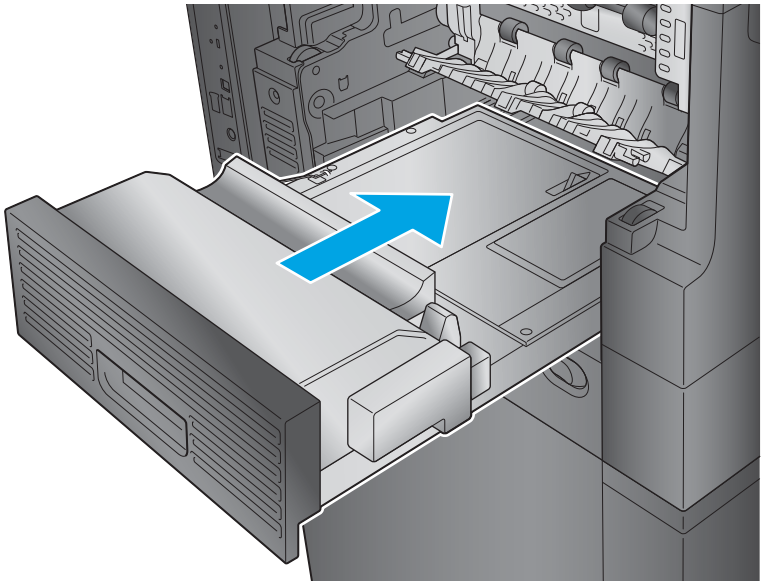
Step 6: Install the duplex accessory

▲ Position the duplex assembly on the product at a slight angle, engage the slide rails, and then slide the duplex assembly all of the way into the product to install it.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that the duplex accessory is full installed.

NOTE: After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed duplex accessory.

Figure 1-101 Install the duplex accessory

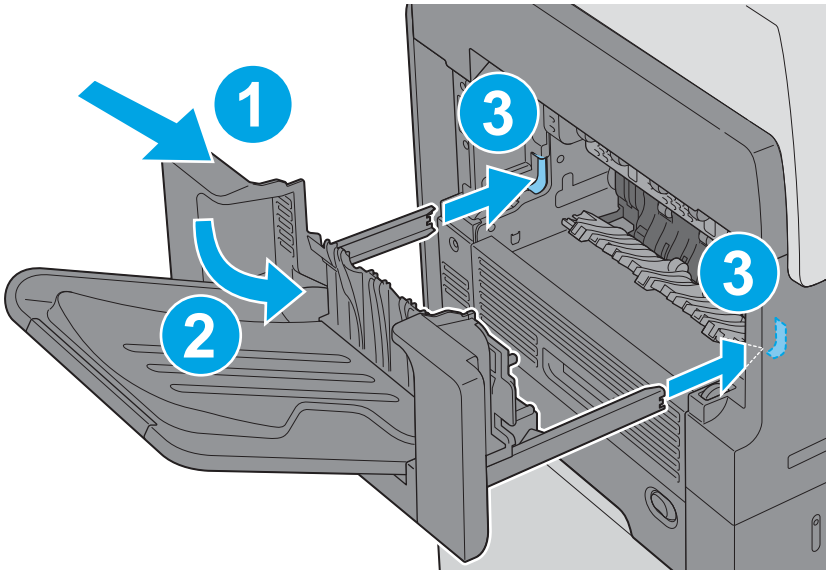


Step 7: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

▲ Do one of the following:

a. **M630dn and M630f**: Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), and then slide the bin base into the product.

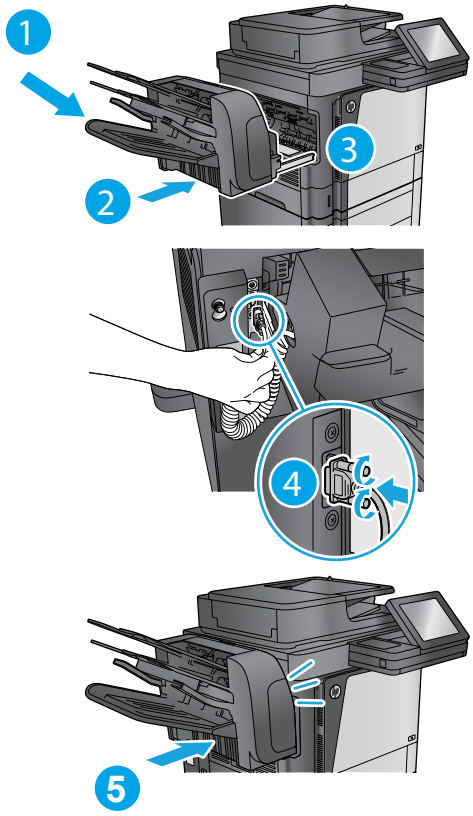
Figure 1-102 Install the output bin



b. **M630z**: Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), connect the interface cable (callout 4). and then slide the stapling mailbox (callout 5) into the product.

TIP: After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed stapling mailbox.

Figure 1-103 Install the stapling mailbox



Step 8: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Fuser

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox
- Step 2: Remove the duplex accessory
- Step 3: Remove the fuser-entrance guide
- Step 4: Remove the fuser
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement fuser
- Step 6: Install the fuser
- Step 7: Install the fuser-entrance guide
- Step 8: Install the duplex accessory
- Step 9: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox
- Step 10: Turn the product power on
- Step 11: Reset the supplies counter
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the fuser.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Fuser kit part numbers	
B3M77-67903	Fuser (110V) kit with instruction guide
B3M78-67903	Fuser (220V) kit with instruction guide

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

Required tools

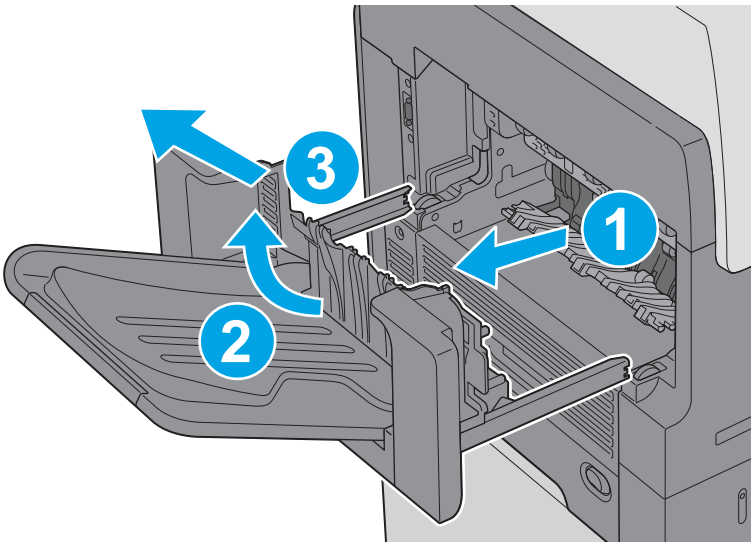
No special tools are required to install this kit.

Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

▲ Do one of the following steps:

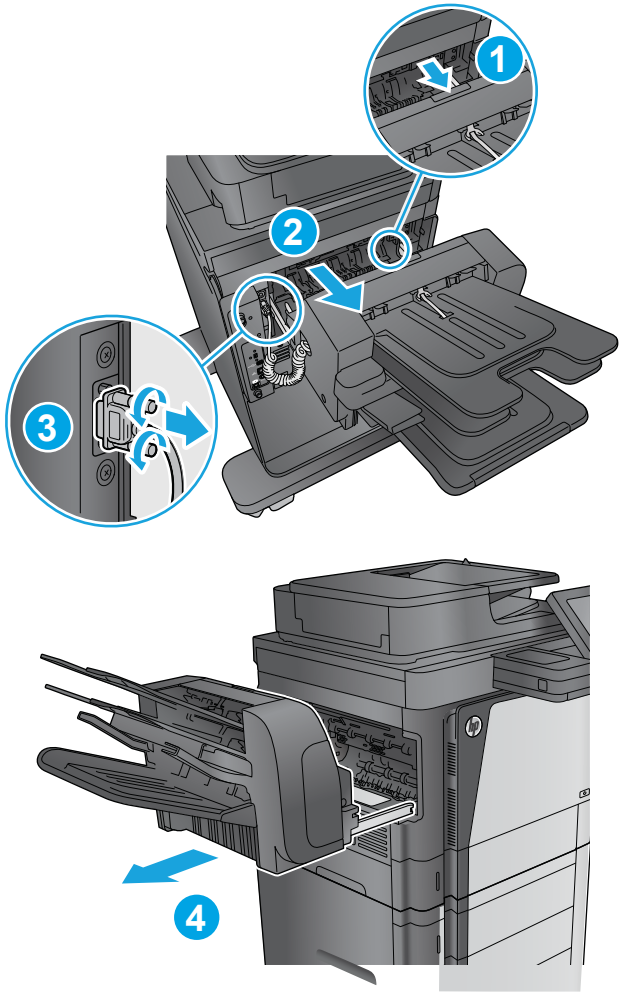
a. **M630dn and M630f**: Slide the bin base away from the product (callout 1) until it stops, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-104 Remove the output bin



b. **M630z**: Press the latch (callout 1), pull the stapling mailbox away from the product (callout 2), disconnect the interface cable (callout 3), and then remove the stapling mailbox (callout 4).

Figure 1-105 Remove the stapling mailbox

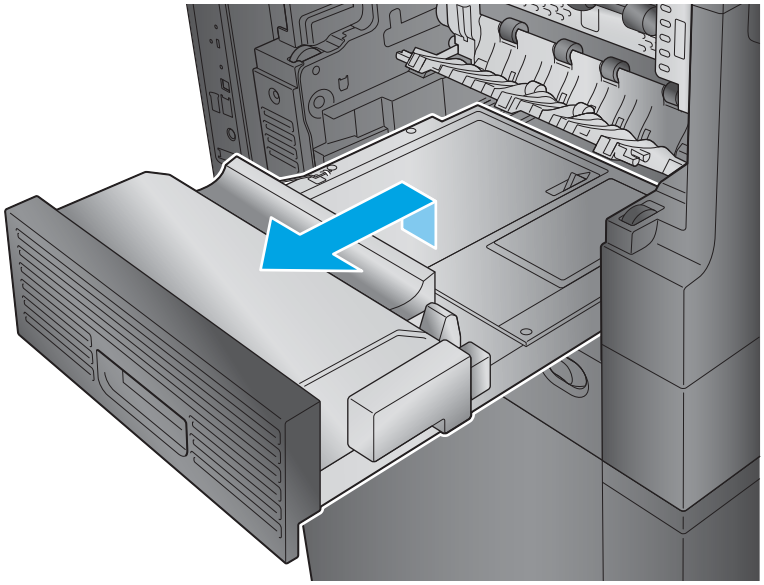


Step 2: Remove the duplex accessory

▲ Slide the duplex assembly away from the product, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails, and then remove it.

NOTE: Locate the duplexer at the left-hand side of the product.

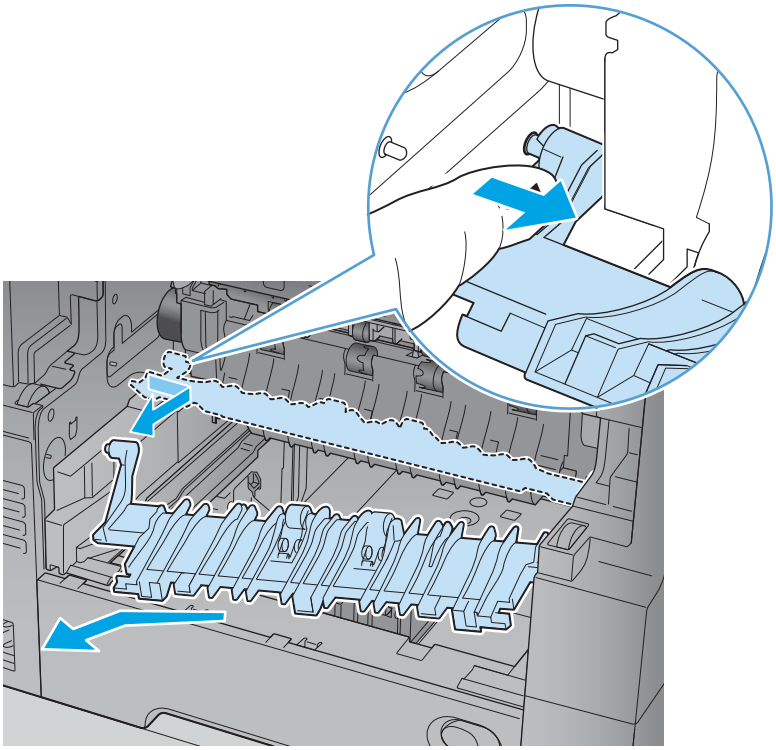
Figure 1-106 Remove the duplex accessory



Step 3: Remove the fuser-entrance guide

1. Flex the rear hinge-pin of the fuser-entrance guideuntil it clears the mounting hole in the product chassis.
2. Rotate the rear of the guide away of the product and slide the guide to the left to release the front hinge-pin. Remove the fuser-entrance guide.

Figure 1-107 Remove the fuser-entrance guide

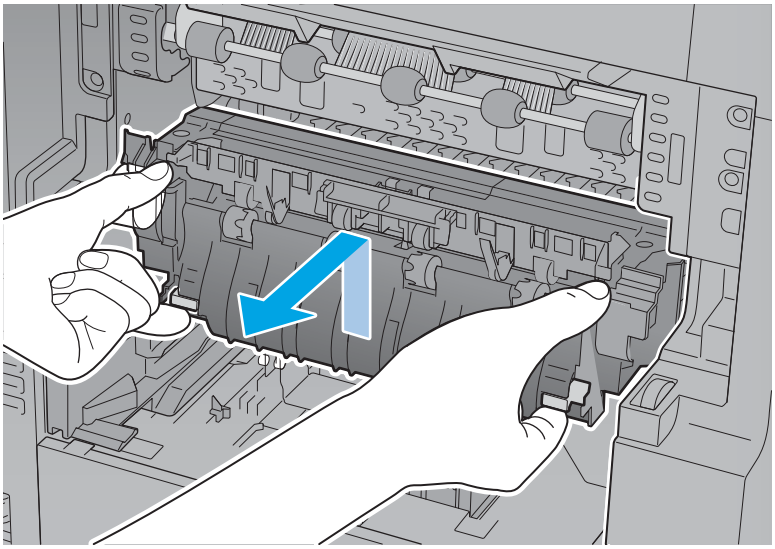


Step 4: Remove the fuser

▲ Squeeze the two blue tabs on the fuser to release it, and then slide it out of the product.

CAUTION: The fuser is very hot. After turning the product power off, allow the fuser to cool for at least 30 minutes before removing it.

Figure 1-108 Remove the fuser

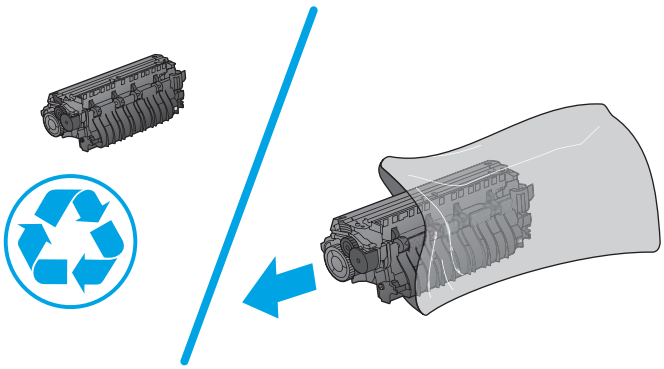


Step 5: Unpack the replacement fuser

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

Product return and recycling

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

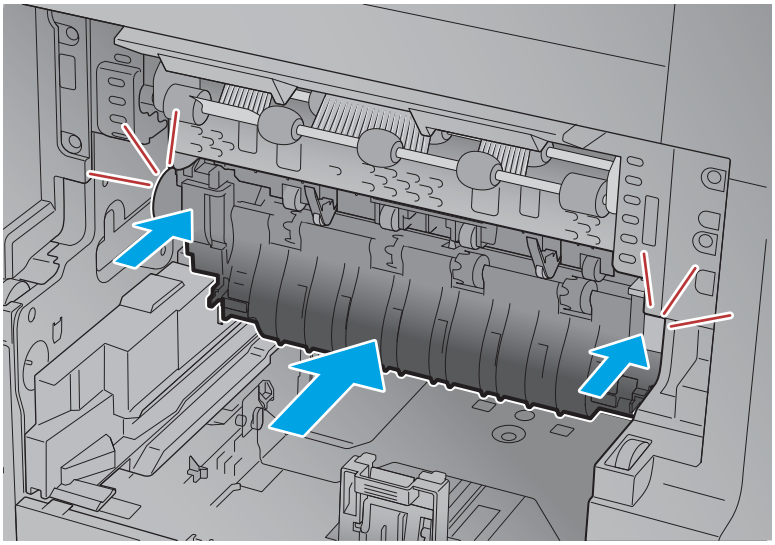


Step 6: Install the fuser

▲ Position the fuser in the product, push in to install it, and then make sure that it is fully seated.

TIP: When the fuser is fully seated, the two blue locking levers make an audible click.

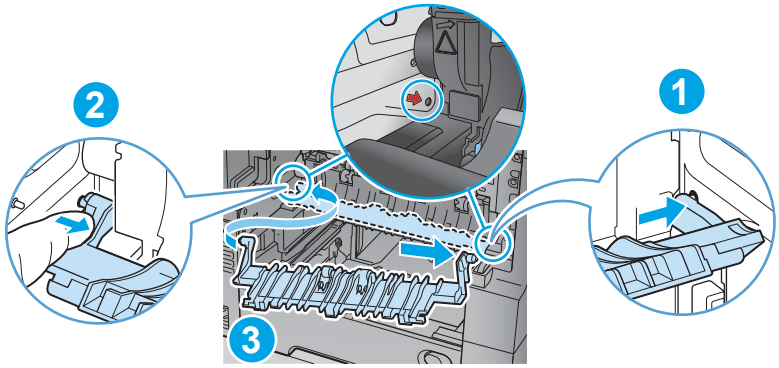
Figure 1-109 Install the fuser



Step 7: Install the fuser-entrance guide

1. Position the front hinge-pin of the fuser-entrance guide in the mounting hole in the product chassis (callout 1).
2. Slightly flex the rear hinge pin (callout 2), rotate the guide into the product (callout 3) to install it.

Figure 1-110 Install the fuser-entrance guide



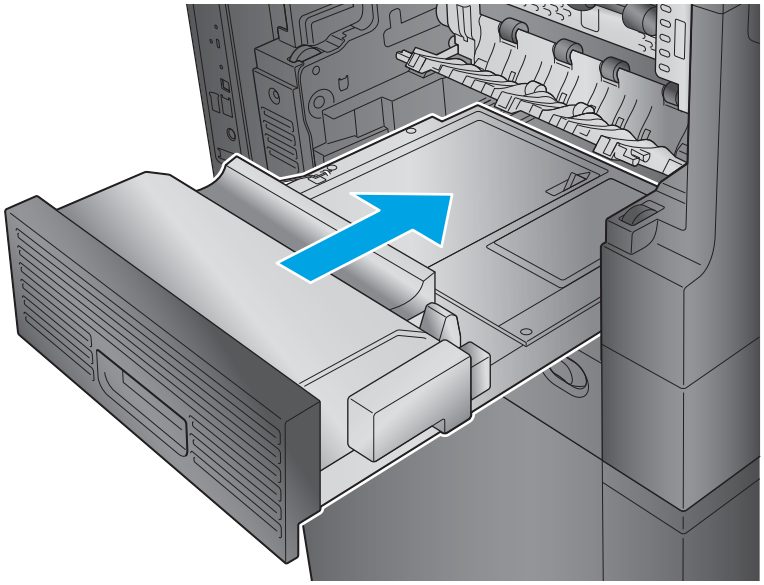
Step 8: Install the duplex accessory

▲ Position the duplex assembly on the product at a slight angle, engage the slide rails, and then slide the duplex assembly all of the way into the product to install it.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that the duplex accessory is full installed.

NOTE: After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed duplex accessory.

Figure 1-111 Install the duplex accessory

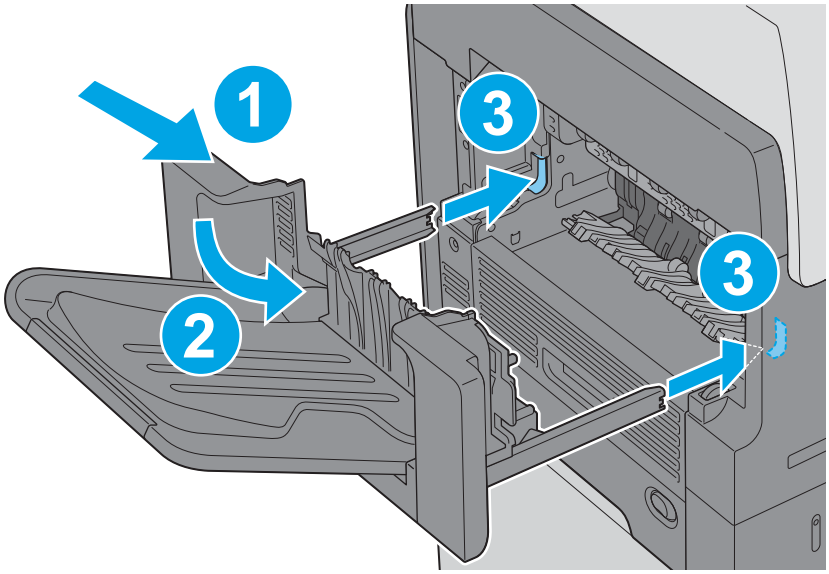


Step 9: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

▲ Do one of the following:

a. **M630dn and M630f**: Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), and then slide the bin base into the product.

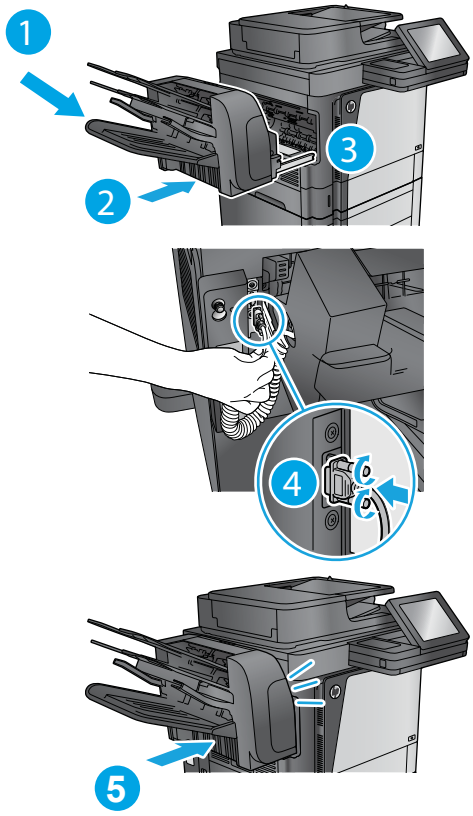
Figure 1-112 Install the output bin



b. **M630z**: Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), connect the interface cable (callout 4). and then slide the stapling mailbox (callout 5) into the product.

TIP: After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed stapling mailbox.

Figure 1-113 Install the stapling mailbox



Step 10: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Step 11: Reset the supplies counter

1. From the Home screen on the control panel, scroll to and touch the Administration button.
2. Open the following menus:

- Manage Supplies
- Reset Supplies
- New Maintenance Kit

3. Select the Reset item to reset the spplies counter.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Control-panel assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the control panel
- Step 2: Remove the keyboard (M630z only)
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement control-panel assembly
- Step 4: Install the keyboard (M630z only)
- Step 5: Install the control-panel assembly
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides instructions about removing and replacing the control panel.

The figures in these steps show the M630z model control panel and keyboard. However, this procedure for removing the control panel is correct for all models.

NOTE: The M630dn and M630f models do not have the keyboard or the keyboard FFC installed.

Before servicing

To order a replacement assembly, use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product. To order the kit, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Control panel kit part number	
B3G84-67908	Control panel kit with instruction guide

Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

Step 1: Remove the control panel

1. Do the following steps:

   a. Turn off the product.

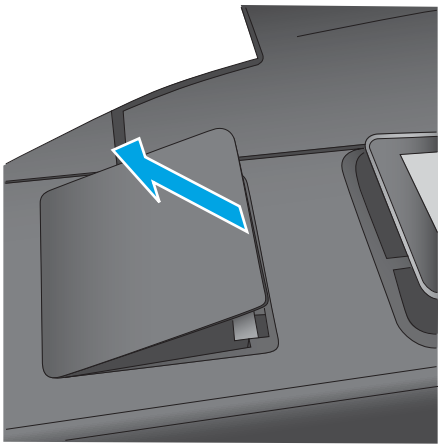
   b. Disconnect the power cord.

   WARNING! Turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

2. **Optional step**: Locate and open the Hardware Integration Pocket (HIP) next to the control-panel display. The HIP is covered by a rectangular cover that is retained by clips along its long edges. Using a thin, flat-blade screwdriver along either short edge, gently pry the cover off. If a third-party device is installed under this cover, disconnect and remove the device.

NOTE: Set this device aside. It will be installed on the replacement control panel.

Figure 1-114 Remove third party devices



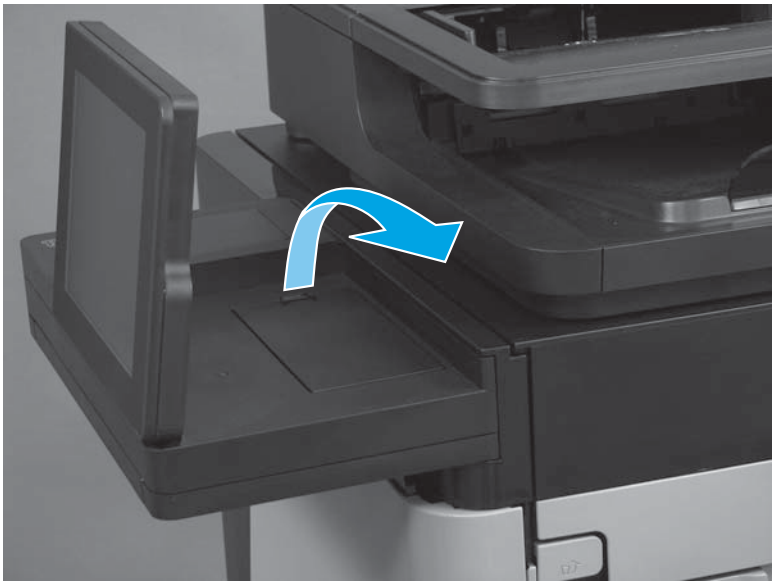
3. Tilt the control panel up.

Figure 1-115 Tilt the control panel up



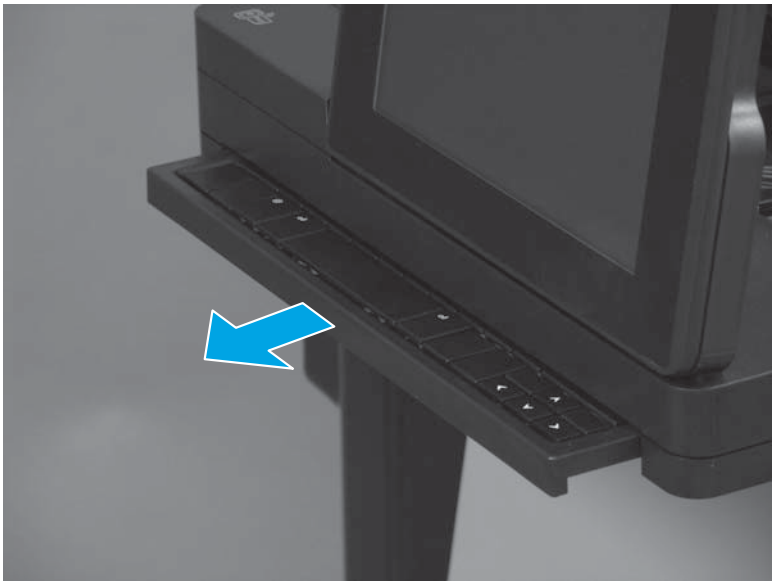
4. Release one tab, and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-116 Remove the cover



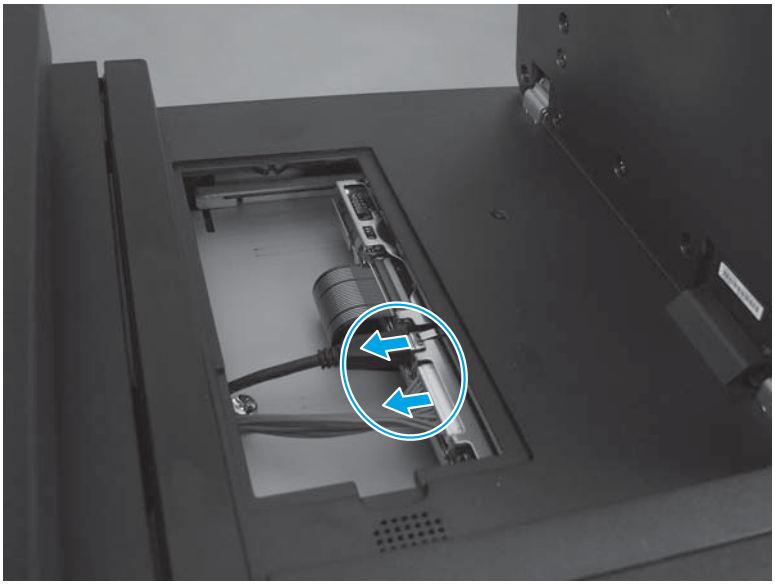
5. **M630z only**: Slide the keyboard about halfway out of the product.

Figure 1-117 Slide the keyboard out



6. Disconnect two connectors.

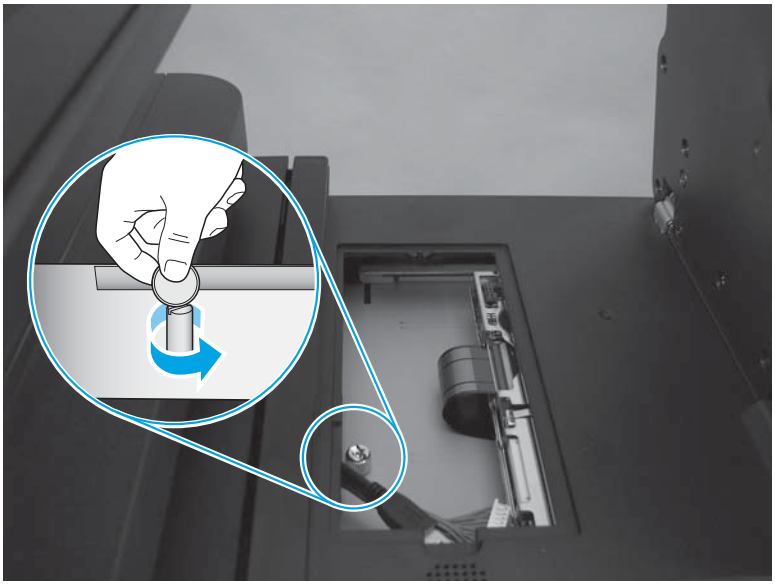
Figure 1-118 Disconnect two connectors



7. Remove one screw.

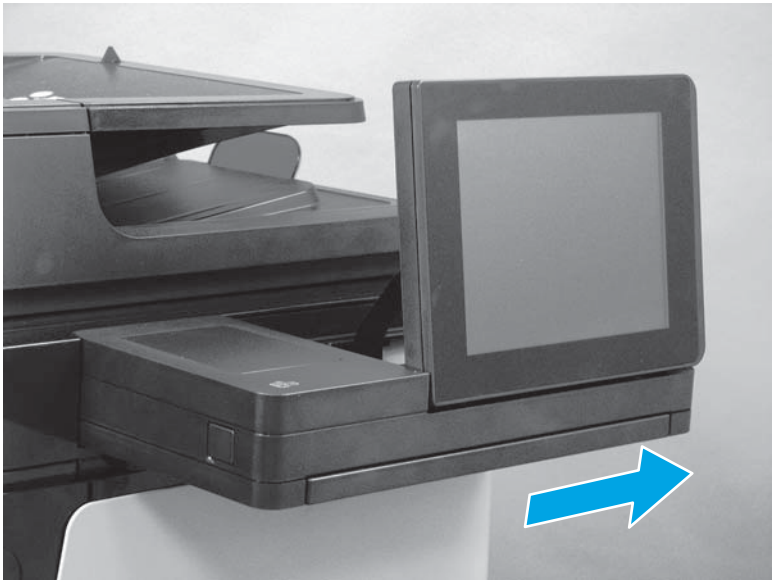
TIP: Use the edge of a coin to loosen the screw.

Figure 1-119 Remove one screw



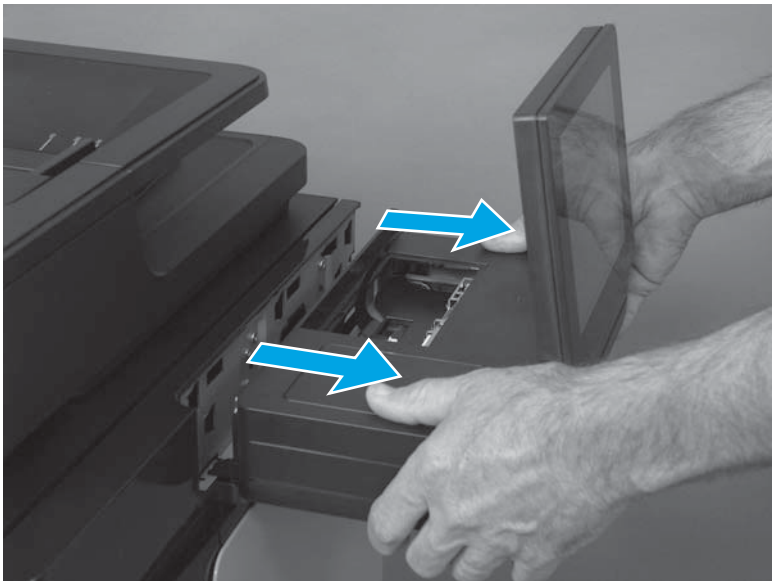
8. Slide the control panel toward the right door.

Figure 1-120 Slide the control panel to the right



9. Slide the control panel towards the front of the product to remove it.

Figure 1-121 Remove the control-panel assembly



Step 2: Remove the keyboard (M630z only)

If your product does not have a keyboard, go to Step 3: Unpack the replacement control-panel assembly on page 101.

1. Place the control-panel assembly on a flat surface.

Figure 1-122 Place the control-panel assembly on a flat surface

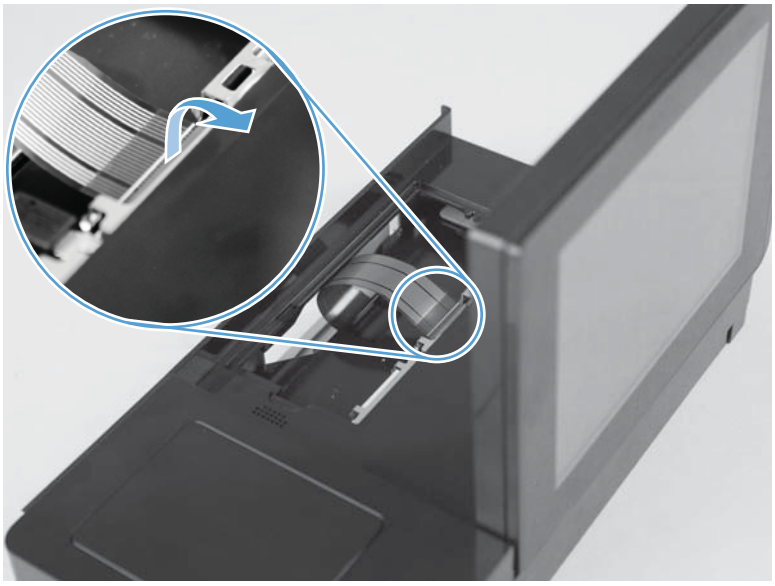


2. Open the hinged latch to release the flat cable.

CAUTION: Be careful. Do not dislodge the latch from the connector when opening it.

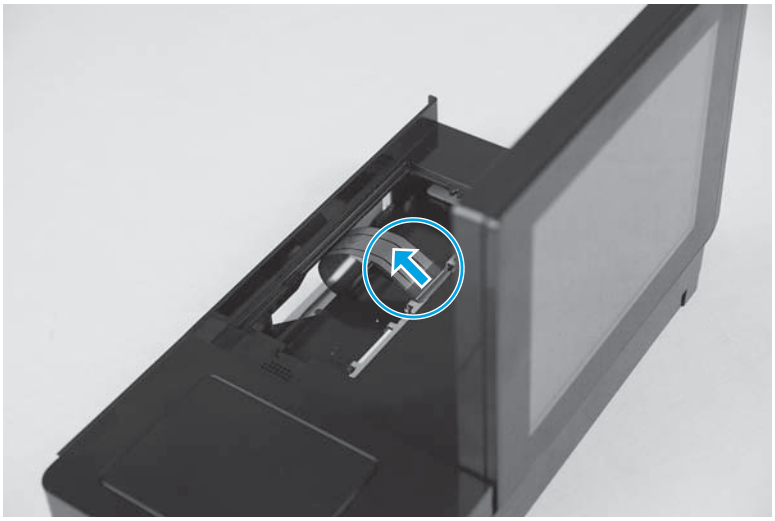
IMPORTANT: This connector is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure a flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 1-123 Release the flat cable



3. Disconnect the flat cable.

Figure 1-124 Disconnect the flat cable



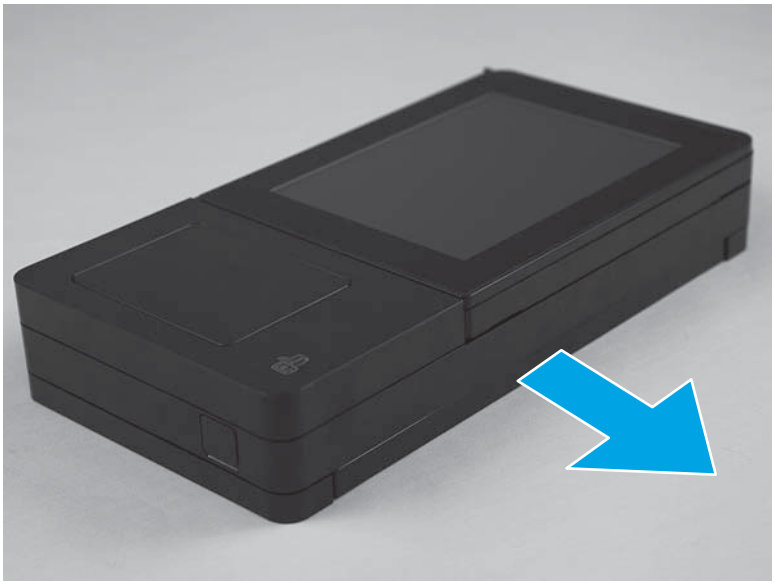
4. Tilt the screen down until it lays flat.

Figure 1-125 Tilt the screen down



5. Slide the keyboard tray all of the way out of the control panel until it stops.

Figure 1-126 Slide the keyboard tray out



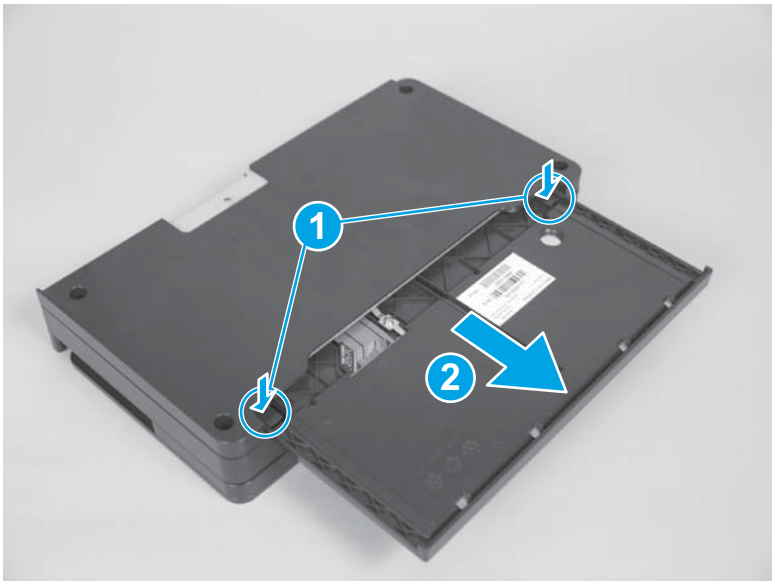
6. Turn the control panel face-down on the surface.

Figure 1-127 Turn the control panel face-down



7. Release and hold two tabs (callout 1) while sliding the keyboard tray away from the control panel (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 1-128 Remove the keyboard



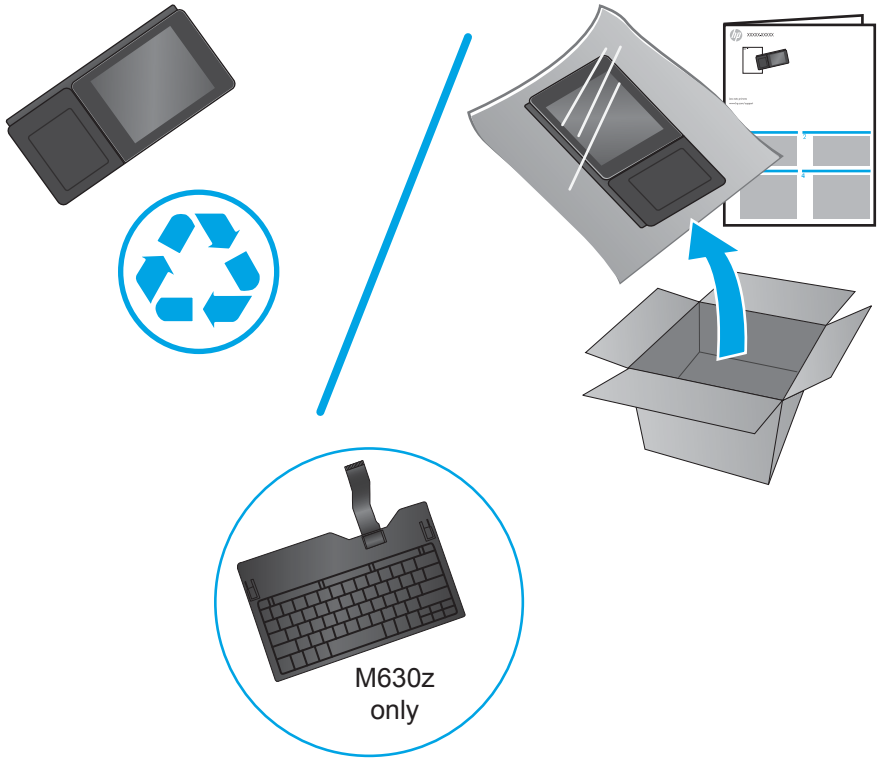
Step 3: Unpack the replacement control-panel assembly

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

Figure 1-129 Recycle and unpack



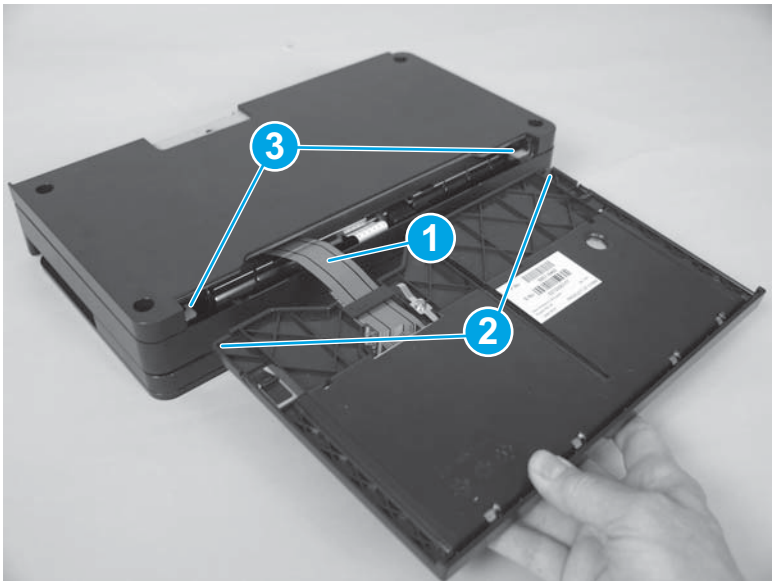
NOTE: The keyboard is not included with the replacement control-panel kit.

Step 4: Install the keyboard (M630z only)

If your product does not have a keyboard, go to Step 5: Install the control-panel assembly on page 105.

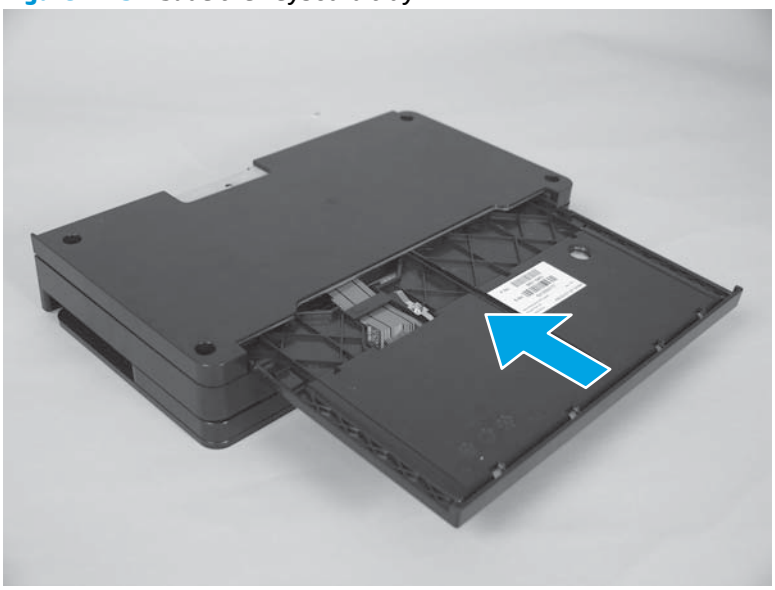
1. Turn the keyboard tray upside down, and then position the flat cable (callout 1) inside the tray cavity. Align the edges of the tray (callout 2) with the slots in the control panel (callout 3).

Figure 1-130 Align the edges of the tray with the slots in the control panel



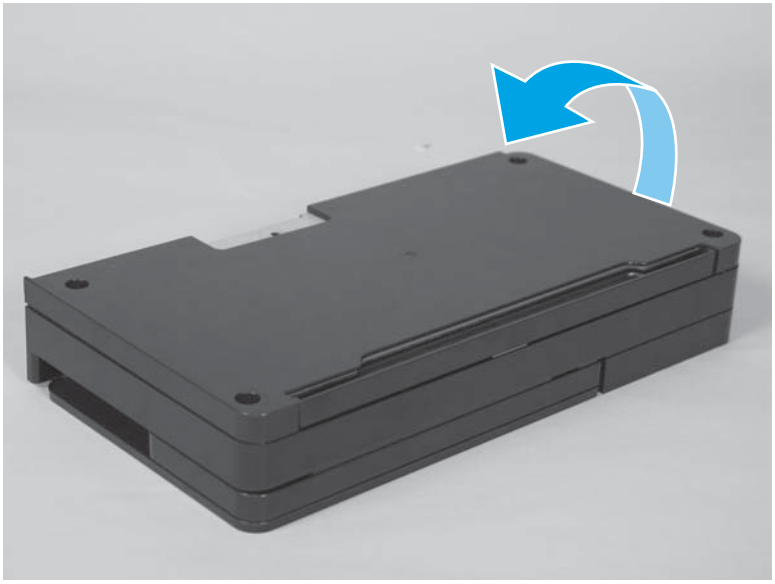
2. Slide the keyboard tray all the way into the control panel.

Figure 1-131 Slide the keyboard tray in



3. Turn the control panel face-up.

Figure 1-132 Turn the control panel face-up



4. Tilt the screen up.

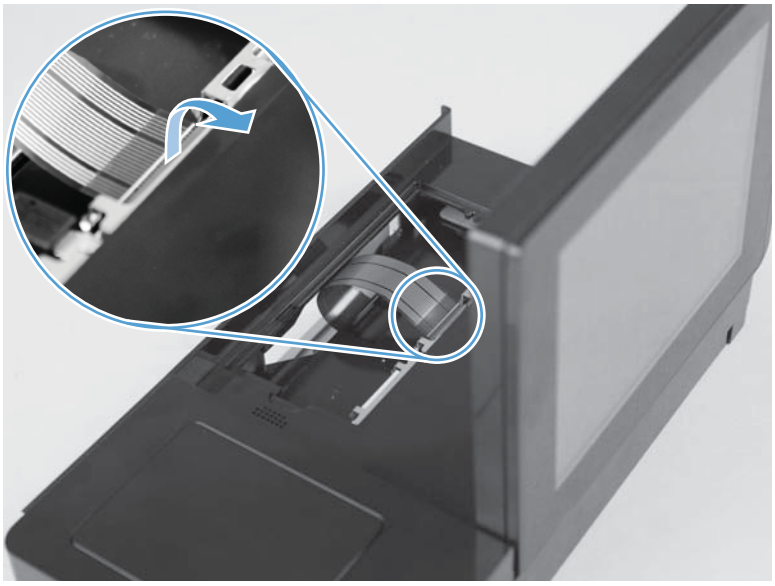
Figure 1-133 Tilt the screen up



5. Open the hinged latch, and then position the flat cable in the connector.

CAUTION: Be careful. Do not dislodge the latch from the connector when opening it.

Figure 1-134 Position the flat cable in the connector

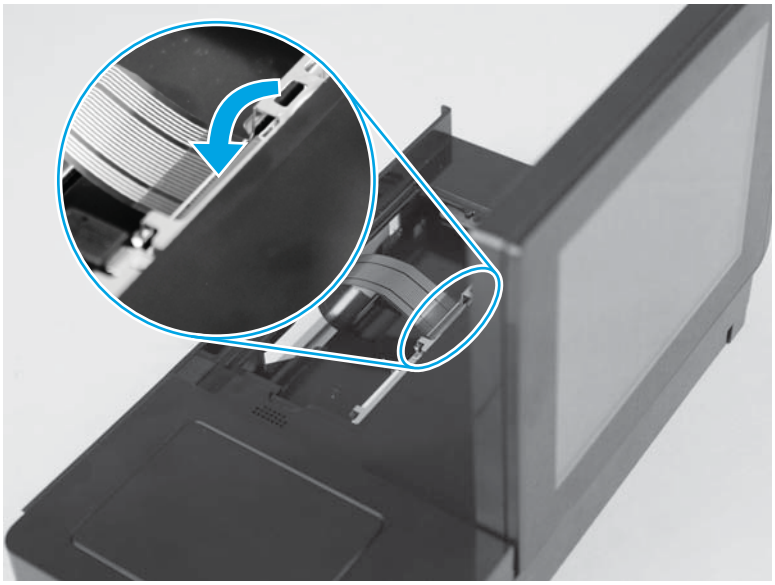


6. Use a finger to carefully close the latch to lock the flat cable into position.

CAUTION: Be careful. Do not dislodge the latch from the connector when closing it.

IMPORTANT: This connector is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure a flat cable. When the flat cable is reinstalled, fully insert the flat cable in the connector, and then close the hinged retainer to lock the flat cable into the connector and provide proper electrical contact. If the flat cable is not locked into the connector, no electrical contact will occur.

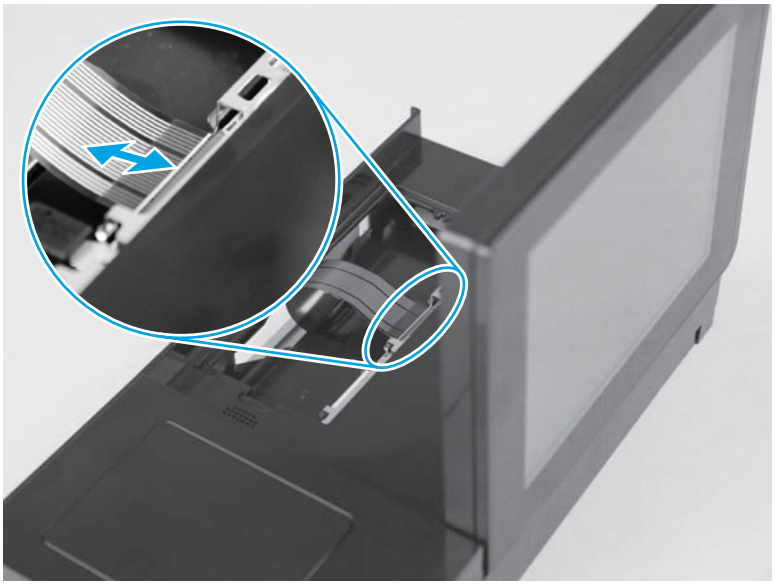
Figure 1-135 Close the latch to lock the flat cable into position



7. Slightly pull on the flat cable to verify that it is securely fastened in the connector.

⚠ **CAUTION:** Be careful. Do not use full force to pull on the flat cable. A slight pull on the cable is sufficient to verify that it is securely fastened.

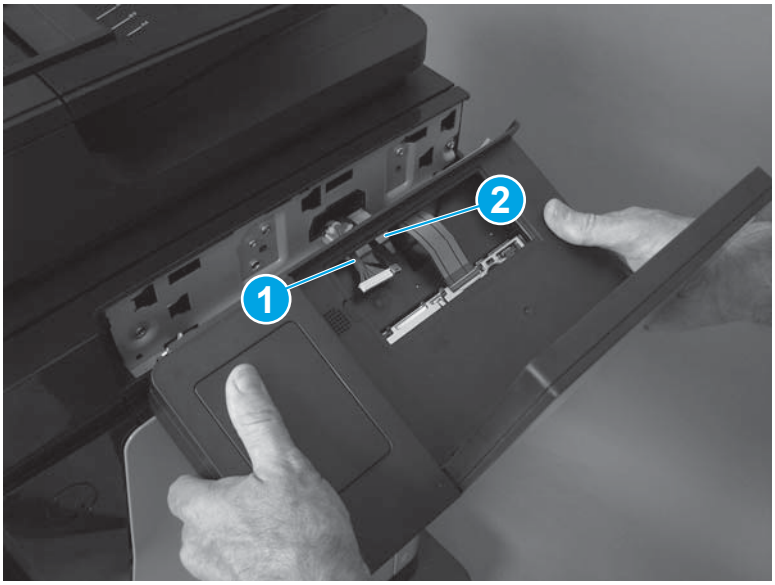
Figure 1-136 Verify that the cable is securely fastened in the connector



Step 5: Install the control-panel assembly

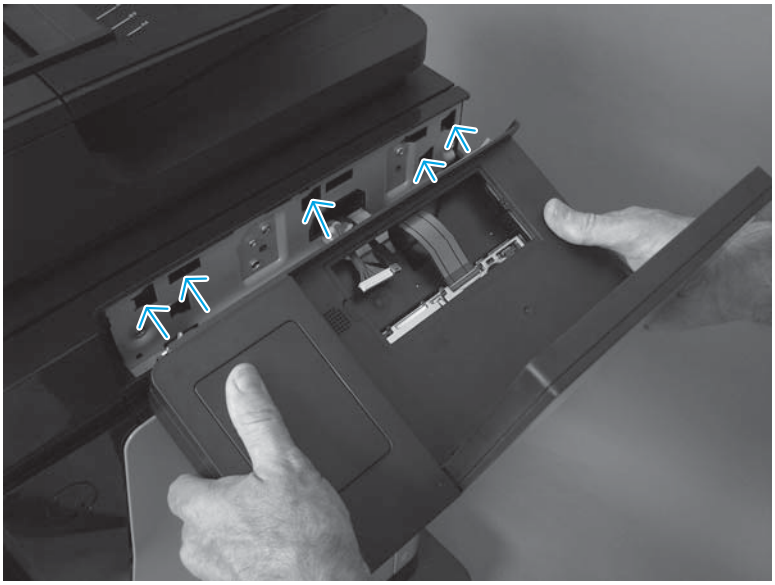
1. Insert the cable and wire harness (callout 1) into the opening at the back of the control panel (callout 2).

Figure 1-137 Install the cable and wire harness



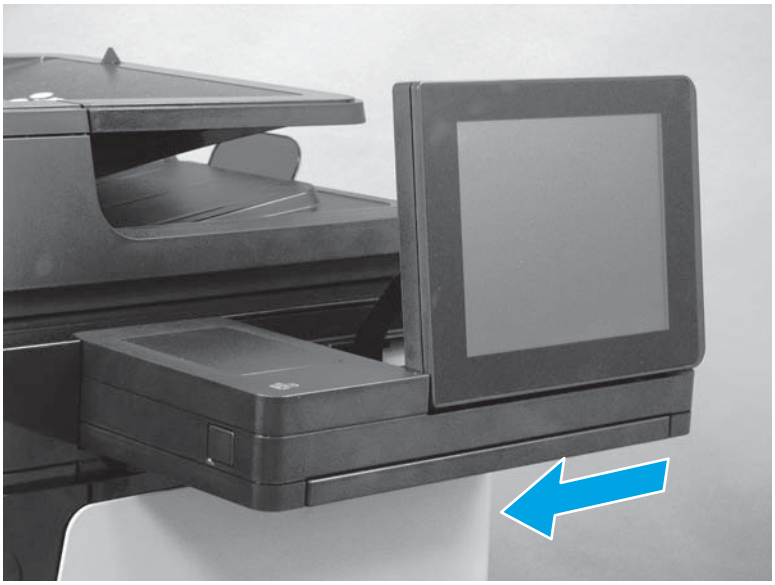
2. Insert the tabs on the control panel into the slots on the product.

Figure 1-138 Insert the tabs on the control panel into the slots



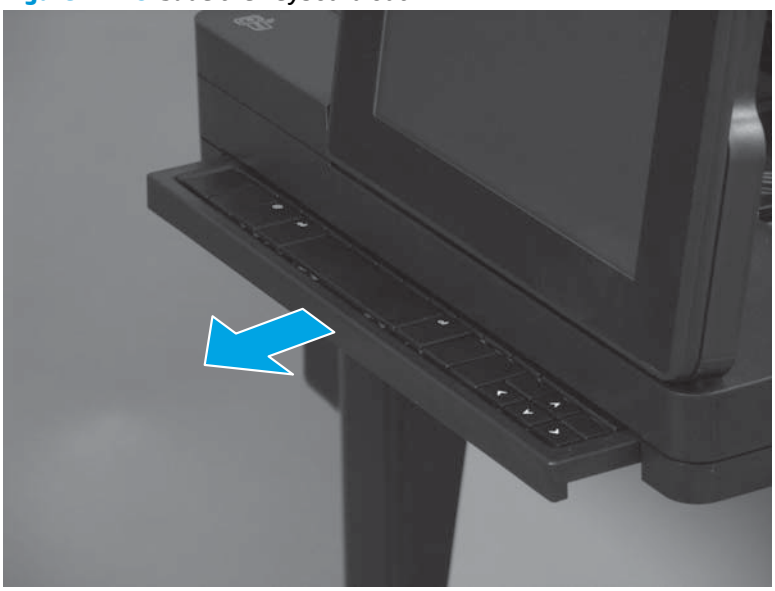
3. Slide the control panel toward the left door to secure it to the product.

Figure 1-139 Slide the control panel to the left



4. **M630z only**: Slide the keyboard about halfway out of the product.

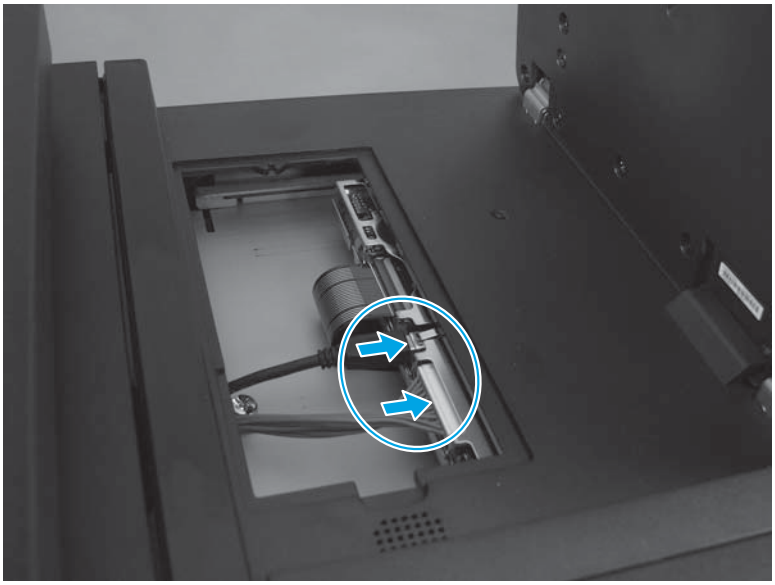
Figure 1-140 Slide the keyboard out



5. Connect two connectors.

CAUTION: To avoid damaging the black USB cable, make sure that the USB symbol (⇤) on the connector at the end of the cable is facing up before installing it in the control panel.

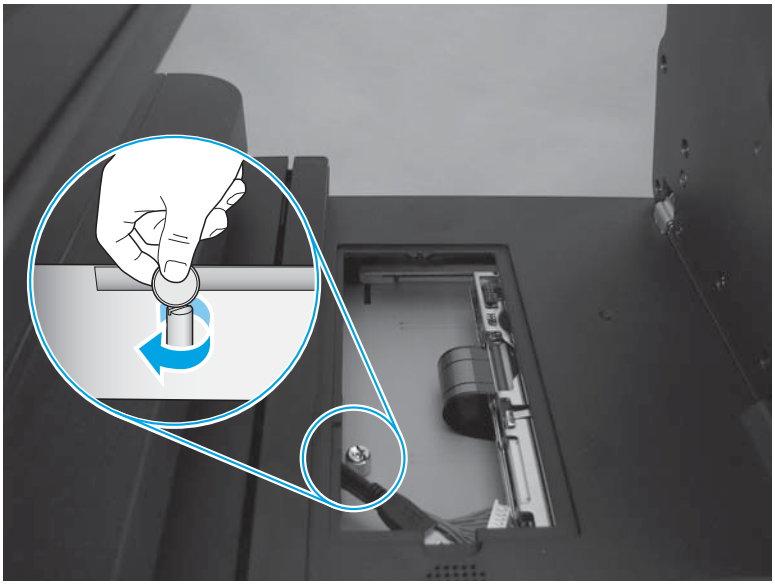
Figure 1-141 Connect two connectors



6. Install the screw.

TIP: Use the edge of a coin to tighten the screw.

Figure 1-142 Install the screw



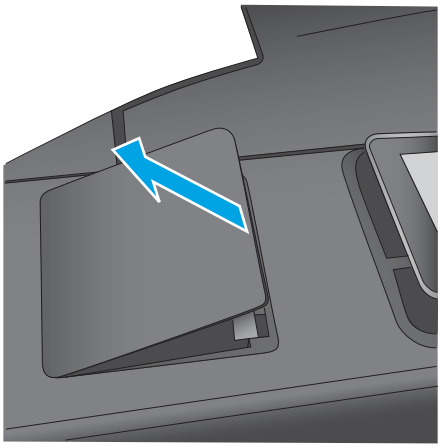
7. Install the cover.

Figure 1-143 Install the cover



8. **Optional step**: If a device was removed from the Hardware Integration Pocket (HIP), open the HIP cover on the replacement control panel, and then reinstall the device.

Figure 1-144 Install third party devices



9. Do the following steps:

   a. Reconnect any removed interface cables.

   b. Plug in the power cord.

   c. Turn on the product.

   d. **M630z only**: Check to make sure that the keyboard functions correctly. If it does not, make sure that the flat cable is installed correctly in the connector.

Figure 1-145 Test the keyboard



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Keyboard assembly (M630z only)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the control panel
- Step 2: Remove the keyboard
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement keyboard assembly
- Step 4: Install the keyboard
- Step 5: Install the control-panel assembly
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides instructions about removing and replacing the keyboard assembly.

Before servicing

To order a replacement assembly, use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product. To order the kit, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Keyboard assembly part numbers	
5851-5380	US keyboard assembly kit with instruction guide
5851-5008	UK keyboard assembly kit with instruction guide

Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

Step 1: Remove the control panel

1. Do the following:

   a. Turn off the product.

   b. Disconnect the power cord.

   ⚠ **WARNING!** Turn the product off, wait five seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

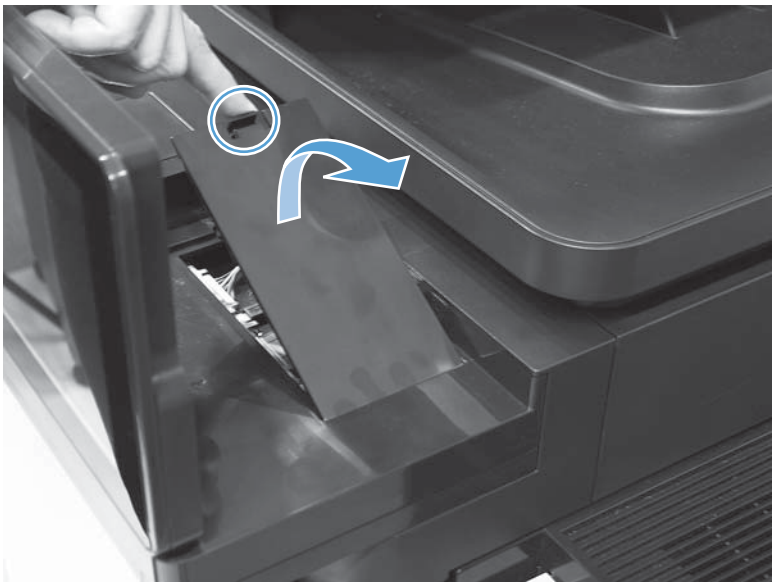
2. Tilt the control panel up.

Figure 1-146 Tilt the control panel up



3. Release one tab, and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-147 Remove the cover



4. Slide the keyboard about halfway out of the product.

Figure 1-148 Slide the keyboard out



5. Disconnect two connectors.

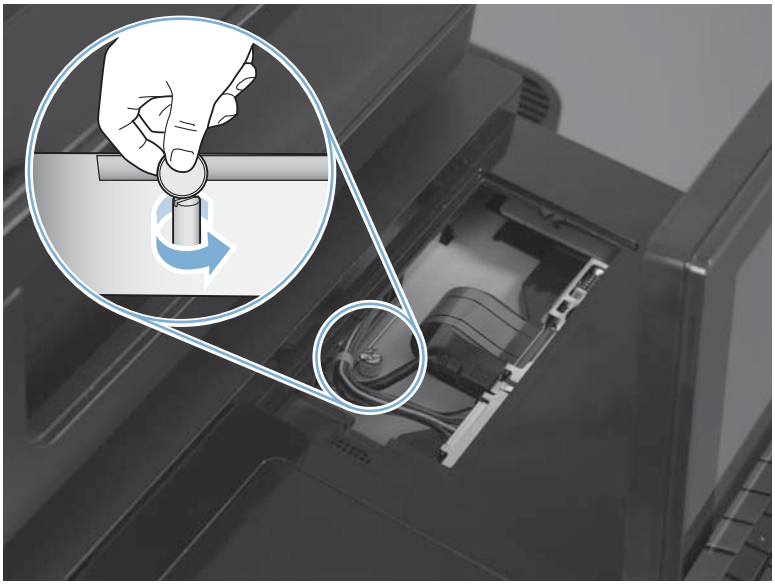
Figure 1-149 Disconnect two connectors



6. Remove one screw.

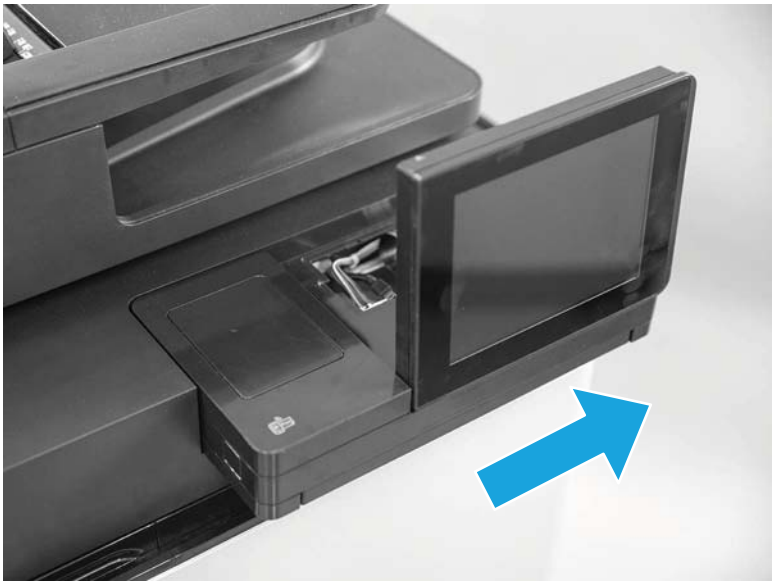
TIP: Use the edge of a coin to loosen the screw.

Figure 1-150 Remove one screw



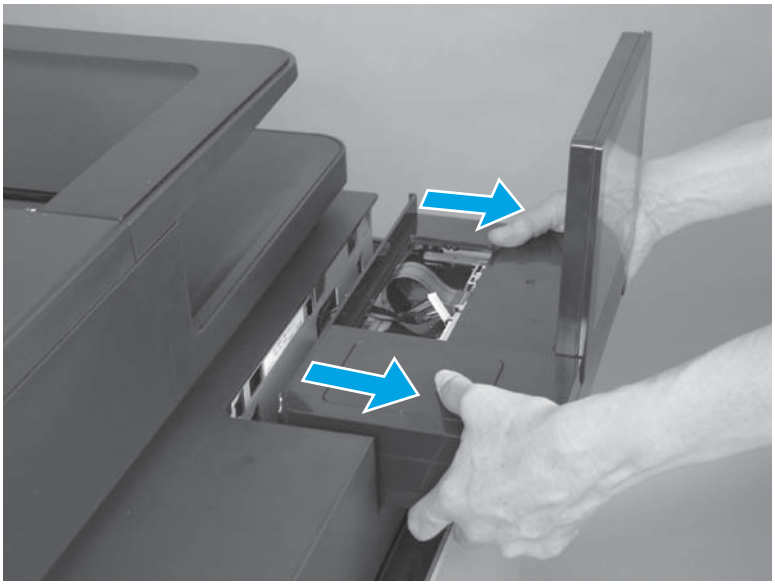
7. Slide the control panel toward the right door.

Figure 1-151 Slide the control panel to the right



8. Slide the control panel towards the front of the product to remove it.

Figure 1-152 Remove the control-panel assembly



Step 2: Remove the keyboard

1. Place the control-panel assembly on a flat surface.

Figure 1-153 Place the control-panel assembly on a flat surface

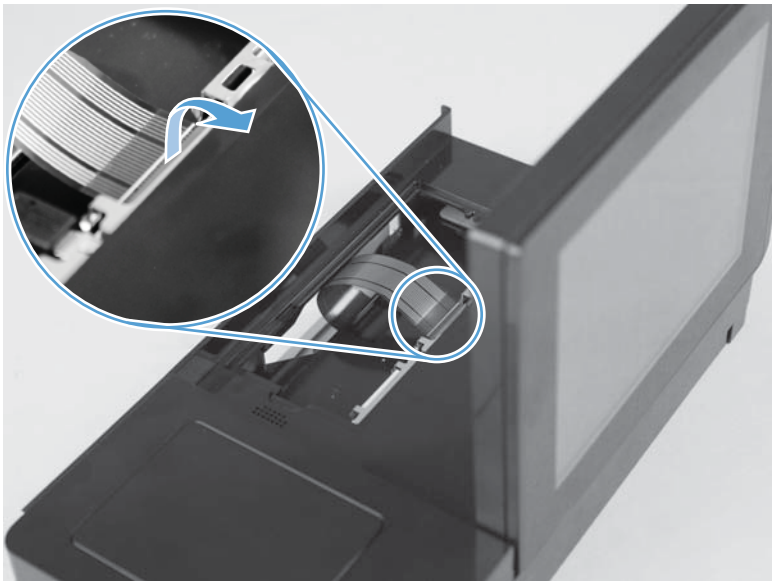


2. Open the hinged latch to release the flat cable.

CAUTION: Be careful. Do not dislodge the latch from the connector when opening it.

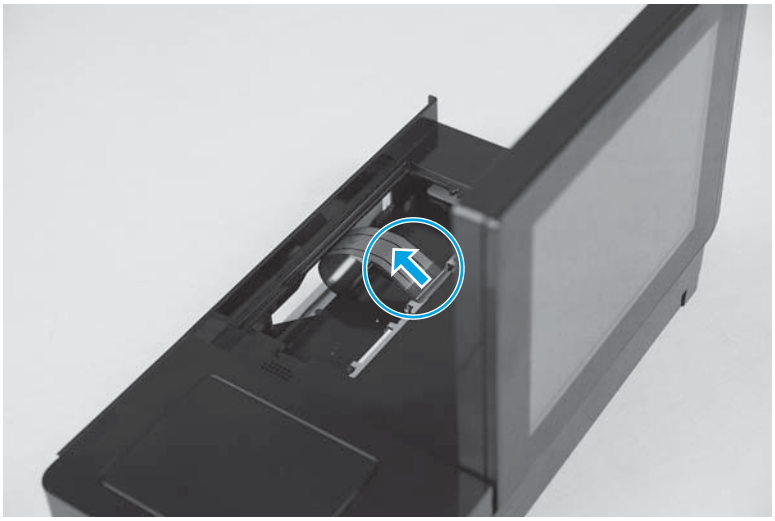
IMPORTANT: This connector is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure a flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 1-154 Release the flat cable



3. Disconnect the flat cable.

Figure 1-155 Disconnect the flat cable



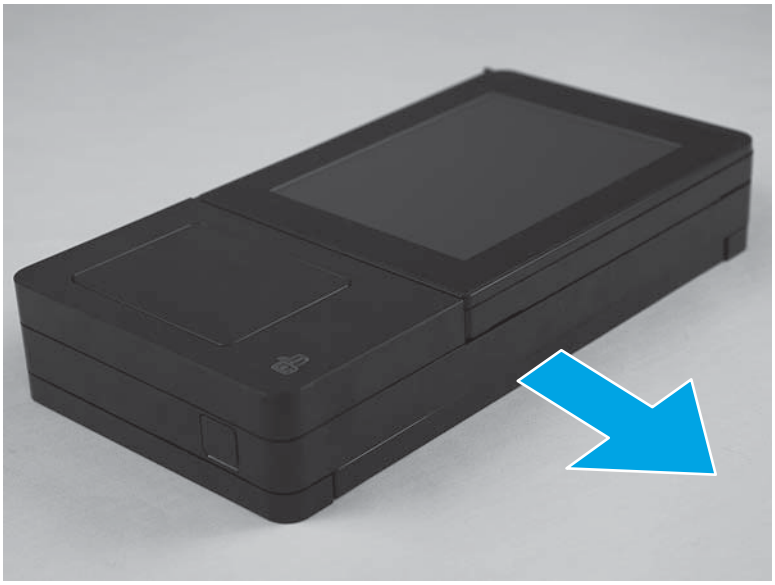
4. Tilt the screen down until it lays flat.

Figure 1-156 Tilt the screen down



5. Slide the keyboard tray all of the way out of the control panel until it stops.

Figure 1-157 Slide the keyboard tray out



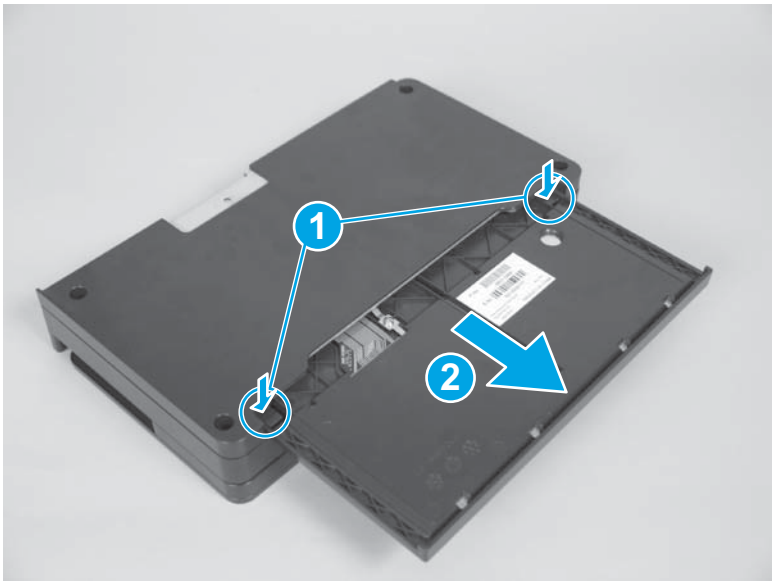
6. Turn the control panel face-down on the surface.

Figure 1-158 Turn the control panel face-down



7. Release and hold two tabs (callout 1) while sliding the keyboard tray away from the control panel (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 1-159 Remove the keyboard

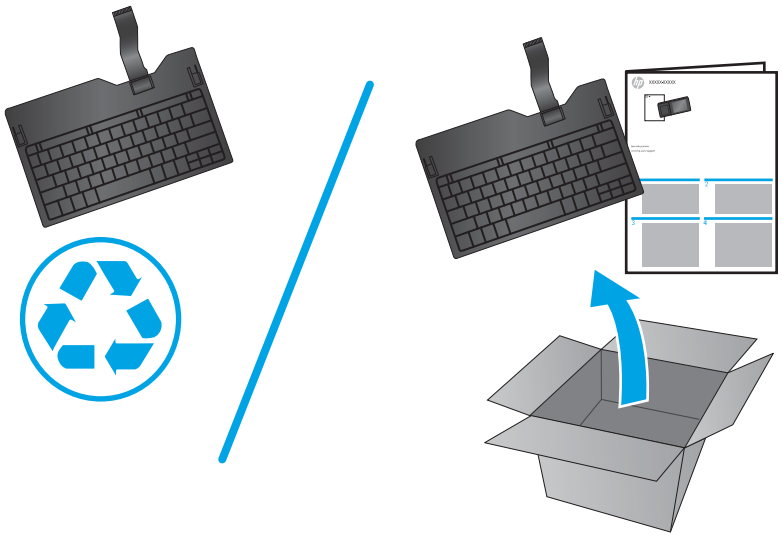


Step 3: Unpack the replacement keyboard assembly

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling

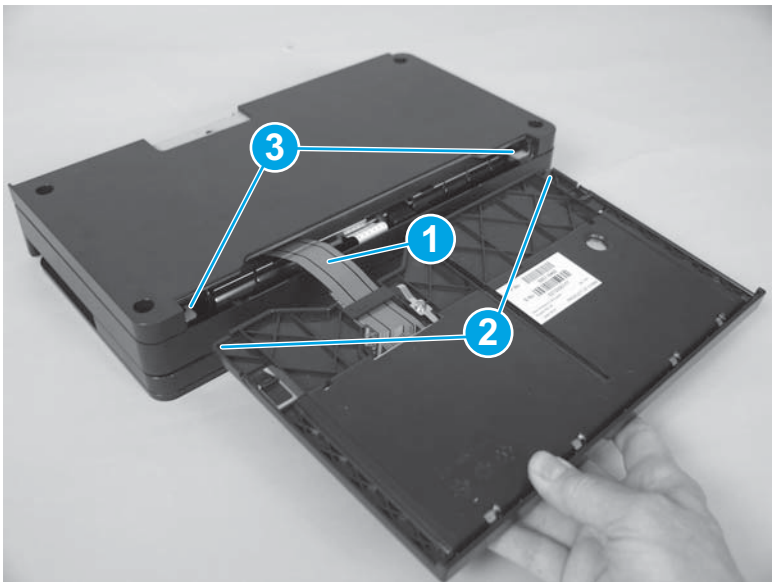
NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 4: Install the keyboard

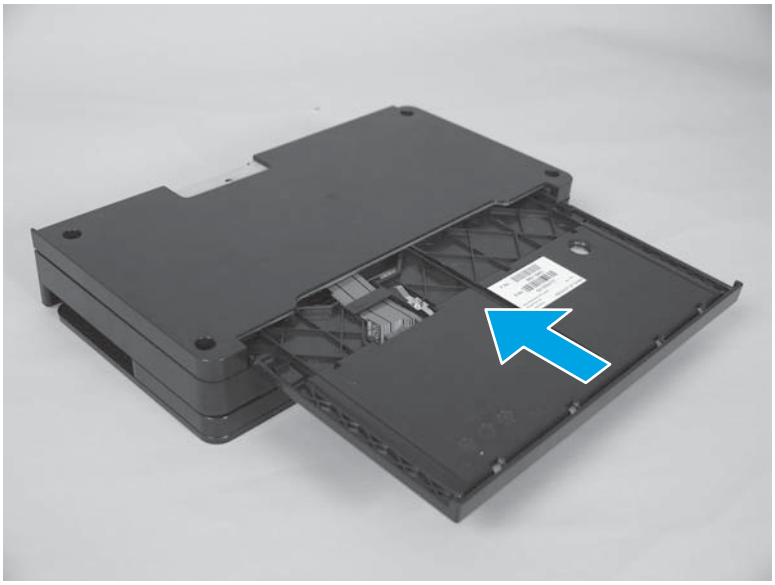
1. Turn the keyboard tray upside down, and then position the flat cable (callout 1) inside the tray cavity. Align the edges of the tray (callout 2) with the slots in the control panel (callout 3).

Figure 1-160 Align the edges of the tray with the slots in the control panel



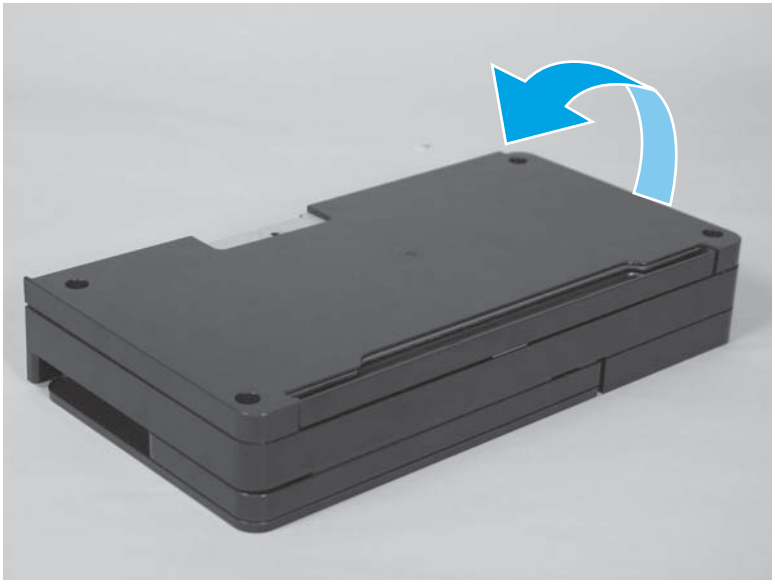
2. Slide the keyboard tray all the way into the control panel.

Figure 1-161 Slide the keyboard tray in



3. Turn the control panel face-up.

Figure 1-162 Turn the control panel face-up



4. Tilt the screen up.

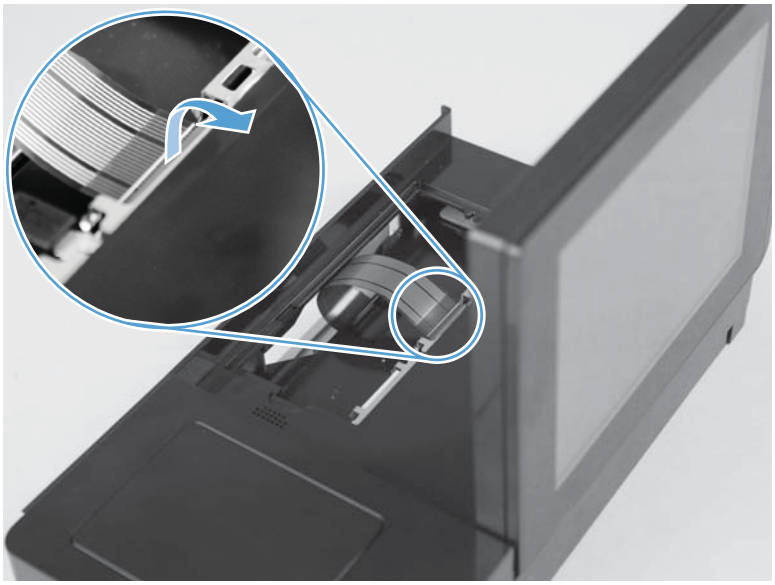
Figure 1-163 Tilt the screen up



5. Open the hinged latch, and then position the flat cable in the connector.

CAUTION: Be careful. Do not dislodge the latch from the connector when opening it.

Figure 1-164 Position the flat cable in the connector

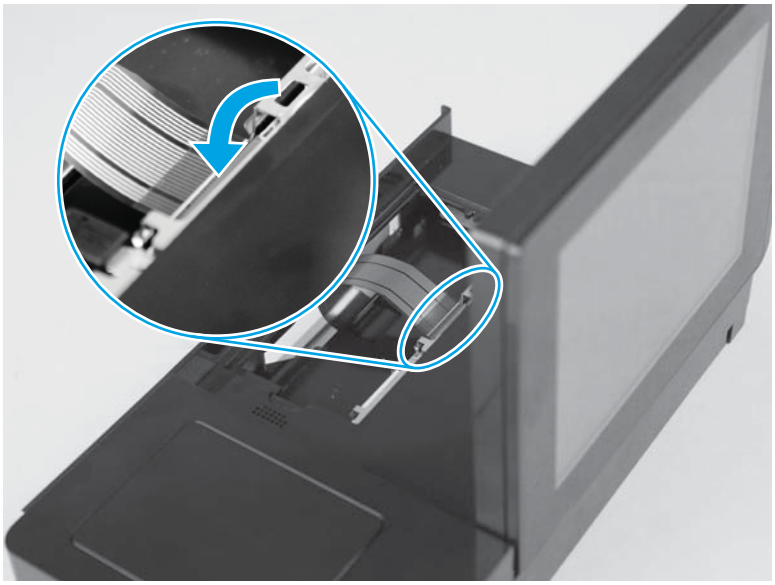


6. Use a finger to carefully close the latch to lock the flat cable into position.

CAUTION: Be careful. Do not dislodge the latch from the connector when closing it.

IMPORTANT: This connector is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure a flat cable. When the flat cable is reinstalled, fully insert the flat cable in the connector, and then close the hinged retainer to lock the flat cable into the connector and provide proper electrical contact. If the flat cable is not locked into the connector, no electrical contact will occur.

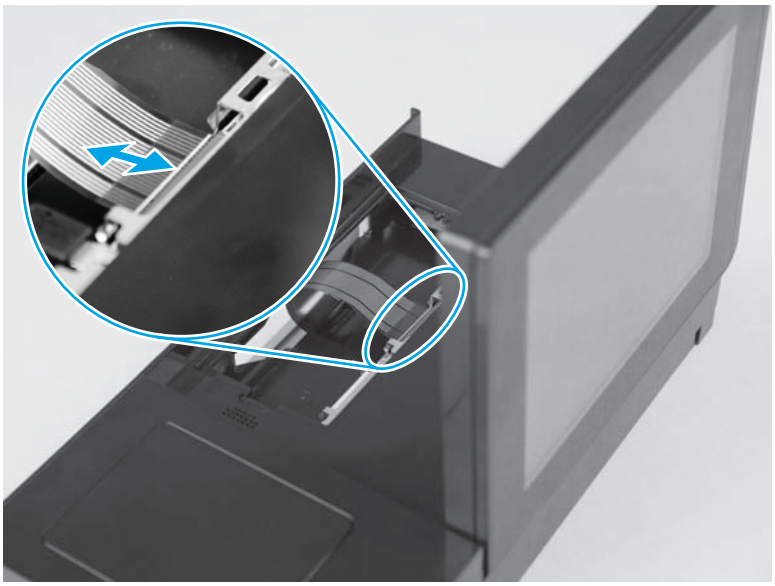
Figure 1-165 Close the latch to lock the flat cable into position



7. Slightly pull on the flat cable to verify that it is securely fastened in the connector.

CAUTION: Be careful. Do not use full force to pull on the flat cable. A slight pull on the cable is sufficient to verify that it is securely fastened.

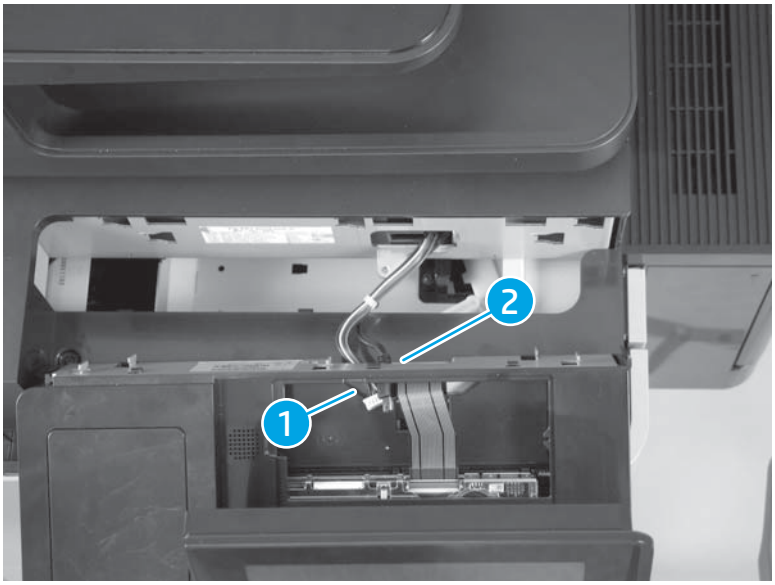
Figure 1-166 Verify that the cable is securely fastened in the connector



Step 5: Install the control-panel assembly

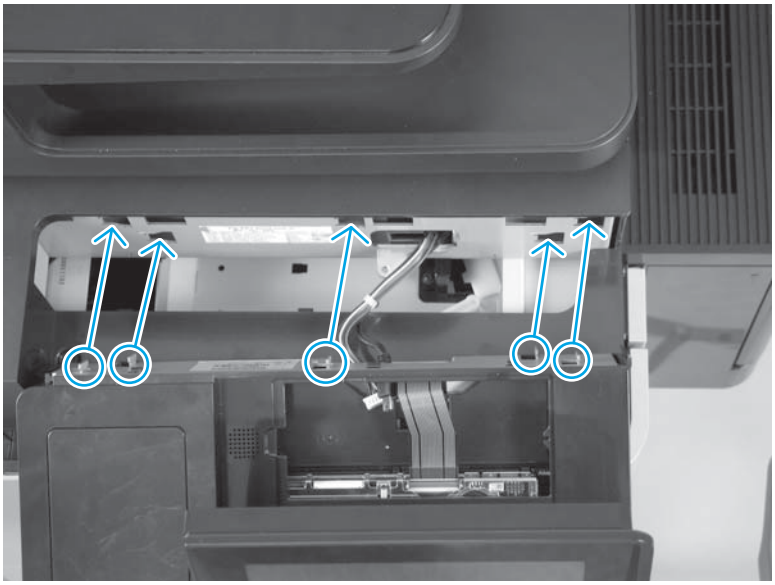
1. Insert the cable and wire harness (callout 1) into the opening at the back of the control panel (callout 2).

Figure 1-167 Install the cable and wire harness



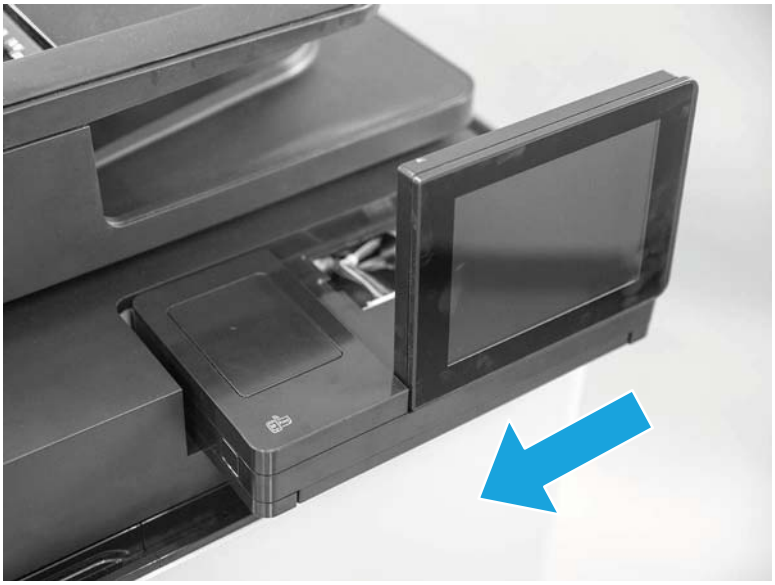
2. Insert the tabs on the control panel into the slots on the product.

Figure 1-168 Insert the tabs on the control panel into the slots



3. Slide the control panel toward the left door to secure it to the product.

Figure 1-169 Slide the control panel to the left



4. Slide the keyboard about halfway out of the product.

Figure 1-170 Slide the keyboard out



5. Connect two connectors.

CAUTION: To avoid damaging the black USB cable, make sure that the USB symbol ( ) on the connector at the end of the cable is facing up before installing it in the control panel.

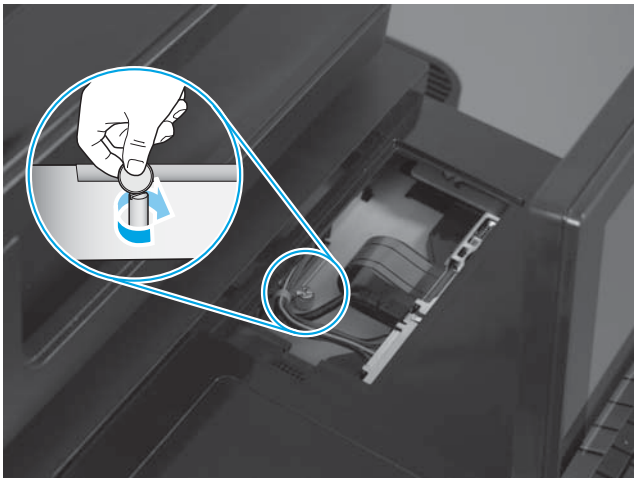
Figure 1-171 Connect two connectors



6. Install the screw.

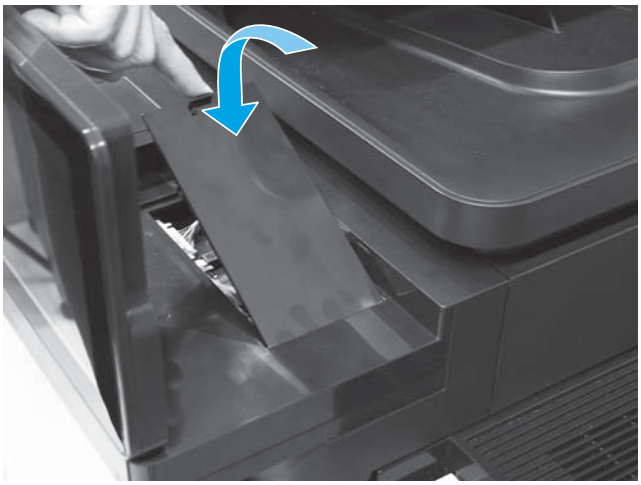
TIP: Use the edge of a coin to tighten the screw.

Figure 1-172 Install the screw



7. Install the cover.

Figure 1-173 Install the cover



8. Do the following steps:

   a. Reconnect any removed interface cables.

   b. Plug in the power cord.

   c. Turn on the product.

d. Check to make sure that the keyboard functions correctly. If it does not, make sure that the flat cable is installed correctly in the connector.

Figure 1-174 Test the keyboard



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement rollers
- Step 3: Install the Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers kit part number	
B3G84-67906	Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers with instruction guide

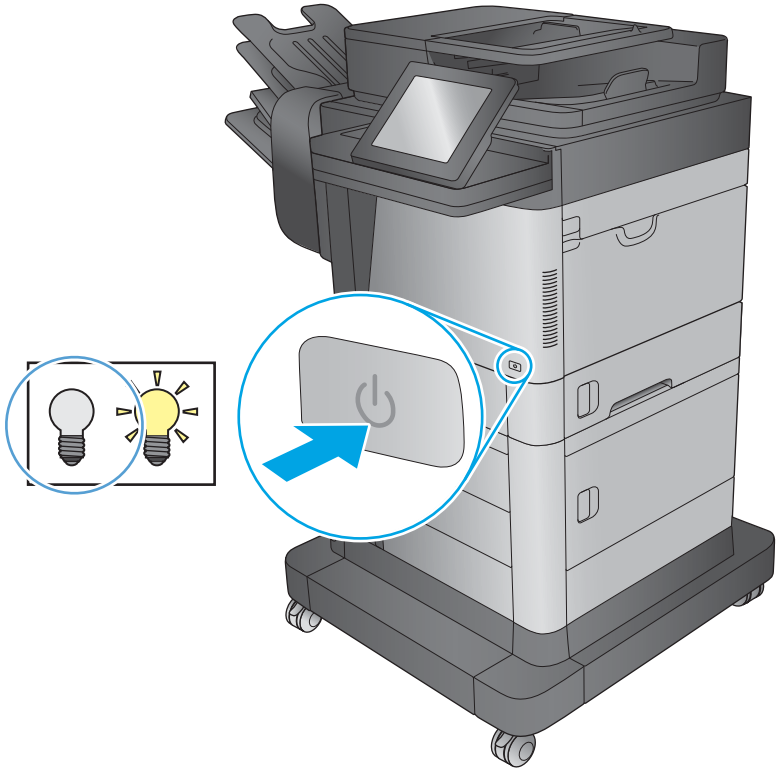
Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers

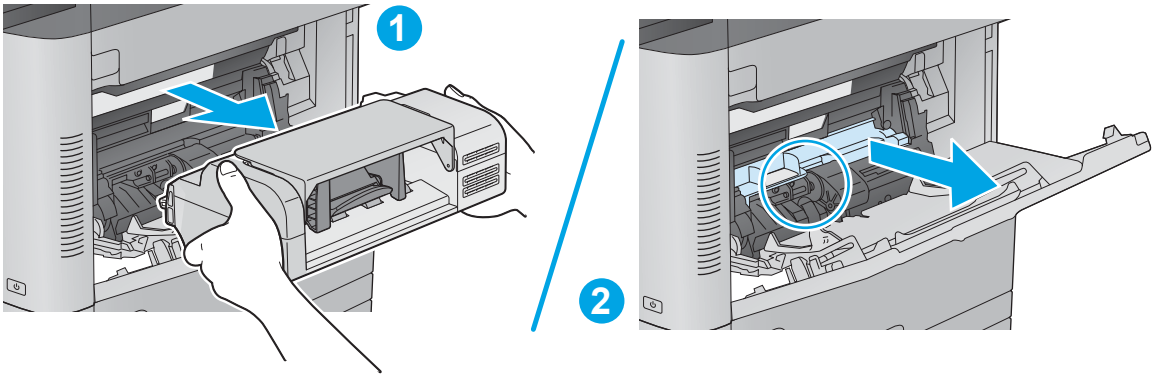
1. Use the power switch to turn the product power off.

Figure 1-175 Turn the power off



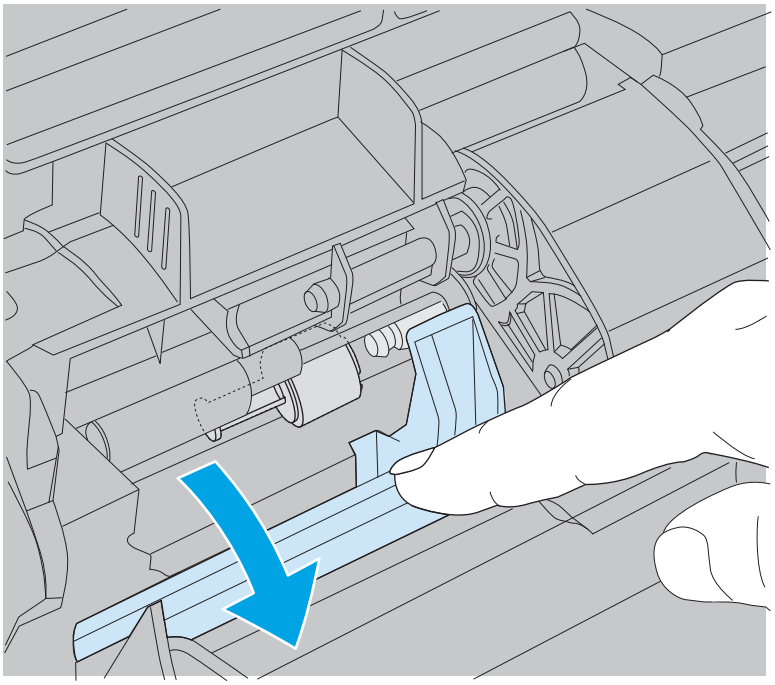
2. Remove the envelope feeder (callout 1), *or* open Tray 1 and then remove the environment cover (callout 2) depending on product configuration.

Figure 1-176 Remove the envelope feeder or the environment cover



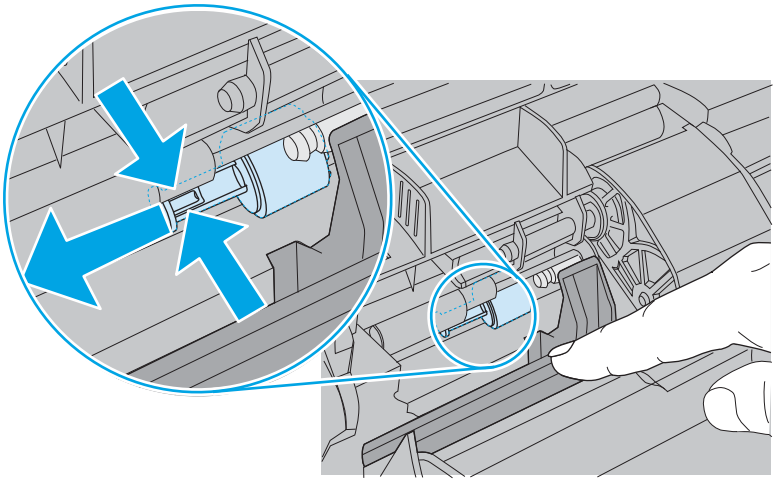
3. Open the separation roller cover.

Figure 1-177 Open the separation roller cover



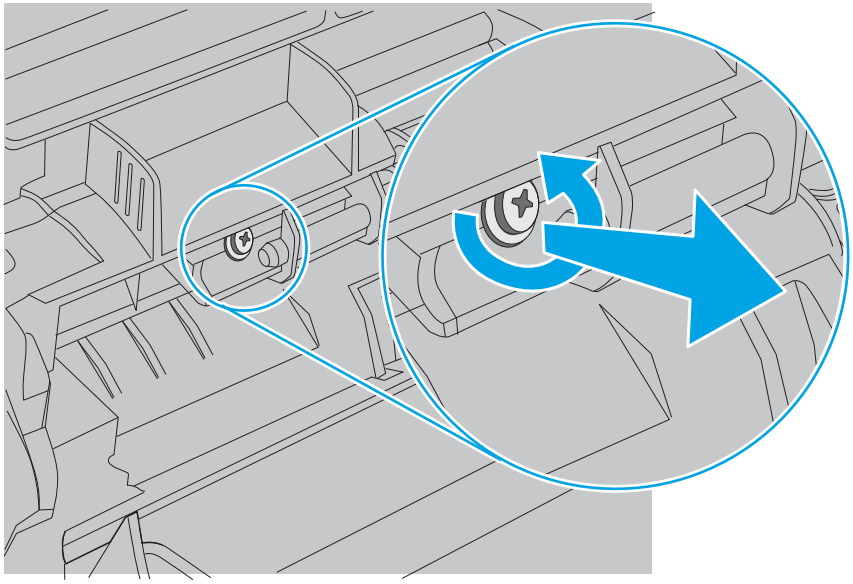
4. Release the separation roller locking tab, and then slide the roller off of the shaft to remove it.

Figure 1-178 Remove the separation roller



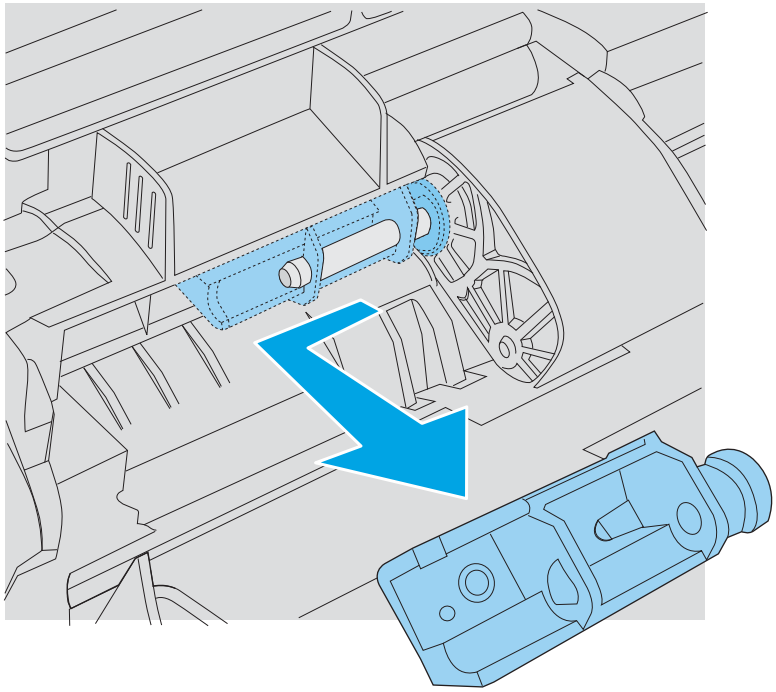
5. Remove one screw.

Figure 1-179 Remove one screw



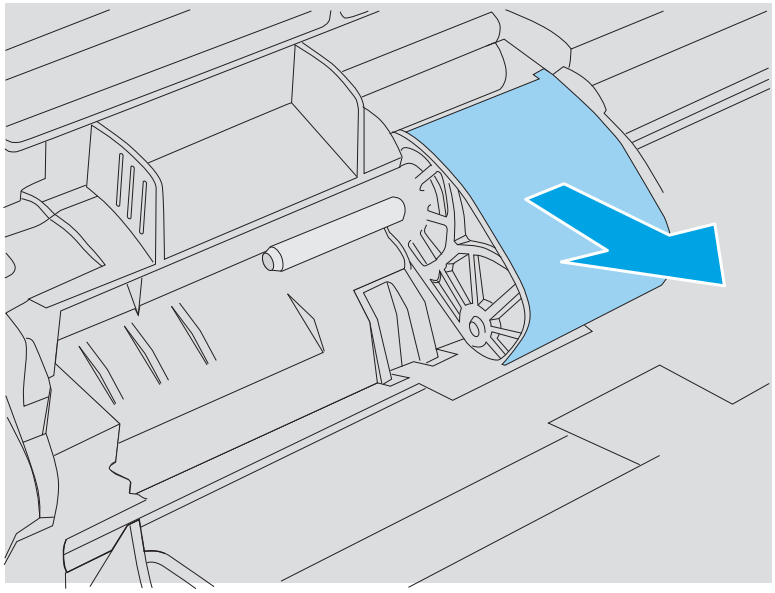
6. Slide the bushing off of the shaft.

Figure 1-180 Remove the bushing



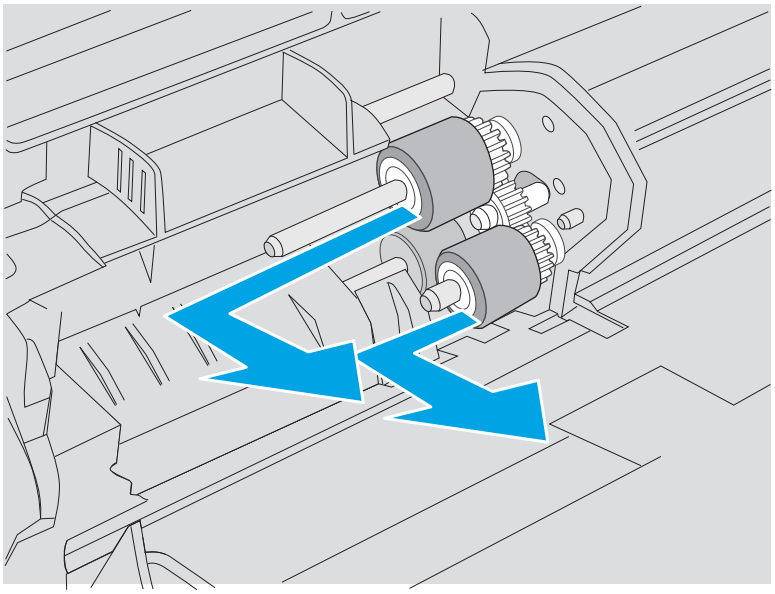
7. Remove the roller cover.

Figure 1-181 Remove the roller cover



8. Remove the pickup and feed rollers.

Figure 1-182 Remove the rollers



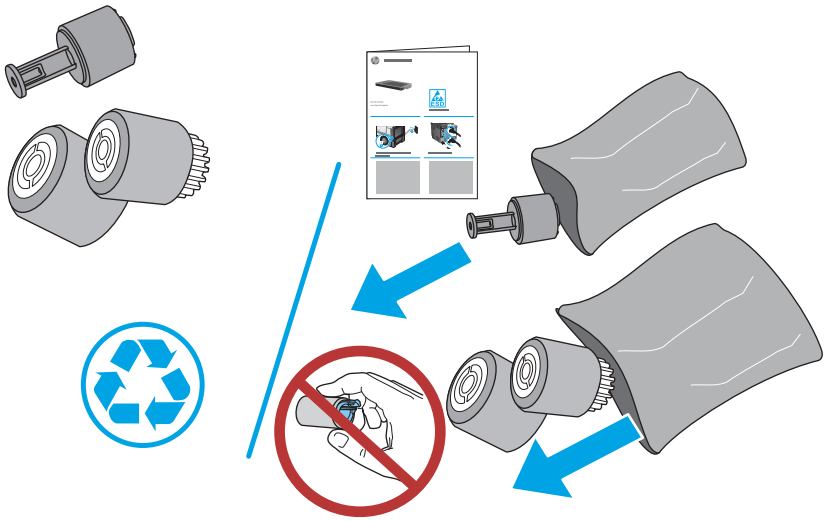
Step 2: Unpack the replacement rollers

Unpack the replacement assemblies from the packaging.

⚠ **CAUTION:** Avoid touching the surface of the replacement rollers. Skin oils on the rollers can cause print-quality problems. Thoroughly wash your hands with soap and water to remove skin oils, and then completely dry them.

www.Product return and recycling

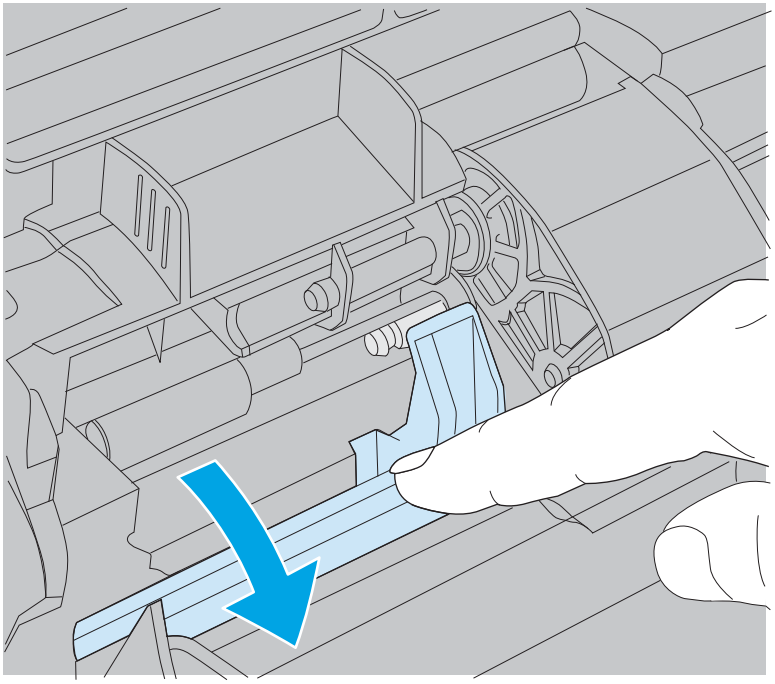
NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assemblies.



Step 3: Install the Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers

1. Open the separation roller cover.

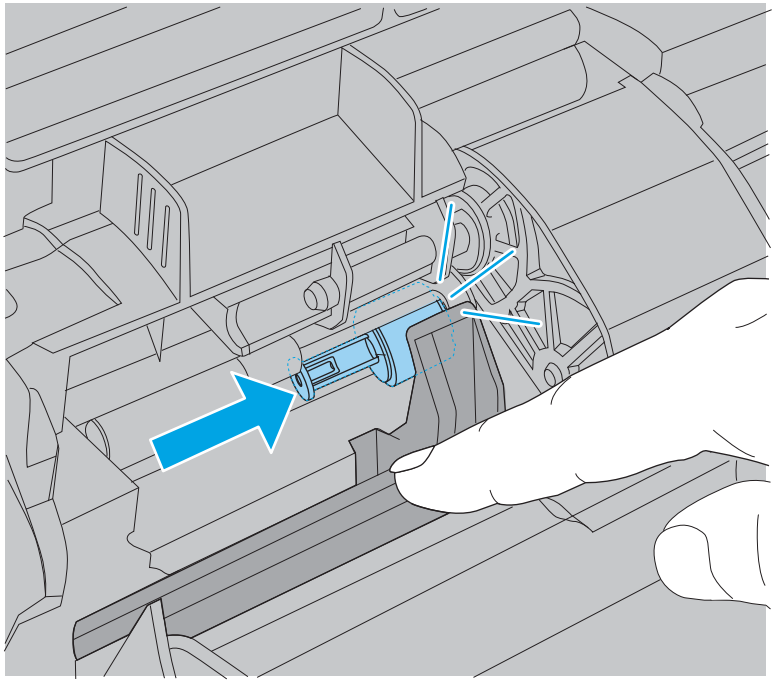
Figure 1-183 Open the separation roller cover



2. Slide the roller onto the shaft to install it, and then close the cover.

TIP: When the roller is fully installed, an audible click is heard.

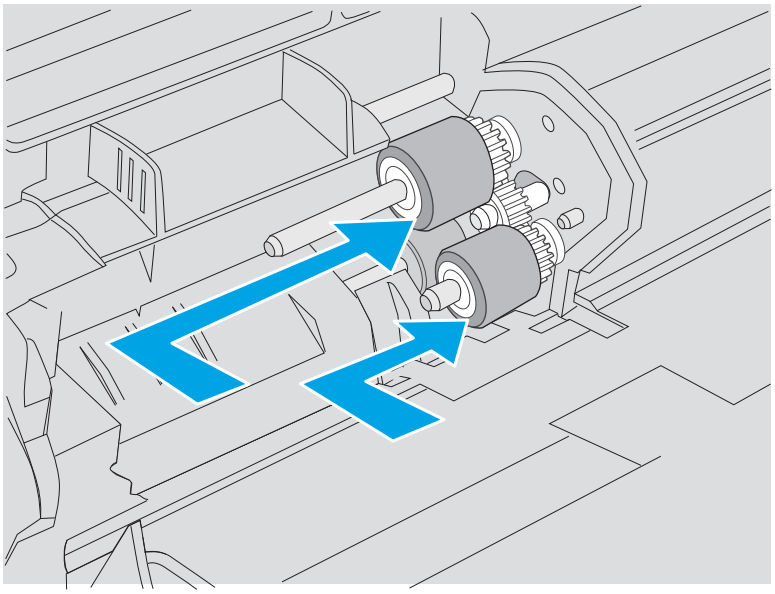
Figure 1-184 Install the separation roller



3. Install the pickup and feed rollers.

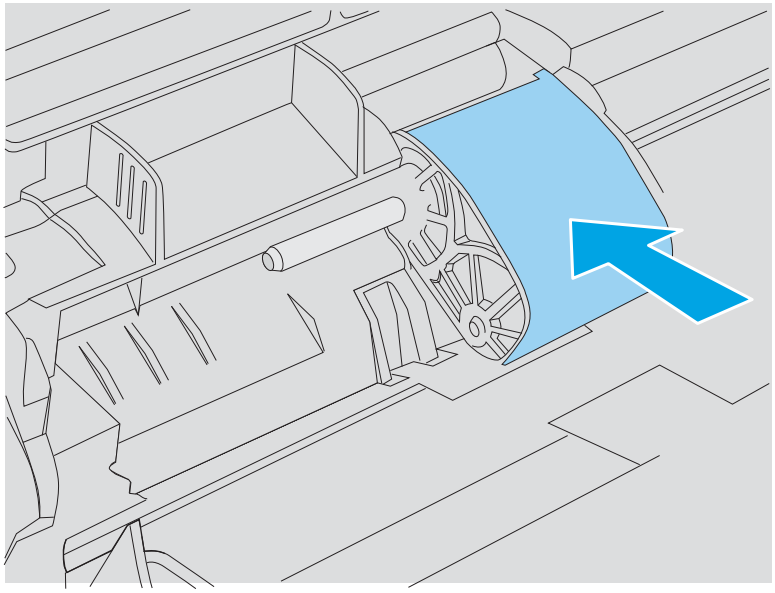
TIP: Install the roller with the white gear on the lower shaft.

Figure 1-185 Install the rollers



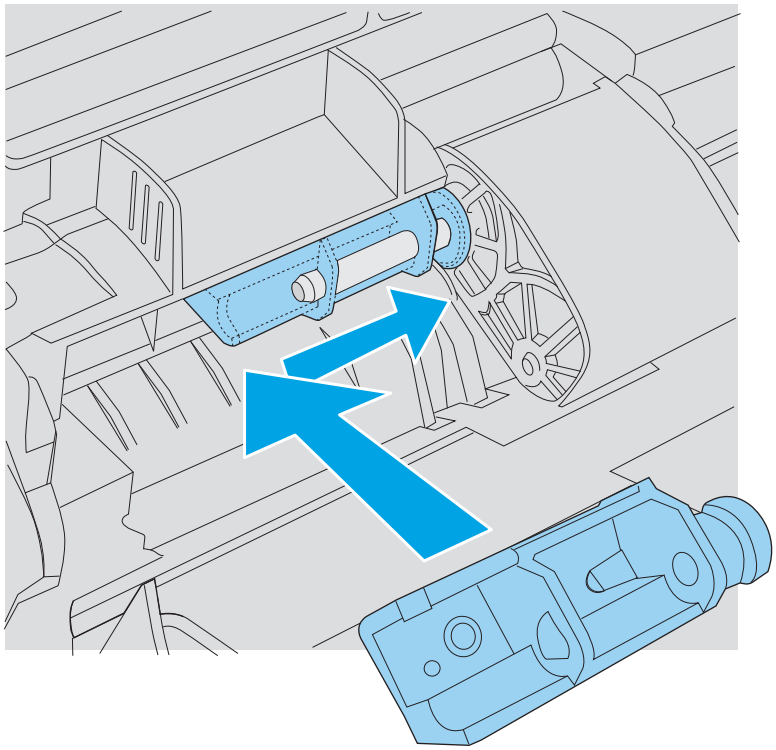
4. Install the roller cover.

Figure 1-186 Install the roller cover



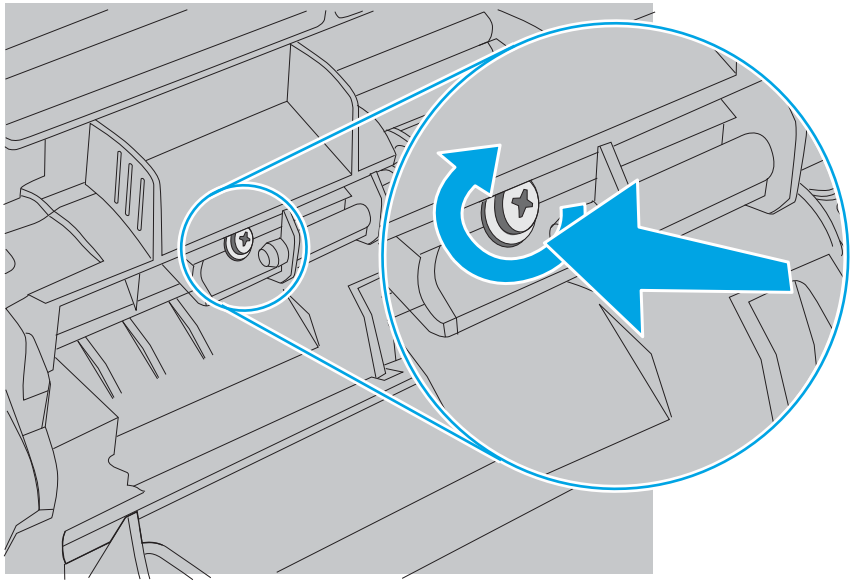
5. Slide the bushing on the shaft to install it.

Figure 1-187 Install the bushing



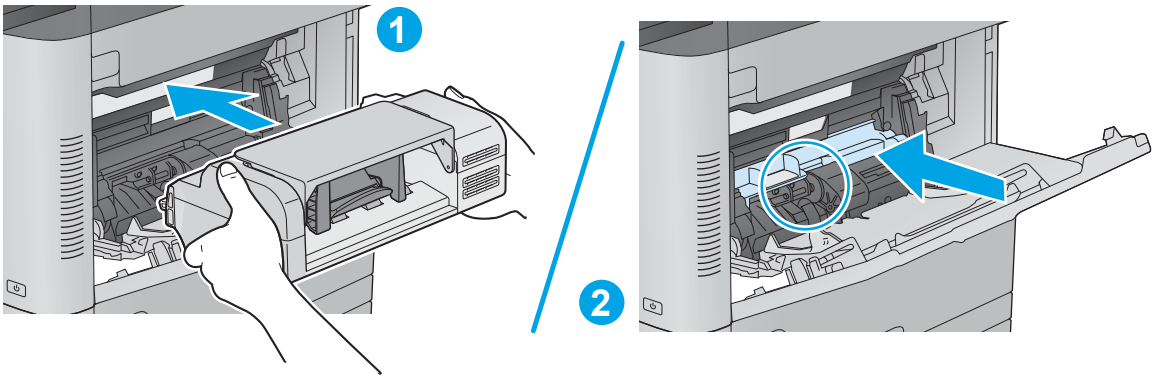
6. Install one screw.

Figure 1-188 Install one screw



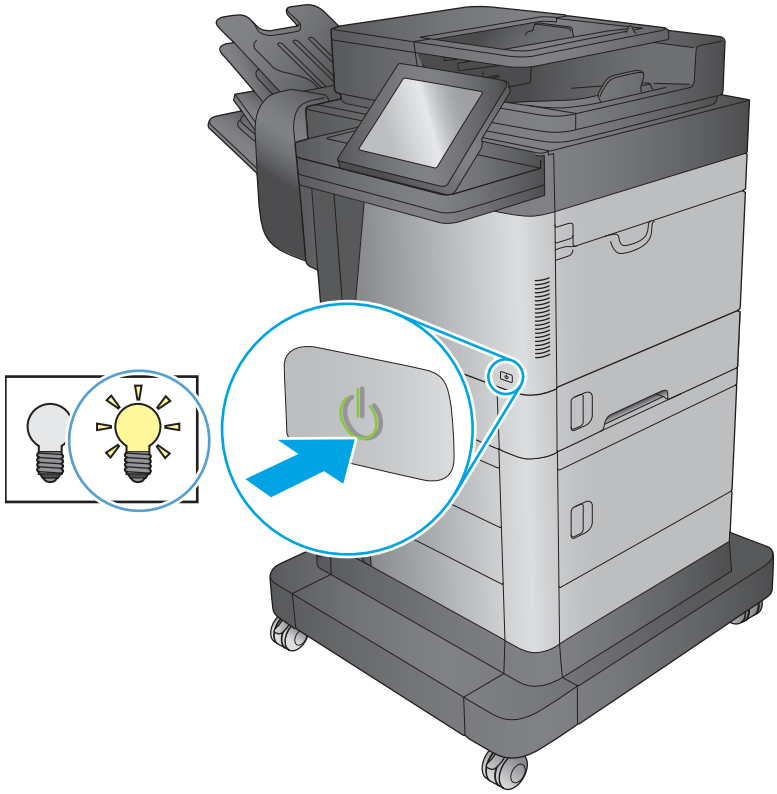
7. Install the envelope feeder (callout 1) *or*, open Tray 1 and then install the environment cover (callout 2) depending on product configuration.

Figure 1-189 Install the envelope feeder or the environment cover



8. Use the power switch to turn the product power on.

Figure 1-190 Turn the power on



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Tray 2-5 pickup and feed rollers

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the Tray 2 - 5 pickup and feed rollers
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement rollers
- Step 3: Install the Tray 2 - 5 pickup and feed rollers
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the Tray 2 - X pickup and feed rollers.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Tray 2 - X pickup and feed rollers kit part number	
B3G84-67905	Tray 2 - X pickup and rollers kit with instruction guide

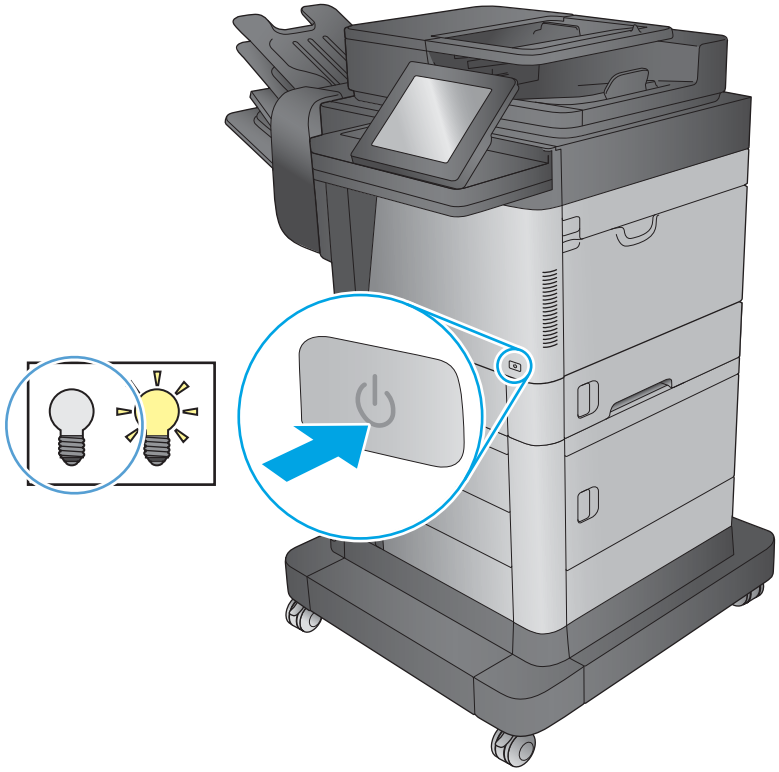
Required tools

- No special tools are required to install this kit.

Step 1: Remove the Tray 2 - 5 pickup and feed rollers

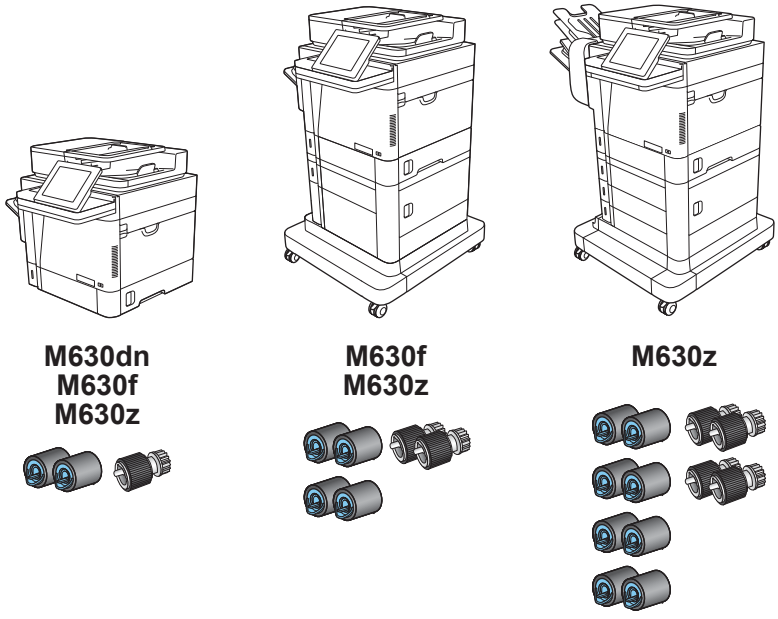
1. Use the power switch to turn the product power off.

Figure 1-191 Turn the power off



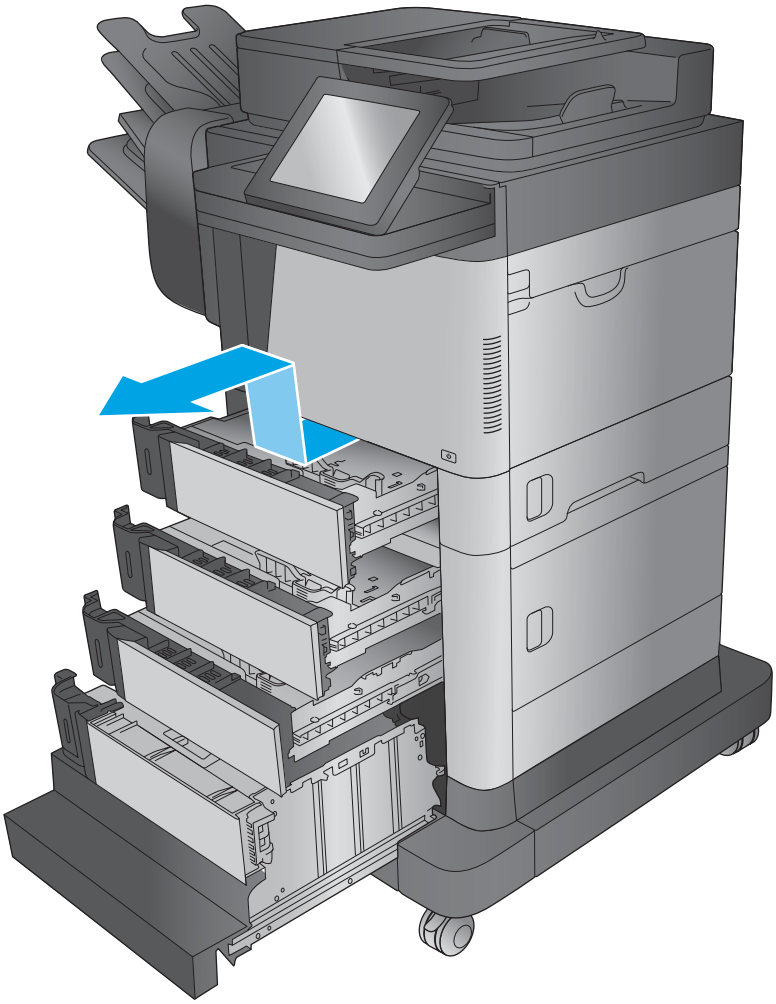
2. The figures in this procedure show the 2,500-sheet high-capacity feeder, however the procedure for replacing the rollers is correct for all product models.

Figure 1-192 Identify the product model



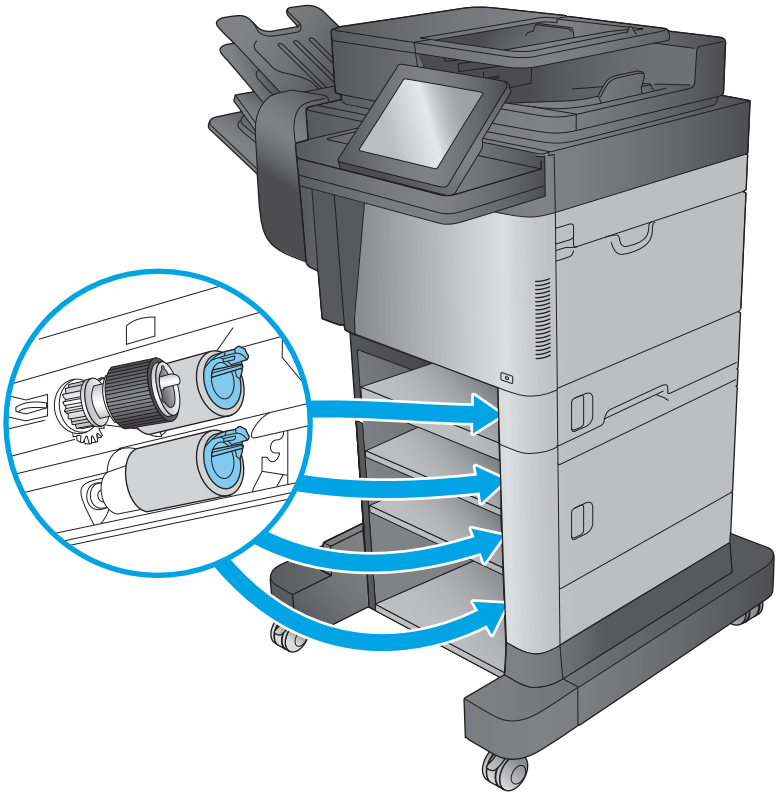
3. Remove the tray or trays.

Figure 1-193 Remove the tray or trays



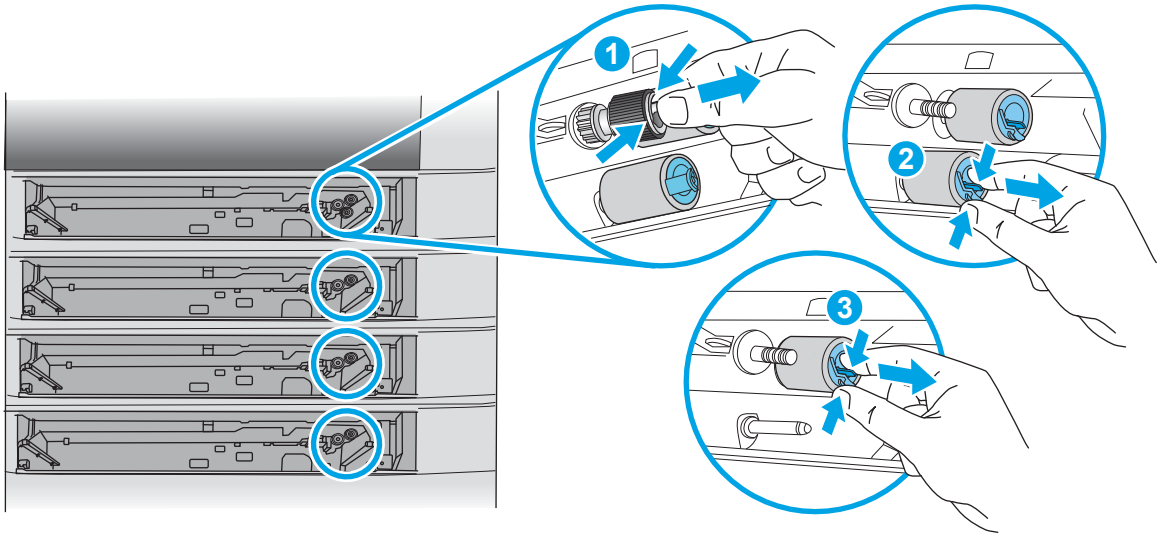
4. Locate the pickup and feed rollers.

Figure 1-194 Locate the pickup and feed rollers



5. Pinch the tab on the pickup roller or feed roller to release it, and then slide the roller off of the shaft.

Figure 1-195 Remove the rollers



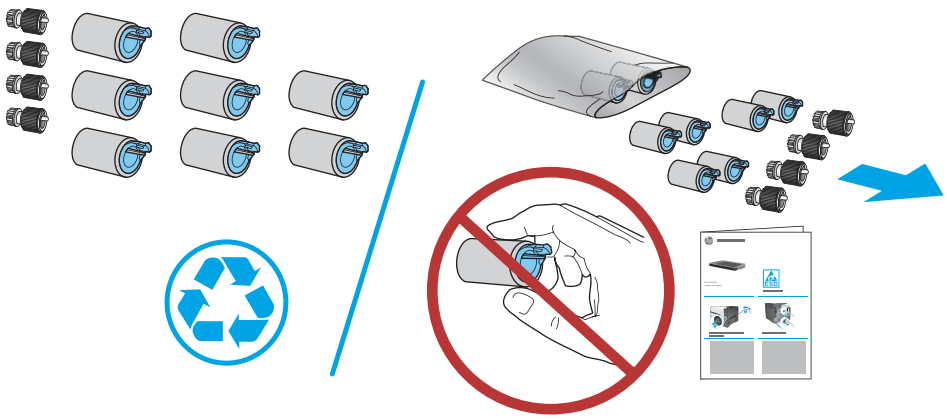
Step 2: Unpack the replacement rollers

Unpack the replacement assemblies from the packaging.

CAUTION: Avoid touching the surface of the replacement rollers. Skin oils on the rollers can cause print-quality problems. Thoroughly wash your hands with soap and water to remove skin oils, and then completely dry them.

www.Product return and recycling

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assemblies.

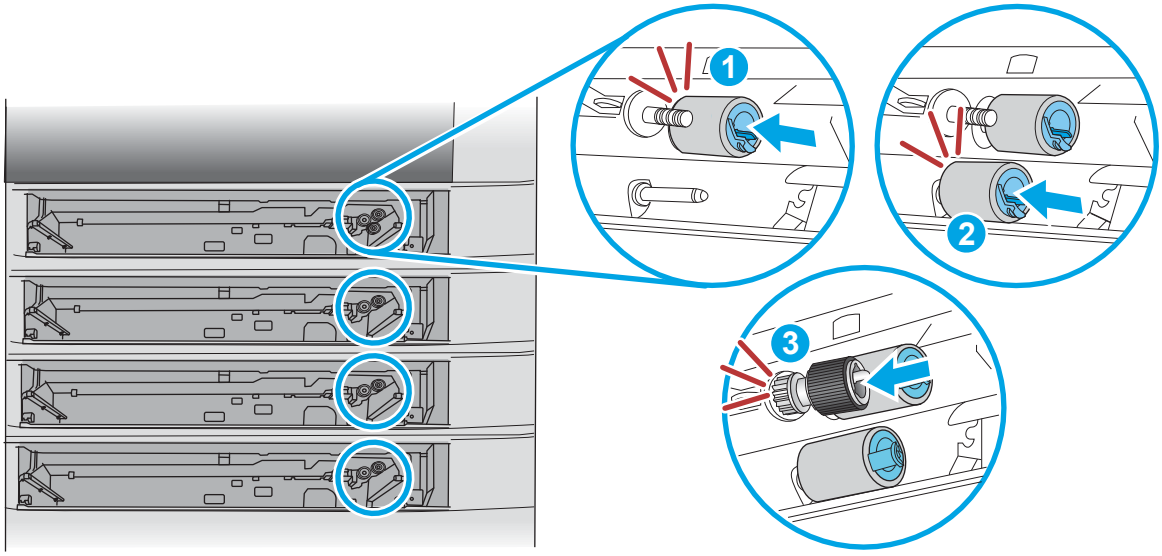


Step 3: Install the Tray 2 - 5 pickup and feed rollers

1. Slide the pickup and feed rollers on the shaft to install them.

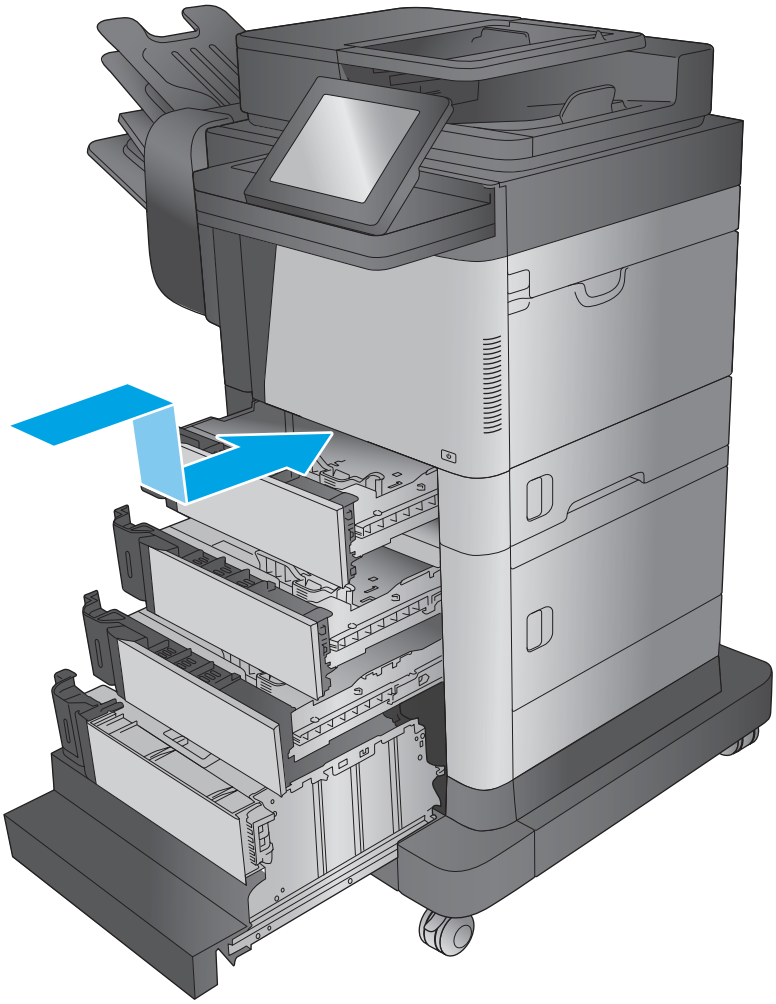
TIP: When the rollers are fully installed, an audible click is heard.

Figure 1-196 install the rollers



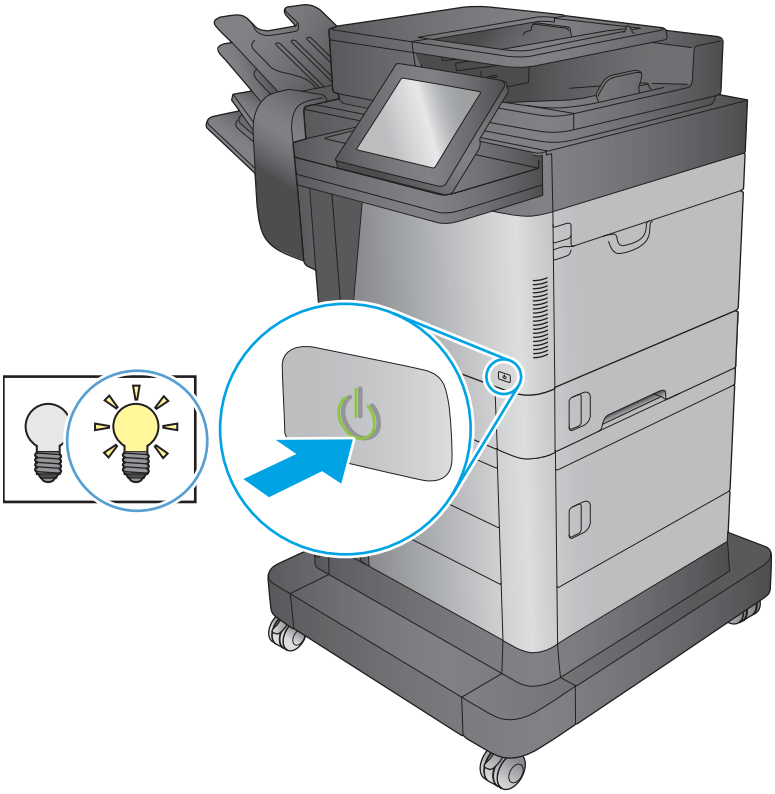
2. Install the tray or trays.

Figure 1-197 Install the tray or trays



3. Use the power switch to turn the product power on.

Figure 1-198 Turn the power on



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Transfer roller

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the transfer roller
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement roller
- Step 3: Install the transfer roller
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the transfer roller.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Transfer roller kit part number	
B3G84-67901	Transfer roller with instruction guide

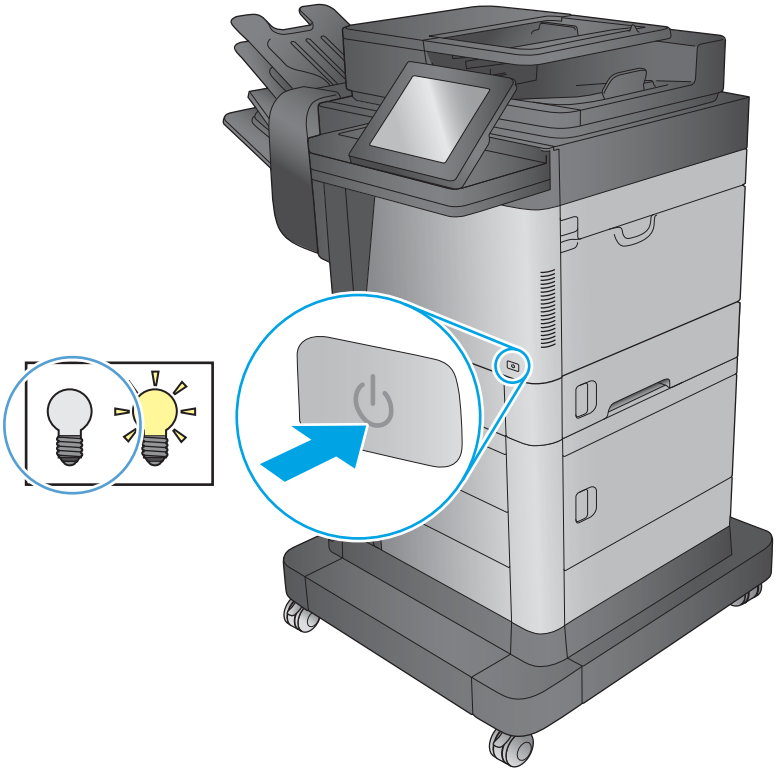
Required tools

- A special removal tool, and a pair of protective gloves are provided in this kit.

Step 1: Remove the transfer roller

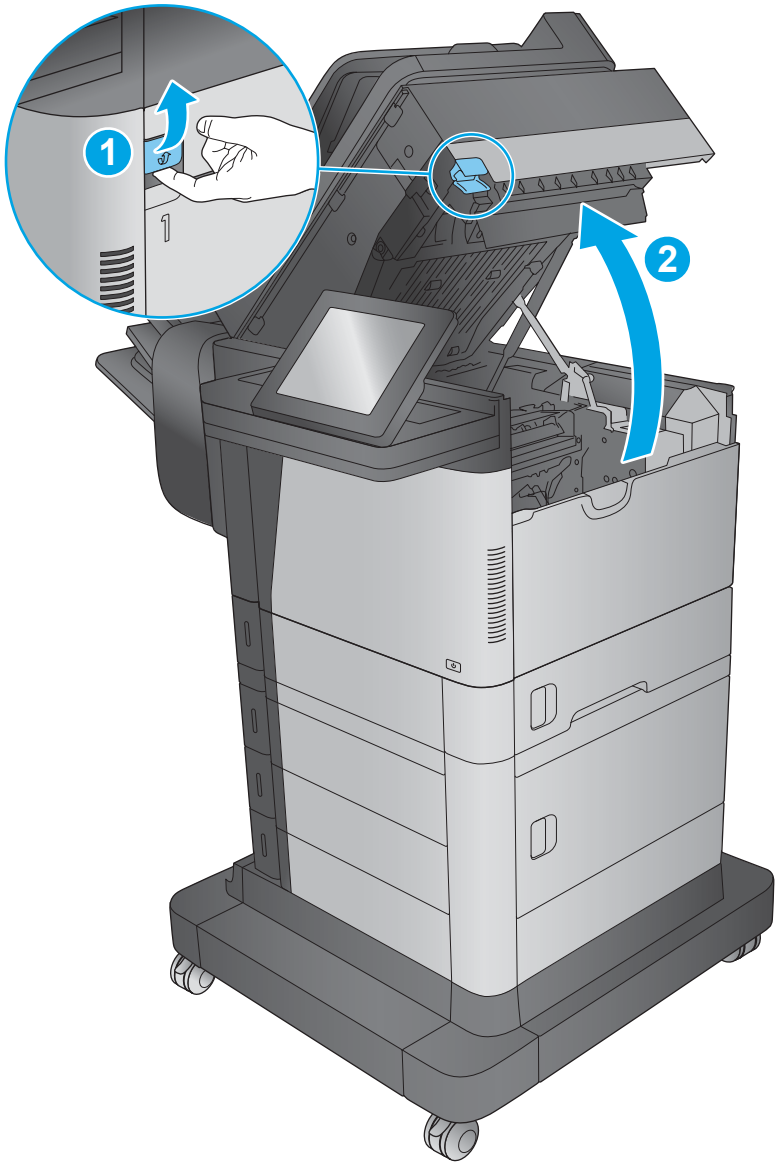
1. Use the power switch to turn the product power off.

Figure 1-199 Turn the power off



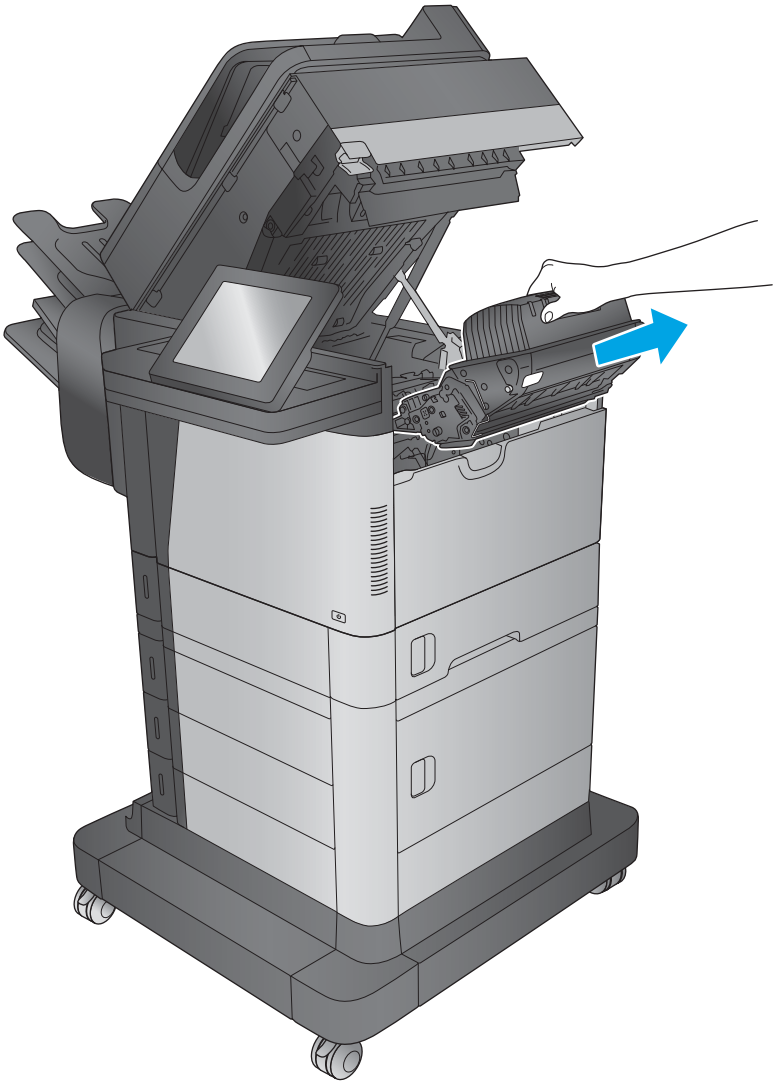
2. Open the top cover.

Figure 1-200 Open the top cover



3. Remove the toner cartridge.

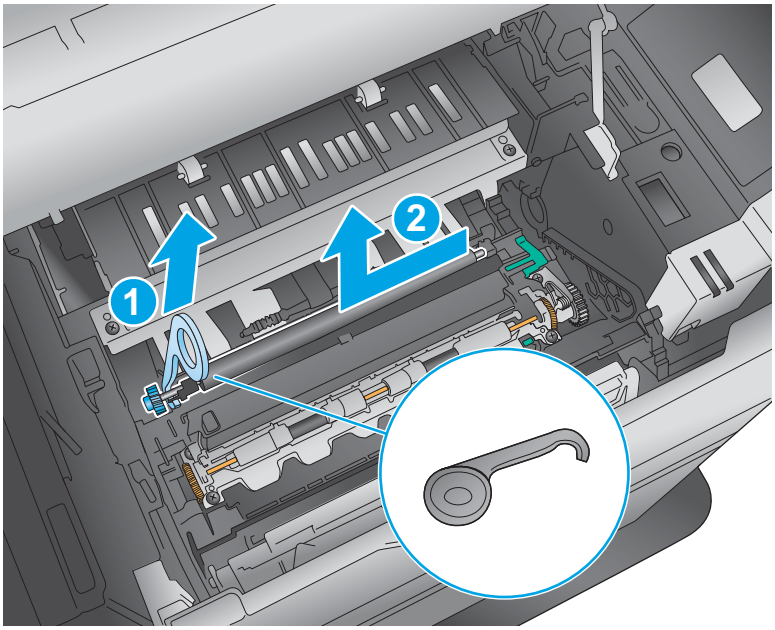
Figure 1-201 Remove the toner cartridge



4. Use the removal tool provided in the kit (or flat-blade screwdriver) to slightly lift the left end of the roller shaft (callout 1; near the blue gear). Slide the transfer roller to the left to remove it (callout 2).

TIP: Open Tray 1 to make removing the roller easier.

Figure 1-202 Remove the transfer roller



Step 2: Unpack the replacement roller

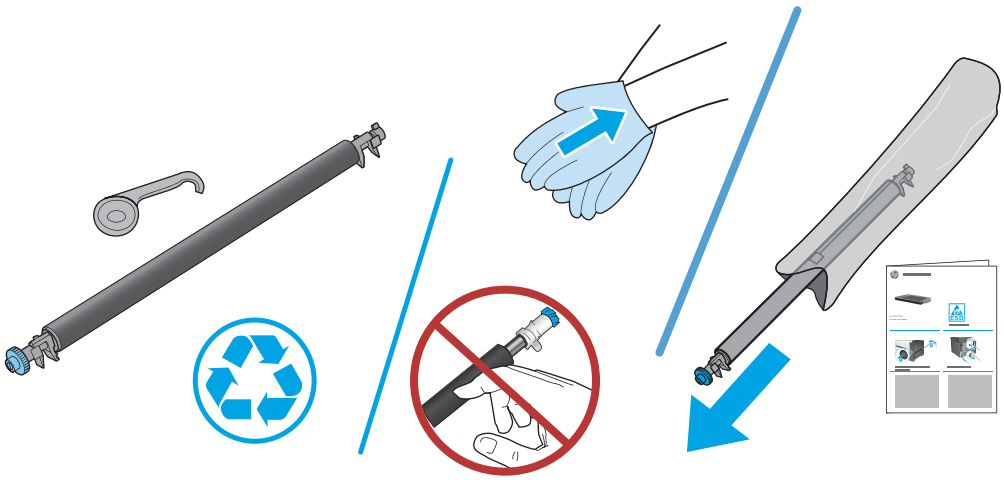
Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

CAUTION: Skin oils on the roller can cause print-quality problems. Make sure to put on the protective gloves provided with the kit.

If protective gloves are not available, avoid touching the surface of the replacement roller. Thoroughly wash your hands with soap and water to remove skin oils, and then completely dry them.

www.Product return and recycling

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

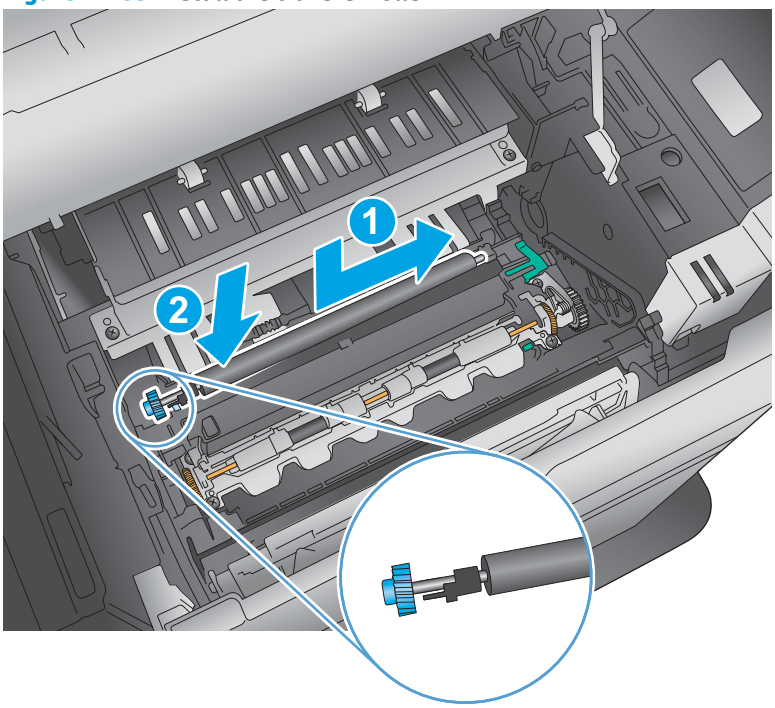


Step 3: Install the transfer roller

1. Install the left end (callout 1; near the black collar) of the roller assembly in the product, and then rotate the right end down (callout 2) to install it.

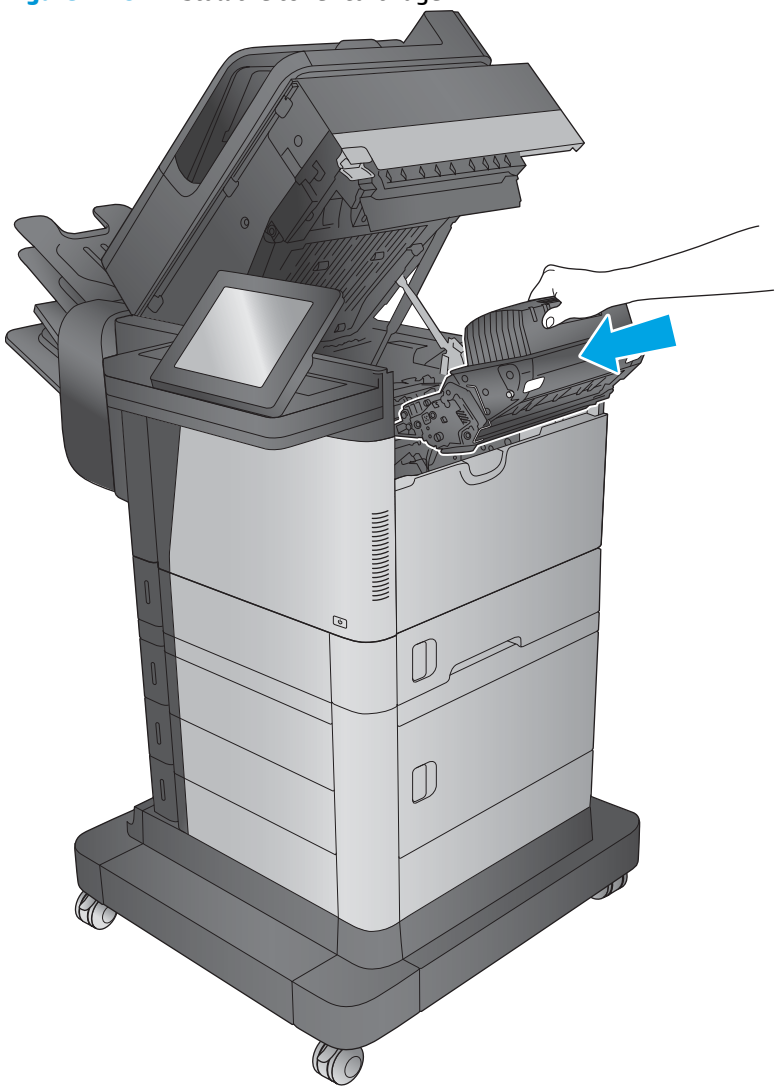
IMPORTANT: Make sure that both ends of the roller assembly are fully seated in the holders.

Figure 1-203 Install the transfer roller



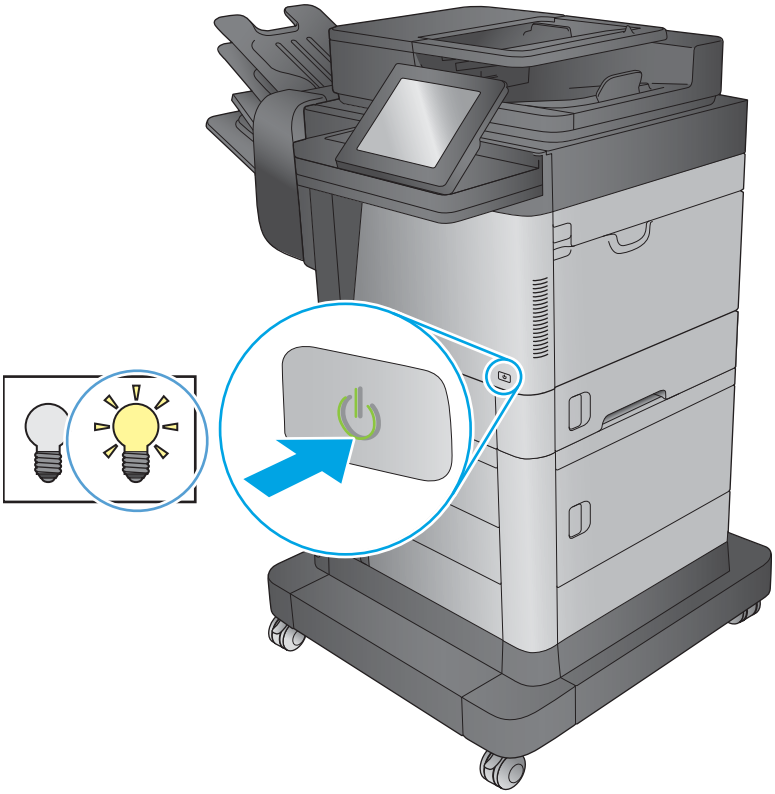
2. Install the toner cartridge.

Figure 1-204 Install the toner cartridge



3. Use the power switch to turn the product power on.

Figure 1-205 Turn the power on



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Document-feeder maintnenance kit

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document-feeder rollers
- Step 2: Remove the document-feeder separation pad
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement rollers and separation pad
- Step 4: Install the document-feeder separation pad
- Step 5: Install the document-feeder rollers
- Step 6: Reset the supplies counter
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the document-feeder roller and separation pad.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Document-feeder maintenance kit part number	
L2725-60002	Document-feeder maintenance kit with instruction guide **NOTE:** The document-feeder maintenance kit includes the pickup and feed rollers assembly and the separation pad assembly.

Required tools

- No special tools are required to install this kit.

IMPORTANT: When a replacement roller is installed, reset the New Document Feeder Kit supplies counter. See Step 6: Reset the supplies counter on page 160.

Step 1: Remove the document-feeder rollers

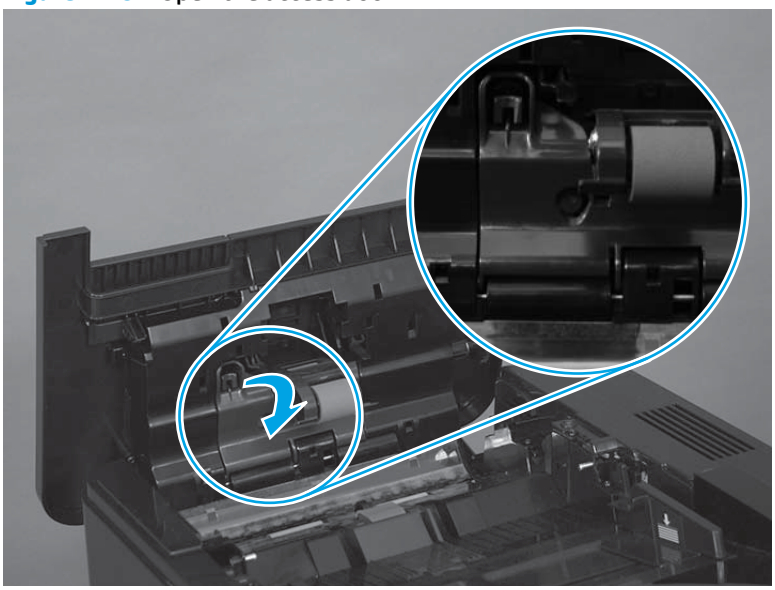
1. Open the document-feeder door.

Figure 1-206 Open the document-feeder door



2. Release one tab, and then open the access door.

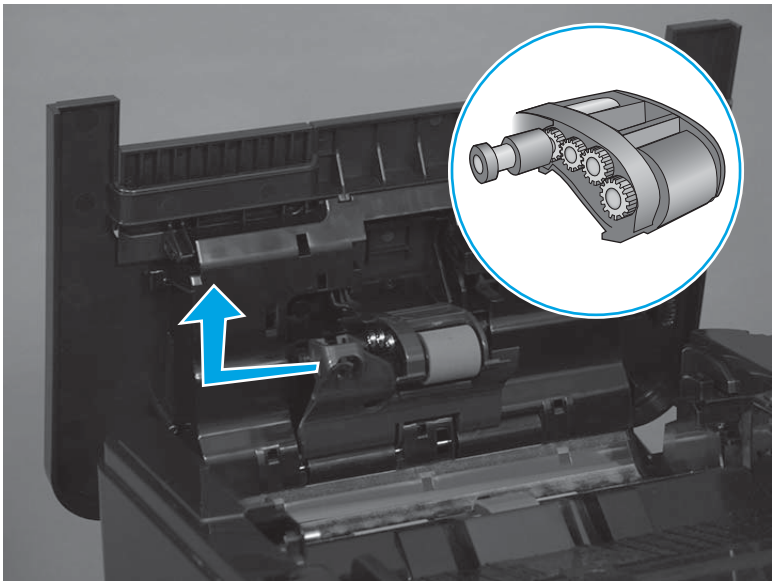
Figure 1-207 Open the access door



3. Slide the roller left, and then lift it up and out of the product.

NOTE: If the roller does not drop down when the access door is opened, rotate it down now.

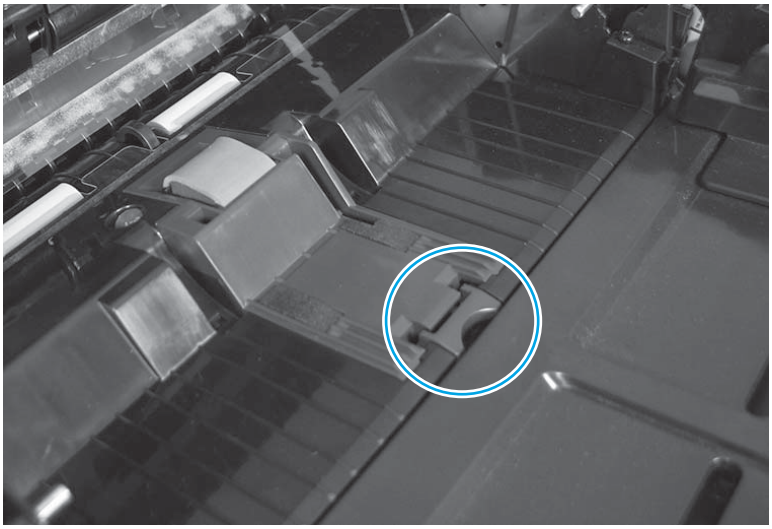
Figure 1-208 Remove the document-feeder roller



Step 2: Remove the document-feeder separation pad

1. Release one tab.

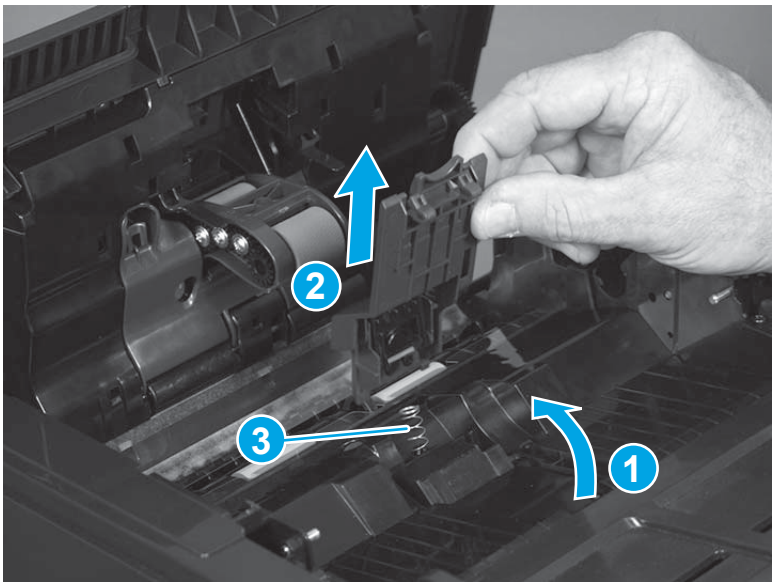
Figure 1-209 Release one tab



2. Rotate the separation pad and holder up (callout 1), and then lift it up (callout 2) to remove it.

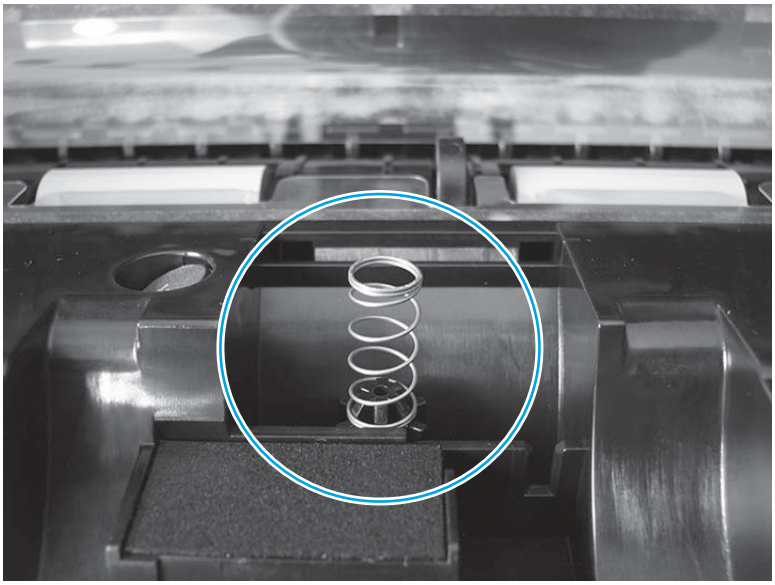
IMPORTANT: The spring (callout 3) under the separation pad and holder can easily be dislodged when the holder is removed.

Figure 1-210 Remove the document-feeder separation pad



3. If the spring becomes dislodged, securely reinstall it as shown.

Figure 1-211 Check the spring

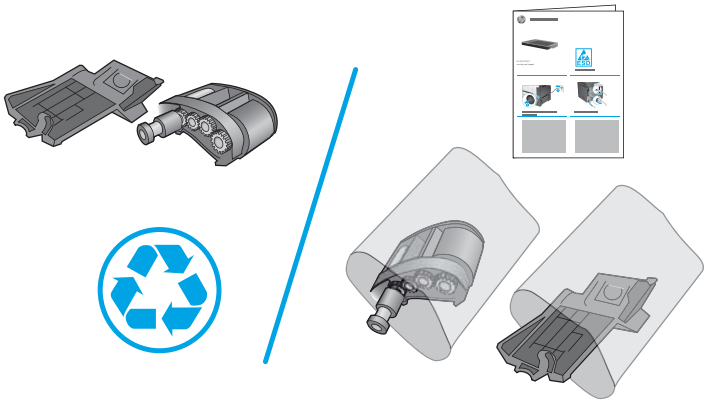


Step 3: Unpack the replacement rollers and separation pad

Unpack the replacement assemblies from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assemblies.

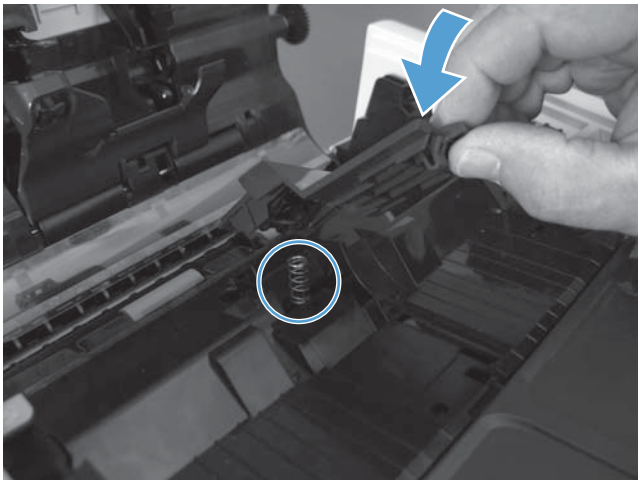


Step 4: Install the document-feeder separation pad

1. Position the separation pad on the product.

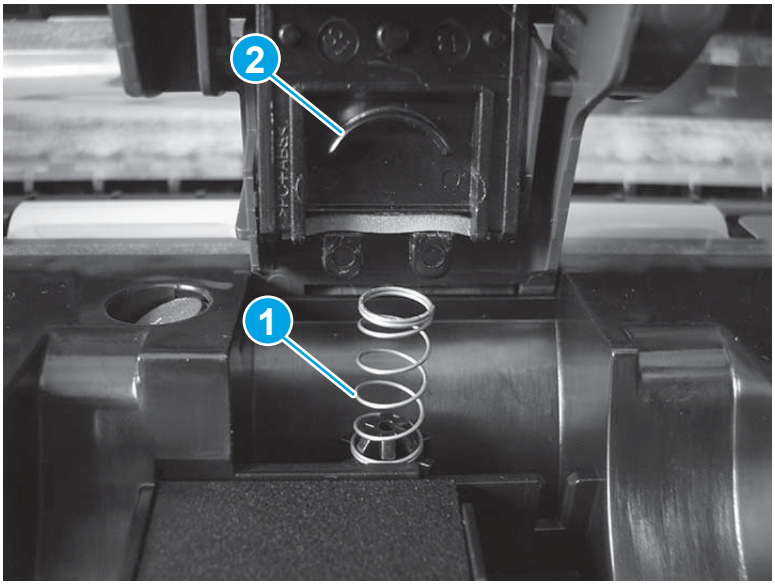
IMPORTANT: Make sure spring does not get bent upon reinstallation of the separation pad.

Figure 1-212 Position the separation pad on the product



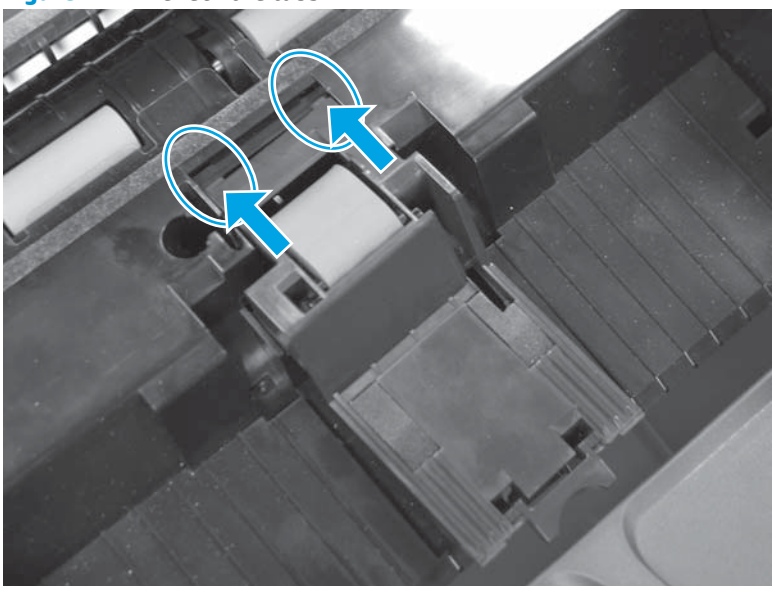
2. When the separation pad and holder is installed, make sure that the separation-pad spring (callout 1) is positioned under and behind the ridge (callout 2) on the bottom of the holder.

Figure 1-213 Check the spring



3. Make sure that the tabs on the separation pad holder are positioned in the provided slots.

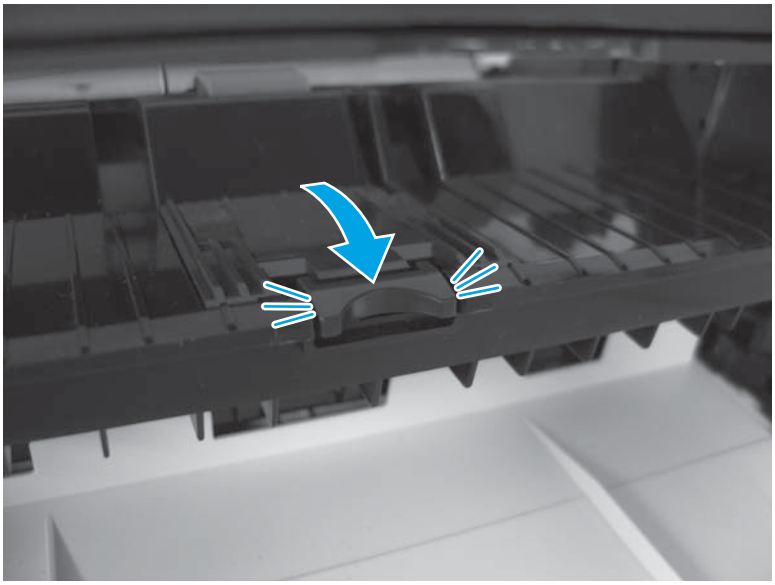
Figure 1-214 Check the tabs



4. Rotate the separation pad down until it snap in place.

Reinstallation tip: When the pad is correctly installed, an audible click should be heard.

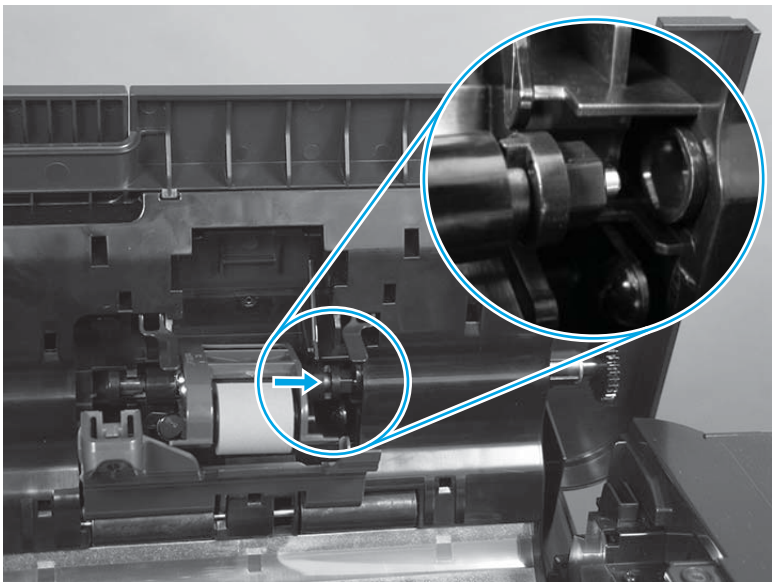
Figure 1-215 Install the separation pad



Step 5: Install the document-feeder rollers

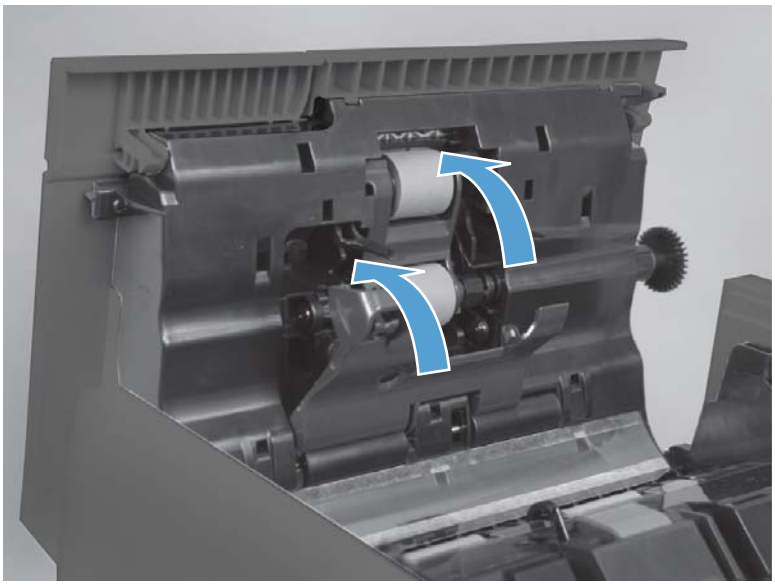
1. The roller assembly is keyed. When reinstalling the roller assembly, position the hex-shaped fitting on the shaft toward the rear of the product.

Figure 1-216 Install the document-feeder roller



2. Rotate the roller up into the document feeder.

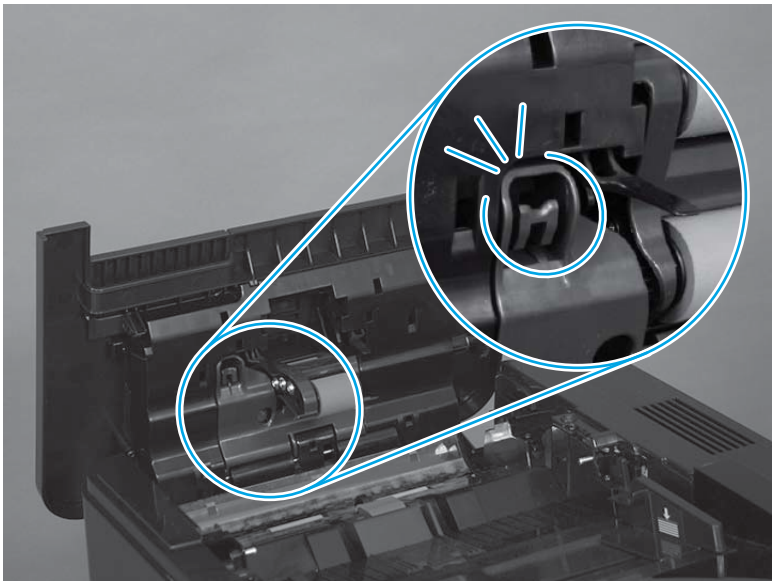
Figure 1-217 Rotate the roller up



3. Close the access door.

Reinstallation tip: The access door must be fully closed. When closing the door, two audible clicks should be heard. If, after replacing the roller document feeder, a document feeder jam message appears on the control panel display, make sure that the access door is fully closed.

Figure 1-218 Close the access door



Step 6: Reset the supplies counter

1. From the Home screen on the control panel, scroll to and touch the Administration button.
2. Open the following menus:
   - Manage Supplies
   - Reset Supplies
   - New Document Feeder Kit
3. Select the Reset item to reset the supplies counter.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Document feeder white backing

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document feeder white backing
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement document feeder white backing
- Step 3: Install the document feeder white backing
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the document feeder white backing.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Document feeder white backing kit part number	
5851-6084	Document feeder white backing kit with instruction guide

Required tools

- No special tools are required to install this kit.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder white backing

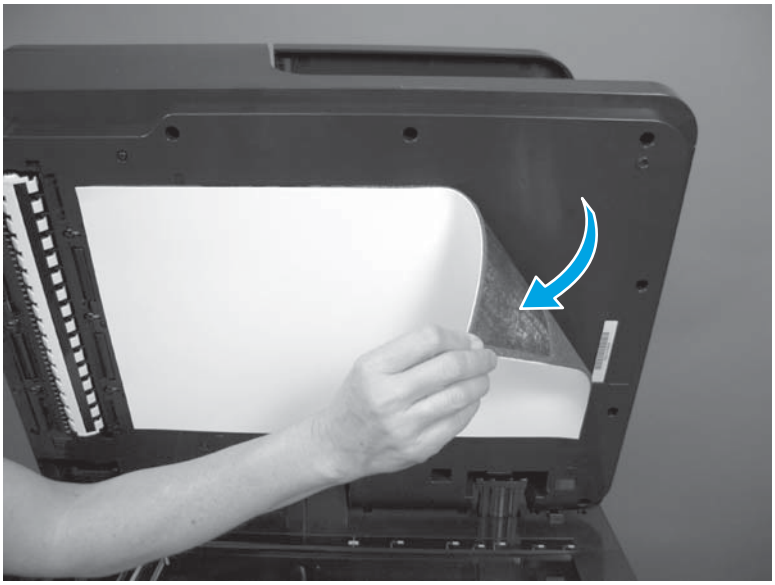
1. Open the document feeder.

Figure 1-219 Open the document feeder



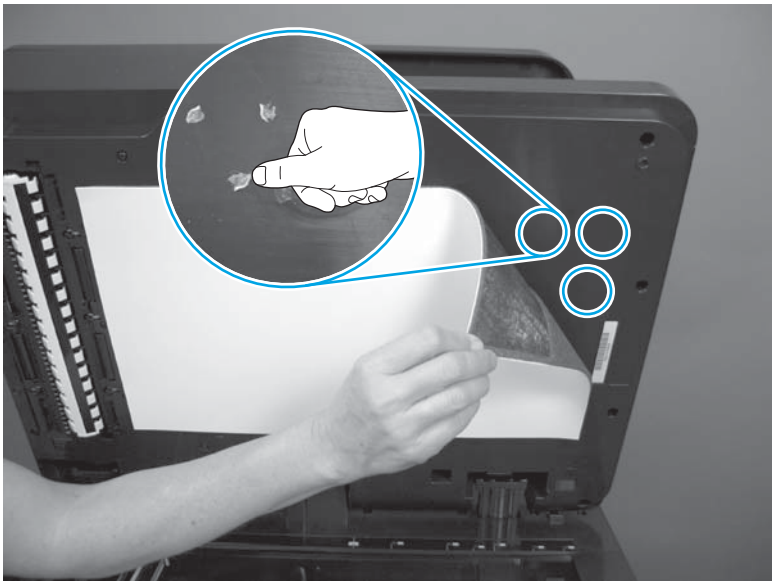
2. Carefully remove the white backing.

Figure 1-220 Remove the white backing



3. Remove any remaining adhesive.

Figure 1-221 Remove remaining adhesive

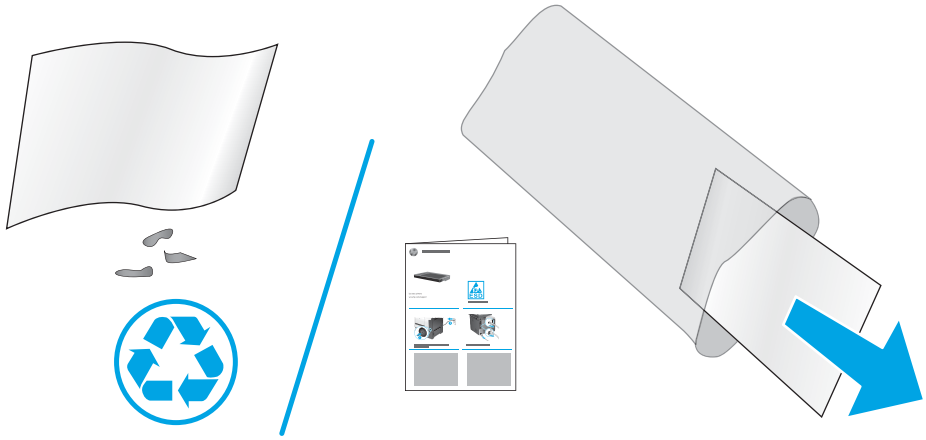


Step 2: Unpack the replacement document feeder white backing

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling

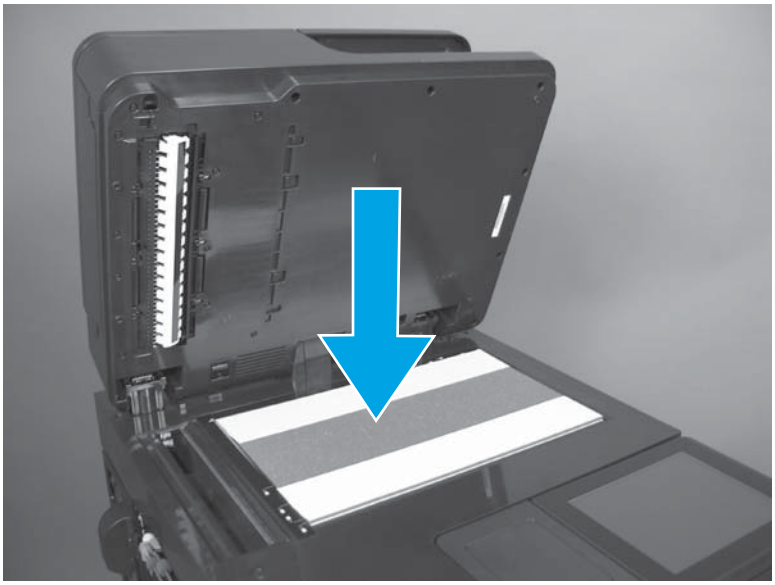
NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 3: Install the document feeder white backing

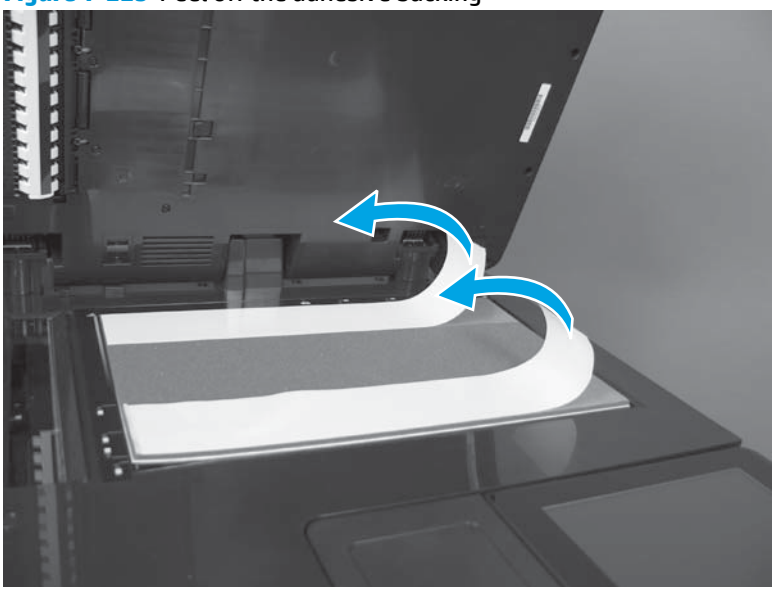
1. Place the white backing on the scanner glass.

Figure 1-222 Place the white backing on the scanner



2. Peel off the two strips of adhesive backing.

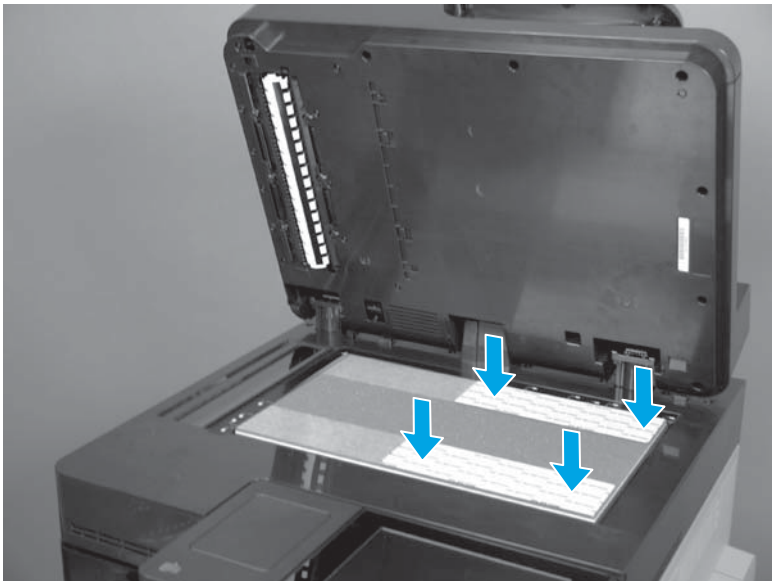
Figure 1-223 Peel off the adhesive backing



3. Place the two mylar-spacer strips (included with the kit) onto the adhesive, as shown.

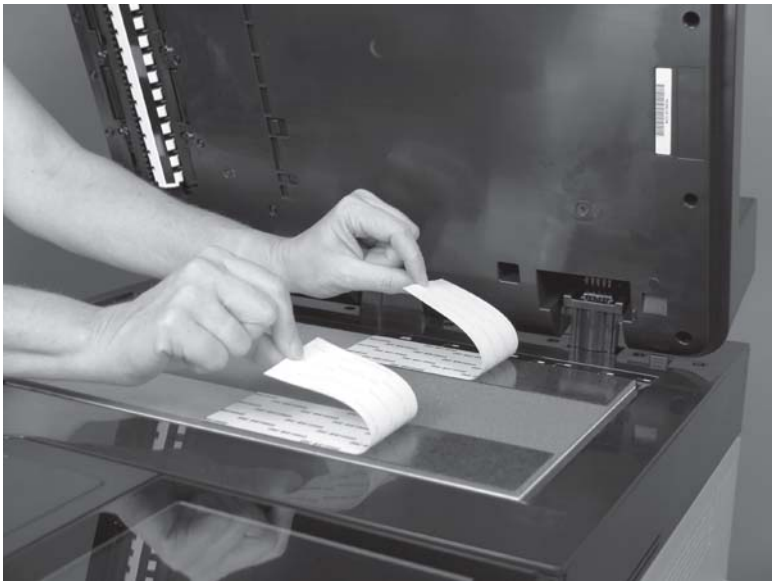
IMPORTANT: Align the mylar with the edges of the adhesive on the white backing.

Figure 1-224 Place the two mylar-spacer strips onto the adhesive



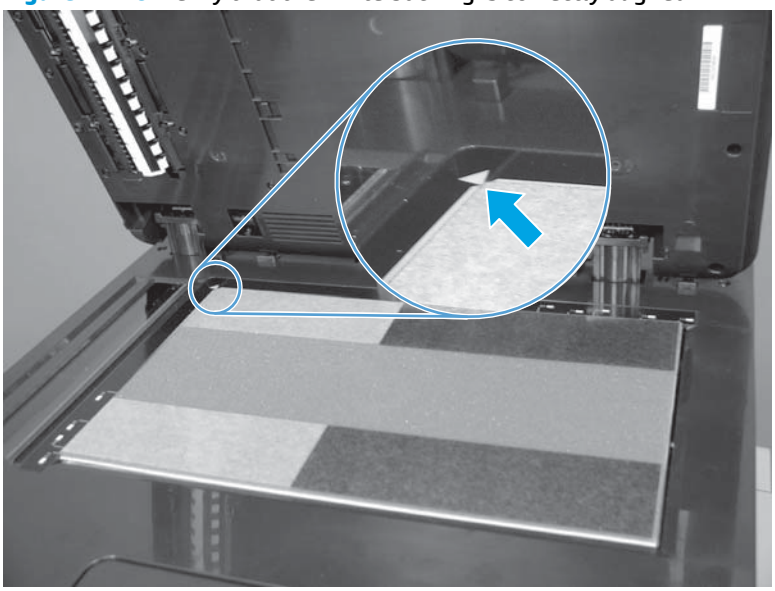
4. Peel off the two strips of adhesive backing.

Figure 1-225 Peel off the adhesive backing



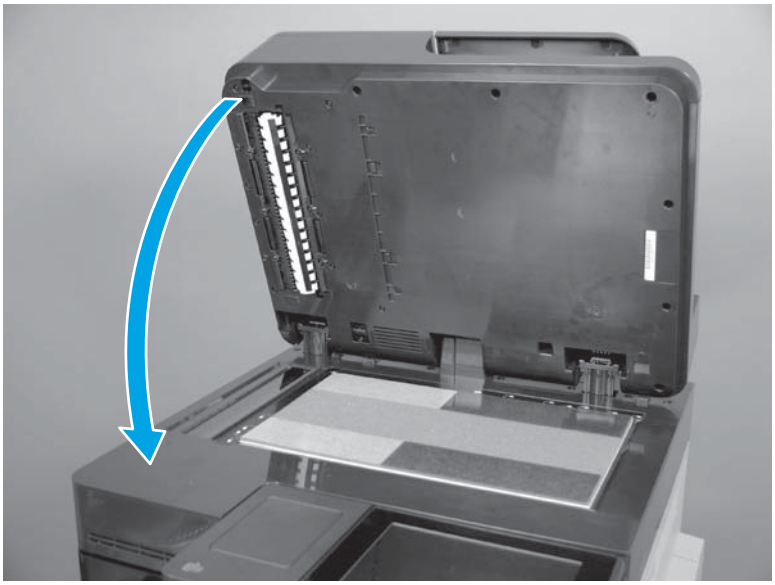
5. Verify that the white backing is aligned with the left rear corner of the scanner glass.

Figure 1-226 Verify that the white backing is correctly aligned



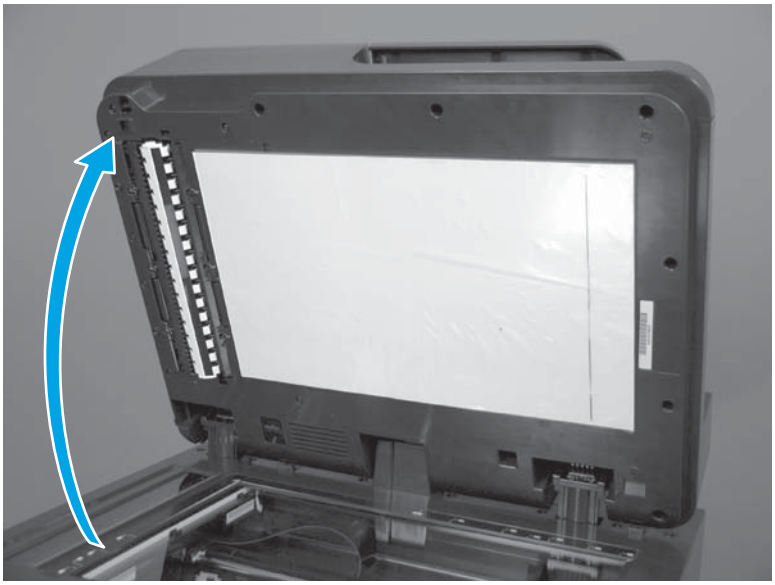
6. Close the document feeder. Press down firmly to adhere the white backing.

Figure 1-227 Close the document feeder and press down



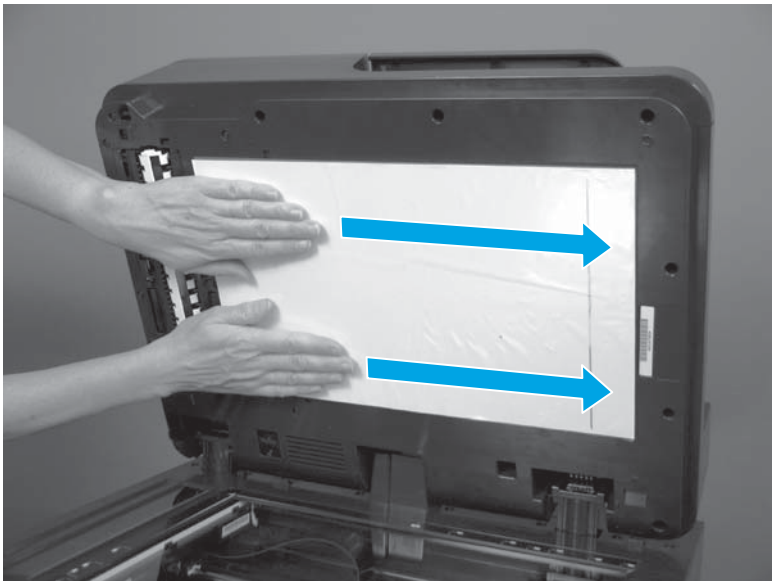
7. Open the document feeder.

Figure 1-228 Open the document feeder



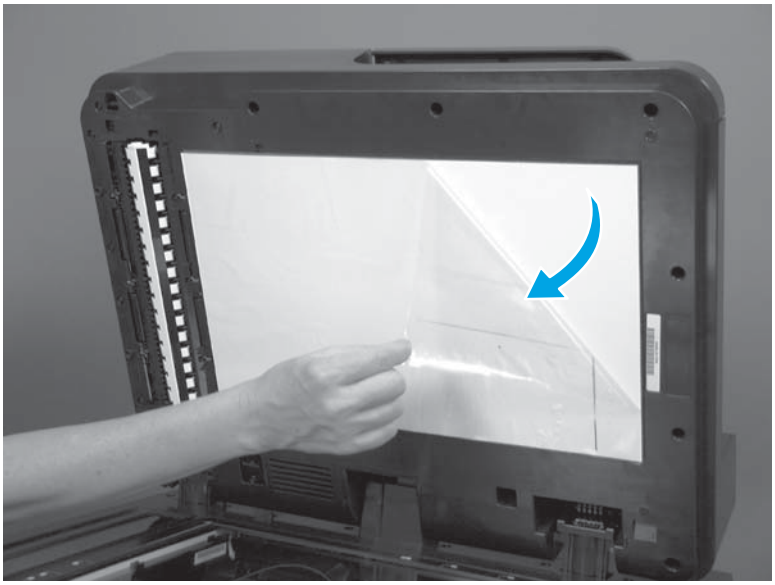
8. Press along the top and bottom of the white backing, over the areas with adhesive.

Figure 1-229 Press along the white backing



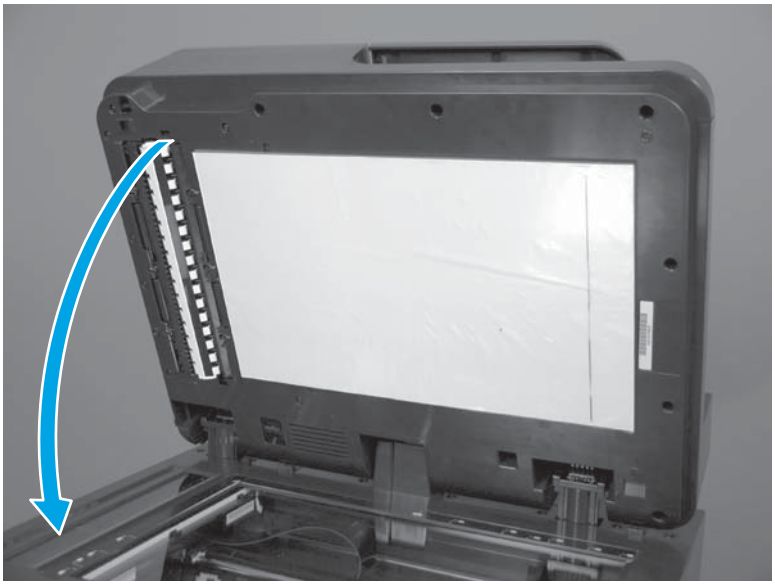
9. Peel off the protective plastic sheet.

Figure 1-230 Peel off the protective sheet



10. Close the document feeder.

Figure 1-231 Close the document feeder



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Document feeder and image scanner assemblies

- Document-feeder mylar strip
- Document-feeder roller cover
- Scanner rear cover
- Scanner control board (SCB)
- Document feeder
- Document-feeder hinge assembly
- Image scanner assembly

Document-feeder mylar strip

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the document-feeder mylar strip
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement mylar strip
- Step 3: Install the document-feeder mylar strip
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the document-feeder mylar strip.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Document-feeder mylar strip kit part number	
B3G86-67903	Document-feeder mylar strip kit with instruction guide **NOTE:** The document-feeder mylar kit contains two mylar guides. Only one guide is required for the product. The second guide is used if the adhesive on the first guide is contaminated during installation.

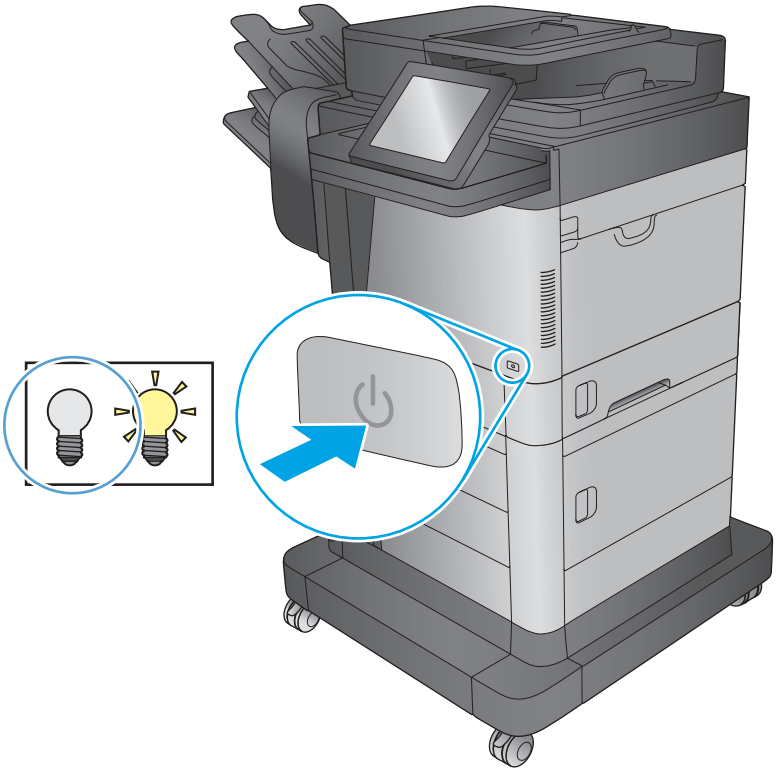
Required tools

- No special tools are required to install this kit.

Step 1: Remove the document-feeder mylar strip

1. Use the power switch to turn the product power off.

Figure 1-232 Turn the power off



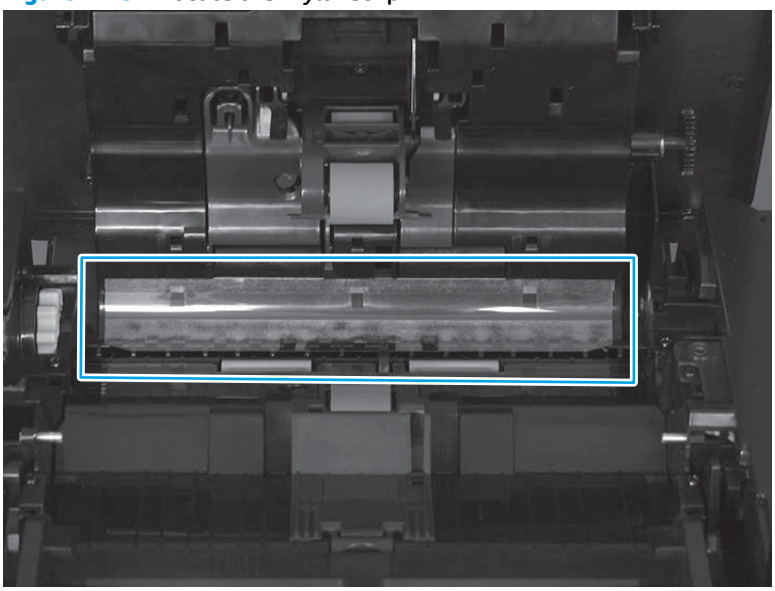
2. Open the document feeder cover.

Figure 1-233 Open the document feeder cover



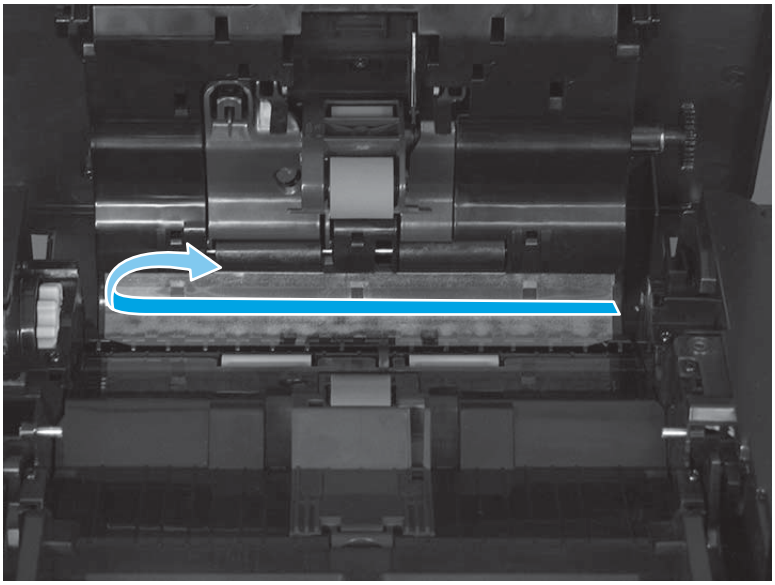
3. Locate the mylar strip inside the document feeder.

Figure 1-234 Locate the mylar strip



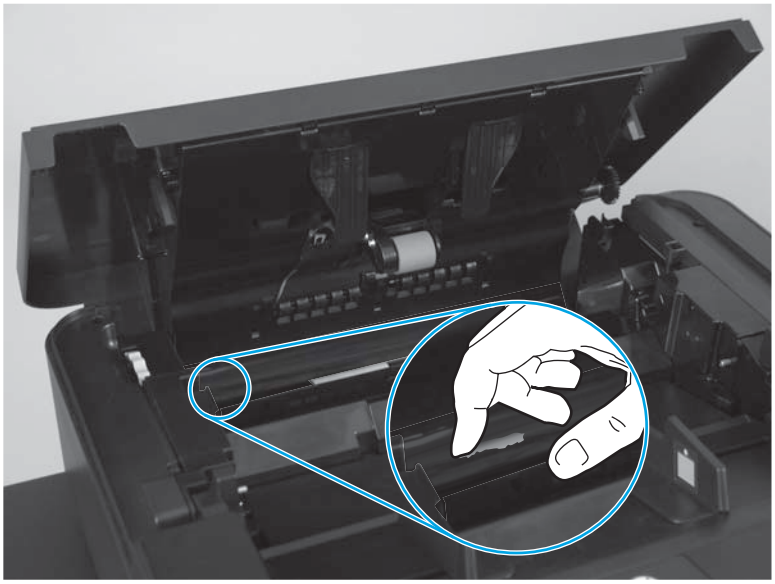
4. Carefully remove the mylar strip.

Figure 1-235 Remove the mylar strip



5. Use a finger to remove any remaining adhesive.

Figure 1-236 Remove any remaining adhesive



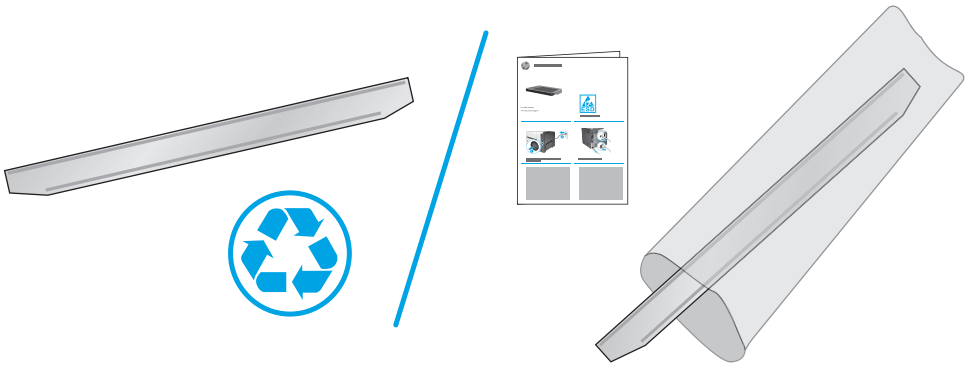
Step 2: Unpack the replacement mylar strip

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

CAUTION: Avoid touching the surface of the replacement mylar strip. Skin oils on the mylar strip can cause print-quality problems. Thoroughly wash your hands with soap and water to remove skin oils, and then completely dry them.

www.Product return and recycling

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



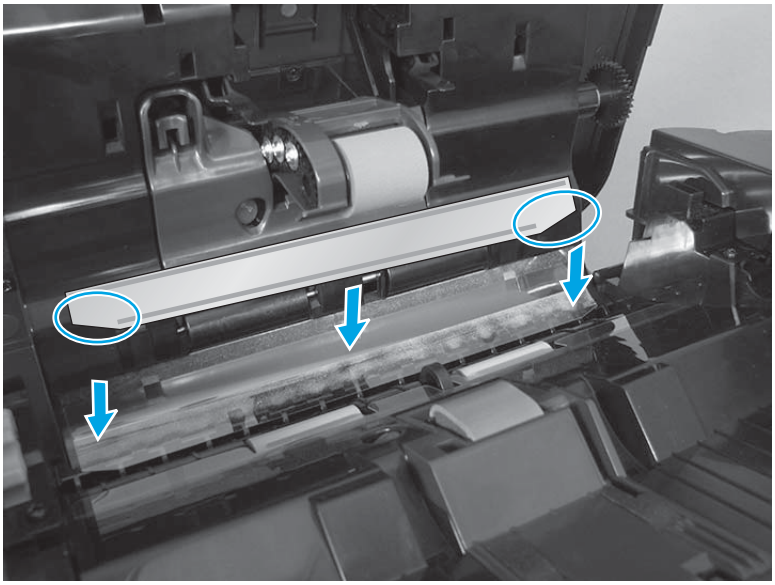
Step 3: Install the document-feeder mylar strip

1. Remove the protective backing from the adhesive portion of the replacement mylar strip, and then position the strip as shown, with the beveled corners on the strip facing the document tray.

IMPORTANT: When handling the replacement mylar strip, do not touch the adhesive portion of the strip.

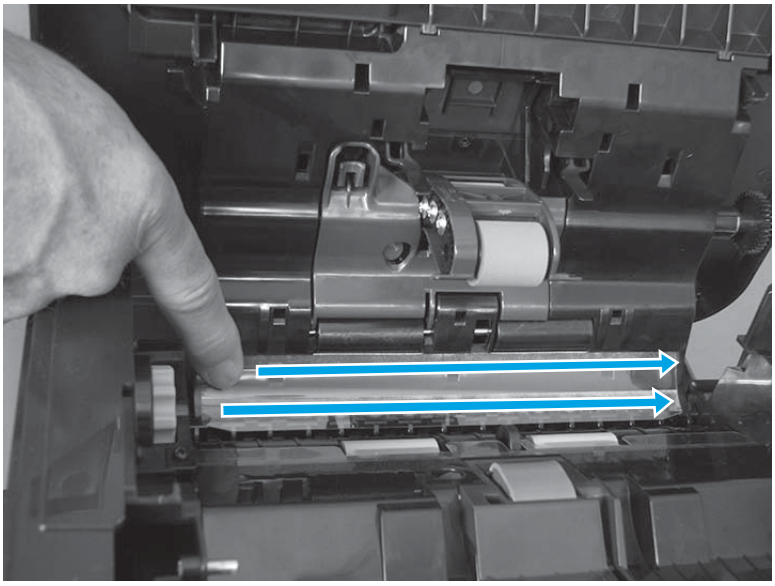
NOTE: Make sure that the adhesive side of the guide is face down.

Figure 1-237 Install the document-feeder mylar strip



2. Press down firmly on the strip to adhere it to the product.

Figure 1-238 Press down firmly on the strip



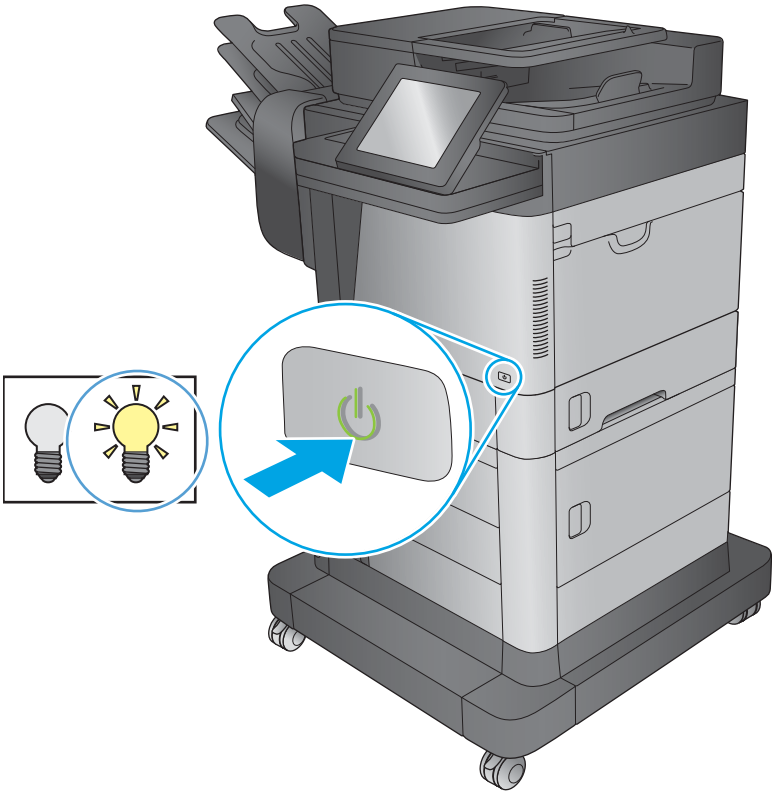
3. Close the document feeder cover.

Figure 1-239 Close the document feeder cover



4. Use the power switch to turn the product power on.

Figure 1-240 Turn the power on



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Document-feeder roller cover

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

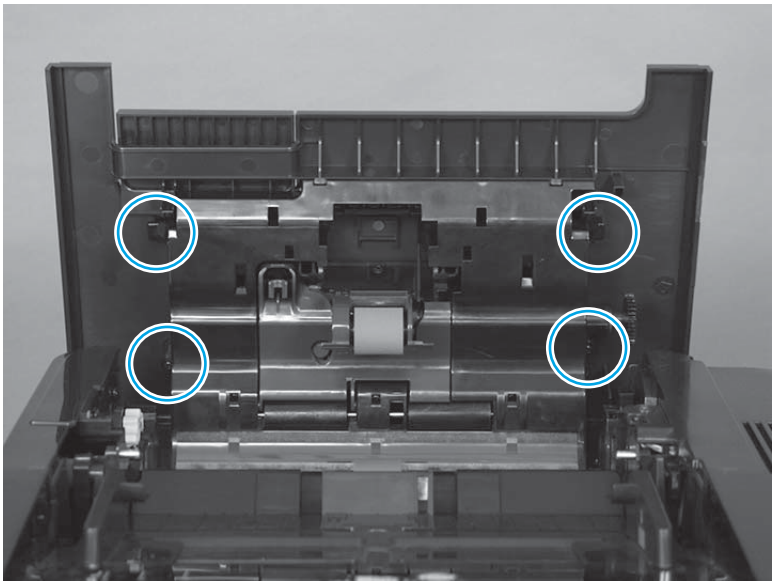
1. Open the document-feeder cover.

Figure 1-241 Open the document-feeder cover



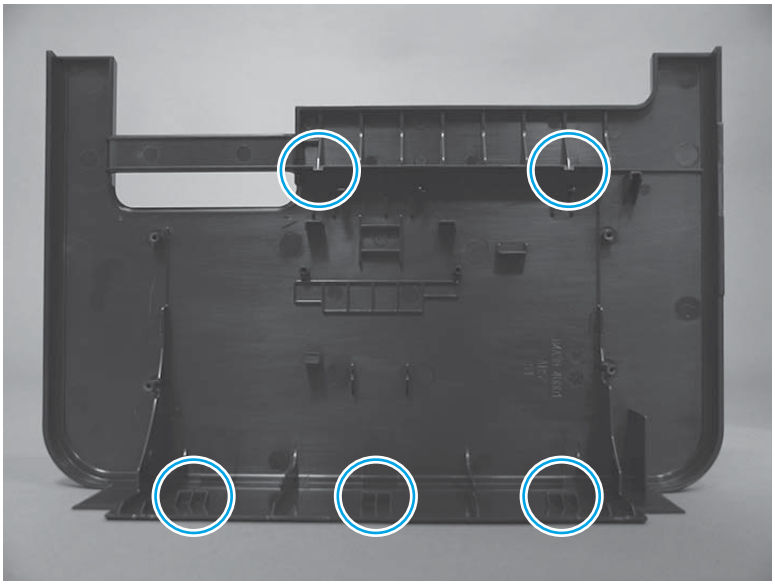
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 1-242 Remove four screws



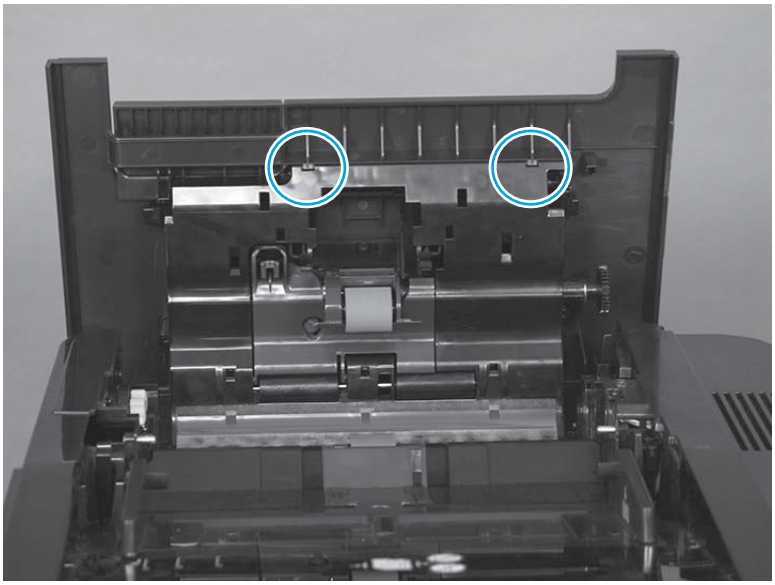
3. Before removing the cover, note the location of the tabs.

Figure 1-243 Note the location of the tabs



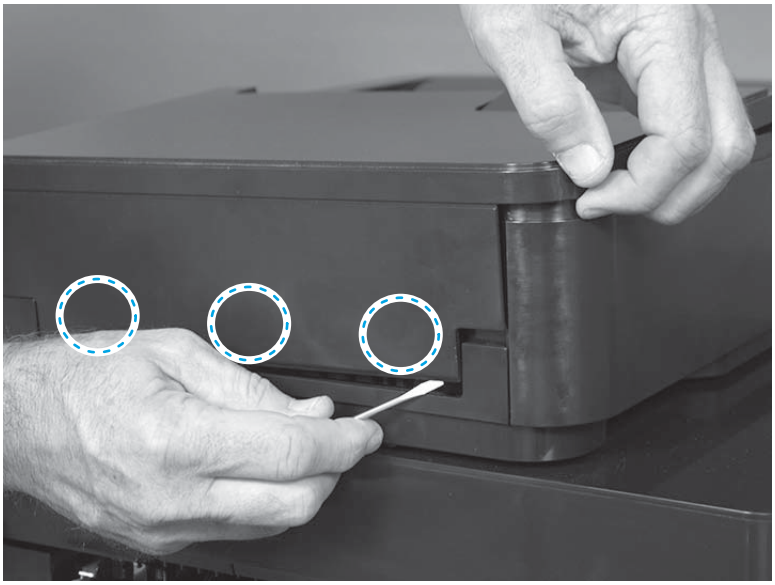
4. Release two tabs.

Figure 1-244 Release two tabs



5. Close the document-feeder cover, and then release the remaining three tabs and remove the cover.

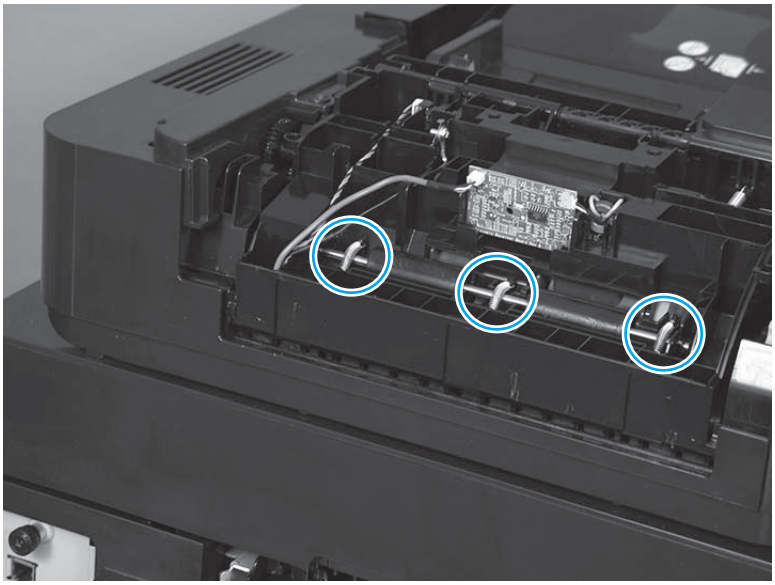
Figure 1-245 Remove the cover



6. Remove three springs.

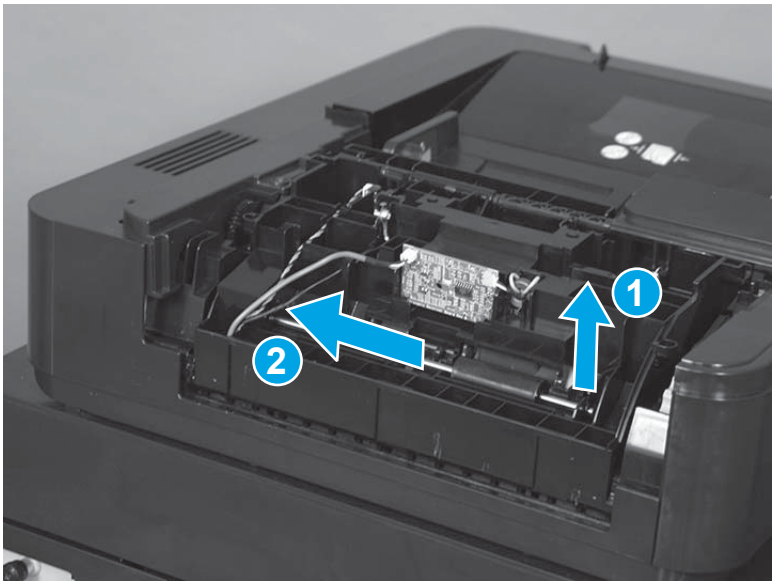
Reinstallation tip: Use needle nose pliers to reattach the spring. Attach the spring to the bottom hook first.

Figure 1-246 Remove three springs



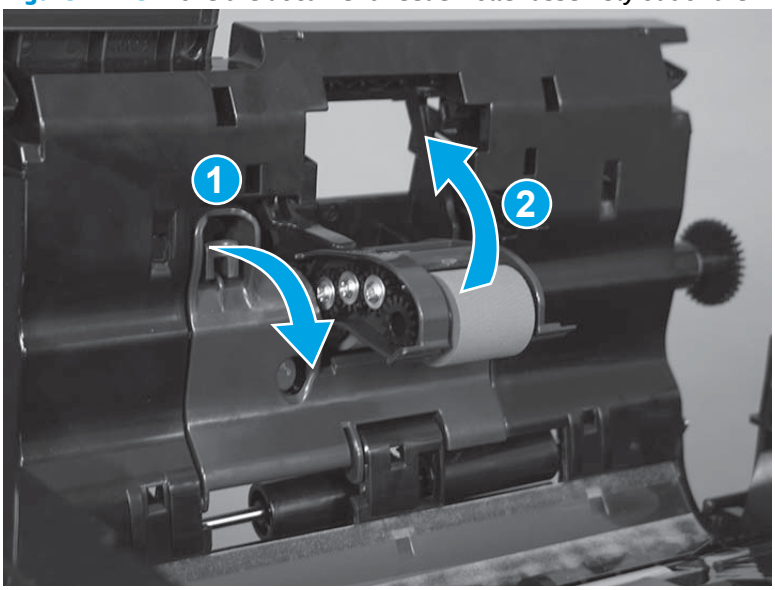
7. Lift the right end of the roller shaft up (callout 1), and then slide the shaft and rollers to the left (callout 2).

Figure 1-247 Slide the shaft and rollers to the left



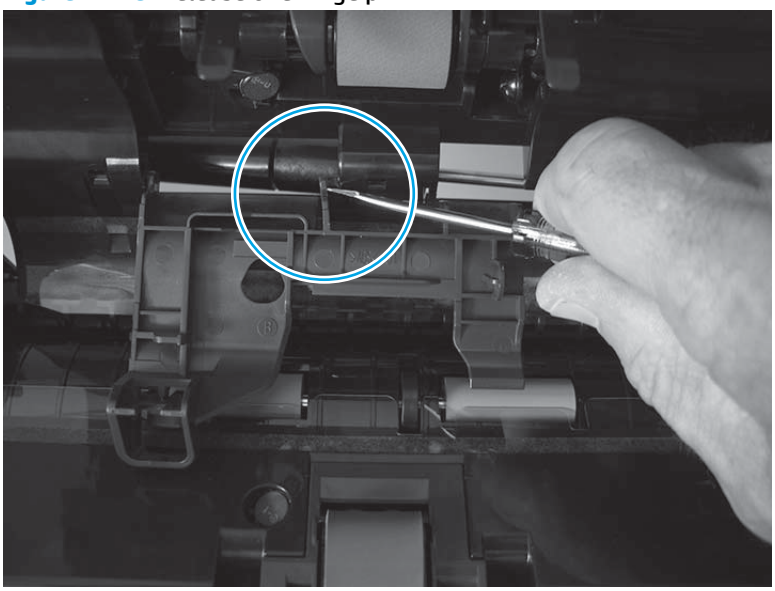
8. Open the document-feeder cover, open the document-feeder roller cover (callout 1), and move the document-feeder roller assembly out of the way (callout 2).

Figure 1-248 Move the document-feeder roller assembly out of the way



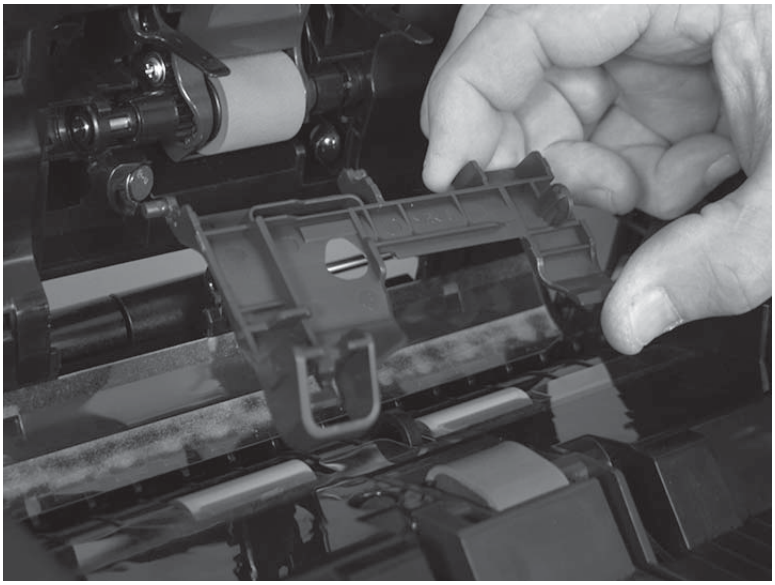
9. Release one hinge pin on the document-feeder roller cover.

Figure 1-249 Release one hinge pin



10. Remove the document-feeder roller cover.

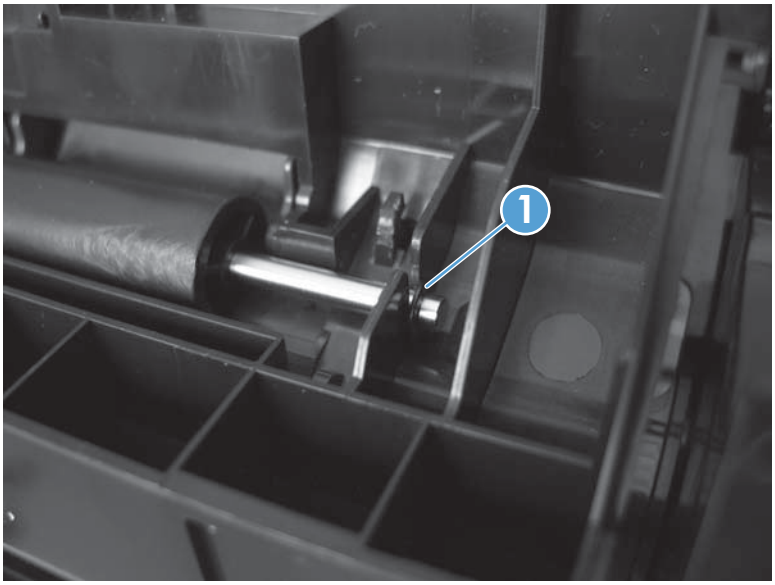
Figure 1-250 Remove the document-feeder roller cover



Reinstall the document-feeder roller cover

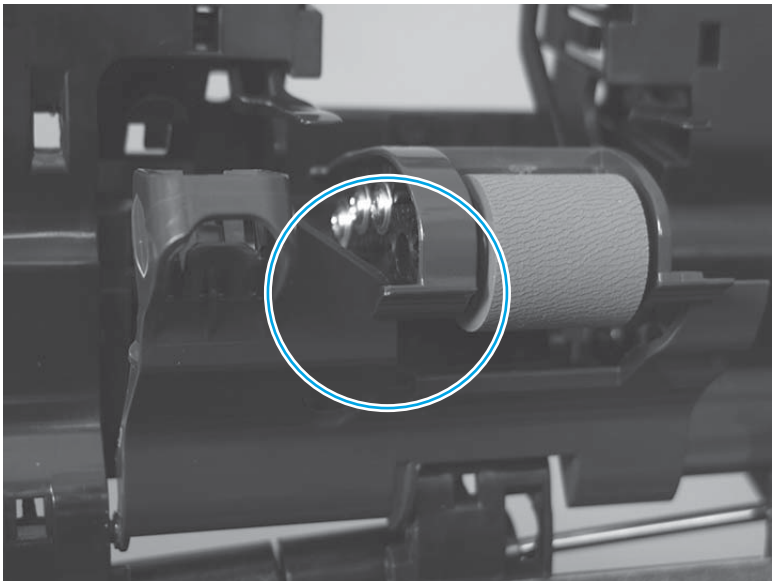
1. Make sure that the end of the roller shaft (callout 1) is correctly installed.

Figure 1-251 Check the roller shaft



2. Make sure the document-feeder roller cover and document-feeder roller assembly are correctly positioned before trying to close the cover.

Figure 1-252 Check the document-feeder roller cover and document-feeder roller assembly



Scanner rear cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the scanner rear cover
- Step 2: Install the scanner rear cover
- Step 3: Turn the product power on

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the scanner rear cover.

Before servicing

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

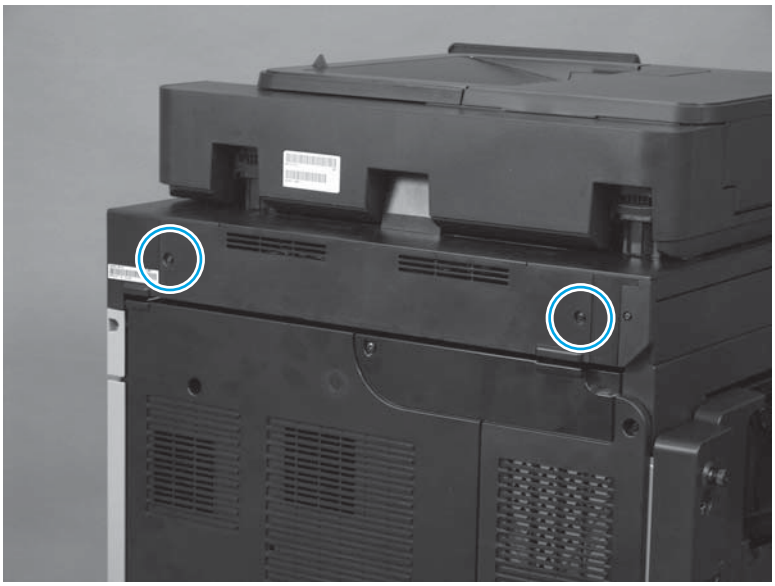
Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the scanner rear cover

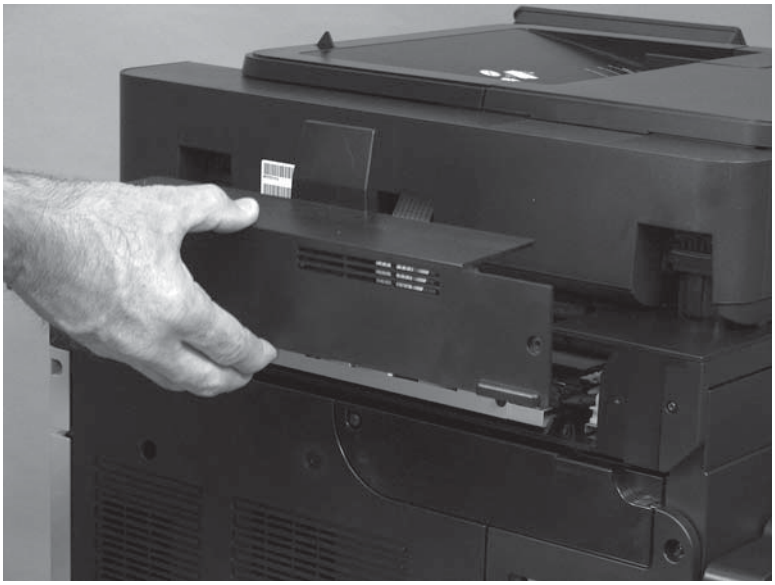
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-253 Remove two screws



2. Remove the cover.

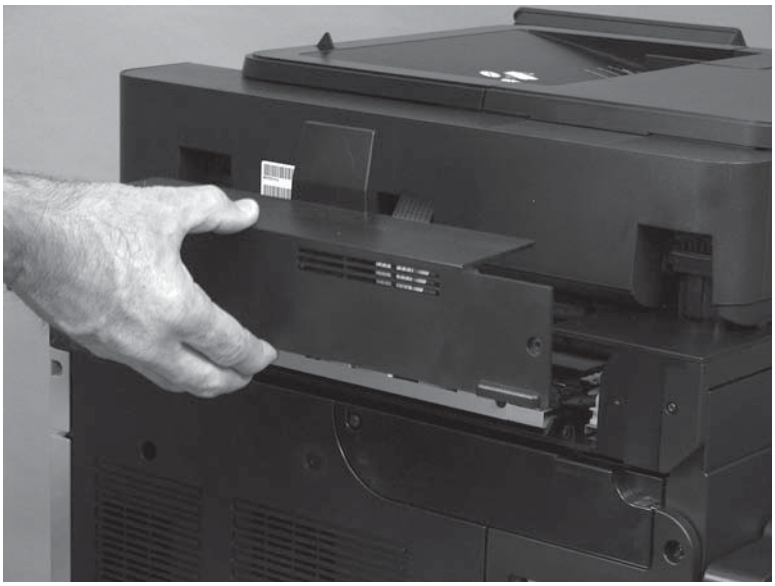
Figure 1-254 Remove the cover



Step 2: Install the scanner rear cover

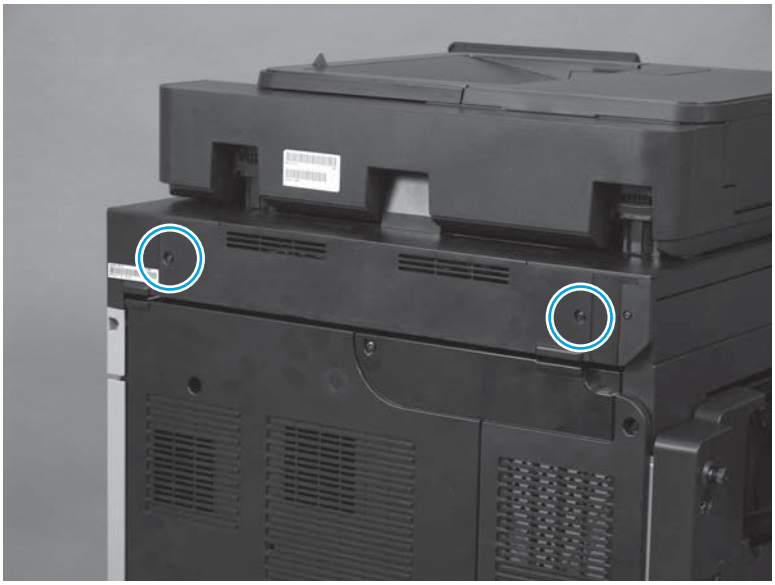
1. Install the cover.

Figure 1-255 Install the cover



2. Install two screws.

Figure 1-256 Install two screws



Step 3: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Scanner control board (SCB)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the scanner rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the SCB
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement SCB
- Step 4: Install the SCB
- Step 5: Install the scanner rear cover
- Step 6: Turn the product power on
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the scanner control board (SCB).

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

SCB kit part number	
B3G86-67904	SCB kit with instruction guide

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

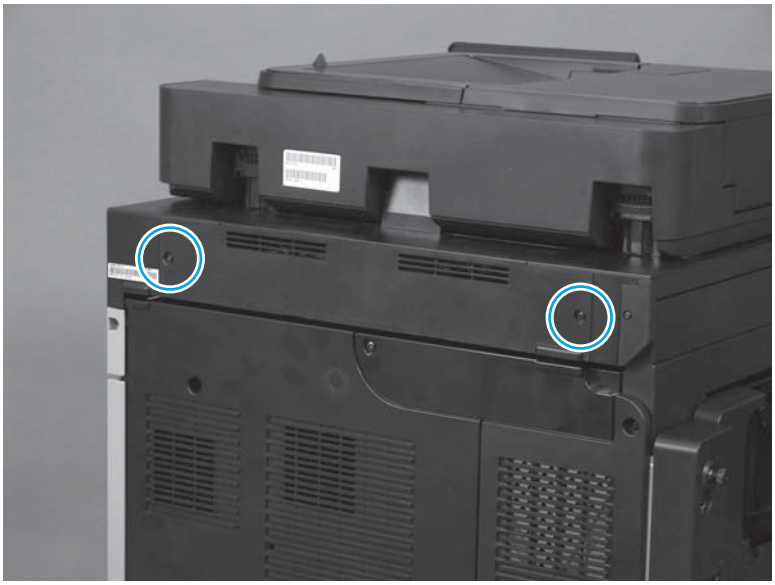
Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the scanner rear cover

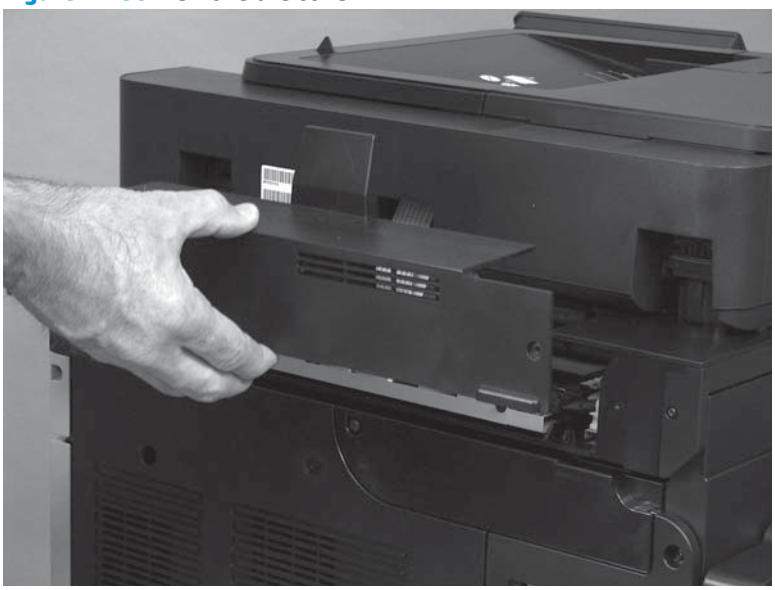
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-257 Remove two screws



2. Remove the cover.

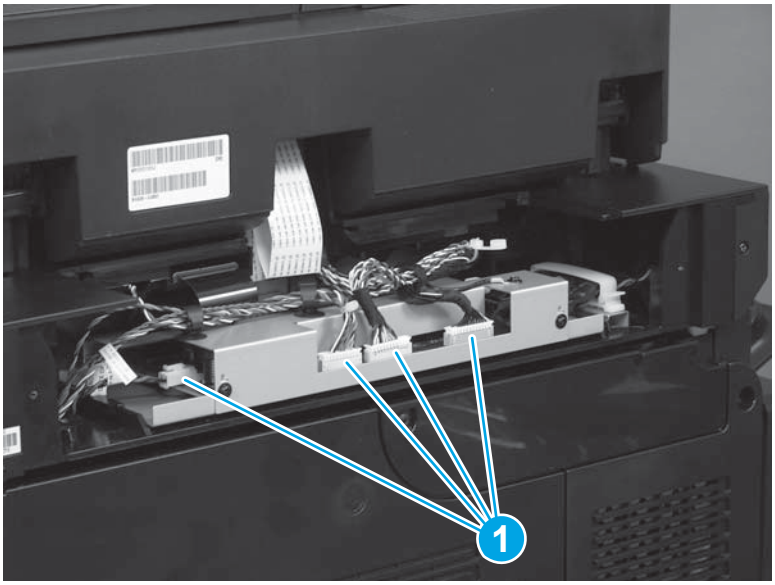
Figure 1-258 Remove the cover



Step 2: Remove the SCB

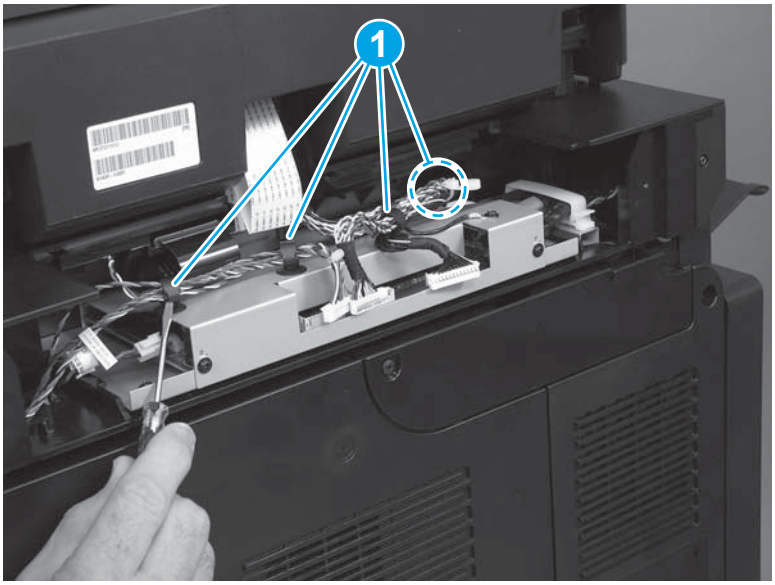
1. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1).

Figure 1-259 Disconnect four connectors



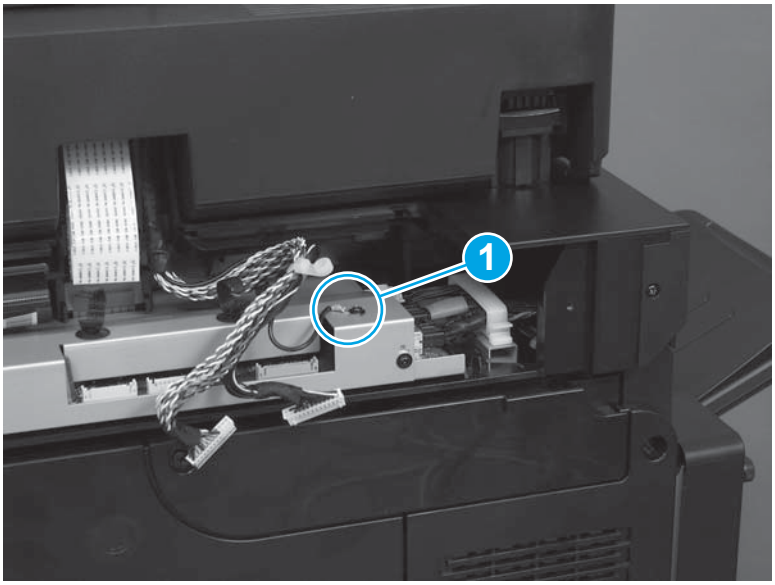
2. Use a small flat-blade screwdriver to release four retainers (callout 1), and then remove the wire harnesses from the retainers.

Figure 1-260 Release four retainers



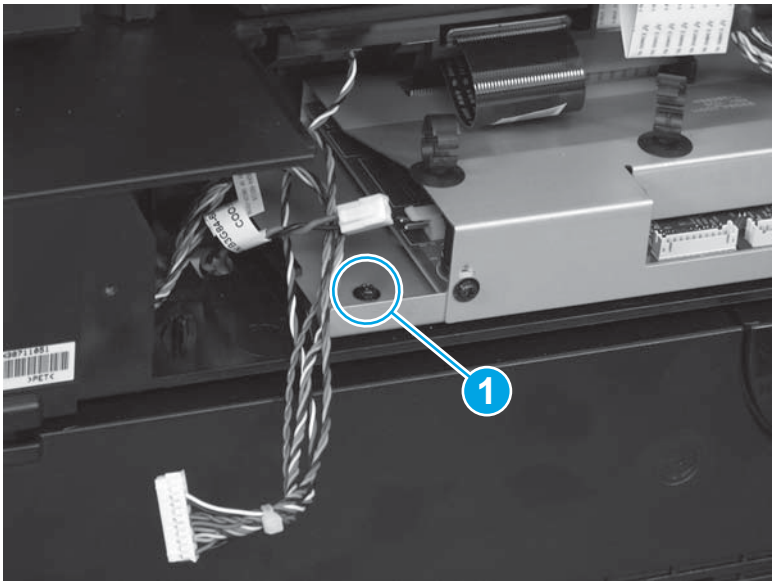
3. On the right side of the SCB, remove one ground screw (callout 1) to release the ground wire.

Figure 1-261 Remove one screw and the ground wire



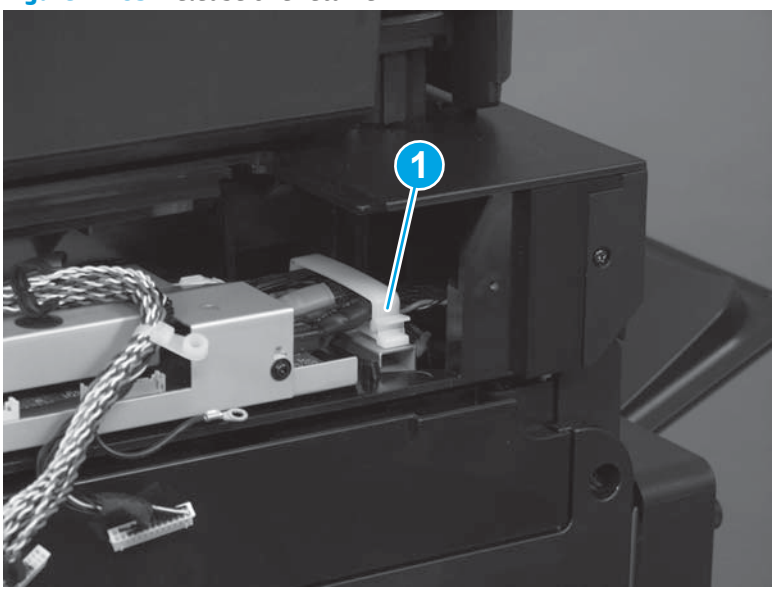
4. On the left side of the SCB, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-262 Remove one screw



5. At the right side of the SCB, press down on the retainer (callout 1) to release it.

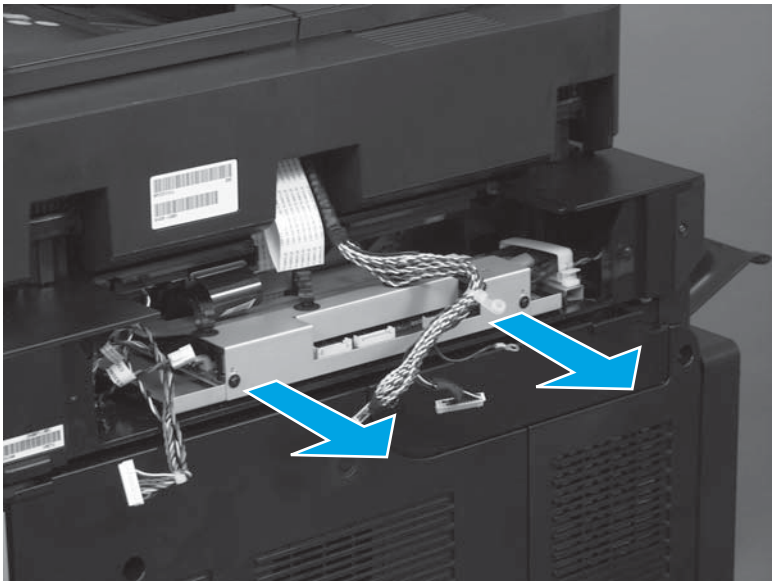
Figure 1-263 Release one retainer



6. Partially slide the SCB out of the product.

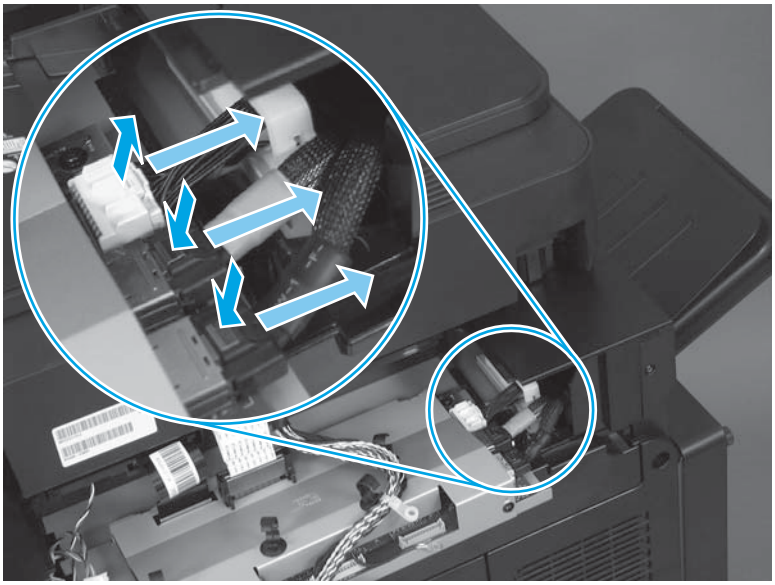
CAUTION: The SCB is still attached to the product by two FFCs. Do not attempt to completely remove the SCB.

Figure 1-264 Partially slide the SCB out



7. Use a small flat-blade screw driver to release three connectors (callout 1).

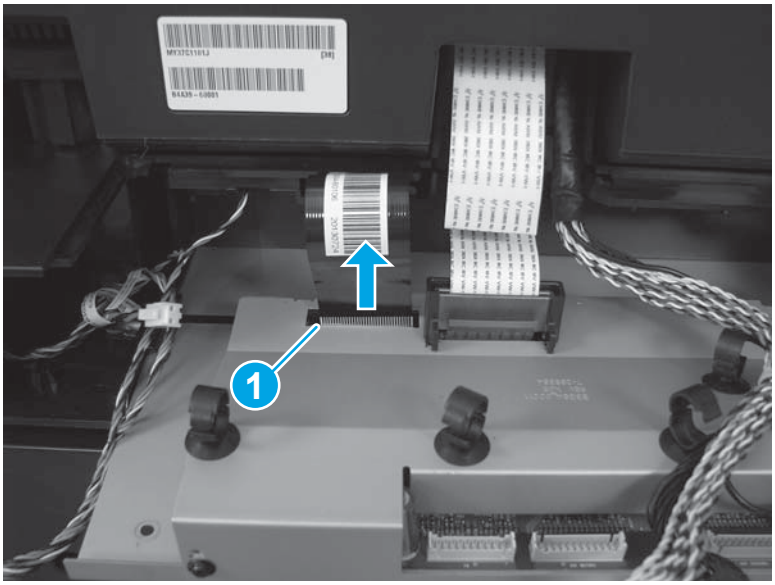
Figure 1-265 Release three connectors



8. Pull straight up on the black scanner FFC (callout 1) to disconnect it.

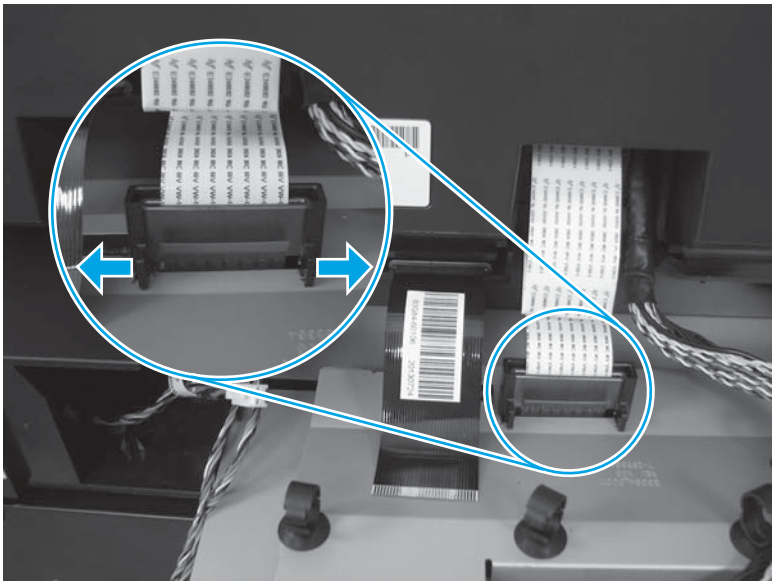
CAUTION: Be careful. The FFC must be pulled straight up and out of the connector to prevent damaging it.

Figure 1-266 Remove the FFC



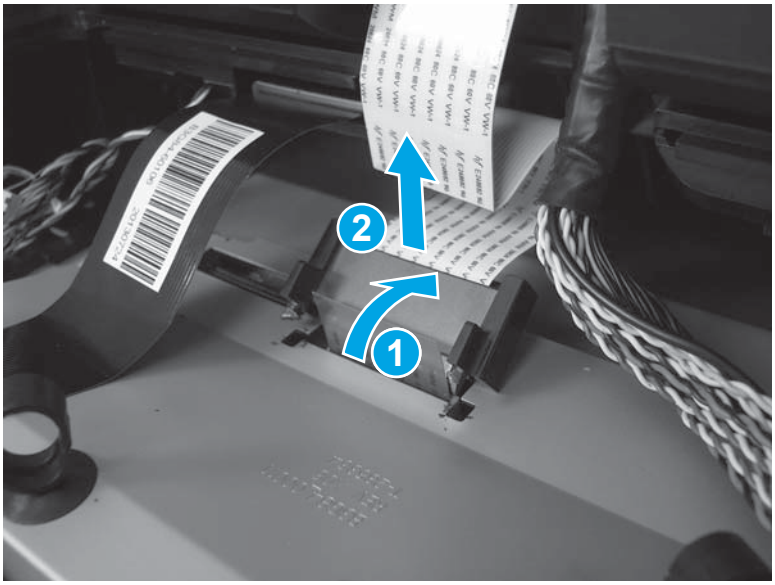
9. Carefully push the tabs on the ferrite holder outward to release them.

Figure 1-267 Release two tabs



10. Rotate the holder backward (callout 1), and then remove it (callout 2). Slide the holder up the FFC.

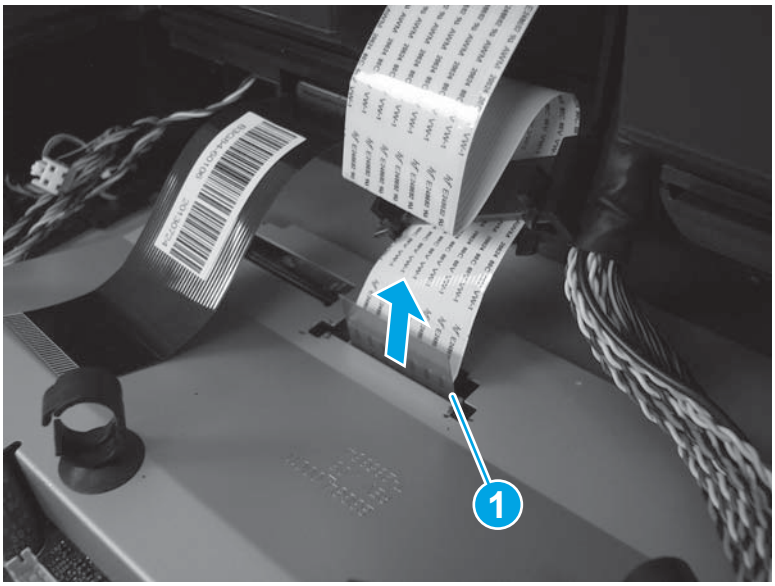
Figure 1-268 Remove the ferrite and holder



11. Pull straight up on the white document-feeder FFC (callout 1) to disconnect it.

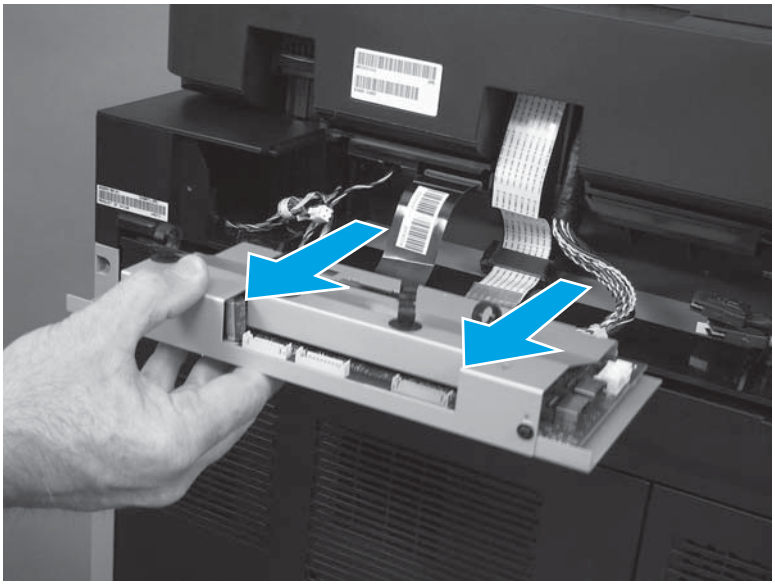
CAUTION: Be careful. The FFC must be pulled straight up and out of the connector to prevent damaging it.

Figure 1-269 Remove the FFC



12. Slide the SCB out of the product to remove it.

Figure 1-270 Remove the SCB

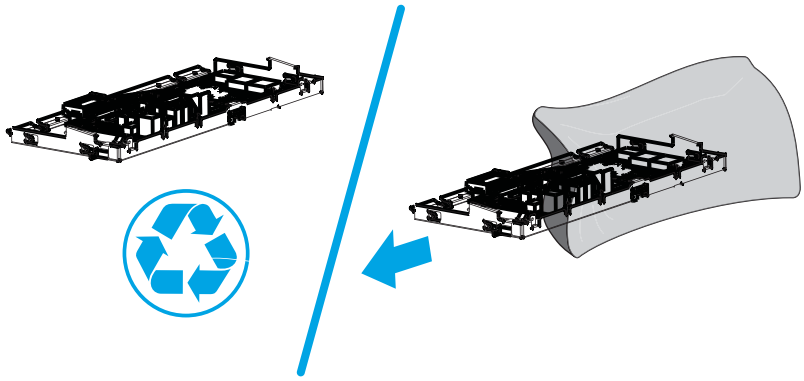


Step 4: Unpack the replacement SCB

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling

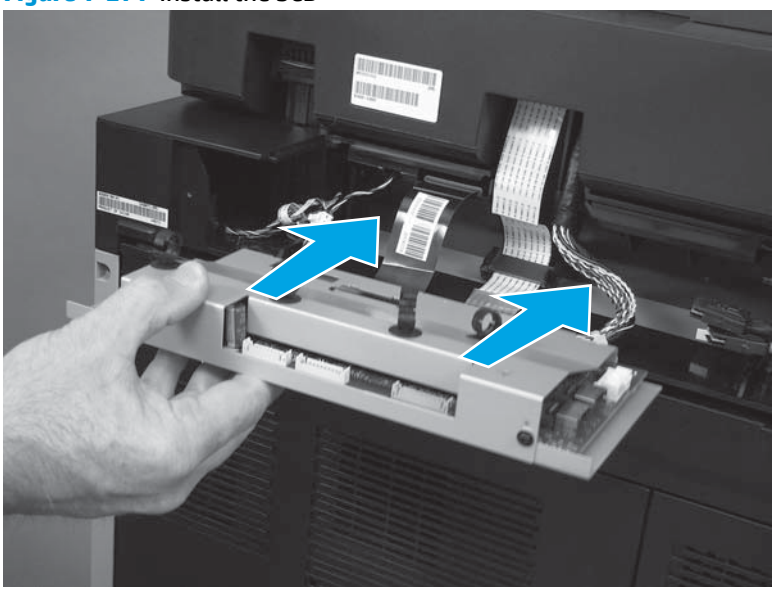
NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 4: Install the SCB

1. Partially slide the SCB into the product—make sure that the sides of the SCB engage the black plastic rails inside the product.

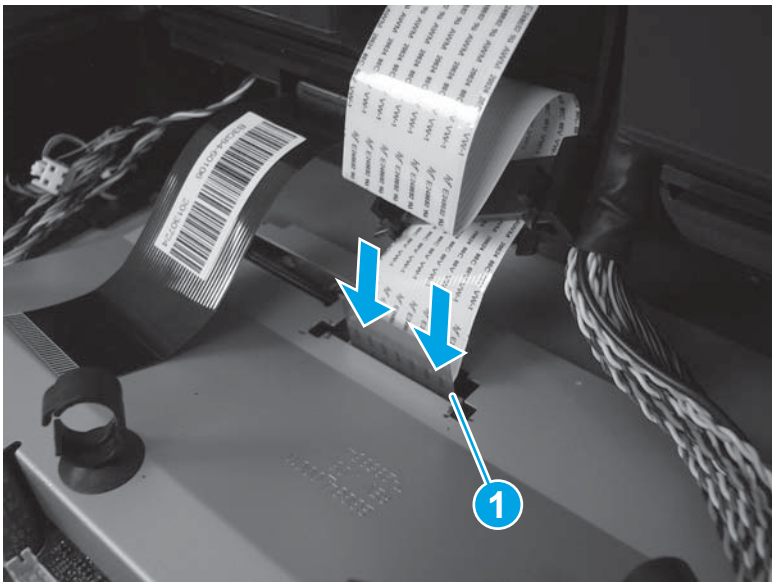
Figure 1-271 Install the SCB



2. Push straight down on the white document-feeder FFC (callout 1) to connect it.

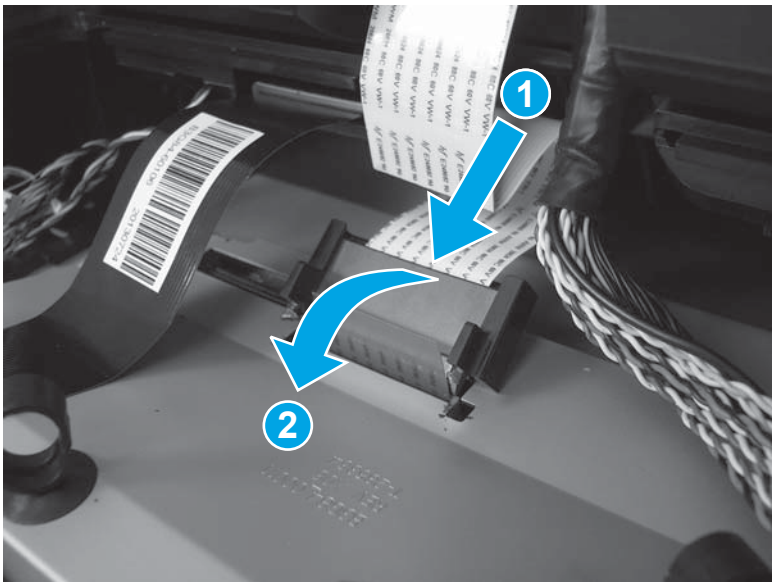
CAUTION: Be careful. The FFC must be pushed straight down and into the connector to prevent damaging it.

Figure 1-272 Connect the FFC



3. Insert the tabs at the back edge of the ferrite holder in the slot on the SCB chassis (callout 1), and then rotate (callout 2) the holder forward to install it.

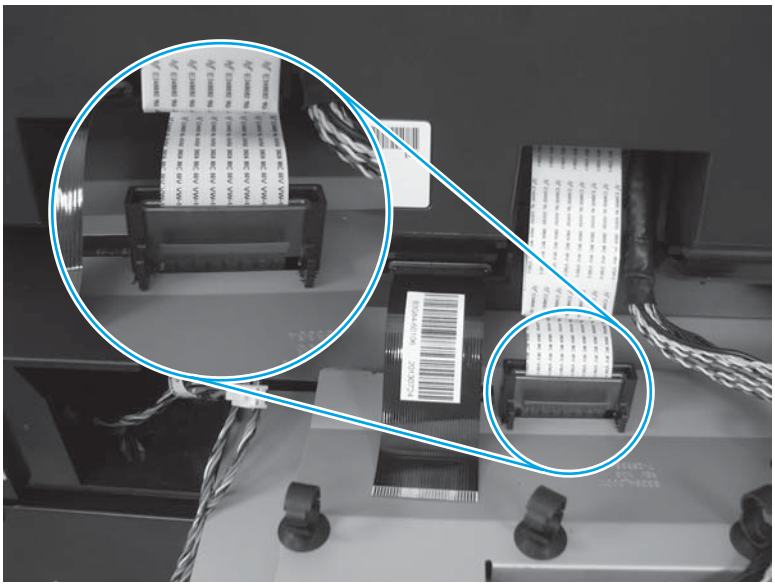
Figure 1-273 Install the ferrite and holder



4. Make sure that the tabs on the ferrite holder snap into the SCB chassis.

NOTE: When correctly installed, the ferrite holder is flat against the SCB chassis and securely fastened.

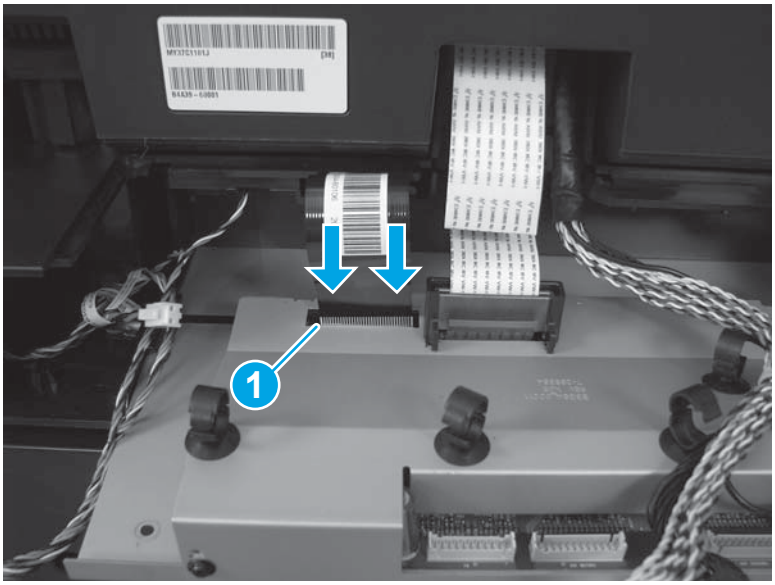
Figure 1-274 Check the two tabs



5. Push straight down on the black scanner FFC (callout 1) to connect it.

CAUTION: Be careful. The FFC must be pushed straight down and into the connector to prevent damaging it.

Figure 1-275 Connect the FFC

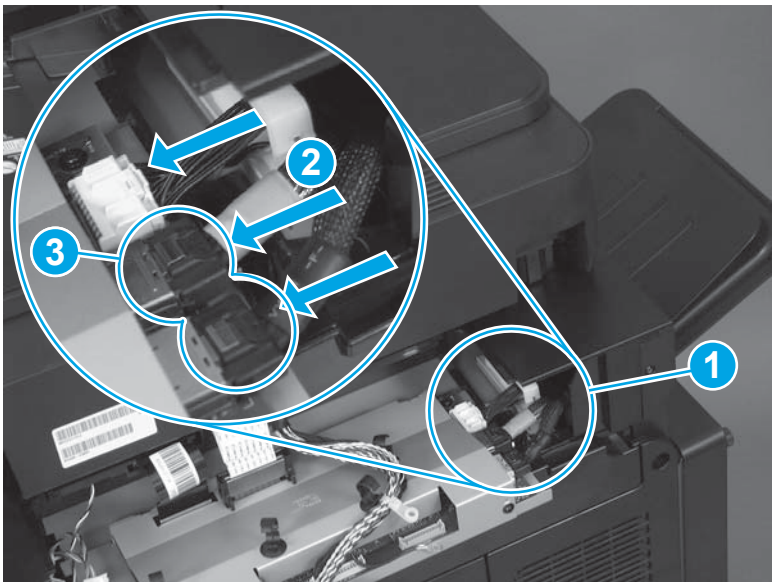


6. Connect three connectors (callout 1).

Reinstallation tip: The wire harness with the blue band (callout 2) connects to the inner connector on the SCB when reinstalled.

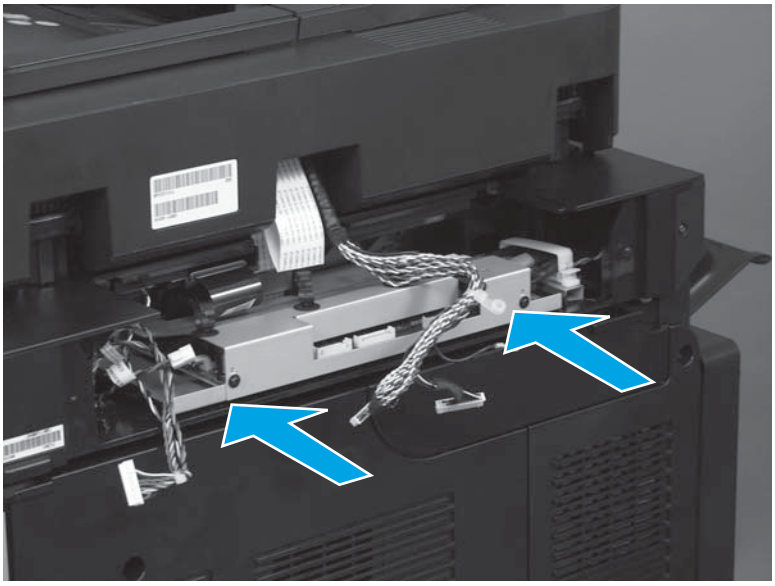
When the two connectors with the metal retainer clips (callout 3) are reinstalled, make sure that the clips snap in place to securely lock the connectors in place.

Figure 1-276 Connect three connectors



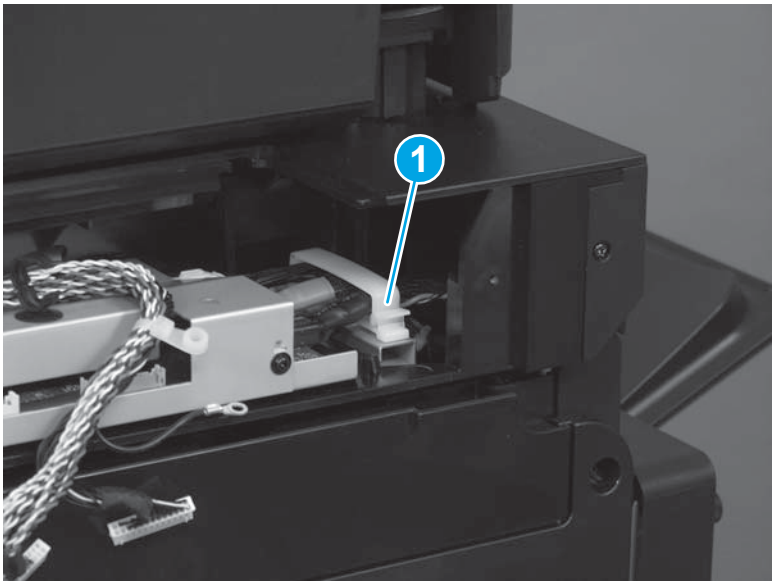
7. Slide the SCB into the product.

Figure 1-277 Slide the SCB in



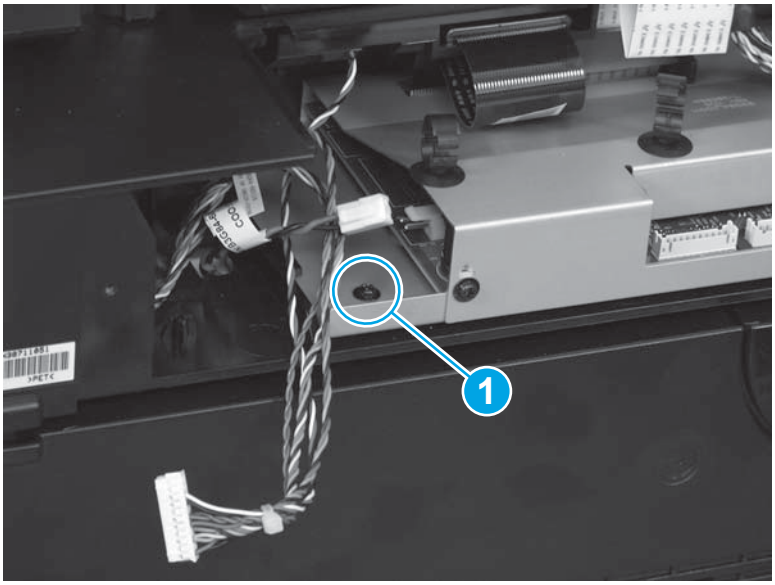
8. At the right side of the SCB, fasten one retainer (callout 1).

Figure 1-278 Fasten one retainer



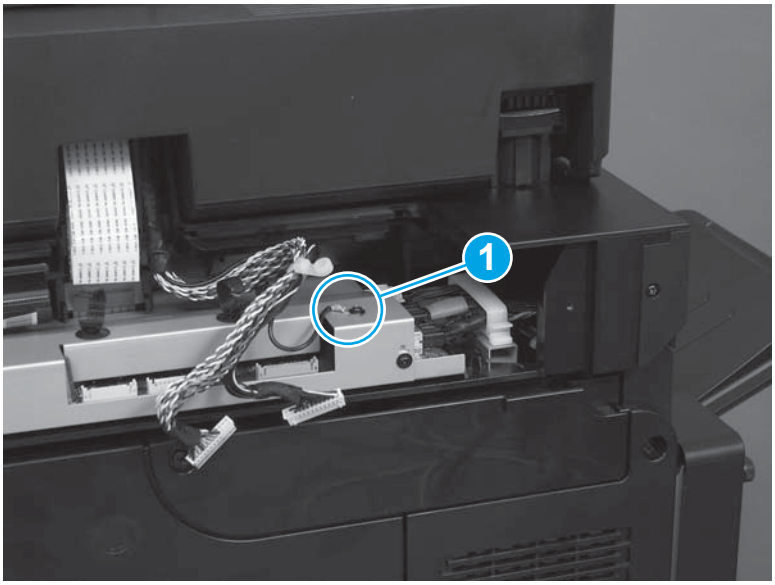
9. At the left side of the SCB, install one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-279 Install one screw



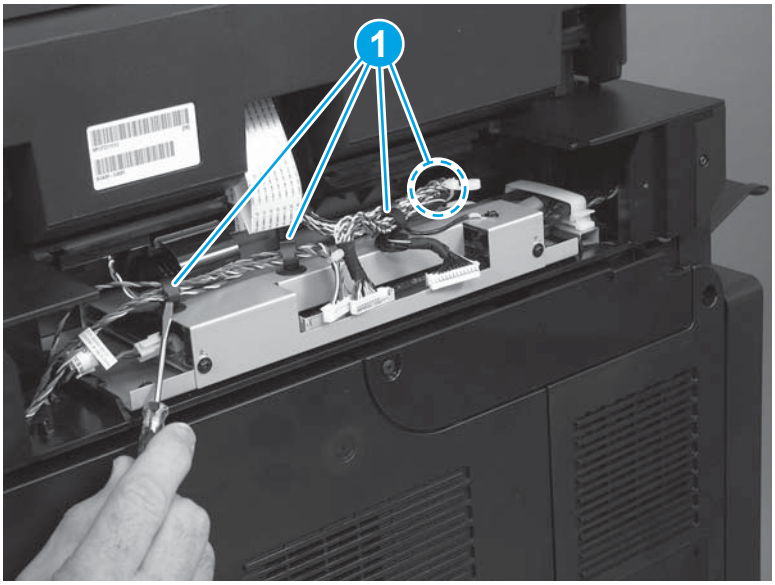
10. At the right side of the SCB, Install the ground wire and one ground screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-280 Install the ground wire and one screw



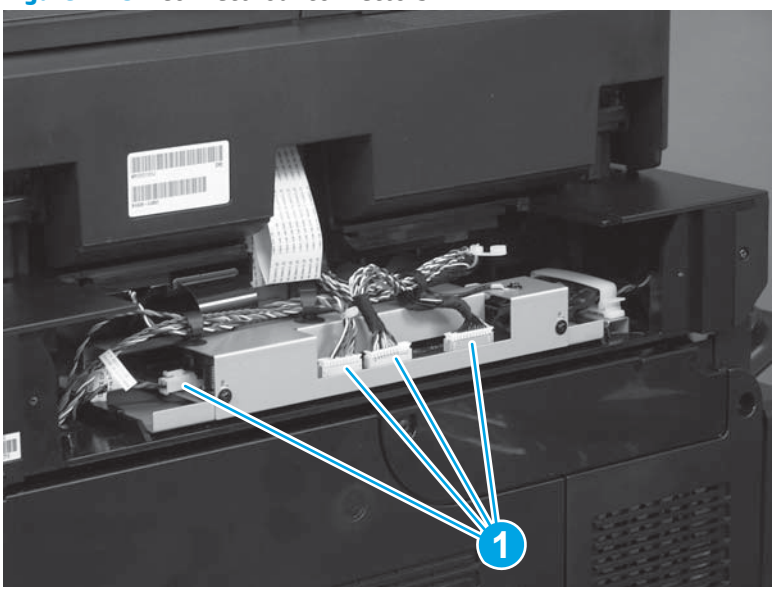
11. Install the wire harnesses in the four retainers (callout 1).

Figure 1-281 Install the wire harnesses



12. Connect four connectors (callout 1).

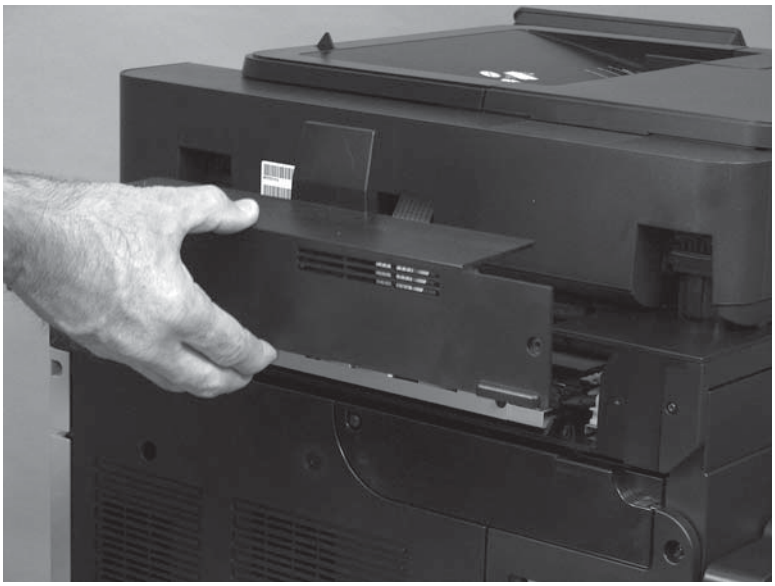
Figure 1-282 Connect four connectors



Step 5: Install the scanner rear cover

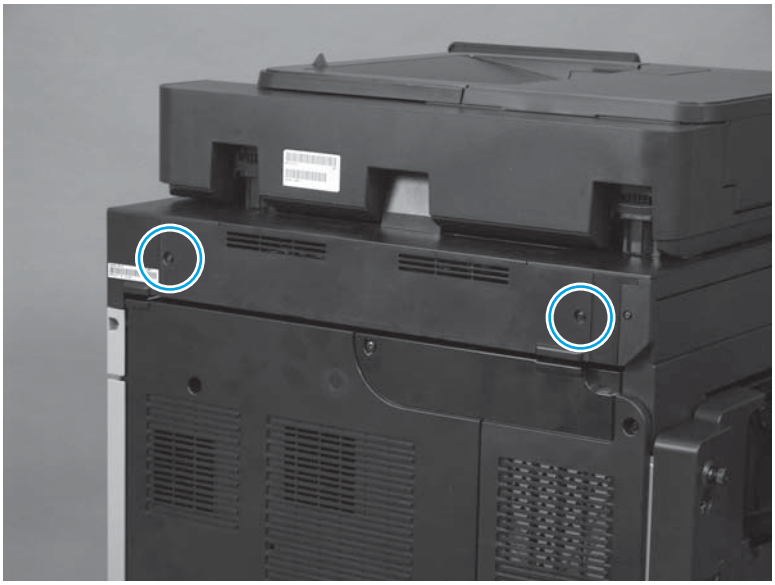
1. Install the cover.

Figure 1-283 Install the cover



2. Install two screws.

Figure 1-284 Install two screws



Step 6: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Document feeder

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the backside background selector
- Step 2: Remove the scanner rear cover
- Step 3: Remove the SCB
- Step 4: Remove the document feeder
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement document feeder
- Step 6: Install the document feeder
- Step 7: Install the SCB
- Step 8: Install the scanner rear cover
- Step 9: Install the backside background selector
- Step 10: Install the document feeder white backing
- Step 11: Reset the supplies counters and calibrate the scanner
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the document feeder.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Document feeder kit part number	
B3G86-67901	Document feeder with instruction guide **NOTE:** The document feeder kit includes the document feeder white backing kit.

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the backside background selector

Reinstallation tip: Set the backside background selector selector aside to install it on the replacement document feeder.

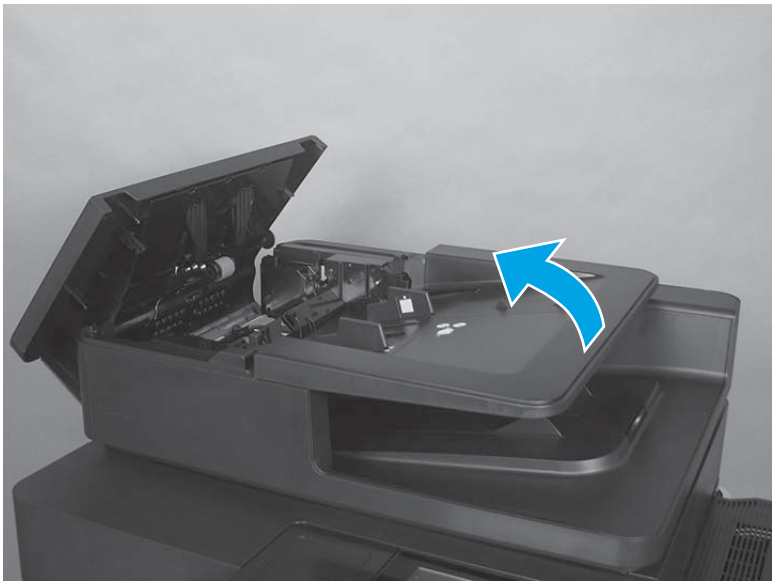
1. Open the document-feeder door.

Figure 1-285 Open the document-feeder door



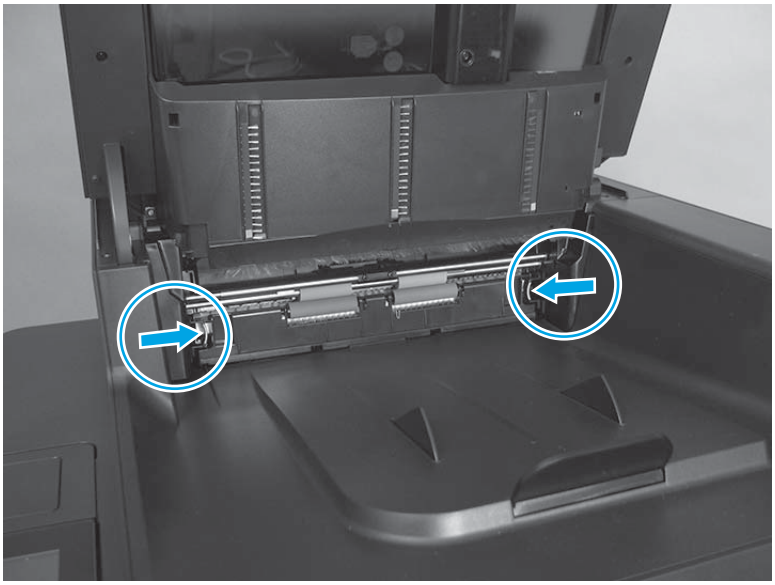
2. Rotate the input tray up.

Figure 1-286 Rotate the input tray up



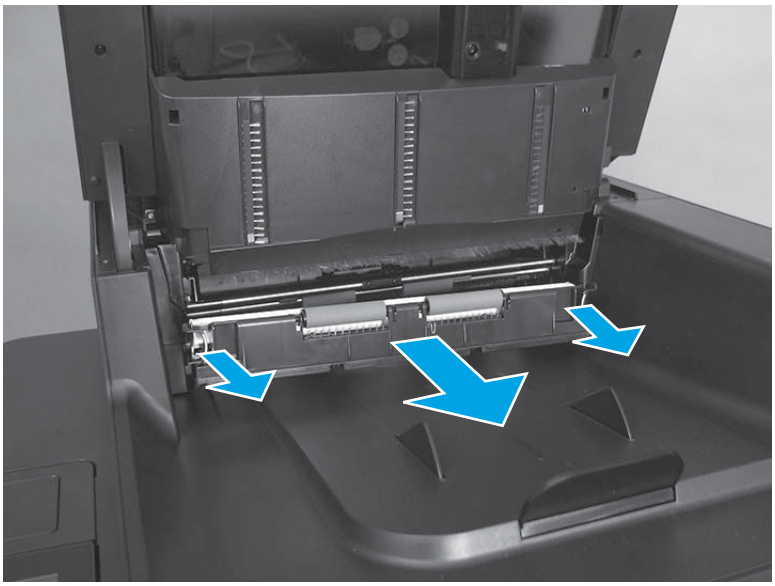
3. Release two tabs.

Figure 1-287 Release two tabs



4. Slide the backside background selector away from the product to remove it.

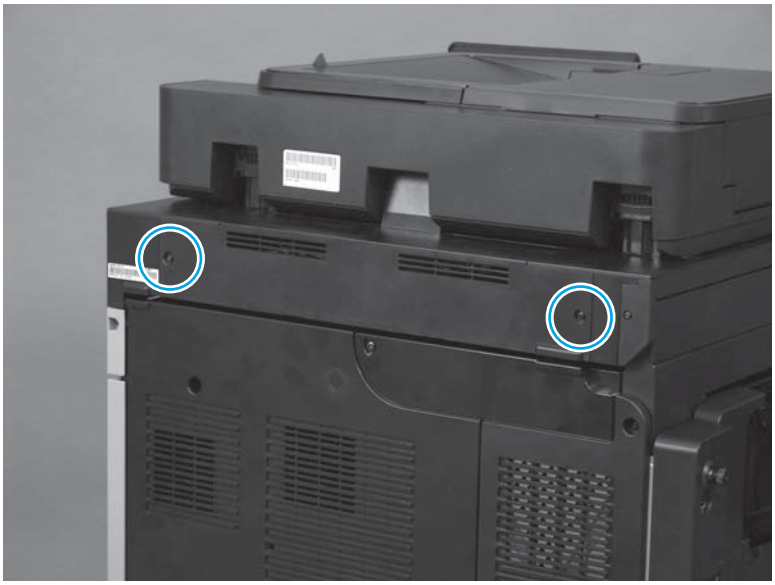
Figure 1-288 Remove the backside background selector



Step 2: Remove the scanner rear cover

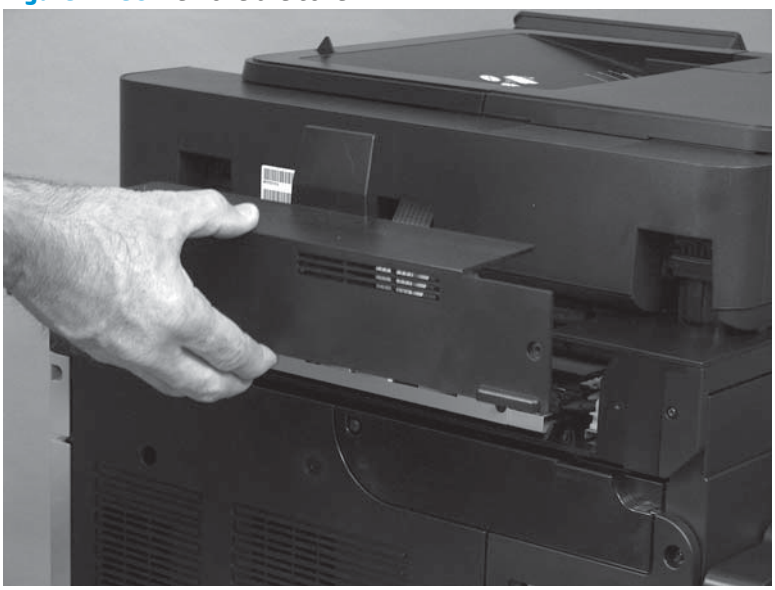
1. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-289 Remove two screws



2. Remove the cover.

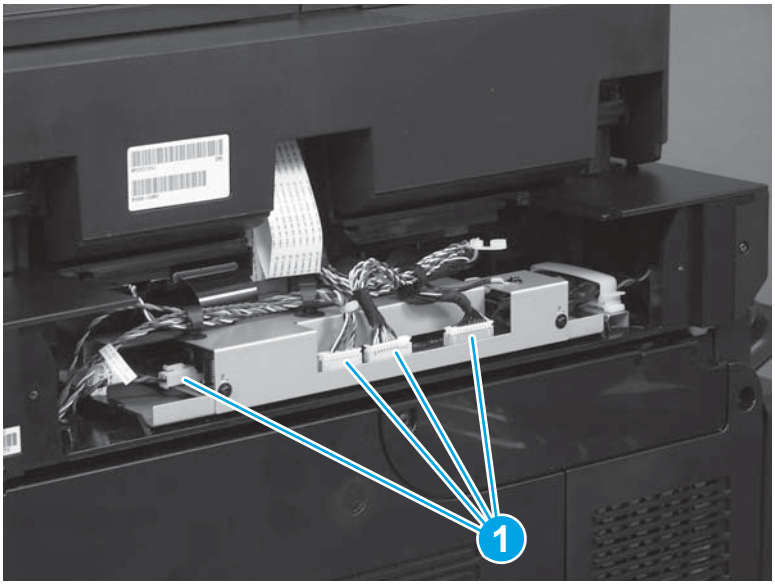
Figure 1-290 Remove the cover



Step 3: Remove the SCB

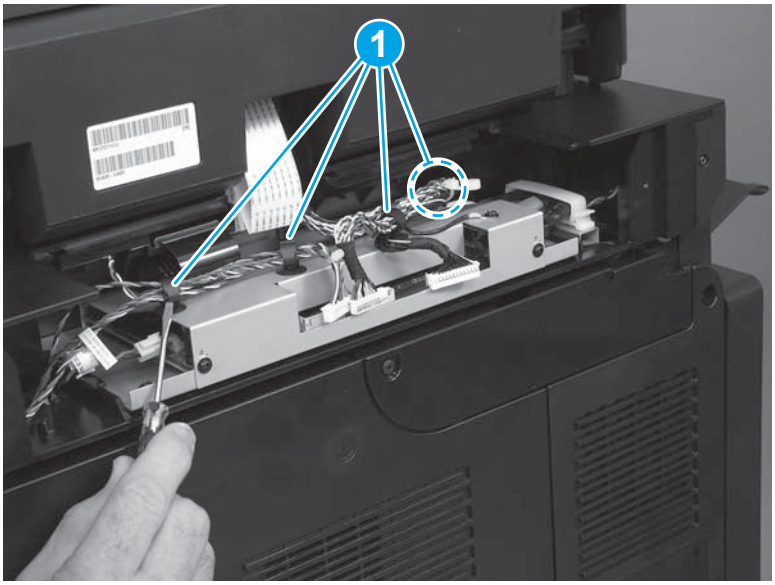
1. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1).

Figure 1-291 Disconnect four connectors



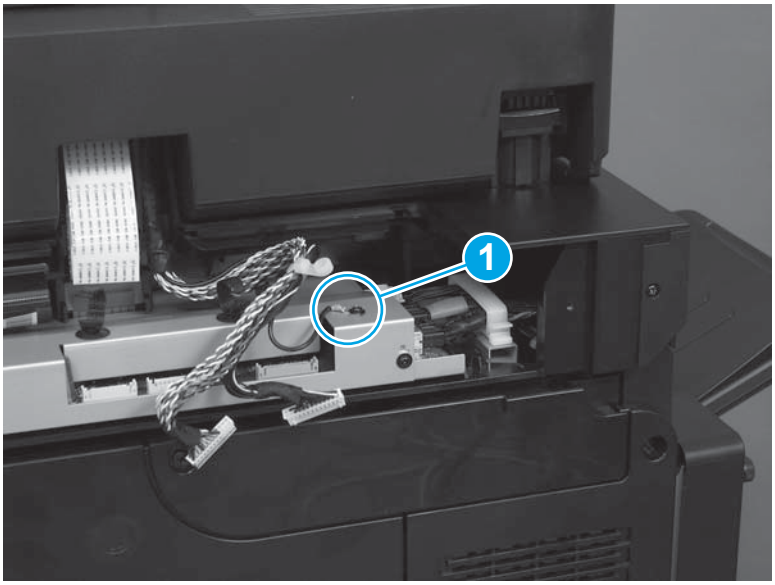
2. Use a small flat-blade screwdriver to release four retainers (callout 1), and then remove the wire harnesses from the retainers.

Figure 1-292 Release four retainers



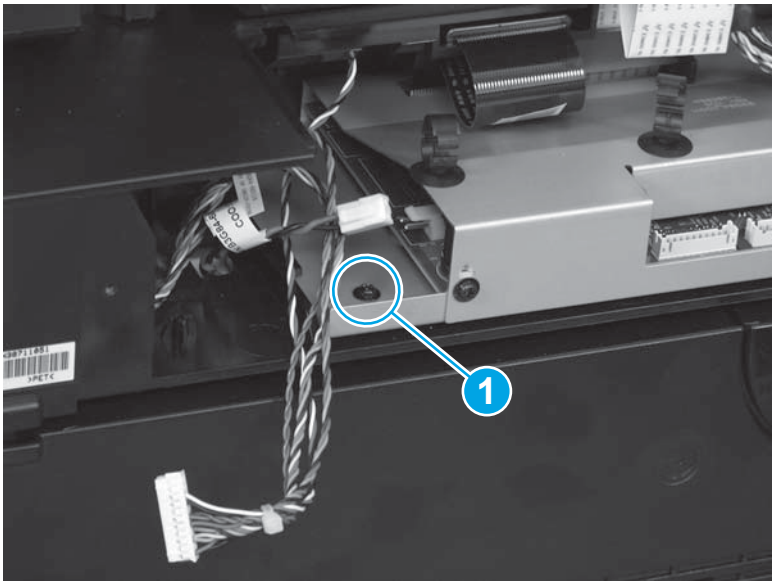
3. On the right side of the SCB, remove one ground screw (callout 1) to release the ground wire.

Figure 1-293 Remove one screw and the ground wire



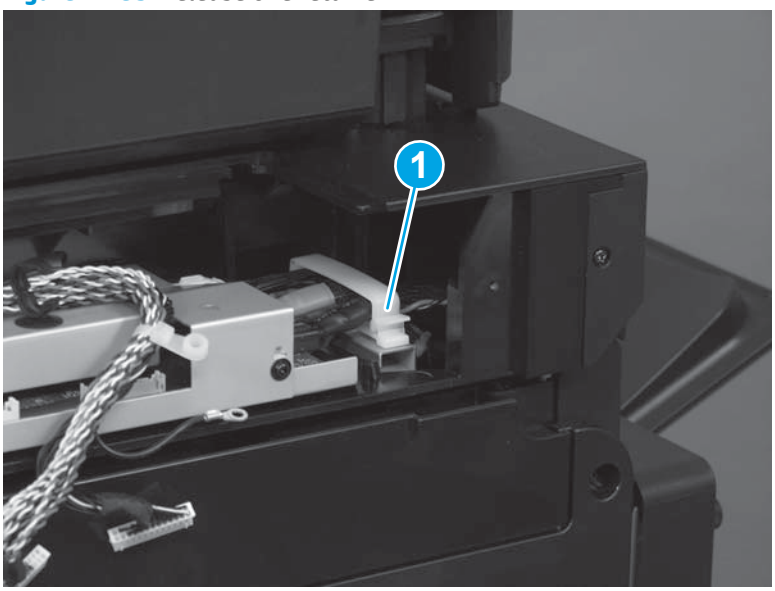
4. On the left side of the SCB, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-294 Remove one screw



5. At the right side of the SCB, press down on the retainer (callout 1) to release it.

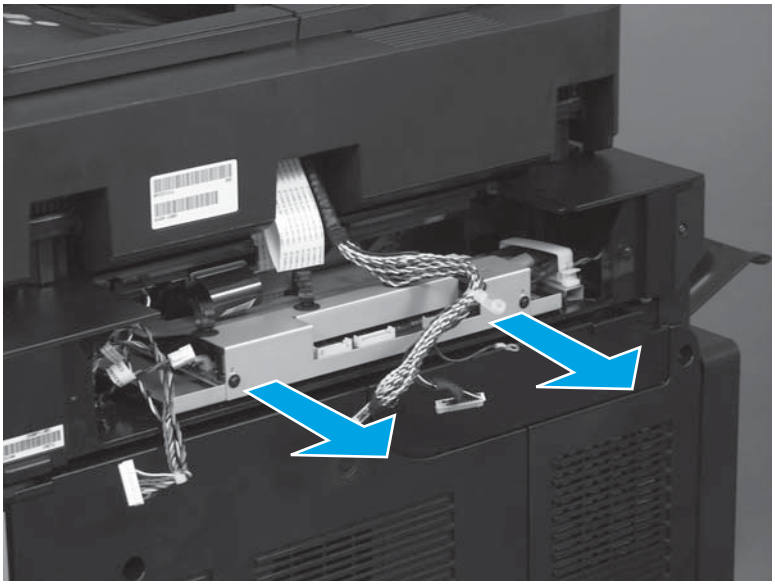
Figure 1-295 Release one retainer



6. Partially slide the SCB out of the product.

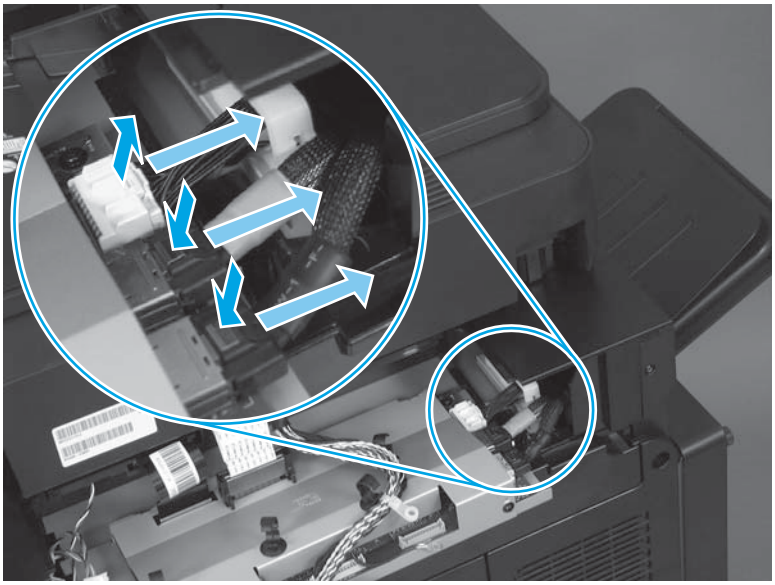
⚠ **CAUTION:** The SCB is still attached to the product by two FFCs. Do not attempt to completely remove the SCB.

Figure 1-296 Partially slide the SCB out



7. Use a small flat-blade screw driver to release three connectors (callout 1).

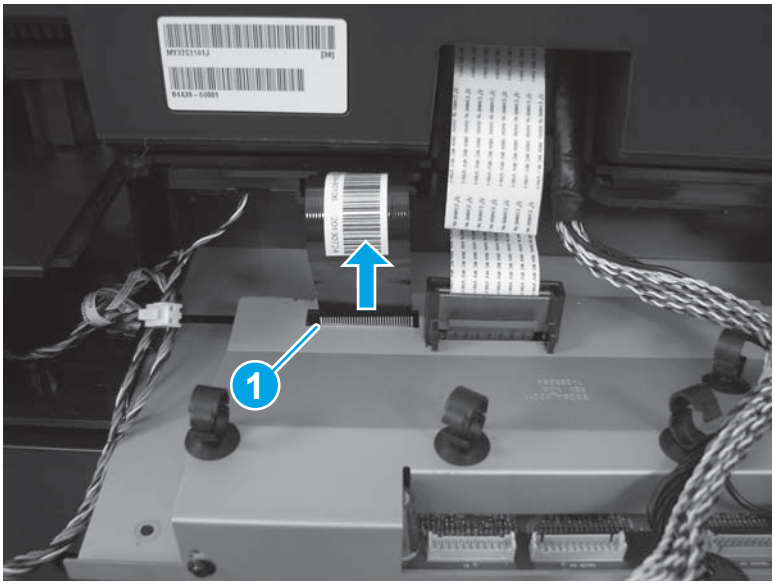
Figure 1-297 Release three connectors



8. Pull straight up on the black scanner FFC (callout 1) to disconnect it.

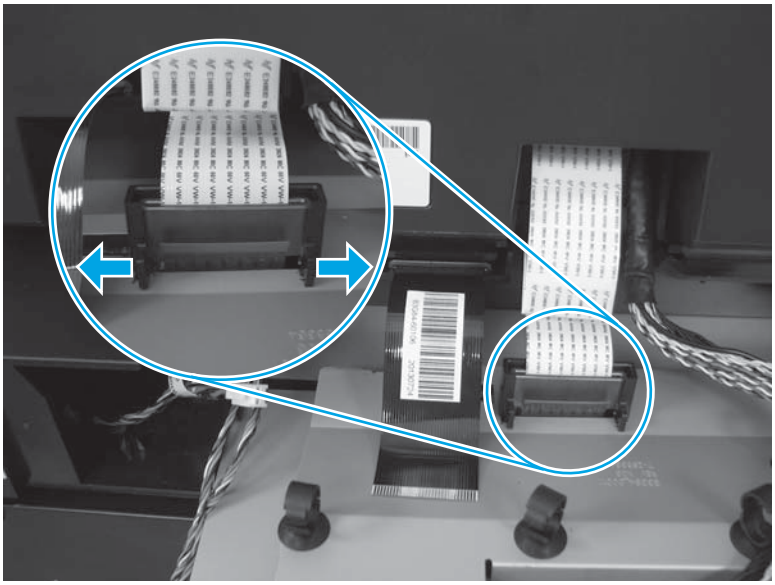
CAUTION: Be careful. The FFC must be pulled straight up and out of the connector to prevent damaging it.

Figure 1-298 Remove the FFC



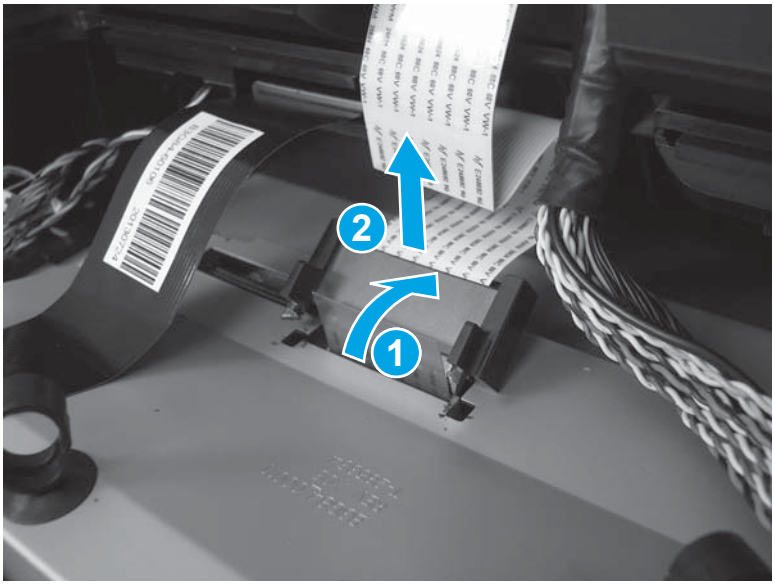
9. Carefully push the tabs on the ferrite holder outward to release them.

Figure 1-299 Release two tabs



10. Rotate the holder backward (callout 1), and then remove it (callout 2). Slide the holder up the FFC.

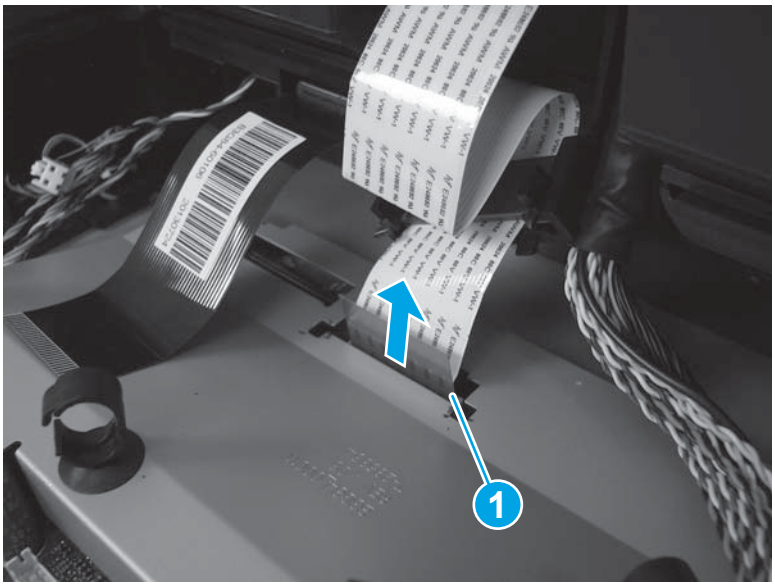
Figure 1-300 Remove the ferrite and holder



11. Pull straight up on the white document-feeder FFC (callout 1) to disconnect it.

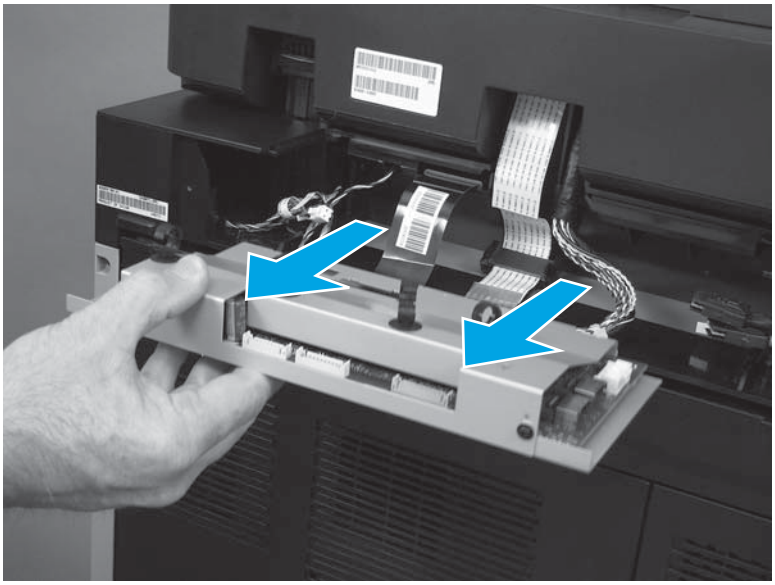
CAUTION: Be careful. The FFC must be pulled straight up and out of the connector to prevent damaging it.

Figure 1-301 Remove the FFC



12. Slide the SCB out of the product to remove it.

Figure 1-302 Remove the SCB

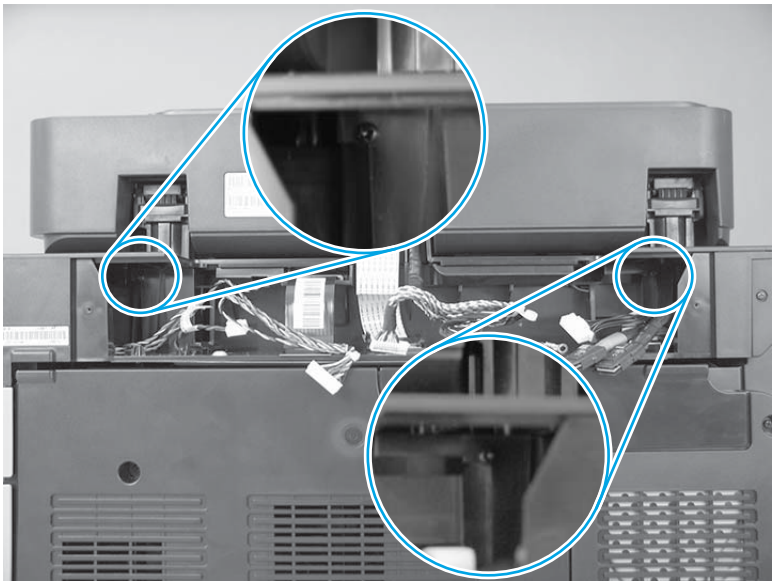


Step 4: Remove the document feeder

1. Loosen, but do not remove, two document-feeder hinge-locking screws. Back them out about 13 mm (0.5 in).

NOTE: Do not remove these screws. They are difficult to reinstall.

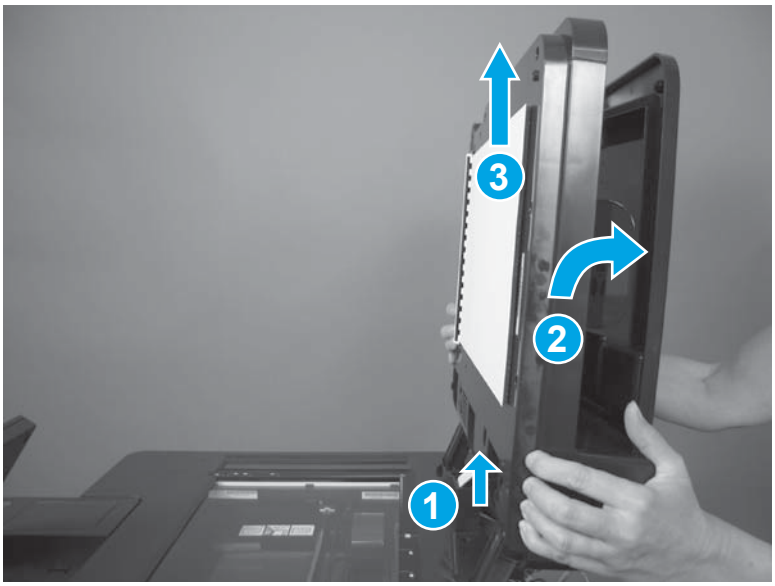
Figure 1-303 Loosen two screws



2. Open the document feeder, lift it up until it stops (callout 1), tilt it back (callout 2), and then pull it straight up (callout 3) to remove it.

CAUTION: The document feeder weighs 5.6 kg (12.3 lb).

Figure 1-304 Remove the document feeder

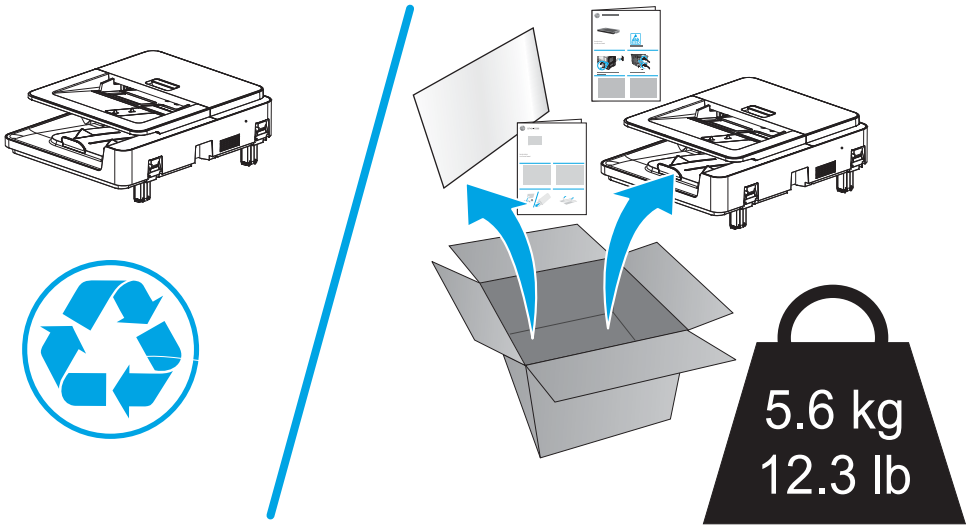


Step 5: Unpack the replacement document feeder

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the assembly.

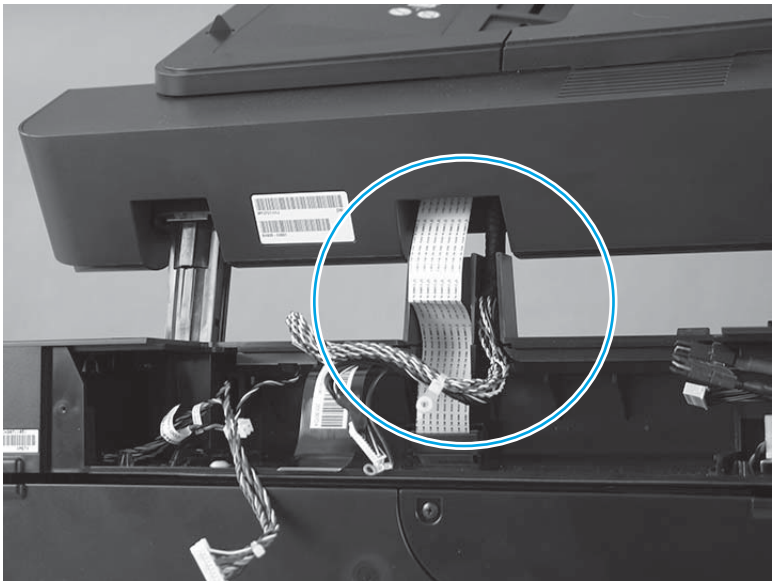


Step 6: Install the document feeder

1. Before reinstalling the document feeder, make sure that the FFC and the wire harness is correctly routed through the openings in the cover.

CAUTION: If the FFC and wire harness are not correctly routed, they will be damaged when the document feeder is installed.

Figure 1-305 Route the document feeder FFC and cables

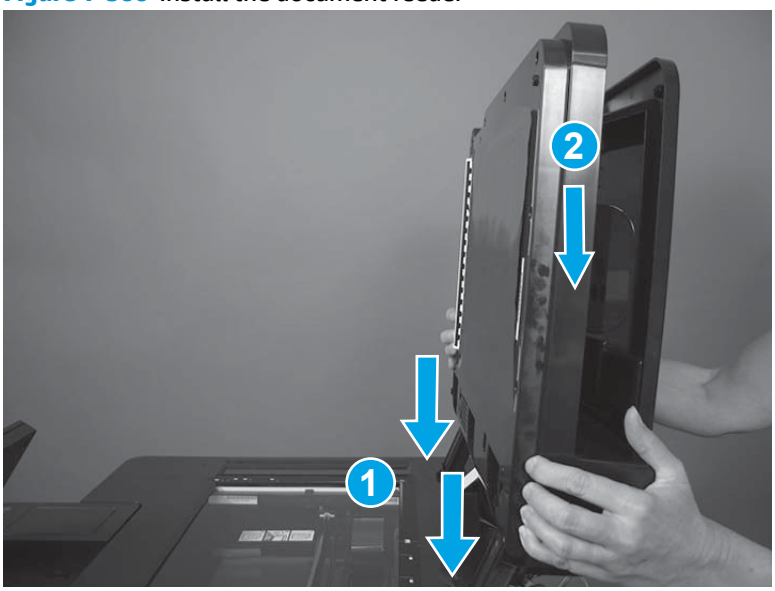


2. Position the document feeder hinges in the holes provided (callout 1), and then lower the hinges into the holes (callout 2).

CAUTION: The document feeder weighs 5.6 kg (12.3 lb).

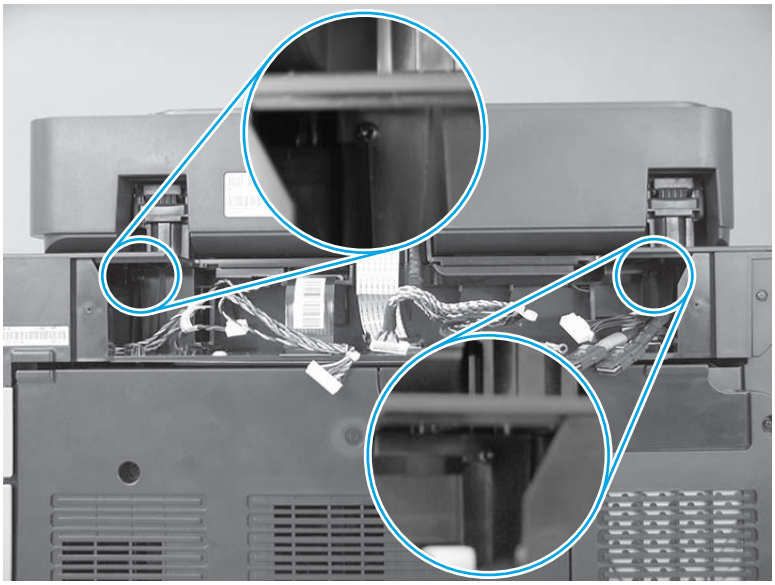
IMPORTANT: Make sure that the document feeder wire harness and FFC are correctly routed at the back of the product before lowering the document feeder into place.

Figure 1-306 Install the document feeder



3. Close the document feeder, and then tighten the two document-feeder hinge-locking screws.

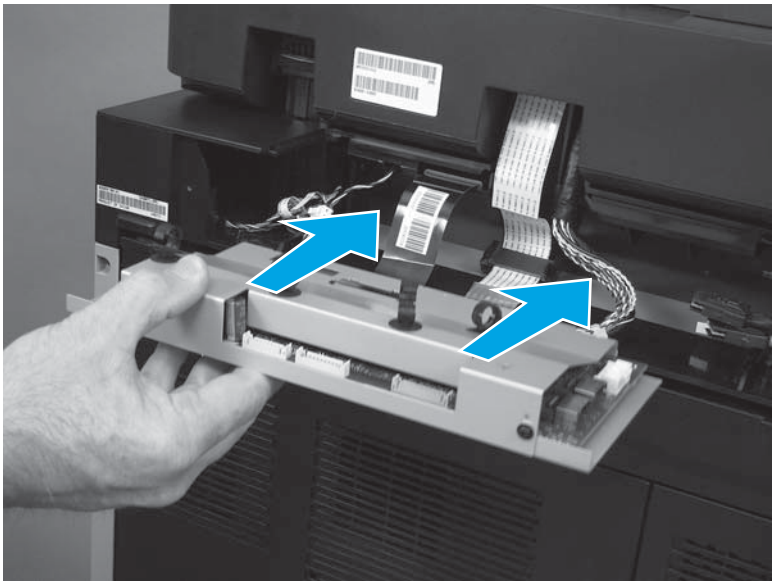
Figure 1-307 Tighten two screws



Step 7: Install the SCB

1. Partially slide the SCB into the product—make sure that the sides of the SCB engage the black plastic rails inside the product.

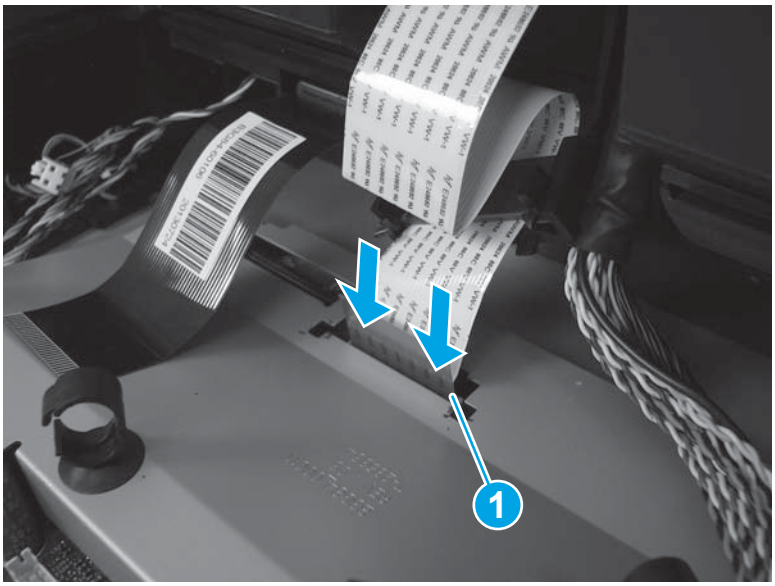
Figure 1-308 Install the SCB



2. Push straight down on the white document-feeder FFC (callout 1) to connect it.

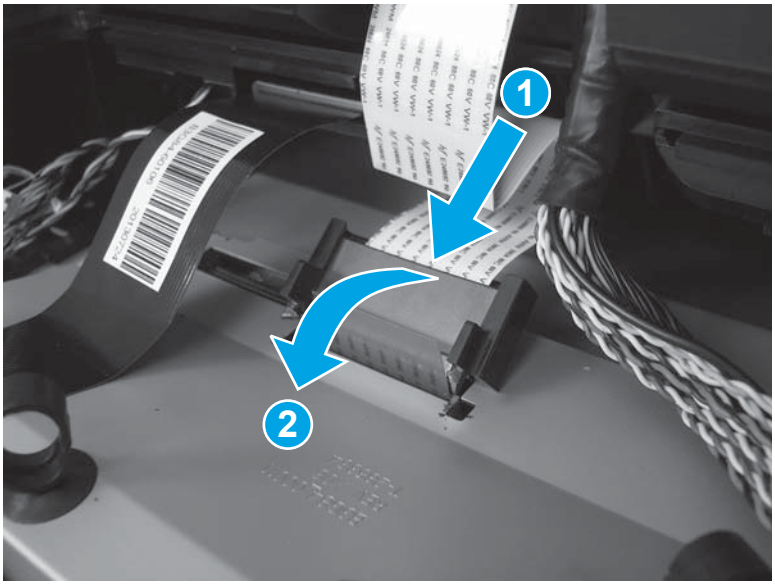
CAUTION: Be careful. The FFC must be pushed straight down and into the connector to prevent damaging it.

Figure 1-309 Connect the FFC



3. Insert the tabs at the back edge of the ferrite holder in the slot on the SCB chassis (callout 1), and then rotate (callout 2) the holder forward to install it.

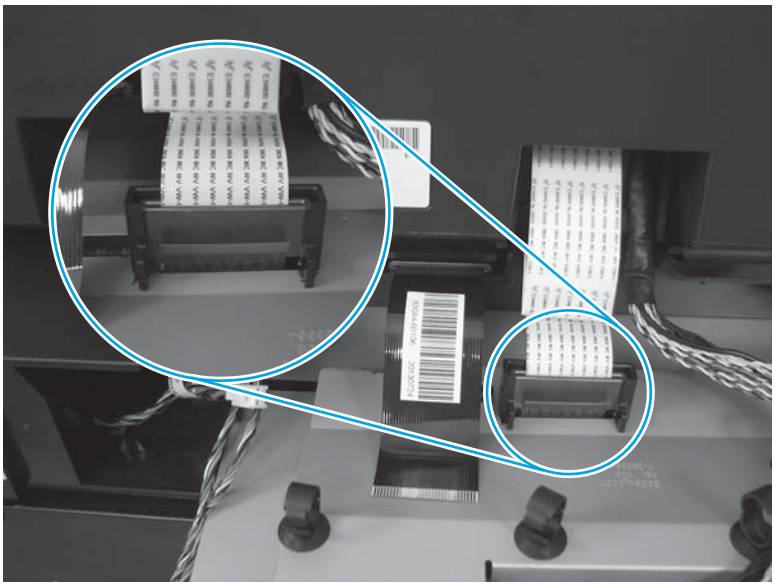
Figure 1-310 Install the ferrite and holder



4. Make sure that the tabs on the ferrite holder snap into the SCB chassis.

NOTE: When correctly installed, the ferrite holder is flat against the SCB chassis and securely fastened.

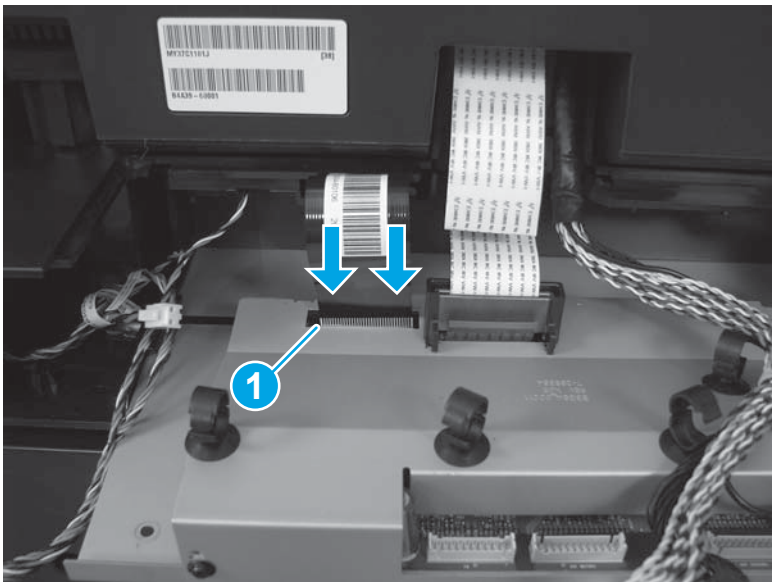
Figure 1-311 Check the two tabs



5. Push straight down on the black scanner FFC (callout 1) to connect it.

CAUTION: Be careful. The FFC must be pushed straight down and into the connector to prevent damaging it.

Figure 1-312 Connect the FFC

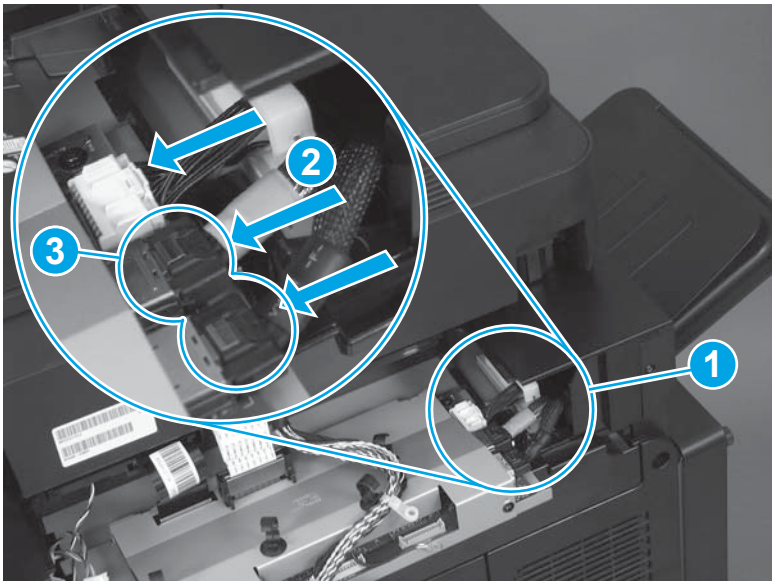


6. Connect three connectors (callout 1).

Reinstallation tip: The wire harness with the blue band (callout 2) connects to the inner connector on the SCB when reinstalled.

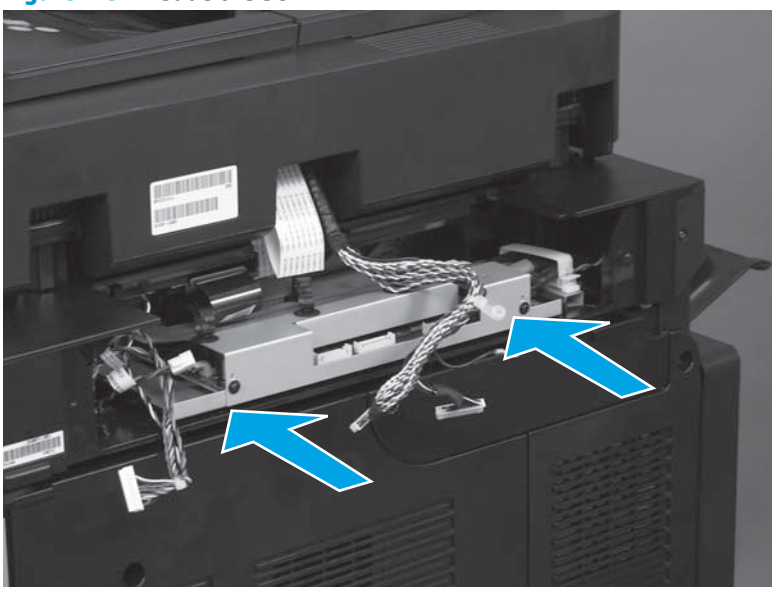
When the two connectors with the metal retainer clips (callout 3) are reinstalled, make sure that the clips snap in place to securely lock the connectors in place.

Figure 1-313 Connect three connectors



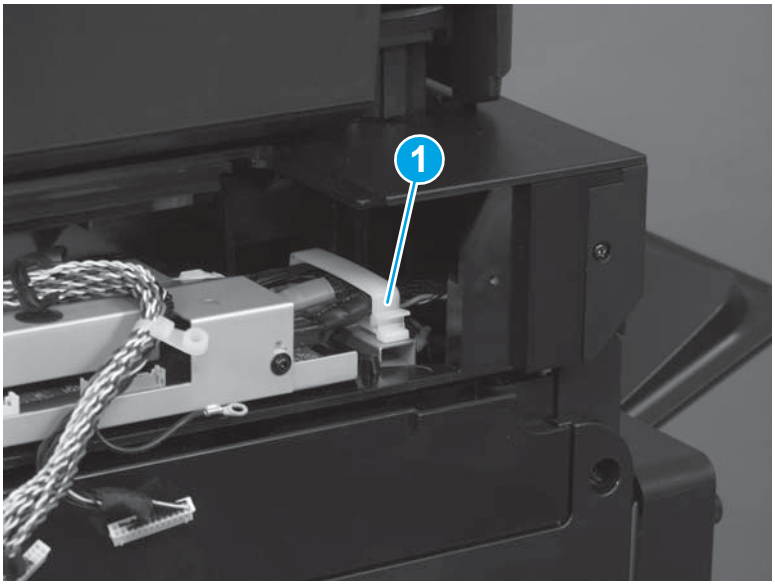
7. Slide the SCB into the product.

Figure 1-314 Slide the SCB in



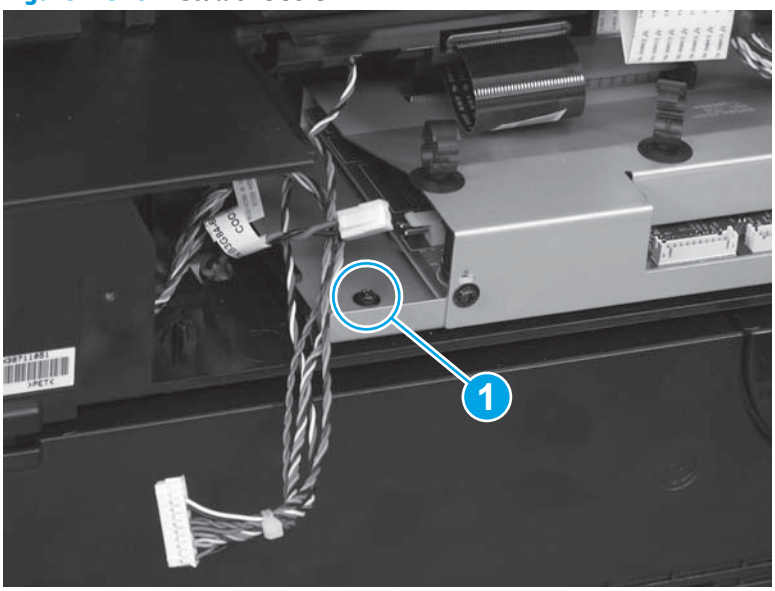
8. At the right side of the SCB, fasten one retainer (callout 1).

Figure 1-315 Fasten one retainer



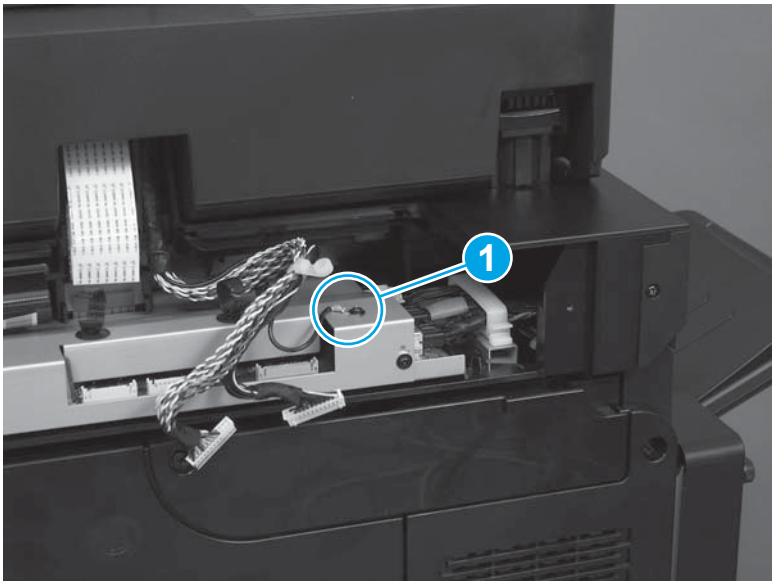
9. At the left side of the SCB, install one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-316 Install one screw



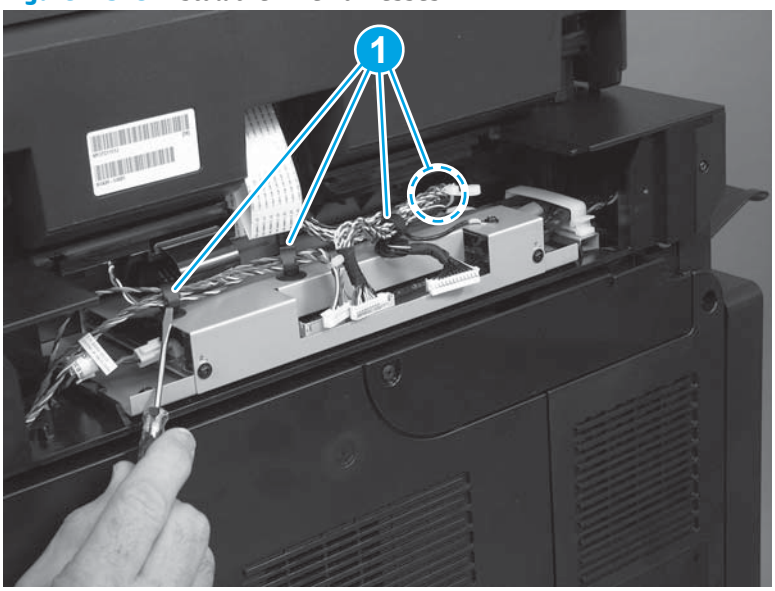
10. At the right side of the SCB, Install the ground wire and one ground screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-317 Install the ground wire and one screw



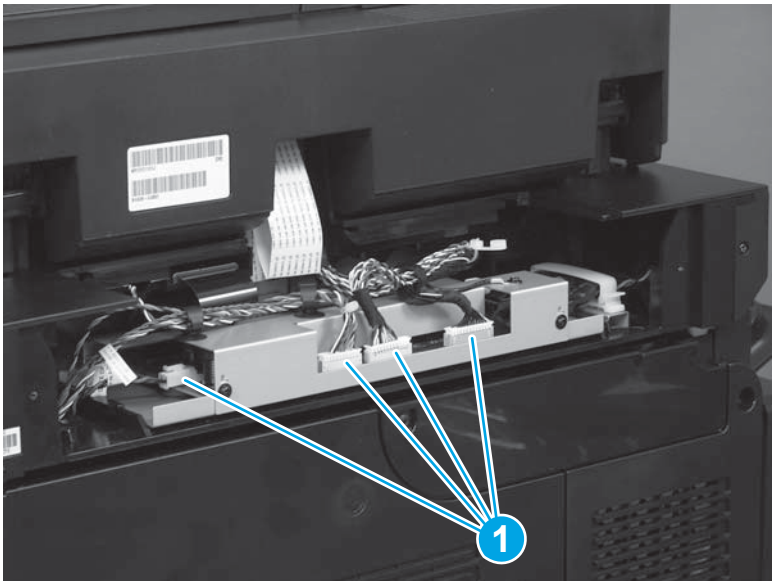
11. Install the wire harnesses in the four retainers (callout 1).

Figure 1-318 Install the wire harnesses



12. Connect four connectors (callout 1).

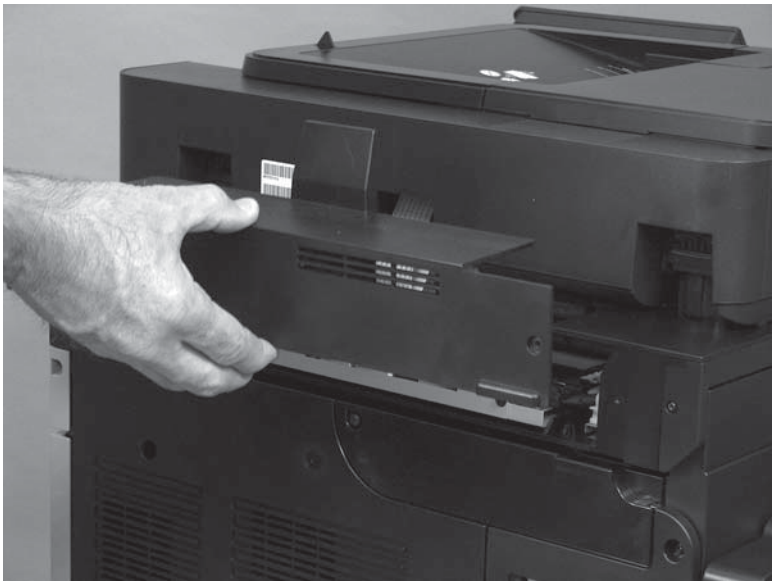
Figure 1-319 Connect four connectors



Step 8: Install the scanner rear cover

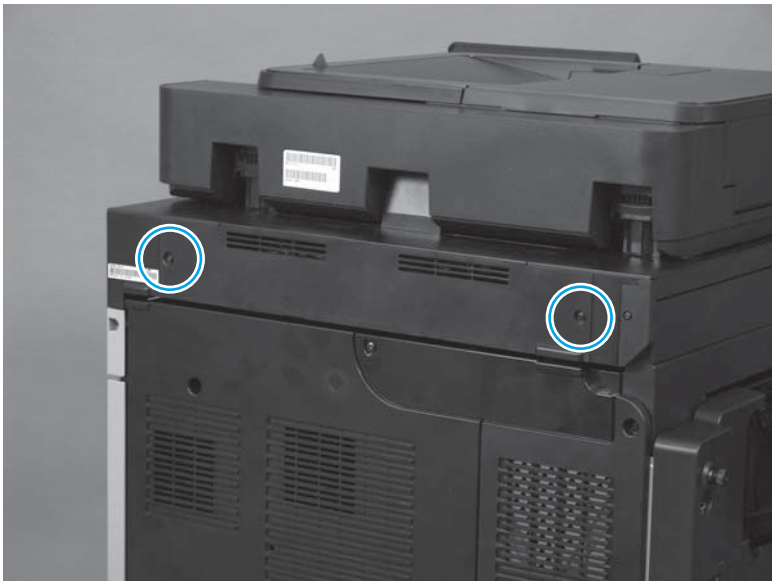
1. Install the cover.

Figure 1-320 Install the cover



2. Install two screws.

Figure 1-321 Install two screws

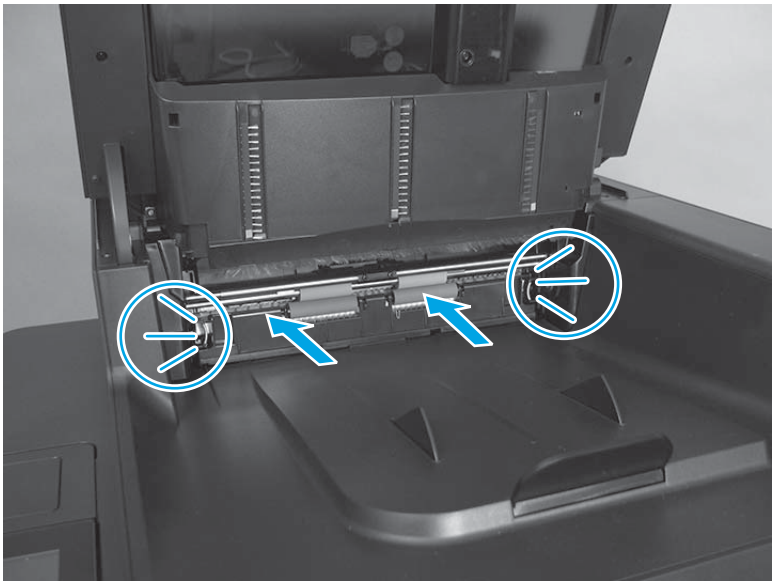


Step 9: Install the backside background selector

1. Push in on the background selector until the tabs snap into place.

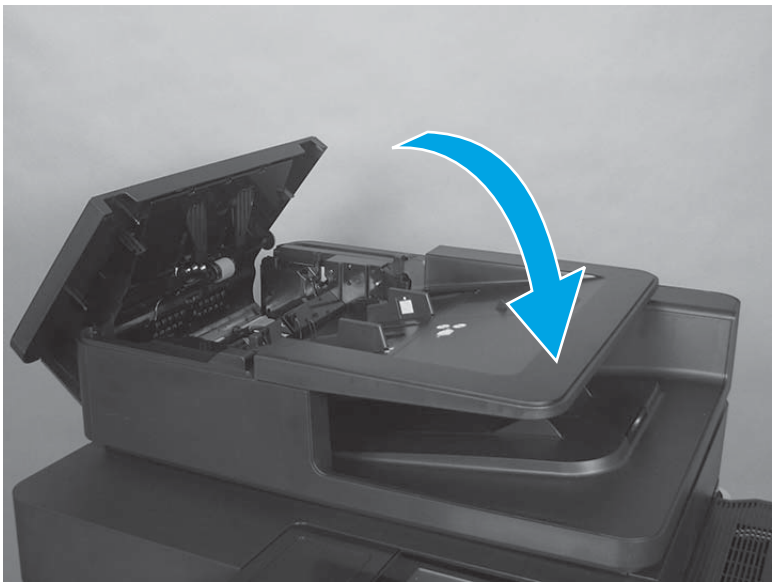
Reinstallation tip: If jams occur after the assembly is installed, make sure that the assembly is fully seated.

Figure 1-322 Install the background selector



2. Rotate the input tray down.

Figure 1-323 Rotate the input tray down



3. Close the document-feeder door.

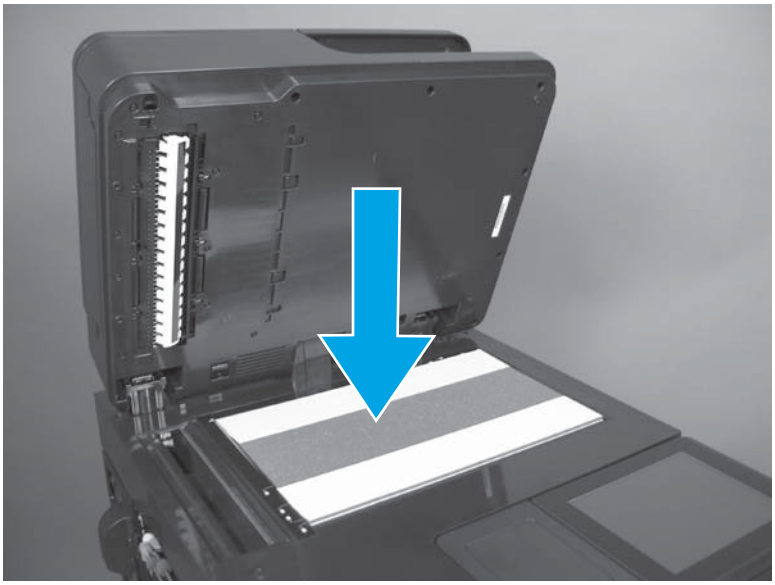
Figure 1-324 Close the document-feeder door



Step 10: Install the document feeder white backing

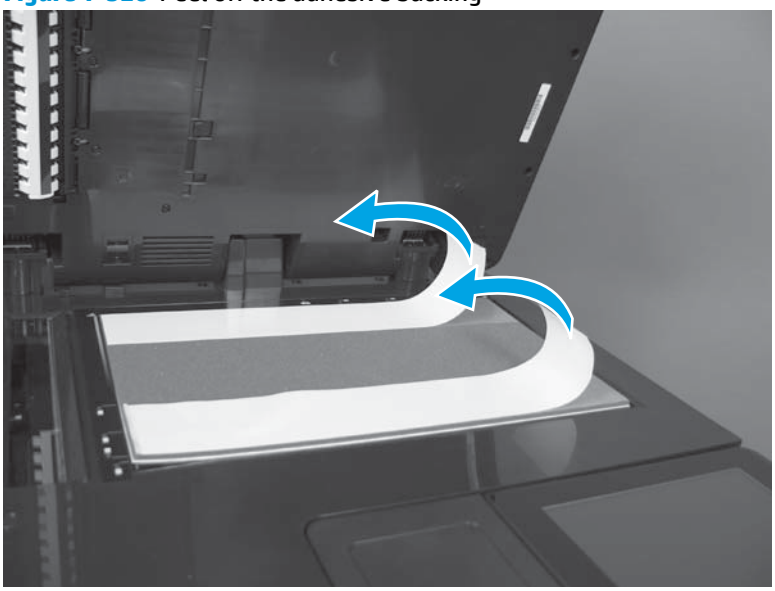
1. Place the white backing on the scanner glass.

Figure 1-325 Place the white backing on the scanner



2. Peel off the two strips of adhesive backing.

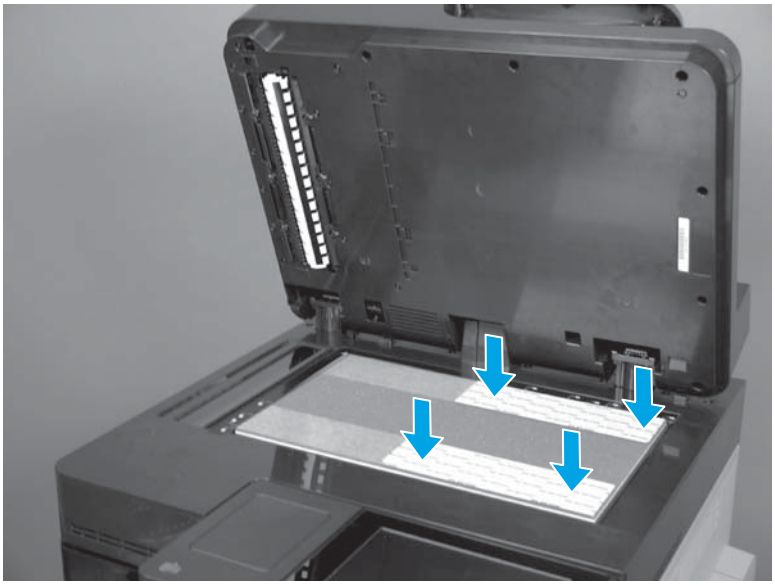
Figure 1-326 Peel off the adhesive backing



3. Place the two mylar-spacer strips (included with the kit) onto the adhesive, as shown.

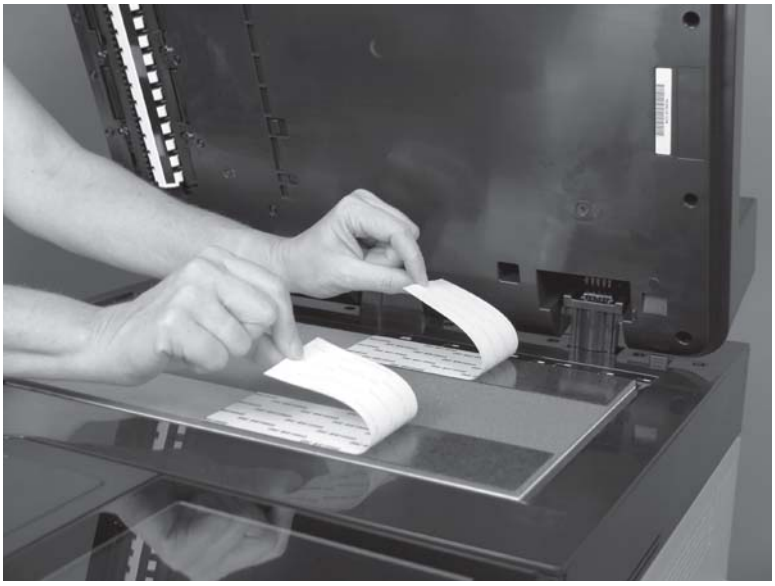
IMPORTANT: Align the mylar with the edges of the adhesive on the white backing.

Figure 1-327 Place the two mylar-spacer strips onto the adhesive



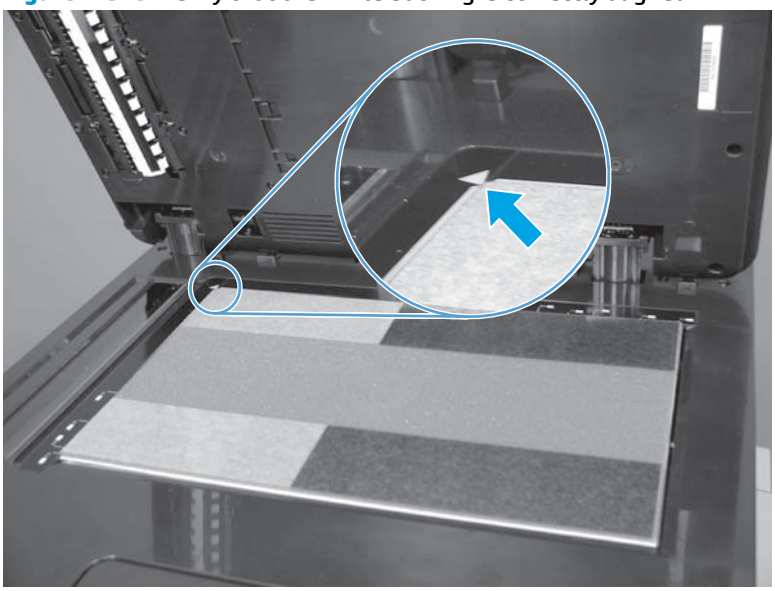
4. Peel off the two strips of adhesive backing.

Figure 1-328 Peel off the adhesive backing



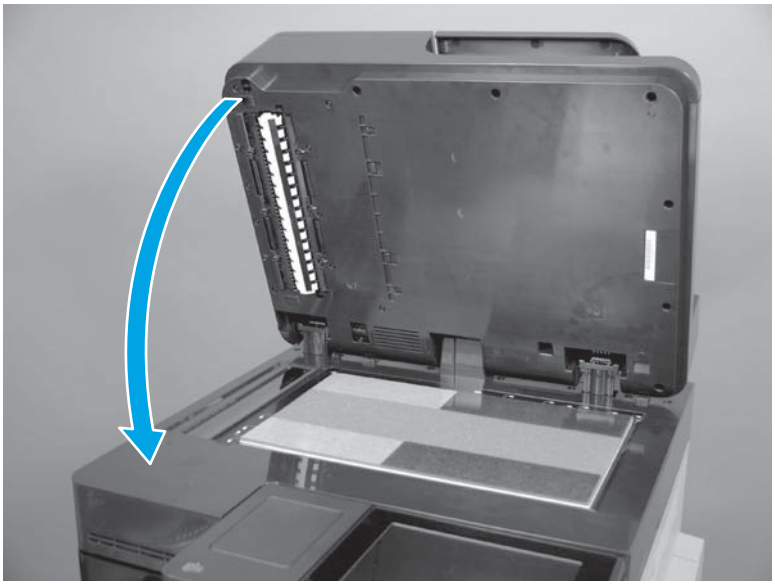
5. Verify that the white backing is aligned with the left rear corner of the scanner glass.

Figure 1-329 Verify that the white backing is correctly aligned



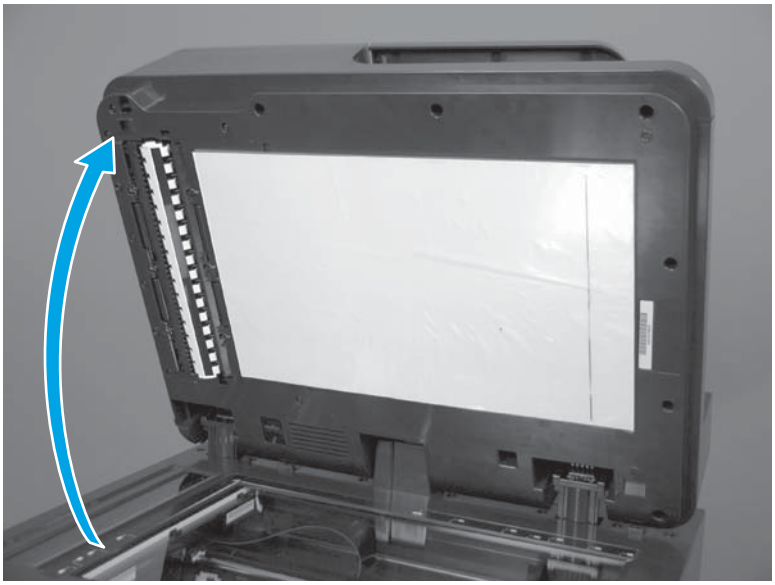
6. Close the document feeder. Press down firmly to adhere the white backing.

Figure 1-330 Close the document feeder and press down



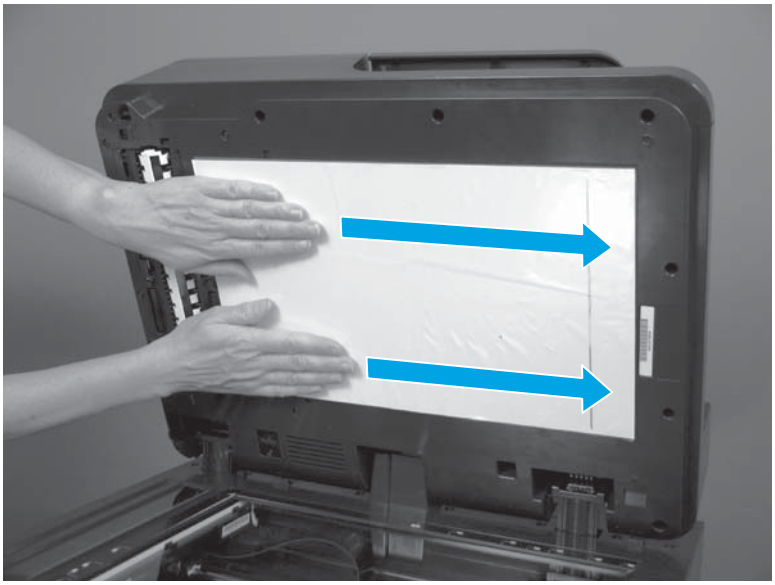
7. Open the document feeder.

Figure 1-331 Open the document feeder



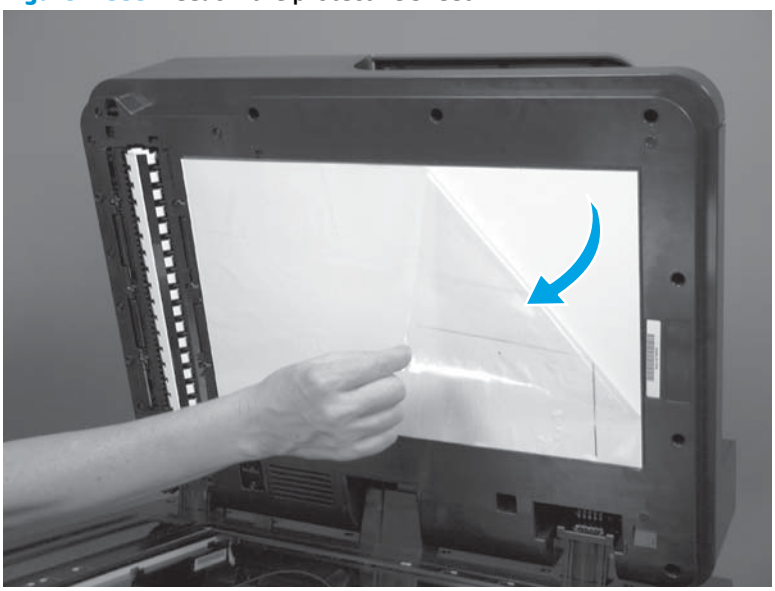
8. Press along the top and bottom of the white backing, over the areas with adhesive.

Figure 1-332 Press along the white backing



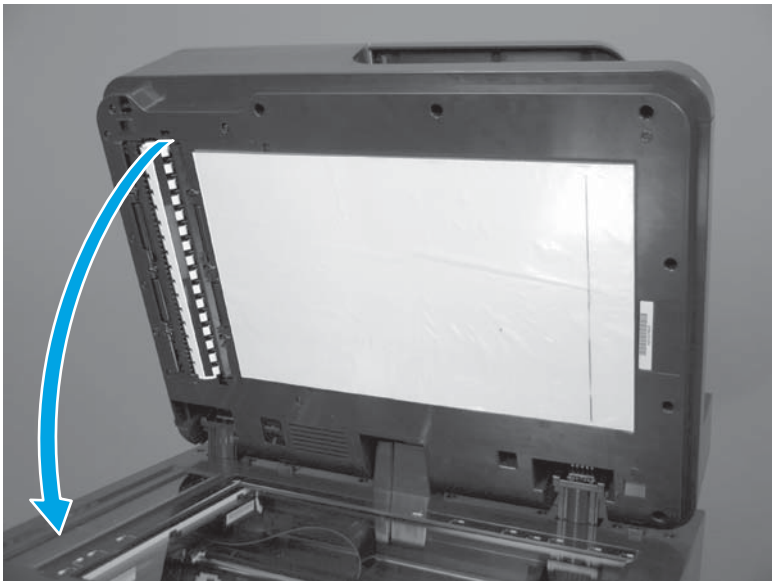
9. Peel off the protective plastic sheet.

Figure 1-333 Peel off the protective sheet



10. Close the document feeder.

Figure 1-334 Close the document feeder



Step 11: Reset the supplies counters and calibrate the scanner

If a replacement document feeder is installed, perform the following task after reassembling the product:

Turn the product on.

1. Use the Service menu to reset the Document Feeder Kit Interval and ADF Count firmware counters.
   a. From the Home screen on the control panel, scroll to and touch the Device Maintenance button.
   b. Open the Service menu.

c. On the sign-in screen, select the Service Access Code option from the drop-down list.

d. Enter the following service access code for this product: 09063014.

e. Reset the following values:

- Document Feeder Kit Interval; set to zero
- ADF Count; set to zero

2. Use the Manage Supplies menu to reset the New Document Feeder Kit supplies counter.

a. From the Home screen on the control panel, scroll to and touch the Supplies button.

b. Open the following menus:

- Manage Supplies
- Reset Supplies
- New Document Feeder Kit

c. Select the Reset item.

3. Use the Calibration/Cleaning menu to calibrate the scanner.

a. From the Home screen on the control panel, scroll to and touch the Device Maintenance button.

b. Open the following menus:

- Calibration/Cleaning
- Calibrate Scanner

c. Touch the Next button to start the calibration process. Follow the on-screen prompts.

d. Wait while the product calibrates the scanner.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Document-feeder hinge assembly

Remove the following assemblies:

- Scanner rear cover. See Scanner rear cover on page 182.
- Scanner control board (SCB). See Scanner control board (SCB) on page 185.
- Document feeder. See Document feeder on page 201.

Remove the document-feeder hinge assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

For each hinge, remove four screws and then remove the hinge assembly.

Figure 1-335 Remove the document-feeder hinge assembly

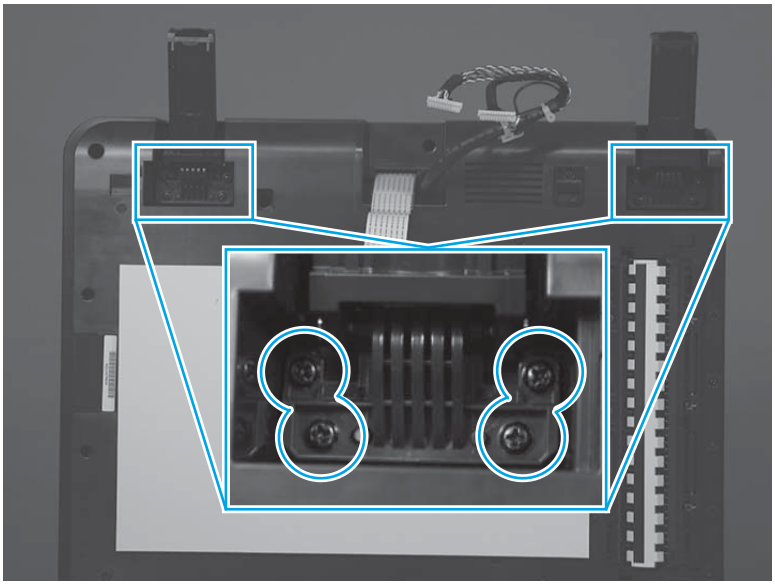


Image scanner assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the scanner rear cover
- Step 2: Remove the SCB
- Step 3: Remove the document feeder
- Step 4: Remove the image scanner assembly
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement image scanner assembly
- Step 6: Install the image scanner assembly
- Step 7: Install the document feeder
- Step 8: Install the SCB
- Step 9: Install the scanner rear cover
- Step 10: Install the replacemnt document feeder white backing
- Step 11: Reset the supplies counters and calibrate the scanner
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the image scanner assembly.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

image scanner assembly kit part number	
B3G86-67905	Image scanner assembly kit with instruction guide **NOTE:** The image scanner kit includes the document feeder white backing kit.

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

If installed, remove the optional stapler mailbox.

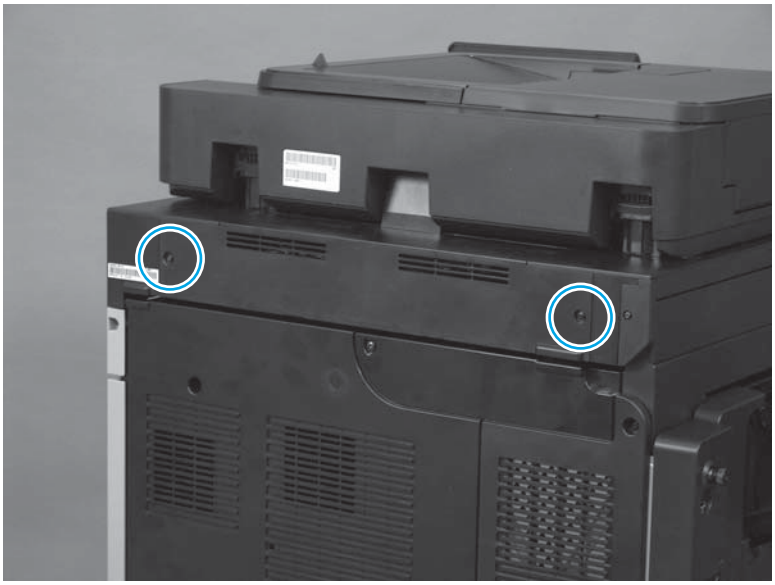
Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the scanner rear cover

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-336 Remove two screws



2. Remove the cover.

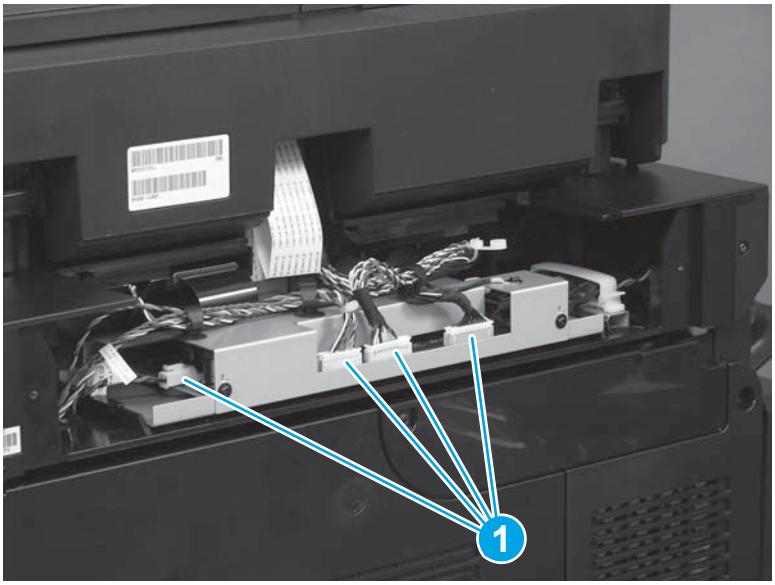
Figure 1-337 Remove the cover



Step 2: Remove the SCB

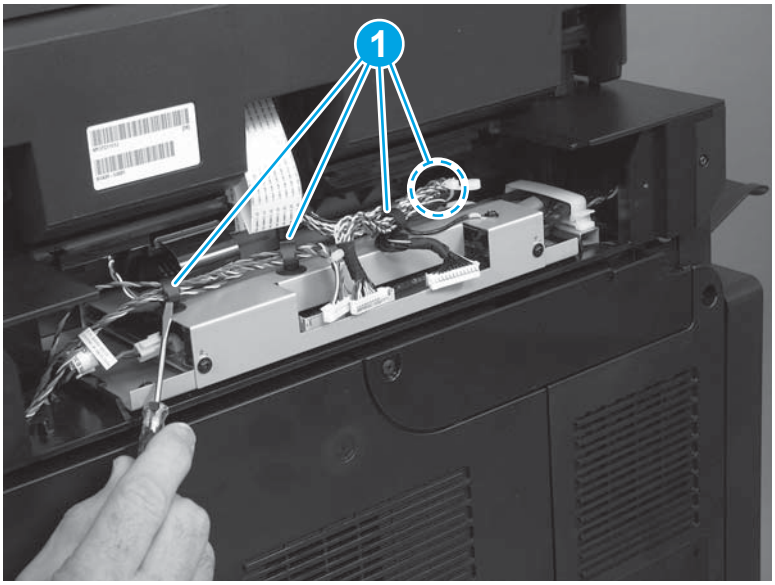
1. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1).

Figure 1-338 Disconnect four connectors



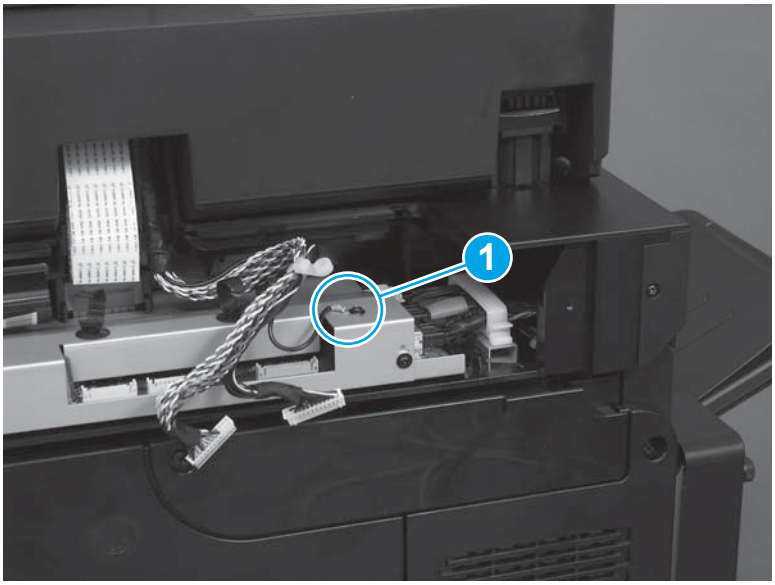
2. Use a small flat-blade screwdriver to release four retainers (callout 1), and then remove the wire harnesses from the retainers.

Figure 1-339 Release four retainers



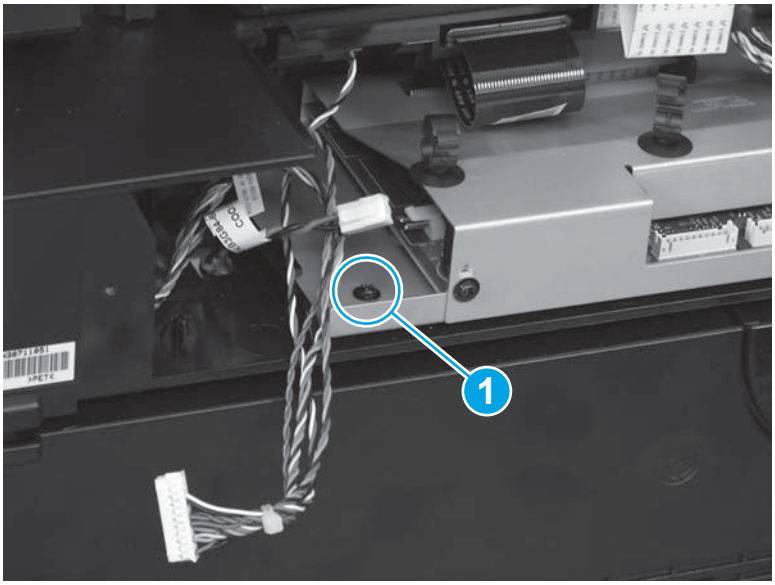
3. On the right side of the SCB, remove one ground screw (callout 1) to release the ground wire.

Figure 1-340 Remove one screw and the ground wire



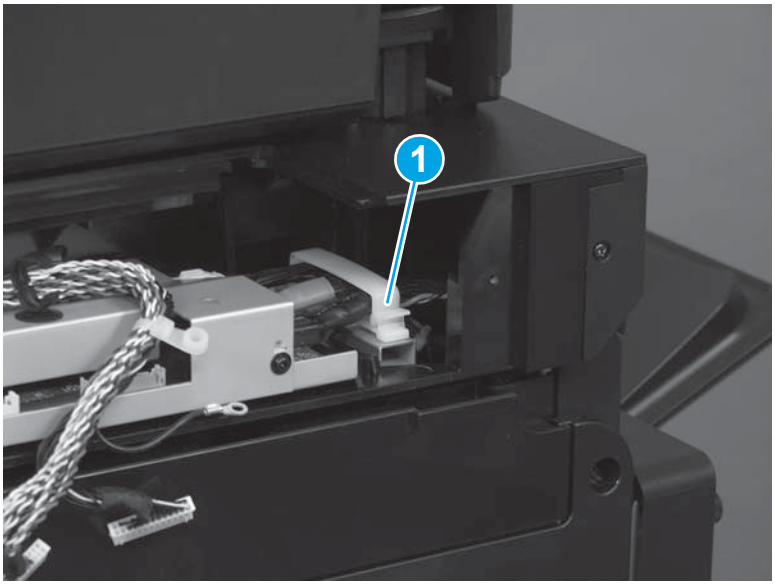
4. On the left side of the SCB, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-341 Remove one screw



5. At the right side of the SCB, press down on the retainer (callout 1) to release it.

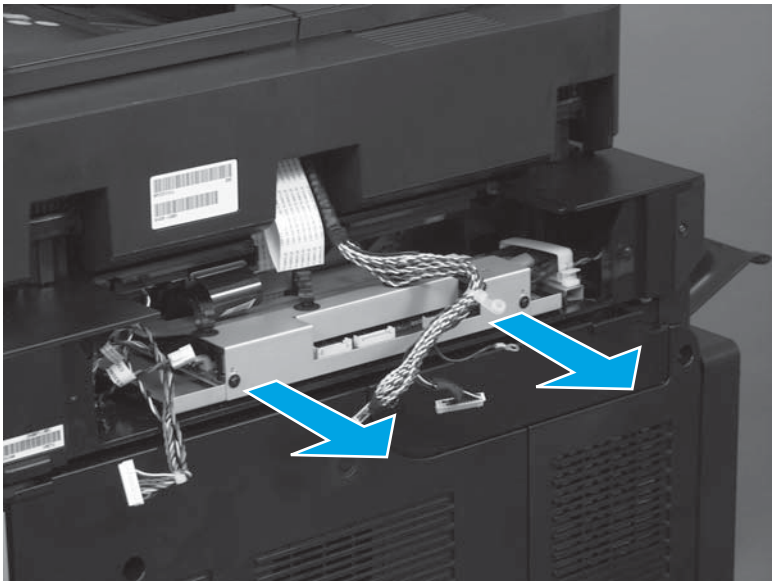
Figure 1-342 Release one retainer



6. Partially slide the SCB out of the product.

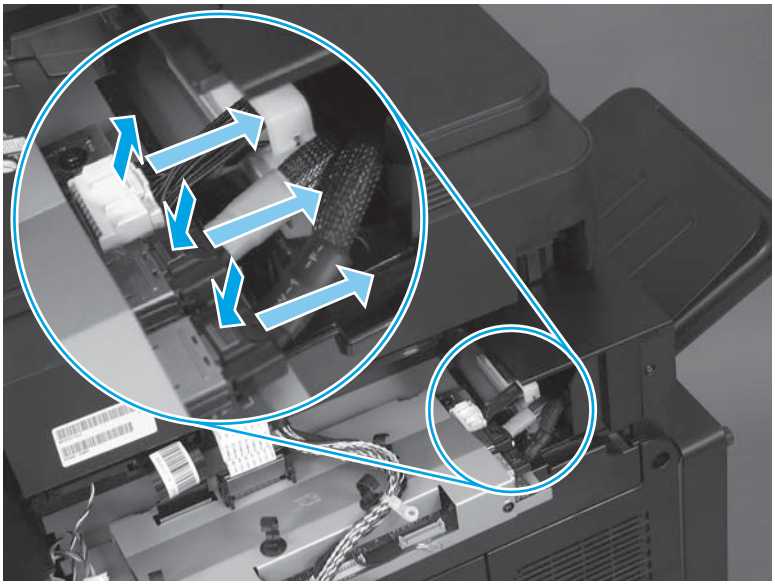
CAUTION: The SCB is still attached to the product by two FFCs. Do not attempt to completely remove the SCB.

Figure 1-343 Partially slide the SCB out



7. Use a small flat-blade screw driver to release three connectors (callout 1).

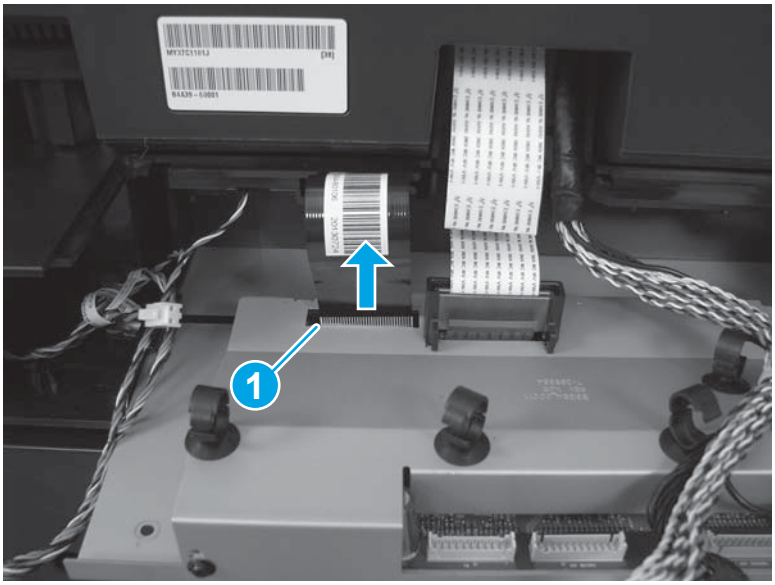
Figure 1-344 Release three connectors



8. Pull straight up on the black scanner FFC (callout 1) to disconnect it.

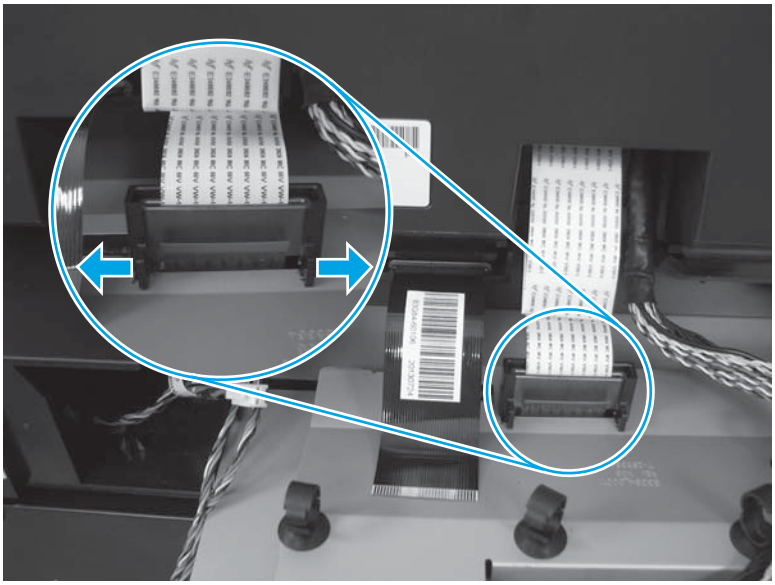
CAUTION: Be careful. The FFC must be pulled straight up and out of the connector to prevent damaging it.

Figure 1-345 Remove the FFC



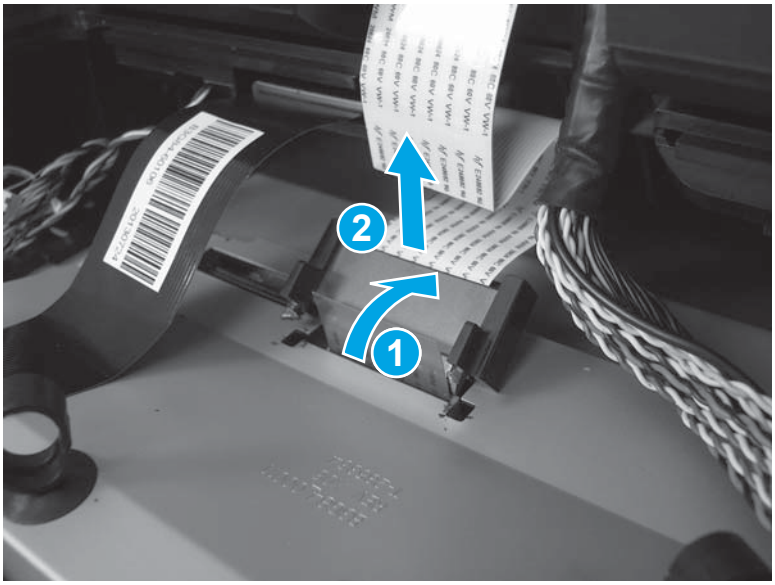
9. Carefully push the tabs on the ferrite holder outward to release them.

Figure 1-346 Release two tabs



10. Rotate the holder backward (callout 1), and then remove it (callout 2). Slide the holder up the FFC.

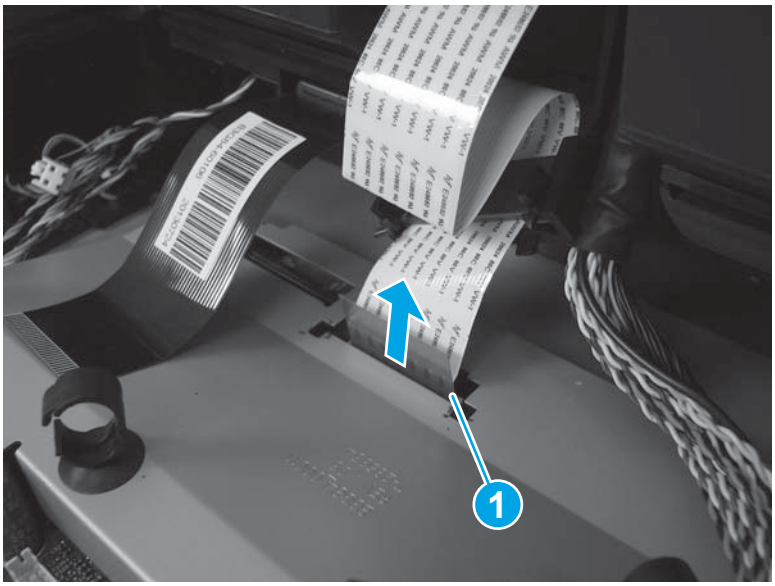
Figure 1-347 Remove the ferrite and holder



11. Pull straight up on the white document-feeder FFC (callout 1) to disconnect it.

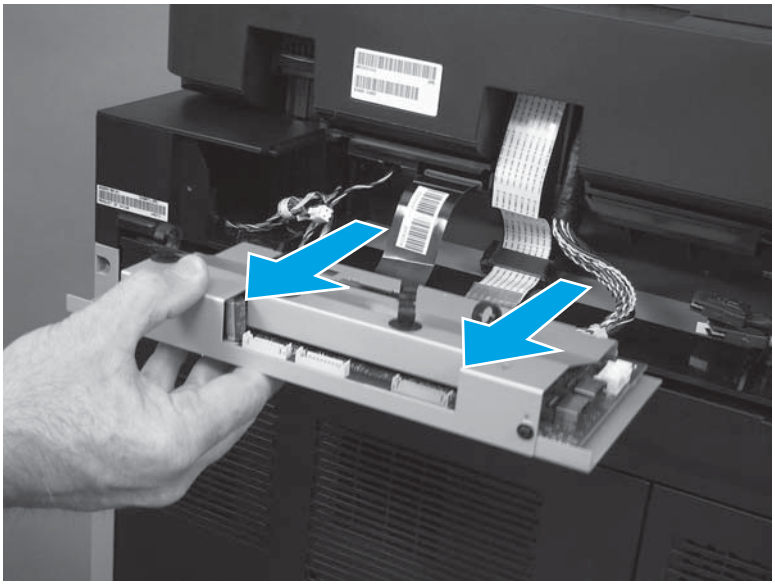
CAUTION: Be careful. The FFC must be pulled straight up and out of the connector to prevent damaging it.

Figure 1-348 Remove the FFC



12. Slide the SCB out of the product to remove it.

Figure 1-349 Remove the SCB

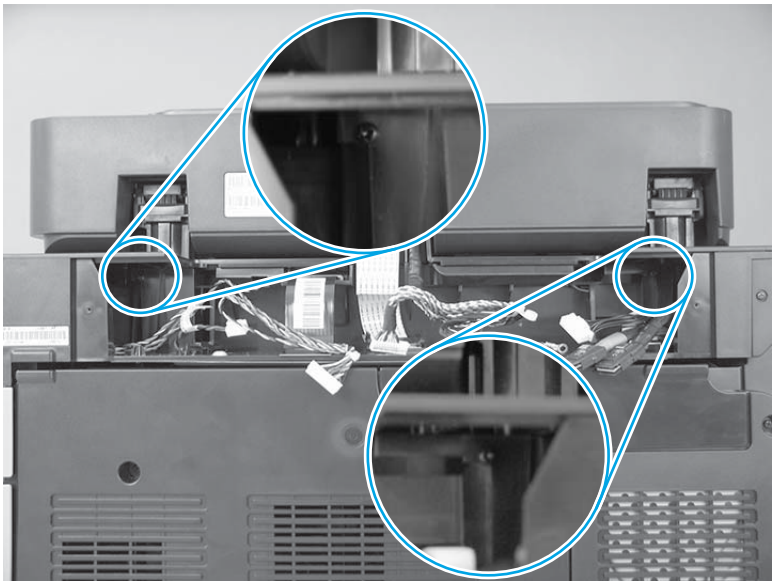


Step 3: Remove the document feeder

1. Loosen, but do not remove, two document-feeder hinge-locking screws. Back them out about 13 mm (0.5 in).

NOTE: Do not remove these screws. They are difficult to reinstall.

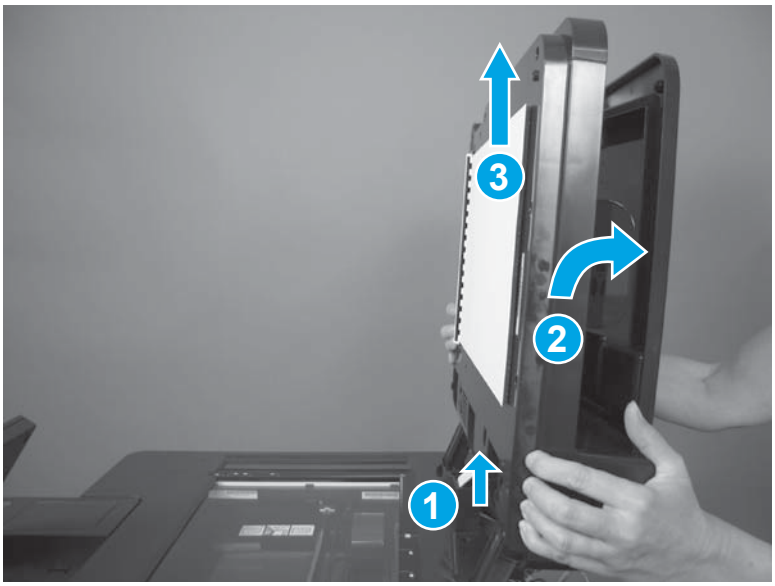
Figure 1-350 Loosen two screws



2. Open the document feeder, lift it up until it stops (callout 1), tilt it back (callout 2), and then pull it straight up (callout 3) to remove it.

CAUTION: The document feeder weighs 5.6 kg (12.3 lb).

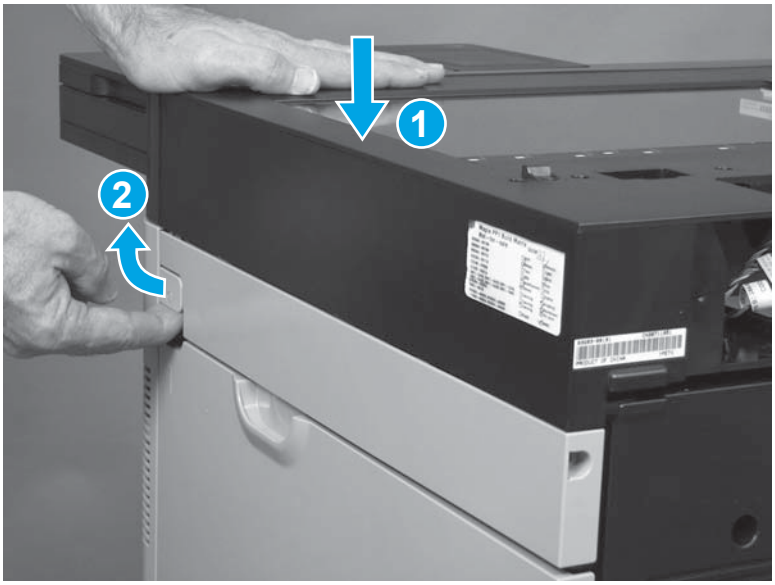
Figure 1-351 Remove the document feeder



Step 4: Remove the image scanner assembly

1. Firmly hold down the top of the scanner (callout 1), and then release the top cover latch (callout 2).

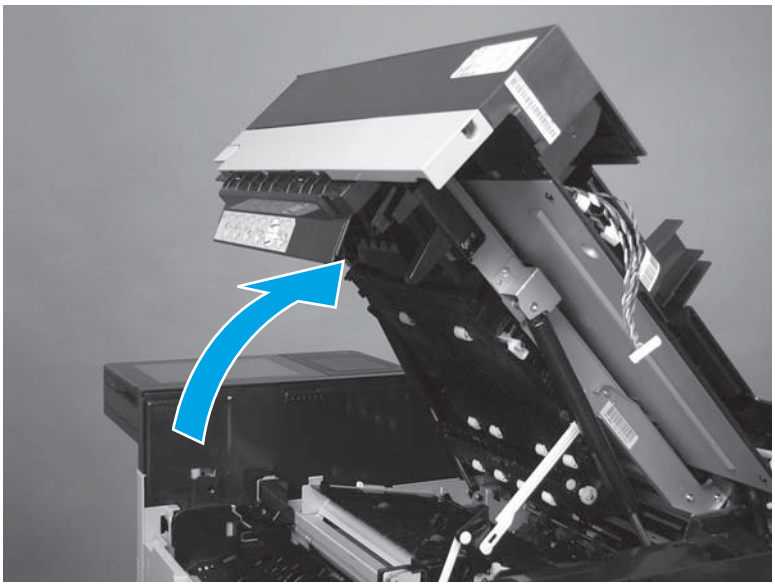
Figure 1-352 Release the scanner latch



2. Carefully open the image top cover.

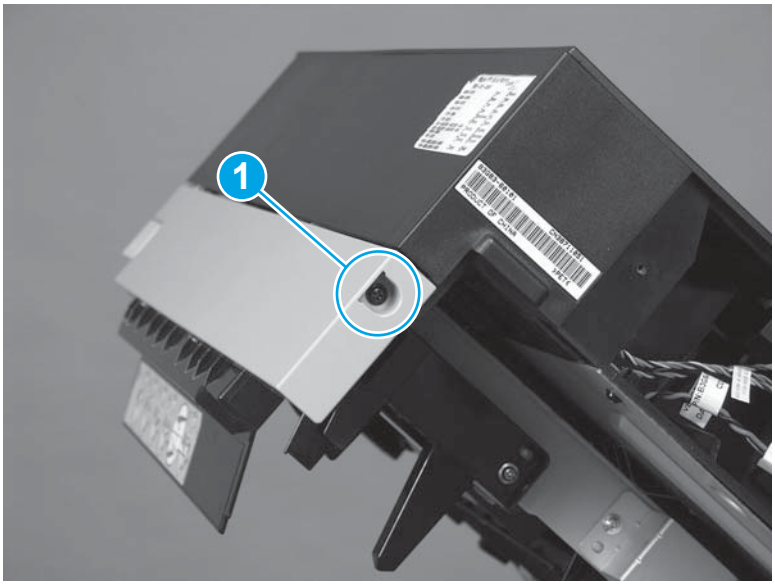
CAUTION: The image scanner assembly is mounted on pneumatic pistons that can cause the scanner to open uncontrollably quick when the document feeder is not installed.

Figure 1-353 Open the image scanner assembly



3. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-354 Remove one screw



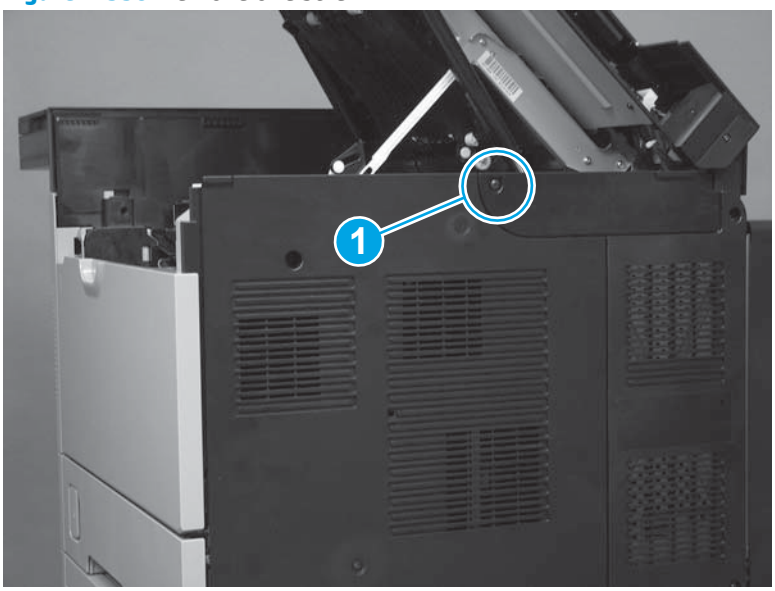
4. Carefully flex the corner of the scanner front-lower cover to release one tab.

Figure 1-355 Release one tab



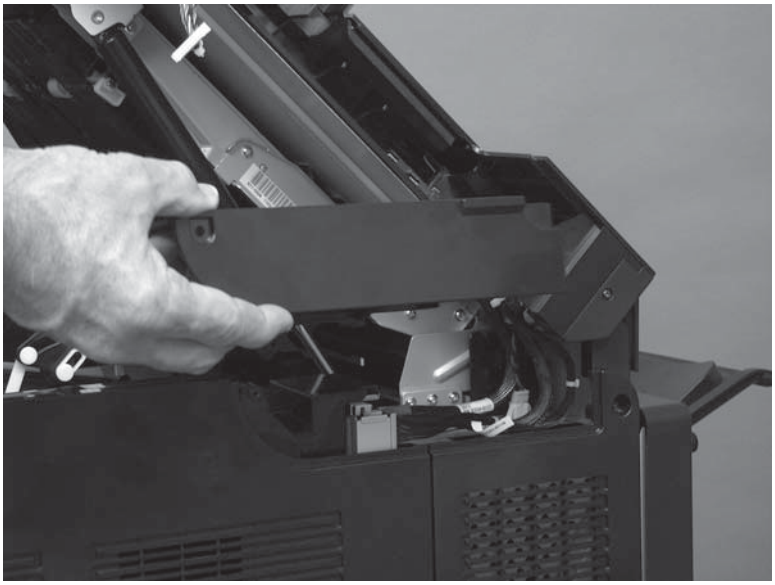
5. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-356 Remove one screw



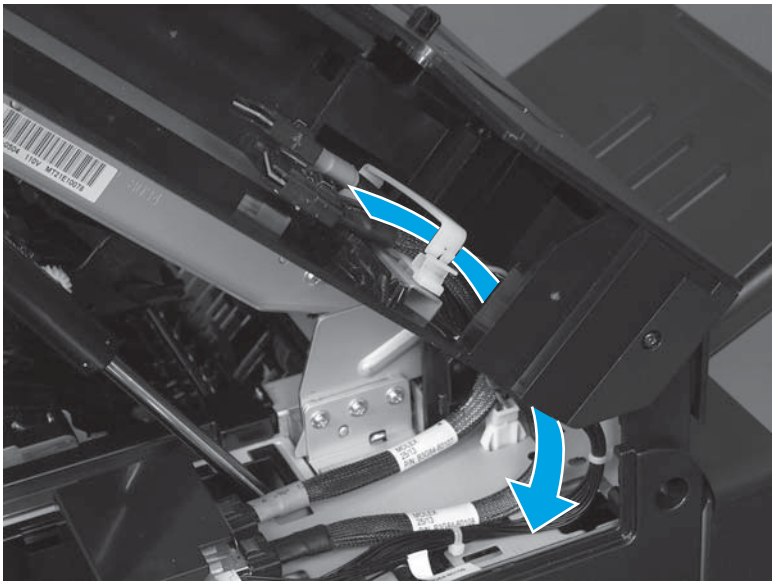
6. Remove the scanner cable cover.

Figure 1-357 Remove the scanner cable cover



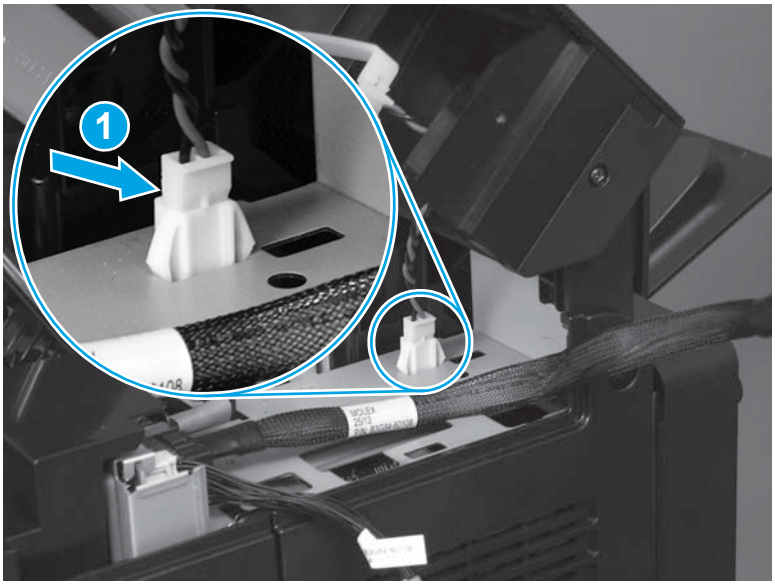
7. Carefully feed three cables through the opening in the image scanner assembly.

Figure 1-358 Feed the cables through the opening



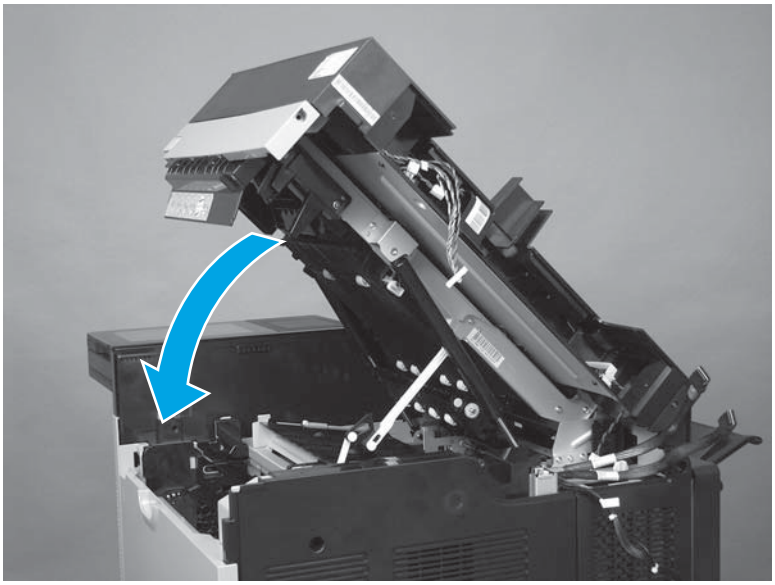
8. Push in on one connector (callout 1) to release it, and then disconnect the connector.

Figure 1-359 Disconnect one connector



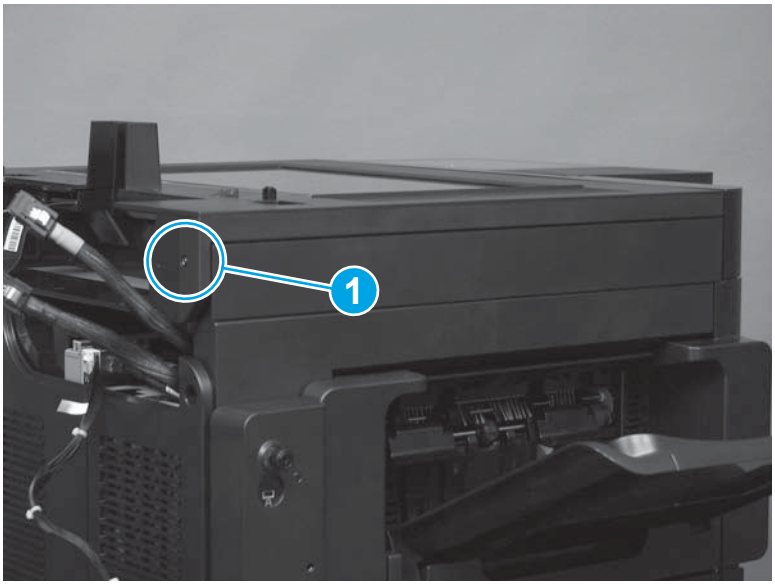
9. Carefully close the top cover.

Figure 1-360 Close the image scanner assembly



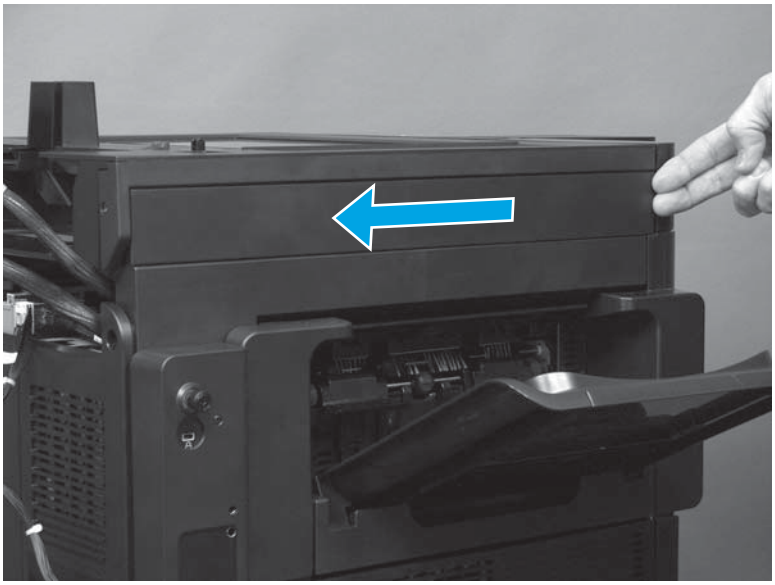
10. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-361 Remove one screw



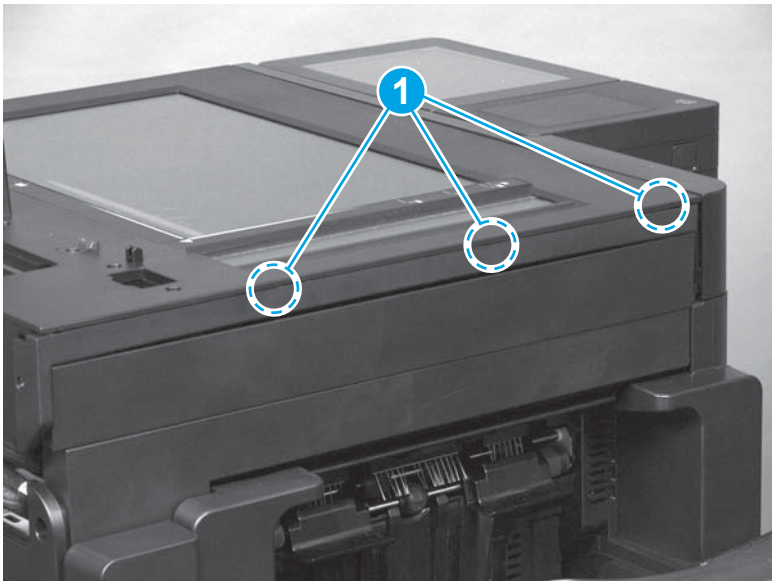
11. Slide the hinge cover to the left to release it.

Figure 1-362 Release the cover



12. Release three tabs (callout 1).

Figure 1-363 Release three tabs



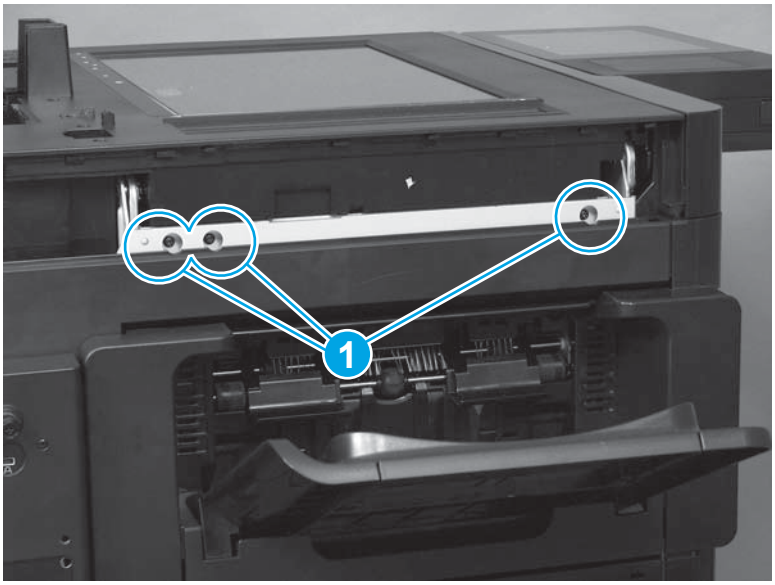
13. Remove the hinge cover.

Figure 1-364 Remove the cover



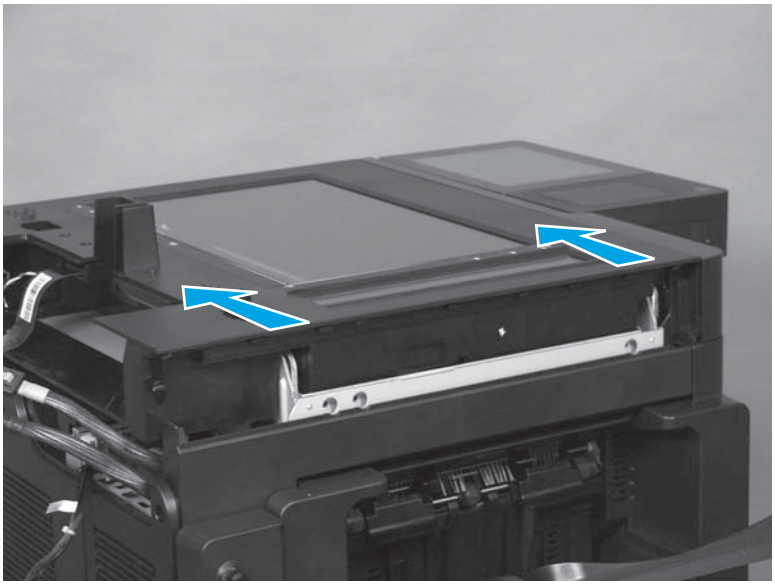
14. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-365 Remove three screws



15. Slide the image scanner assembly towards the right side of the product until it stops.

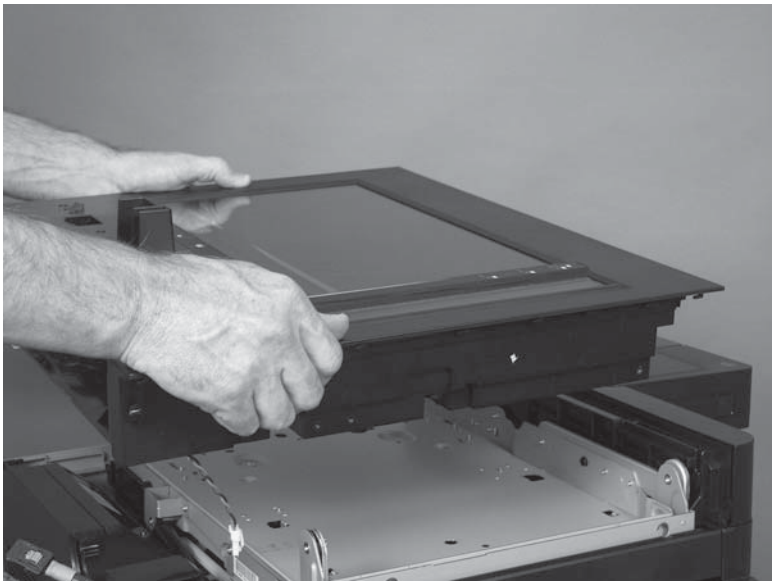
Figure 1-366 Slide the image scanner assembly until it stops



16. Carefully lift the image scanner assembly up and off of the product.

CAUTION: The image scanner assembly scanner weighs 6.2 kg (11.4lb).

Figure 1-367 Remove the scanner assembly



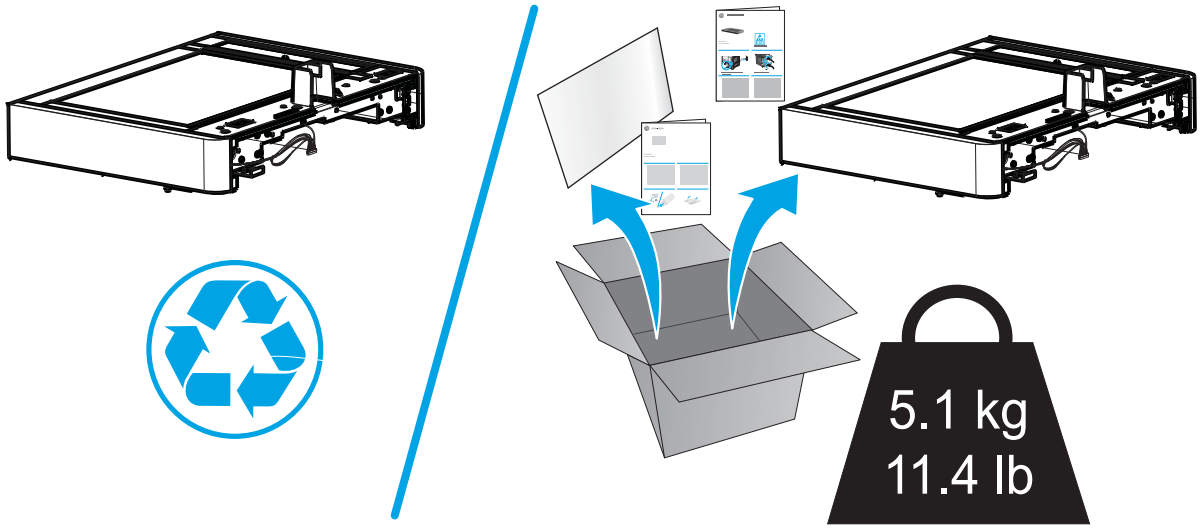
17.

Step 5: Unpack the replacement image scanner assembly

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

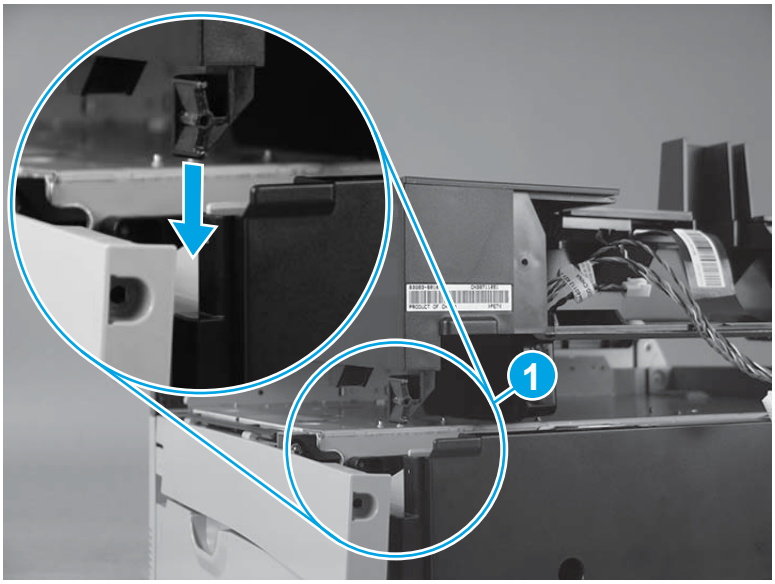


Step 6: Install the image scanner assembly

1. When the replacement image scanner assembly is installed on the product, make sure that the tab on the assembly fits behind the corner of the lower scanner cover (callout 1).

IMPORTANT: Do not dislodge this cover when installing the replacement image scanner assembly.

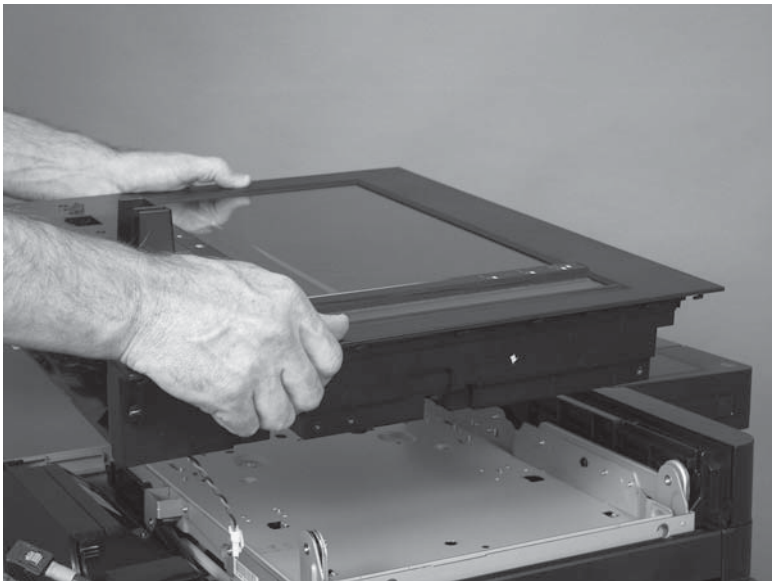
Figure 1-368 Install the lower scanner cover tab



2. Carefully position the image scanner assembly on the product.

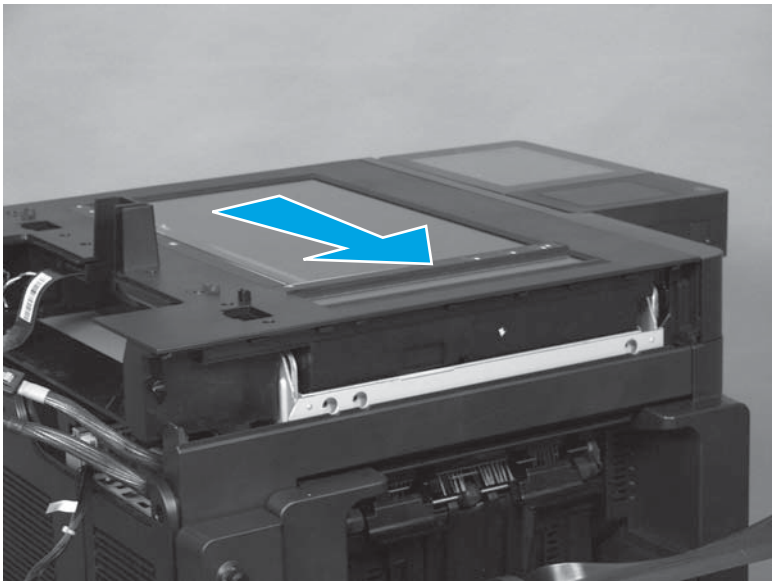
⚠ **CAUTION:** The image scanner assembly scanner weighs 6.2 kg (11.4lb).

Figure 1-369 Install the scanner assembly



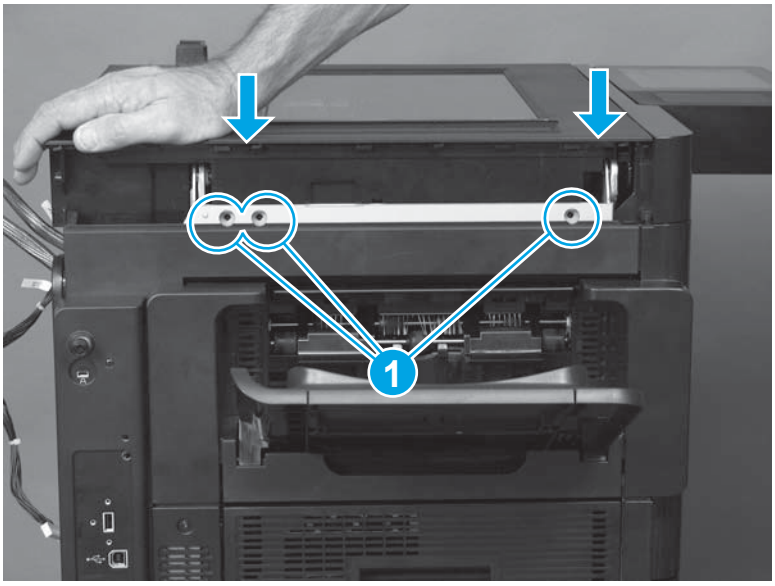
3. Slide the image scanner assembly toward the left side of the product until it is tight up against the sheet-metal bracket.

Figure 1-370 Slide the image scanner assembly as shown



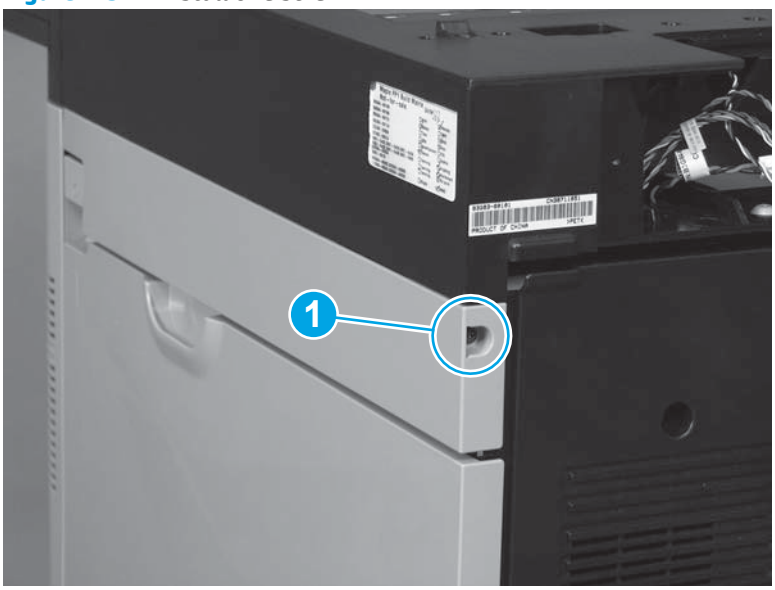
4. Push down on the assembly to align the mounting screw holes with the sheet-metal bracket, and then install three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-371 Install three screws



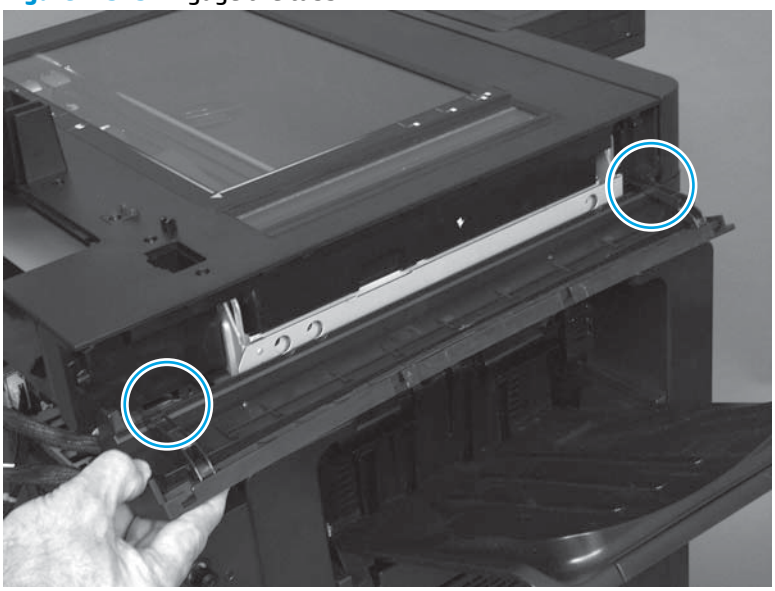
5. Install one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-372 Install one screw



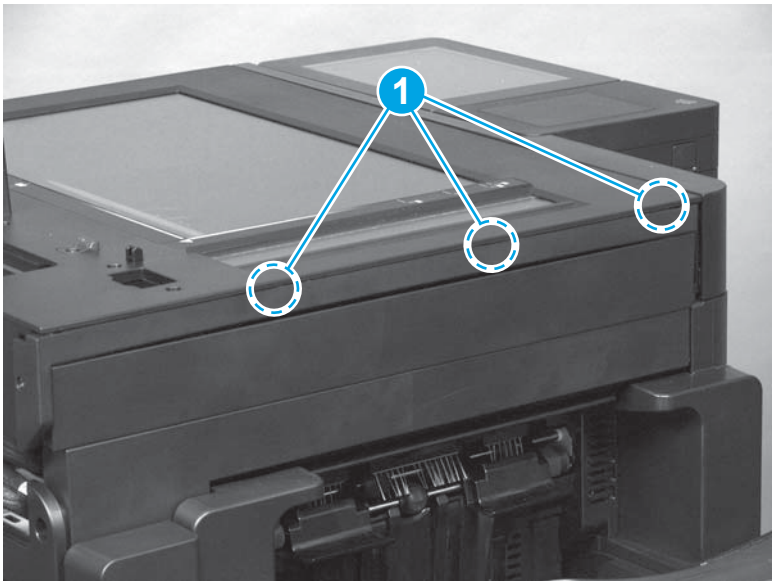
6. Engage the tabs on the hinge cover with the product as it is installed.

Figure 1-373 Engage the tabs



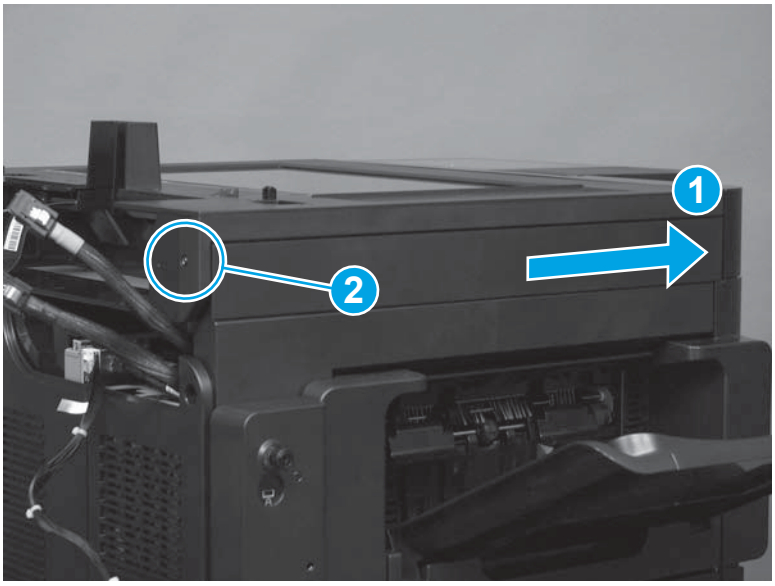
7. Make sure to engage the three tabs (callout 1) at the top of the cover.

Figure 1-374 Engage three tabs



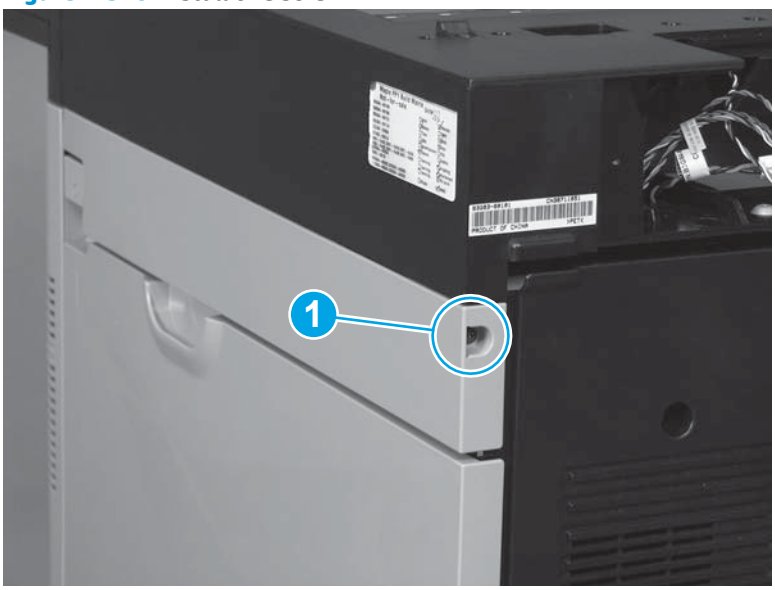
8. Slide the cover to the right to the (callout 1) to engage the corner of the cover with the product, and then install one screw (callout 2).

Figure 1-375 Install one screw



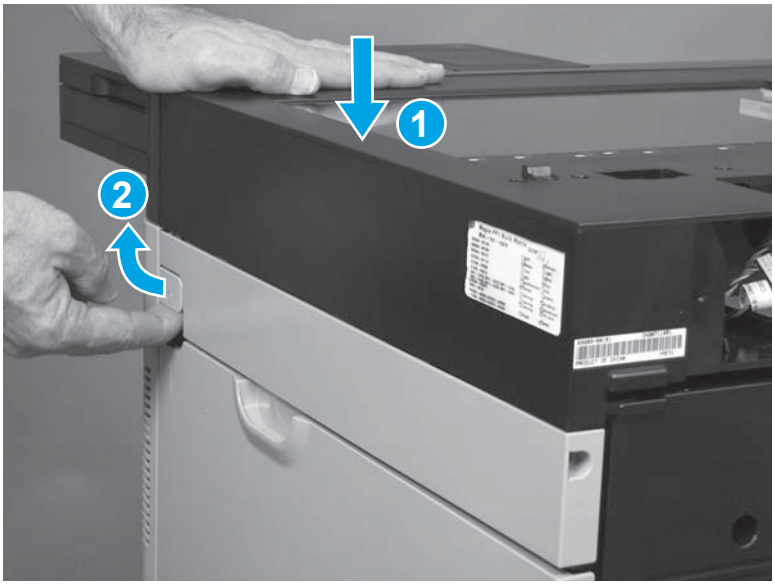
9. Install one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-376 Install one screw



10. Hold down the top of the scanner firmly and release the top cover latch.

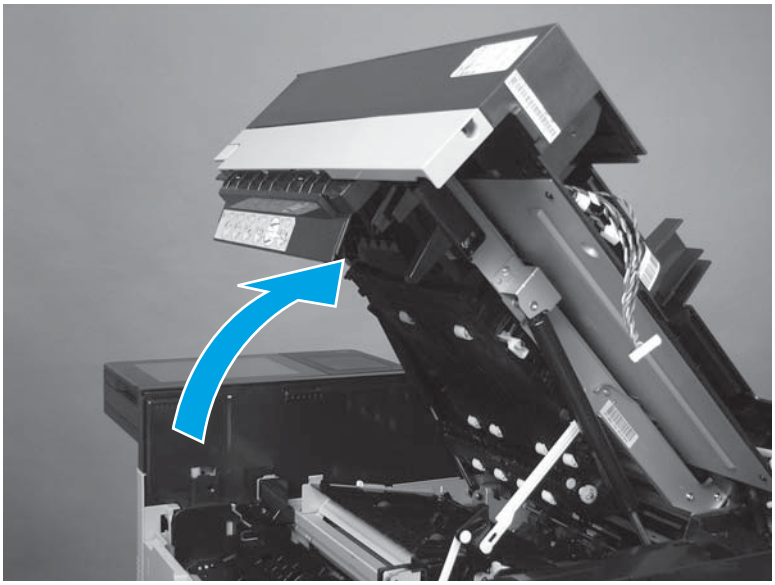
Figure 1-377 Release the scanner latch



11. Carefully open the top cover.

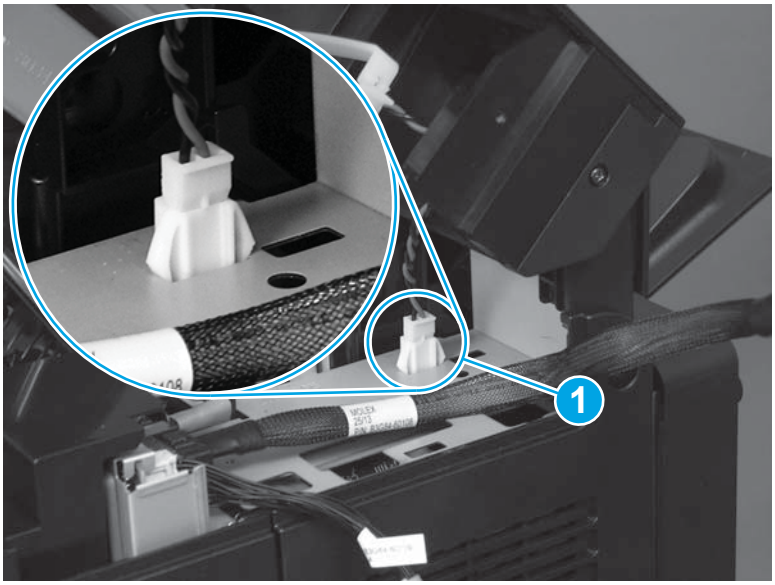
CAUTION: The image scanner assembly is mounted on pneumatic pistons that can cause the scanner to open uncontrollably quick when the document feeder is not installed.

Figure 1-378 Open the image scanner assembly



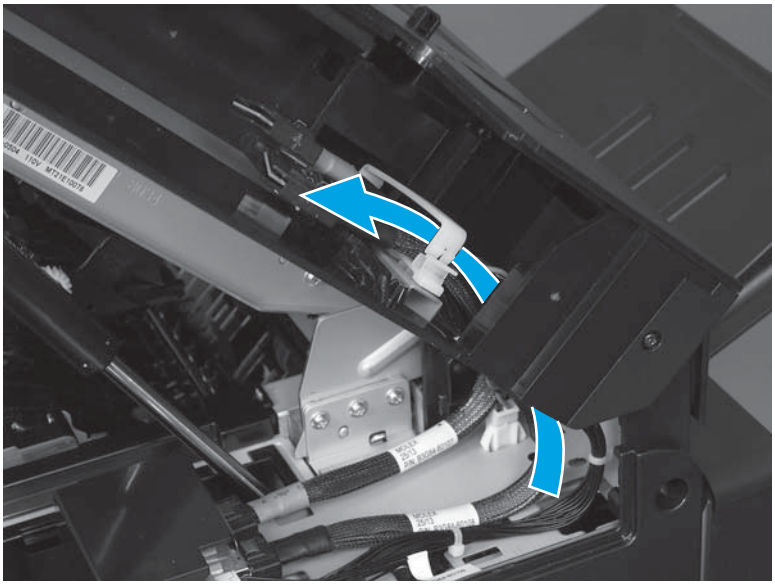
12. Connect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 1-379 Connect one connector



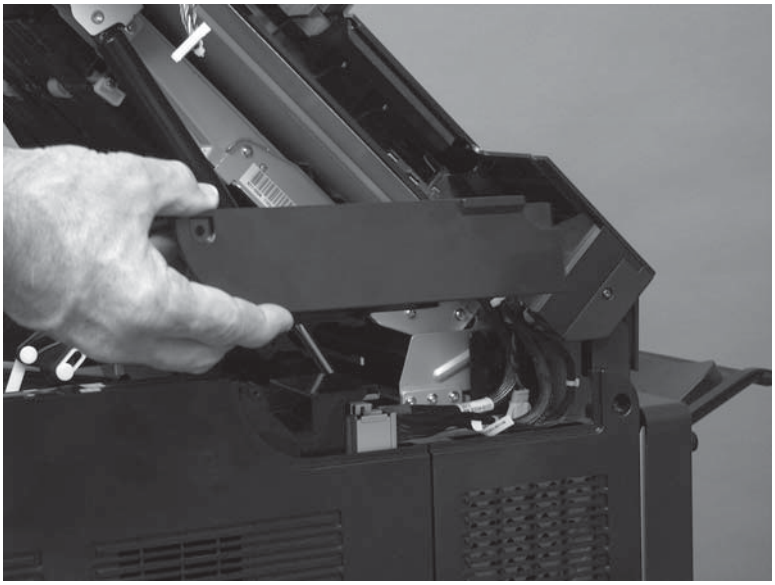
13. Carefully feed three cables through the opening in the image scanner assembly.

Figure 1-380 Feed the cables through the opening



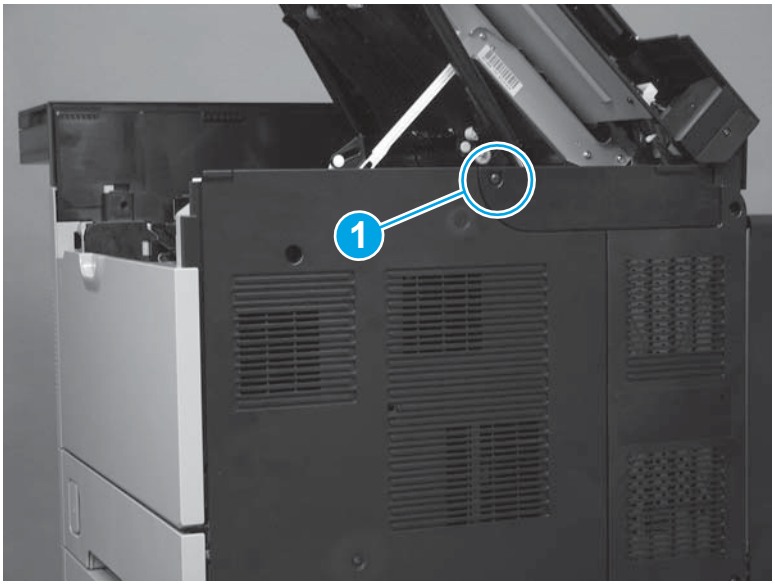
14. Install the scanner cable cover.

Figure 1-381 Install the scanner cable cover



15. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

Figure 1-382 Install one screw

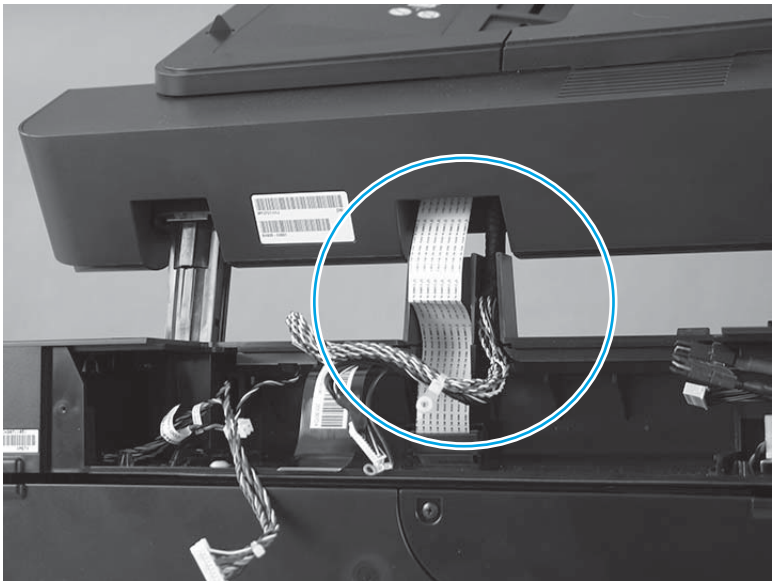


Step 7: Install the document feeder

1. Before reinstalling the document feeder, make sure that the FFC and the wire harness is correctly routed through the openings in the cover.

CAUTION: If the FFC and wire harness are not correctly routed, they will be damaged when the document feeder is installed.

Figure 1-383 Route the document feeder FFC and cables

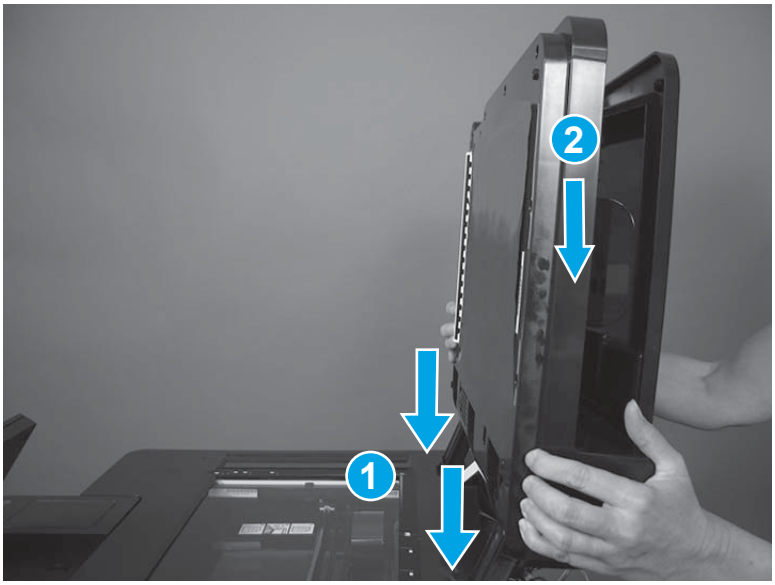


2. Position the document feeder hinges in the holes provided (callout 1), and then lower the hinges into the holes (callout 2).

CAUTION: The document feeder weighs 5.6 kg (12.3 lb).

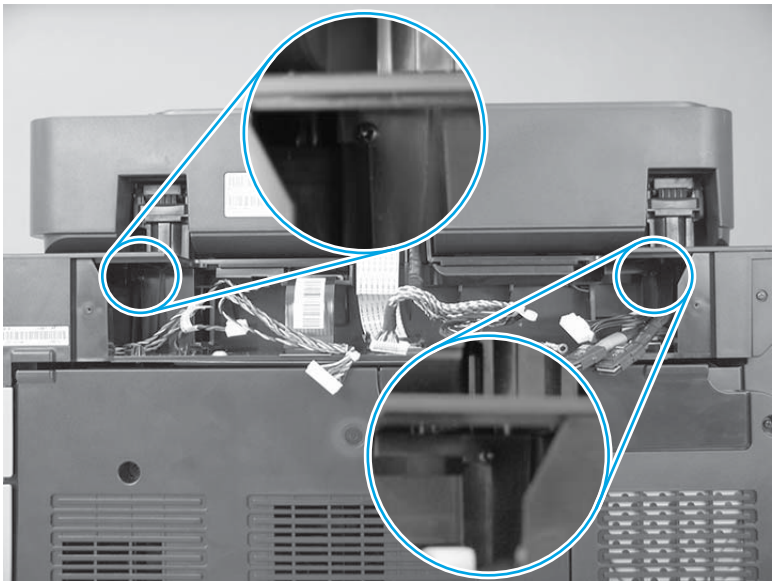
IMPORTANT: Make sure that the document feeder wire harness and FFC are correctly routed at the back of the product before lowering the document feeder into place.

Figure 1-384 Install the document feeder



3. Close the document feeder, and then tighten the two document-feeder hinge-locking screws.

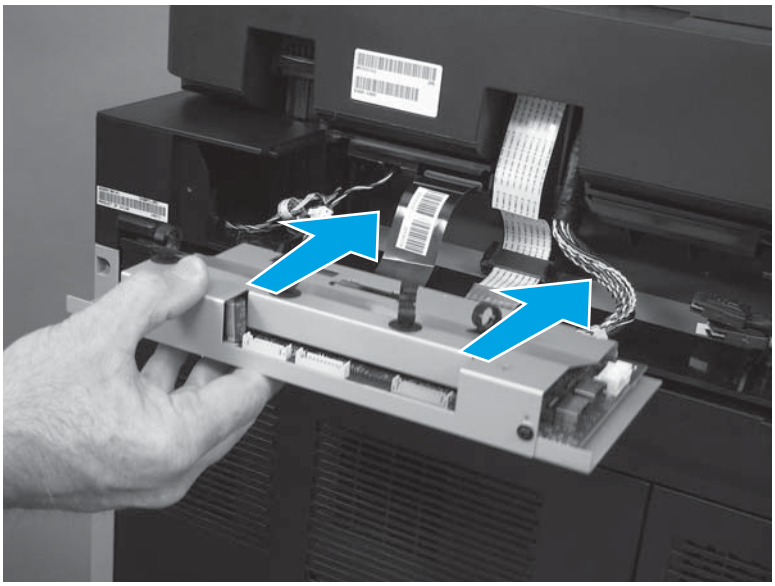
Figure 1-385 Tighten two screws



Step 8: Install the SCB

1. Partially slide the SCB into the product—make sure that the sides of the SCB engage the black plastic rails inside the product.

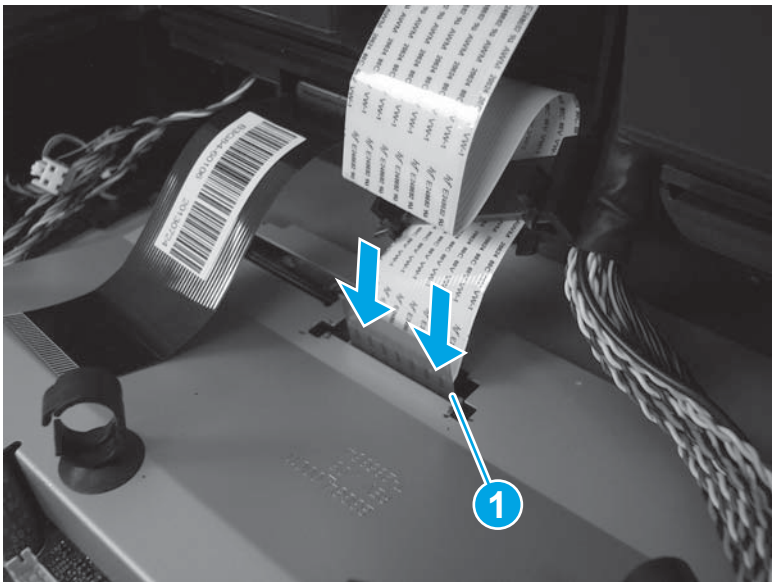
Figure 1-386 Install the SCB



2. Push straight down on the white document-feeder FFC (callout 1) to connect it.

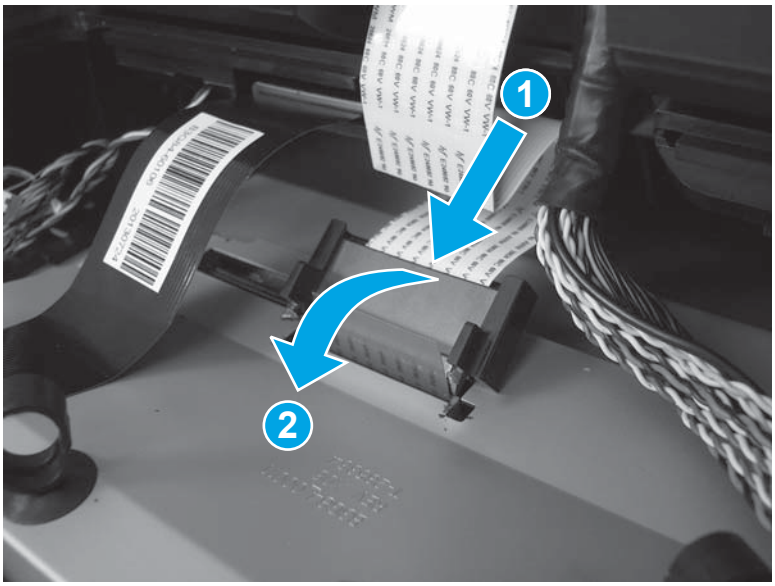
CAUTION: Be careful. The FFC must be pushed straight down and into the connector to prevent damaging it.

Figure 1-387 Connect the FFC



3. Insert the tabs at the back edge of the ferrite holder in the slot on the SCB chassis (callout 1), and then rotate (callout 2) the holder forward to install it.

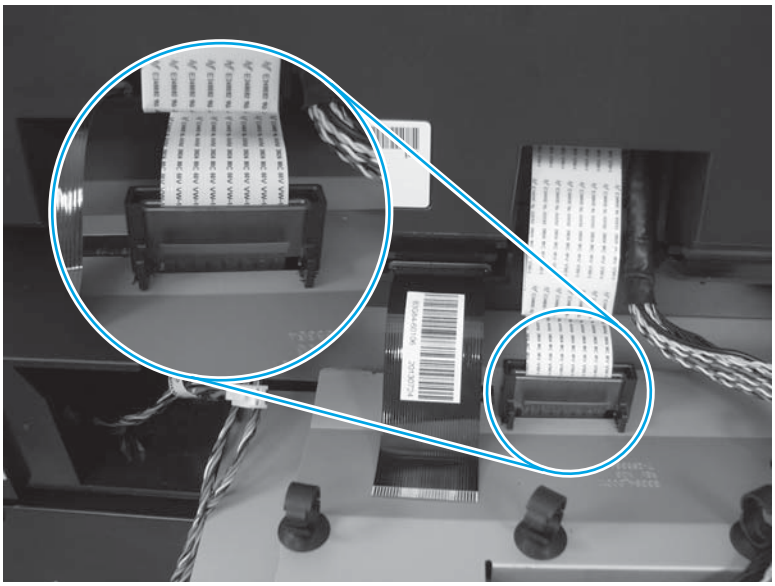
Figure 1-388 Install the ferrite and holder



4. Make sure that the tabs on the ferrite holder snap into the SCB chassis.

NOTE: When correctly installed, the ferrite holder is flat against the SCB chassis and securely fastened.

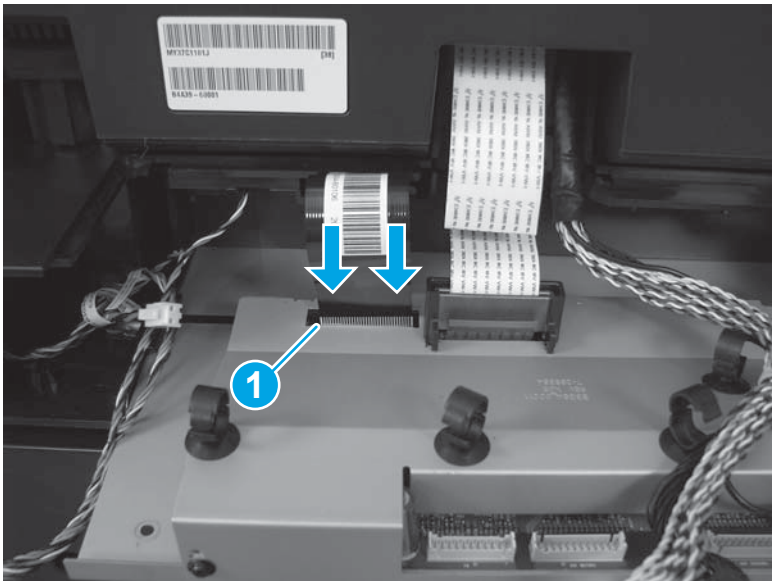
Figure 1-389 Check the two tabs



5. Push straight down on the black scanner FFC (callout 1) to connect it.

CAUTION: Be careful. The FFC must be pushed straight down and into the connector to prevent damaging it.

Figure 1-390 Connect the FFC

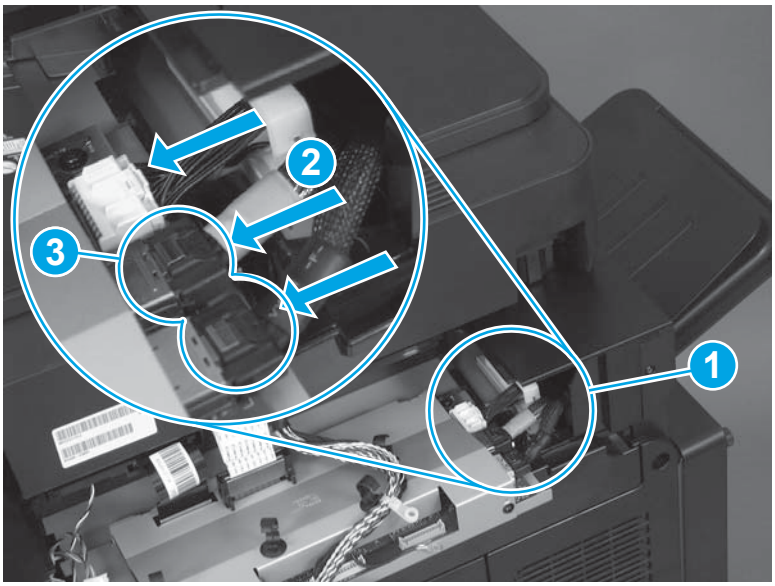


6. Connect three connectors (callout 1).

Reinstallation tip: The wire harness with the blue band (callout 2) connects to the inner connector on the SCB when reinstalled.

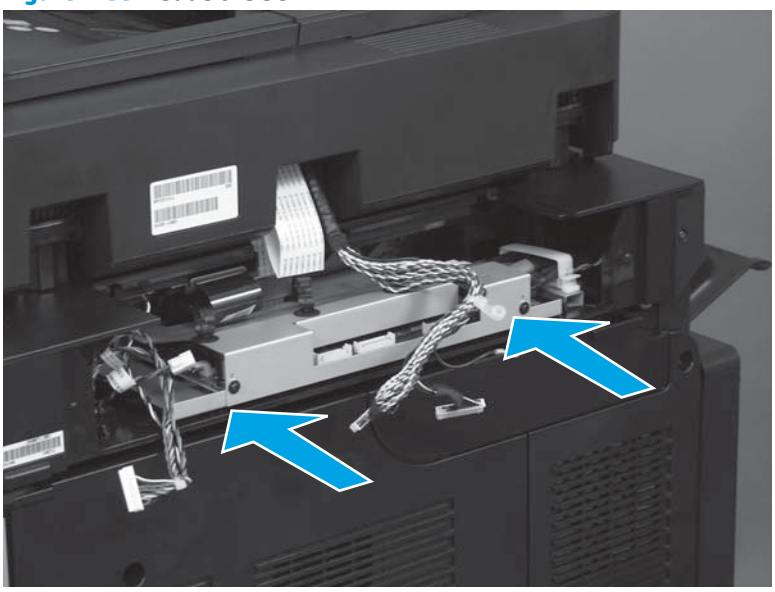
When the two connectors with the metal retainer clips (callout 3) are reinstalled, make sure that the clips snap in place to securely lock the connectors in place.

Figure 1-391 Connect three connectors



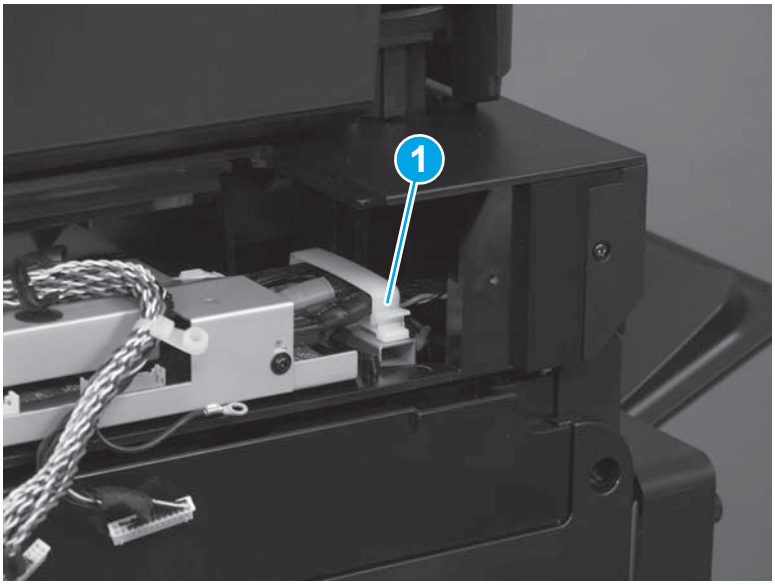
7. Slide the SCB into the product.

Figure 1-392 Slide the SCB in



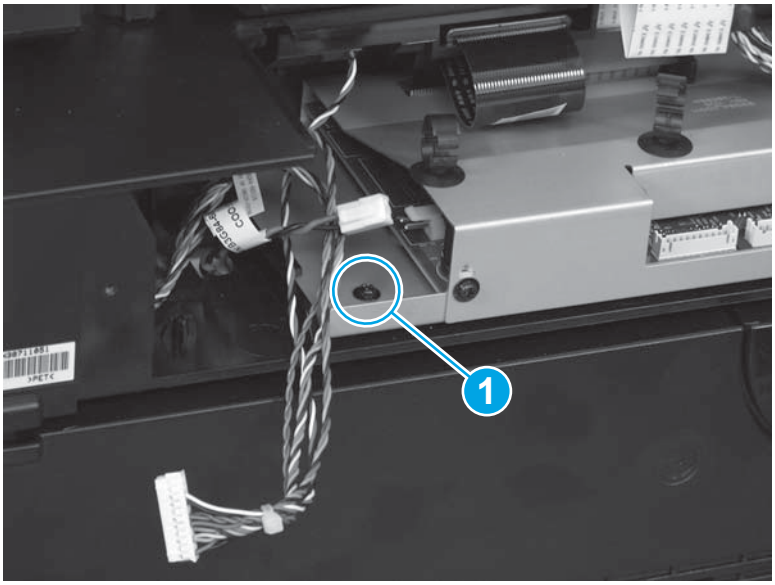
8. At the right side of the SCB, fasten one retainer (callout 1).

Figure 1-393 Fasten one retainer



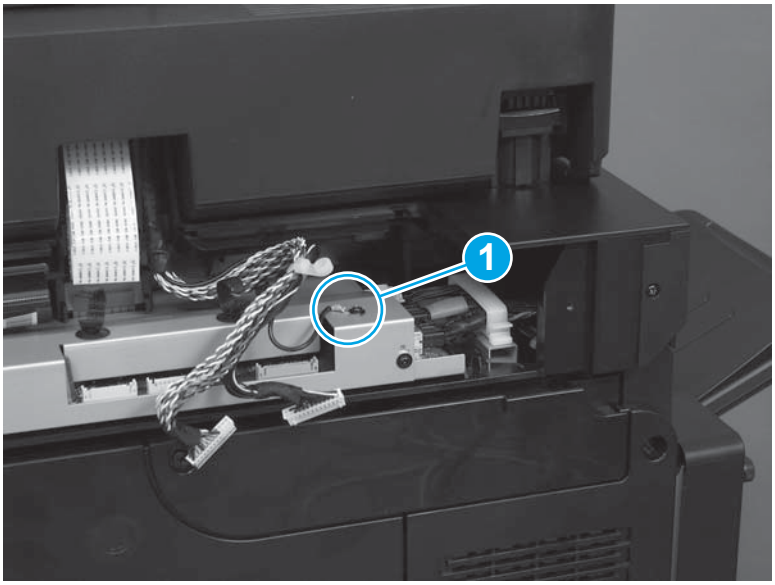
9. At the left side of the SCB, install one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-394 Install one screw



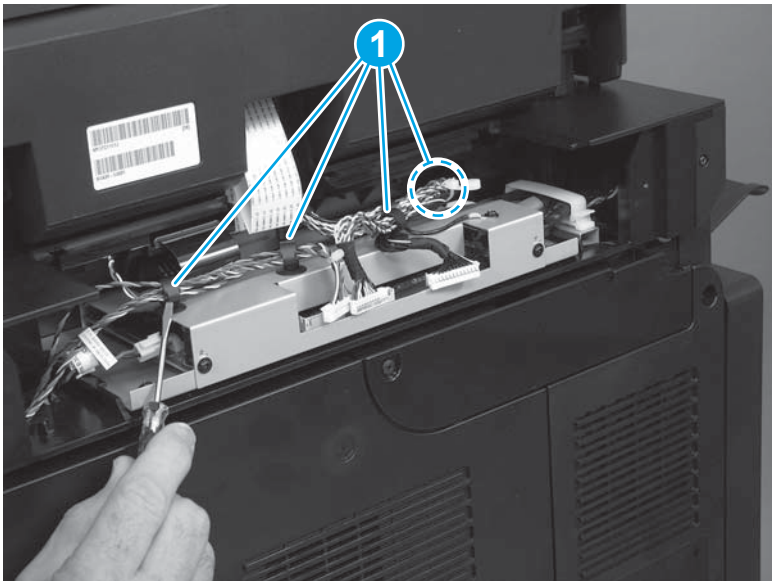
10. At the right side of the SCB, Install the ground wire and one ground screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-395 Install the ground wire and one screw



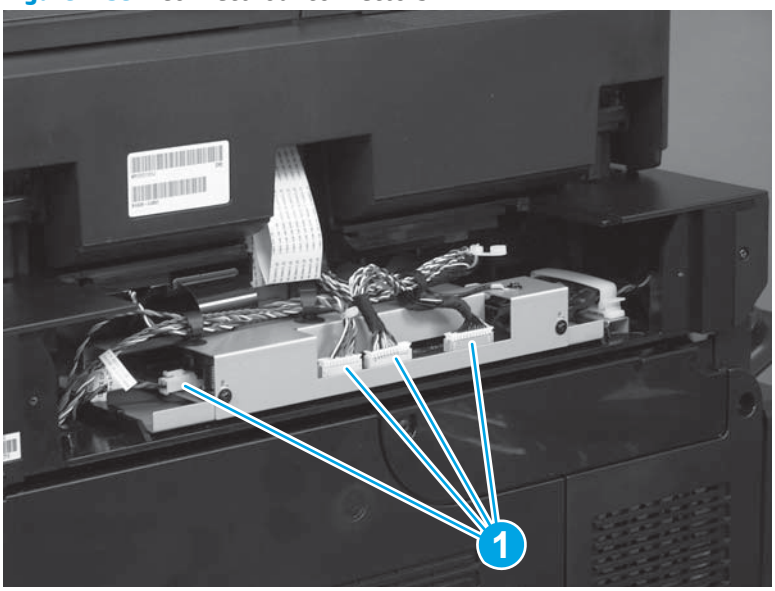
11. Install the wire harnesses in the four retainers (callout 1).

Figure 1-396 Install the wire harnesses



12. Connect four connectors (callout 1).

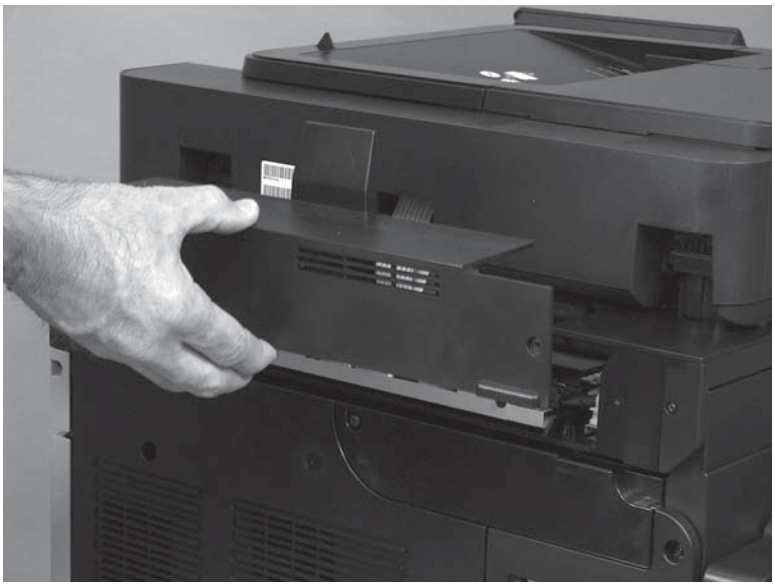
Figure 1-397 Connect four connectors



Step 9: Install the scanner rear cover

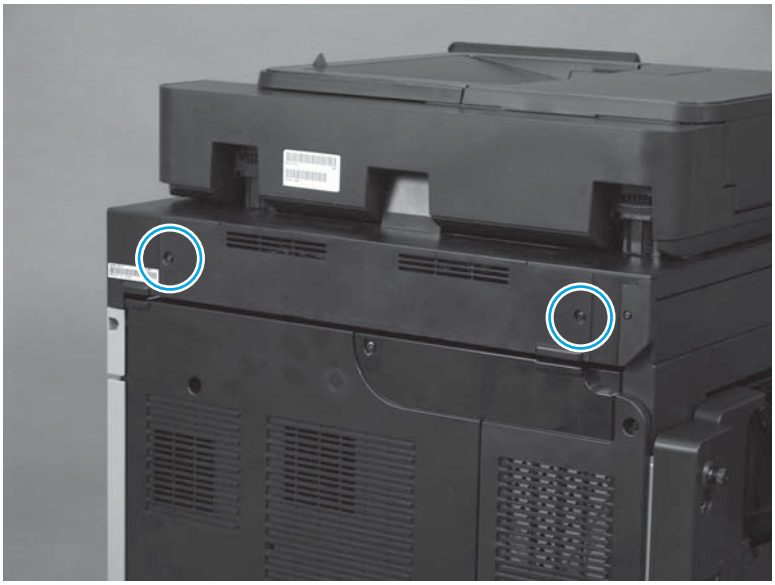
1. Install the cover.

Figure 1-398 Install the cover



2. Install two screws.

Figure 1-399 Install two screws



Step 10: Install the replacemnt document feeder white backing

IMPORTANT: When a replacement image scanner assembly is installed, the document feeder white backing must also be replaced.

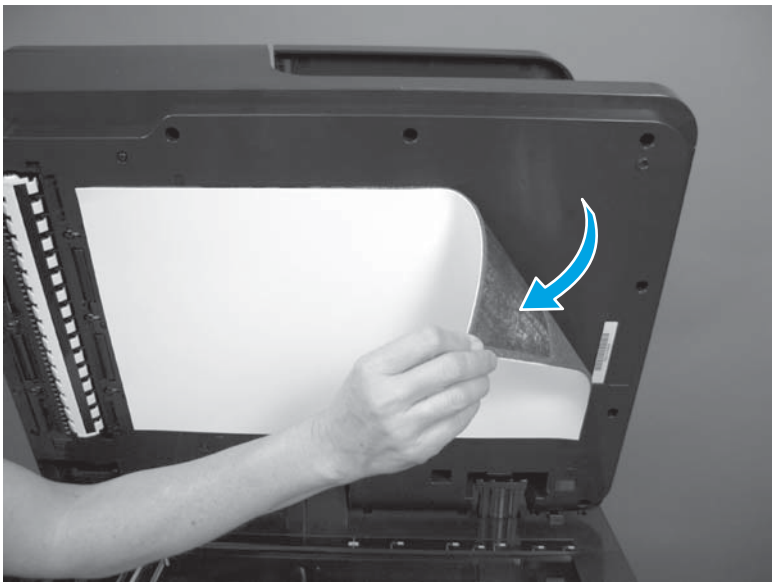
1. Open the document feeder.

Figure 1-400 Open the document feeder



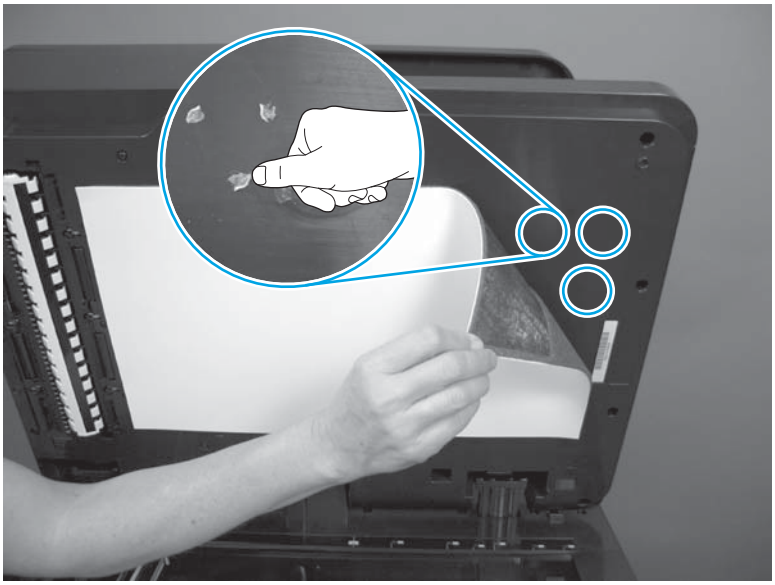
2. Carefully remove the white backing.

Figure 1-401 Remove the white backing



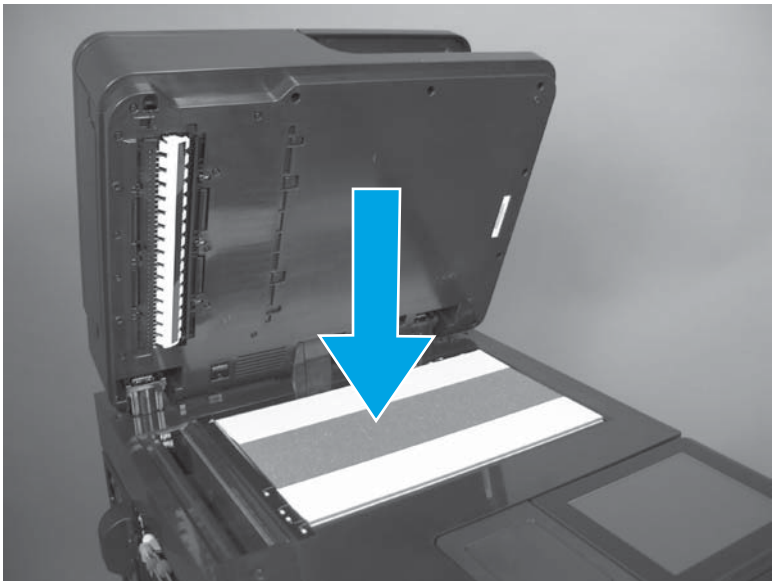
3. Remove any remaining adhesive.

Figure 1-402 Remove remaining adhesive



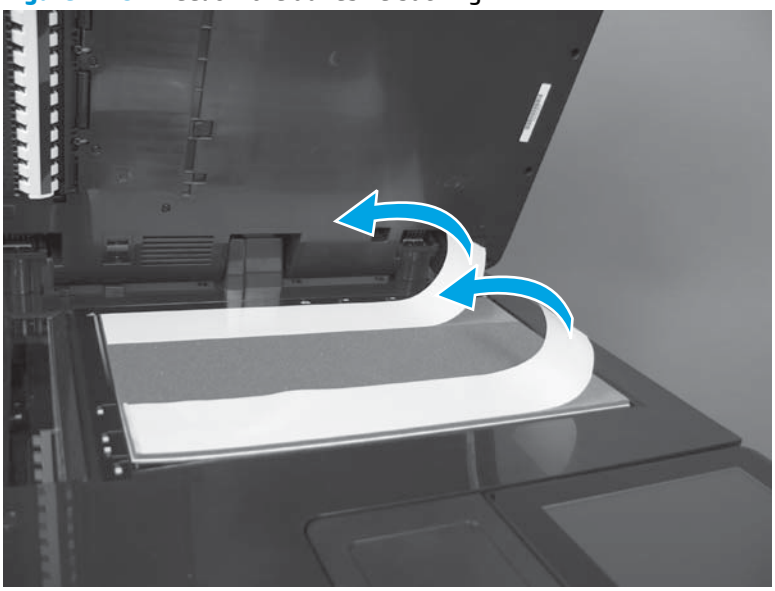
1. Place the white backing on the scanner glass.

Figure 1-403 Place the white backing on the scanner



2. Peel off the two strips of adhesive backing.

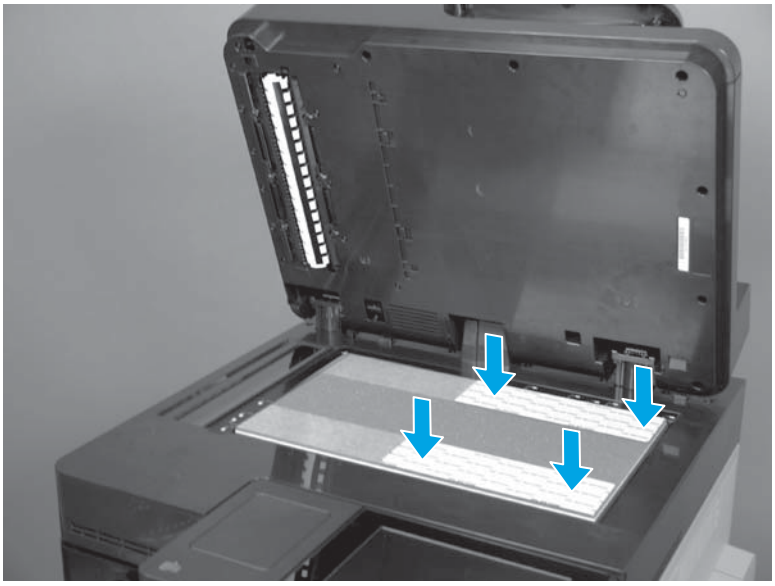
Figure 1-404 Peel off the adhesive backing



3. Place the two mylar-spacer strips (included with the kit) onto the adhesive, as shown.

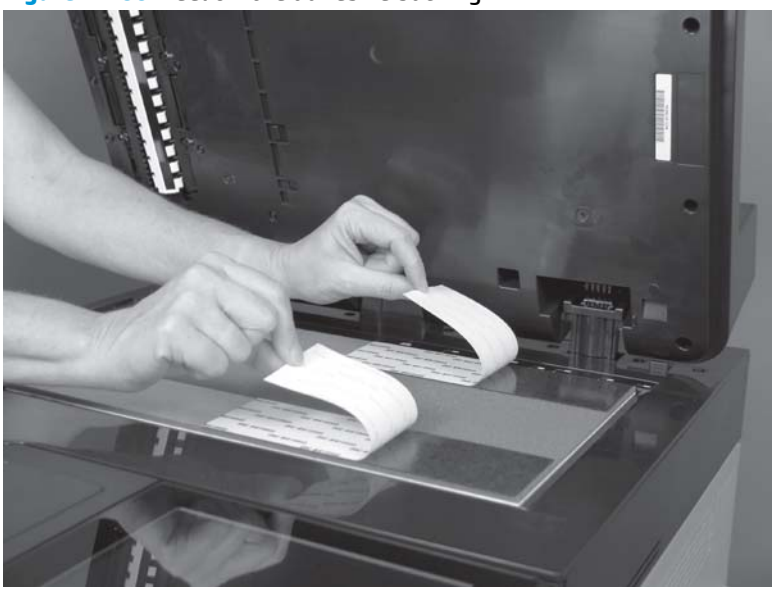
IMPORTANT: Align the mylar with the edges of the adhesive on the white backing.

Figure 1-405 Place the two mylar-spacer strips onto the adhesive



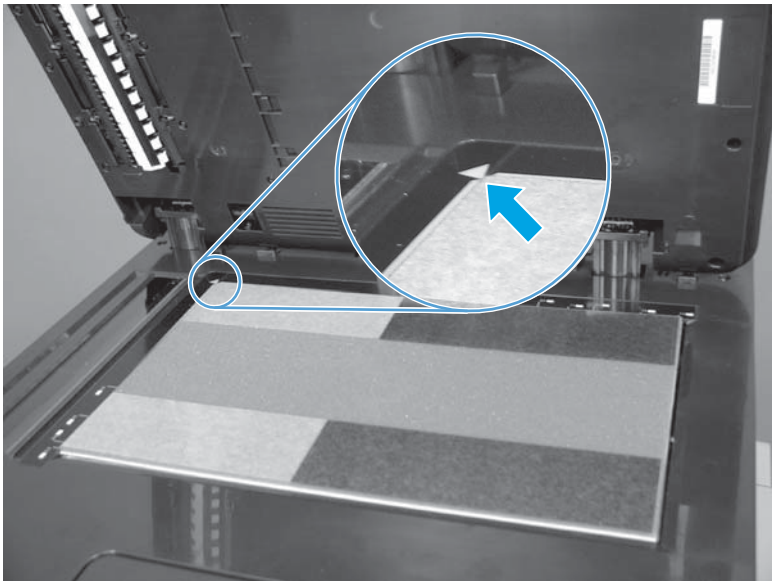
4. Peel off the two strips of adhesive backing.

Figure 1-406 Peel off the adhesive backing



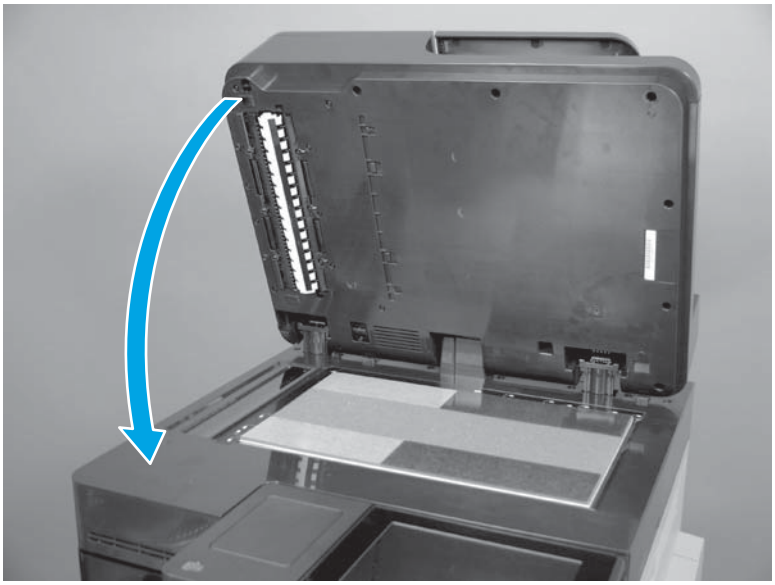
5. Verify that the white backing is aligned with the left rear corner of the scanner glass.

Figure 1-407 Verify that the white backing is correctly aligned



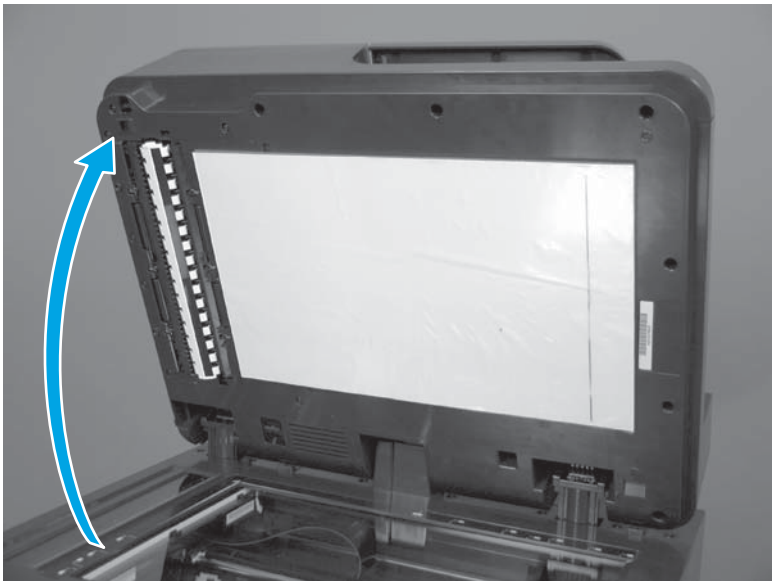
6. Close the document feeder. Press down firmly to adhere the white backing.

Figure 1-408 Close the document feeder and press down



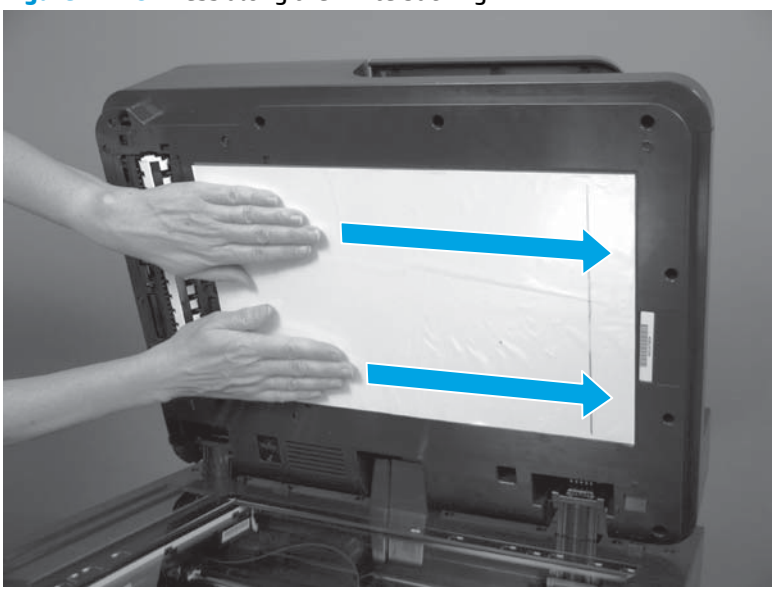
7. Open the document feeder.

Figure 1-409 Open the document feeder



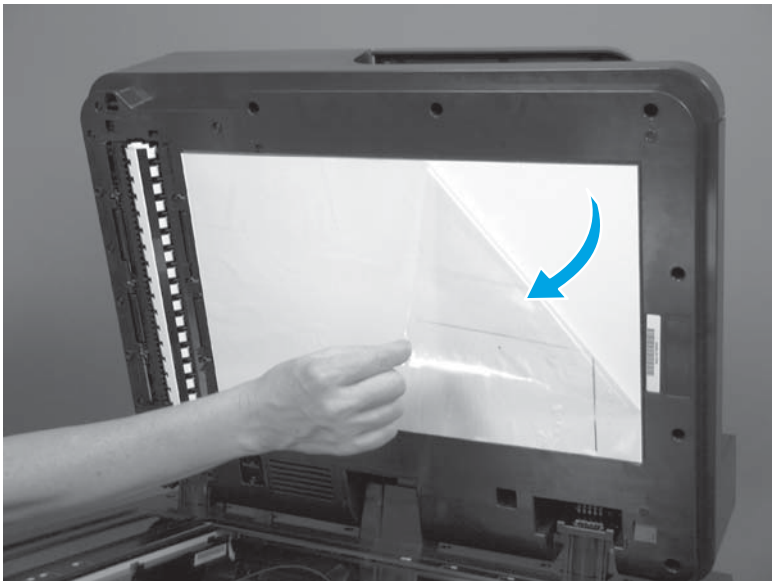
8. Press along the top and bottom of the white backing, over the areas with adhesive.

Figure 1-410 Press along the white backing



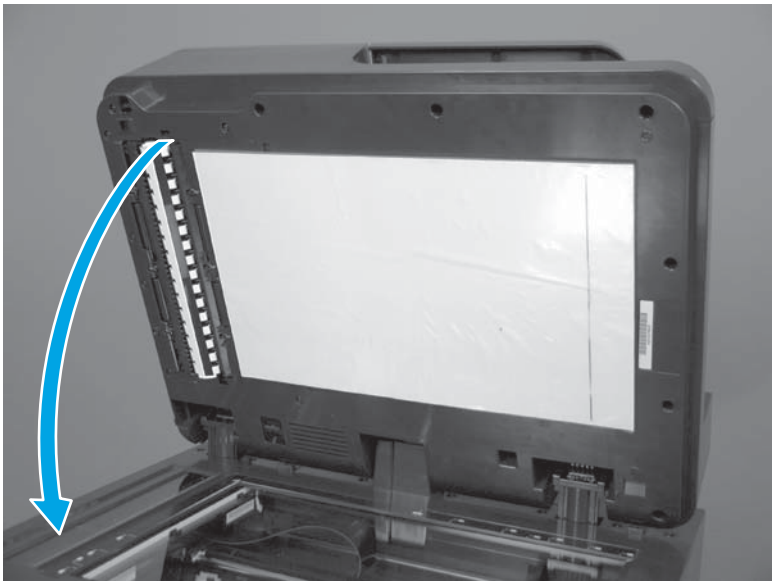
9. Peel off the protective plastic sheet.

Figure 1-411 Peel off the protective sheet



10. Close the document feeder.

Figure 1-412 Close the document feeder



Step 11: Reset the supplies counters and calibrate the scanner

If a replacement scanner is installed, perform the following tasks after reassembling the product:

Turn the product on.

1. Use the Service menu to reset the Flatbed Count firmware counter.
    a. From the Home screen on the control panel, scroll to and touch the Device Maintenance button.
    b. Open the Service menu.
    c. On the sign-in screen, select the Service Access Code option from the drop-down list.
    d. Enter the following service access code for this product: 09063014.
    e. Reset the Flatbed Count to zero.
2. Use the Calibration/Cleaning menu to calibrate the scanner.
    a. From the Home screen on the control panel, scroll to and touch the Device Maintenance button.
    b. Open the following menus:
        - Calibration/Cleaning
        - Calibrate Scanner
    c. Touch the Next button to start the calibration process. Follow the on-screen prompts.
    d. Wait while the product calibrates the scanner.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Covers, doors, tray, and external panels (product base)

- Identification and location (product base)
- Front cover
- Envelope feeder cover
- Image scanner cable cover
- Tray 1 cover
- Tray
- Side-rear cover
- Front-left cover and logo panel assembly
- Power-switch assembly
- Rear-right cover
- Rear-left cover
- Rear-top cover
- Right-lower door
- Document-feeder hinge cover

Identification and location (product base)

Figure 1-413 Identification and location (product base)

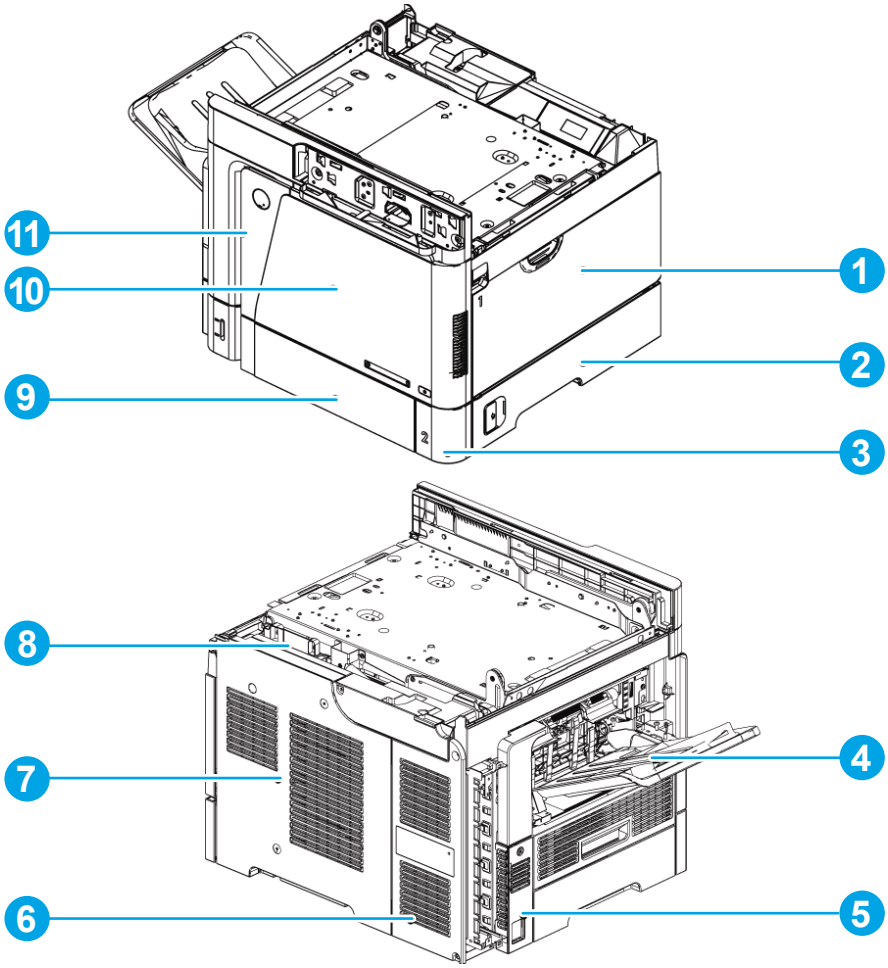


Table 1-1 Identification and location (product base)

Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Tray 1 (multipurpose tray) cover	7	Right rear cover
2	Lower-right cover	8	Rear top cover
3	Power-switch assembly	9	Tray 2 (cassette)
4	Tray 1 base assembly	10	Front cover
5	Rear-left corner cover	11	Left cover
6	Left-rear cover		

Front cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front cover
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement front cover
- Step 3: Install the front cover
- Step 4: Turn the product power on
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front cover.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Front cover kit part number	
B3G85-67905	Front cover assembly with instruction guide

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

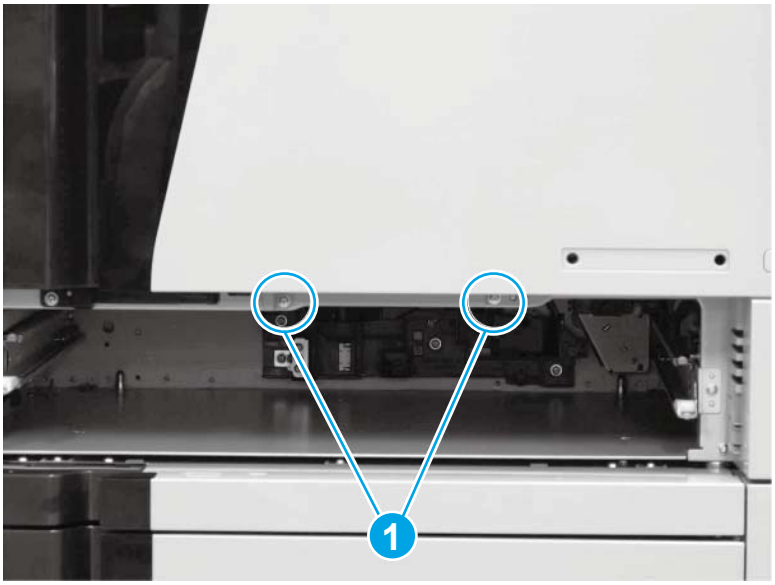
Required tools

#2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the front cover

1. Remove Tray 2, and then remove two screws (callout 1).

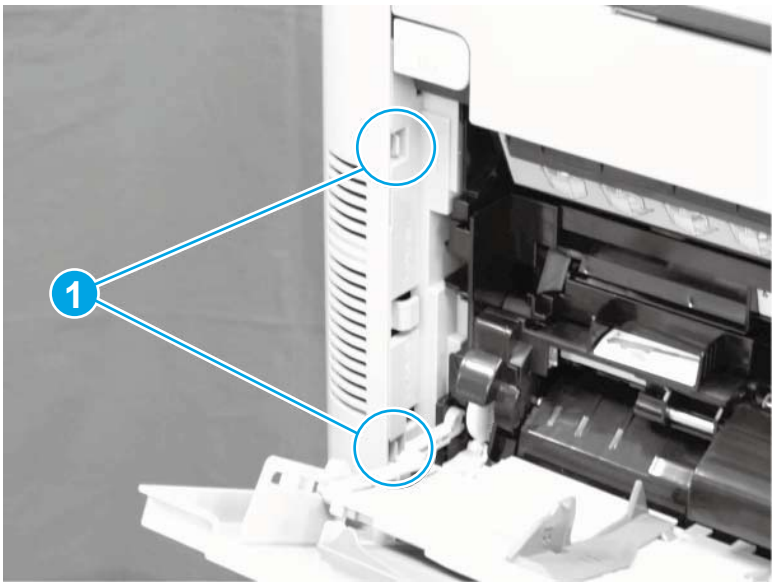
Figure 1-414 Remove two screws



2. Open Tray 1, and then push in on two tabs (callout 1) to release them.

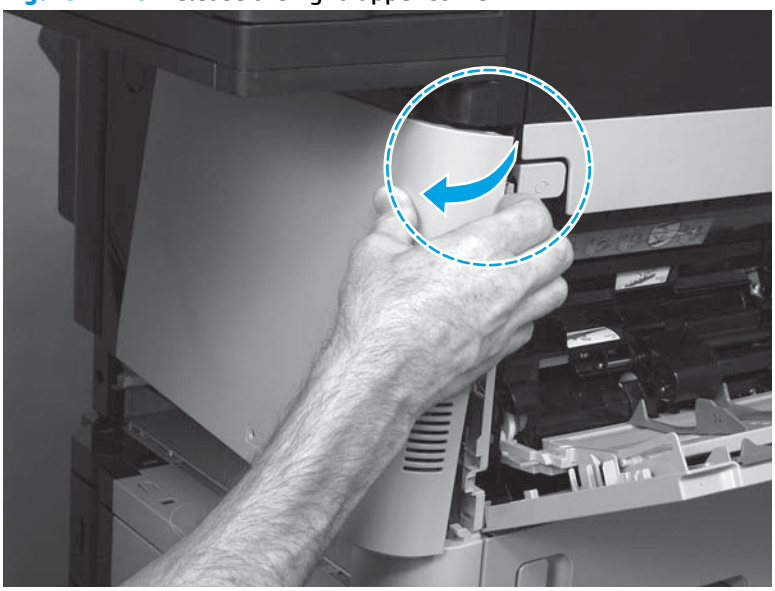
TIP: Release the lower tab first, and then release the upper tab.

Figure 1-415 Release two tabs



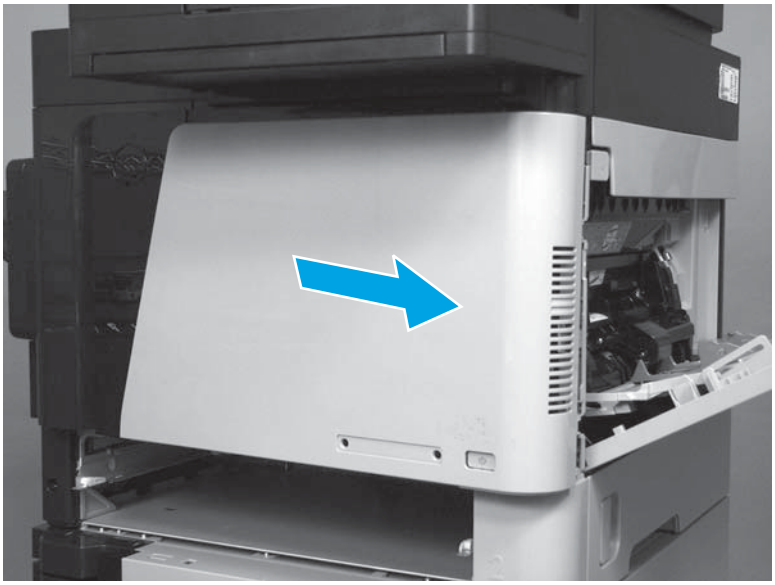
3. Carefully flex the right-upper corner of the cover away from the product to release one locking pin.

Figure 1-416 Release the right-upper corner



4. Slide the cover towards the right side of the product to release it.

Figure 1-417 Slide the cover to the right



5. Remove the cover.

Figure 1-418 Remove the cover



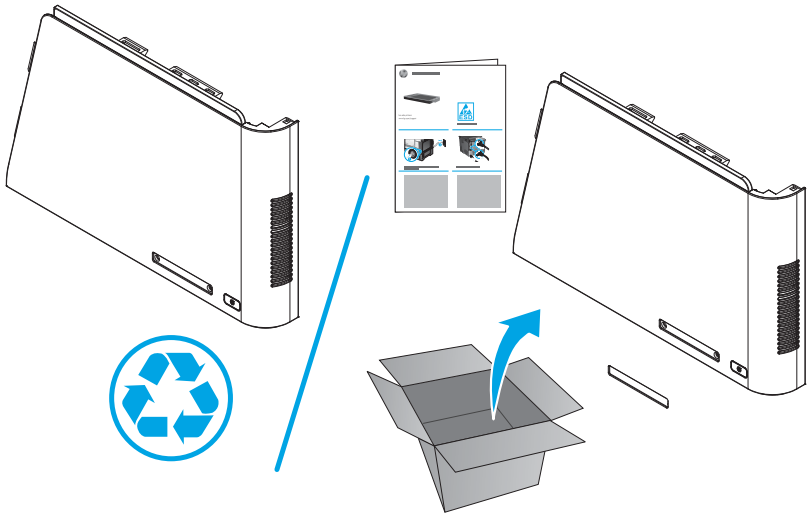
Step 2: Unpack the replacement front cover

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

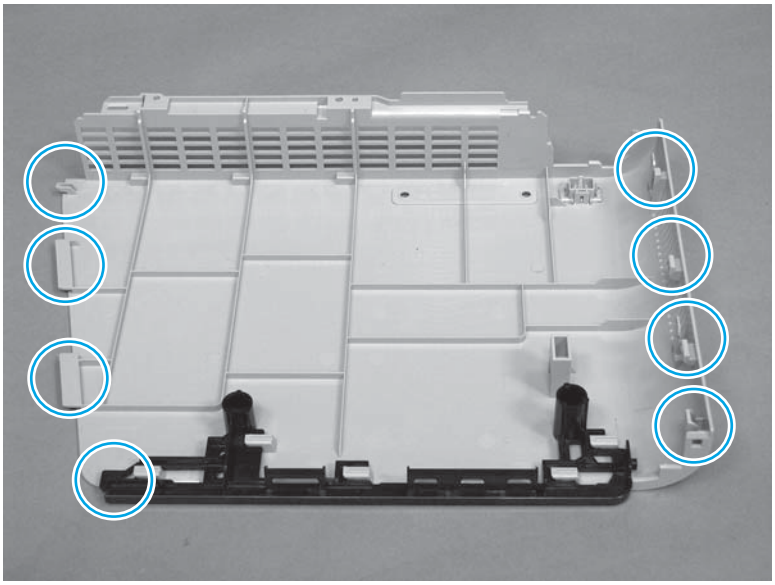
TIP: Do not forget to unpack the product name plate.



Step 3: Install the front cover

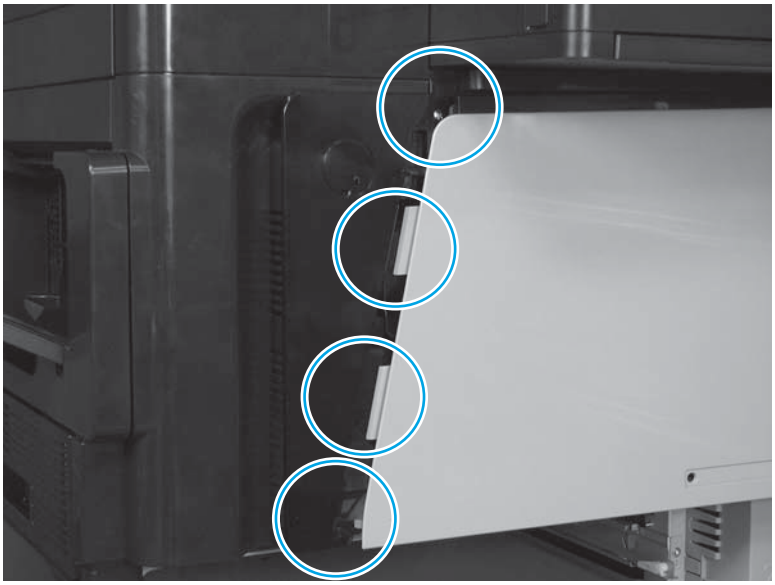
1. Take note of the location of all of the tabs on the back of the cover.

Figure 1-419 Note of the location of the tabs



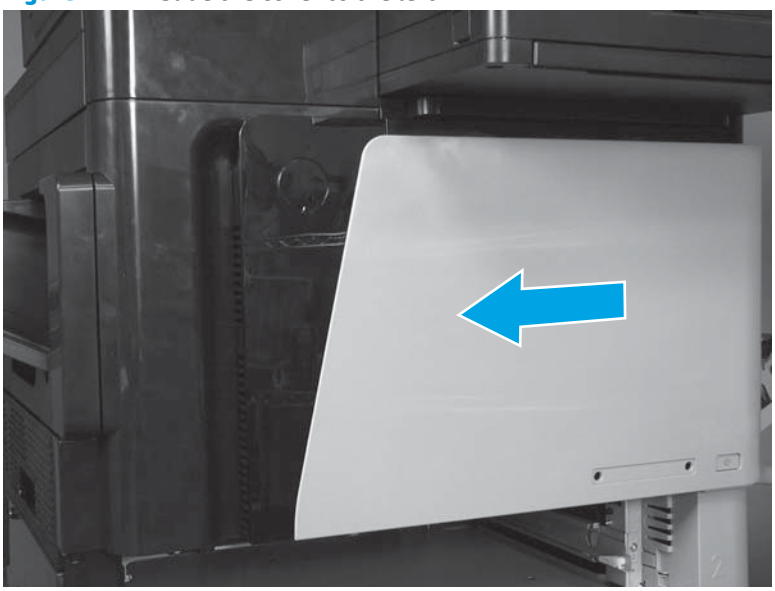
2. Align the four tabs (callout 1) on the cover with the slots (callout 2) on the logo panel.

Figure 1-420 Align four tabs



3. Slightly slide the cover toward the left side of the product to engage the tabs in the slots.

Figure 1-421 Slide the cover to the left



4. Carefully flex the right-upper corner of the cover toward from the product to engage one locking pin.

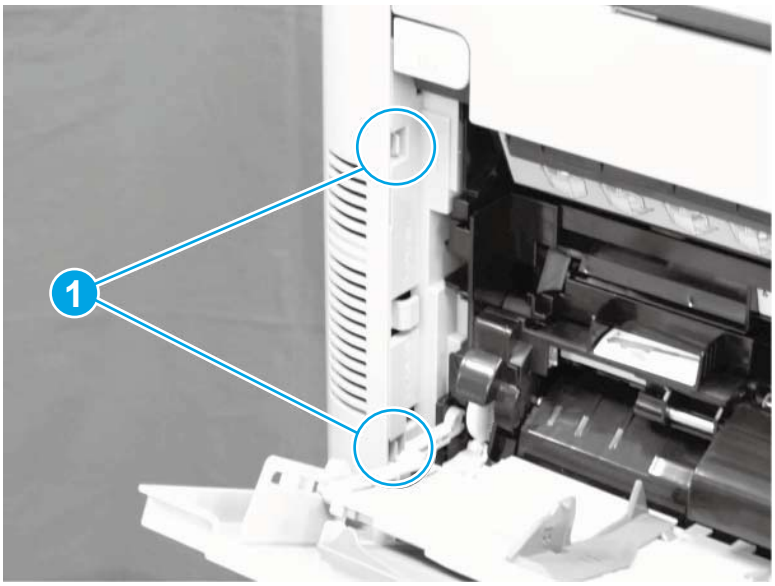
Figure 1-422 Engage one locking pin



5. Engage two tabs (callout 1).

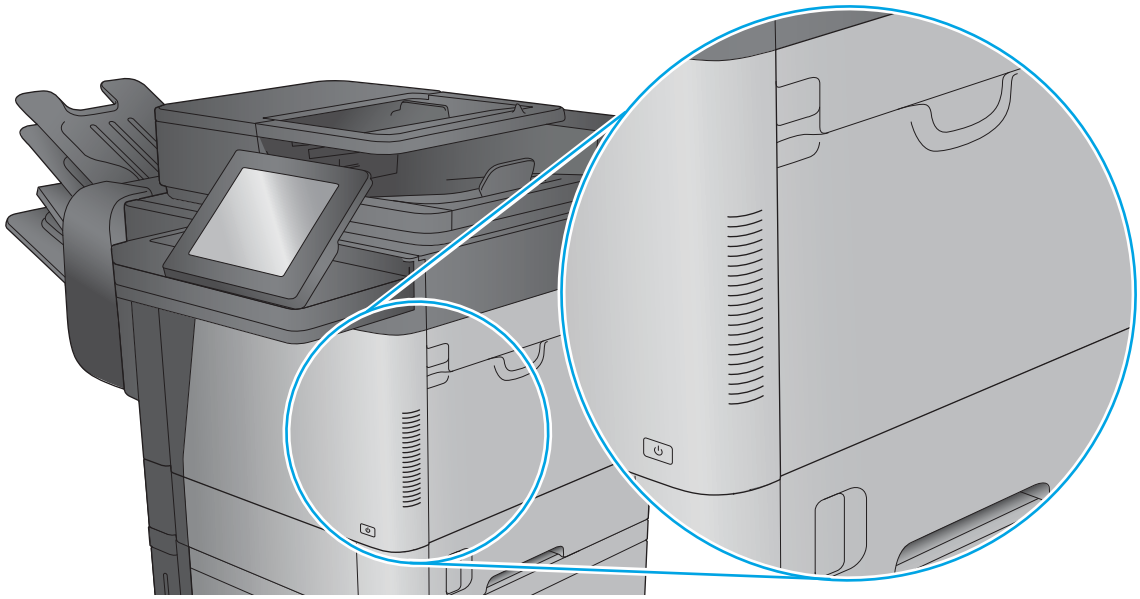
TIP: Engage the upper tab first, and then engage the lower tab.

Figure 1-423 Engage two tabs



6. Close Tray 1, and verify that the gap between the edge of the front cover and the tray is even. If it is uneven, the tabs are not correctly engaged.

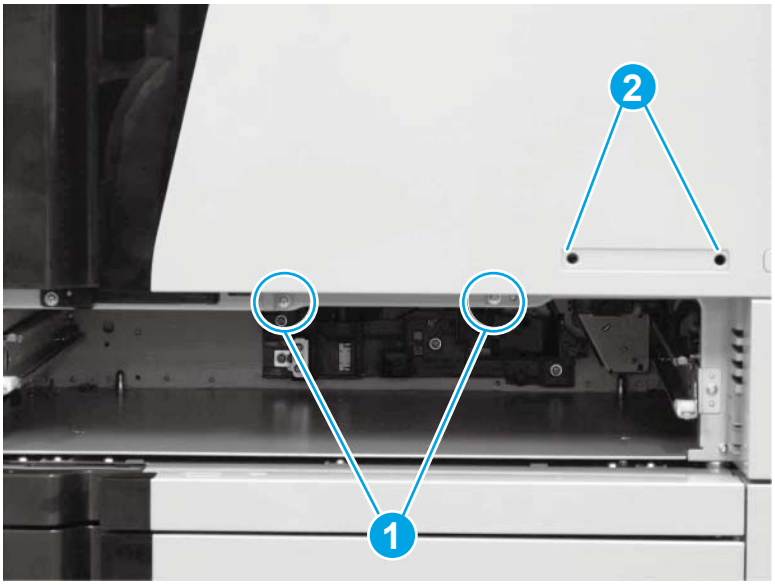
Figure 1-424 Check cover installation



7. Install two screws (callout 1), and then reinstall Tray 2.

Reinstallation tip: To install the product nameplate on the front cover, align the pins on the back side of the nameplate with the holes in the cover (callout 2), and then push in on the nameplate until it snaps in place.

Figure 1-425 Install two screws



Step 4: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Envelope feeder cover

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. Open Tray 1.
2. Pull the envelope feeder cover (callout 1) straight out of the product to remove it.

Figure 1-426 Remove the envelope feeder cover

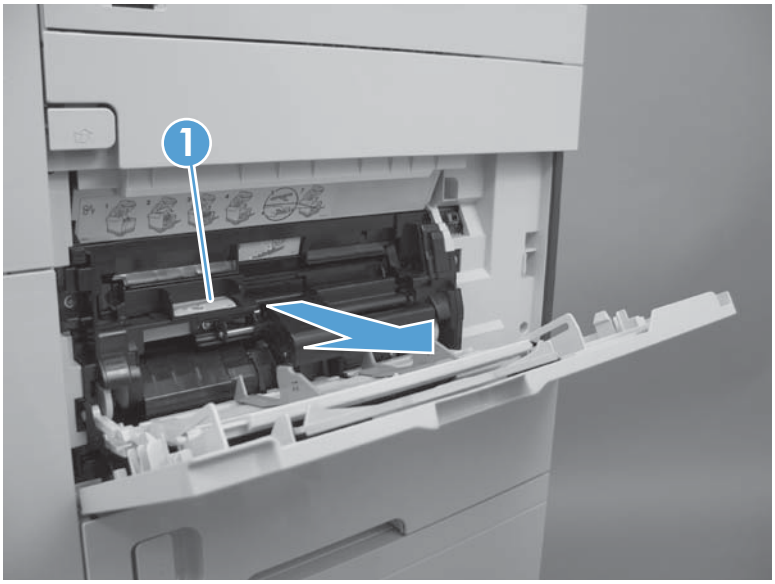


Image scanner cable cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement image scanner cable cover
- Step 3: Install the image scanner cable cover
- Step 4: Turn the product power on
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the image scanner cable cover.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Image scanner cable cover part number	
RM2-5816-000CN	Image scanner cable cover

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

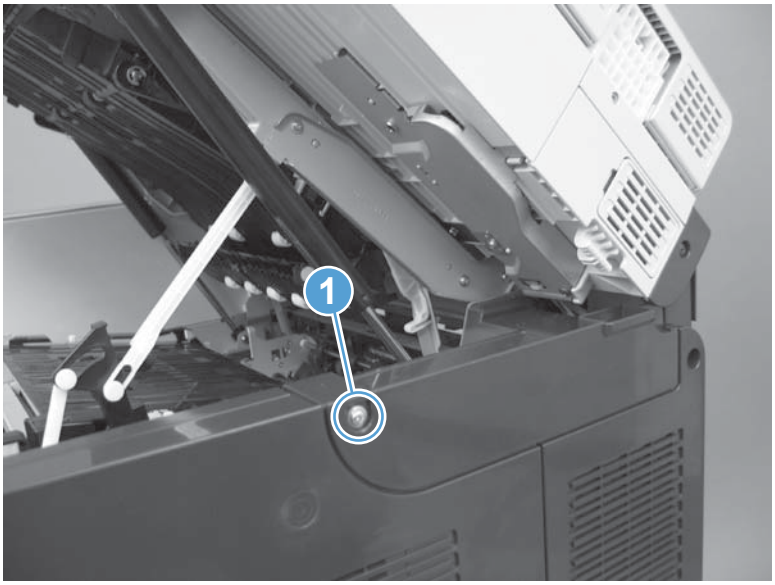
Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover

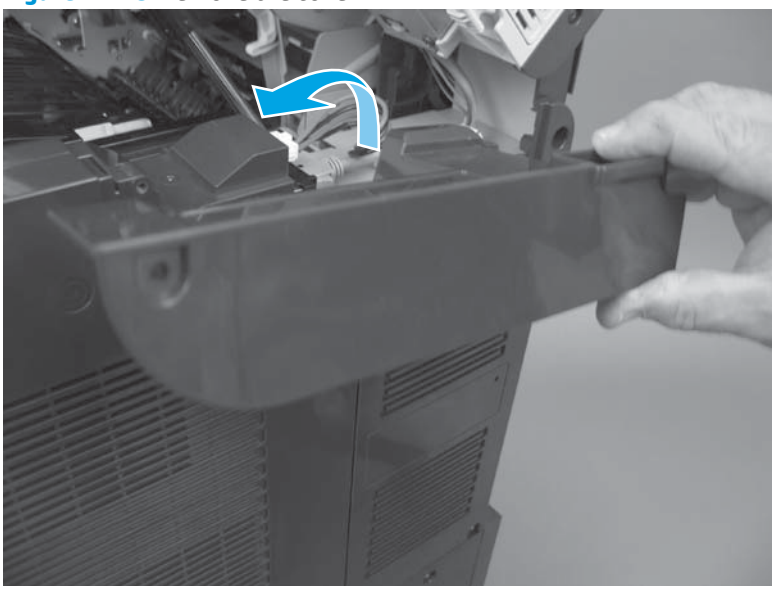
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-427 Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

Figure 1-428 Remove the cover

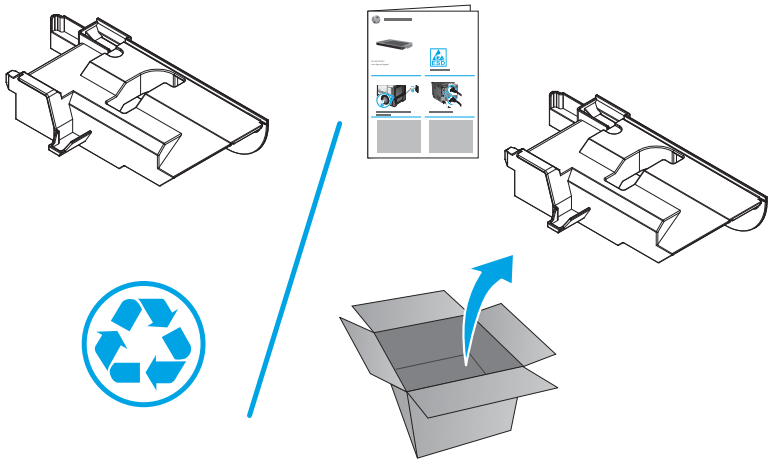


Step 2: Unpack the replacement image scanner cable cover

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling

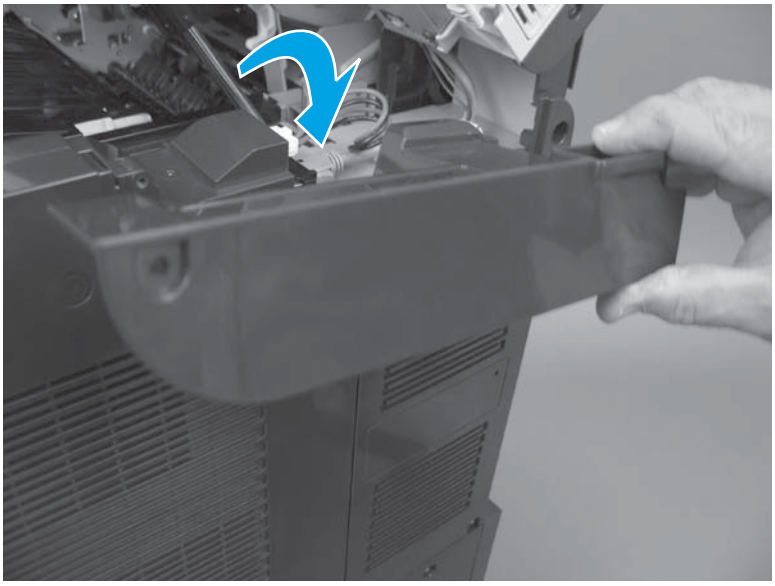
NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 3: Install the image scanner cable cover

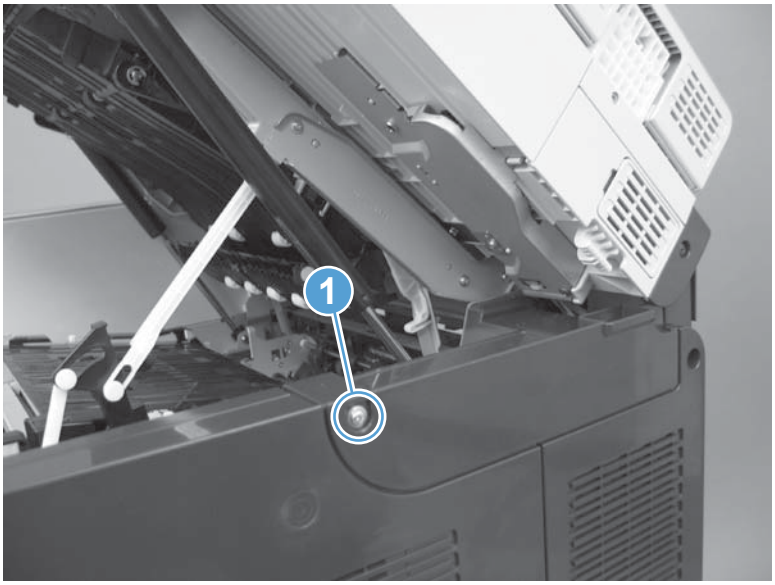
1. Install the cover on the product.

Figure 1-429 Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

Figure 1-430 Install one screw



Step 4: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Tray 1 cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 cover
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement Tray 1 cover
- Step 3: Install the Tray 1 cover
- Step 4: Turn the product power on
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the Tray 1 cover.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Tray 1 cover part number	
RM2-5816-000CN	Tray 1 cover

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

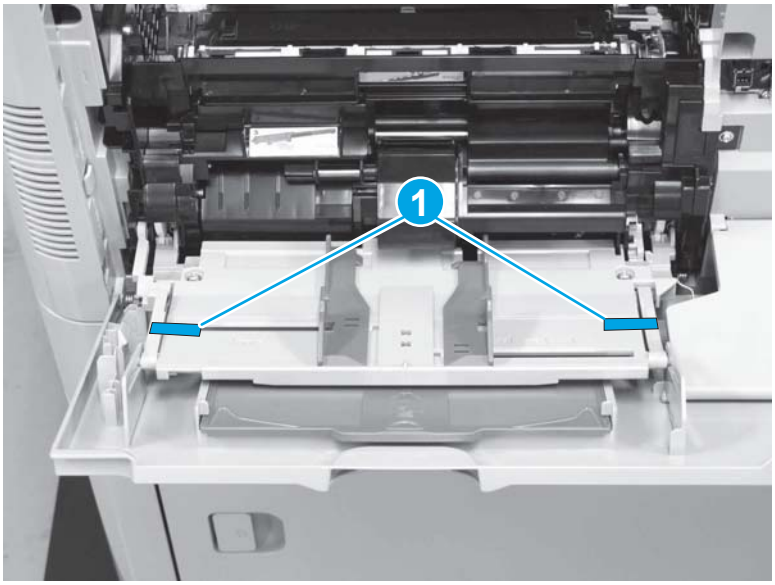
Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 cover

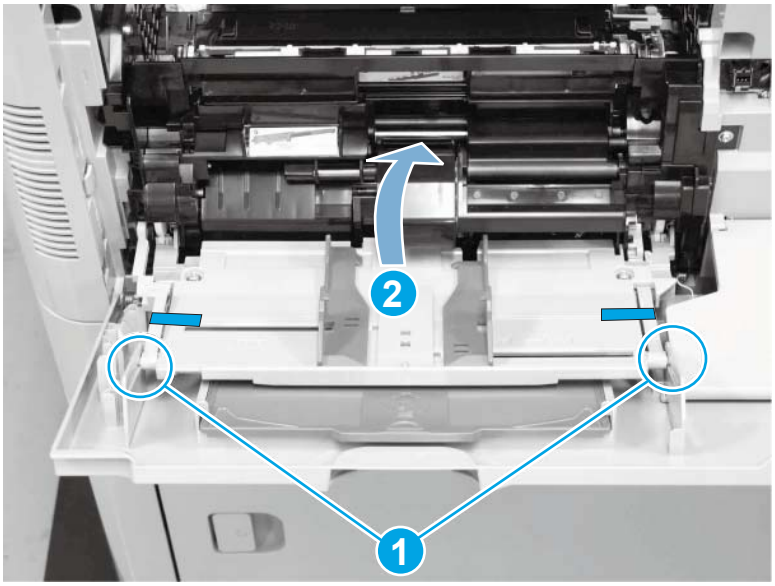
1. Use low adhesive tape to secure the outer retaining pins (callout 1) to the inner tray.

Figure 1-431 Secure the outer retaining pins



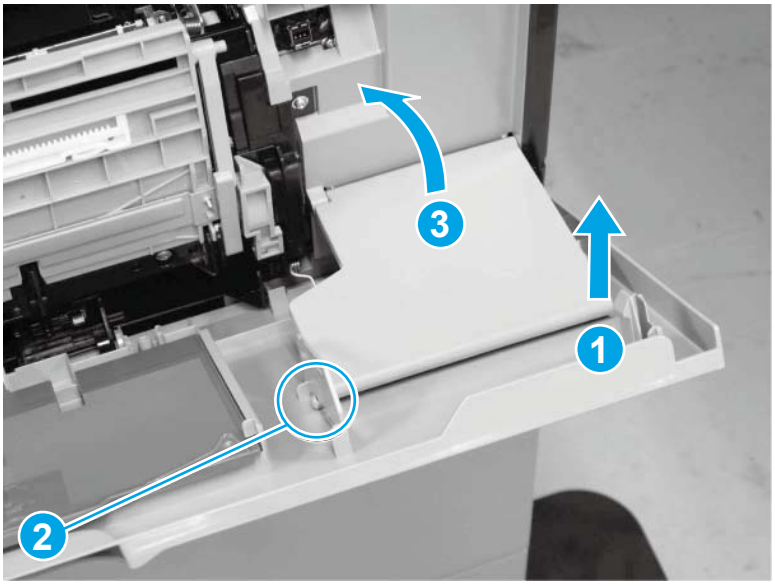
2. Open Tray 1, release the two outer retaining pins (callout 1) on the cover, and then carefully fold the inner tray up (callout 2) and into the product to protect it.

Figure 1-432 Release two outer retaining pins



3. Carefully lift on the outer corner of the tray inner cover (callout 1) to release one pin (callout 2) from the guide, and then fold the inner cover up (callout 3) and into the product.

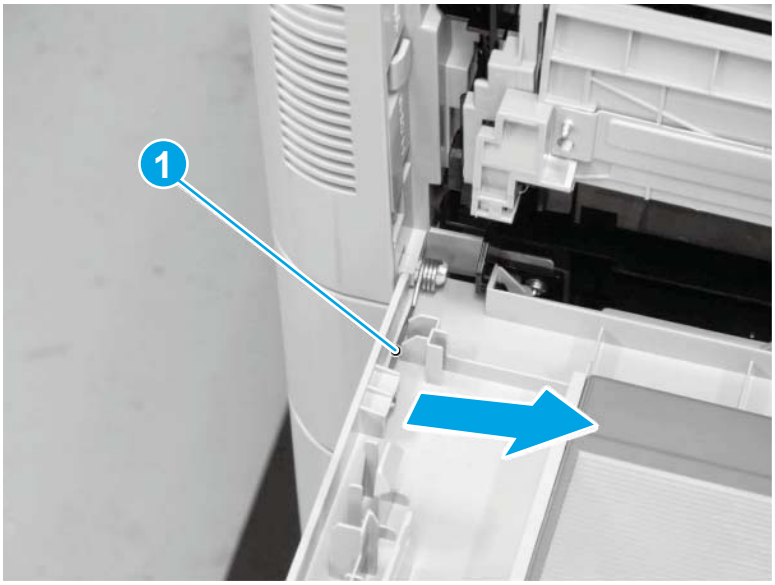
Figure 1-433 Release one pin



4. Release the left-side spring arm (callout 1).

CAUTION: The spring is not captive when the spring arm is released and can be dislodged and lost.

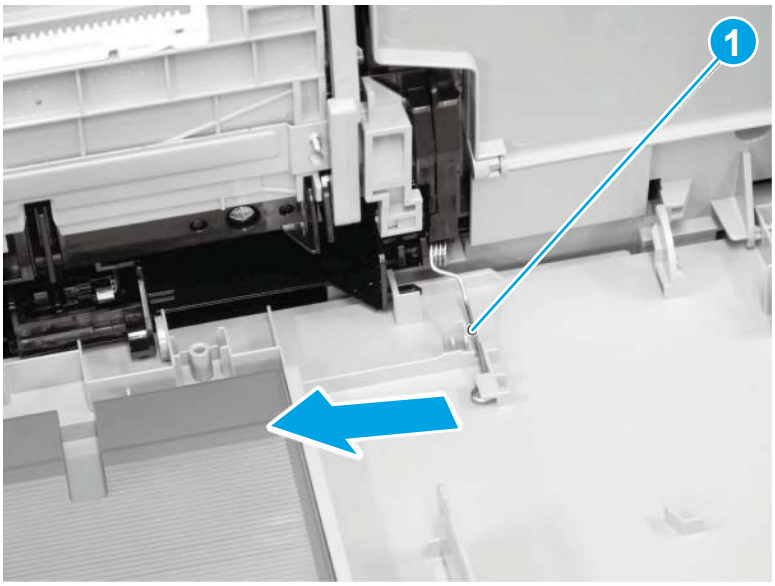
Figure 1-434 Release the left-side spring



5. Release the right-side spring arm (callout 1).

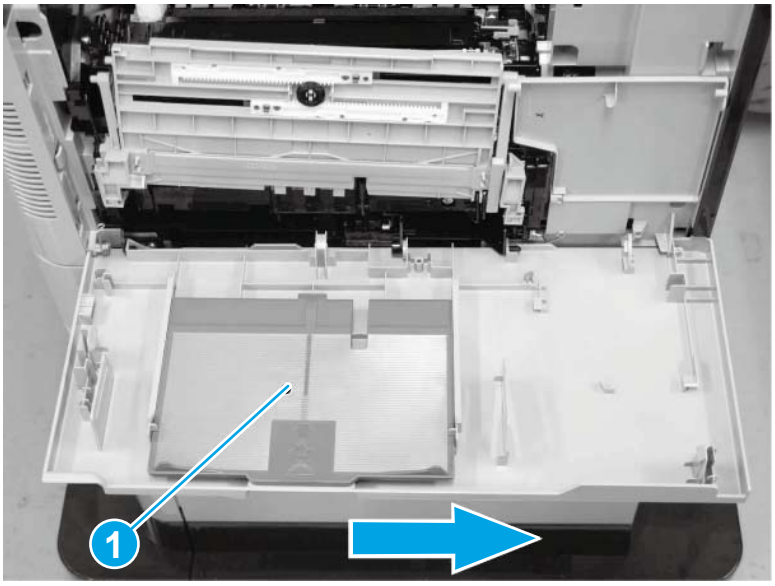
CAUTION: The spring is not captive when the spring arm is released and can be dislodged and lost.

Figure 1-435 Release the right-side spring



6. Slide the cover (callout 1) toward the back of the product to release it, and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-436 Remove the cover

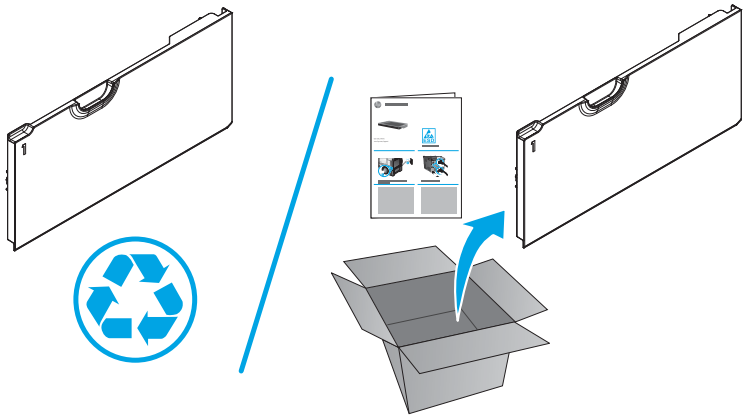


Step 2: Unpack the replacement Tray 1 cover

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

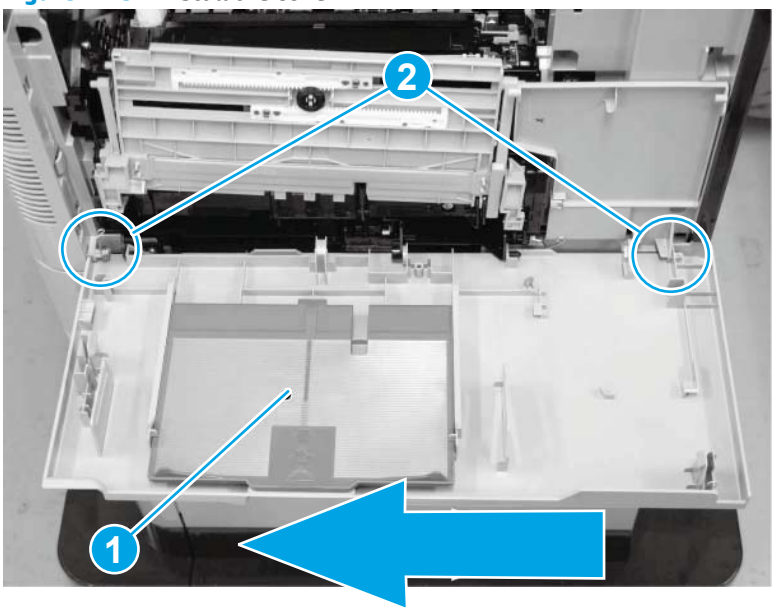
NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 3: Install the Tray 1 cover

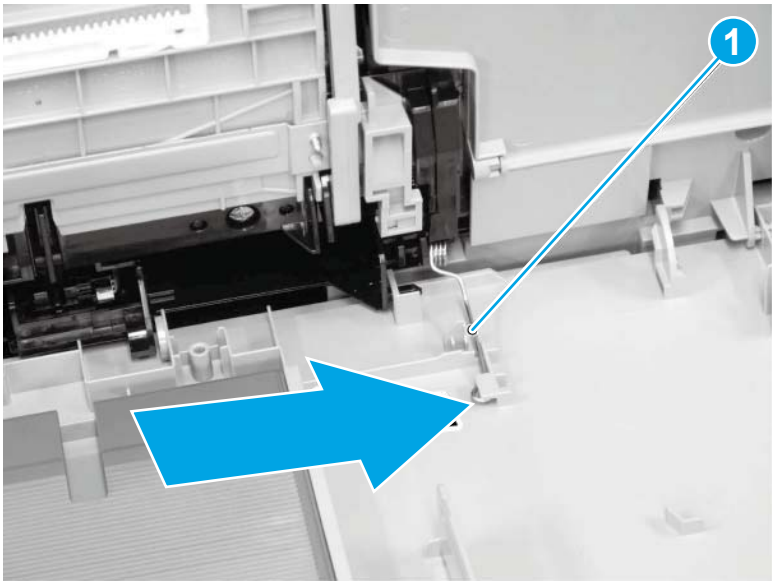
1. Slide the cover (callout 1) toward the front of the product to install it on the hinge pins (callout 2).

Figure 1-437 Install the cover



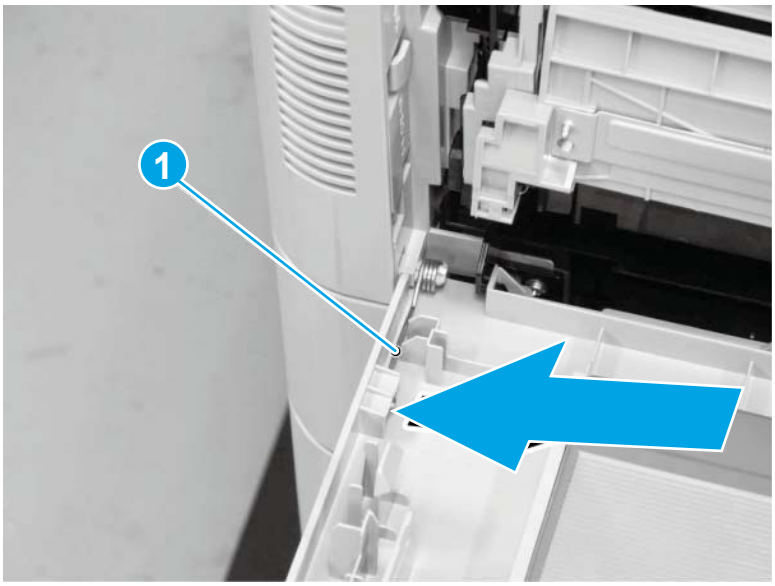
2. Engage the right-side spring arm (callout 1).

Figure 1-438 Engage the right-side spring



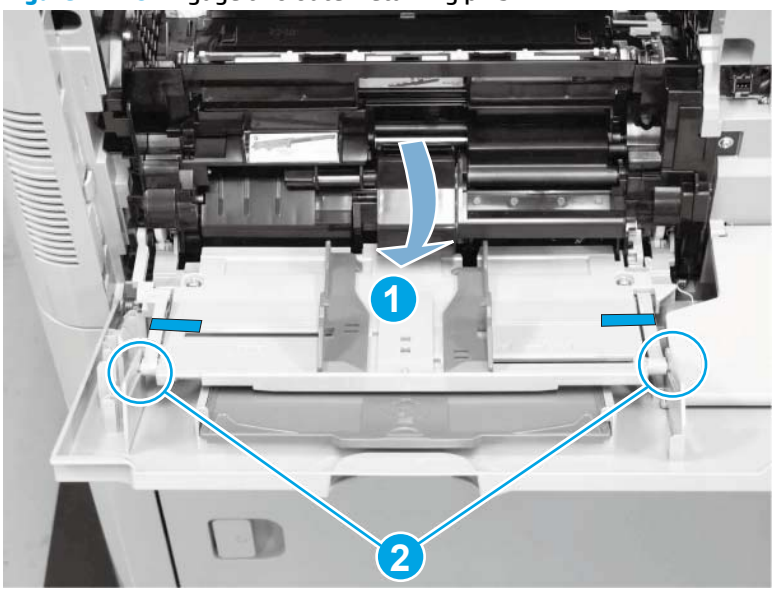
3. Engage the left-side spring arm (callout 1).

Figure 1-439 Engage the left-side spring



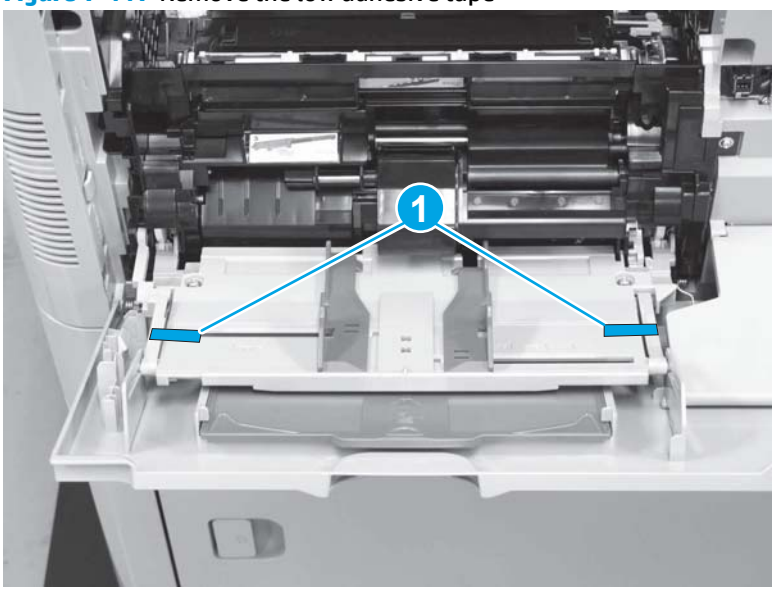
4. Lower the inner tray assembly (callout 1), and then engage the two outer retaining pins (callout 2) on the cover.

Figure 1-440 Engage two outer retaining pins



5. Remove the low adhesive tape (callout 1), and then close the tray.

Figure 1-441 Remove the low adhesive tape



Step 4: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Tray

Use this procedure to remove any of the 1x500-sheet trays.

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

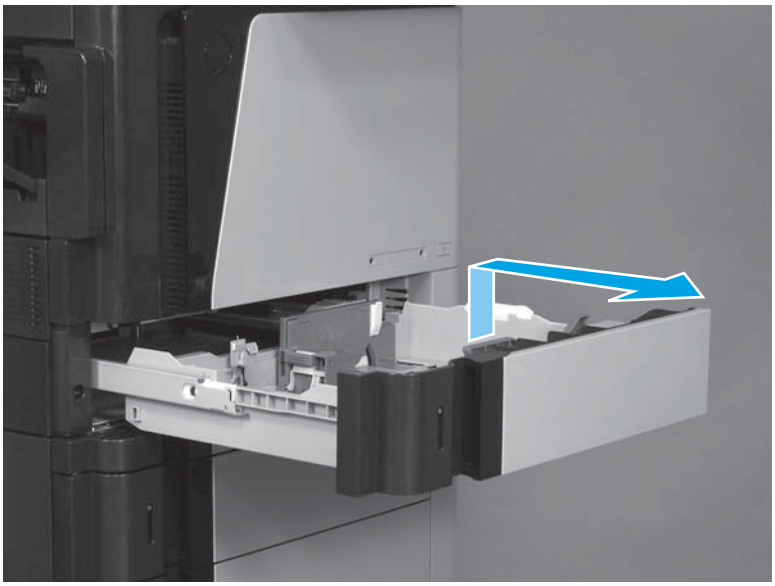
1. Pull the tray straight out of the product until it stops.

Figure 1-442 Open the tray



2. Carefully lift up the tray to release it, and then remove the tray.

Figure 1-443 Remove the tray



Side-rear cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter
- Step 2: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox
- Step 3: Remove the duplex accessory
- Step 4: Remove the side-rear cover
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement side-rear cover
- Step 6: Install the side-rear cover
- Step 7: Install the duplex accessory
- Step 8: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox
- Step 9: Install the formatter
- Step 10: Test the installation
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the side-rear cover for the HP LaserJet Enterprise M630.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct assembly part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the assembly.

Side-rear cover part number	
RC4-5716-000CN	Side-rear cover

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the formatter

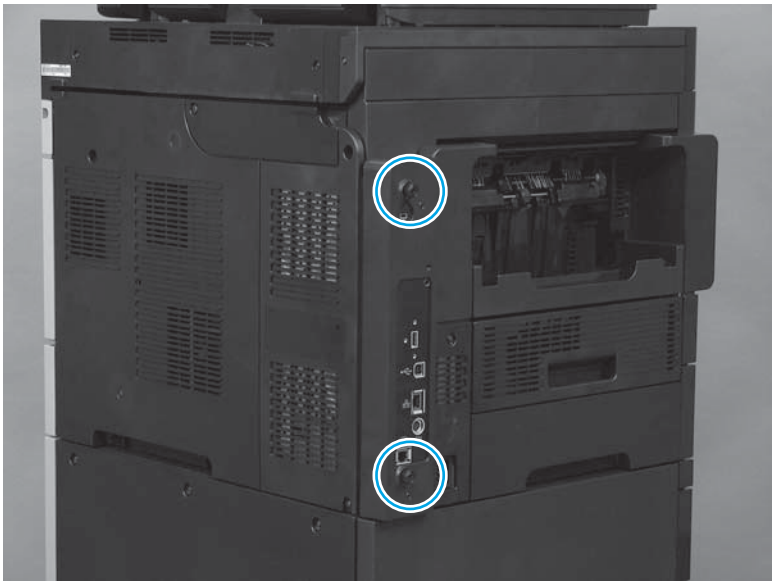
1. Do the following steps:
   a. Turn off the product.
   b. Disconnect the power cable.

   WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

   c. Disconnect all cables and accessories attached to the formatter.

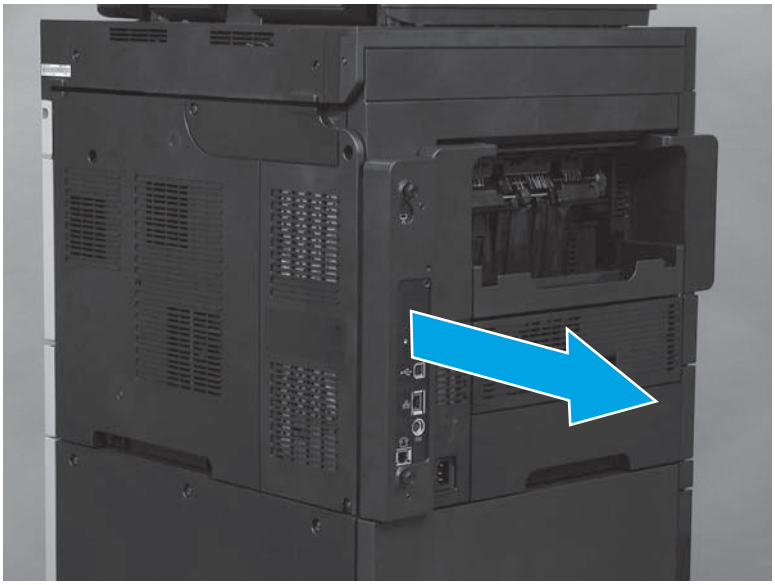
2. Loosen the two thumbscrews on the formatter.

Figure 1-444 Remove the formatter



3. Slide the formatter straight out of the product to remove it.

Figure 1-445 Remove the formatter

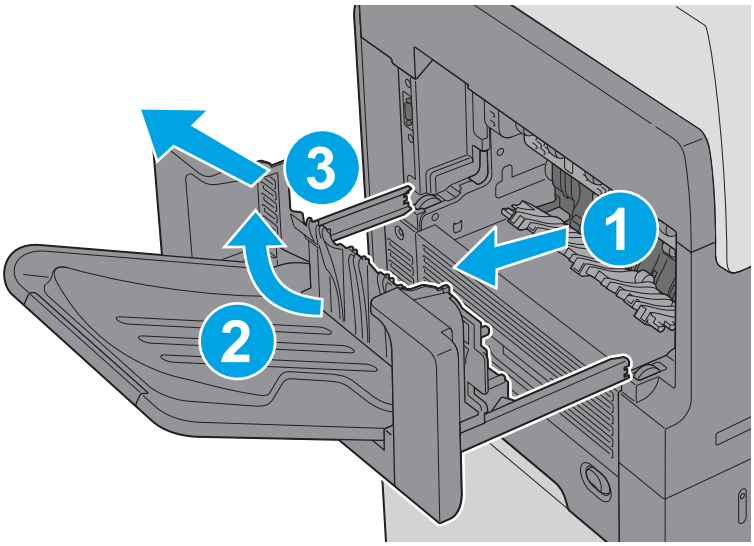


Step 2: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

▲ Do one of the following steps:

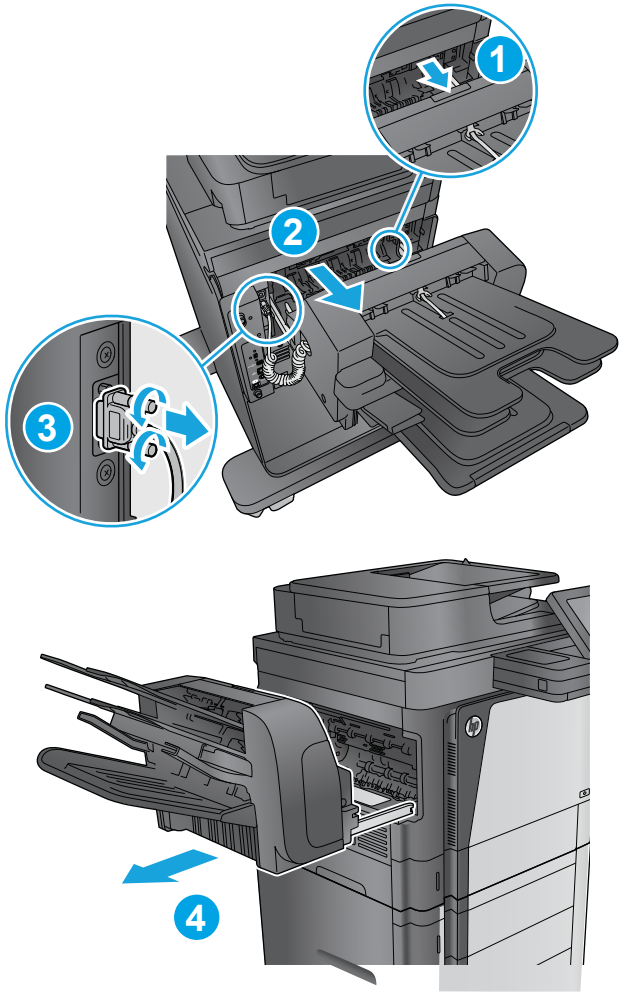
a. **M630dn and M630f**: Slide the bin base away from the product (callout 1) until it stops, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-446 Remove the output bin



b. **M630z**: Press the latch (callout 1), pull the stapling mailbox away from the product (callout 2), disconnect the interface cable (callout 3), and then remove the stapling mailbox (callout 4).

Figure 1-447 Remove the stapling mailbox

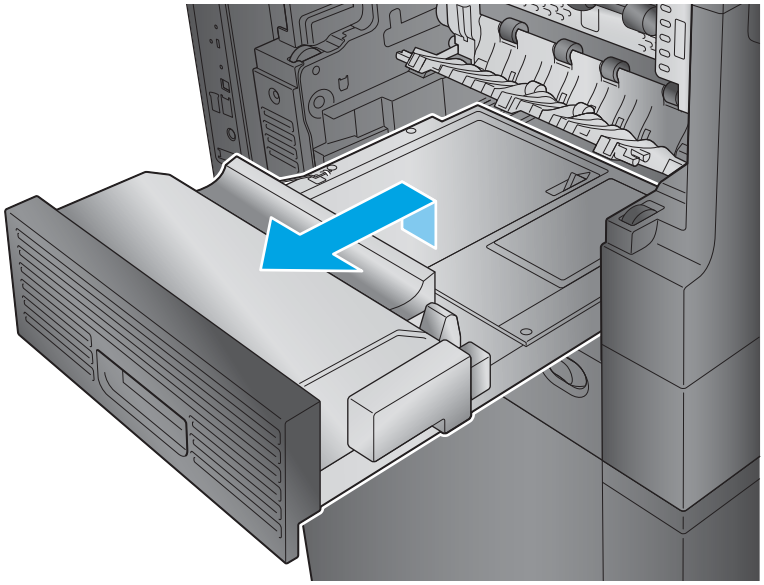


Step 3: Remove the duplex accessory

▲ Slide the duplex assembly away from the product, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails, and then remove it.

NOTE: Locate the duplexer at the left-hand side of the product.

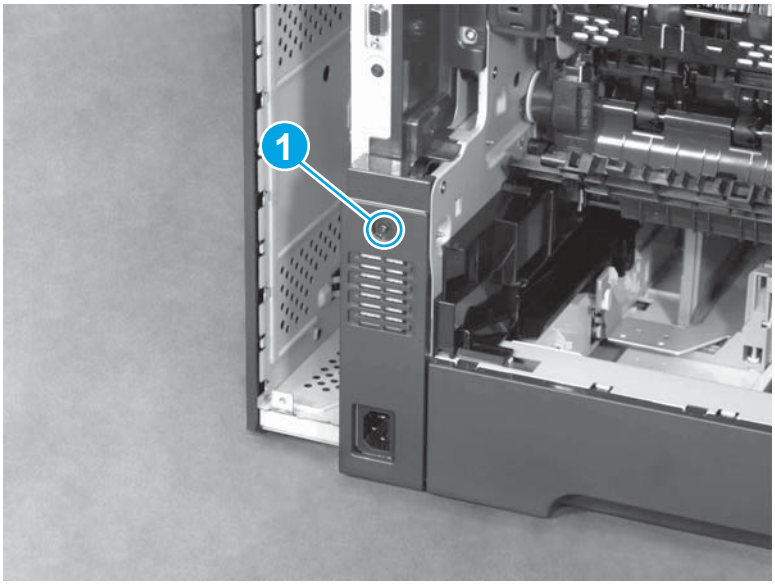
Figure 1-448 Remove the duplex accessory



Step 4: Remove the side-rear cover

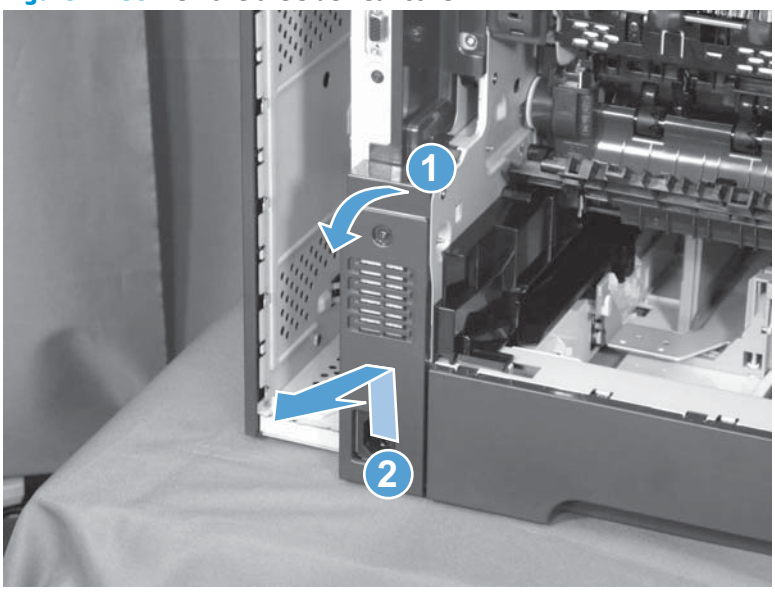
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-449 Remove one screw



2. Rotate the top of the cover away from the product (callout 1), slightly raise the cover to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-450 Remove the side-rear cover



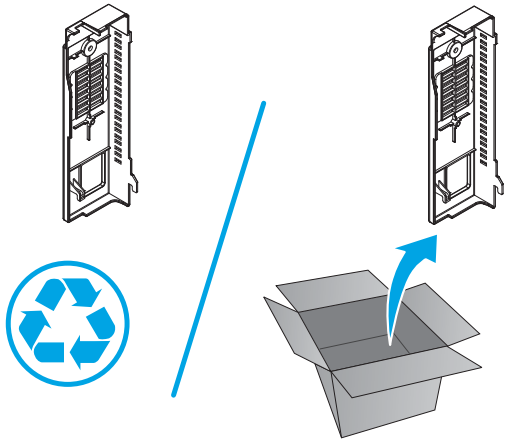
Step 5: Unpack the replacement side-rear cover

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the assembly.

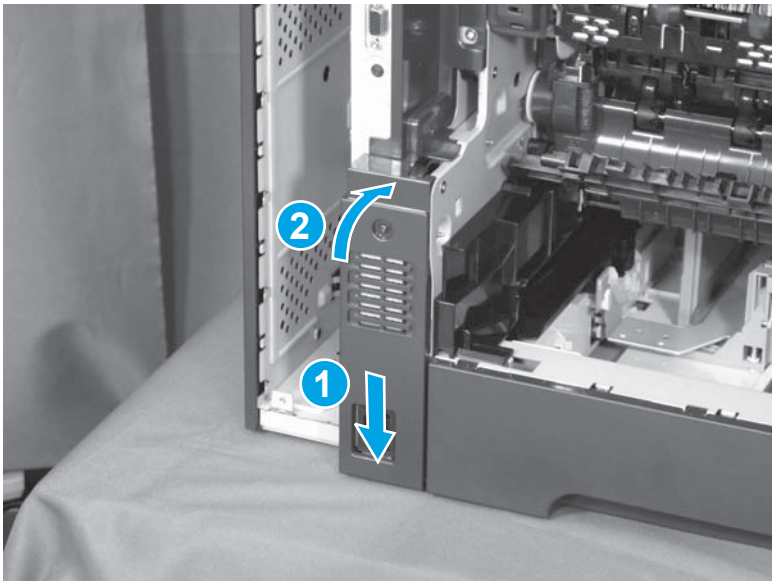
Figure 1-451 Recycle and unpack



Step 6: Install the side-rear cover

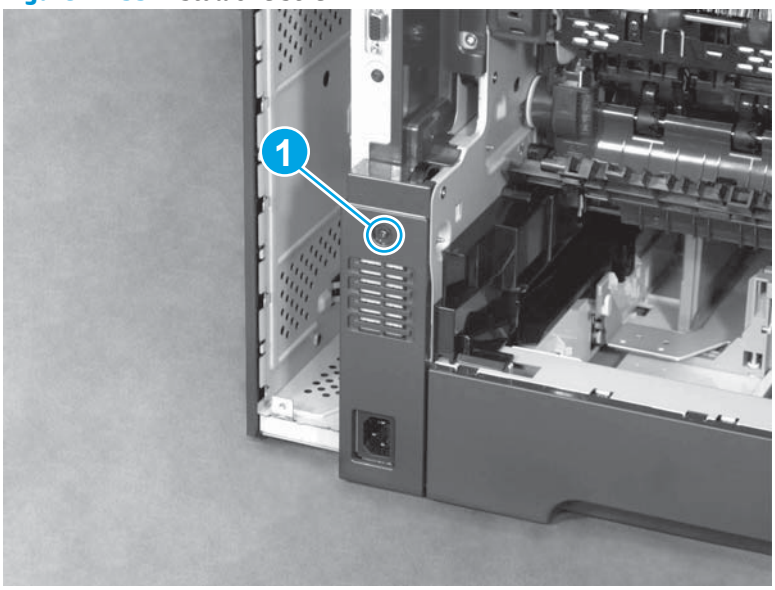
1. Position the bottom of the cover on the product (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the cover toward the product (callout 2) to install it.

Figure 1-452 Install the side-rear cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-453 Install one screw



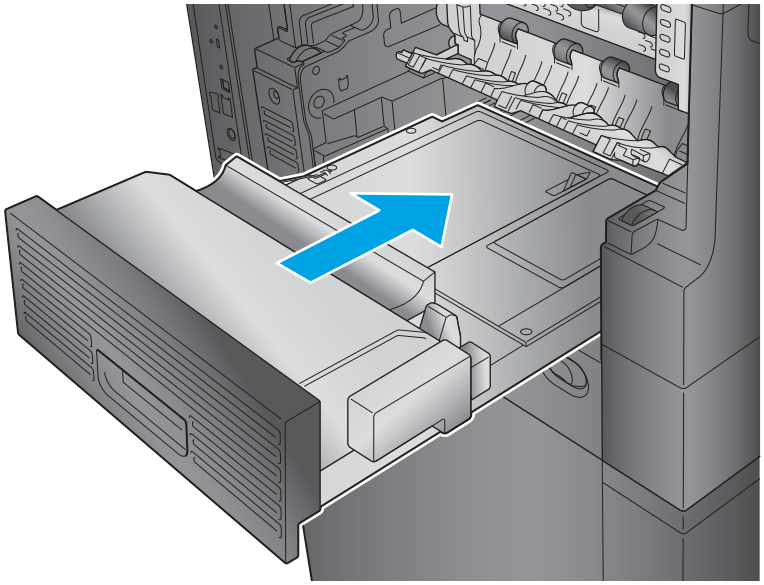
Step 7: Install the duplex accessory

▲ Position the duplex assembly on the product at a slight angle, engage the slide rails, and then slide the duplex assembly all of the way into the product to install it.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that the duplex accessory is full installed.

NOTE: After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed duplex accessory.

Figure 1-454 Install the duplex accessory

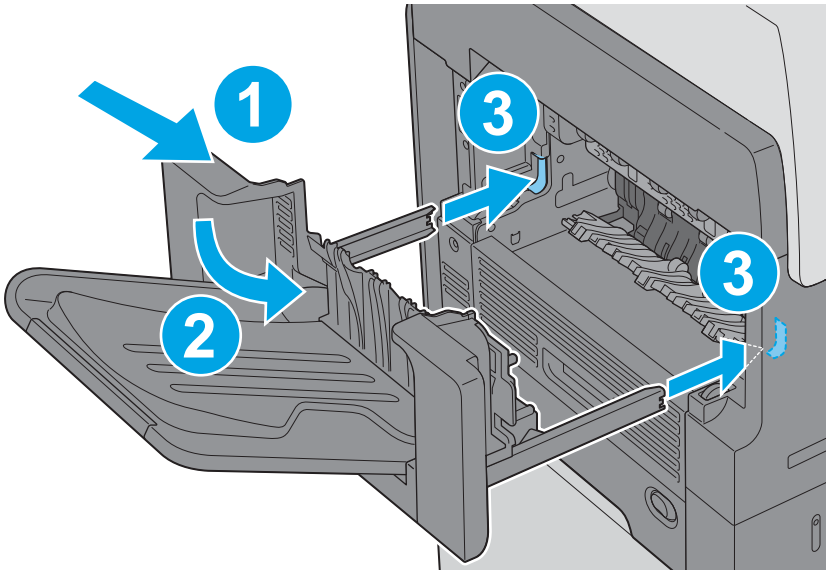


Step 8: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

▲ Do one of the following:

a. **M630dn and M630f**: Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), and then slide the bin base into the product.

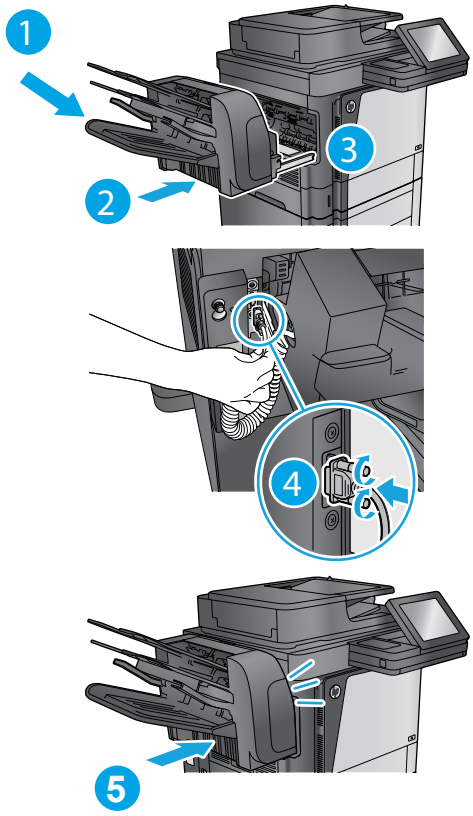
Figure 1-455 Install the output bin



b. **M630z**: Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), connect the interface cable (callout 4). and then slide the stapling mailbox (callout 5) into the product.

TIP: After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed stapling mailbox.

Figure 1-456 Install the stapling mailbox

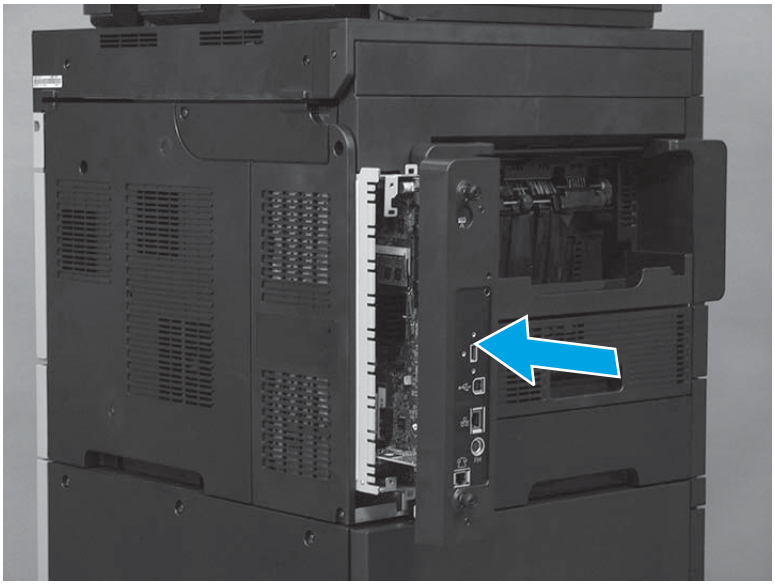


Step 9: Install the formatter

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

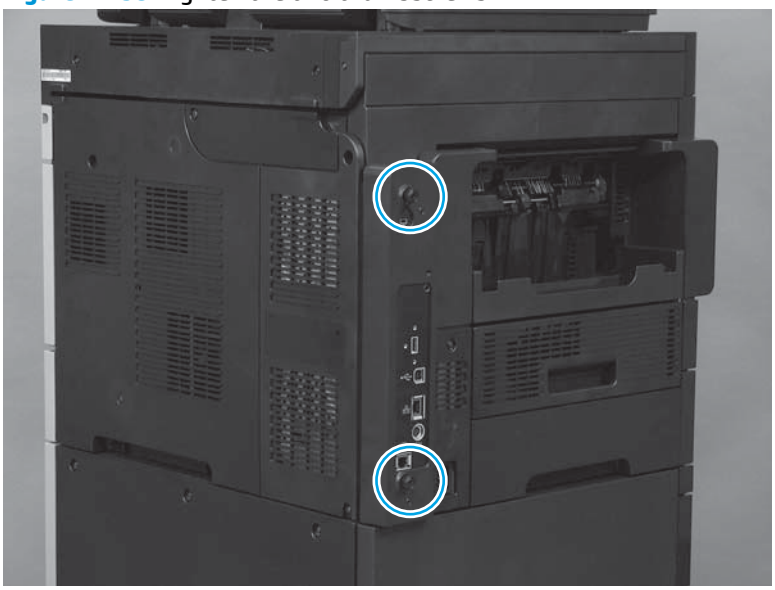
1. Align the formatter with the guides at the top and bottom of the formatter cage and push the formatter into the slot until it is fully seated.

Figure 1-457 Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot



2. Finger-tighten the two thumbscrews.

Figure 1-458 Tighten the two thumbscrews



Step 10: Test the installation

1. Do the following steps:
   a. Reconnect all cables to the formatter.
   b. Plug in the power cord.
2. Turn on the product.

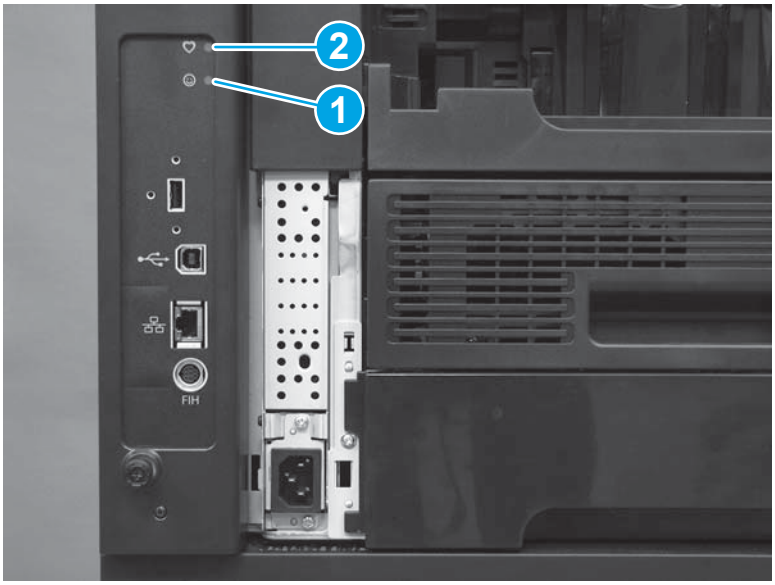
TIP: If the product does not initialize when the power is turned on, make sure that the memory DIMM is correctly installed.

To verify that the formatter is correctly installed, observe the following functions of the LEDs on the formatter:

- The heartbeat LED (callout 1) illuminates if the formatter is functioning correctly.
  - While the product is initializing, the heartbeat LED illuminates solid red for about one second, and then turns solid green for about twenty seconds.
  - After the initialization sequence is complete, the heartbeat LED blinks continuously if the printer is functioning correctly.
- The connectivity LED (callout 2) indicates that the formatter is completely seated. It illuminates green when the product power is turned on and stays green if the formatter is properly seated.

If the LEDs do not correctly function, turn the product power off, remove the formatter, and then reinstall it (make sure that the formatter is fully seated before tightening the thumbscrews).

Figure 1-459 Verify that the formatter is functioning



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Front-left cover and logo panel assembly

Remove the following assemblies:

- Output bin and bin base assembly. See Output bin and bin base assembly on page 68.
- Front cover. See Front cover on page 274.

NOTE: If Tray 2 was not previously removed, remove it now.

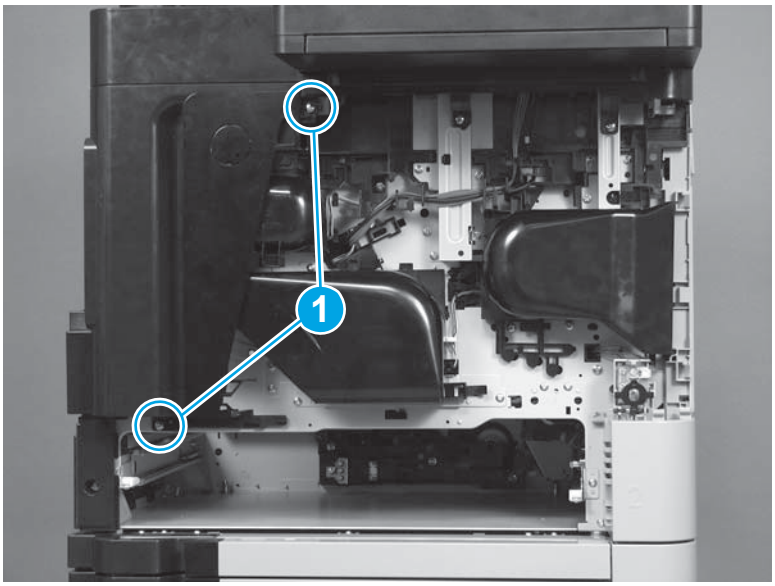
Remove the front-left cover and logo panel assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

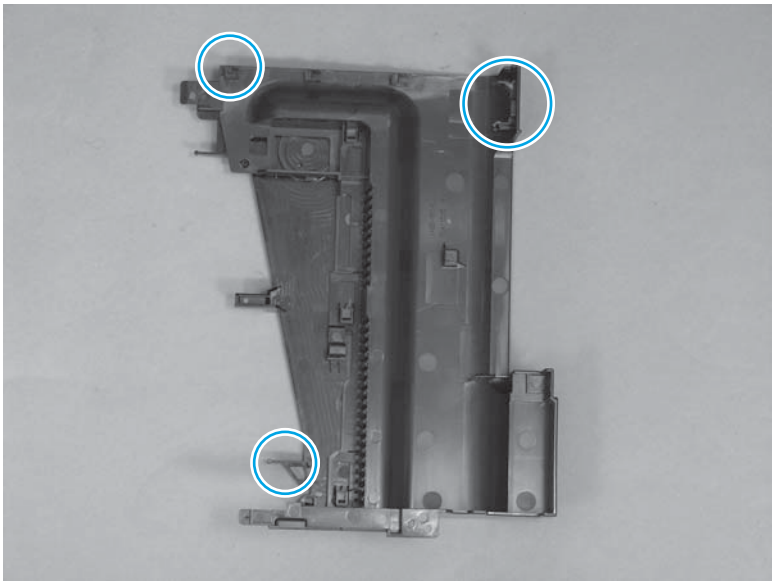
NOTE: The upper screw is a M4 screw. The lower screw is a M3 screw.

Figure 1-460 Remove two screws



2. Before removing the assembly, note the locations of the tabs on the backside of the assembly shown in the figure.

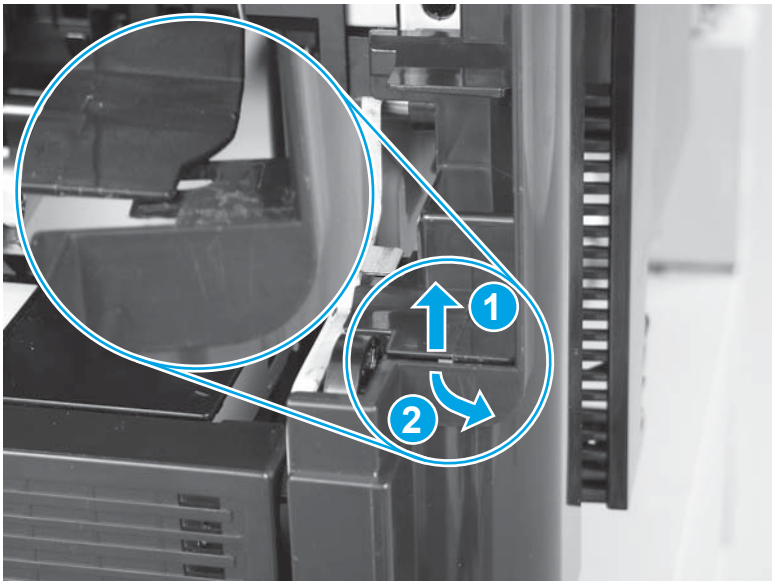
Figure 1-461 Note the locations of the tabs and pins



3. At the left side of the assembly, use a small flat blade screwdriver to release one tab (callout 1), and then flex the bottom of the assembly away from the product (callout 2).

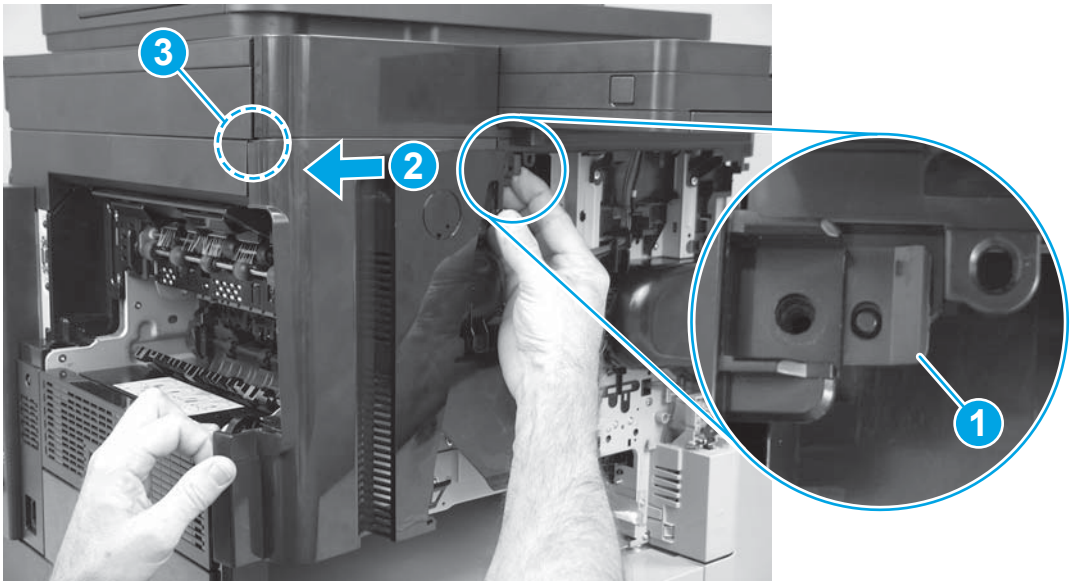
NOTE: The assembly is not embossed to show the location of the tab.

Figure 1-462 Release one tab



4. Keep the lower-left corner of the assembly released, release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the assembly to the left (callout 2) to release a second tab (callout 3).

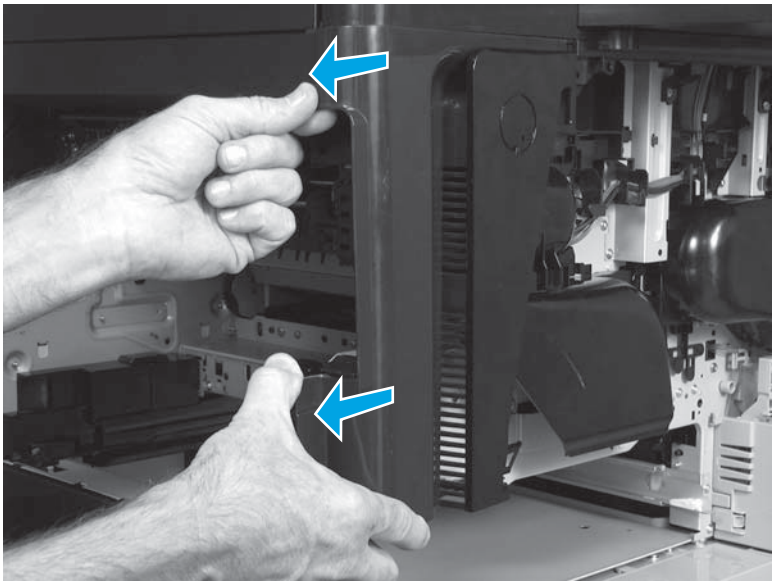
Figure 1-463 Release two tabs



5. Continue to slide the assembly to the left to release it.

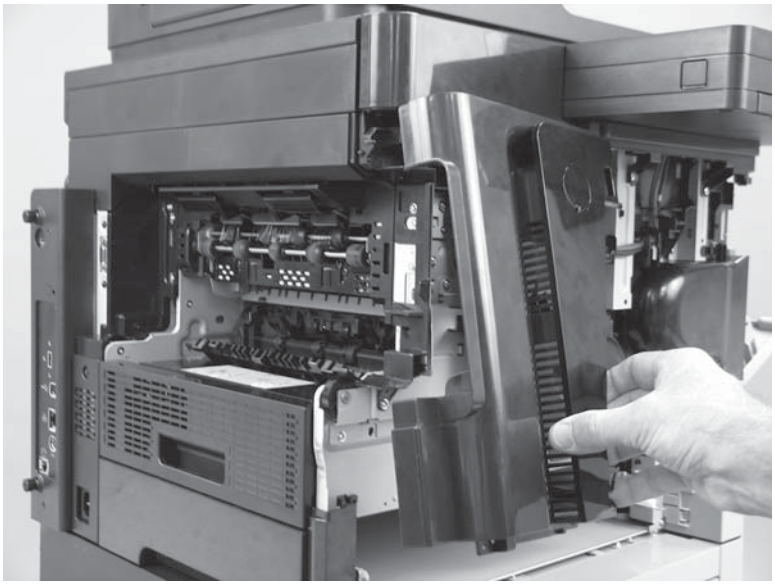
TIP: Slightly flex the bottom of assembly away from the product.

Figure 1-464 Release the assembly



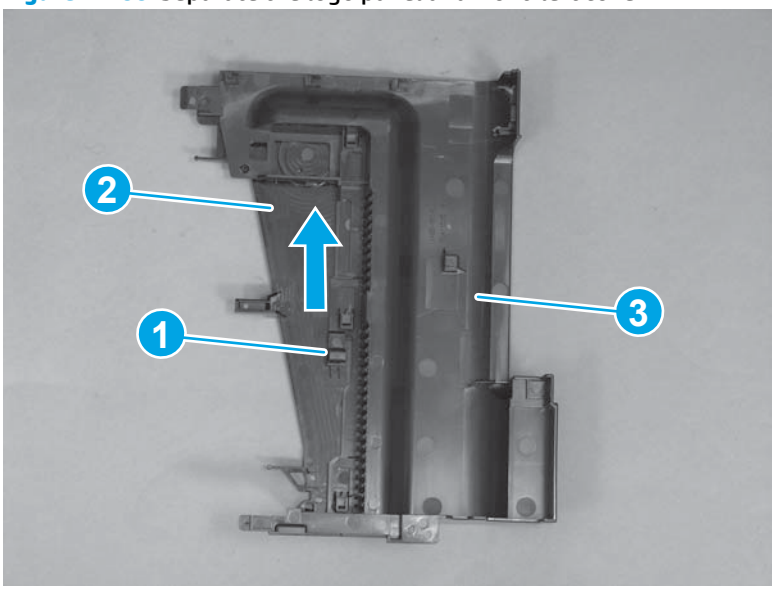
6. Remove the assembly.

Figure 1-465 Remove the assembly



7. **Optional step**: Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the logo panel (callout 2) off of the front-left cover (callout 3).

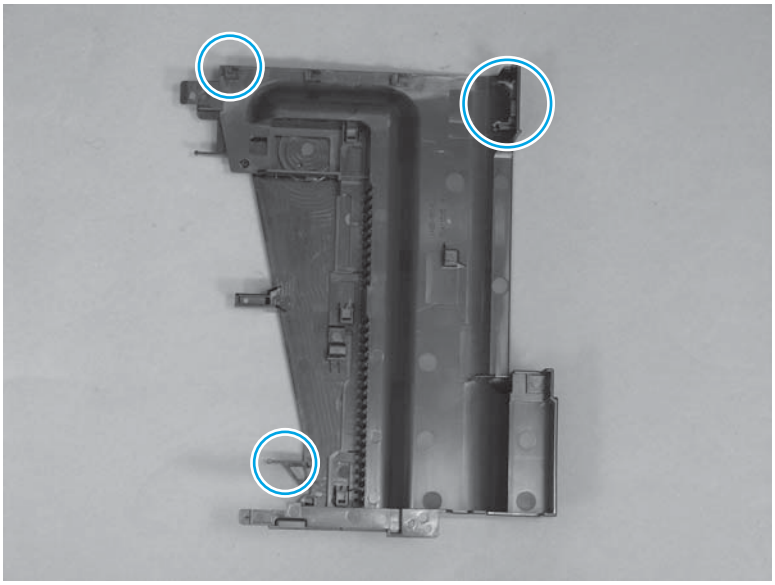
Figure 1-466 Separate the logo panel and front-left cover



Install the front-left cover and logo panel assembly

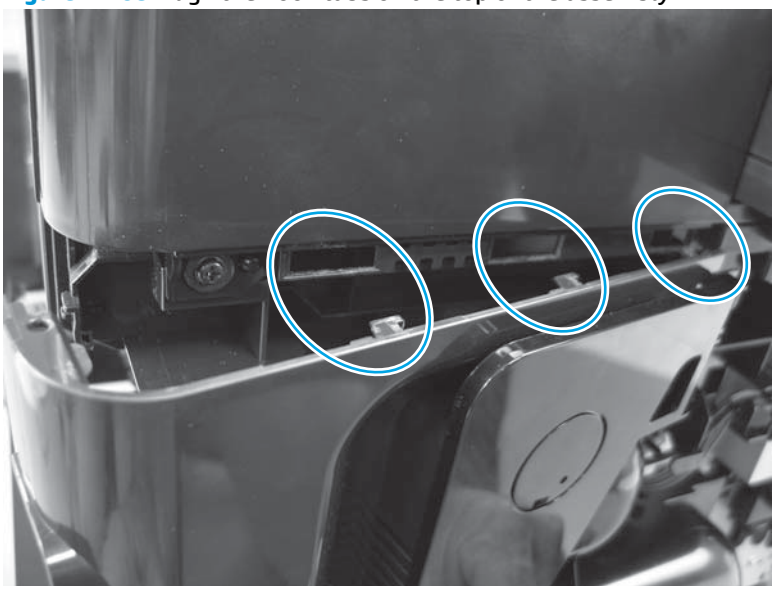
1. Before proceeding, note the locations of the tabs on the backside of the assembly shown in the figure.

Figure 1-467 Note the locations of the tabs and pins



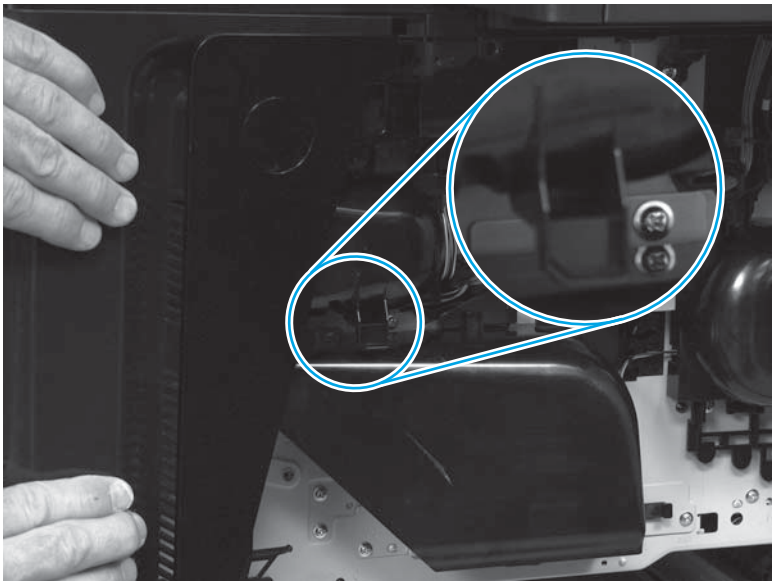
2. Align the hook tabs on the top of the assembly with the slots in the product.

Figure 1-468 Align the hook tabs on the top of the assembly



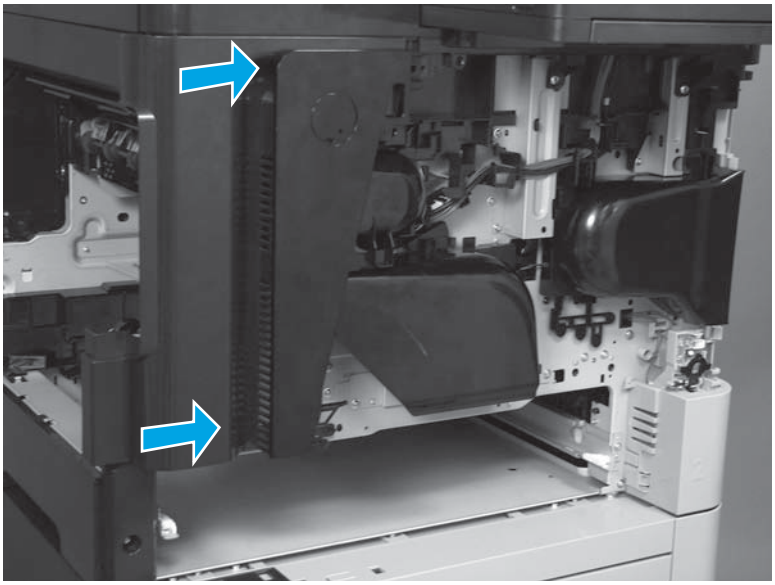
3. Position the tab on the right side of the assembly behind the fan duct.

Figure 1-469 Position the tab on the assembly behind the fan duct



4. Slide the assembly to the right to install it.

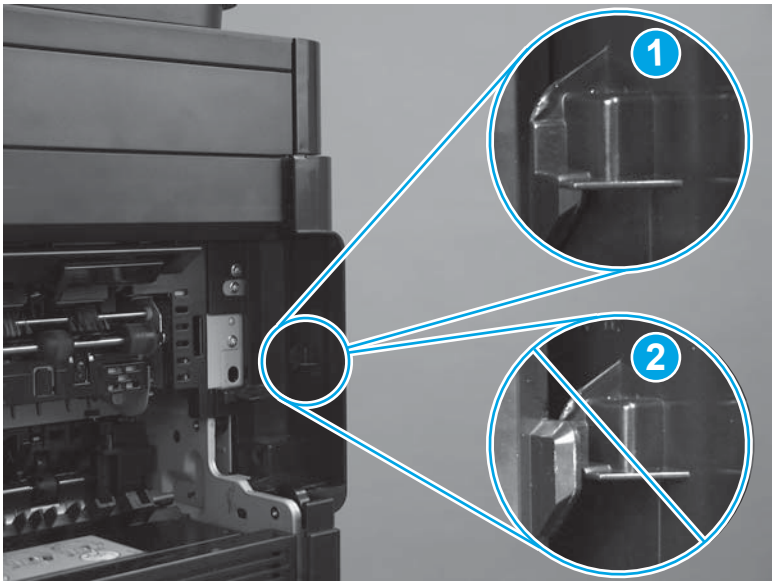
Figure 1-470 Install the assembly



5. Verify that the tab on the left side of the assembly is correctly installed.

NOTE: When the assembly is correctly installed, the left-side tab is installed over the protrusion on the product (callout 1). When the cover is incorrectly installed, the left-side tab is installed on top of the protrusion on the product (callout 2).

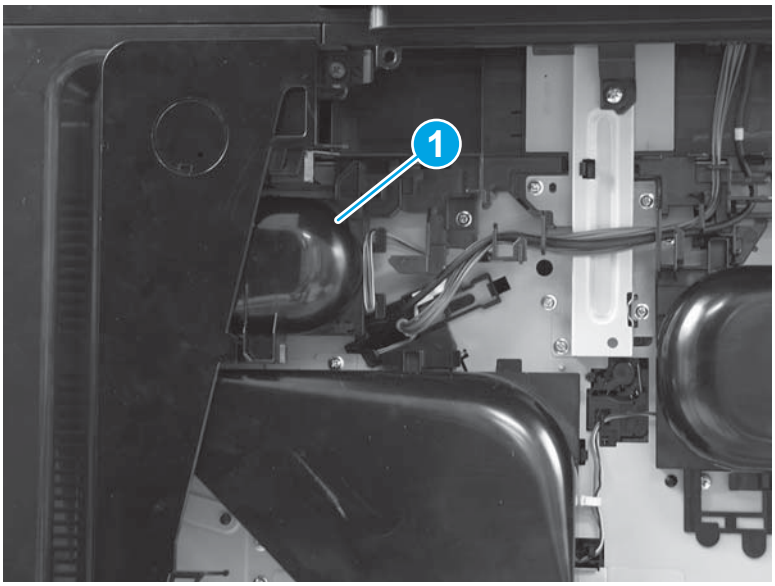
Figure 1-471 Verify that the left-side tab is correctly installed



6. Verify that the reverse assembly fan (callout 1) is correctly installed.

NOTE: The reverse assembly fan (callout 1) is easily dislodged when the front-left cover and logo panel assembly is installed.

Figure 1-472 Verify that the reverse assembly fan is correctly installed



Power-switch assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the front cover
- Step 2: Remove the power-switch assembly
- Step 3: Unpack the replacement power-switch assembly
- Step 4: Install the power-switch assembly
- Step 5: Install the front cover
- Step 6: Turn the product power on
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the power-switch assembly.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Power-switch assembly part number	
RM2-5818-000CN	Power-switch assembly

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

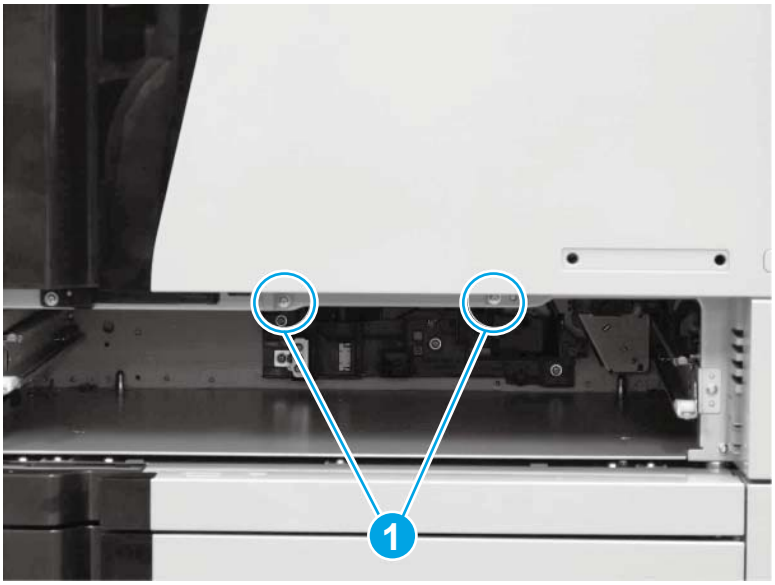
Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the front cover

1. Remove Tray 2, and then remove two screws (callout 1).

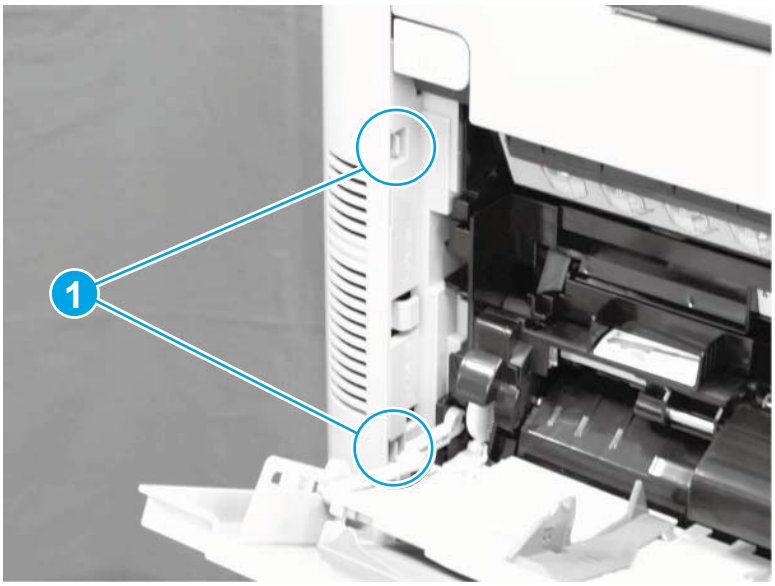
Figure 1-473 Remove two screws



2. Open Tray 1, and then push in on two tabs (callout 1) to release them.

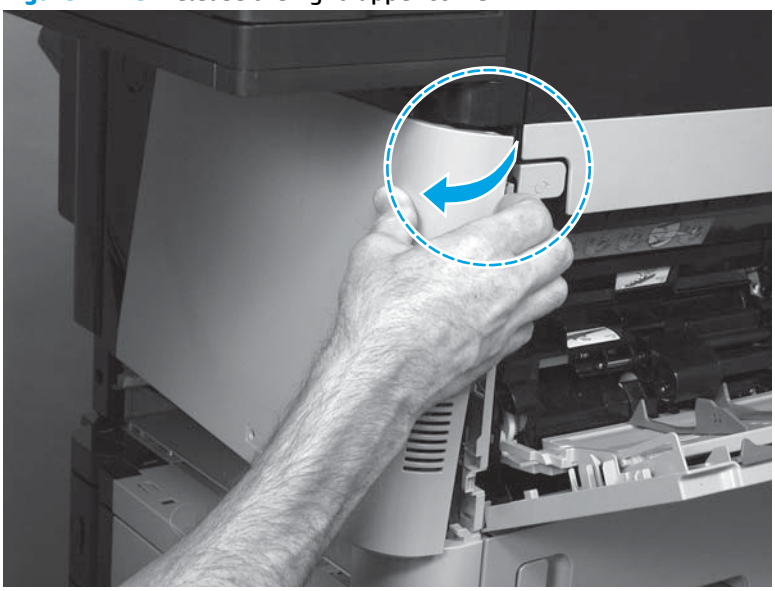
TIP: Release the lower tab first, and then release the upper tab.

Figure 1-474 Release two tabs



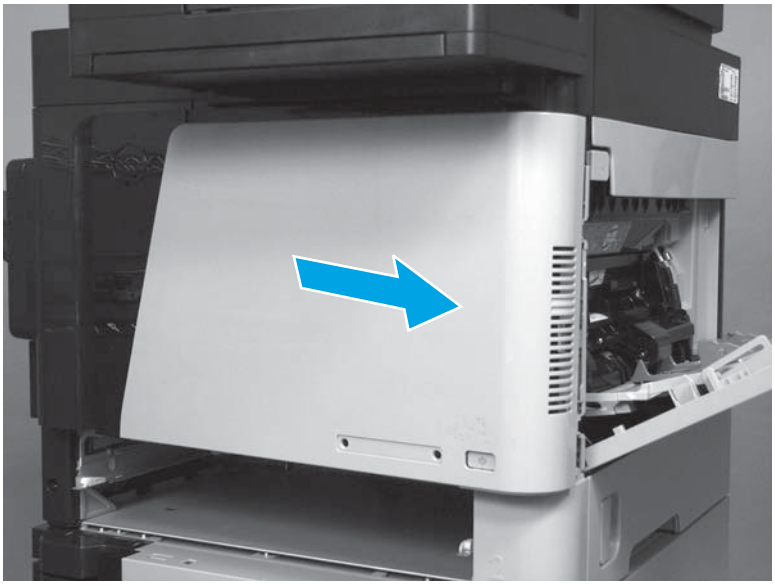
3. Carefully flex the right-upper corner of the cover away from the product to release one locking pin.

Figure 1-475 Release the right-upper corner



4. Slide the cover towards the right side of the product to release it.

Figure 1-476 Slide the cover to the right



5. Remove the cover.

Figure 1-477 Remove the cover

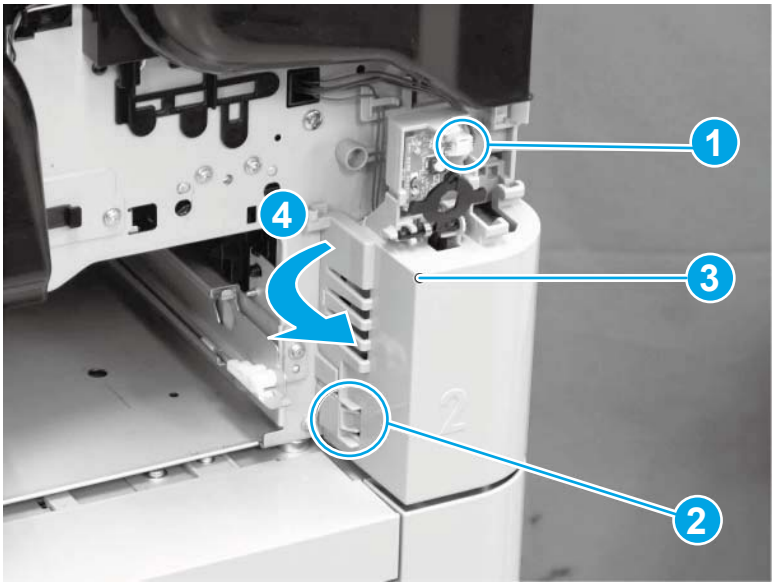


Step 2: Remove the power-switch assembly

NOTE: If Tray 2 is installed, remove it now.

▲ Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release one tab, and the rotate the assembly (callout 3) away from the product (callout 4) to remove it.

Figure 1-478 Remove the power-switch assembly

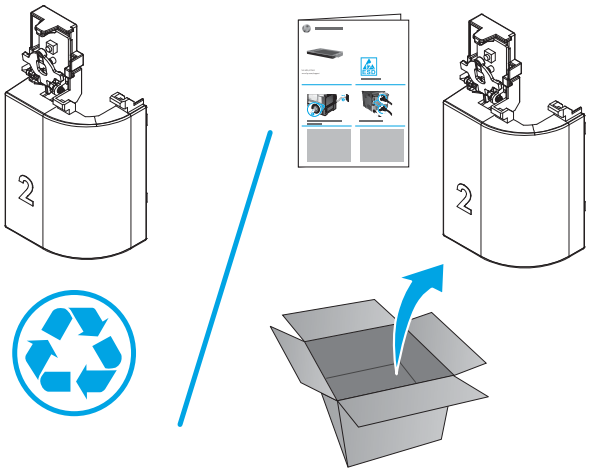


Step 3: Unpack the replacement power-switch assembly

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

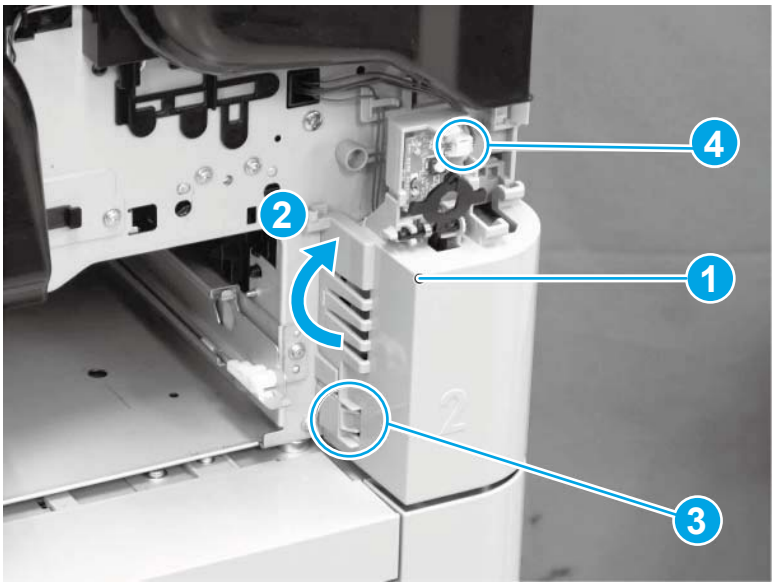


Step 4: Install the power-switch assembly

▲ Position the right corner of the assembly (callout 1) on the product, rotate the assembly toward the Tray 2 cavity (callout 2), and then engage one tab (callout 3).

Connect one connector (callout 4).

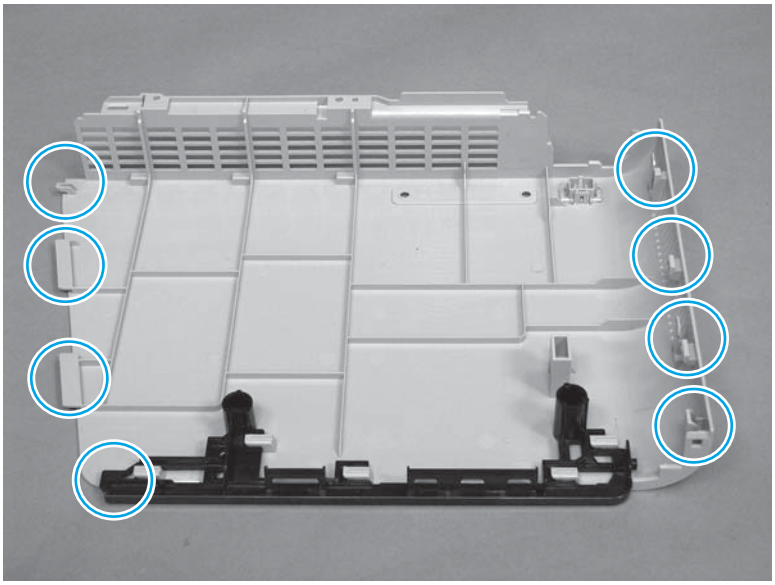
Figure 1-479 Install the power-switch assembly



Step 5: Install the front cover

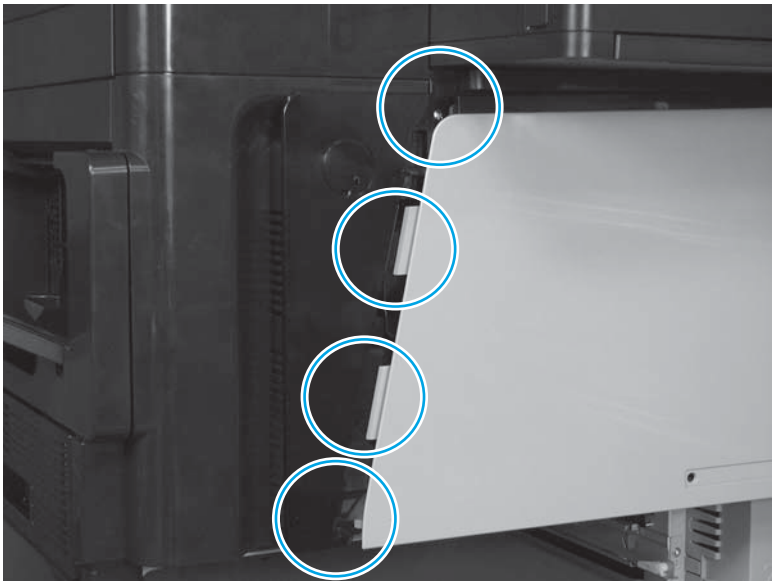
1. Take note of the location of all of the tabs on the back of the cover.

Figure 1-480 Note of the location of the tabs



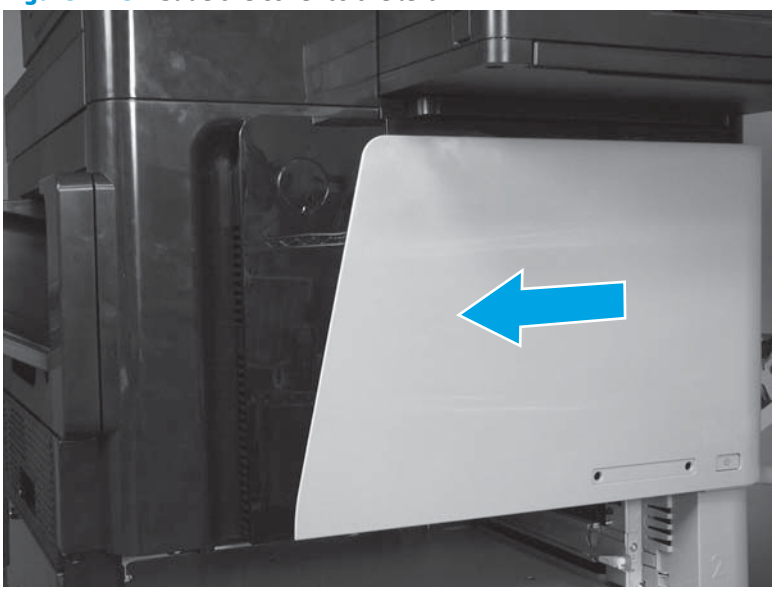
2. Align the four tabs (callout 1) on the cover with the slots (callout 2) on the logo panel.

Figure 1-481 Align four tabs



3. Slightly slide the cover toward the left side of the product to engage the tabs in the slots.

Figure 1-482 Slide the cover to the left



4. Carefully flex the right-upper corner of the cover toward from the product to engage one locking pin.

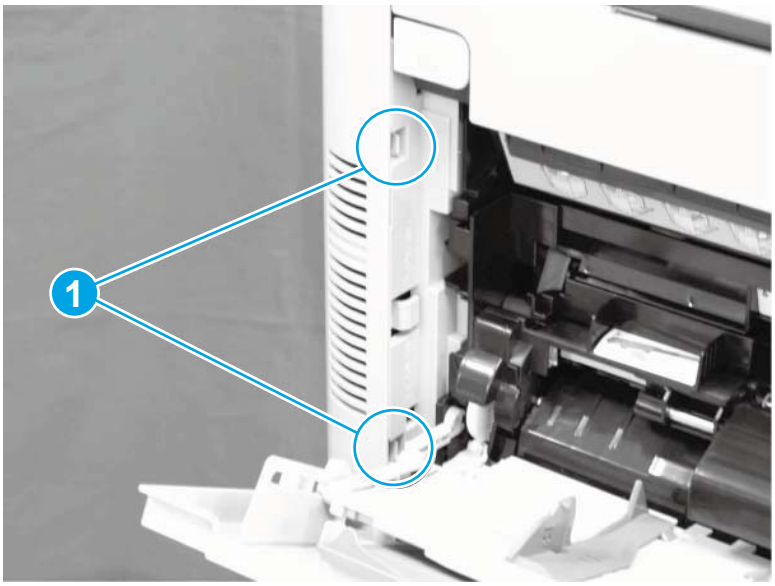
Figure 1-483 Engage one locking pin



5. Engage two tabs (callout 1).

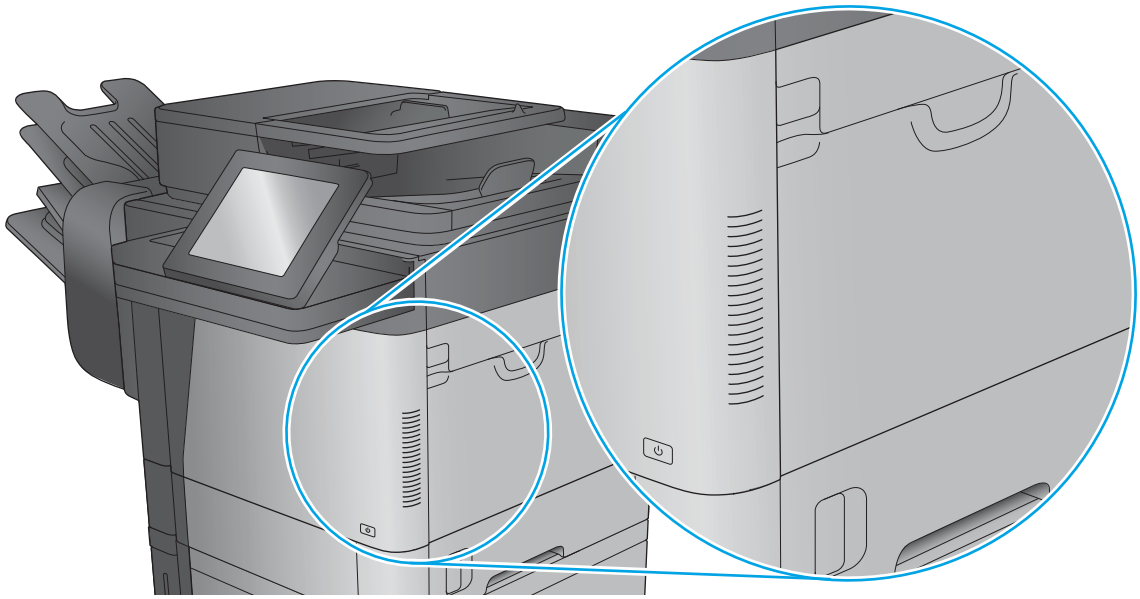
TIP: Engage the upper tab first, and then engage the lower tab.

Figure 1-484 Engage two tabs



6. Close Tray 1, and verify that the gap between the edge of the front cover and the tray is even. If it is uneven, the tabs are not correctly engaged.

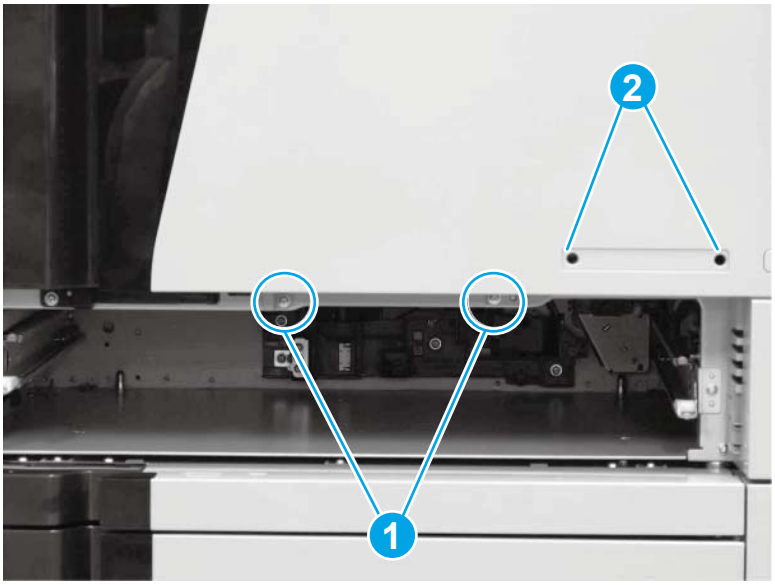
Figure 1-485 Check cover installation



7. Install two screws (callout 1), and then reinstall Tray 2.

Reinstallation tip: To install the product nameplate on the front cover, align the pins on the back side of the nameplate with the holes in the cover (callout 2), and then push in on the nameplate until it snaps in place.

Figure 1-486 Install two screws



Step 6: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Rear-right cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the rear-right cover
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement rear-right cover
- Step 3: Install the rear-right cover
- Step 4: Turn the product power on
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the rear-right cover.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Rear-right cover part number	
RL2-0999-000CN	Rear-right cover

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

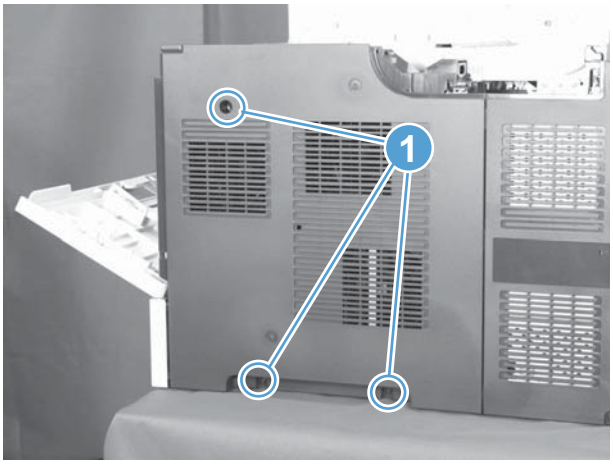
Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the rear-right cover

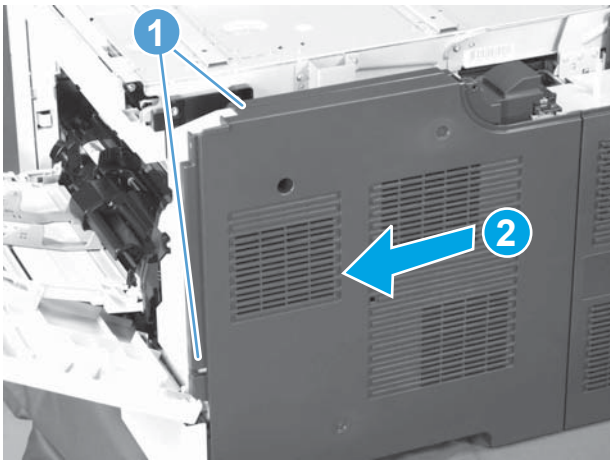
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-487 Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly seperate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-488 Remove the cover

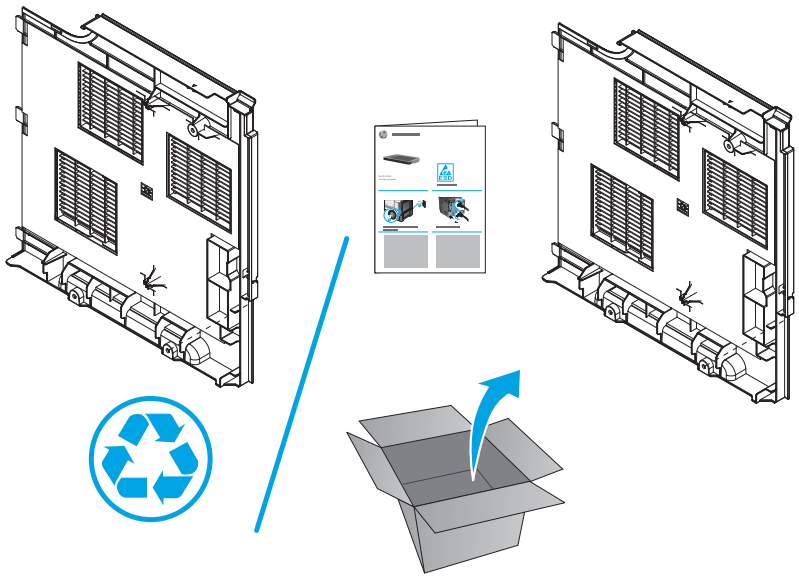


Step 2: Unpack the replacement rear-right cover

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

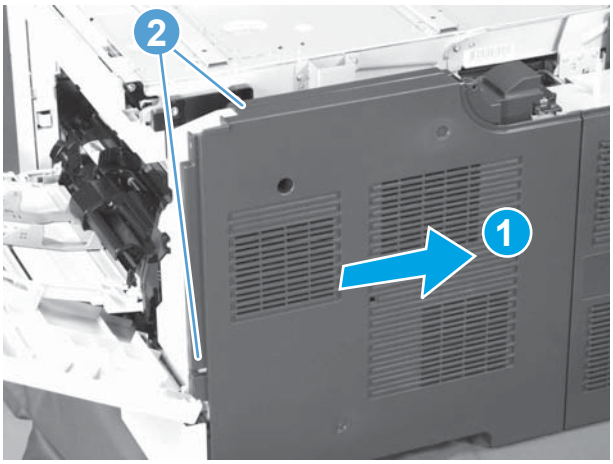
NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 3: Install the rear-right cover

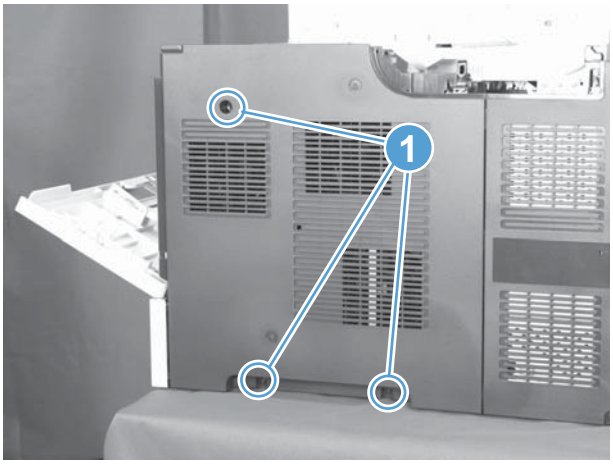
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

Figure 1-489 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

Figure 1-490 Install three screws



Step 4: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Rear-left cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover
- Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover
- Step 3: Remove the rear-left cover
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement rear-left cover
- Step 5: Install the rear-left cover
- Step 6: Install the rear-right cover
- Step 7: Install the image scanner cable cover
- Step 8: Turn the product power on
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the rear-left cover.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Rear-left cover part number	
RC4-5692-000CN	Rear-left cover

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

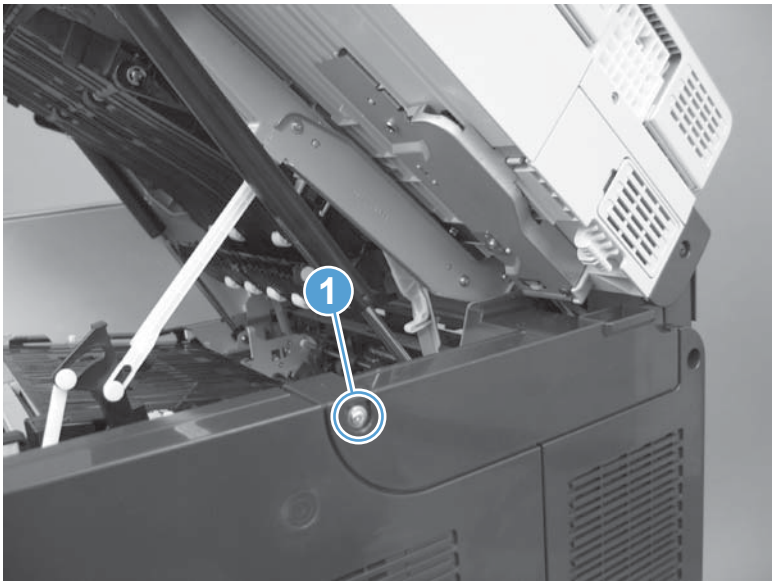
Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover

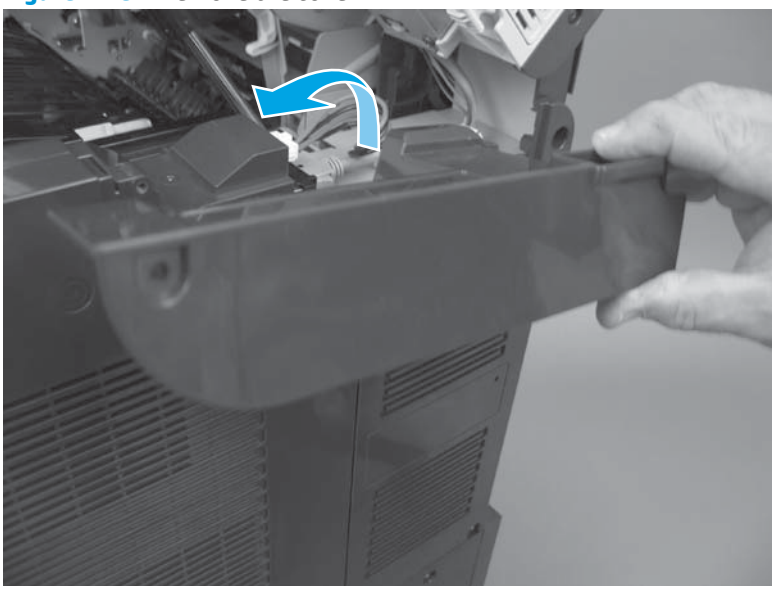
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-491 Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

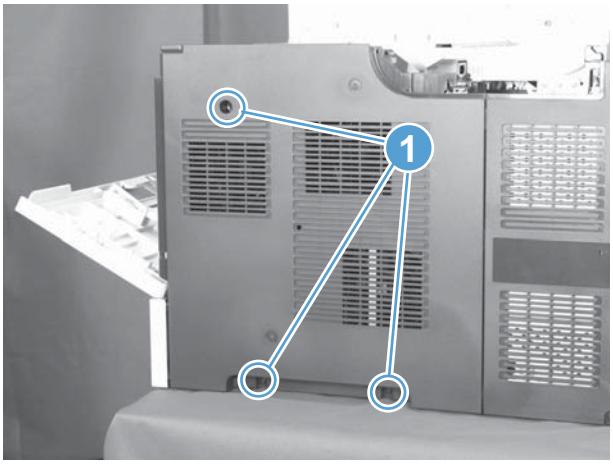
Figure 1-492 Remove the cover



Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover

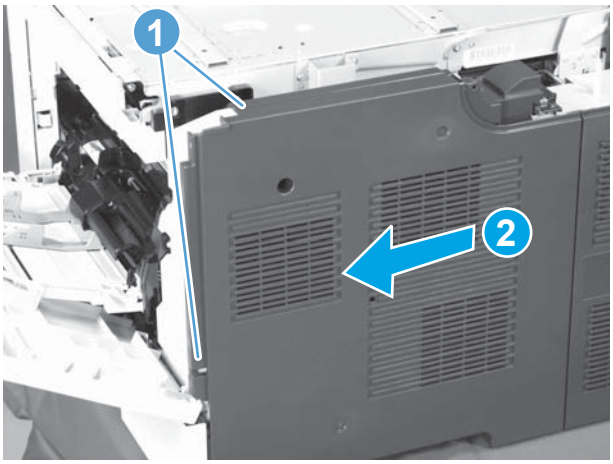
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-493 Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly seperate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

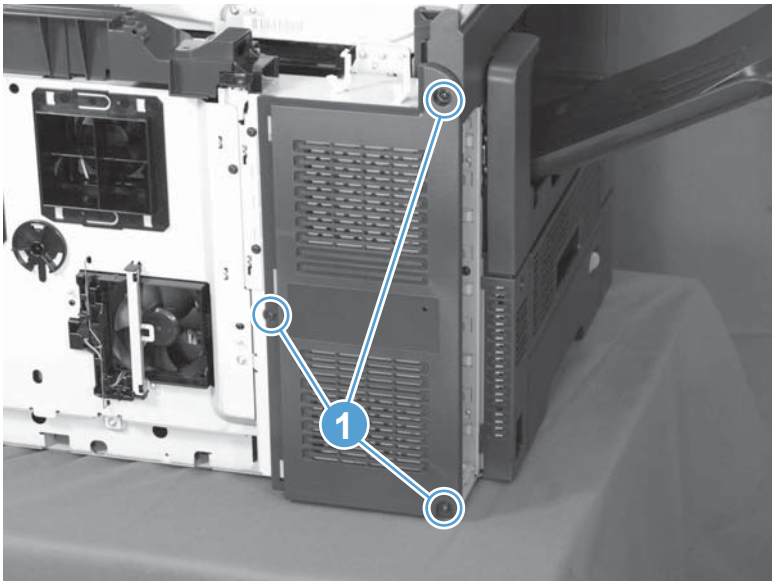
Figure 1-494 Remove the cover



Step 3: Remove the rear-left cover

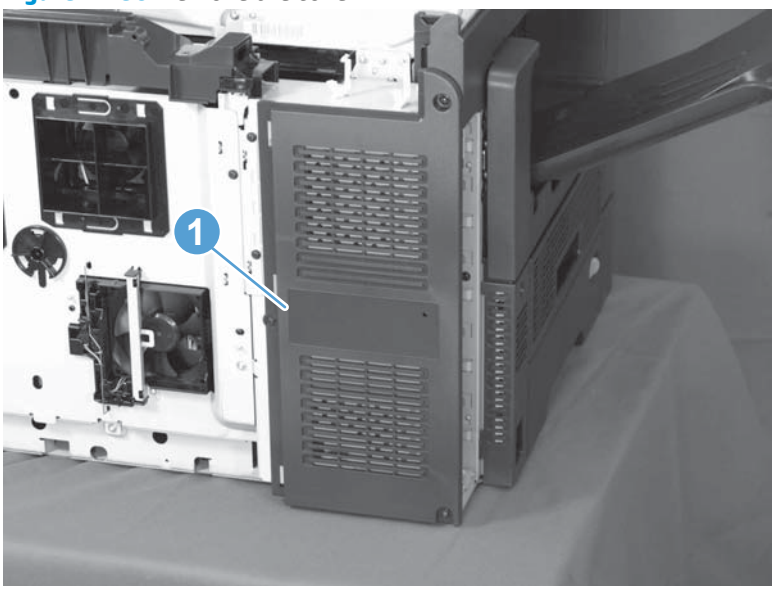
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-495 Remove three screws



2. Remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 1-496 Remove the cover

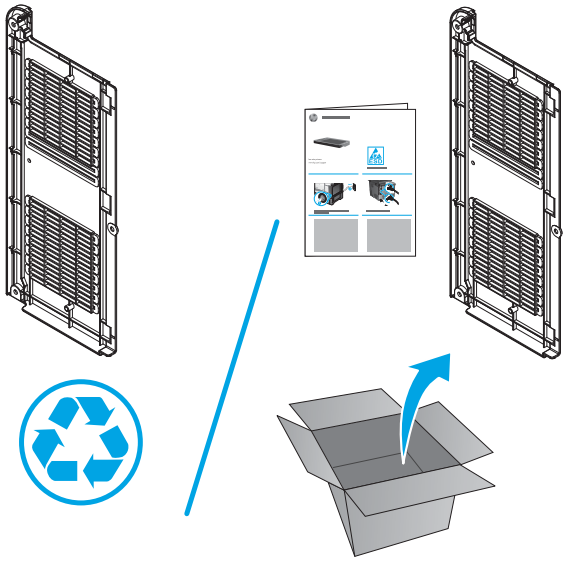


Step 4: Unpack the replacement rear-left cover

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

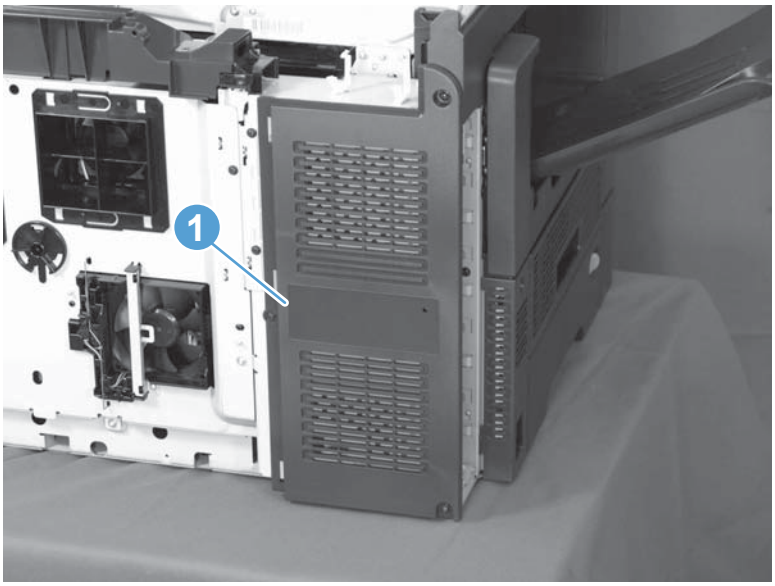
NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 5: Install the rear-left cover

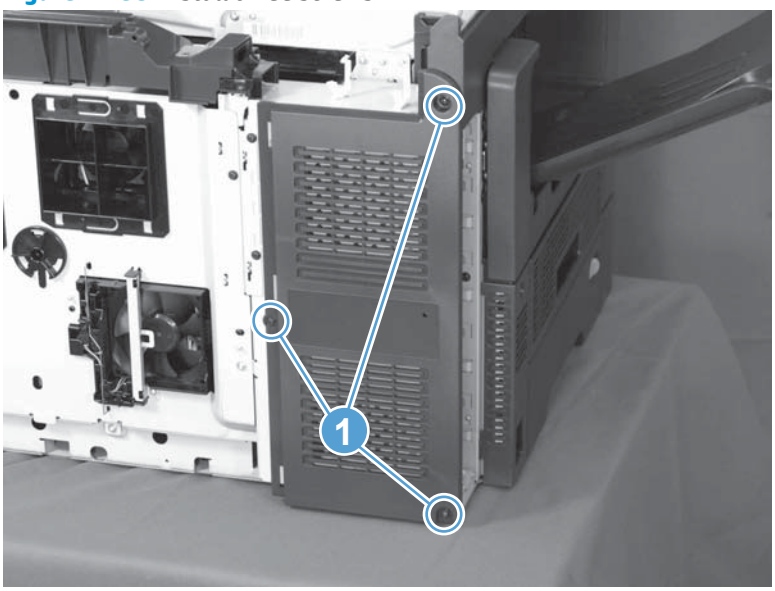
1. Position the cover (callout 1) on the product.

Figure 1-497 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1).

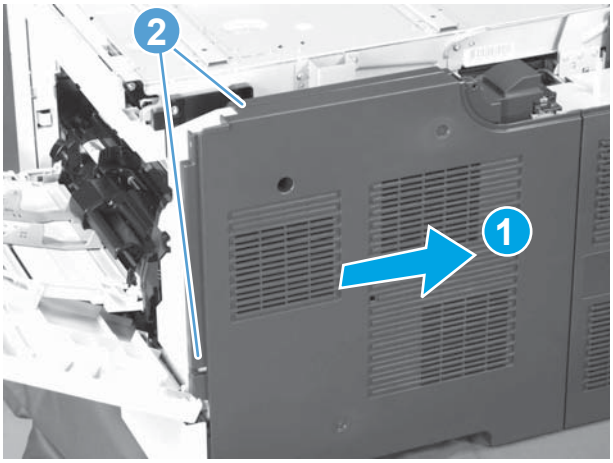
Figure 1-498 Install three screws



Step 6: Install the rear-right cover

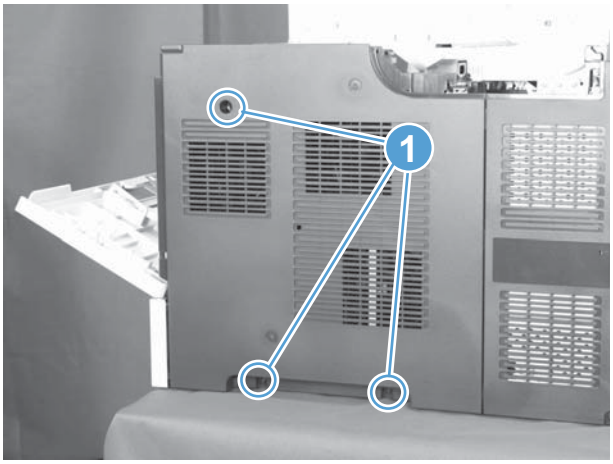
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

Figure 1-499 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

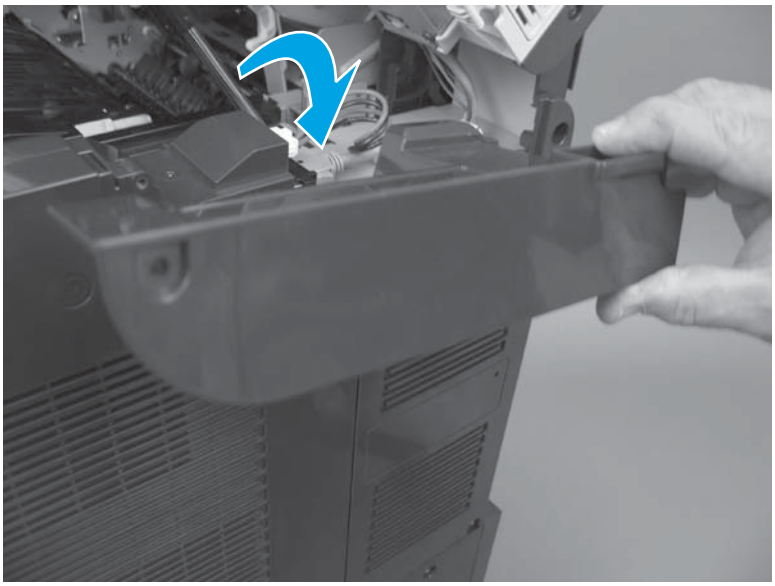
Figure 1-500 Install three screws



Step 7: Install the image scanner cable cover

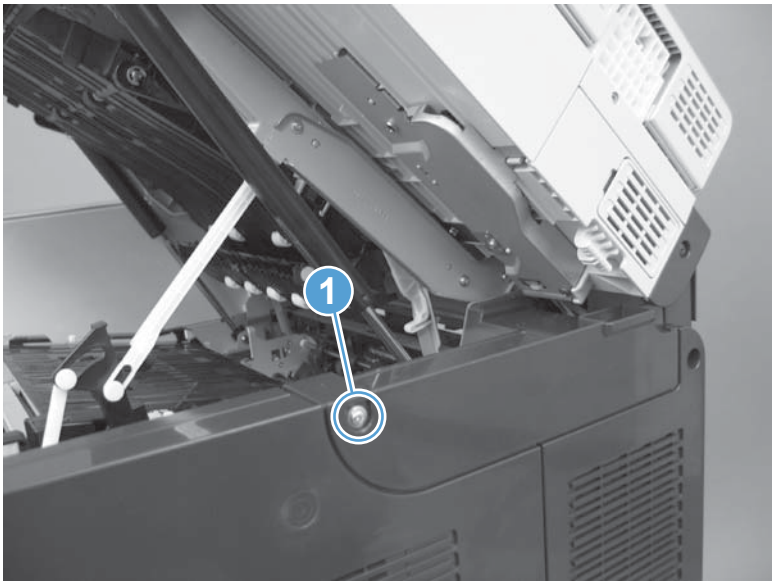
1. Install the cover on the product.

Figure 1-501 Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

Figure 1-502 Install one screw



Step 8: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Rear-top cover

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover
- Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover
- Step 3: Remove the rear-left cover
- Step 4: Remove the rear-top cover
- Step 5: Unpack the replacement rear-top cover
- Step 6: Install the rear-top cover
- Step 7: Install the rear-left cover
- Step 8: Install the rear-right cover
- Step 9: Install the image scanner cable cover
- Step 10: Turn the product power on
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the rear-top cover.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Rear-top cover part number	
RC4-1574-000CN	Rear-top cover

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

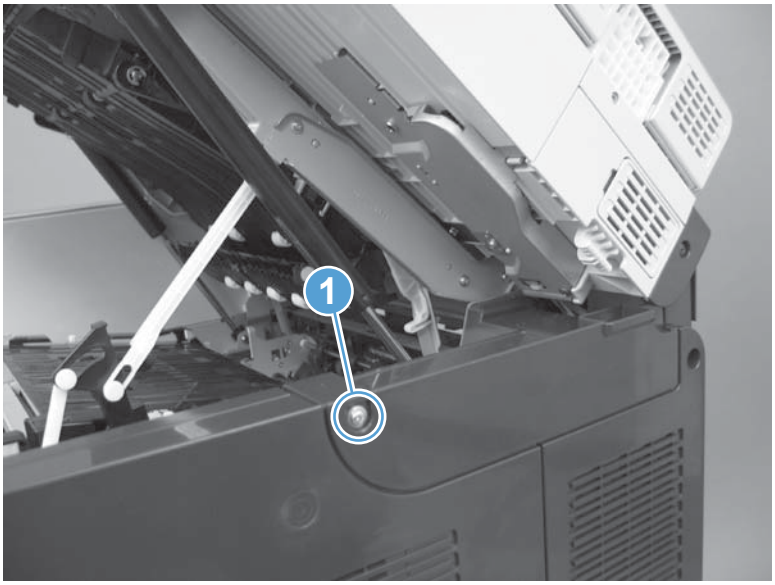
Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover

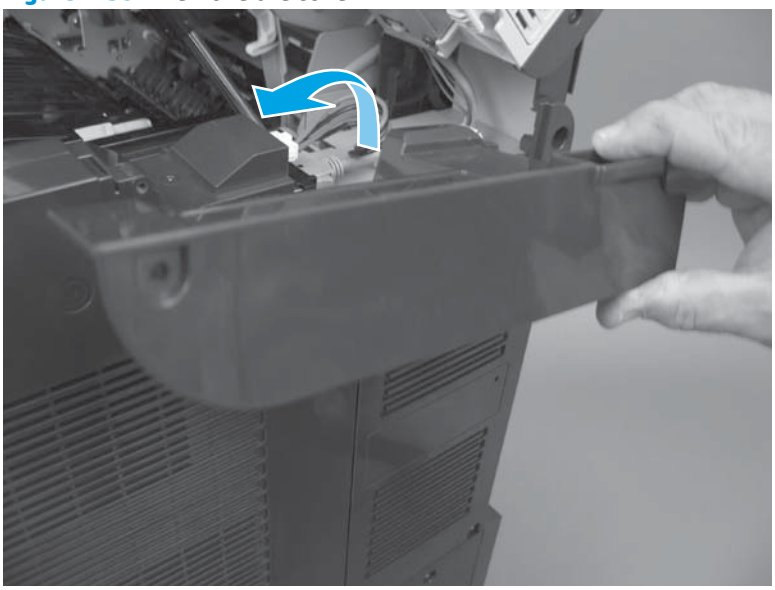
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-503 Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

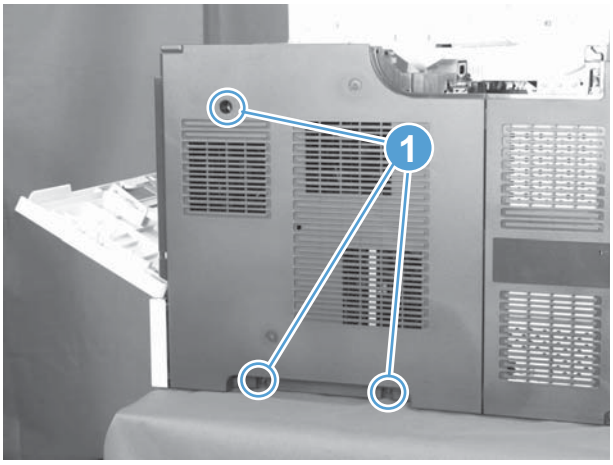
Figure 1-504 Remove the cover



Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover

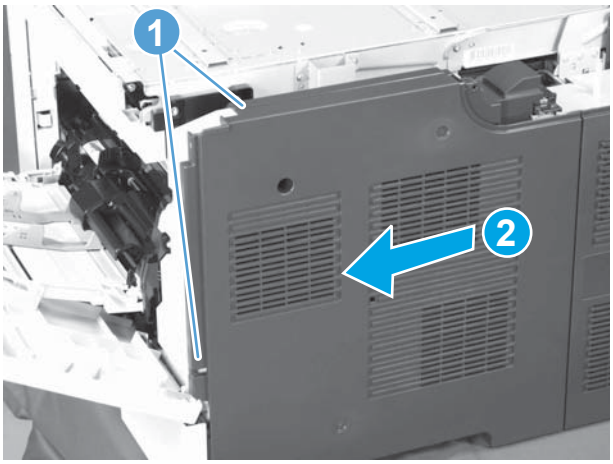
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-505 Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly seperate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

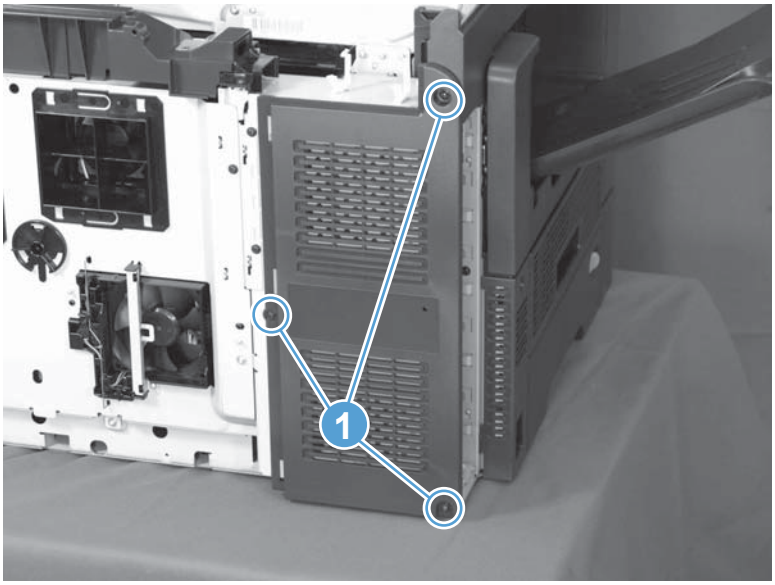
Figure 1-506 Remove the cover



Step 3: Remove the rear-left cover

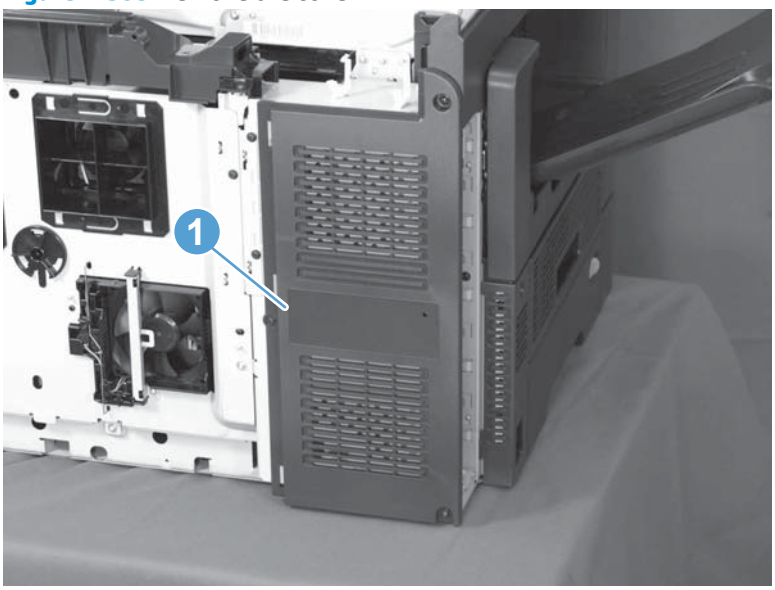
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-507 Remove three screws



2. Remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 1-508 Remove the cover

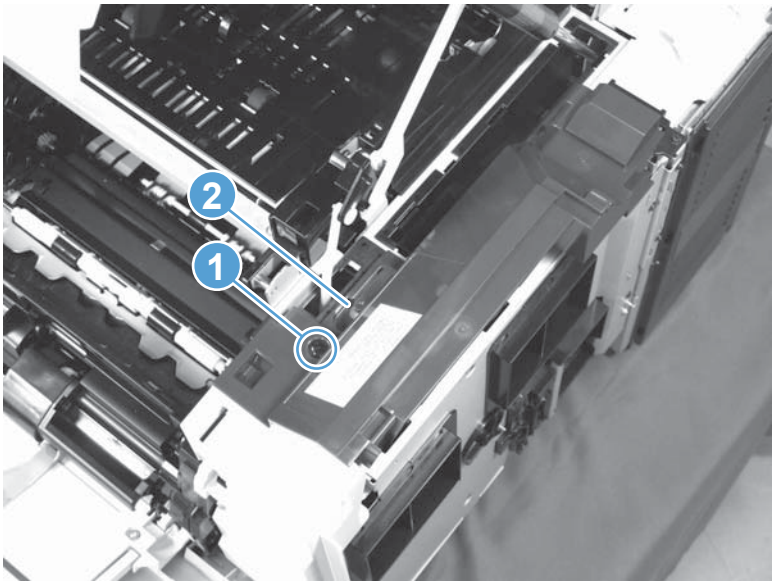


Step 4: Remove the rear-top cover

NOTE: If the top cover is closed, open it now.

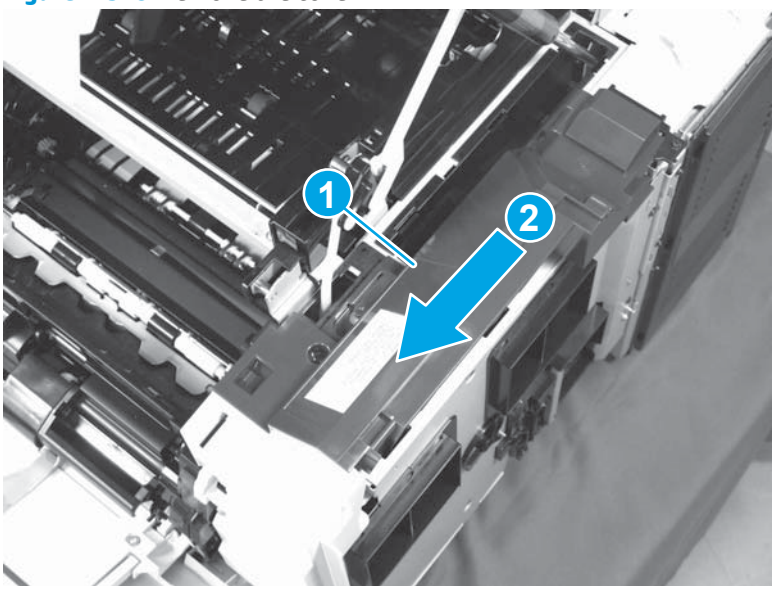
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-509 Remove one screw



2. Push the cover (callout 1) towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-510 Remove the cover

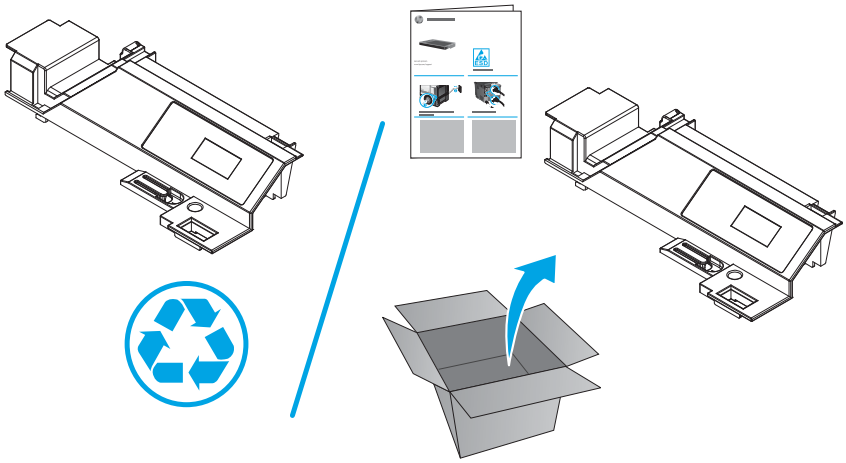


Step 5: Unpack the replacement rear-top cover

Unpack the replacement rear-top assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

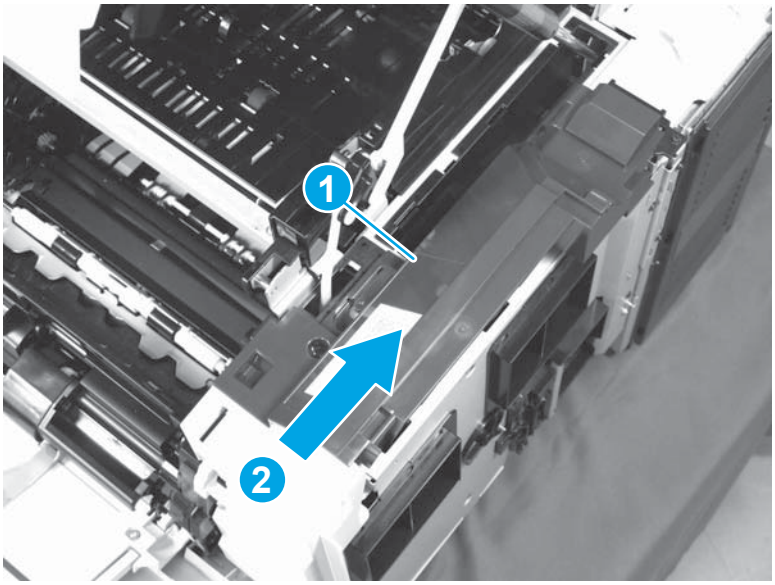
NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 6: Install the rear-top cover

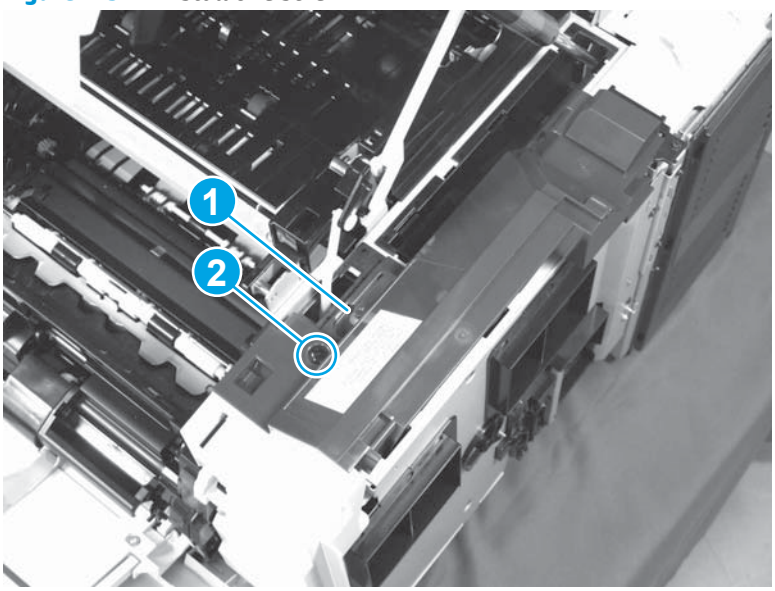
1. Position the cover on the product, Push the cover (callout 1) away Tray 1 to install it (callout 2).

Figure 1-511 Install the cover



2. Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged, and then install one screw (callout 2).

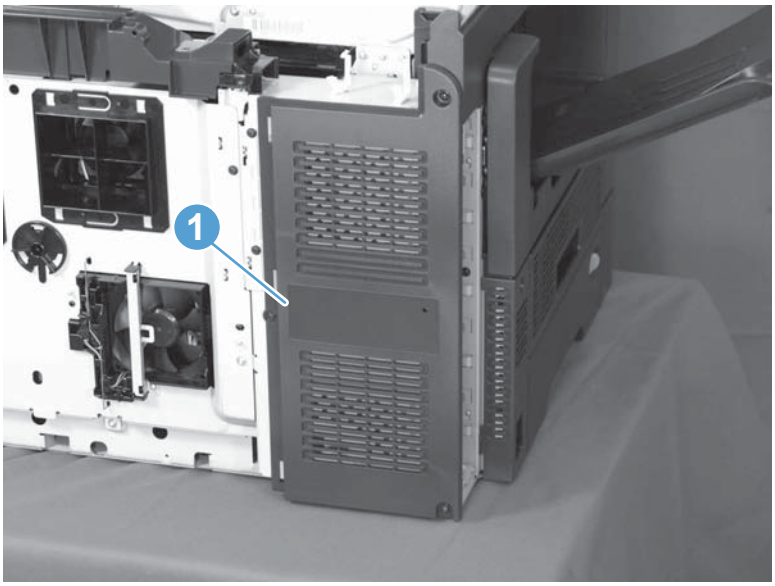
Figure 1-512 Install one screw



Step 7: Install the rear-left cover

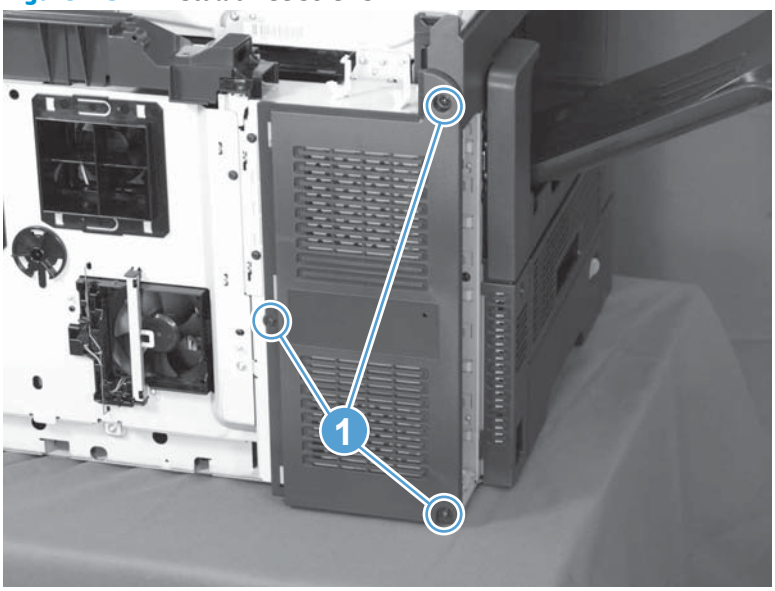
1. Position the cover (callout 1) on the product.

Figure 1-513 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1).

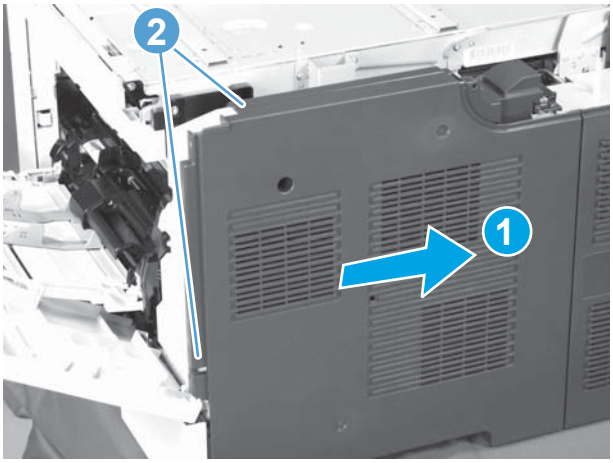
Figure 1-514 Install three screws



Step 8: Install the rear-right cover

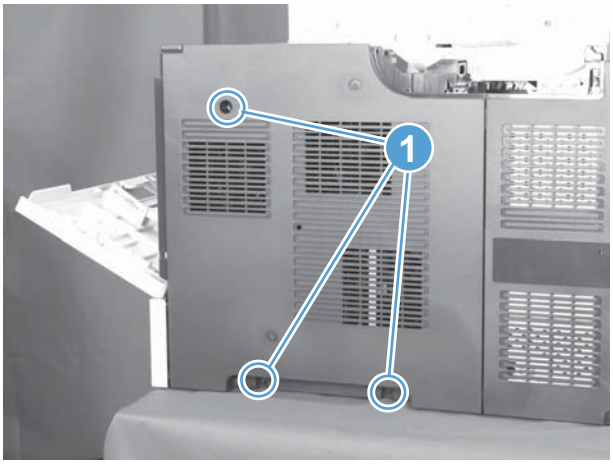
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

Figure 1-515 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

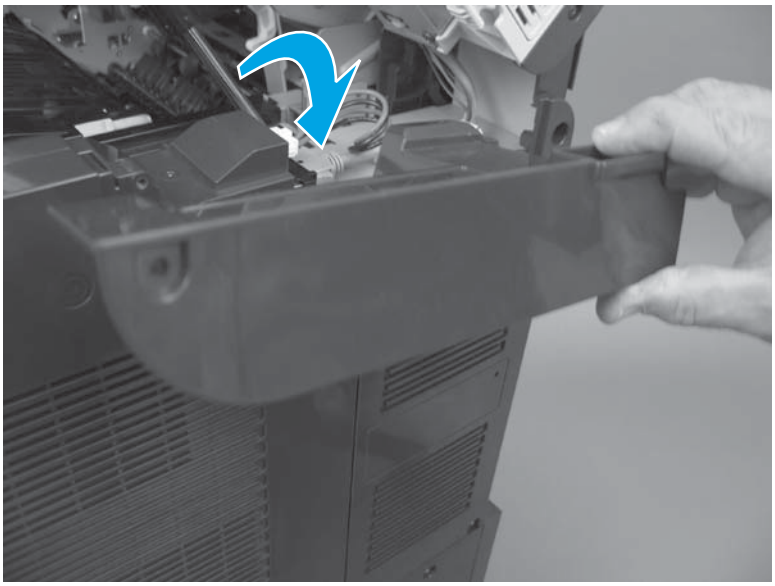
Figure 1-516 Install three screws



Step 9: Install the image scanner cable cover

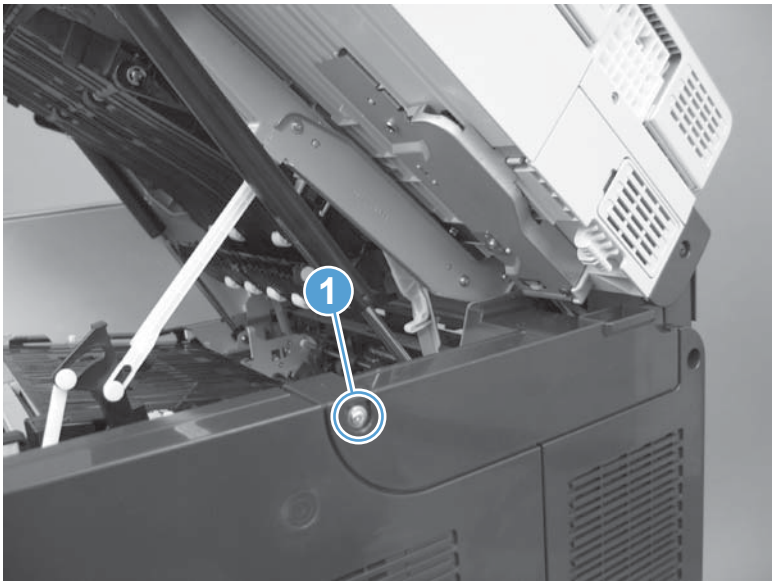
1. Install the cover on the product.

Figure 1-517 Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

Figure 1-518 Install one screw



Step 10: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Right-lower door

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 cover
- Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover
- Step 3: Remove the right-lower door
- Step 4: Unpack the replacement right-lower door
- Step 5: Install the right-lower door
- Step 6: Install the rear-right cover
- Step 7: Install the Tray 1 cover
- Step 8: Turn the product power on
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the right-lower door.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Right-lower door part number	
RM2-5820-000CN	Right-lower door

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

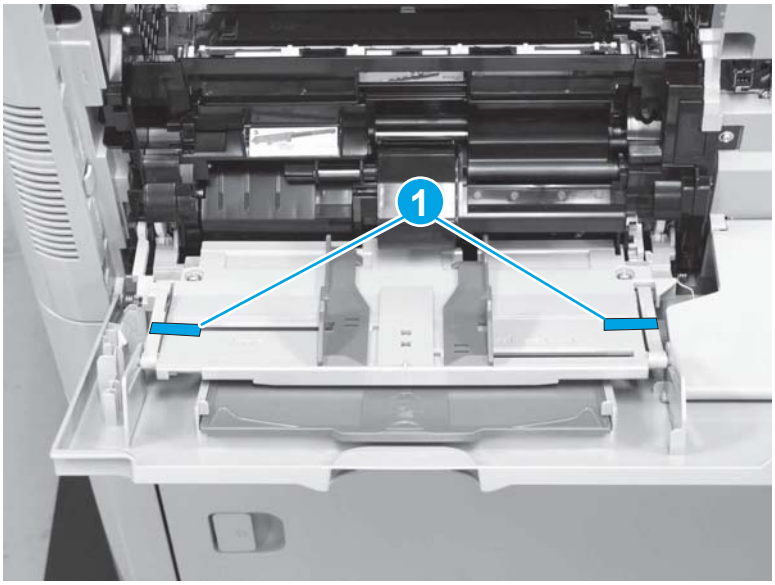
Required tools

- No special tools are required to install this kit.

Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 cover

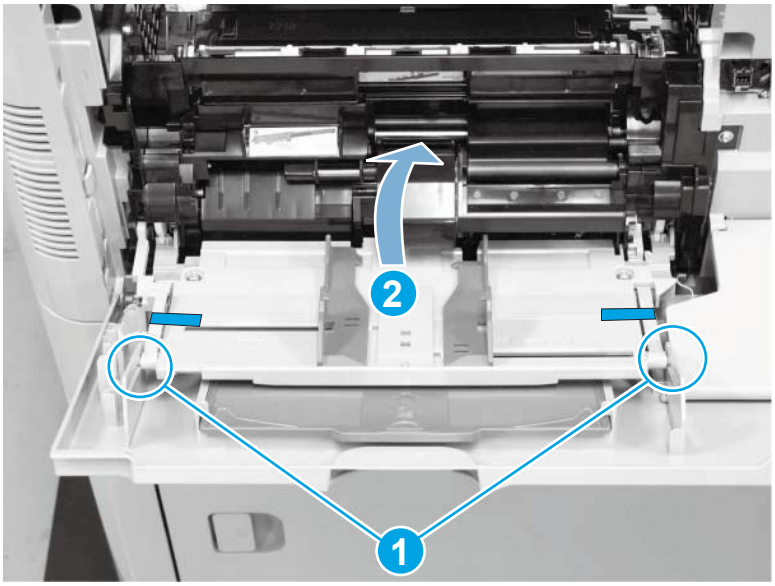
1. Use low adhesive tape to secure the outer retaining pins (callout 1) to the inner tray.

Figure 1-519 Secure the outer retaining pins



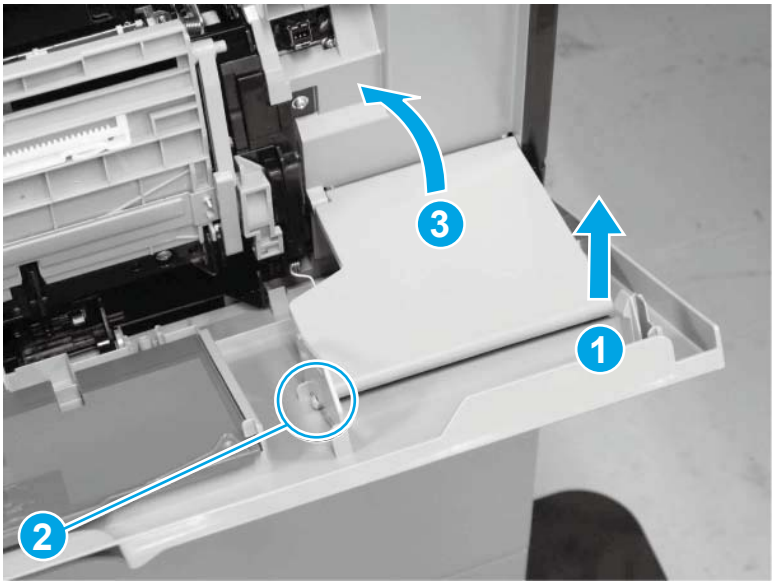
2. Open Tray 1, release the two outer retaining pins (callout 1) on the cover, and then carefully fold the inner tray up (callout 2) and into the product to protect it.

Figure 1-520 Release two outer retaining pins



3. Carefully lift on the outer corner of the tray inner cover (callout 1) to release one pin (callout 2) from the guide, and then fold the inner cover up (callout 3) and into the product.

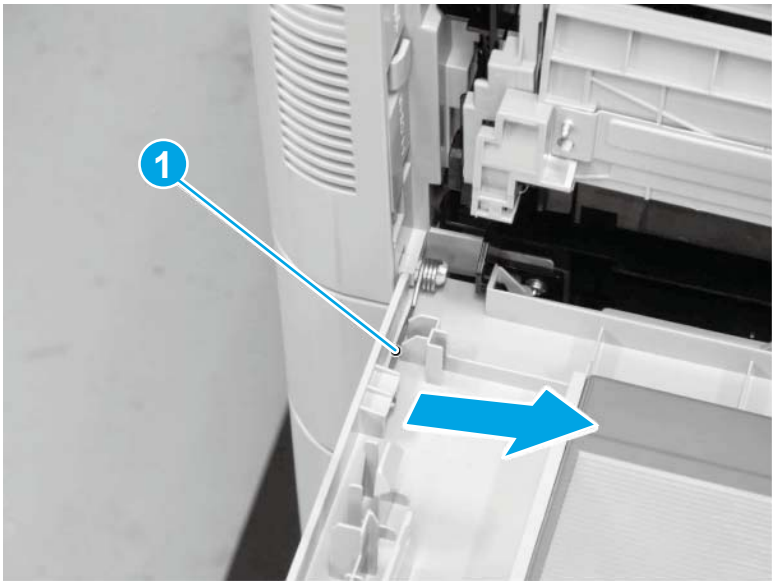
Figure 1-521 Release one pin



4. Release the left-side spring arm (callout 1).

⚠ **CAUTION:** The spring is not captive when the spring arm is released and can be dislodged and lost.

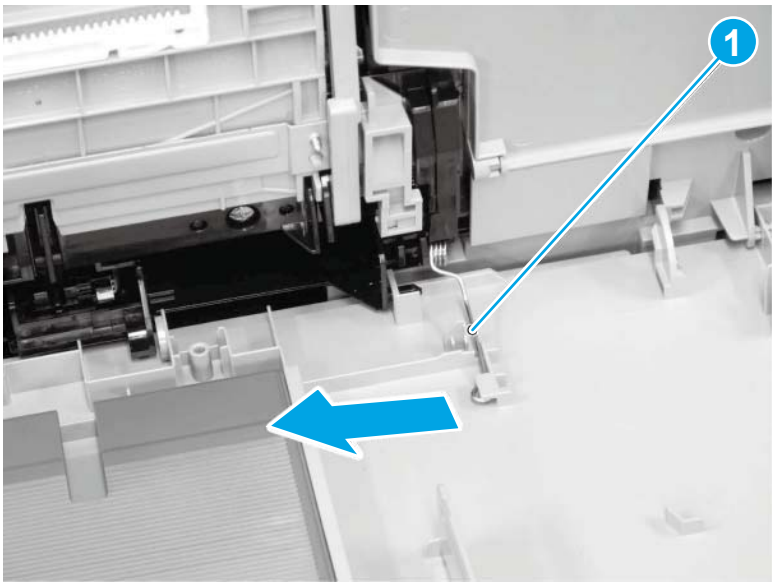
Figure 1-522 Release the left-side spring



5. Release the right-side spring arm (callout 1).

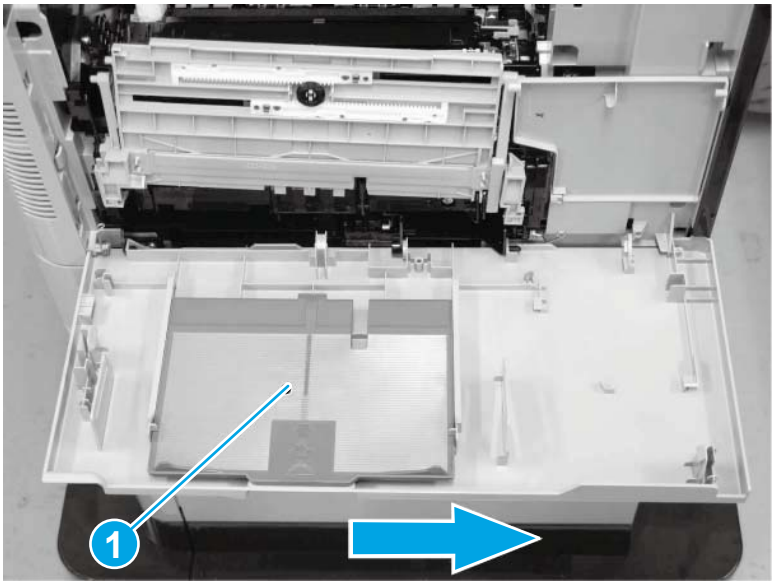
CAUTION: The spring is not captive when the spring arm is released and can be dislodged and lost.

Figure 1-523 Release the right-side spring



6. Slide the cover (callout 1) toward the back of the product to release it, and then remove the cover.

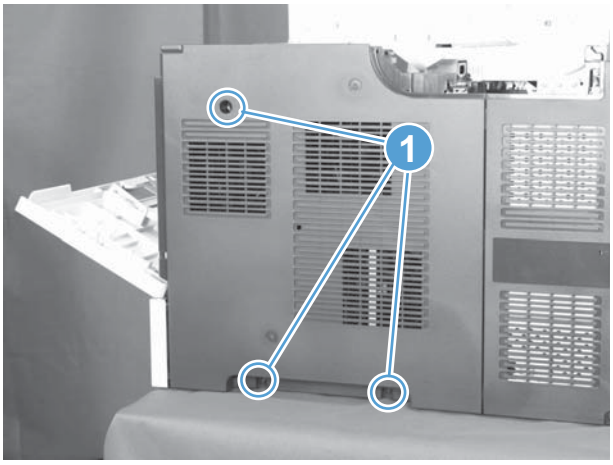
Figure 1-524 Remove the cover



Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover

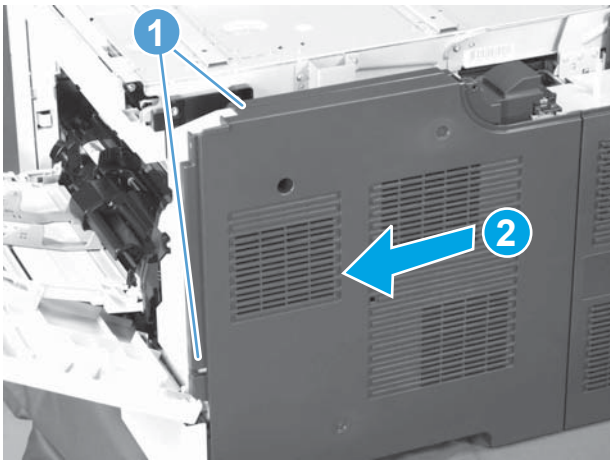
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-525 Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly seperate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

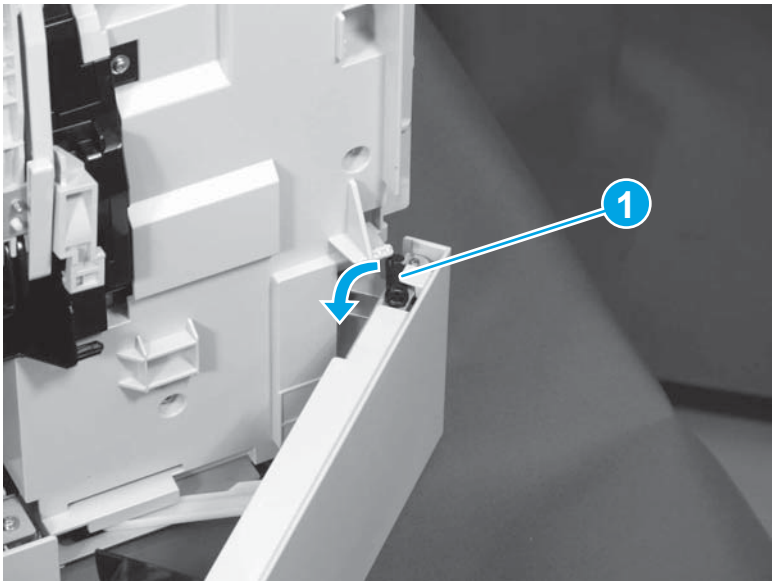
Figure 1-526 Remove the cover



Step 3: Remove the right-lower door

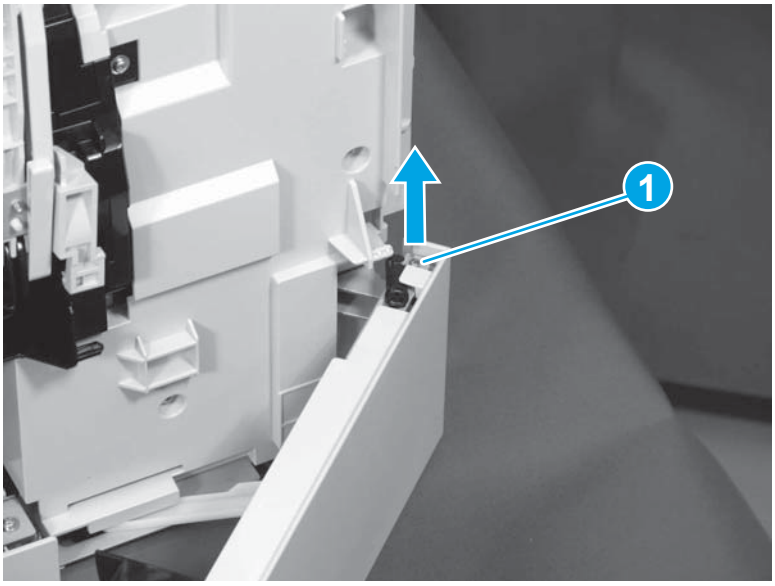
1. Open the right-lower door, and then rotate the stopper (callout 1) to release it.

Figure 1-527 Rotate the stopper



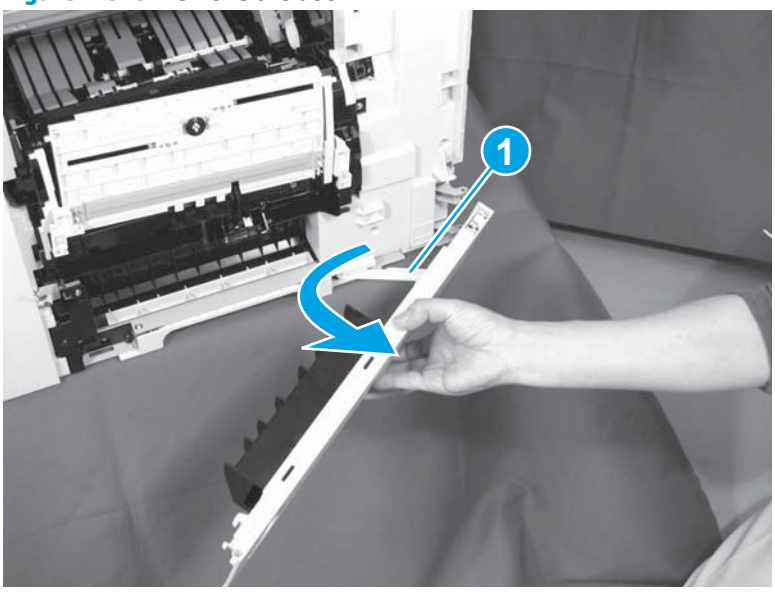
2. Support the door, and then remove the shaft (callout 1).

Figure 1-528 Remove the shaft



3. Release the door-retainer arm (callout 1) by sliding it toward the front of the product, and then remove the door.

Figure 1-529 Remove the door

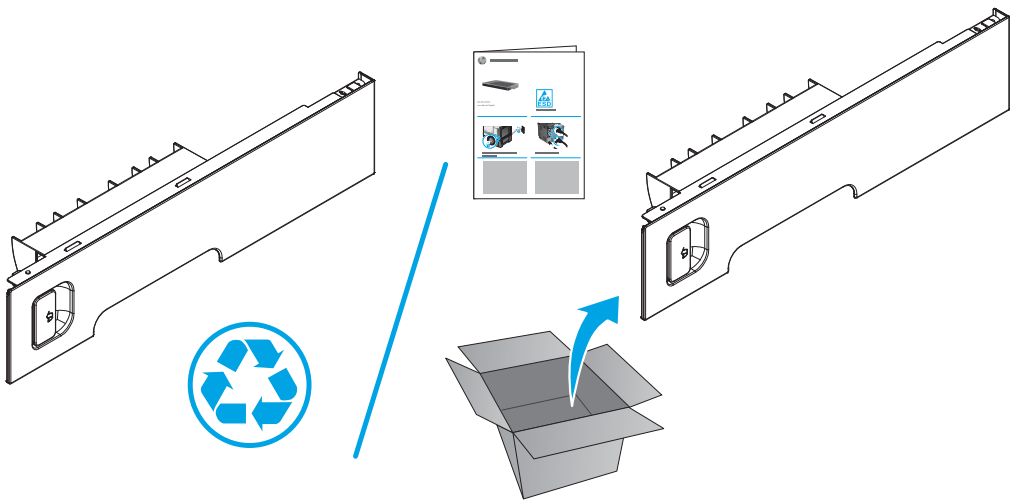


Step 4: Unpack the replacement right-lower door

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

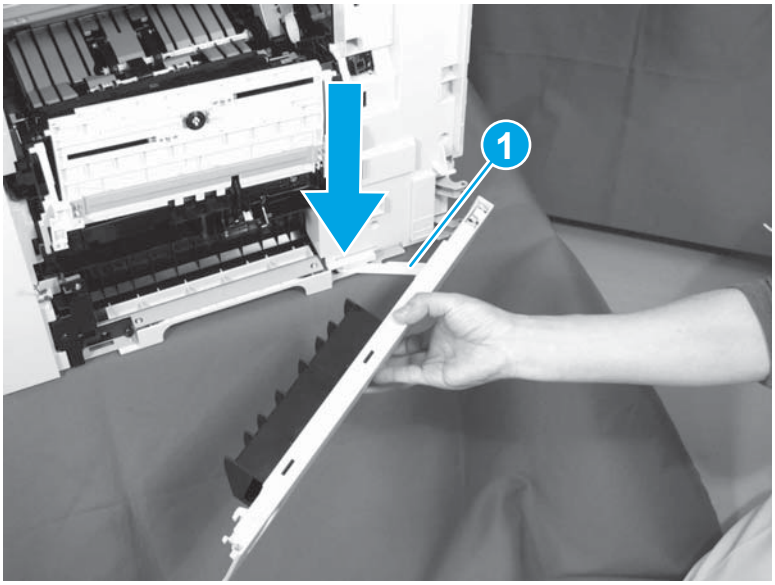
NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 5: Install the right-lower door

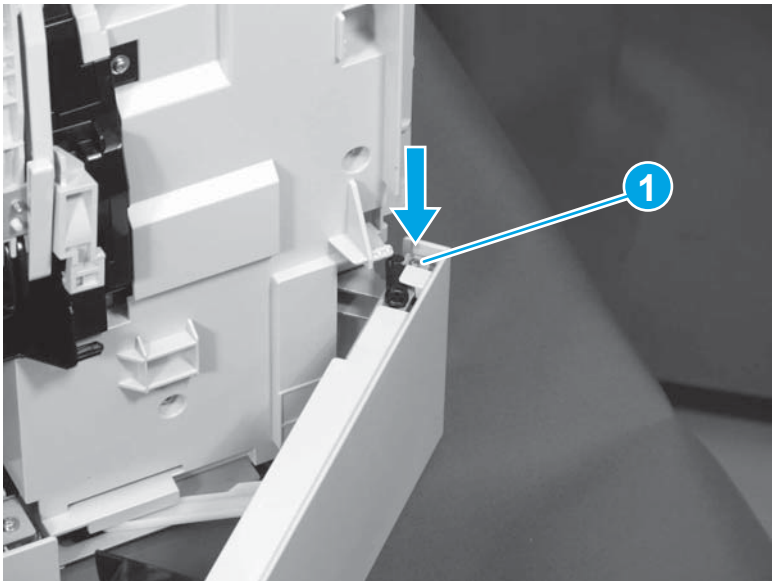
1. Install the door-retainer arm (callout 1) in the slot, and then position the right edge of the door on the product.

Figure 1-530 Install the door



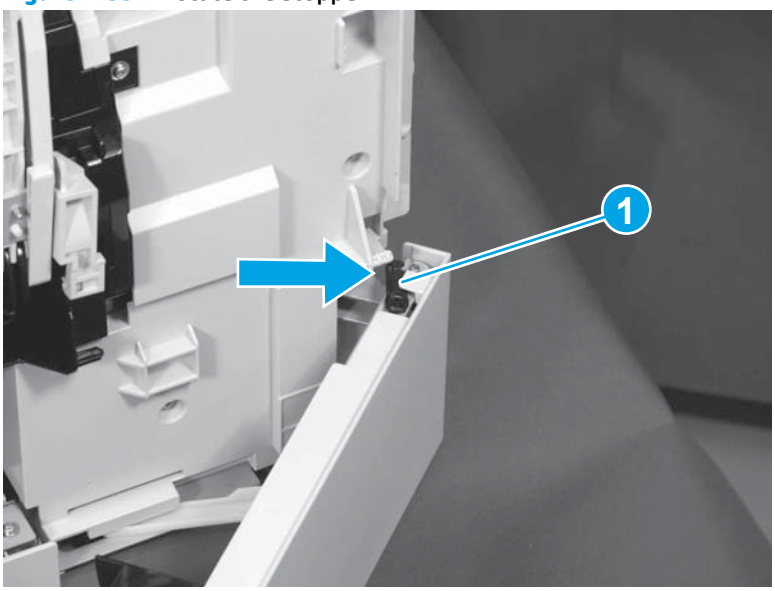
2. Install the shaft (callout 1).

Figure 1-531 Install the shaft



3. Rotate the stopper (callout 1) to until it locks in place.

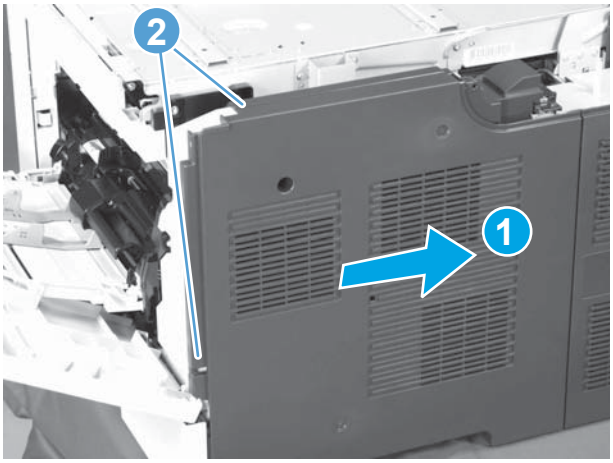
Figure 1-532 Rotate the stopper



Step 6: Install the rear-right cover

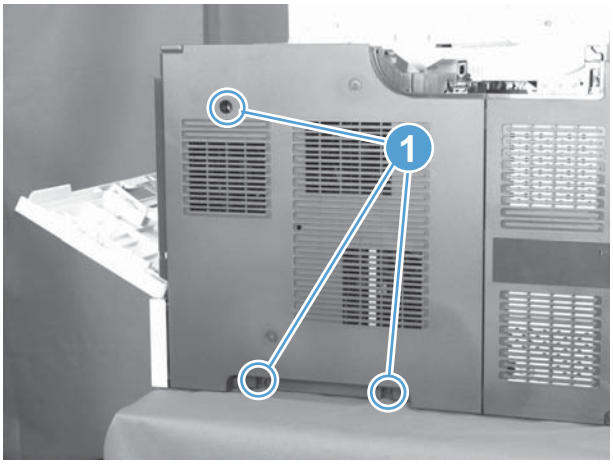
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

Figure 1-533 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

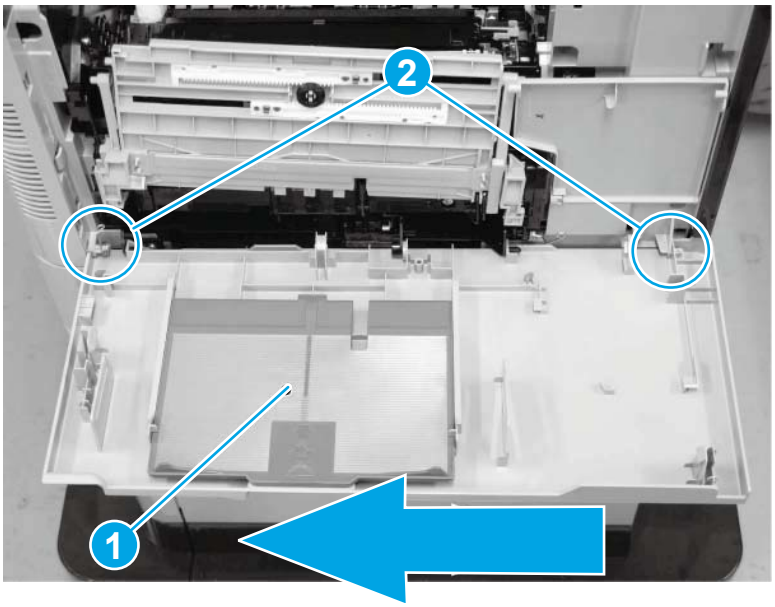
Figure 1-534 Install three screws



Step 7: Install the Tray 1 cover

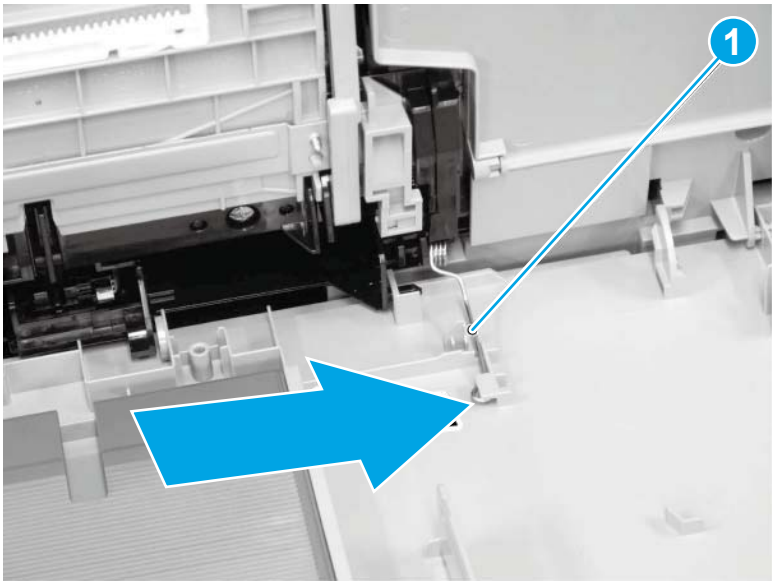
1. Slide the cover (callout 1) toward the front of the product to install it on the hinge pins (callout 2).

Figure 1-535 Install the cover



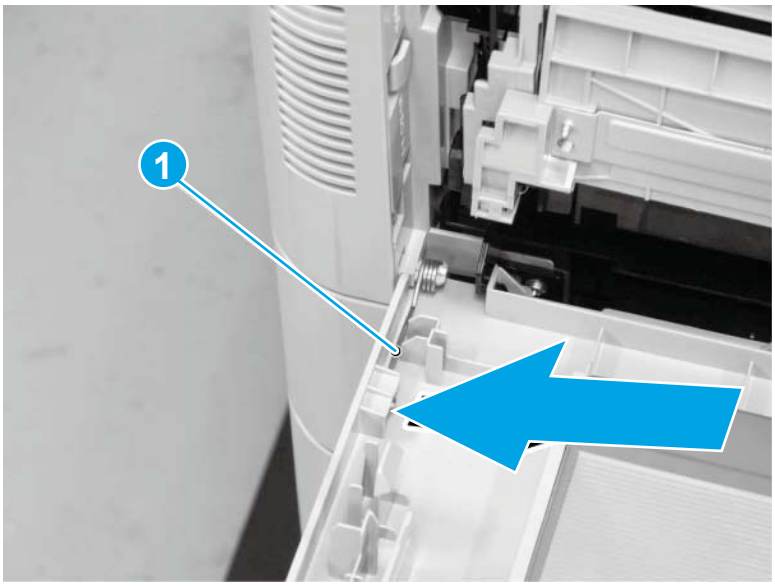
2. Engage the right-side spring arm (callout 1).

Figure 1-536 Engage the right-side spring



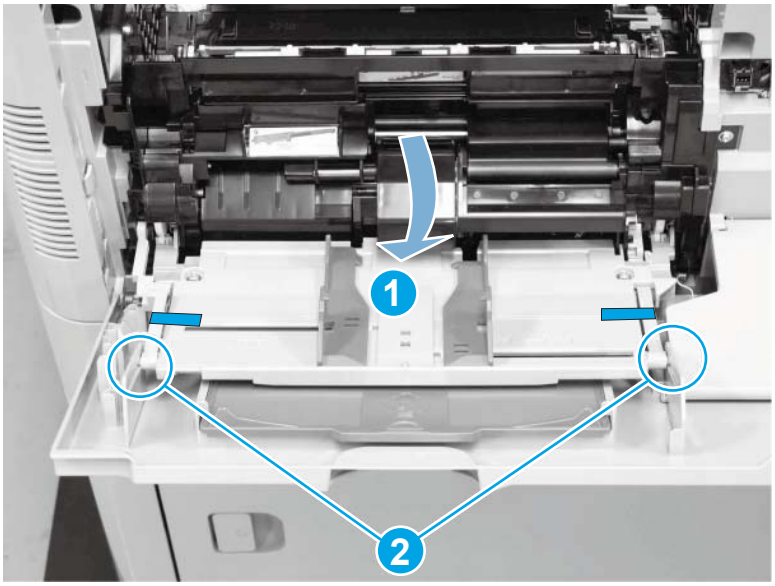
3. Engage the left-side spring arm (callout 1).

Figure 1-537 Engage the left-side spring



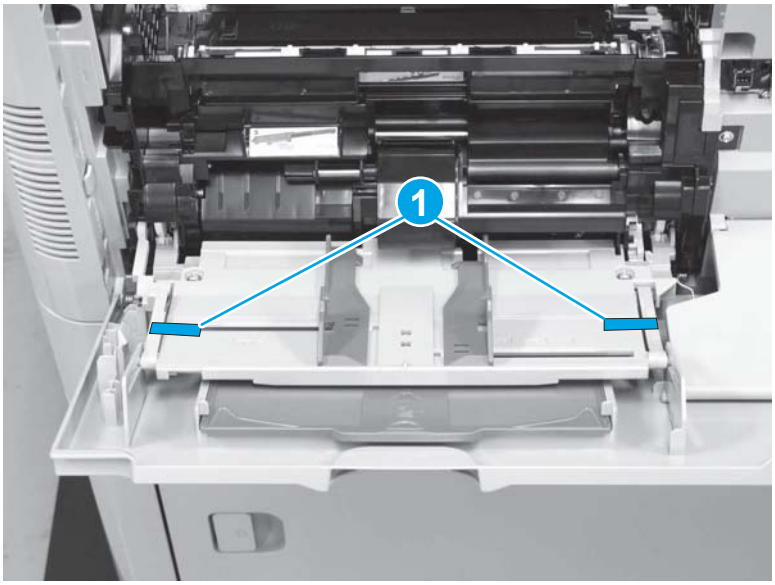
4. Lower the inner tray assembly (callout 1), and then engage the two outer retaining pins (callout 2) on the cover.

Figure 1-538 Engage two outer retaining pins



5. Remove the low adhesive tape (callout 1), and then close the tray.

Figure 1-539 Remove the low adhesive tape



Step 8: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Document-feeder hinge cover

Remove the following assemblies:

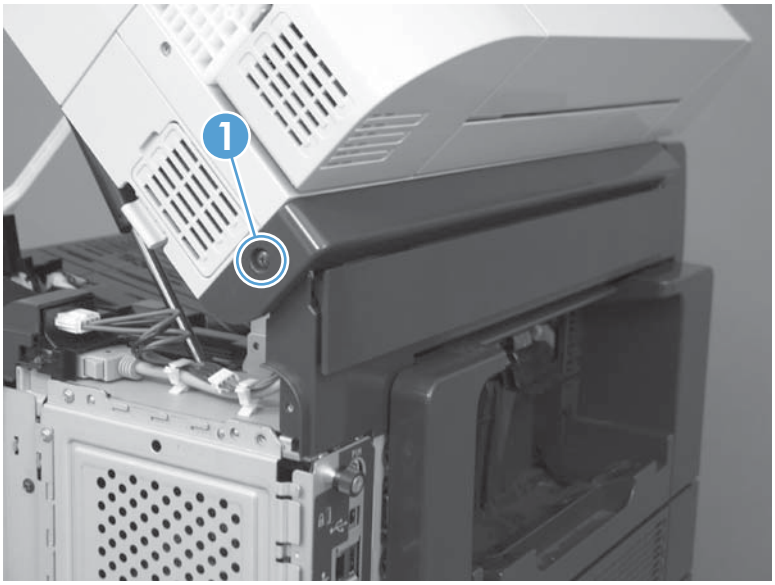
- Image scanner cable cover. See Image scanner cable cover on page 283.
- Rear-right cover. See Rear-right cover on page 323.
- Rear-left cover. See Rear-left cover on page 327.

Remove the document-feeder hinge cover

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

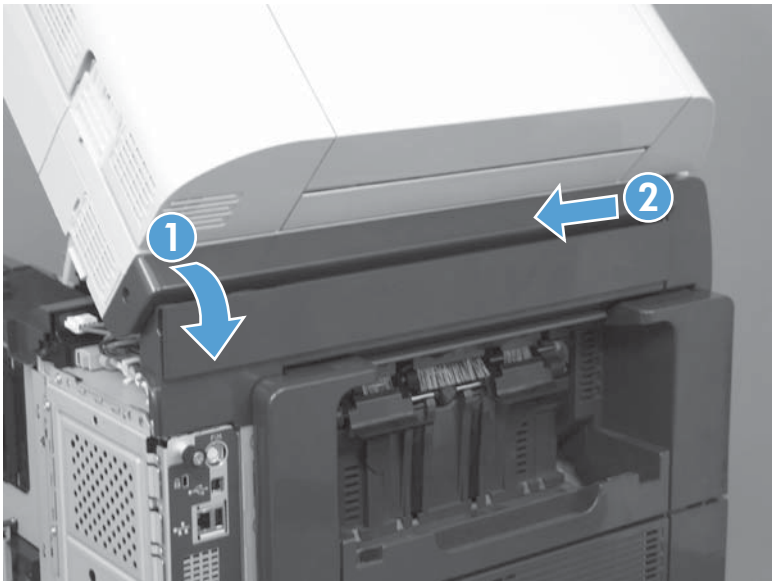
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-540 Remove one screw



2. Release the corner of the cover (callout 1), and then slide the cover (callout 2) toward the rear of the product.

Figure 1-541 Release the corner of the cover



3. Remove the cover.

NOTE: The document-feeder hinge cover consists of two separate covers. It will likely come apart when removed.

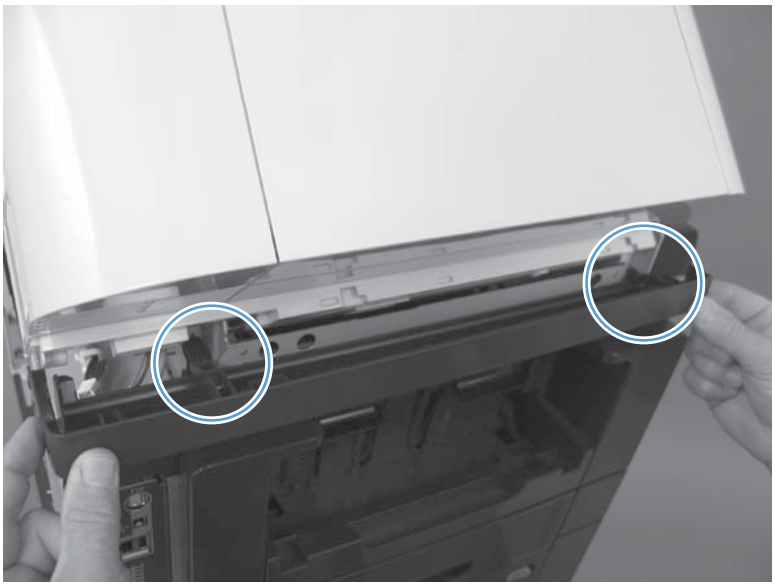
Figure 1-542 Remove the document feeder hinge cover



Install the document-feeder hinge cover

When the cover is reinstalled, make sure that the flanges on the cover are correctly positioned behind the Image scanner left cover.

Figure 1-543 Install the document-feeder hinge cover



Main assemblies

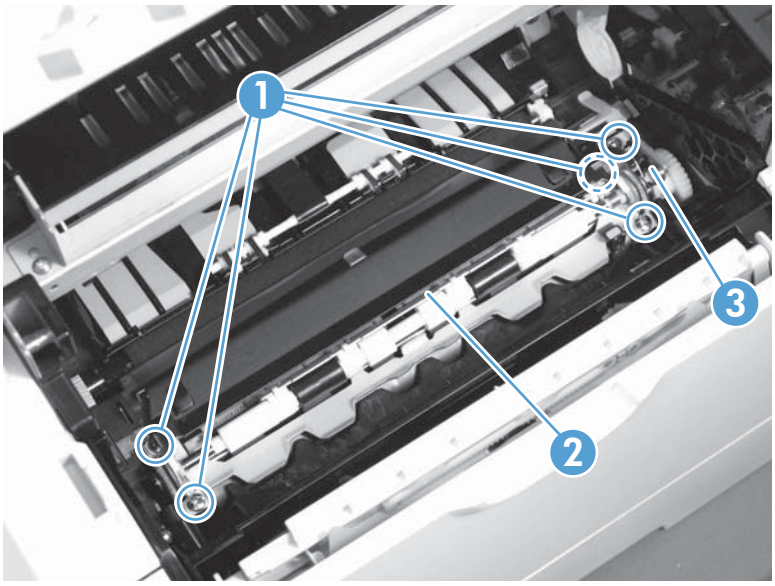
- Registration assembly
- Cassette-door-open detection switch (SW105)
- Reverse assembly upper guide assembly
- Reverse assembly
- Laser/scanner assembly
- Cartridge sensor assembly
- Temperature sensor
- DC controller shield-plate assembly
- DC controller
- Tray 1 pickup assembly
- Interconnect board (ICB)
- Feed motor (M101)
- Drum motor (M102)
- Fuser motor (M299)
- Main fan (FN101)
- Laser/scanner fan (FN102)
- Cartridge front-side fan (FN103)
- Low-voltage power supply fan (FN104)
- Reverse assembly fan (FN105)
- Cartridge fan (FN301)
- Interlock switch assembly (SW101 and SW106)
- Output accessory detection switch (SW104)
- Low-voltage power supply (LVPS)
- Lifter base assembly
- Lifter assembly
- High-voltage power supply (HVPS)
- Feed roller assembly
- Pickup drive assembly
- Cassette pickup assembly

Registration assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

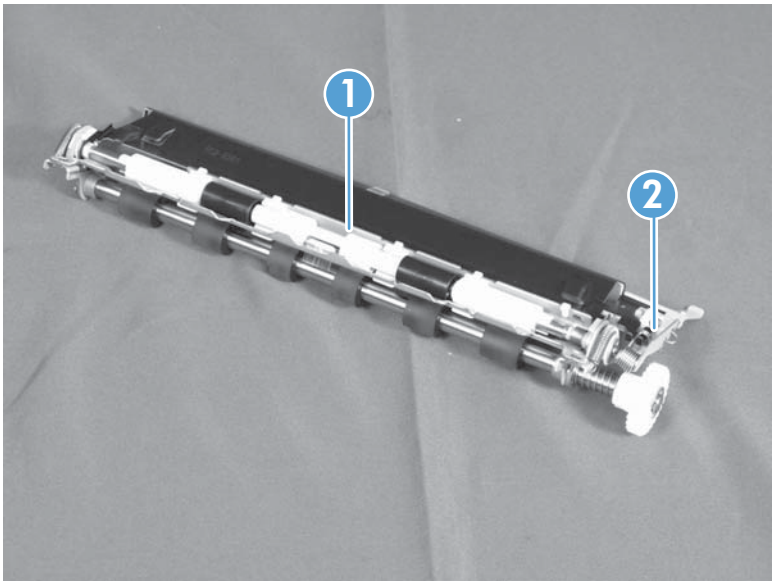
1. Pull the top cover release lever to open the top cover.
2. Open the jam access flap, remove five screws (callout 1), and then remove the registration assembly (callout 2) and grounding plate (callout 3) together.

Figure 1-544 Remove the registration assembly and grounding plate



3. If necessary, separate the registration assembly (callout 1) from the grounding plate (callout 2).

Figure 1-545 Remove the registration assembly



Cassette-door-open detection switch (SW105)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the cassette-door-open detection switch
- Step 2: Unpack the replacement switch assembly
- Step 3: Install the cassette-door-open detection switch
- Step 4: Turn the product power on
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the cassette-door-open detection switch.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Cassette-door-open detection switch part number	
RM1-1045-000CN	Cassette-door-open detection switch **NOTE:** This switch is also called the right-door sensor assembly.

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

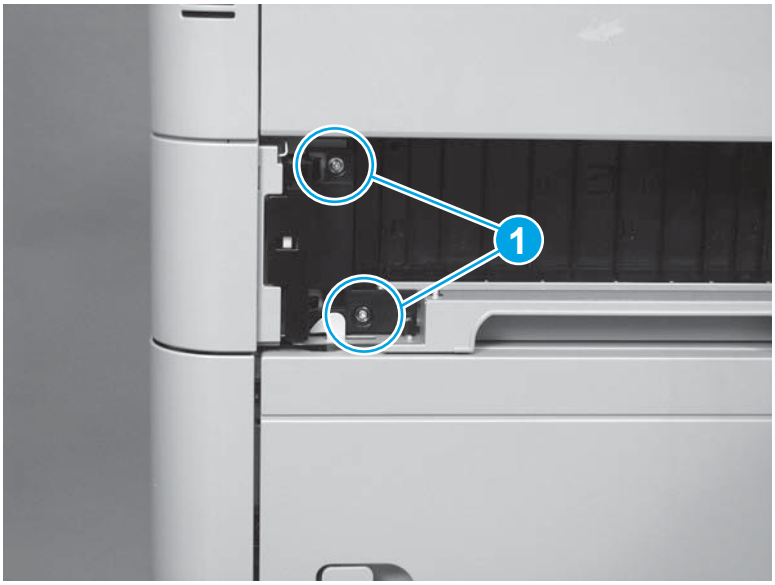
Required tools

#2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152-mm (6-in) shaft length

Step 1: Remove the cassette-door-open detection switch

1. Open the right-lower door, and then remove two screws (callout 1).

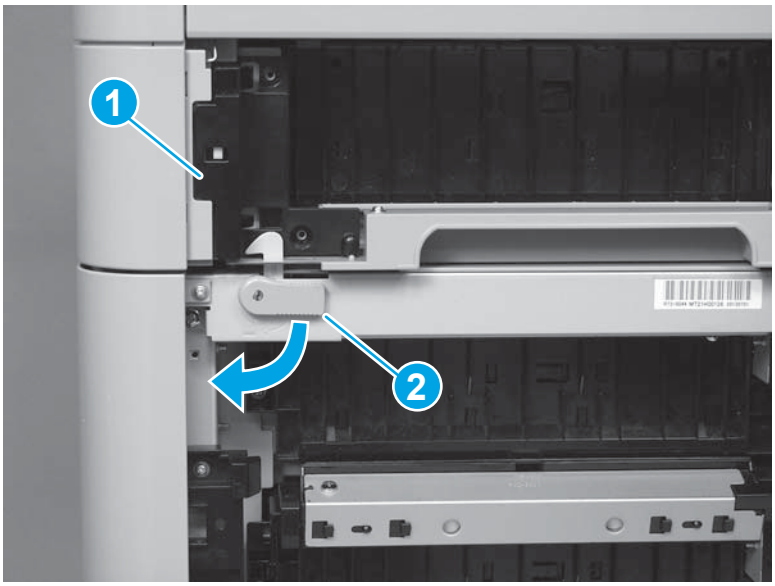
Figure 1-546 Remove two screws



2. Remove the switch cover (callout 1).

TIP: If the product is installed on an optional input accessory, open the accessory right door, and then release the blue lever (callout 2) to lower the locking latch to make removing the cover easier.

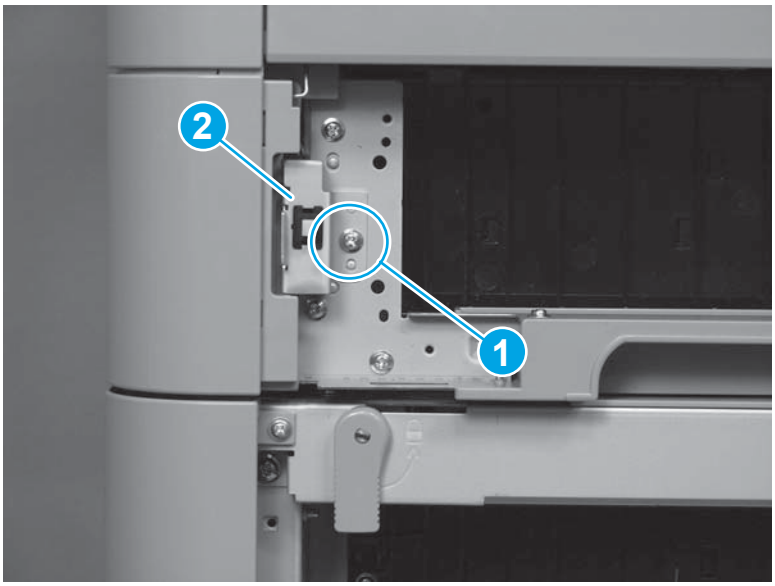
Figure 1-547 Remove the cover



3. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then separate the switch assembly (callout 2) from the product.

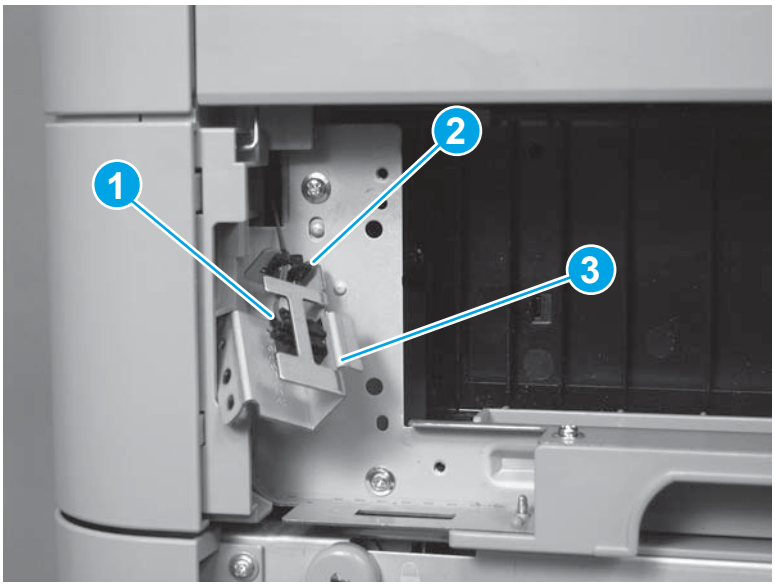
CAUTION: A wire harness connects the switch assembly to the product. Do not attempt to completely remove the switch assembly.

Figure 1-548 Remove one screw



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release the wire harness from the retainer (callout 2), and then remove the switch assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-549 Remove the switch

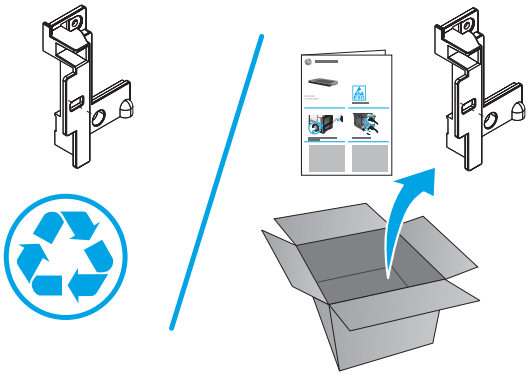


Step 2: Unpack the replacement switch assembly

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

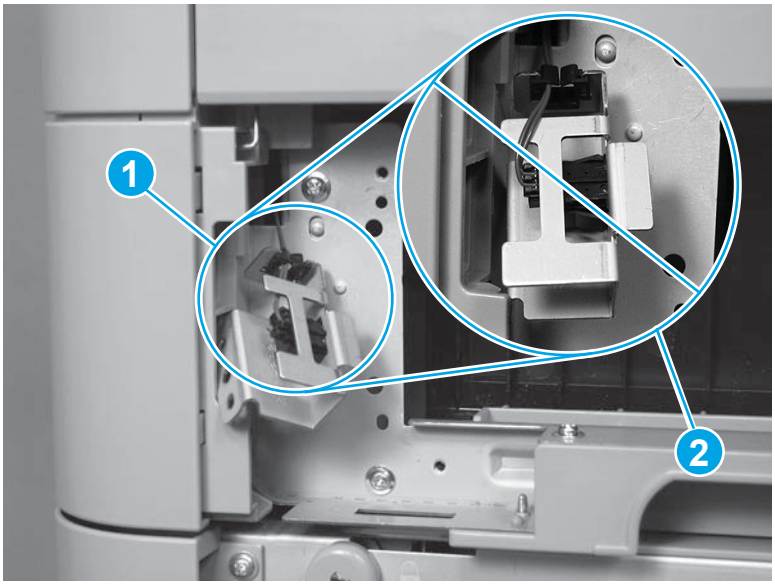


Step 3: Install the cassette-door-open detection switch

1. Connect one connector, and then install the wire harness in the retainer (callout 1).

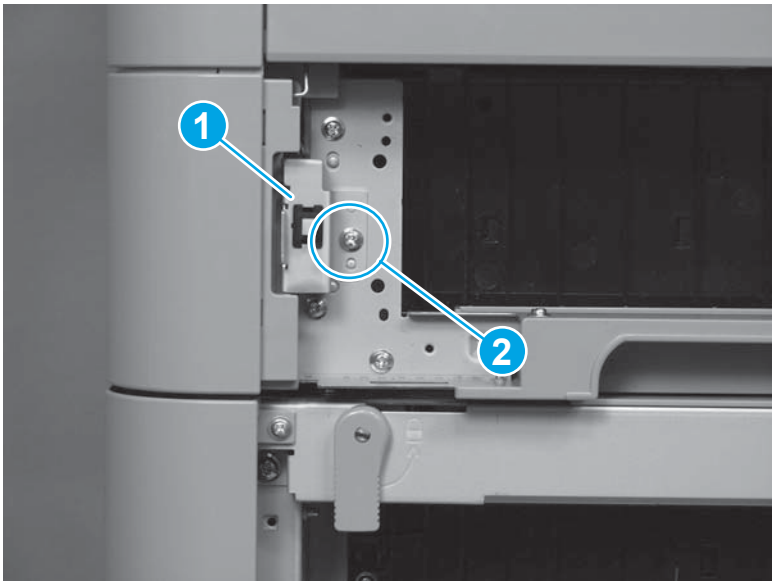
IMPORTANT: Make sure that the wire harness is routed *inside* the bracket. It must not be routed outside of the bracket (callout 2).

Figure 1-550 Connect one connector



2. Position the switch assembly (callout 1) on the product, and then install one screw (callout 2).

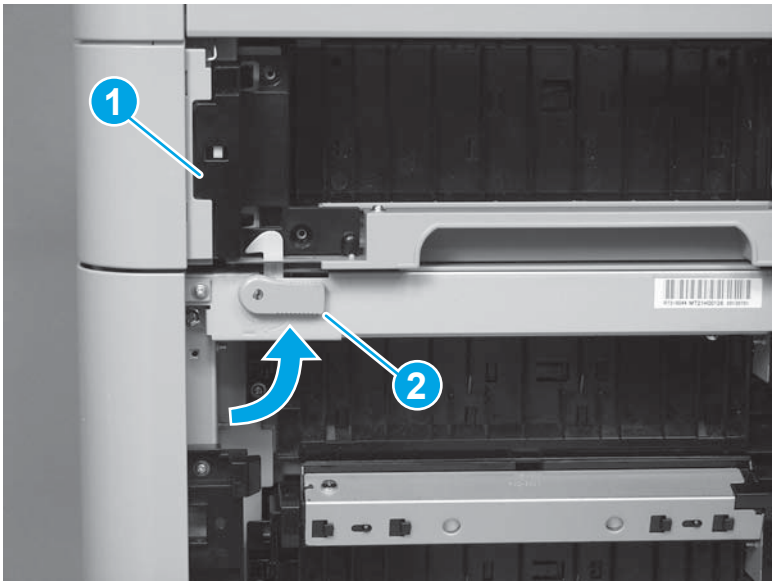
Figure 1-551 Install one screw



3. Install the switch cover (callout 1).

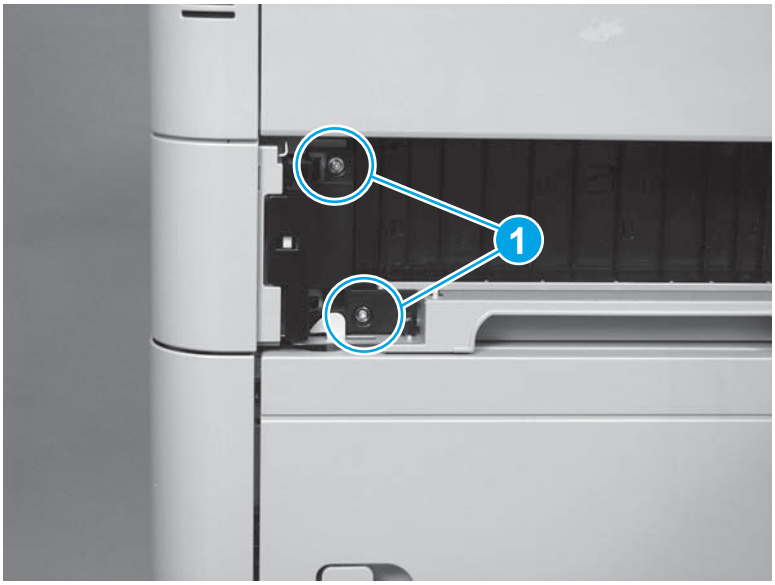
NOTE: If the product is installed on an optional input accessory, make sure to rotate the blue lever (callout 2) to lock the latch.

Figure 1-552 Install the cover



4. Install two screws (callout 1), and then close all of the doors.

Figure 1-553 Install two screws



Step 4: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

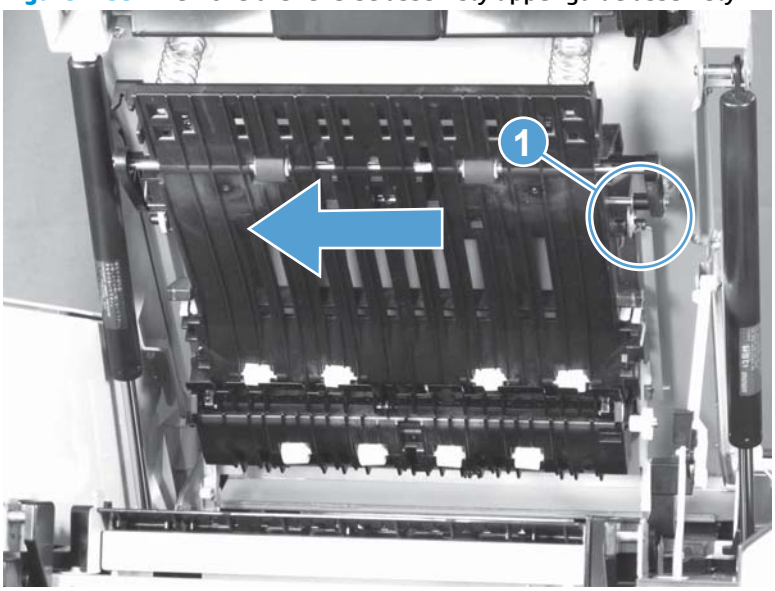
Reverse assembly upper guide assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. Pull the top cover release lever to open the top cover.
2. Carefully flex the bushing (callout 1) and then slide the assembly toward the front of the product to remove it.

⚠ **CAUTION:** Be careful when handling the assembly after removal. There are springs attached to the assembly that can be easily dislodged and lost.

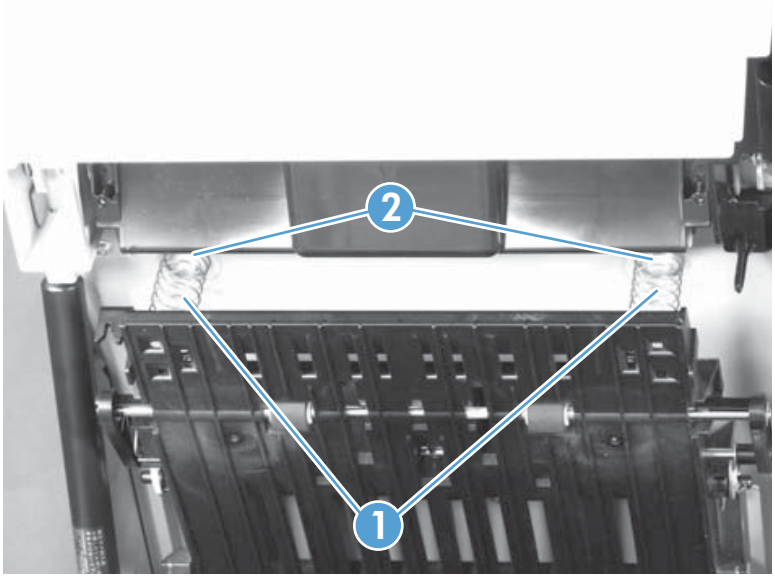
Figure 1-554 Remove the reverse assembly upper guide assembly



Install the reverse assembly upper guide assembly

When the assembly is reinstalled, make sure that two springs (callout 1) are correctly positioned on the sheet-metal bosses (callout 2).

Figure 1-555 Install the reverse assembly upper guide assembly

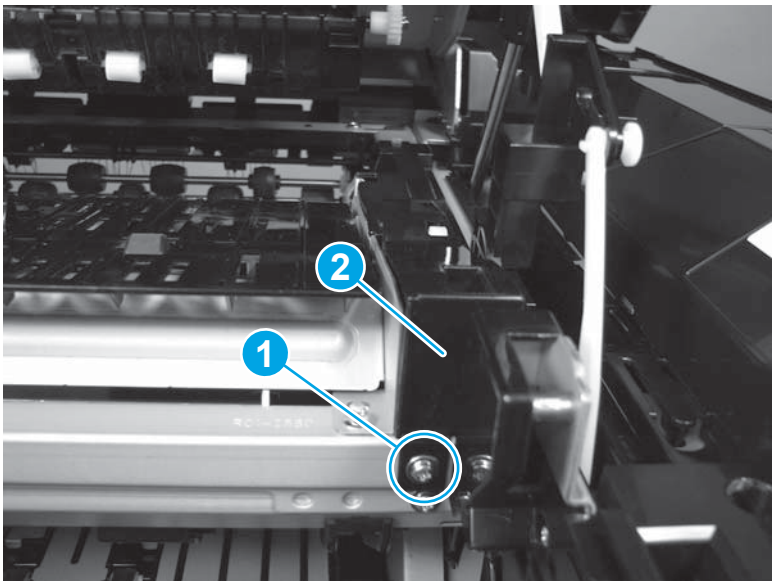


Reverse assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

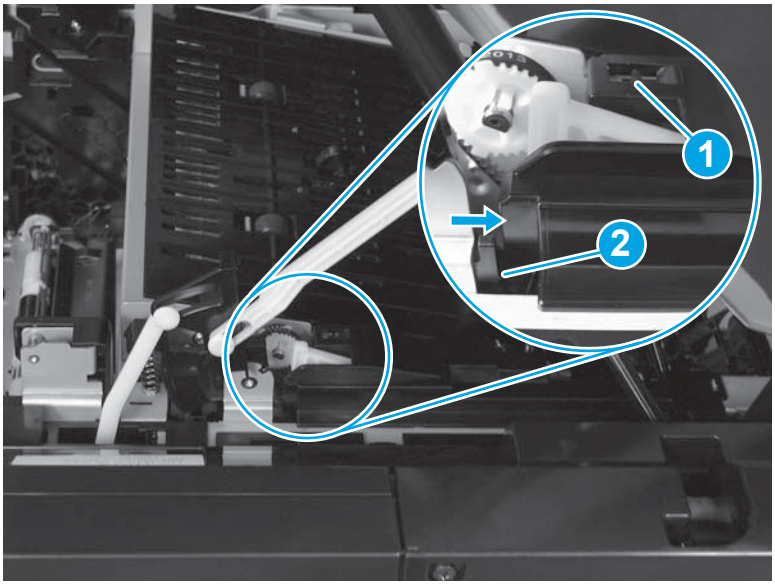
1. Open the top cover, remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-556 Remove one screw and the cover



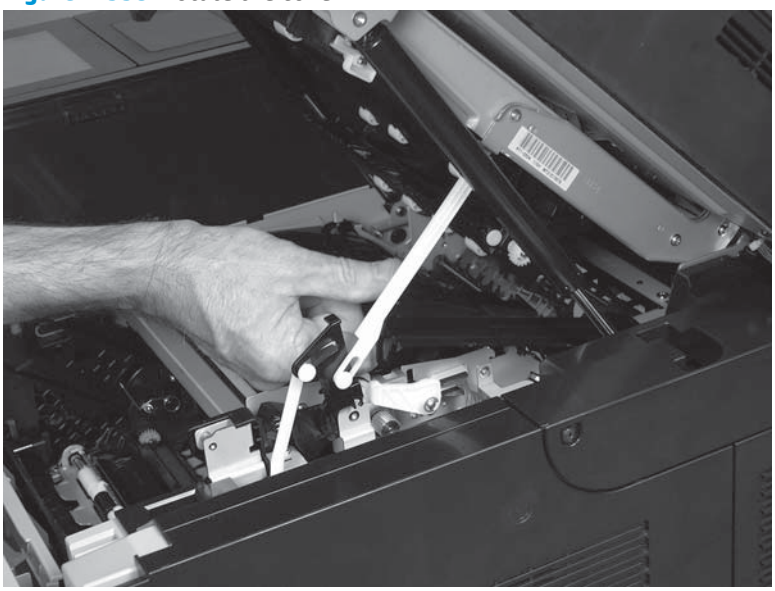
2. Release one tab (callout 1) and then push in on one clip (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 1-557 Release one tab and one clip



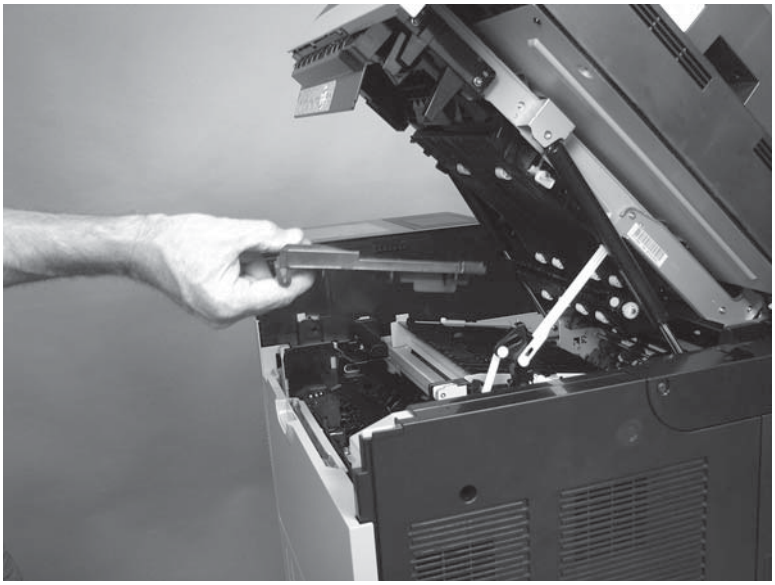
3. Rotate the front of the cover up.

Figure 1-558 Rotate the cover



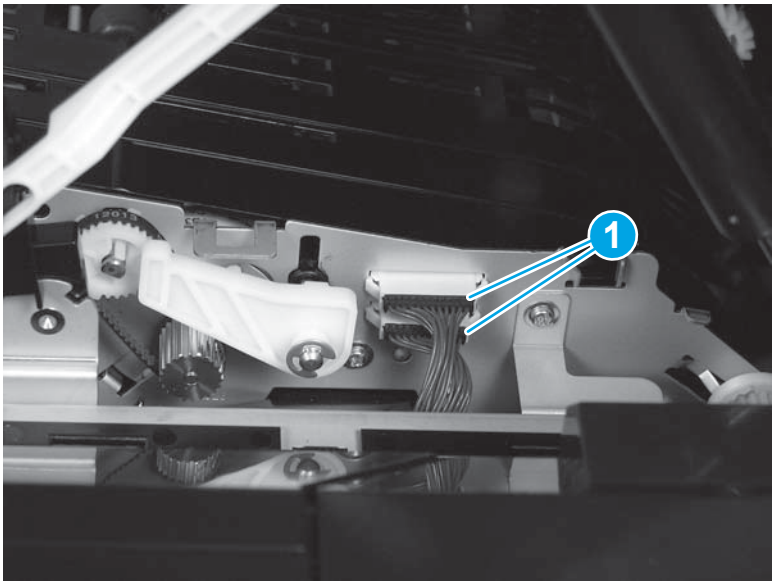
4. Remove the cover.

Figure 1-559 Remove the cover



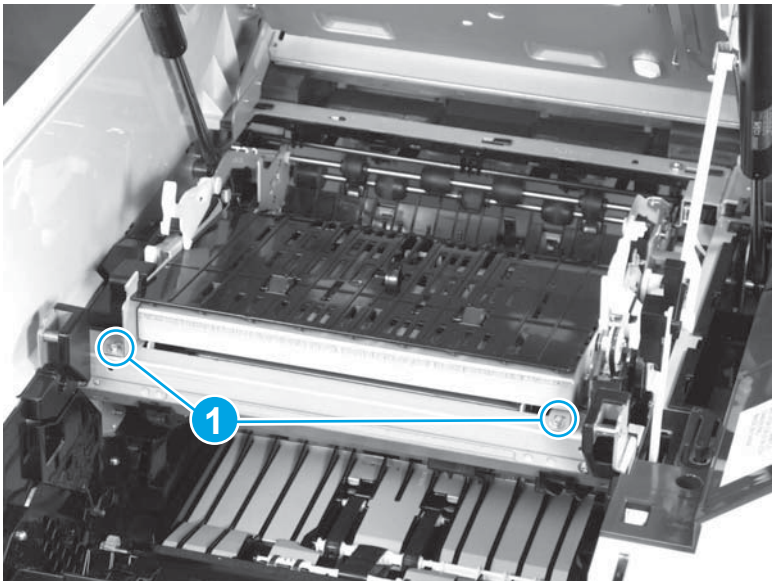
5. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1).

Figure 1-560 Disconnect two connectors



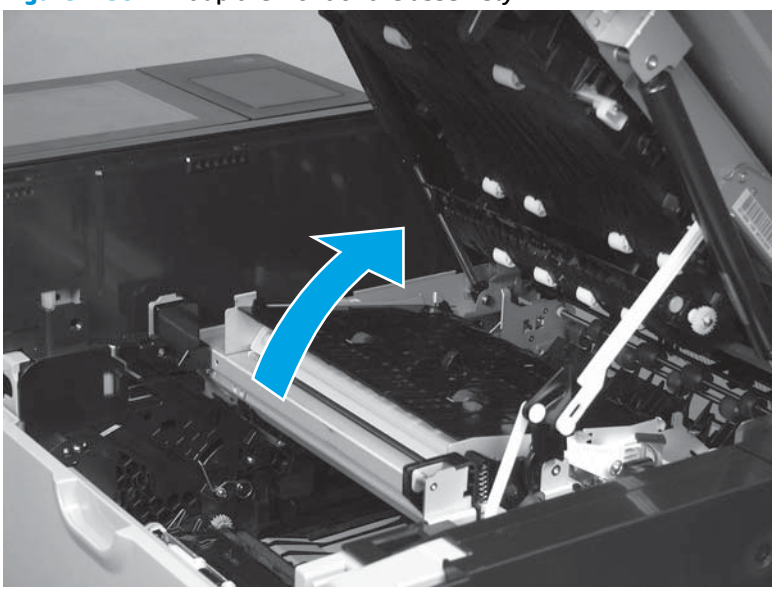
6. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-561 Remove two screws



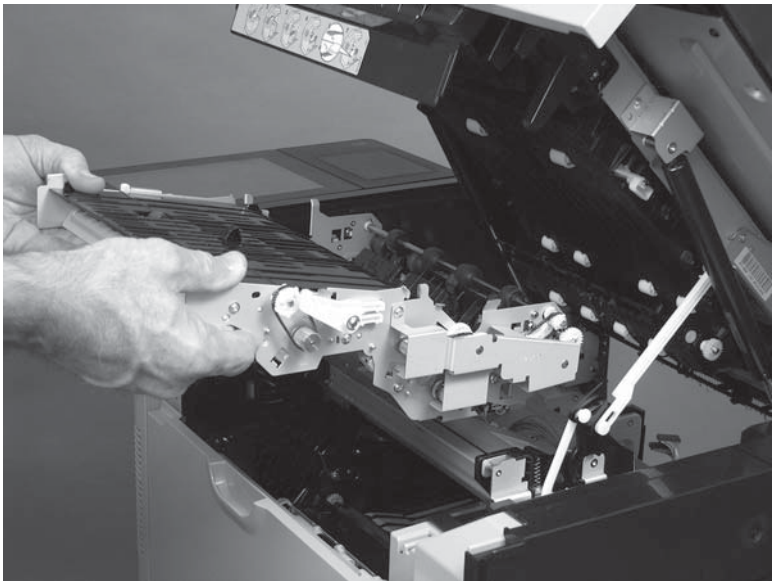
7. Lift up the front of the reverse assembly to release it.

Figure 1-562 Lift up the front of the assembly



8. Remove the reverse assembly.

Figure 1-563 Remove the reverse assembly



Laser/scanner assembly

Remove the following assemblies:

- Reverse assembly. See Reverse assembly on page 371.

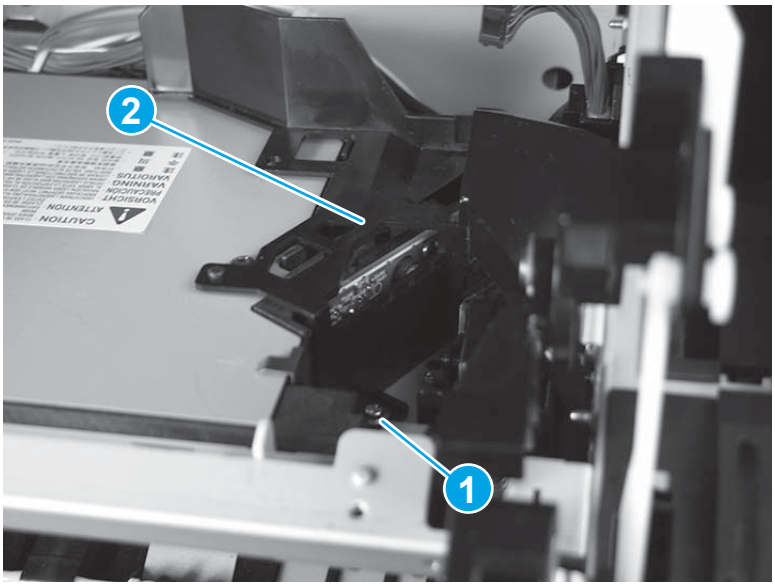
Remove the laser/scanner assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. At the right side of the laser/scanner assembly, remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callout 2).

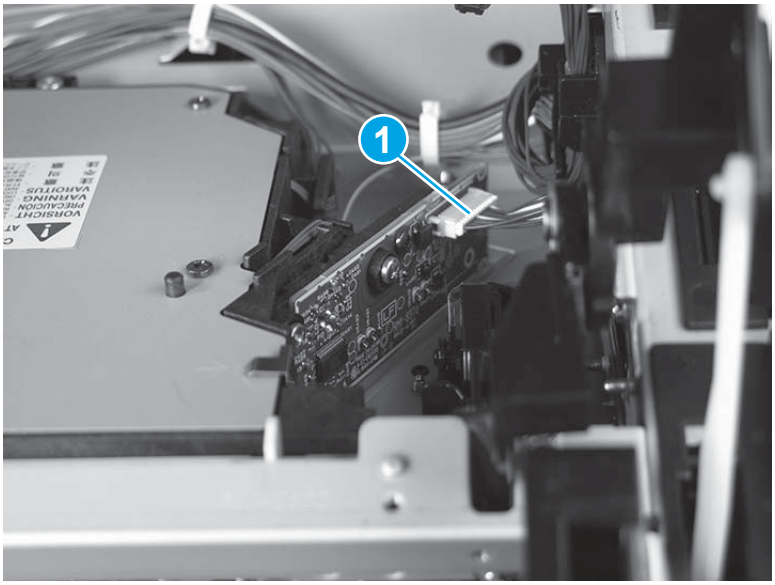
TIP: Use a short-barrel screw driver to remove this screw.

Figure 1-564 Remove the cover



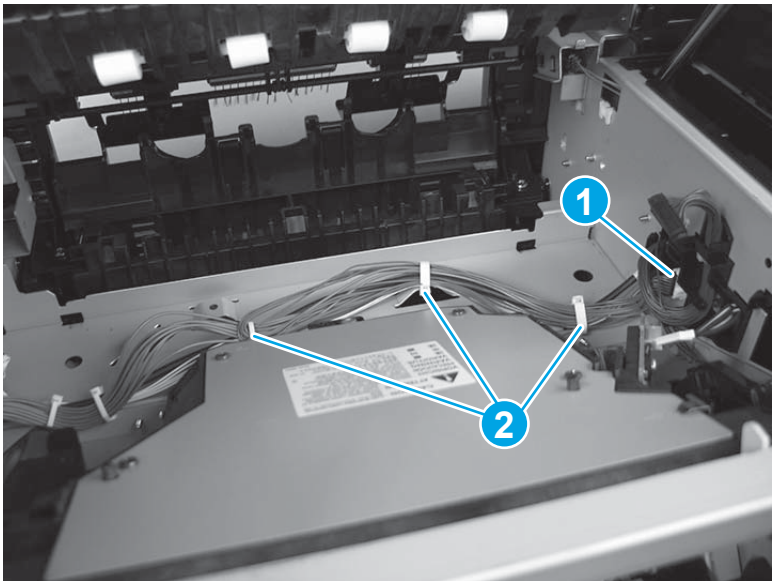
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 1-565 Disconnect one connector



3. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from three retainers (callout 2).

Figure 1-566 Disconnect one connector

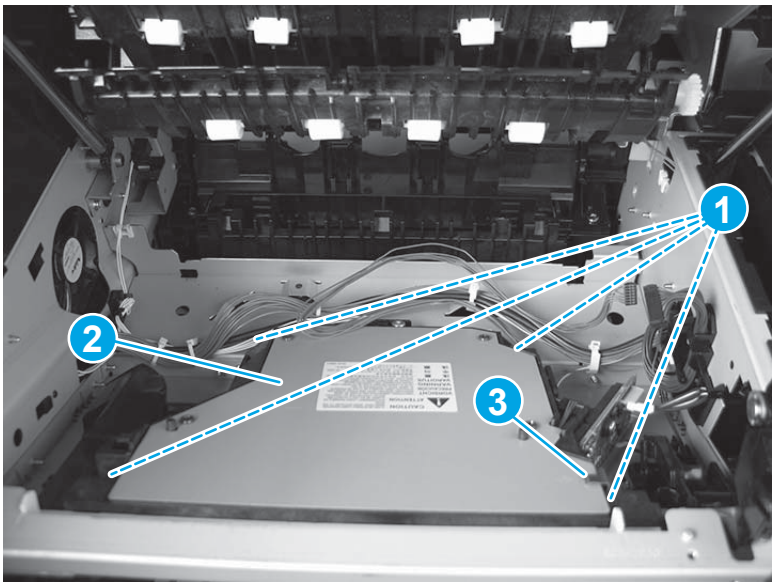


4. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the laser/scanner assembly (callout 2).

NOTE: The grounding clip (callout 3) is not captive. Do not lose the clip.

TIP: Use a short-barrel screw driver to remove the screws.

Figure 1-567 Remove the laser/scanner assembly



Cartridge sensor assembly

Remove the following assemblies:

- Reverse assembly. See Reverse assembly on page 371.

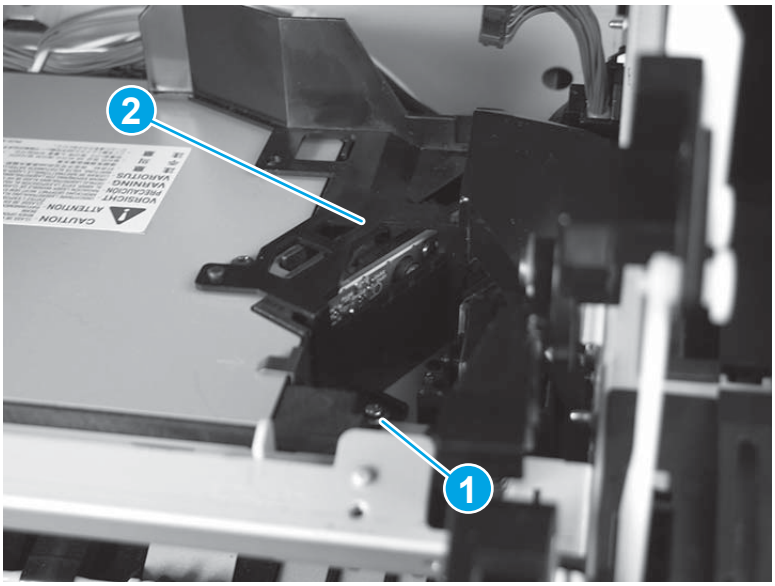
Remove the cartridge sensor assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. At the right side of the laser/scanner assembly, remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callout 2).

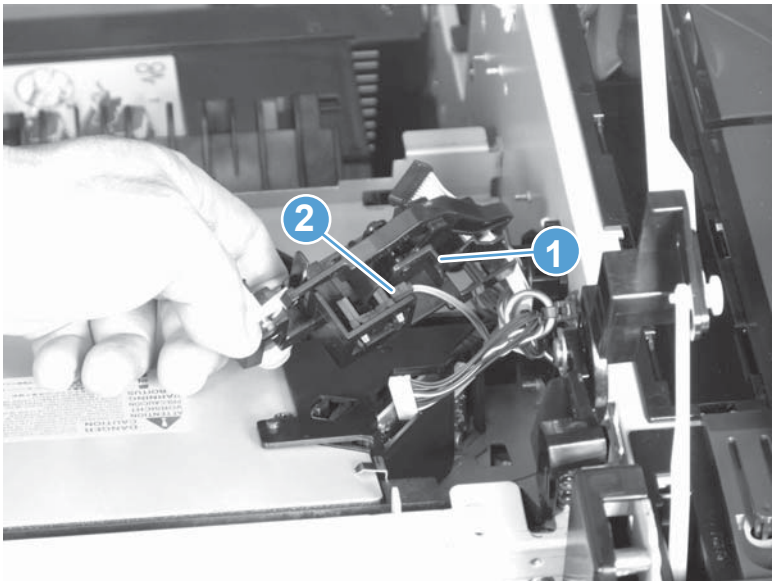
TIP: Use a short-barrel screw driver to remove this screw.

Figure 1-568 Remove the cover



2. Remove the sensor assembly (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 1-569 Remove the cartridge sensor assembly



Temperature sensor

Remove the following assemblies:

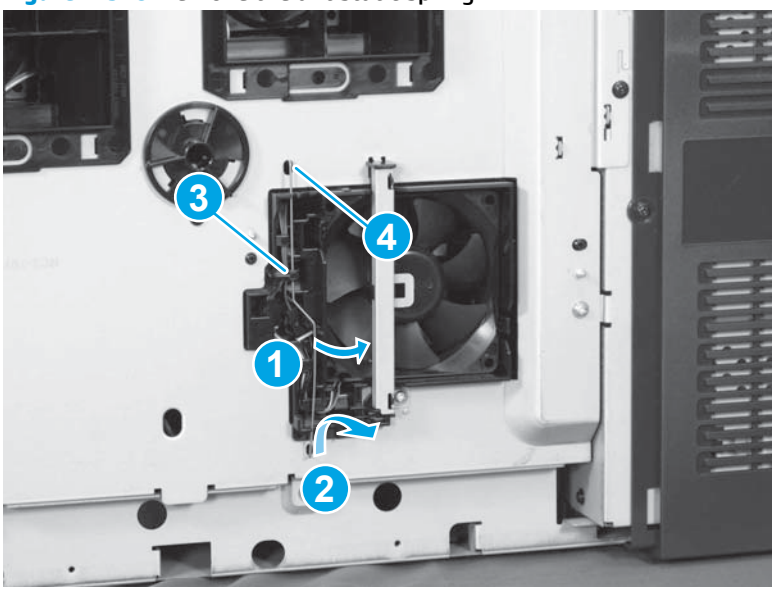
- Image scanner cable cover. See Image scanner cable cover on page 283.
- Rear-right cover. See Rear-right cover on page 323.

Remove the temperature sensor

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. Carefully flex the middle of the spring away from the fan (callout 1), push up on the bottom of the spring (callout 2) to release it, release the spring from one tab (callout 3), and then release the top of the spring (callout 3) to remove it.

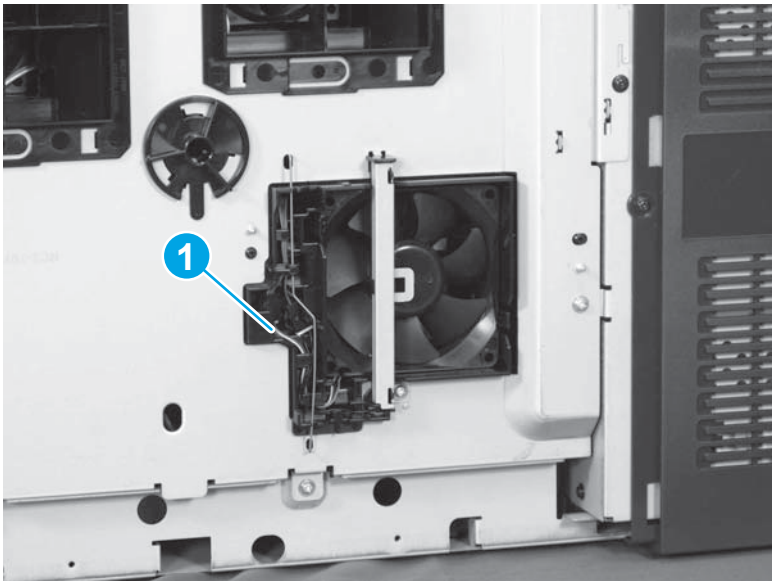
Figure 1-570 Remove the antistatic spring



2. Disconnect one inline connector (callout 1).

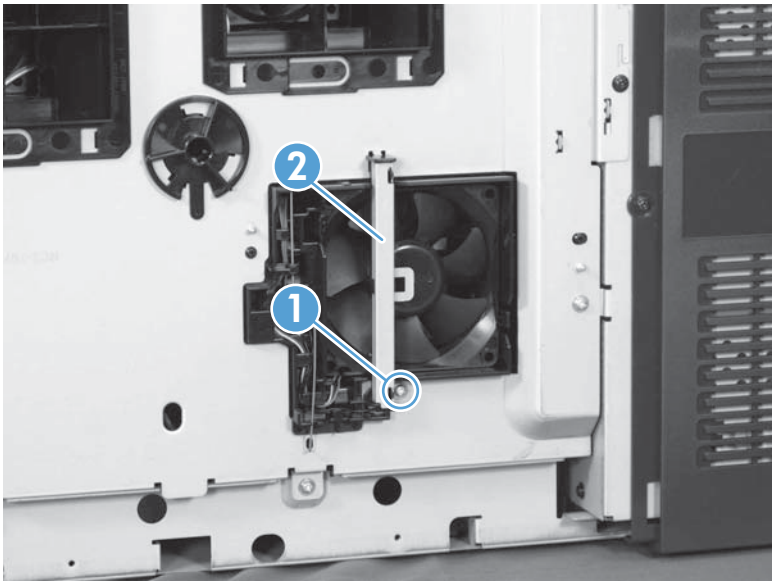
TIP: The correct connector to disconnect is the one attached to the black two-wire harness.

Figure 1-571 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the sensor (callout 2).

Figure 1-572 Remove the temperature sensor



DC controller shield-plate assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover
- Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover
- Step 3: Remove the rear-top cover
- Step 4: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly
- Step 5: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly
- Step 6: Install the rear-top cover
- Step 7: Install the rear-right cover
- Step 8: Install the image scanner cable cover
- Step 9: Turn the product power on

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the DC controller shield-plate assembly.

Before servicing

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

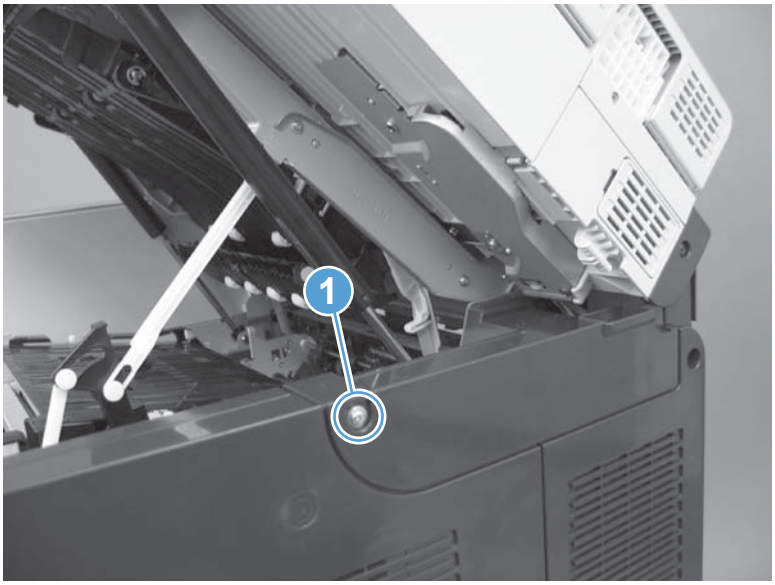
Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover

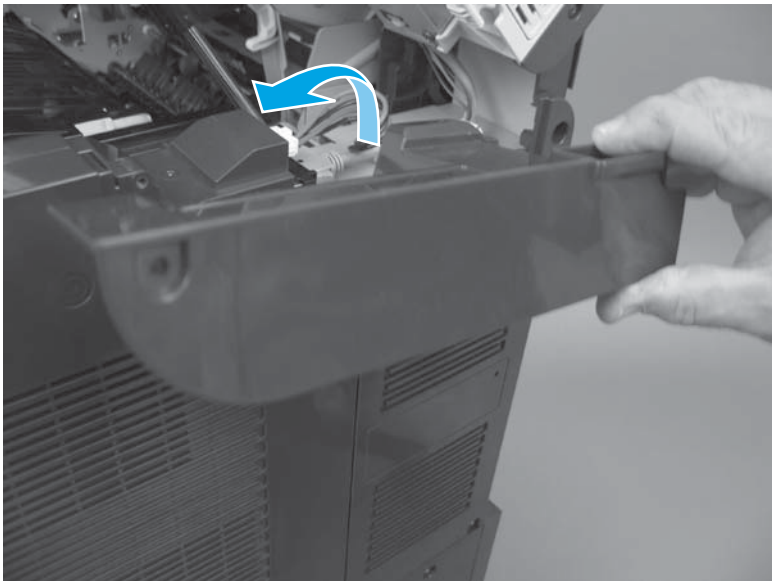
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-573 Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

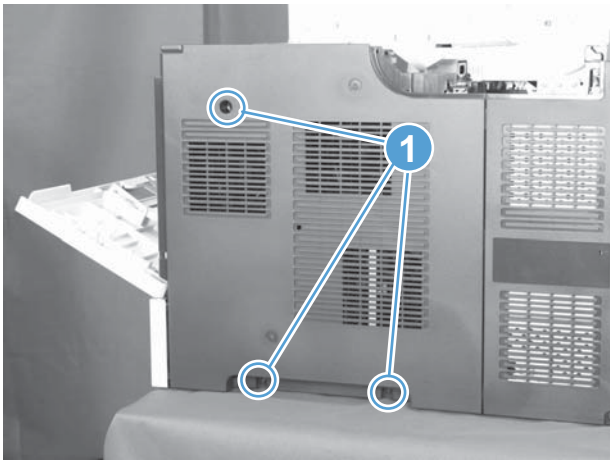
Figure 1-574 Remove the cover



Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover

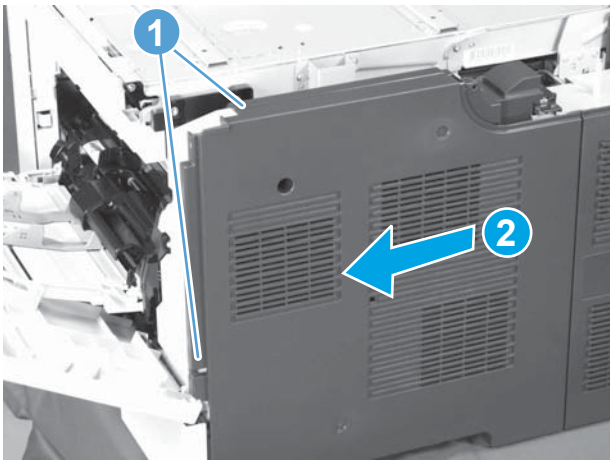
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-575 Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly seperate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-576 Remove the cover

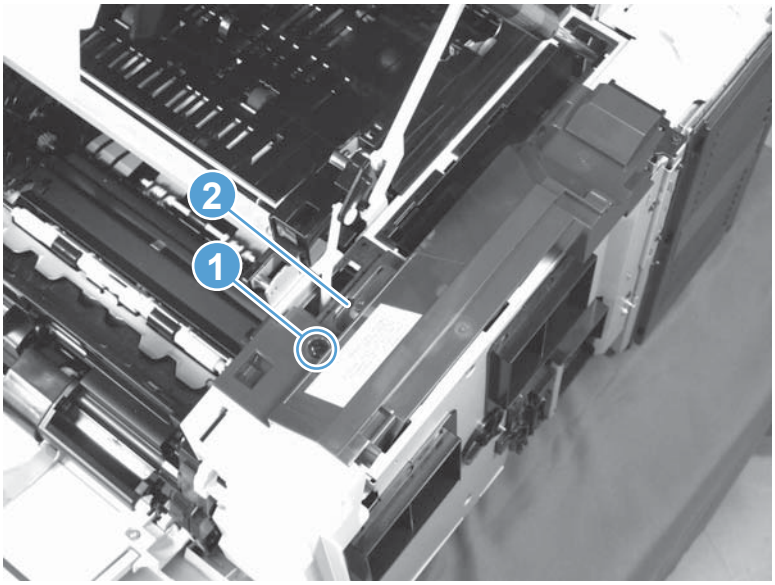


Step 3: Remove the rear-top cover

NOTE: If the top cover is closed, open it now.

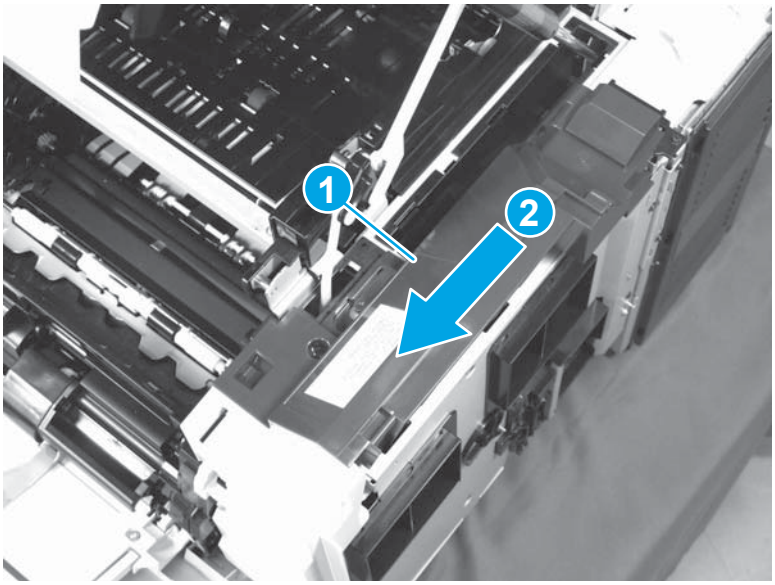
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-577 Remove one screw



2. Push the cover (callout 1) towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-578 Remove the cover

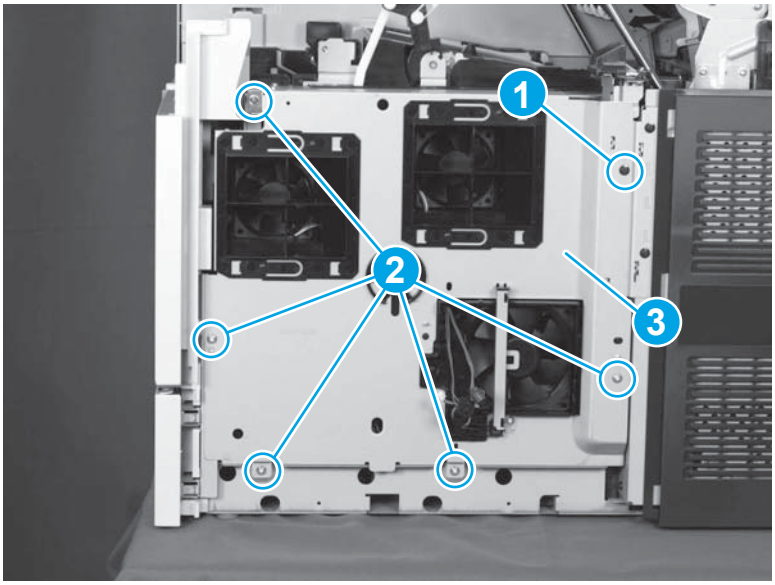


Step 4: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly

1. Remove one black screw (callout 1), remove five silver screws (callout 2), and then slightly rotate the top of the shield (callout 3) away from the product.

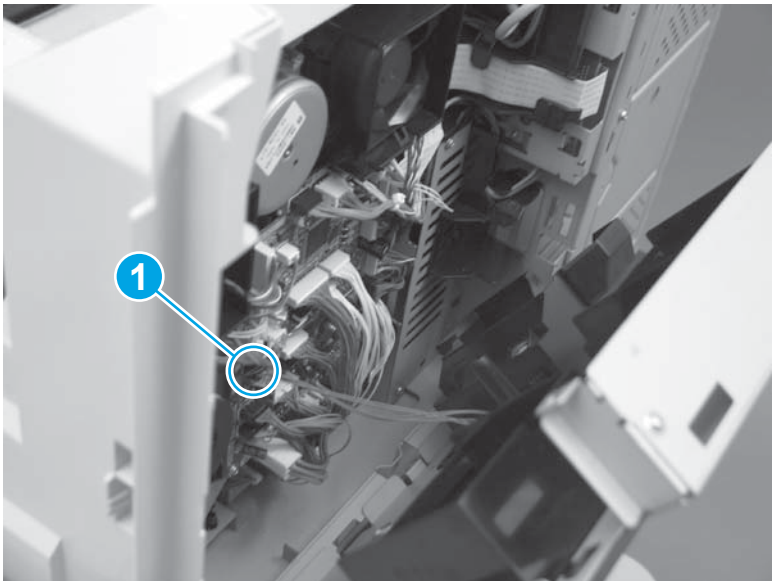
⚠ **CAUTION:** The shield is still connected to the product by a wire harness. Do not completely remove the shield after removing the screws.

Figure 1-579 Remove six screws



2. Disconnect one connector (J42; callout 1) from the DC controller, and then remove the DC controller shield.

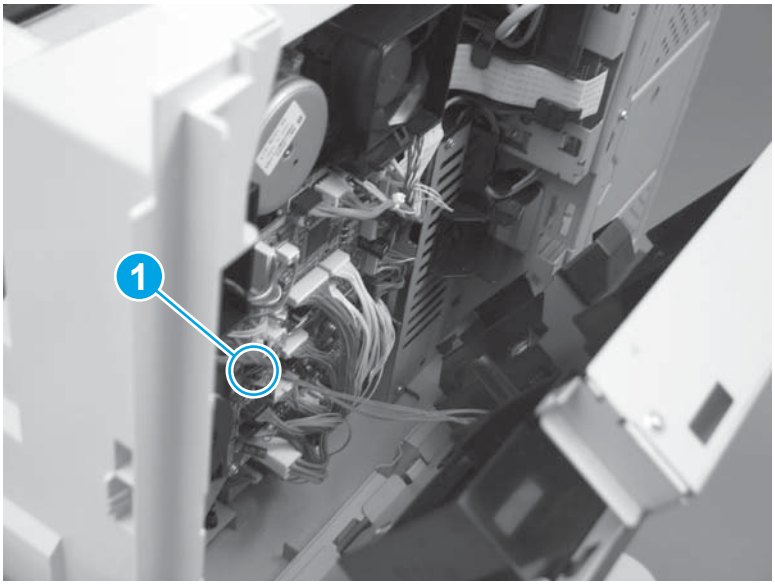
Figure 1-580 Disconnect one connector and remove the shield



Step 5: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly

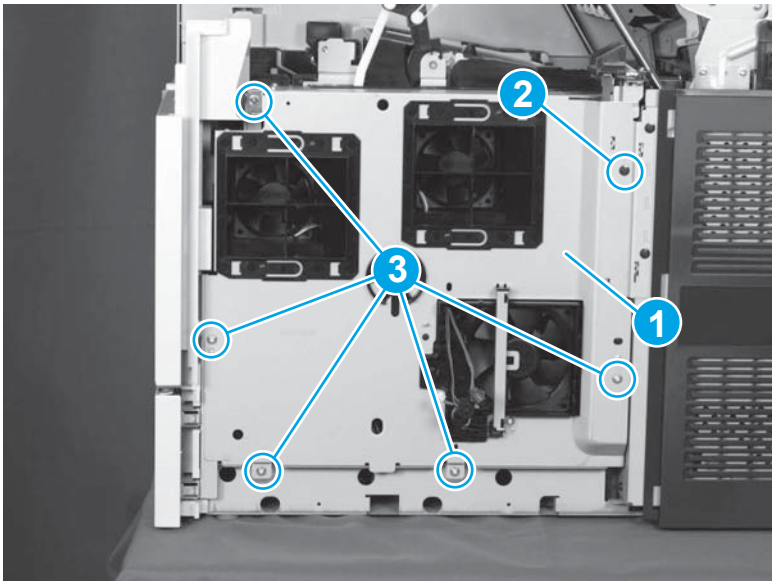
1. Position the shield near the product, and then connect one connector (J42; callout 1).

Figure 1-581 Install the shield and connect one connector



2. Rotate the top of the shield (callout 1) toward the product, install one black screw (callout 2), and then install five silver screws (callout 3).

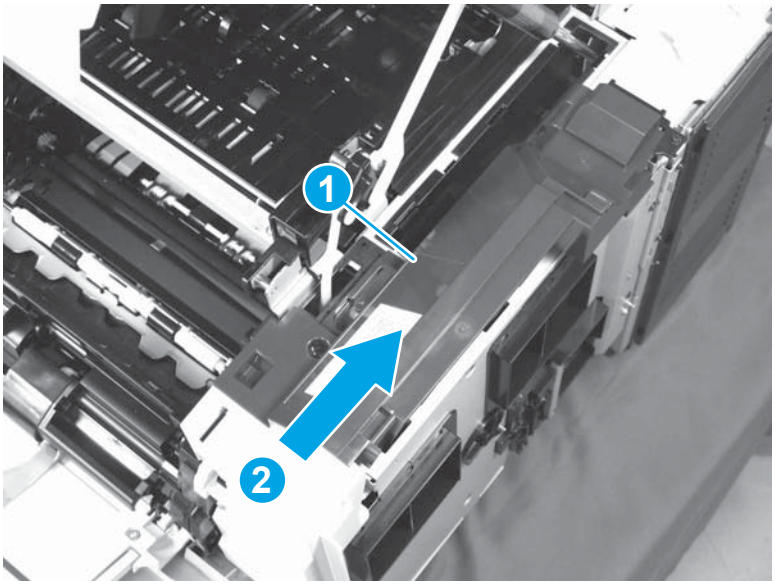
Figure 1-582 Remove six screws



Step 6: Install the rear-top cover

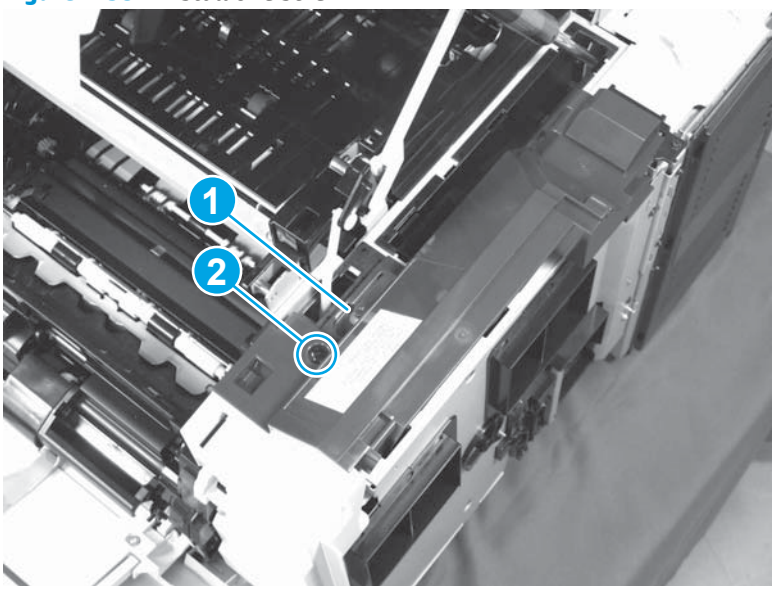
1. Position the cover on the product, Push the cover (callout 1) away Tray 1 to install it (callout 2).

Figure 1-583 Install the cover



2. Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged, and then install one screw (callout 2).

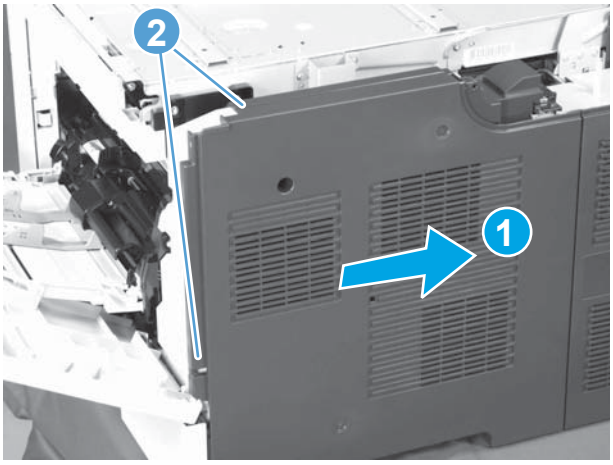
Figure 1-584 Install one screw



Step 7: Install the rear-right cover

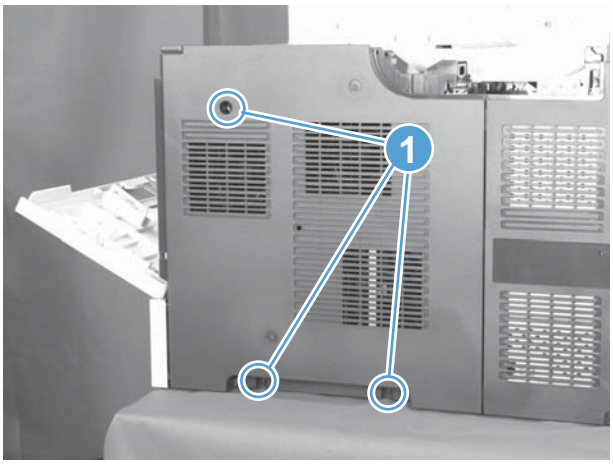
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

Figure 1-585 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

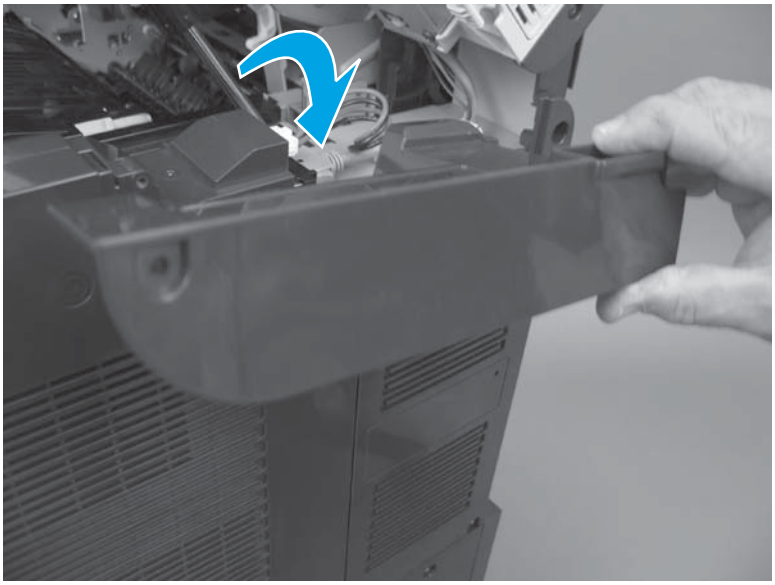
Figure 1-586 Install three screws



Step 8: Install the image scanner cable cover

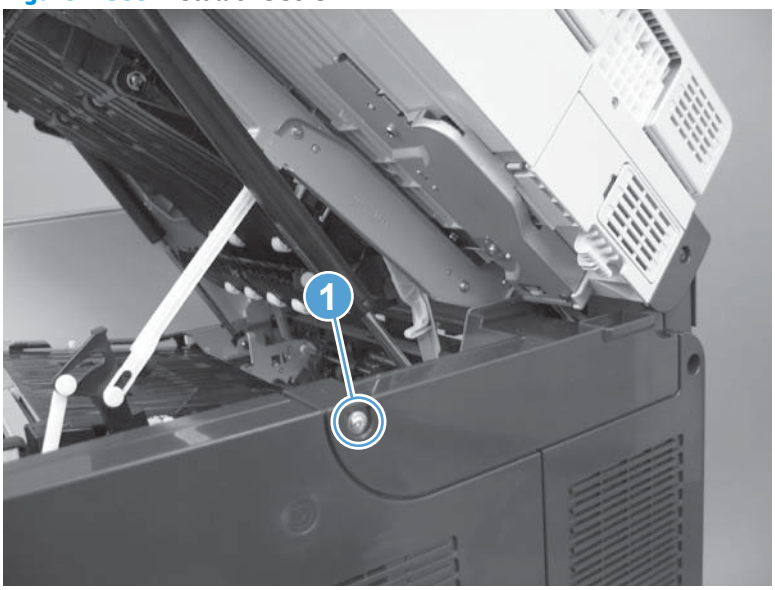
1. Install the cover on the product.

Figure 1-587 Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

Figure 1-588 Install one screw



Step 9: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

DC controller

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover
- Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover
- Step 3: Remove the rear-top cover
- Step 4: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly
- Step 5: Remove the DC controller
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement DC controller
- Step 7: Install the DC controller
- Step 8: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly
- Step 9: Install the rear-top cover
- Step 10: Install the rear-right cover
- Step 11: Install the image scanner cable cover
- Step 12: Turn the product power on
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the DC controller.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

DC controller part number	
RM2-7458-000CN	DC controller

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

IMPORTANT: Do not replace the formatter, DC controller, and hard-disk drive/solid-state memory simultaneously during a single product servicing. Doing so might cause the product to become unstable or inoperable.

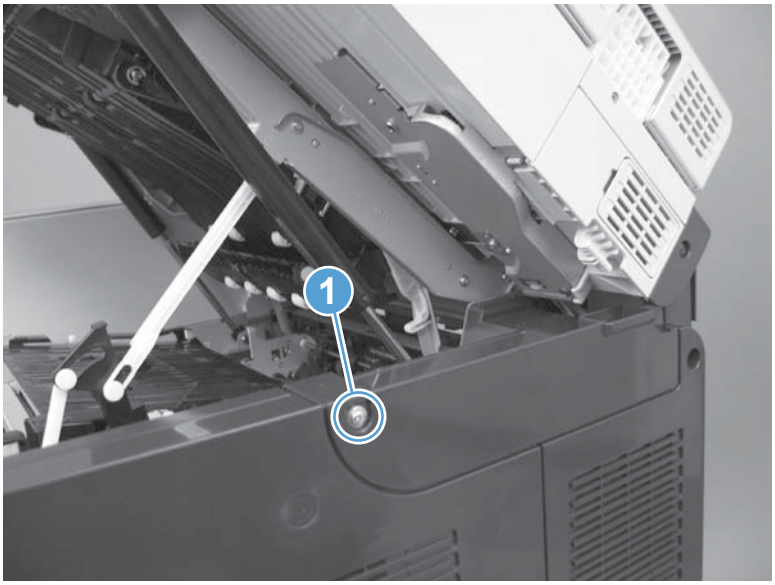
Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover

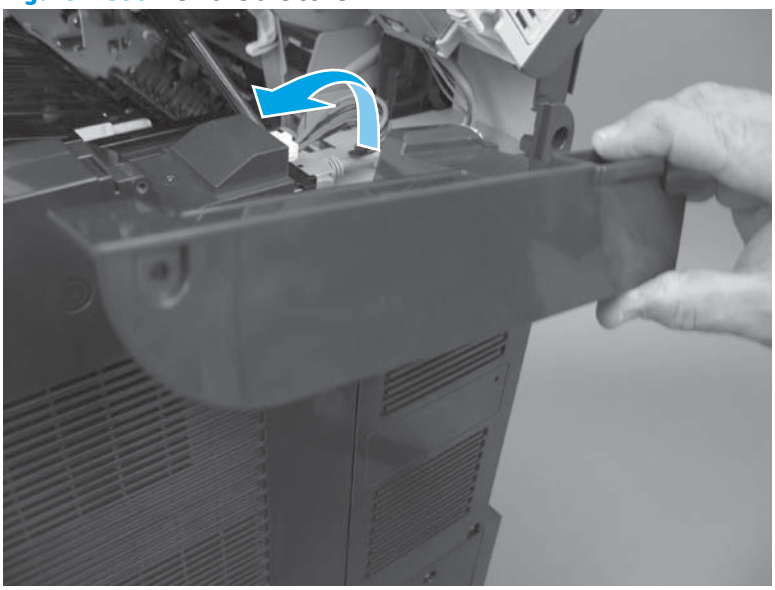
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-589 Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

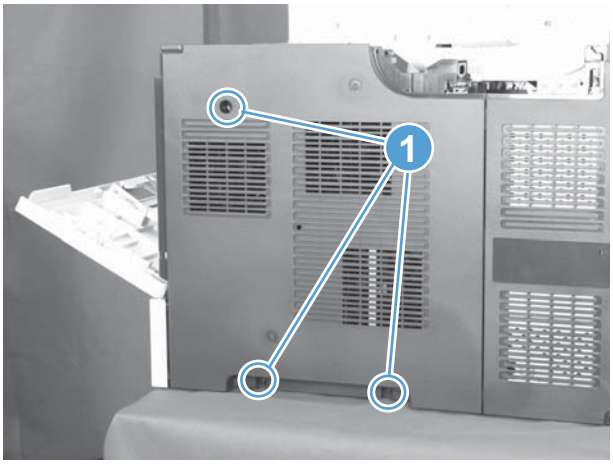
Figure 1-590 Remove the cover



Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover

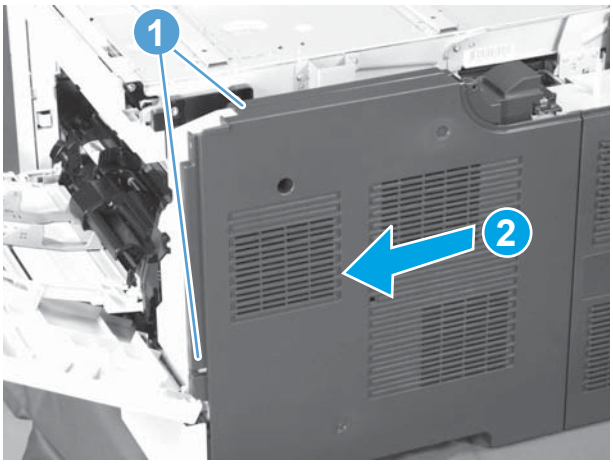
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-591 Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly seperate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-592 Remove the cover

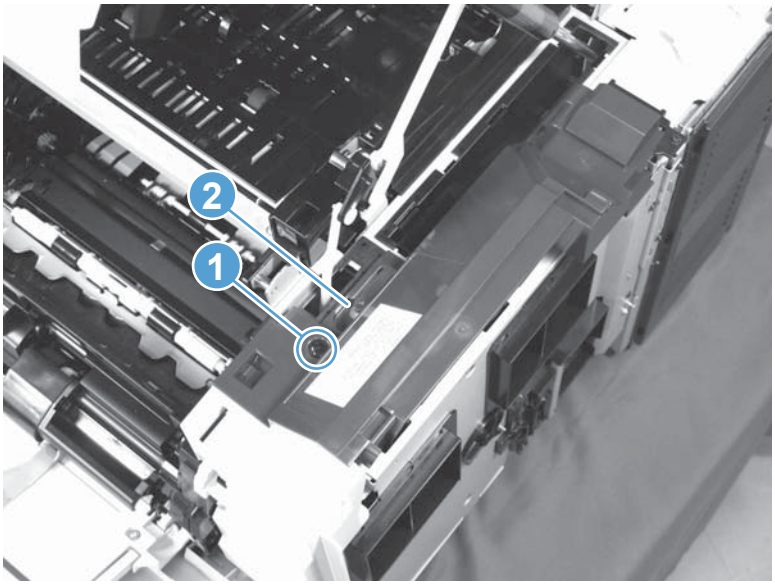


Step 3: Remove the rear-top cover

NOTE: If the top cover is closed, open it now.

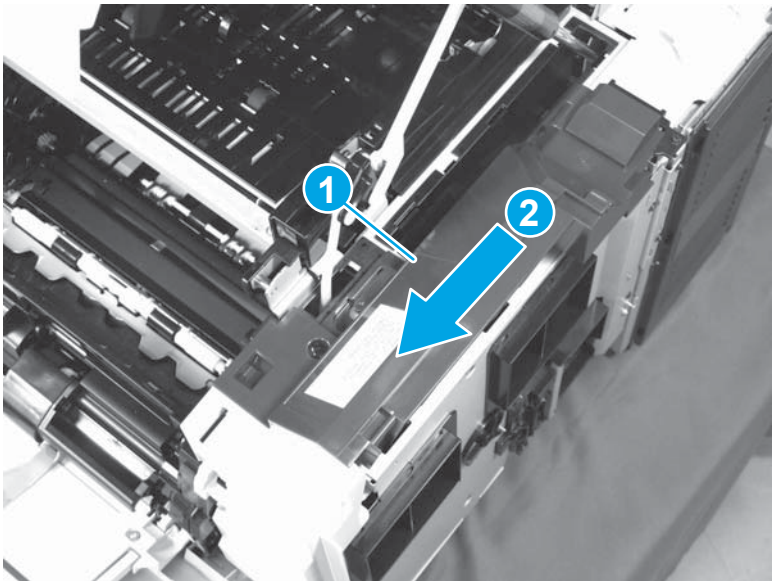
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-593 Remove one screw



2. Push the cover (callout 1) towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-594 Remove the cover

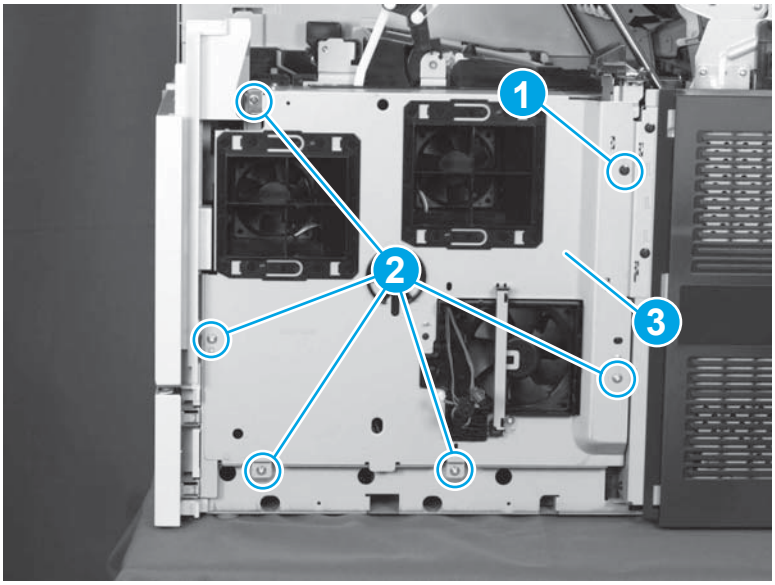


Step 4: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly

1. Remove one black screw (callout 1), remove five silver screws (callout 2), and then slightly rotate the top of the shield (callout 3) away from the product.

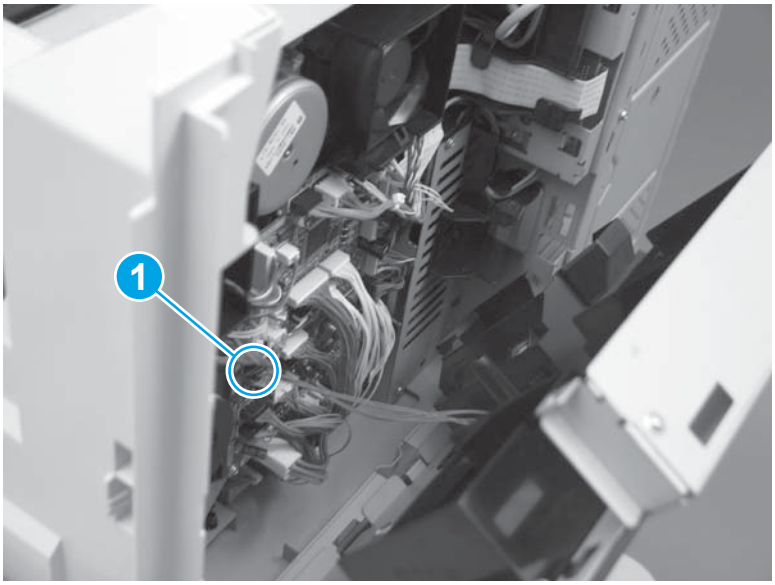
⚠ **CAUTION:** The shield is still connected to the product by a wire harness. Do not completely remove the shield after removing the screws.

Figure 1-595 Remove six screws



2. Disconnect one connector (J42; callout 1) from the DC controller, and then remove the DC controller shield.

Figure 1-596 Disconnect one connector and remove the shield

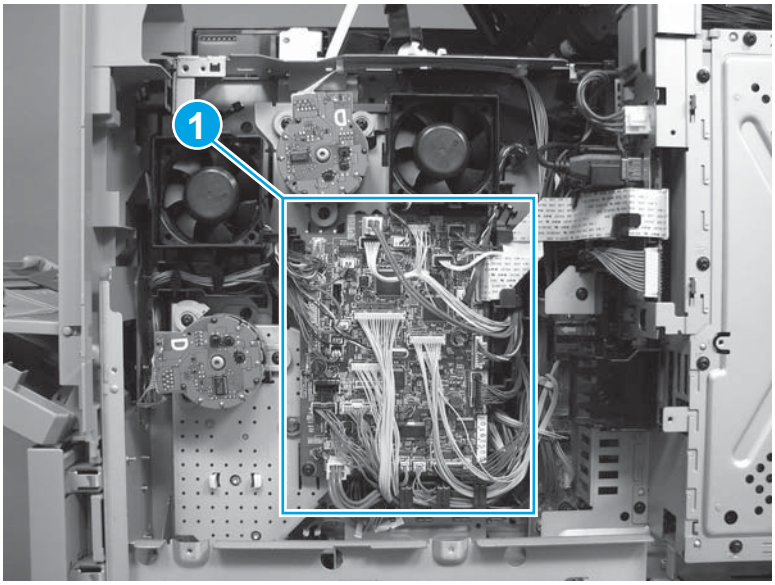


Step 5: Remove the DC controller

1. Disconnect all of the connectors (callout 1) on the DC controller.
   - 34 wire-harness connectors
   - 1 flat-flexible cable (FFC)

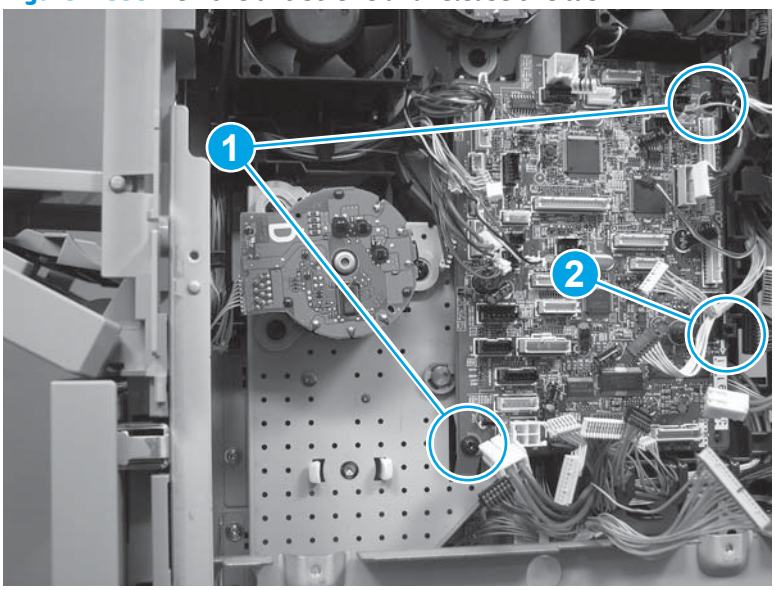
Reinstallation tip: When the DC controller is reinstalled, connectors J42, J59, and J80 are empty.

Figure 1-597 Disconnect all of the connectors



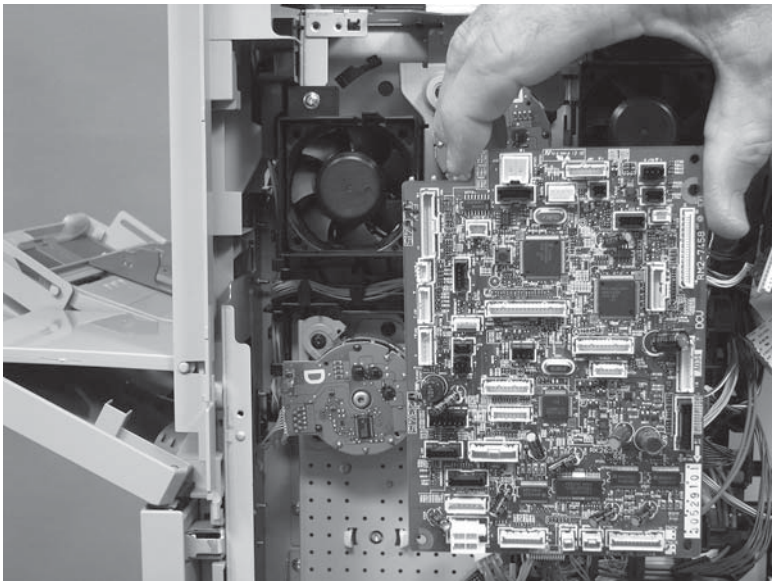
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-598 Remove two screws and release one tab



3. Remove the DC controller.

Figure 1-599 Remove the DC controller



Step 6: Unpack the replacement DC controller

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

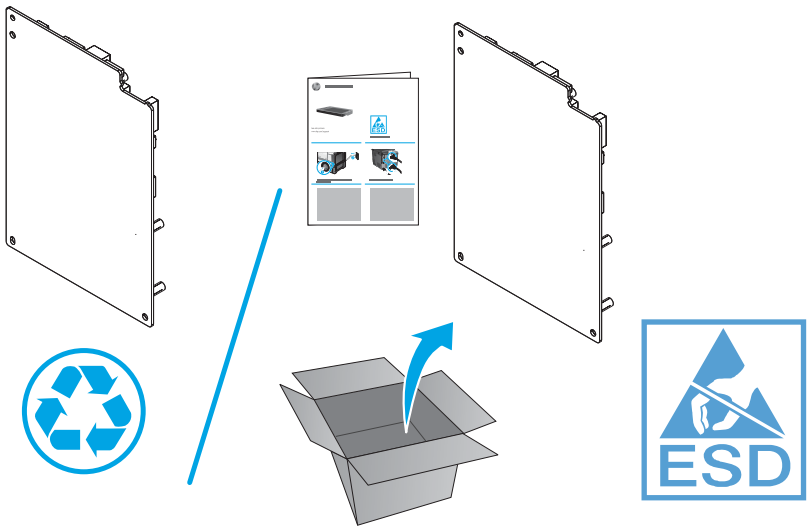
www.Product return and recycling.

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

Discharge body static before handling the replacement assembly.

Handle the replacement assembly by the edges. Avoid direct contact with the circuit potion of the assembly.

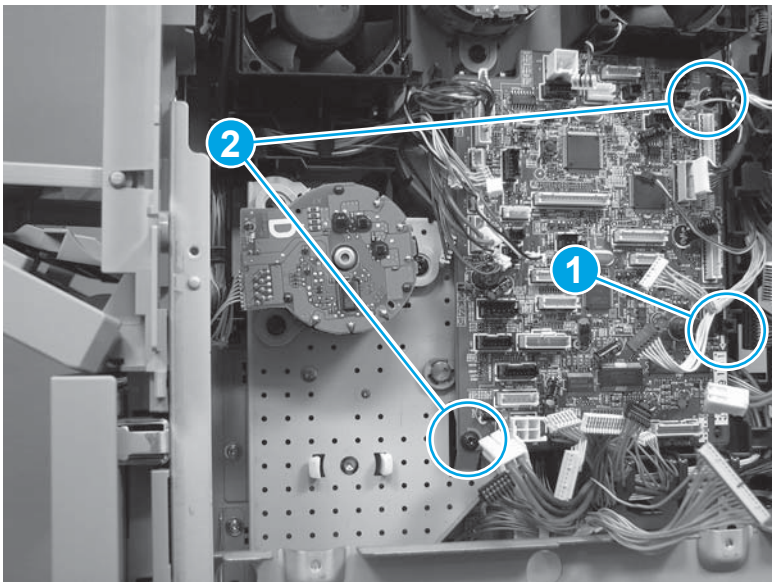
NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 7: Install the DC controller

1. Position the DC controller on the product, engage one tab (callout 1), and then install two screws (callout 2).

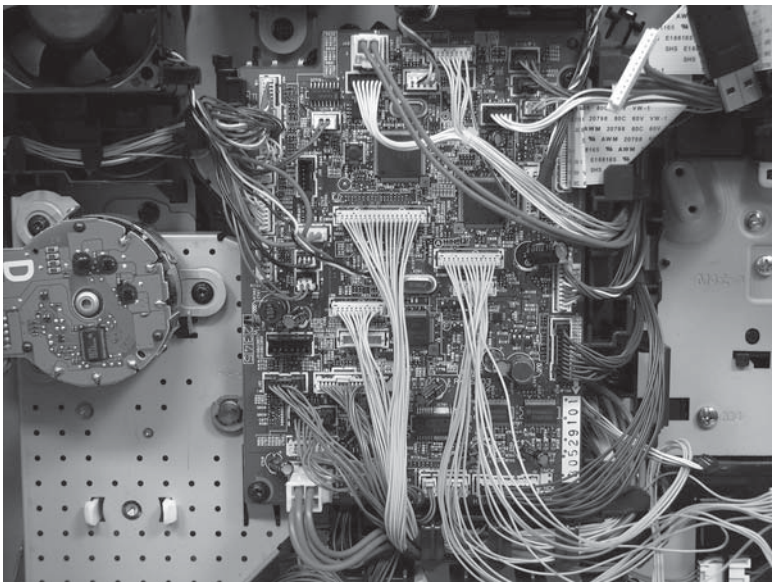
Figure 1-600 Install the DC controller



2. Connect all of the connectors on the DC controller.
   - 34 wire-harness connectors
   - 1 flat-flexible cable (FFC)

Reinstallation tip: Connectors J42, J59, and J80 are empty.

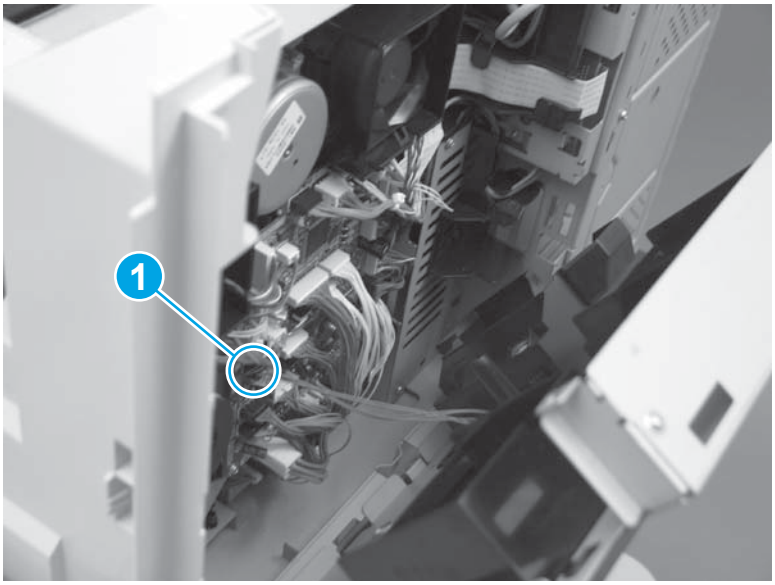
Figure 1-601 Connect all of the connectors



Step 8: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly

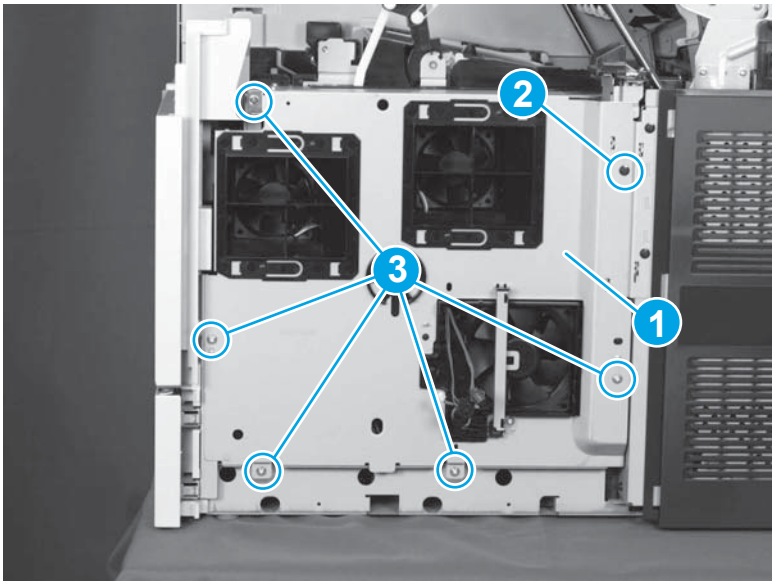
1. Position the shield near the product, and then connect one connector (J42; callout 1).

Figure 1-602 Install the shield and connect one connector



2. Rotate the top of the shield (callout 1) toward the product, install one black screw (callout 2), and then install five silver screws (callout 3).

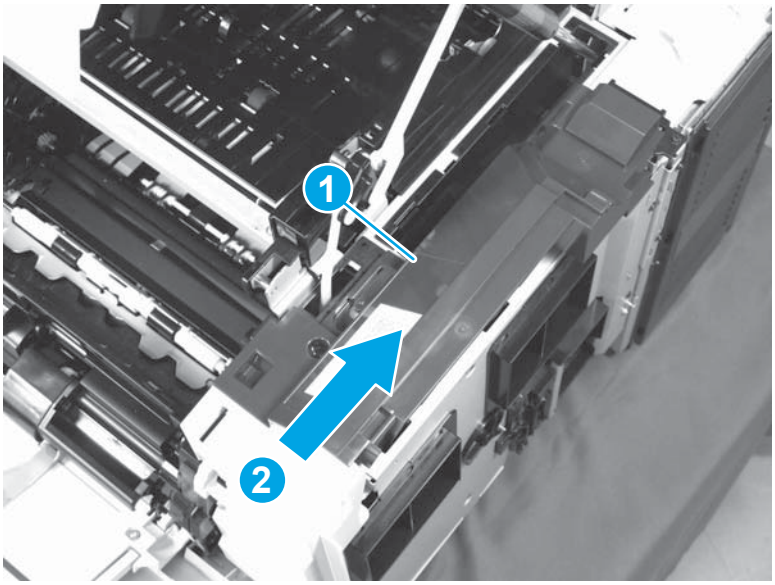
Figure 1-603 Remove six screws



Step 9: Install the rear-top cover

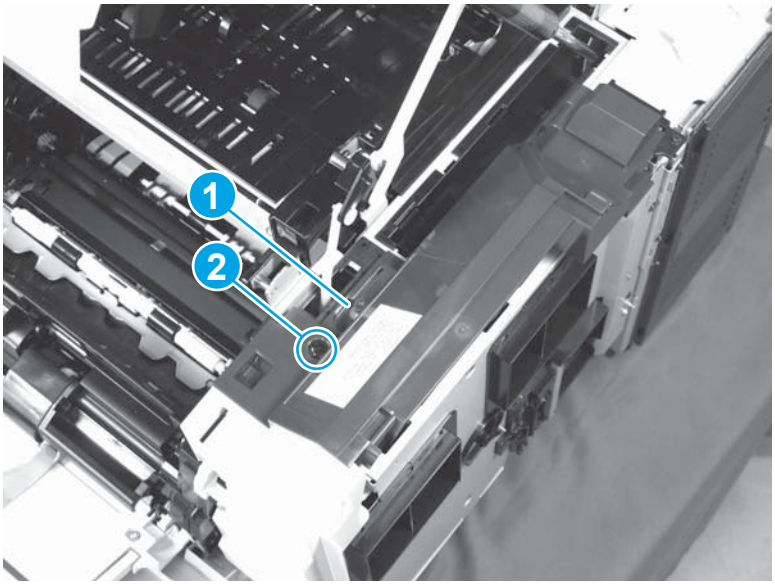
1. Position the cover on the product, Push the cover (callout 1) away Tray 1 to install it (callout 2).

Figure 1-604 Install the cover



2. Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged, and then install one screw (callout 2).

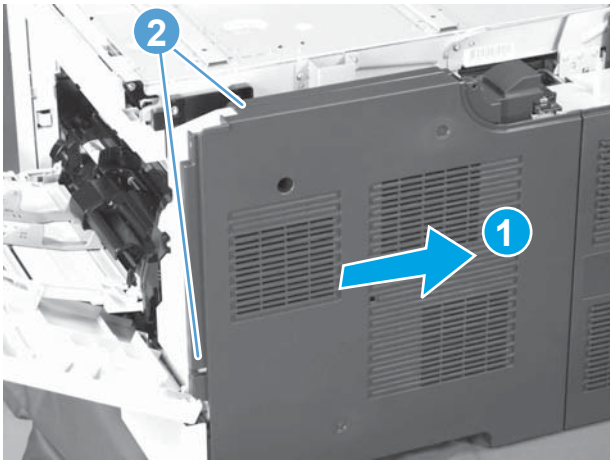
Figure 1-605 Install one screw



Step 10: Install the rear-right cover

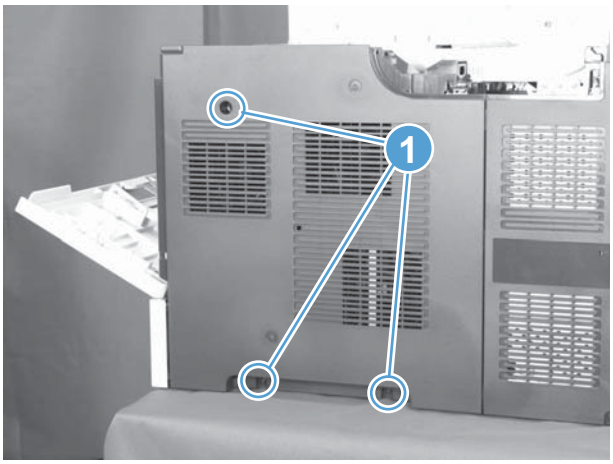
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

Figure 1-606 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

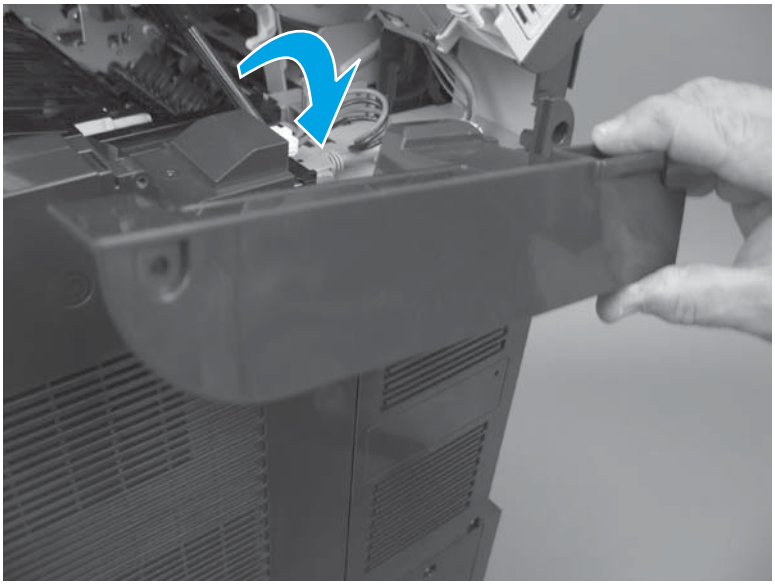
Figure 1-607 Install three screws



Step 11: Install the image scanner cable cover

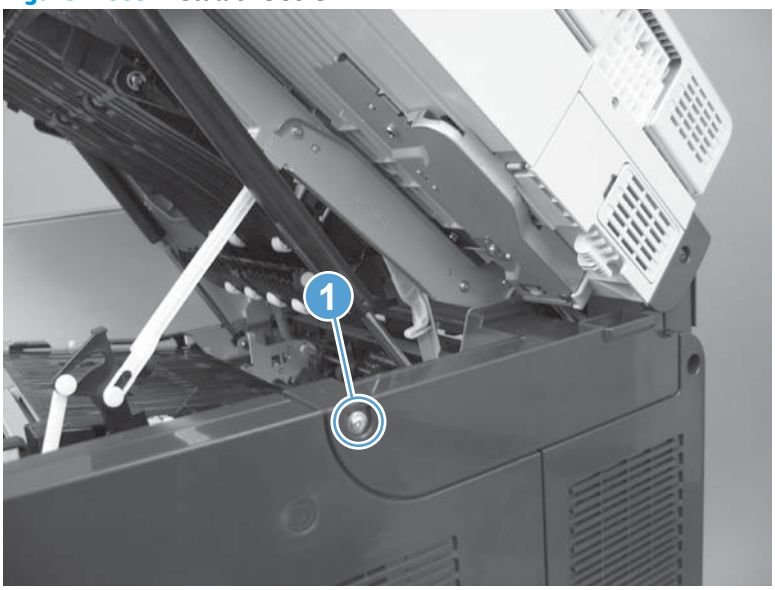
1. Install the cover on the product.

Figure 1-608 Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

Figure 1-609 Install one screw



Step 12: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Tray 1 pickup assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover
- Step 2: Remove the rear-top cover
- Step 3: Remove the Tray 1 cover
- Step 4: Remove the rear-right cover
- Step 5: Remove the right-lower door
- Step 6: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly
- Step 7: Remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly
- Step 8: Unpack the replacement Tray 1 pickup assembly
- Step 9: Install the Tray 1 pickup assembly
- Step 10: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly
- Step 11: Install the right-lower door
- Step 12: Install the rear-right cover
- Step 13: Install the Tray 1 cover
- Step 14: Install the rear-top cover
- Step 15: Install the image scanner cable cover
- Step 16: Turn the product power on
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the Tray 1 pickup assembly.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Tray 1 pickup assembly part number	
RM2-5822-000CN	Tray 1 pickup assembly

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

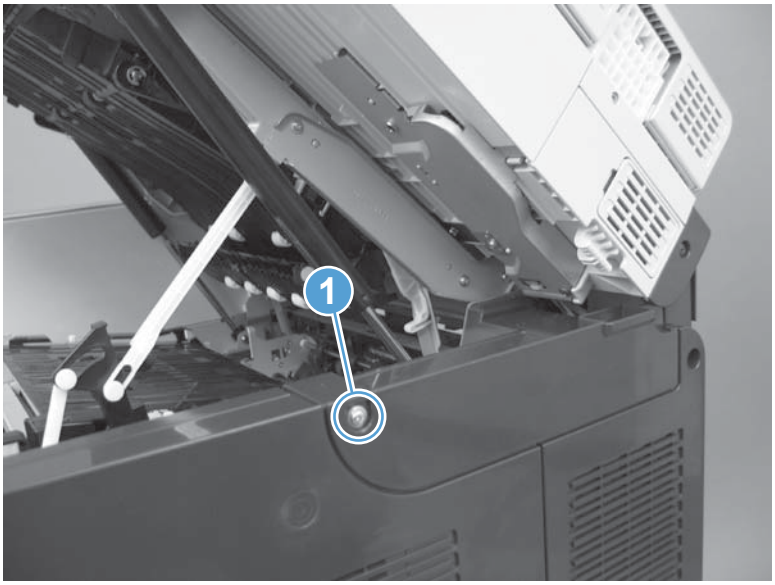
Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover

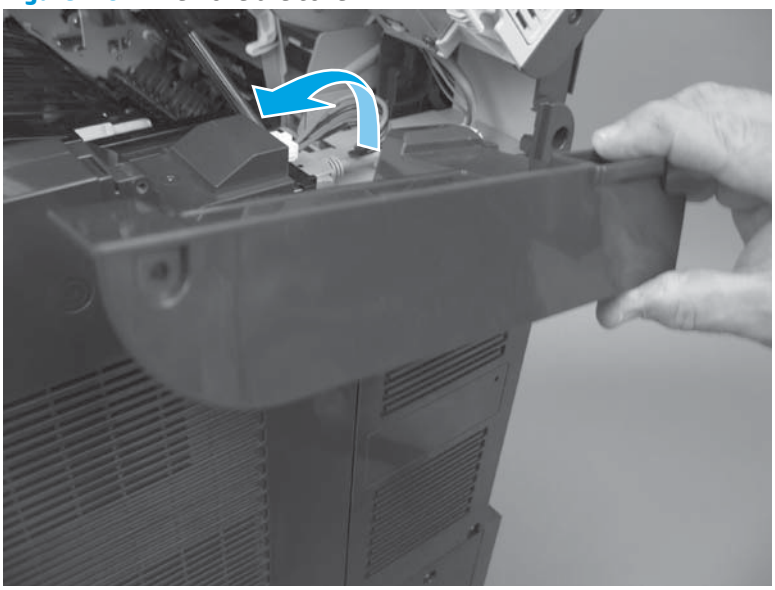
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-610 Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

Figure 1-611 Remove the cover

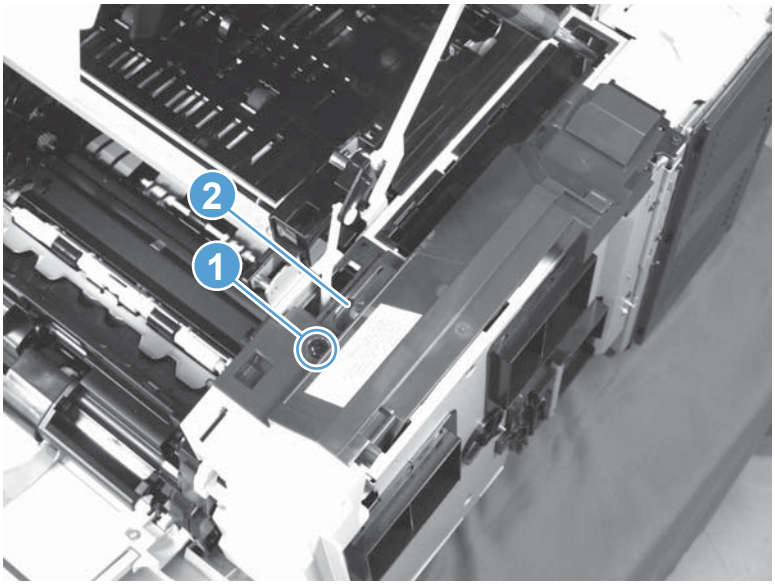


Step 2: Remove the rear-top cover

NOTE: If the top cover is closed, open it now.

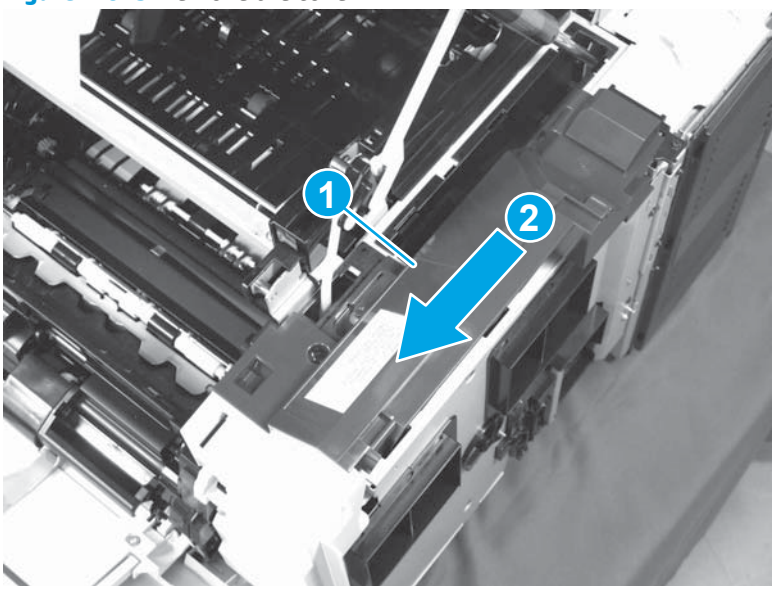
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-612 Remove one screw



2. Push the cover (callout 1) towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

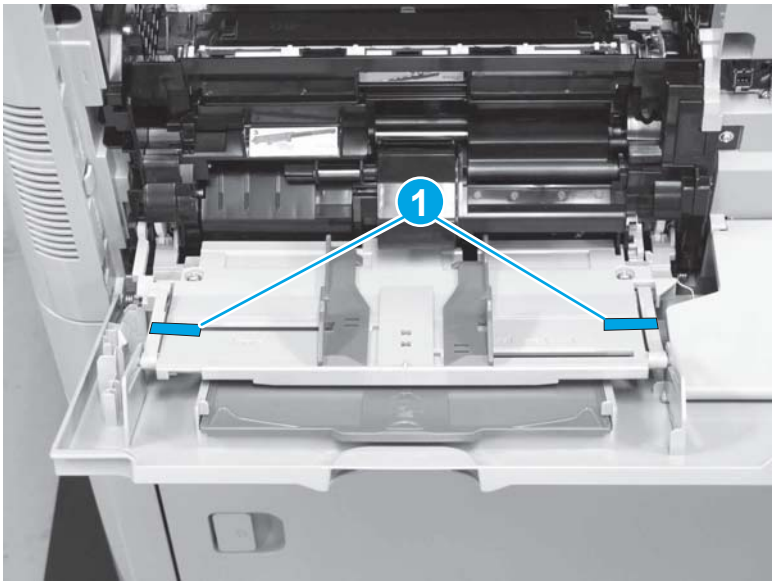
Figure 1-613 Remove the cover



Step 3: Remove the Tray 1 cover

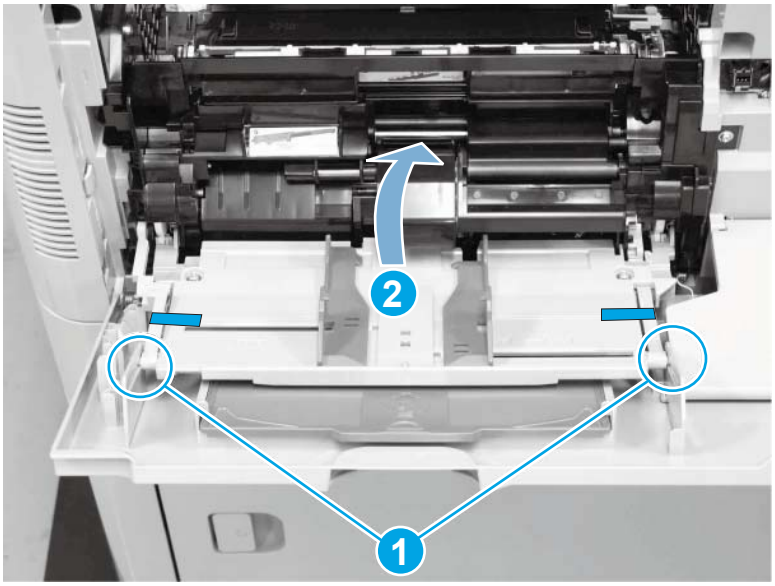
1. Use low adhesive tape to secure the outer retaining pins (callout 1) to the inner tray.

Figure 1-614 Secure the outer retaining pins



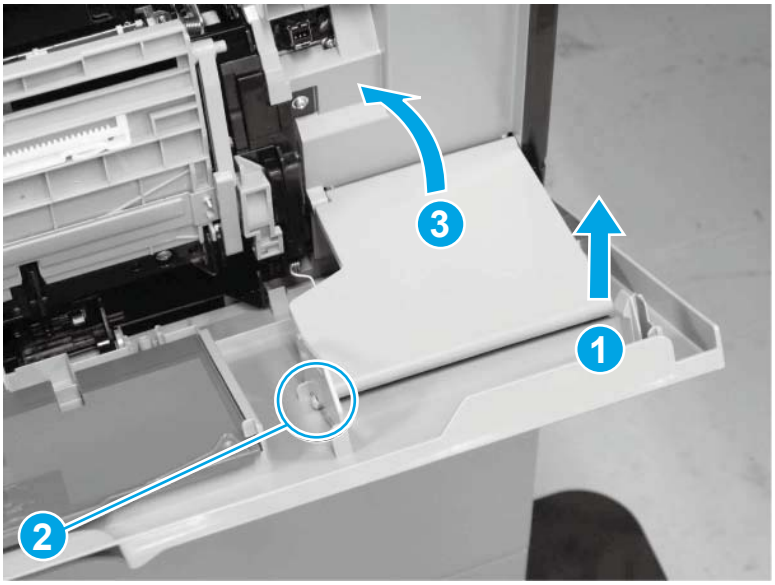
2. Open Tray 1, release the two outer retaining pins (callout 1) on the cover, and then carefully fold the inner tray up (callout 2) and into the product to protect it.

Figure 1-615 Release two outer retaining pins



3. Carefully lift on the outer corner of the tray inner cover (callout 1) to release one pin (callout 2) from the guide, and then fold the inner cover up (callout 3) and into the product.

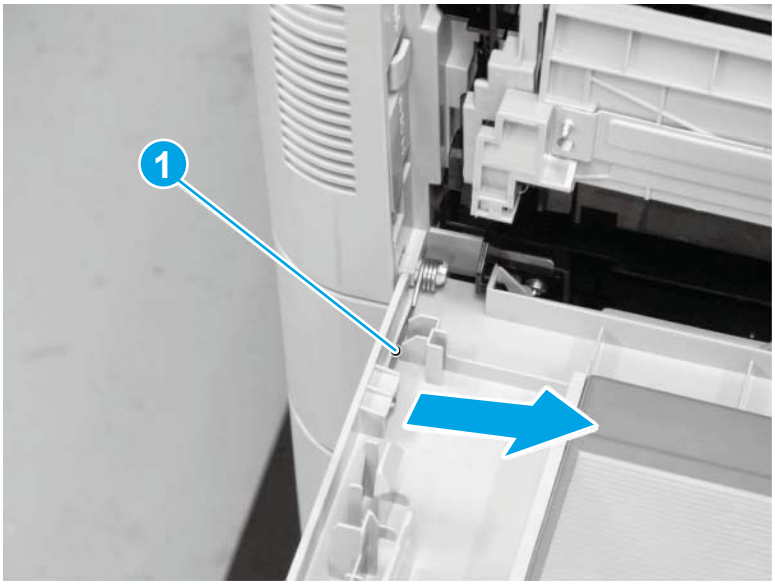
Figure 1-616 Release one pin



4. Release the left-side spring arm (callout 1).

⚠ **CAUTION:** The spring is not captive when the spring arm is released and can be dislodged and lost.

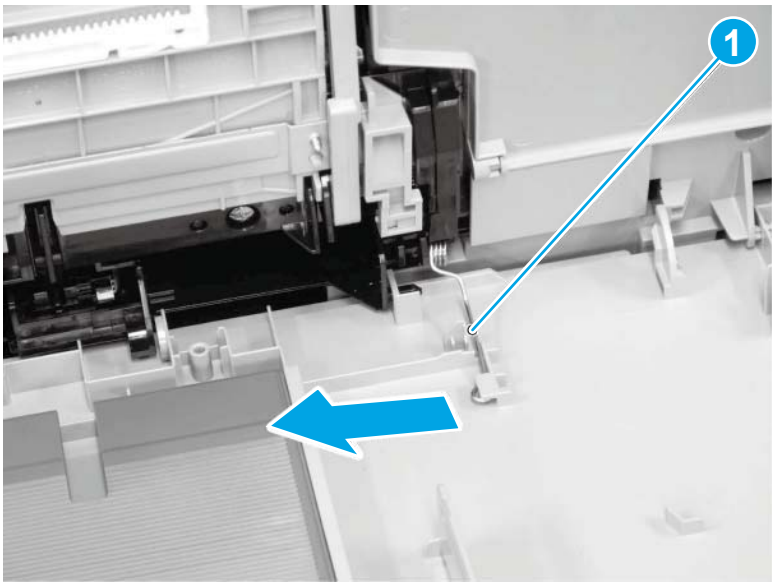
Figure 1-617 Release the left-side spring



5. Release the right-side spring arm (callout 1).

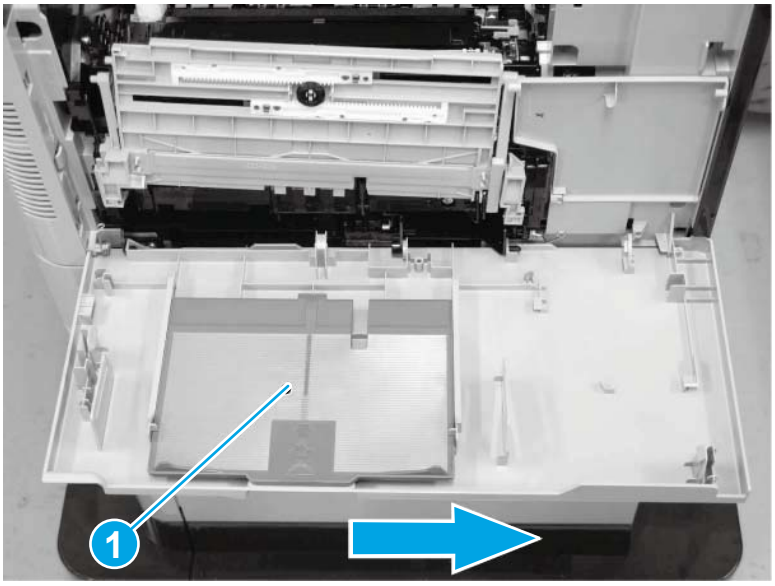
CAUTION: The spring is not captive when the spring arm is released and can be dislodged and lost.

Figure 1-618 Release the right-side spring



6. Slide the cover (callout 1) toward the back of the product to release it, and then remove the cover.

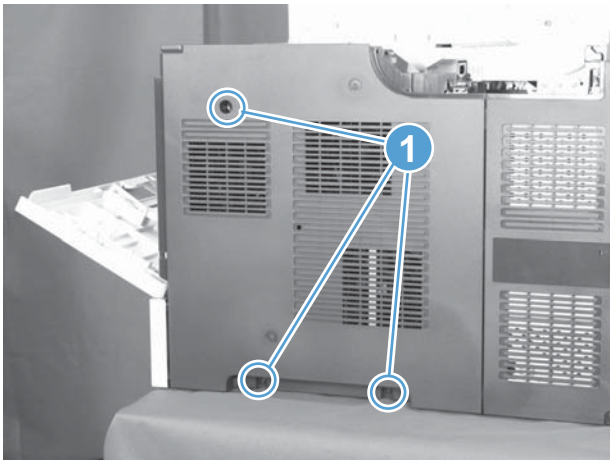
Figure 1-619 Remove the cover



Step 4: Remove the rear-right cover

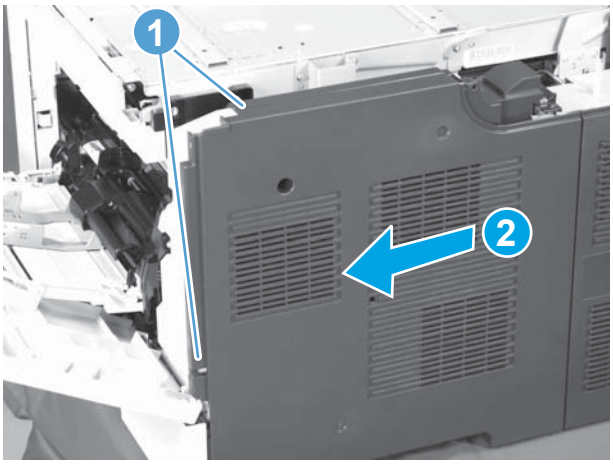
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-620 Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly seperate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

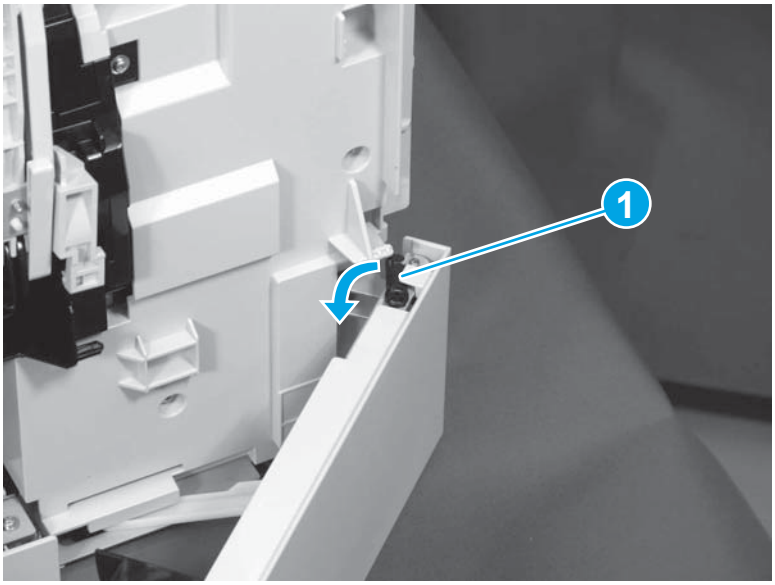
Figure 1-621 Remove the cover



Step 5: Remove the right-lower door

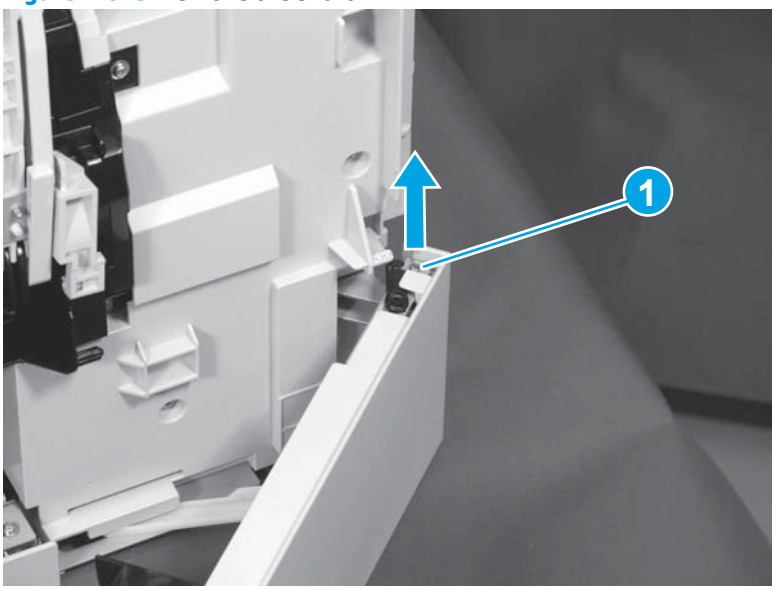
1. Open the right-lower door, and then rotate the stopper (callout 1) to release it.

Figure 1-622 Rotate the stopper



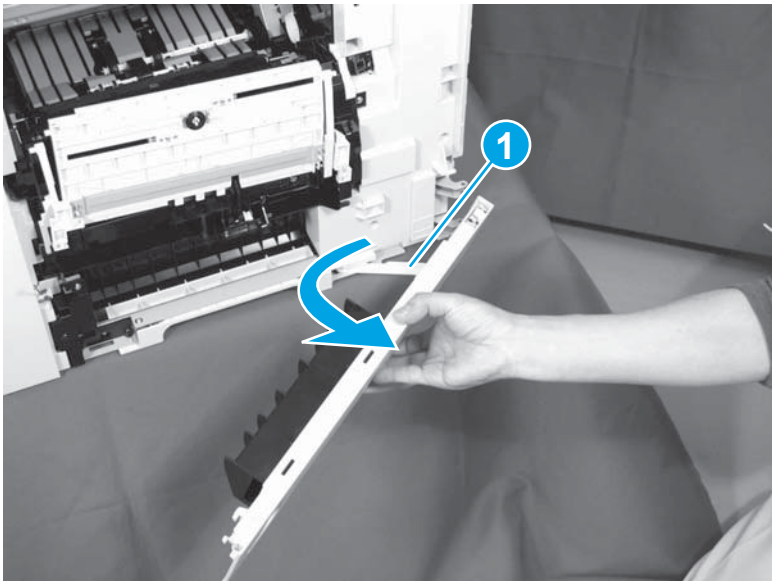
2. Support the door, and then remove the shaft (callout 1).

Figure 1-623 Remove the shaft



3. Release the door-retainer arm (callout 1) by sliding it toward the front of the product, and then remove the door.

Figure 1-624 Remove the door

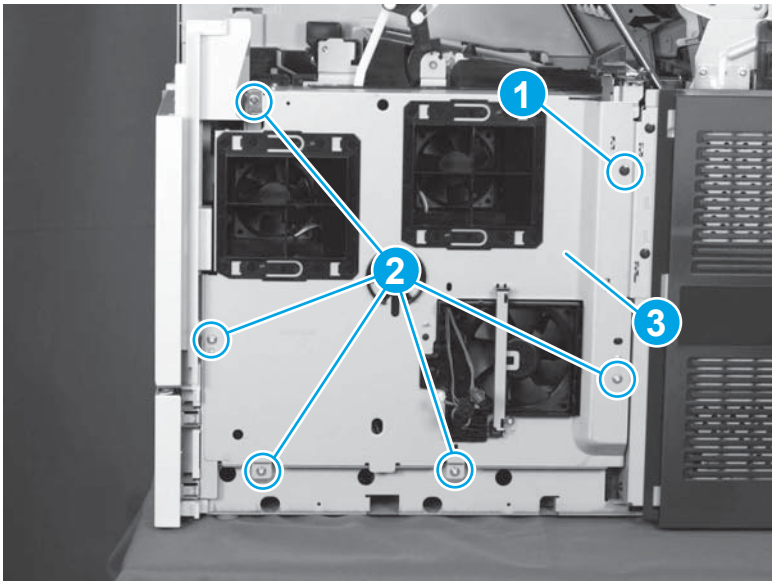


Step 6: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly

1. Remove one black screw (callout 1), remove five silver screws (callout 2), and then slightly rotate the top of the shield (callout 3) away from the product.

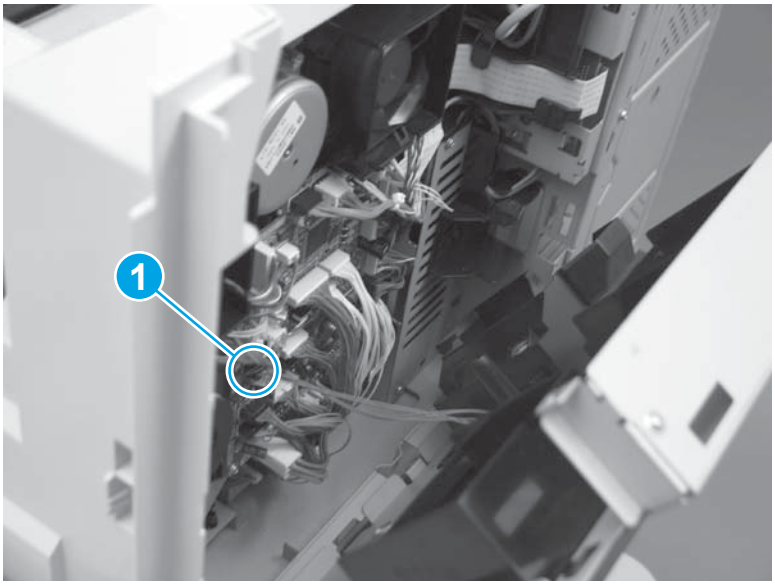
CAUTION: The shield is still connected to the product by a wire harness. Do not completely remove the shield after removing the screws.

Figure 1-625 Remove six screws



2. Disconnect one connector (J42; callout 1) from the DC controller, and then remove the DC controller shield.

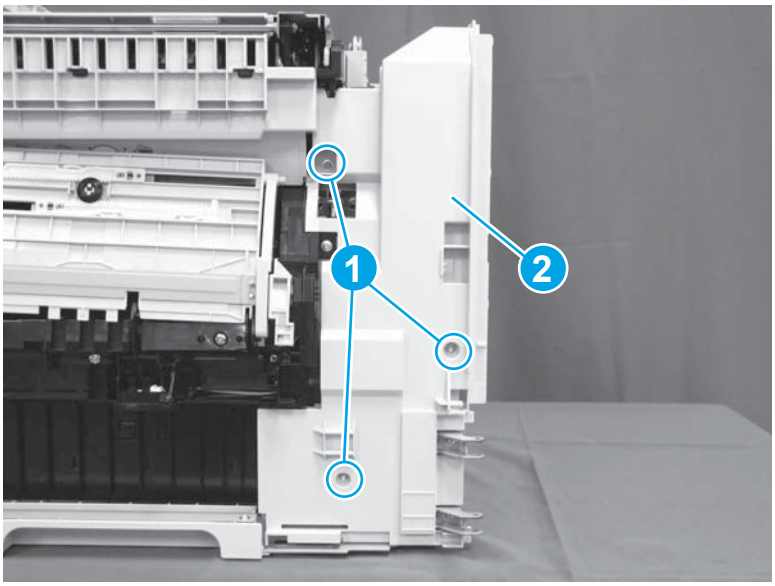
Figure 1-626 Disconnect one connector and remove the shield



Step 7: Remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly

1. Remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the Tray 1 gear cover (callout 2).

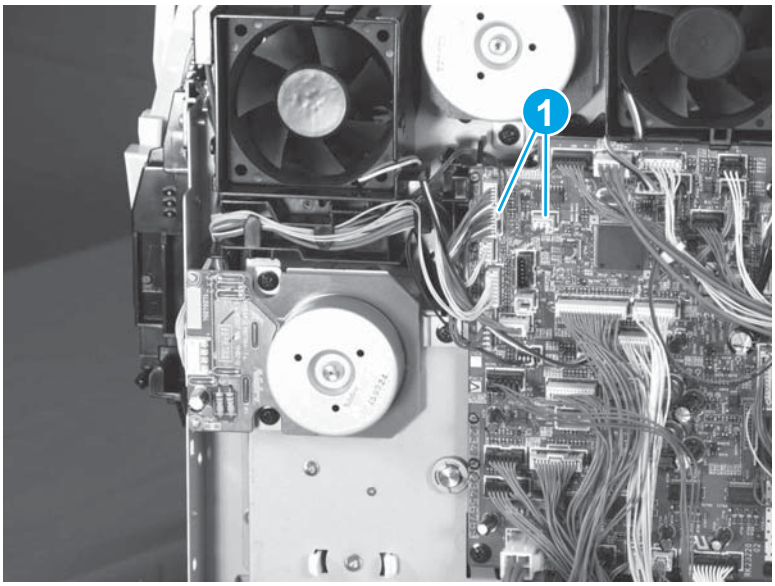
Figure 1-627 Remove three screws and the Tray 1 gear cover



2. Disconnect two connectors (J71 and J81; callout 1).

NOTE: The feed motor is shown installed in the figure below, but it has been removed earlier in this procedure.

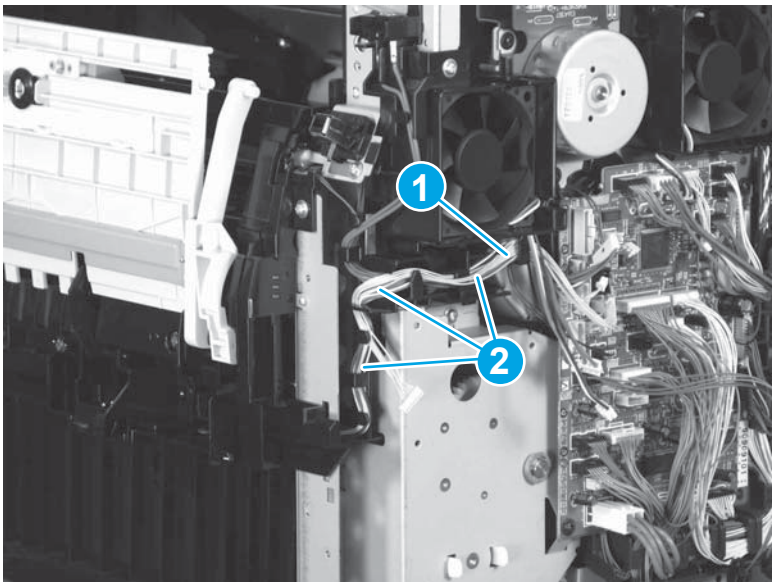
Figure 1-628 Disconnect two connectors



3. Release the wire harnesses (callout 1) from the guide (callout 2).

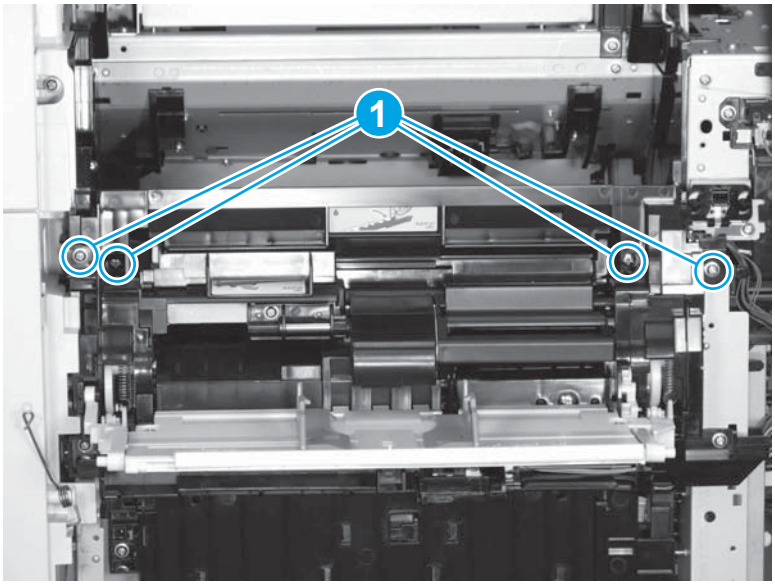
NOTE: The feed motor is shown removed in the figure below, but it does not need to be removed.

Figure 1-629 Release the wire harnesses



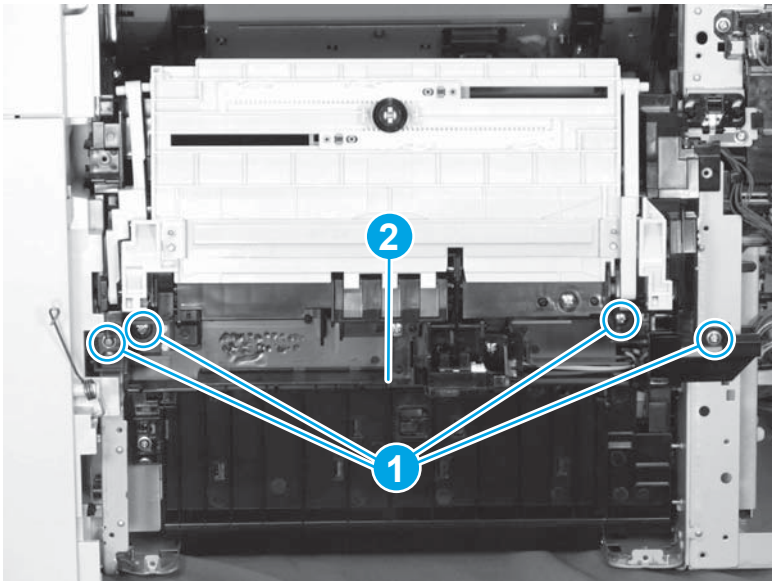
4. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-630 Remove four screws



5. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-631 Remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly

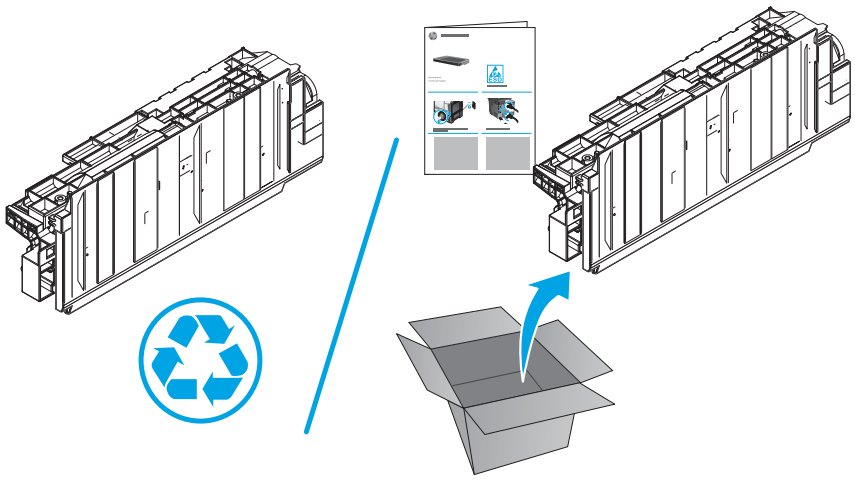


Step 8: Unpack the replacement Tray 1 pickup assembly

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

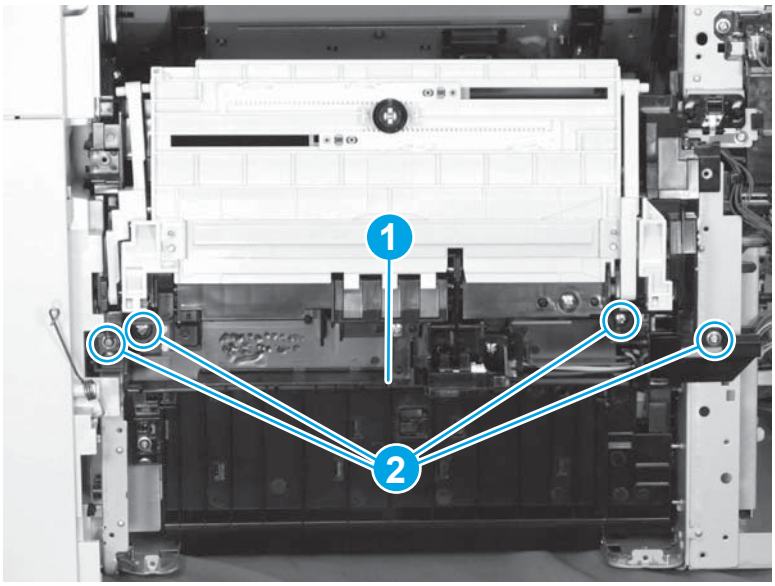
NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 9: Install the Tray 1 pickup assembly

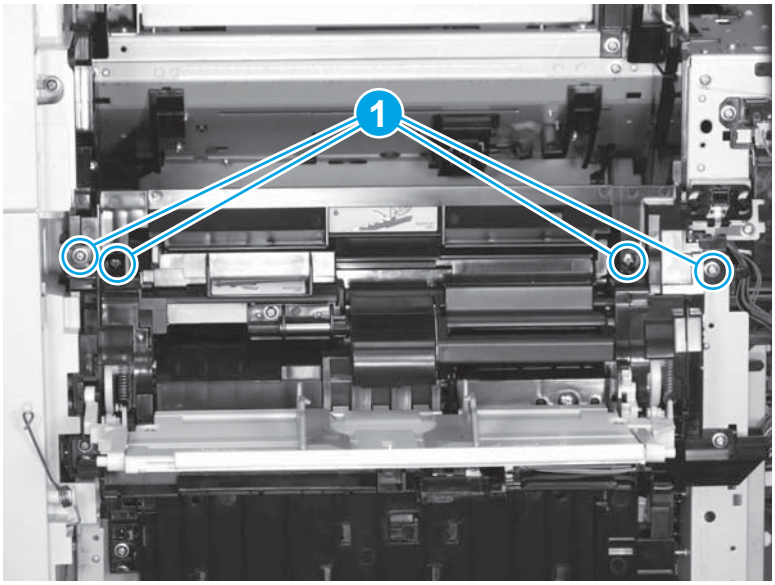
1. Position the Tray 1 pickup assembly (callout 1) on the product, and then install four screws (callout 2).

Figure 1-632 Install the Tray 1 pickup assembly



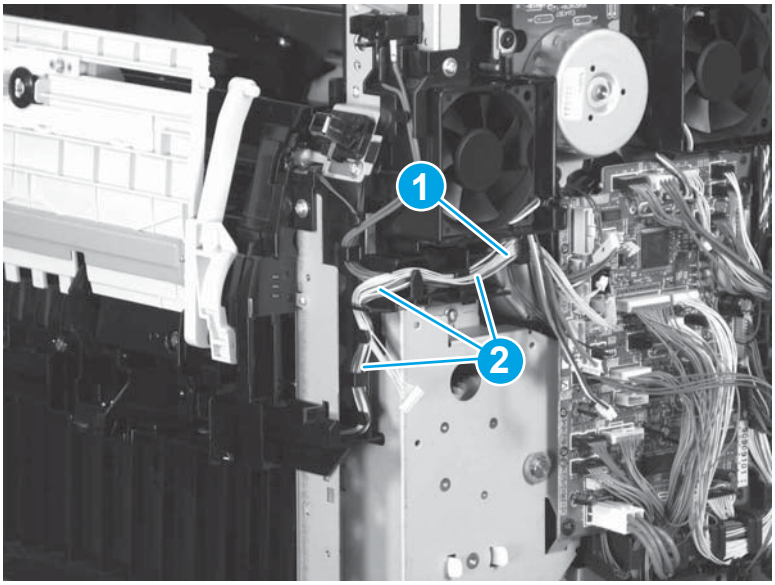
2. Install four screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-633 Install four screws



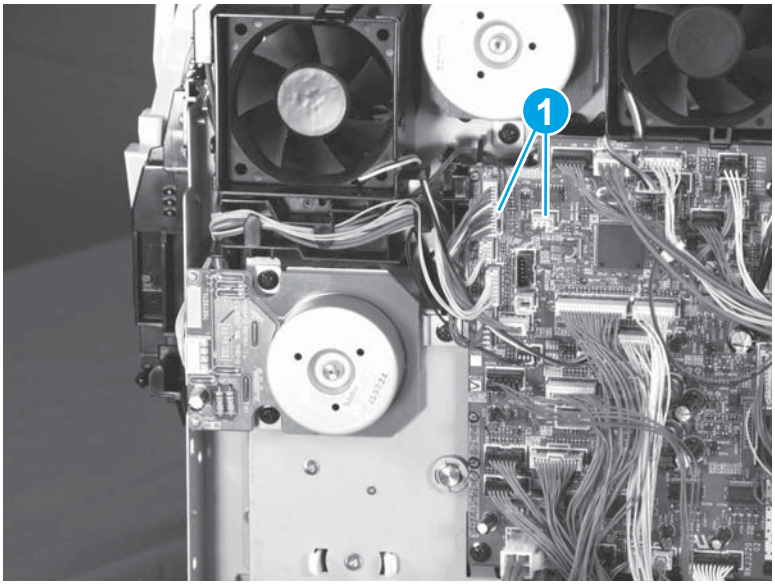
3. Install the wire harnesses (callout 1) in the guide (callout 2).

Figure 1-634 Install the wire harnesses in the guide



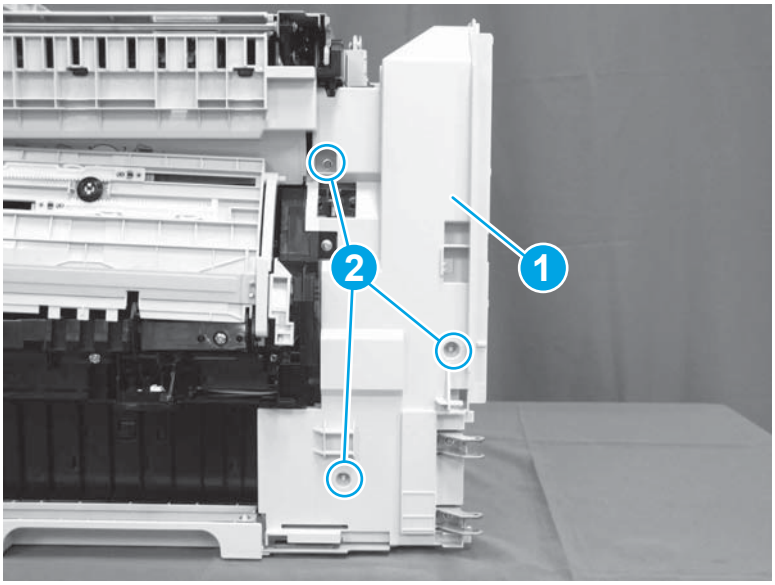
4. Connect two connectors (J71 and J81; callout 1).

Figure 1-635 Connect two connectors



5. Position the Tray 1 gear cover (callout 1) on the product, and then install three screws (callout 2).

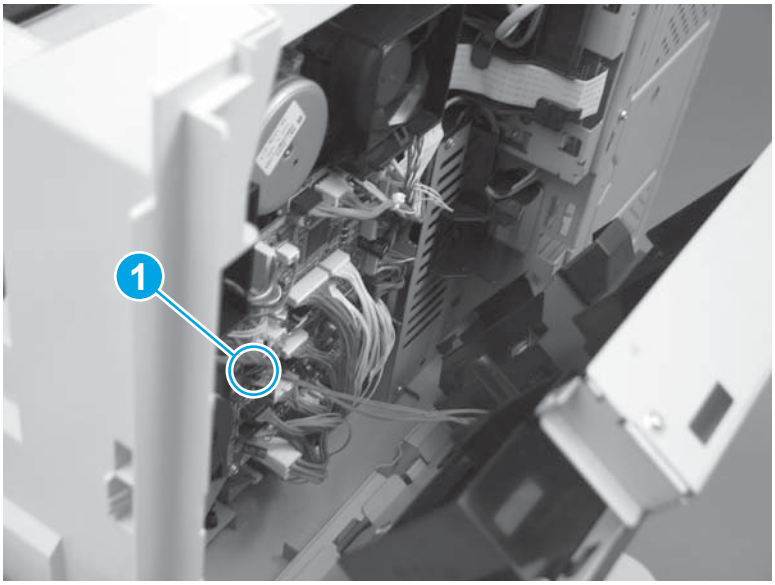
Figure 1-636 Install the Tray 1 gear cover



Step 10: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly

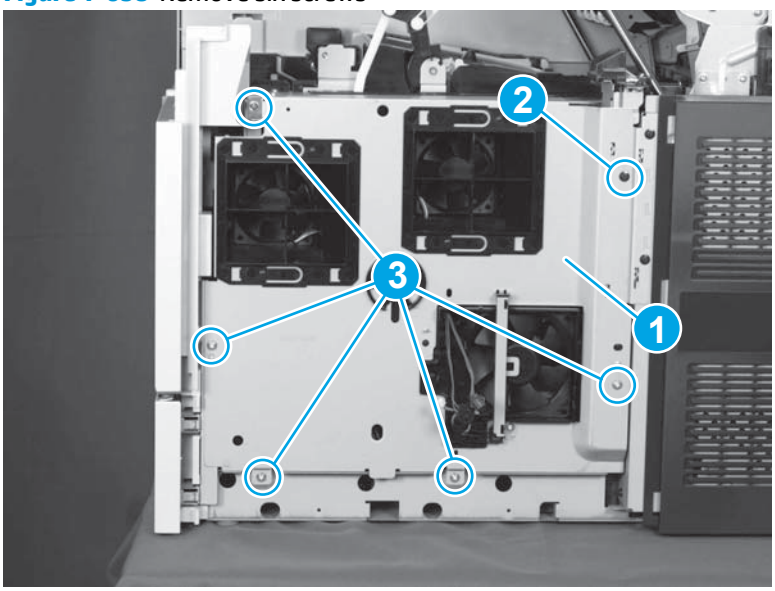
1. Position the shield near the product, and then connect one connector (J42; callout 1).

Figure 1-637 Install the shield and connect one connector



2. Rotate the top of the shield (callout 1) toward the product, install one black screw (callout 2), and then install five silver screws (callout 3).

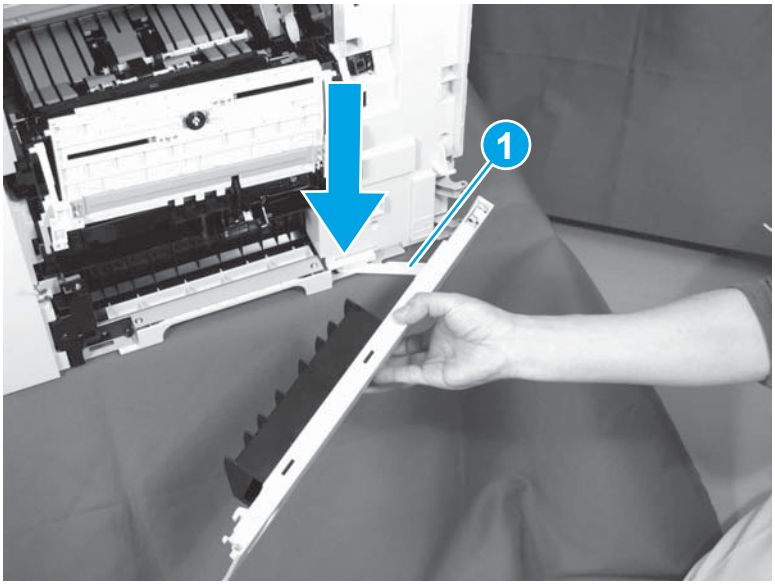
Figure 1-638 Remove six screws



Step 11: Install the right-lower door

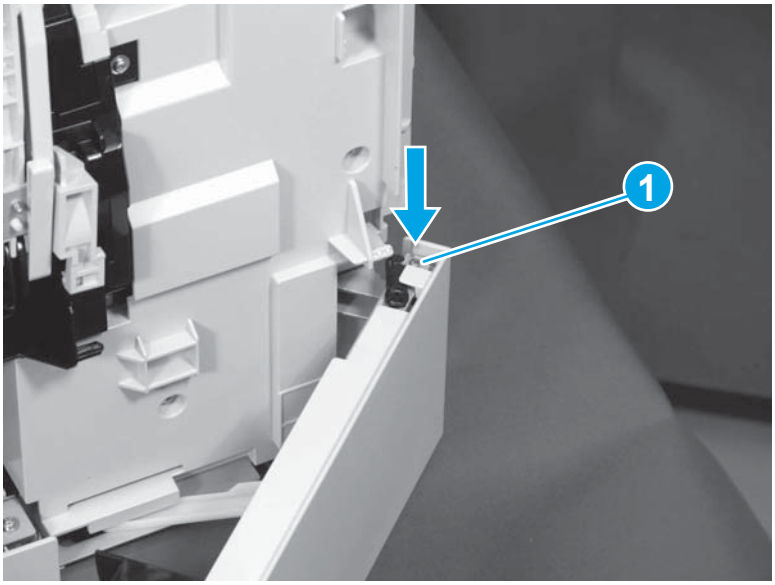
1. Install the door-retainer arm (callout 1) in the slot, and then position the right edge of the door on the product.

Figure 1-639 Install the door



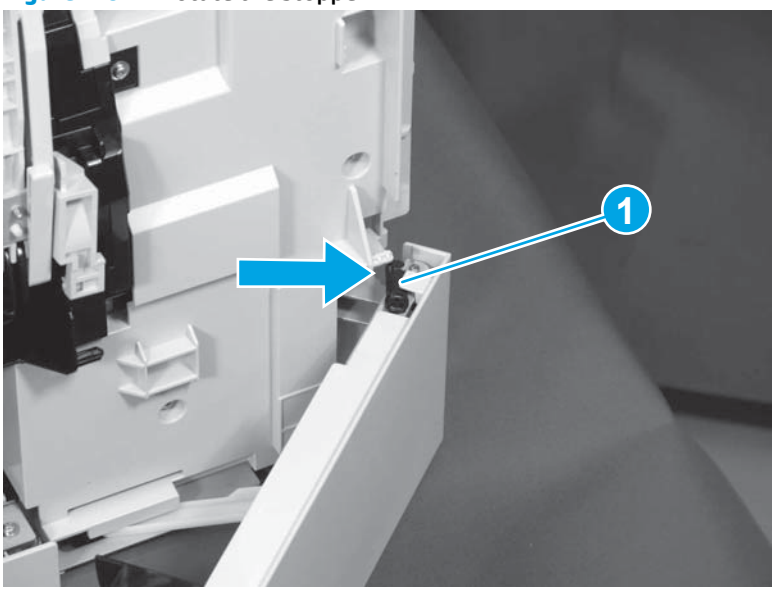
2. Install the shaft (callout 1).

Figure 1-640 Install the shaft



3. Rotate the stopper (callout 1) to until it locks in place.

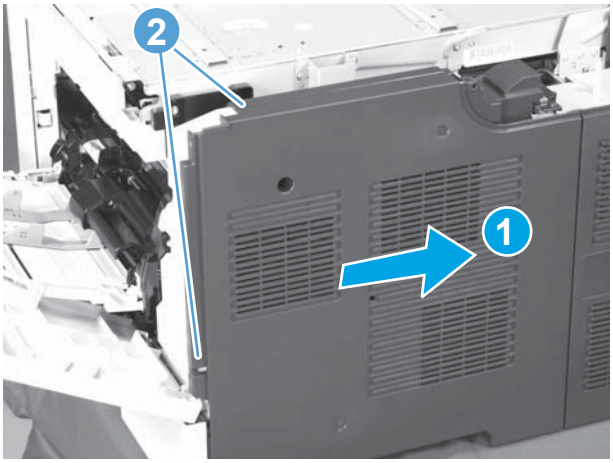
Figure 1-641 Rotate the stopper



Step 12: Install the rear-right cover

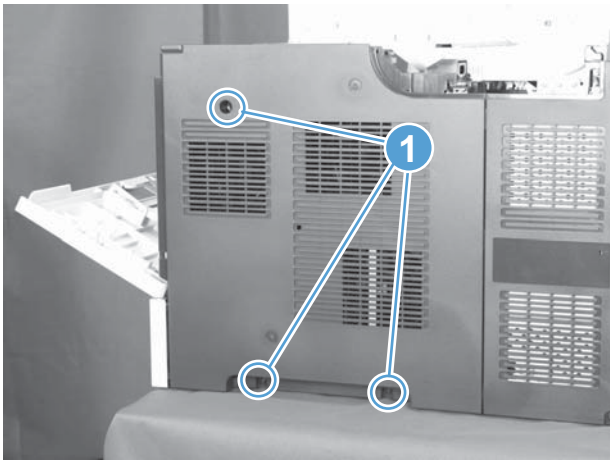
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

Figure 1-642 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

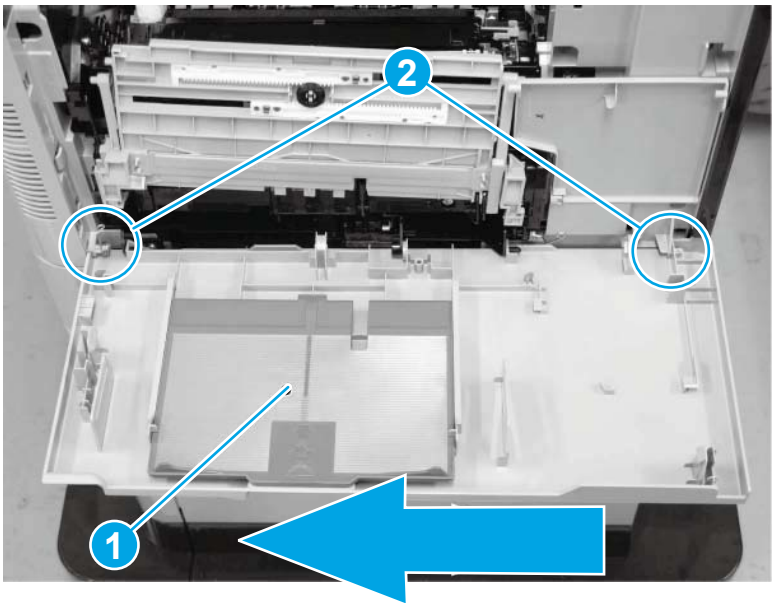
Figure 1-643 Install three screws



Step 13: Install the Tray 1 cover

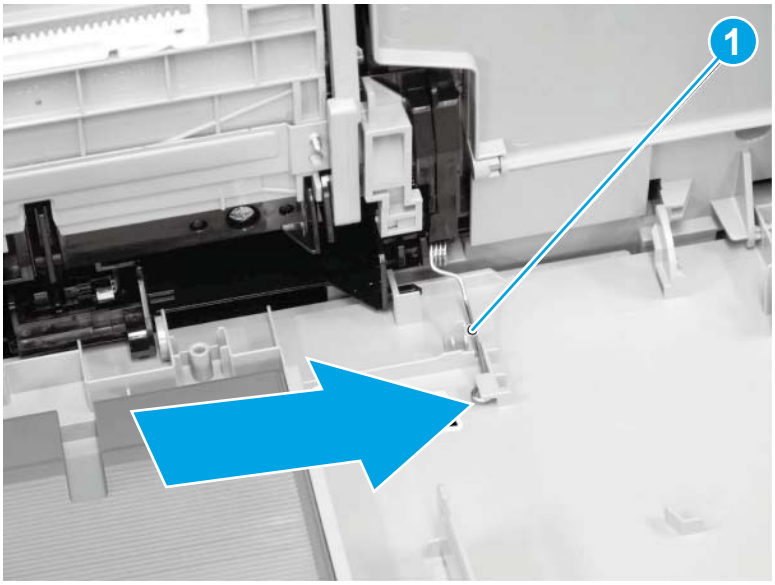
1. Slide the cover (callout 1) toward the front of the product to install it on the hinge pins (callout 2).

Figure 1-644 Install the cover



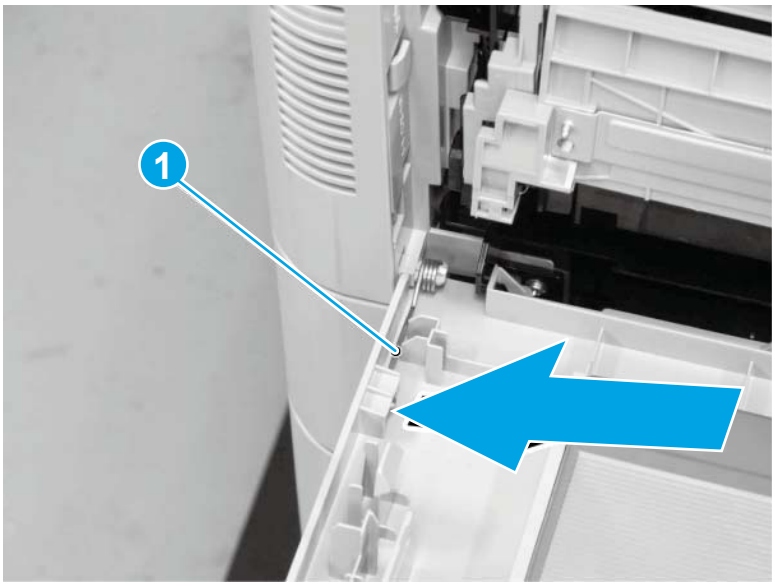
2. Engage the right-side spring arm (callout 1).

Figure 1-645 Engage the right-side spring



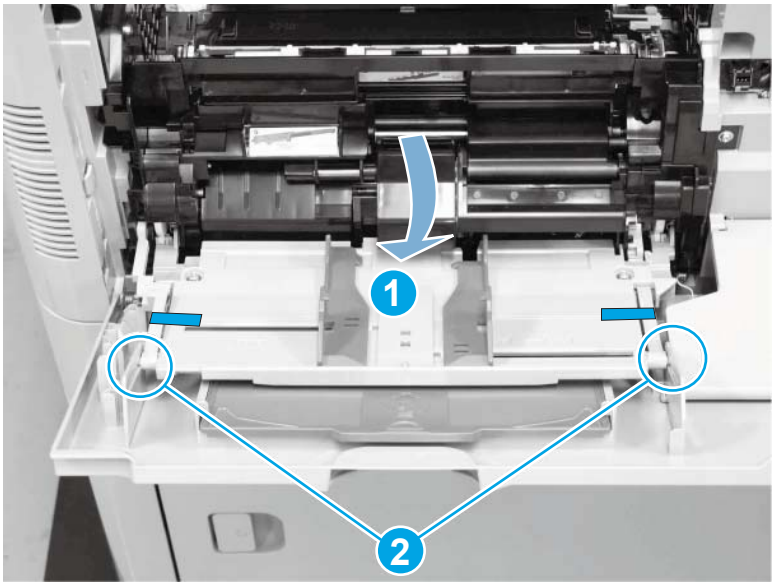
3. Engage the left-side spring arm (callout 1).

Figure 1-646 Engage the left-side spring



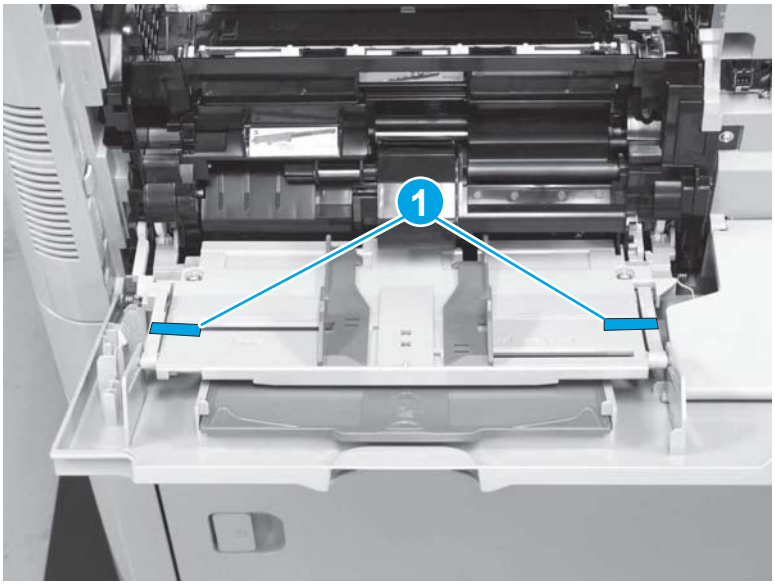
4. Lower the inner tray assembly (callout 1), and then engage the two outer retaining pins (callout 2) on the cover.

Figure 1-647 Engage two outer retaining pins



5. Remove the low adhesive tape (callout 1), and then close the tray.

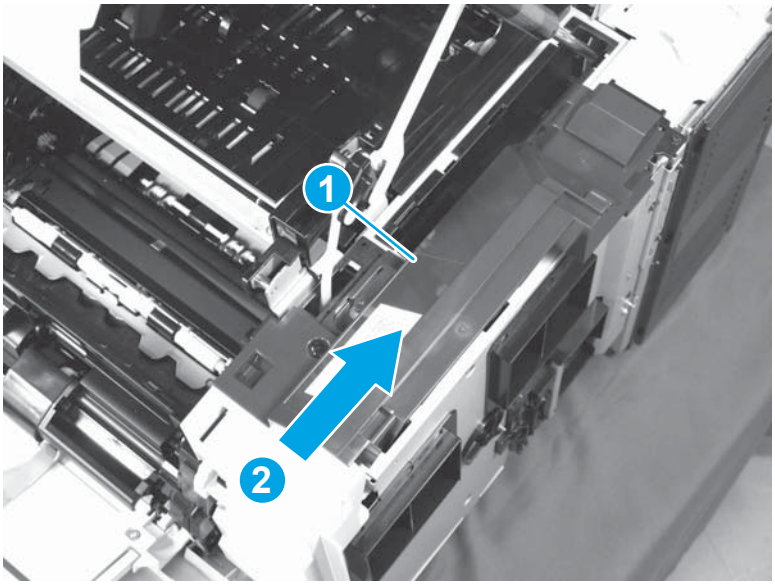
Figure 1-648 Remove the low adhesive tape



Step 14: Install the rear-top cover

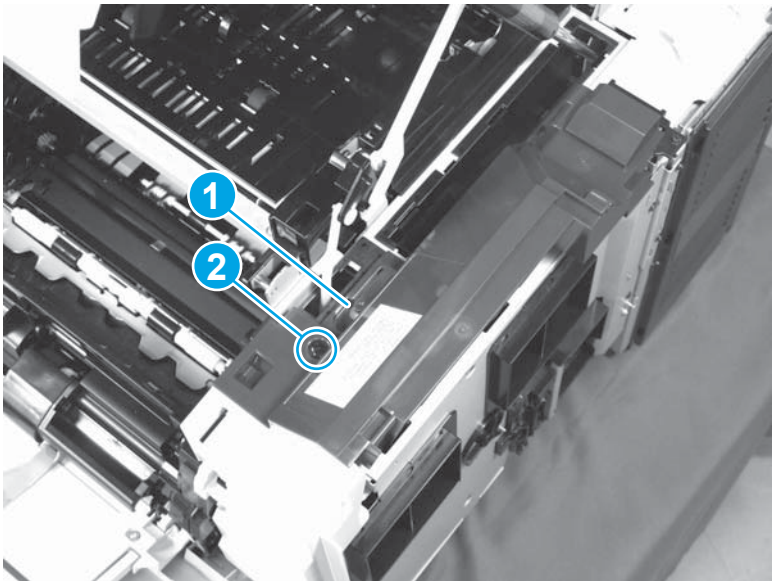
1. Position the cover on the product, Push the cover (callout 1) away Tray 1 to install it (callout 2).

Figure 1-649 Install the cover



2. Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged, and then install one screw (callout 2).

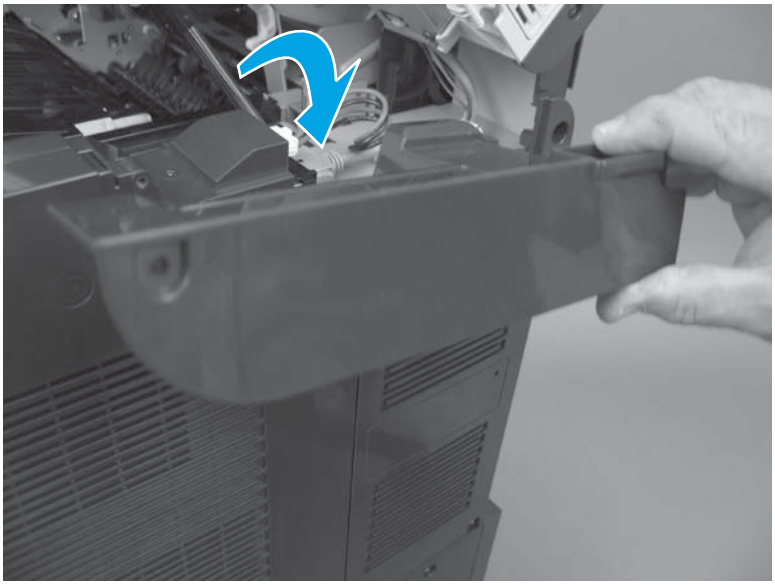
Figure 1-650 Install one screw



Step 15: Install the image scanner cable cover

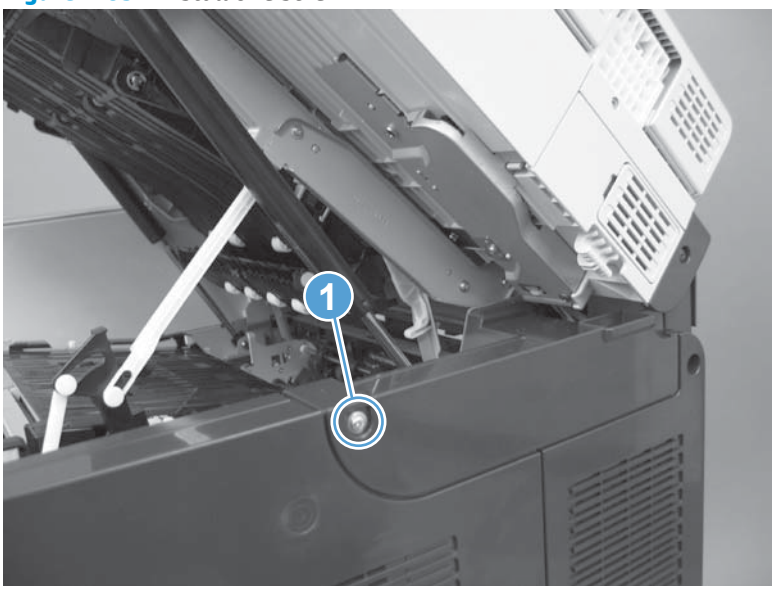
1. Install the cover on the product.

Figure 1-651 Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

Figure 1-652 Install one screw



Step 16: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Interconnect board (ICB)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter
- Step 2: Remove the image scanner cable cover
- Step 3: Remove the rear-right cover
- Step 4: Remove the rear-top cover
- Step 5: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly
- Step 6: Remove the ICB
- Step 7: Unpack the replacement interconnect board
- Step 8: Install the ICB
- Step 9: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly
- Step 10: Install the rear-top cover
- Step 11: Install the rear-right cover
- Step 12: Install the image scanner cable cover
- Step 13: Install the formatter
- Step 14: Test the installation
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the interconnect board for the HP LaserJet Enterprise M630.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct assembly part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the assembly.

Interconnect board part number	
B3G86-67904	Interconnect board

CAUTION: This product contains components that can be damaged by electrostatic discharge (ESD). To reduce the chance of ESD damage, place the product on an ESD mat (if available), and wear an ESD wrist strap connected to a grounded surface. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis before touching an ESD-sensitive part.

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the formatter

1. Do the following steps:

   a. Turn off the product.

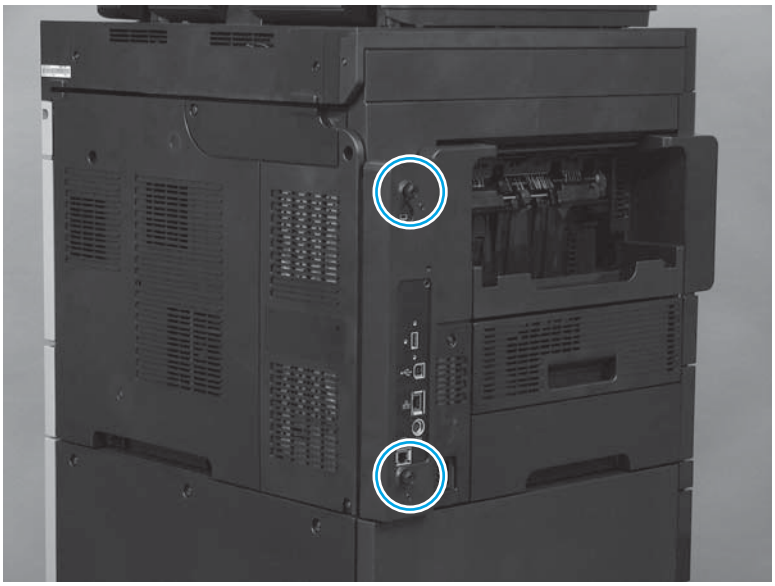
   b. Disconnect the power cable.

   ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

   c. Disconnect all cables and accessories attached to the formatter.

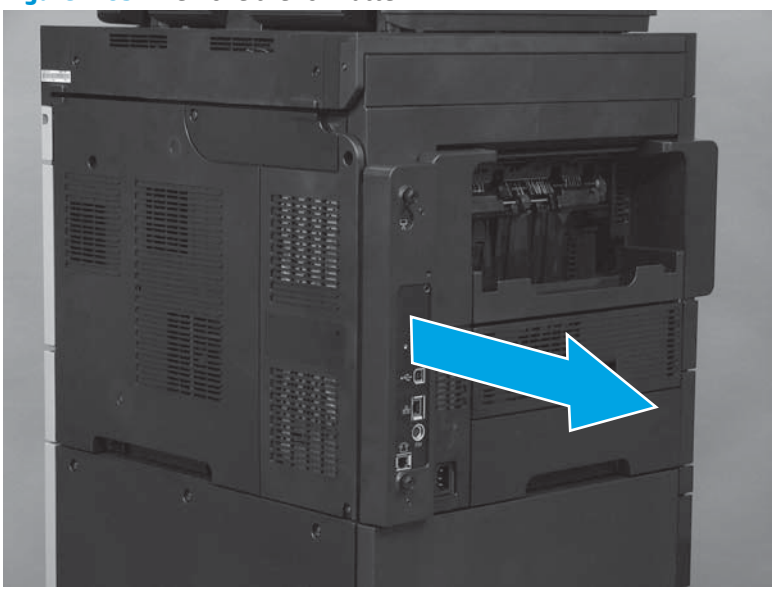
2. Loosen the two thumbscrews on the formatter.

Figure 1-653 Remove the formatter



3. Slide the formatter straight out of the product to remove it.

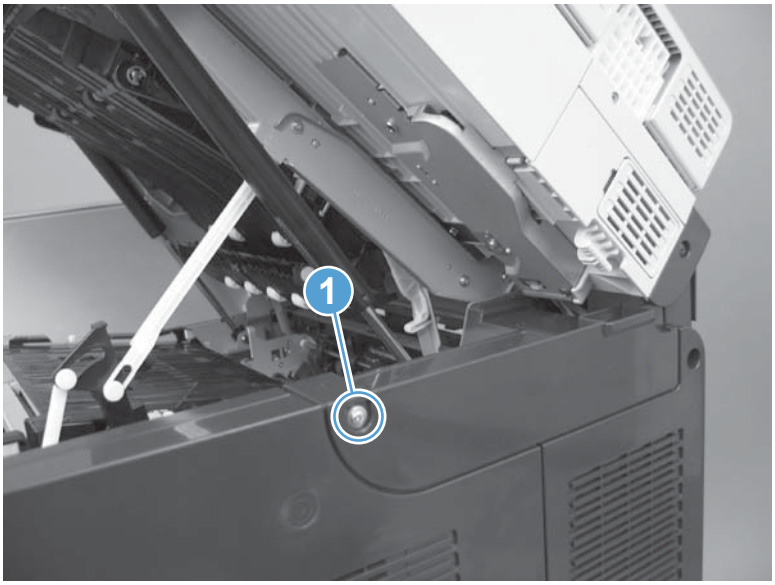
Figure 1-654 Remove the formatter



Step 2: Remove the image scanner cable cover

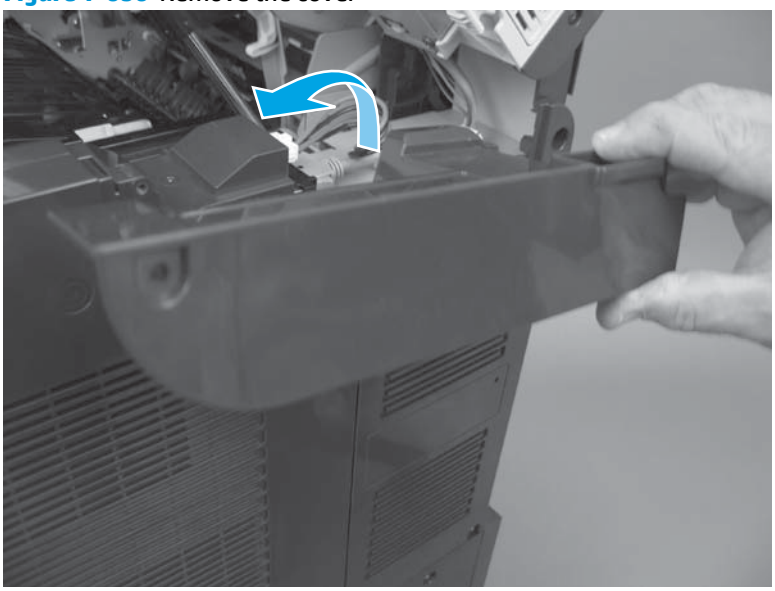
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-655 Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

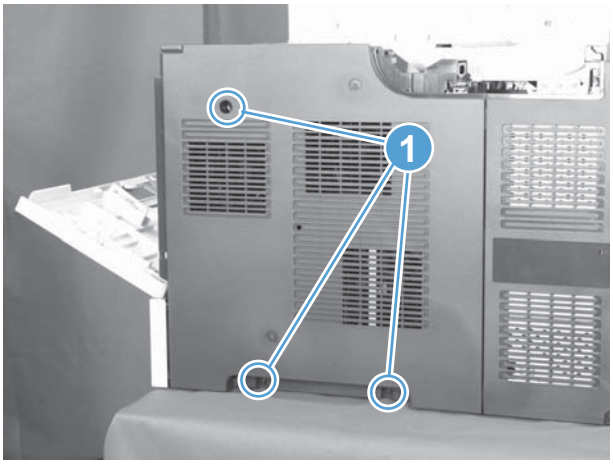
Figure 1-656 Remove the cover



Step 3: Remove the rear-right cover

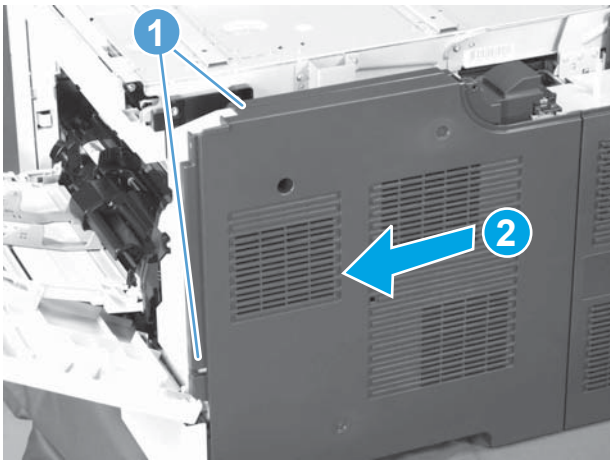
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-657 Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly seperate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-658 Remove the cover

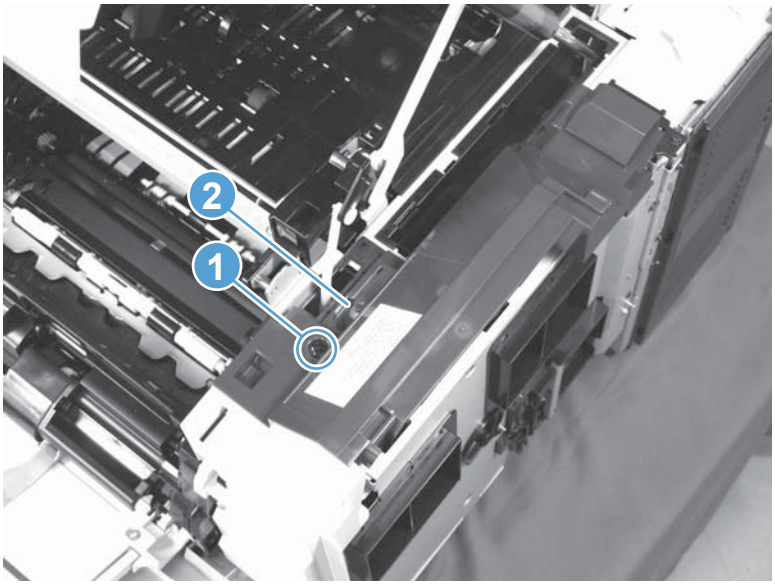


Step 4: Remove the rear-top cover

NOTE: If the top cover is closed, open it now.

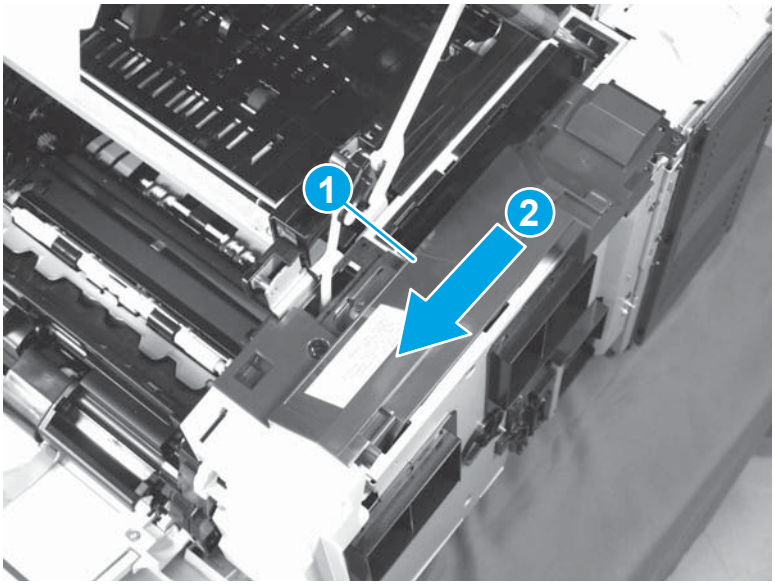
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-659 Remove one screw



2. Push the cover (callout 1) towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-660 Remove the cover

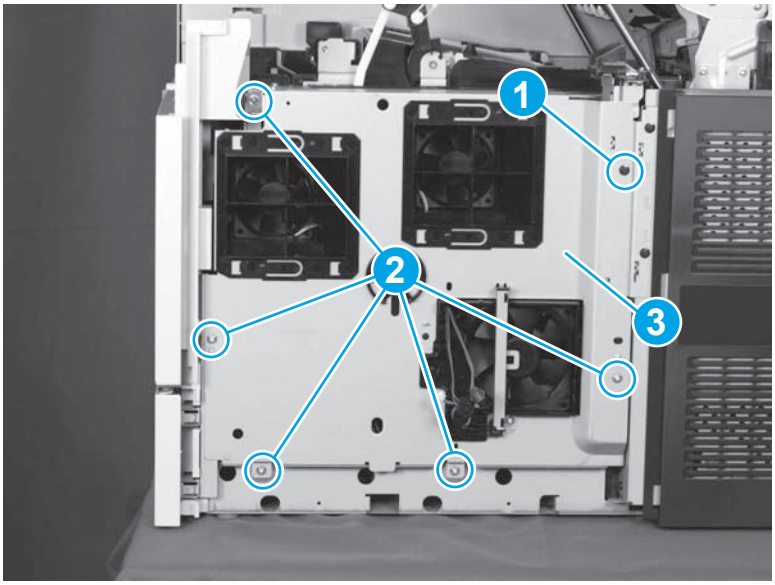


Step 5: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly

1. Remove one black screw (callout 1), remove five silver screws (callout 2), and then slightly rotate the top of the shield (callout 3) away from the product.

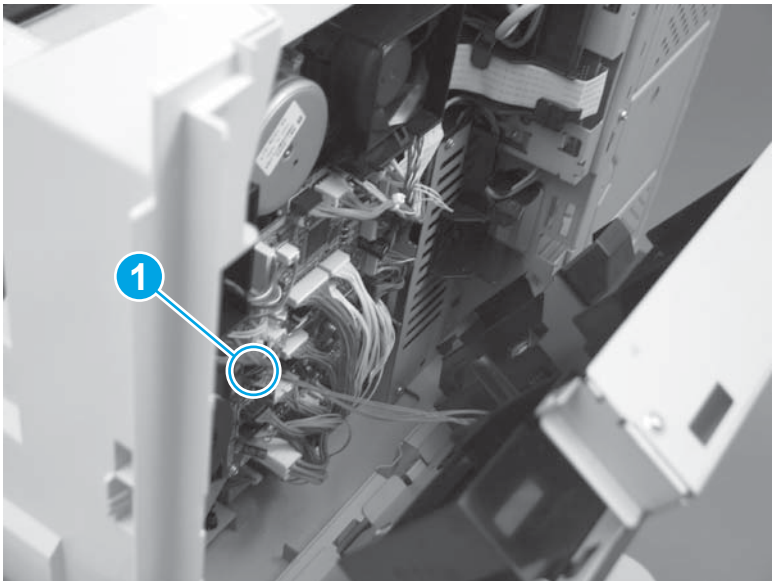
⚠ **CAUTION:** The shield is still connected to the product by a wire harness. Do not completely remove the shield after removing the screws.

Figure 1-661 Remove six screws



2. Disconnect one connector (J42; callout 1) from the DC controller, and then remove the DC controller shield.

Figure 1-662 Disconnect one connector and remove the shield

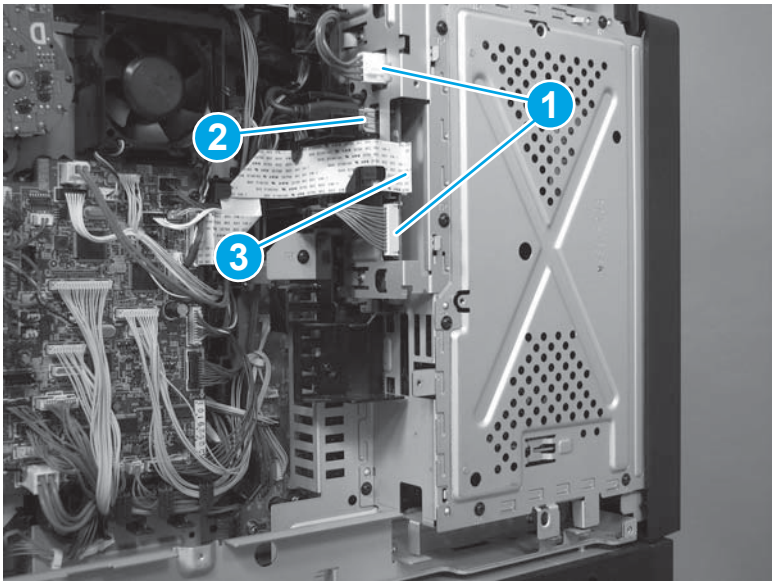


Step 6: Remove the ICB

ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), one USB connector (callout 2), and then disconnect one FFC (callout 3).

Figure 1-663 Disconnect four connectors

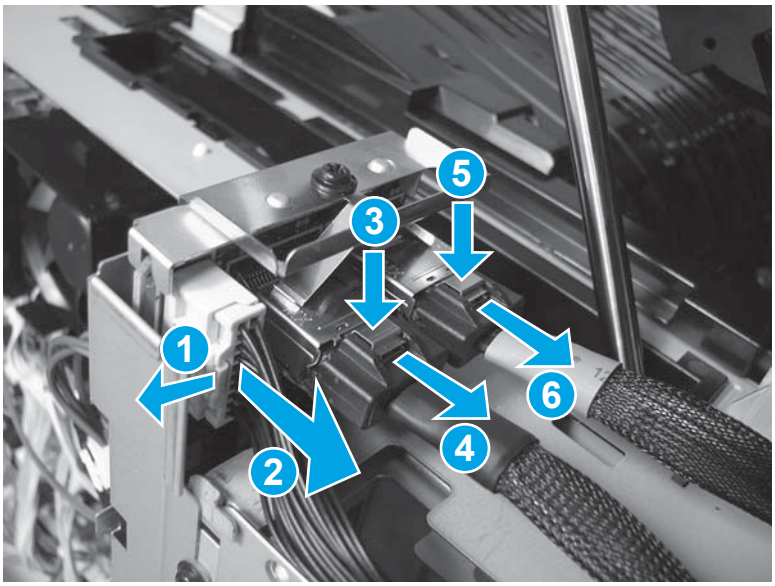


2. Use a small flat-blade screw driver to release three connectors.

TIP: When the two connectors with the metal retainer clips (callouts 3/4/5/6) are reinstalled, make sure that the clips snap in place to securely lock the connectors in place.

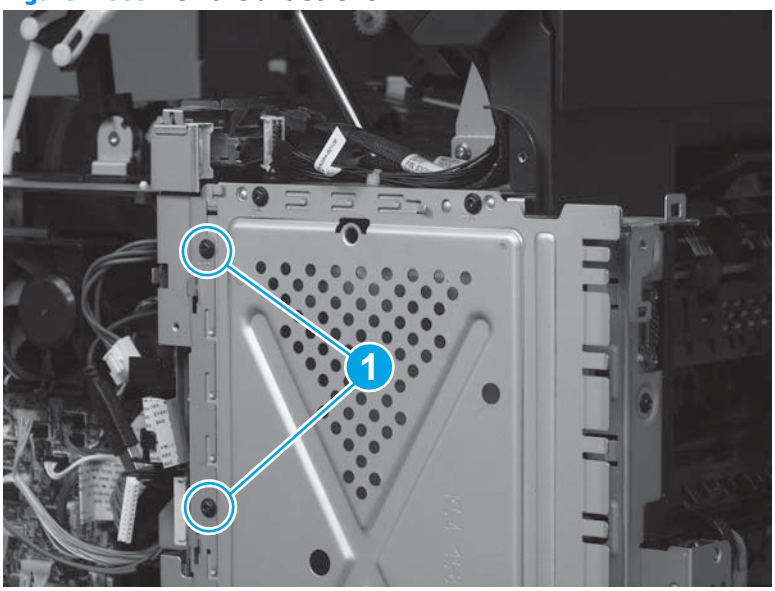
The wire harness with the blue band (callouts 5/6) connects to the inner connector on the ICB when reinstalled.

Figure 1-664 Disconnect three connectors



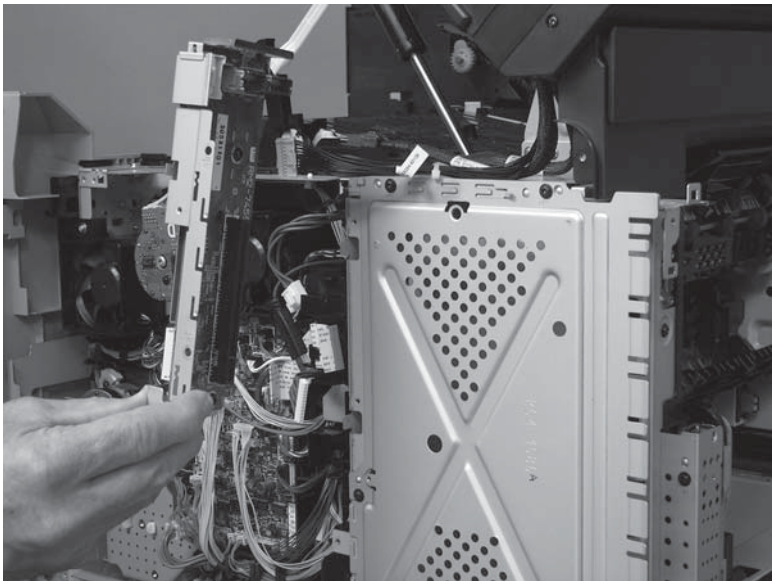
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-665 Remove two screws



4. Remove the ICB.

Figure 1-666 Remove the ICB



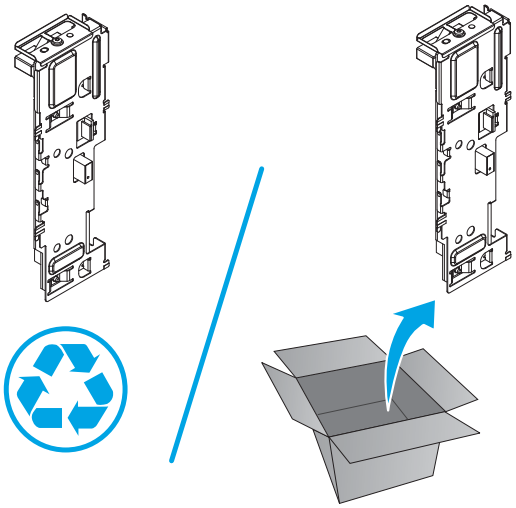
Step 7: Unpack the replacement interconnect board

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the assembly.

Figure 1-667 Recycle and unpack

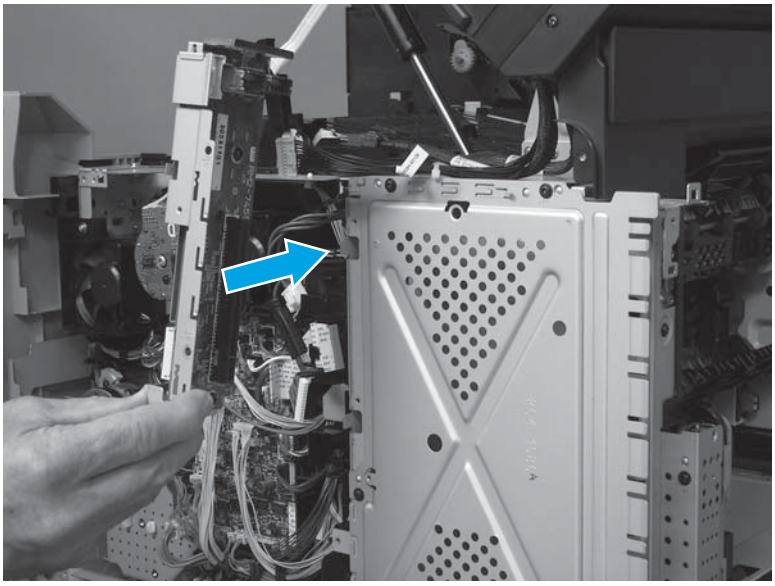


Step 8: Install the ICB

ESD sensitive assembly.

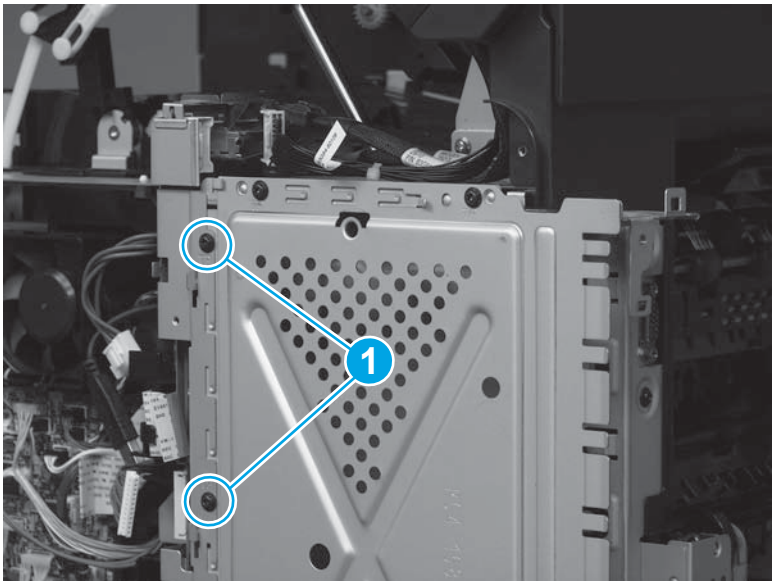
1. Install the ICB on the product.

Figure 1-668 Install the ICB



2. Install two screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-669 Install two screws

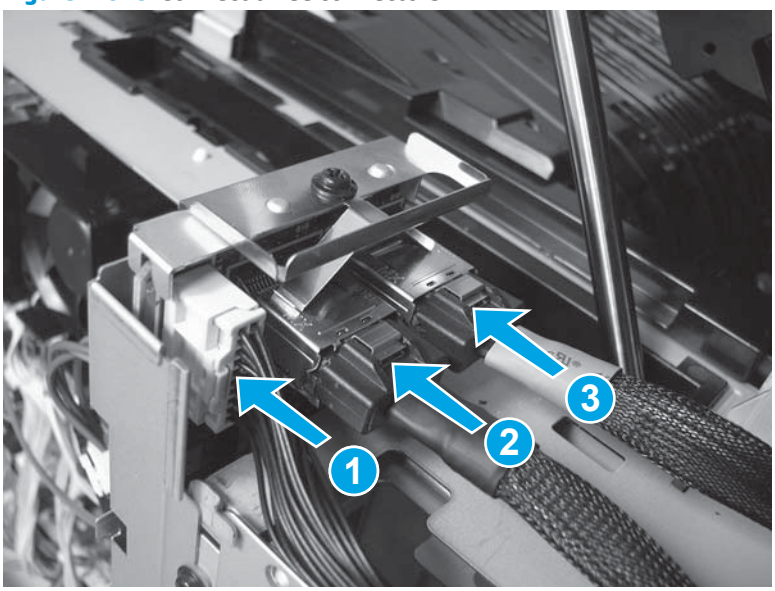


3. At the top of the ICB, connect three connectors.

TIP: When the two connectors with the metal retainer clips (callouts 2/3) are reinstalled, make sure that the clips snap in place to securely lock the connectors in place.

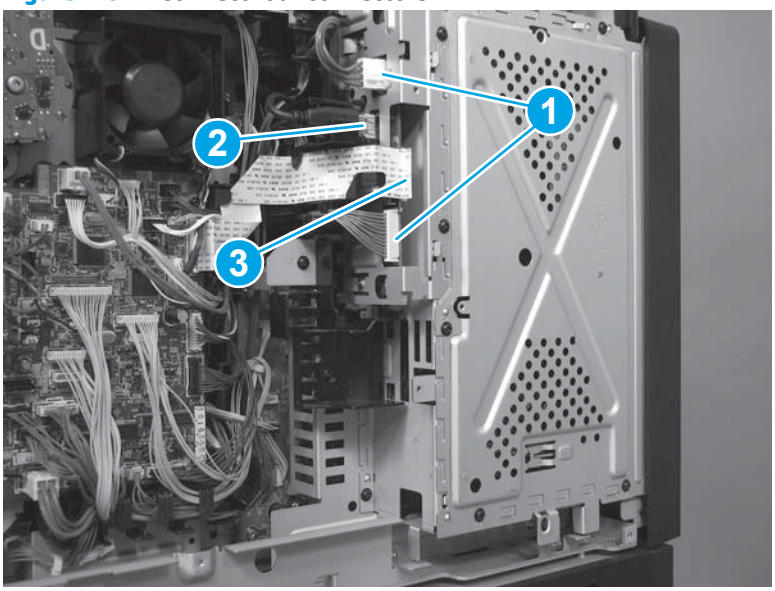
The wire harness with the blue band (callouts 3) connects to the inner connector on the ICB when reinstalled.

Figure 1-670 Connect three connectors



4. Connect two connectors (callout 1), one USB connector (callout 2), and then connect one FFC (callout 3).

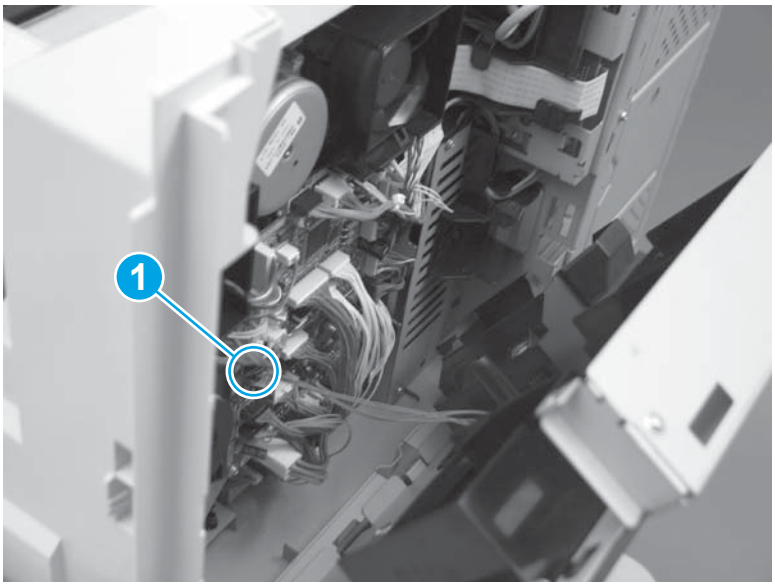
Figure 1-671 Connect four connectors



Step 9: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly

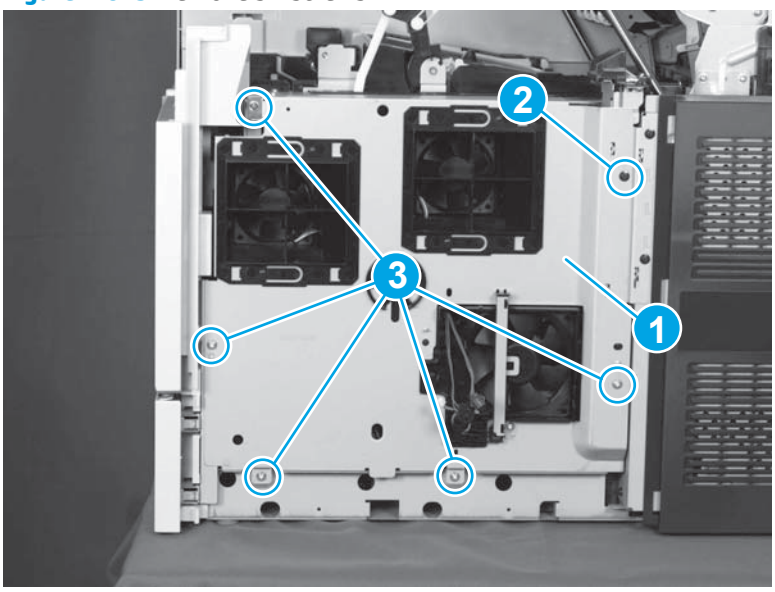
1. Position the shield near the product, and then connect one connector (J42; callout 1).

Figure 1-672 Install the shield and connect one connector



2. Rotate the top of the shield (callout 1) toward the product, install one black screw (callout 2), and then install five silver screws (callout 3).

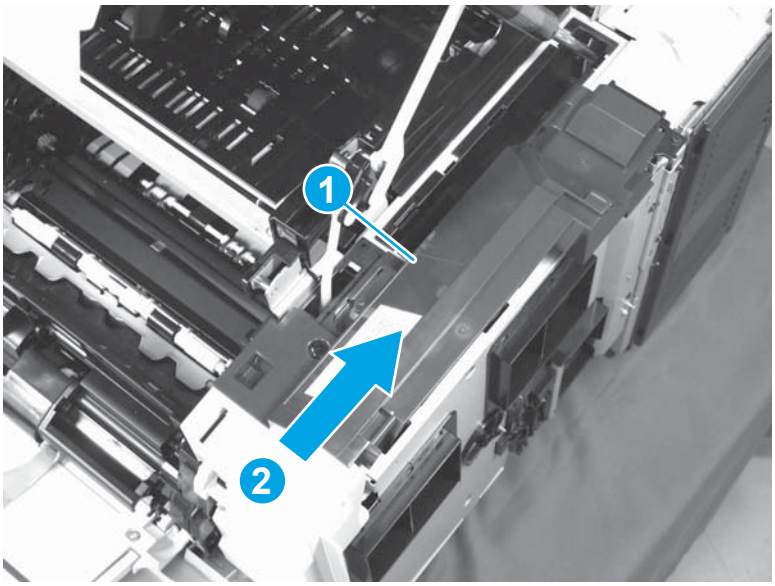
Figure 1-673 Remove six screws



Step 10: Install the rear-top cover

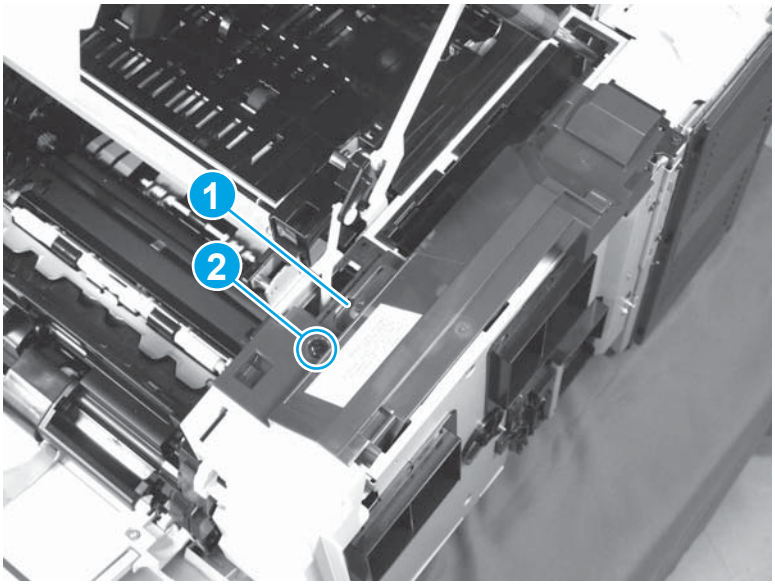
1. Position the cover on the product, Push the cover (callout 1) away Tray 1 to install it (callout 2).

Figure 1-674 Install the cover



2. Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged, and then install one screw (callout 2).

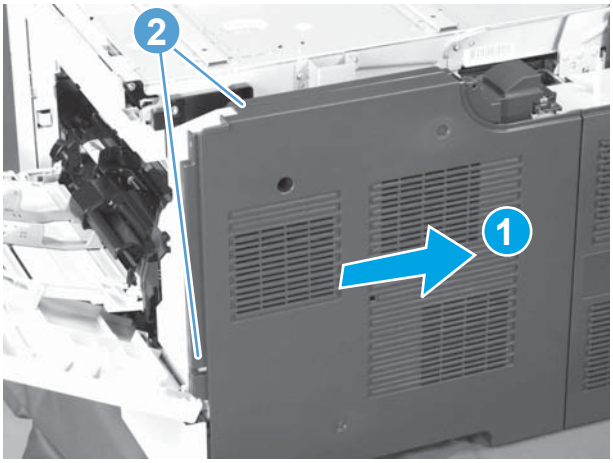
Figure 1-675 Install one screw



Step 11: Install the rear-right cover

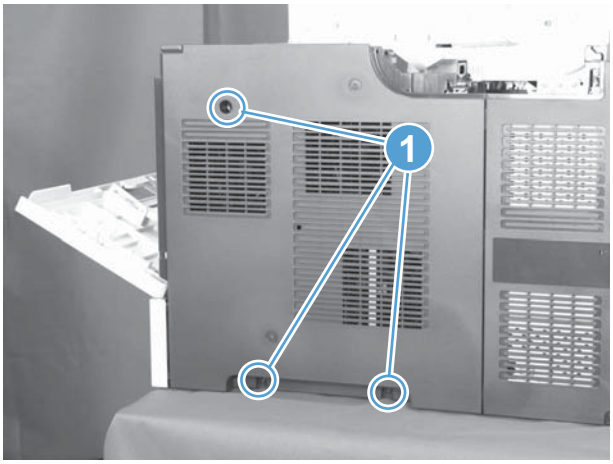
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

Figure 1-676 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

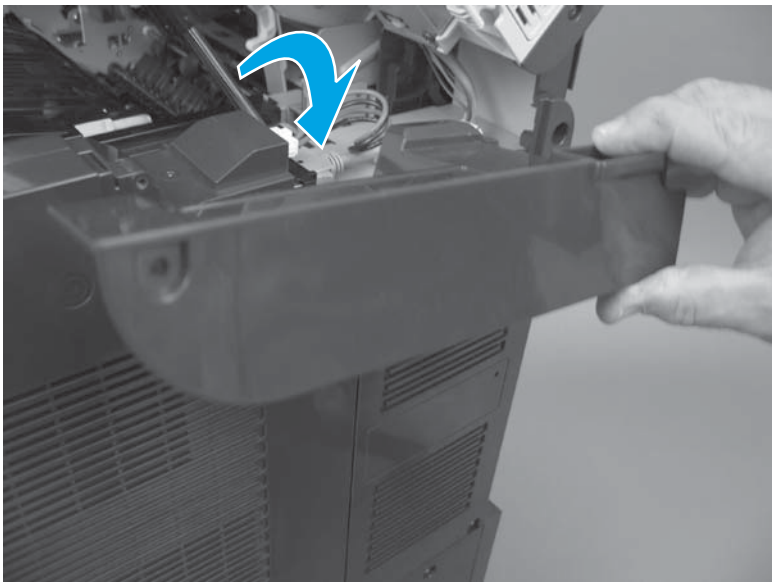
Figure 1-677 Install three screws



Step 12: Install the image scanner cable cover

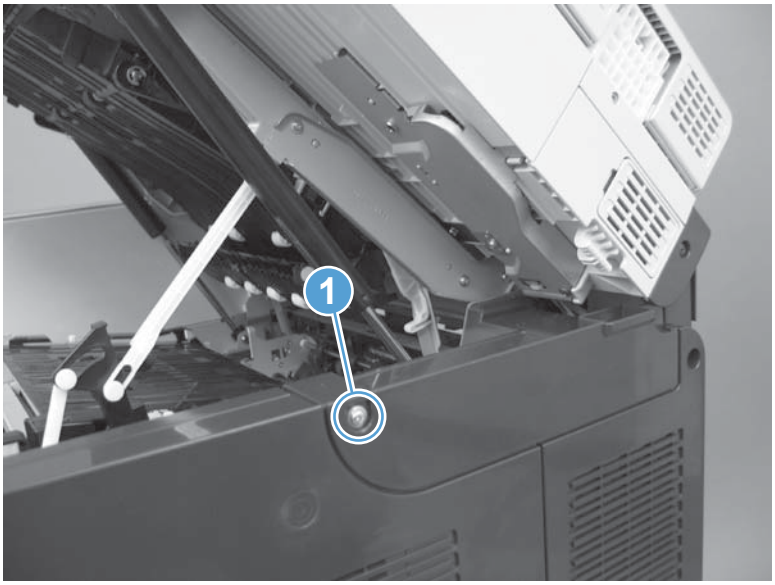
1. Install the cover on the product.

Figure 1-678 Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

Figure 1-679 Install one screw

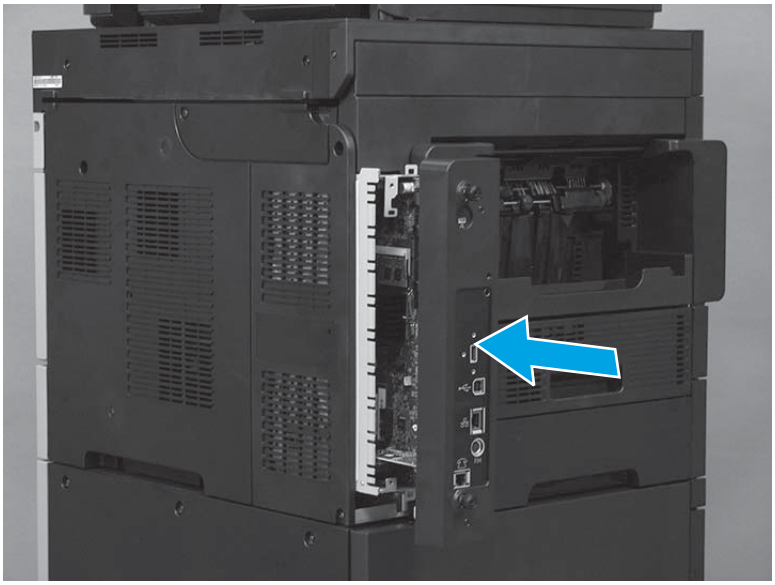


Step 13: Install the formatter

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

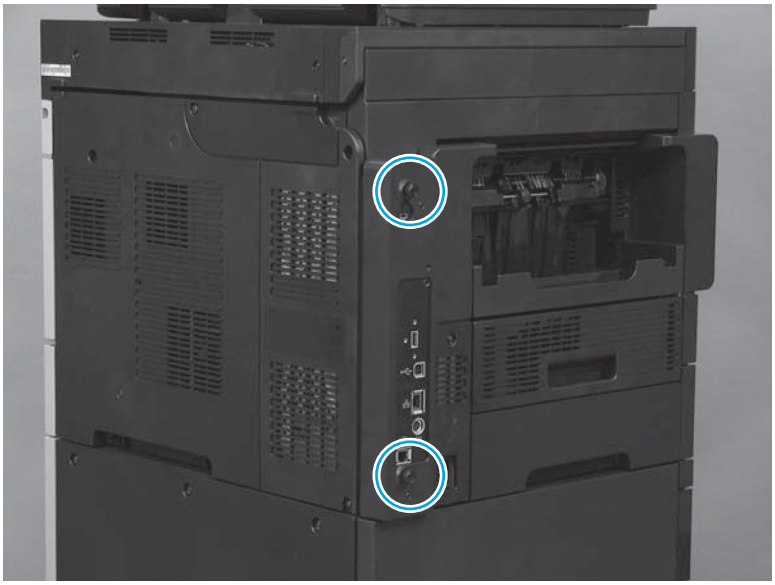
1. Align the formatter with the guides at the top and bottom of the formatter cage and push the formatter into the slot until it is fully seated.

Figure 1-680 Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot



2. Finger-tighten the two thumbscrews.

Figure 1-681 Tighten the two thumbscrews



Step 14: Test the installation

1. Do the following steps:

   a. Reconnect all cables to the formatter.

   b. Plug in the power cord.

2. Turn on the product.

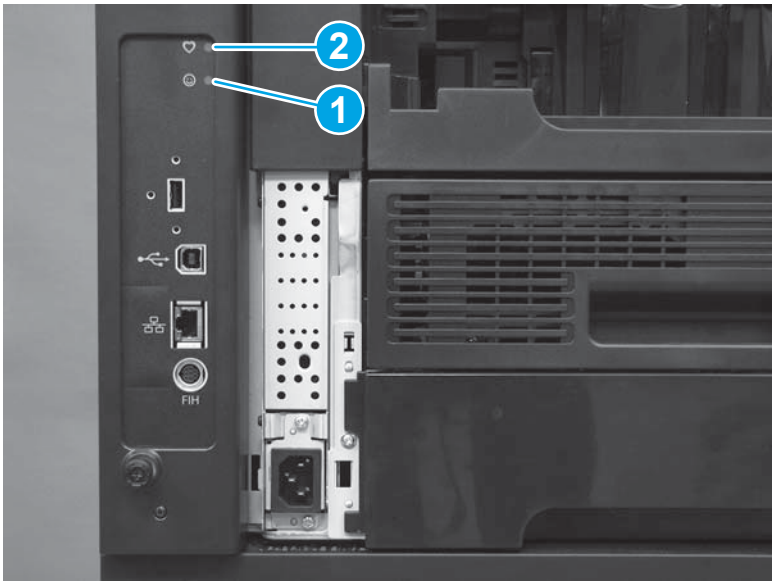
TIP: If the product does not initialize when the power is turned on, make sure that the memory DIMM is correctly installed.

To verify that the formatter is correctly installed, observe the following functions of the LEDs on the formatter:

- The heartbeat LED (callout 1) illuminates if the formatter is functioning correctly.
  - While the product is initializing, the heartbeat LED illuminates solid red for about one second, and then turns solid green for about twenty seconds.
  - After the initialization sequence is complete, the heartbeat LED blinks continuously if the printer is functioning correctly.
- The connectivity LED (callout 2) indicates that the formatter is completely seated. It illuminates green when the product power is turned on and stays green if the formatter is properly seated.

If the LEDs do not correctly function, turn the product power off, remove the formatter, and then reinstall it (make sure that the formatter is fully seated before tightening the thumbscrews).

Figure 1-682 Verify that the formatter is functioning



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Feed motor (M101)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover
- Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover
- Step 3: Remove the rear-top cover
- Step 4: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly
- Step 5: Remove the feed motor
- Step 6: Unpack the replacement feed motor
- Step 7: Install the feed motor
- Step 8: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly
- Step 9: Install the rear-top cover
- Step 10: Install the rear-right cover
- Step 11: Install the image scanner cable cover
- Step 12: Turn the product power on
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the feed motor.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Feed motor part number	
RM1-8358-000CN	Feed motor

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

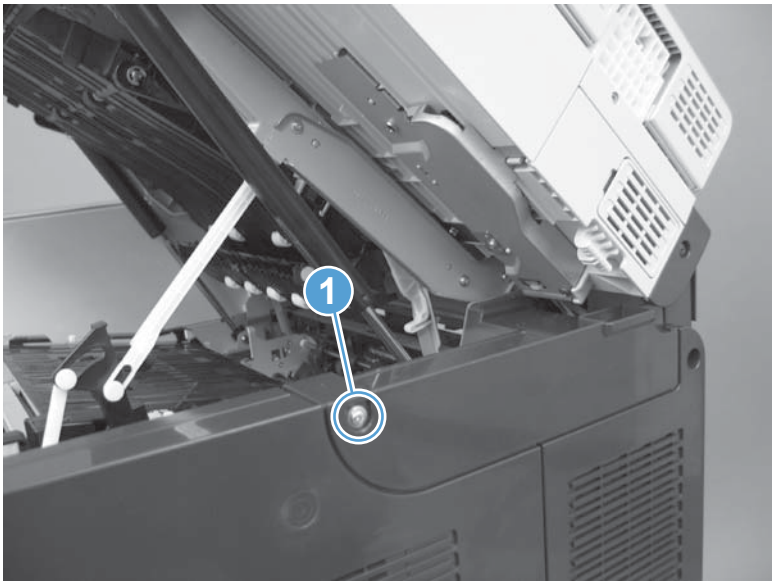
Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover

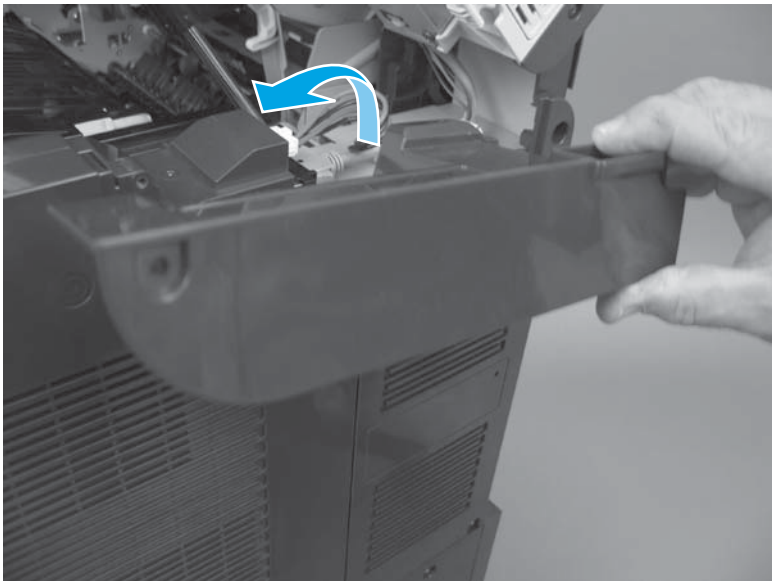
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-683 Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

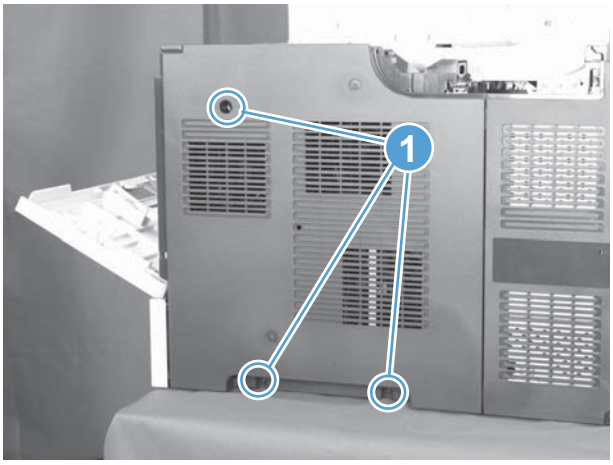
Figure 1-684 Remove the cover



Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover

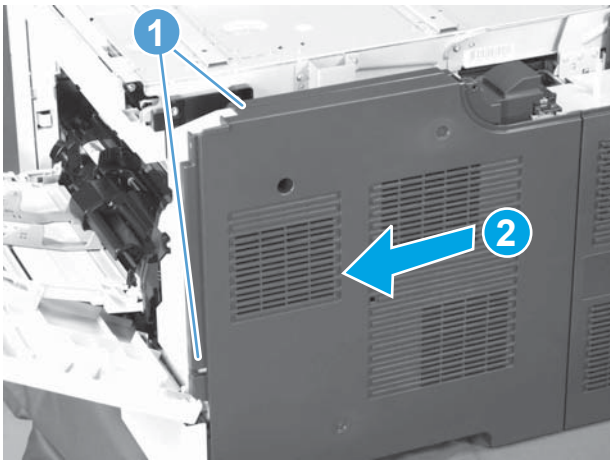
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-685 Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly seperate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-686 Remove the cover

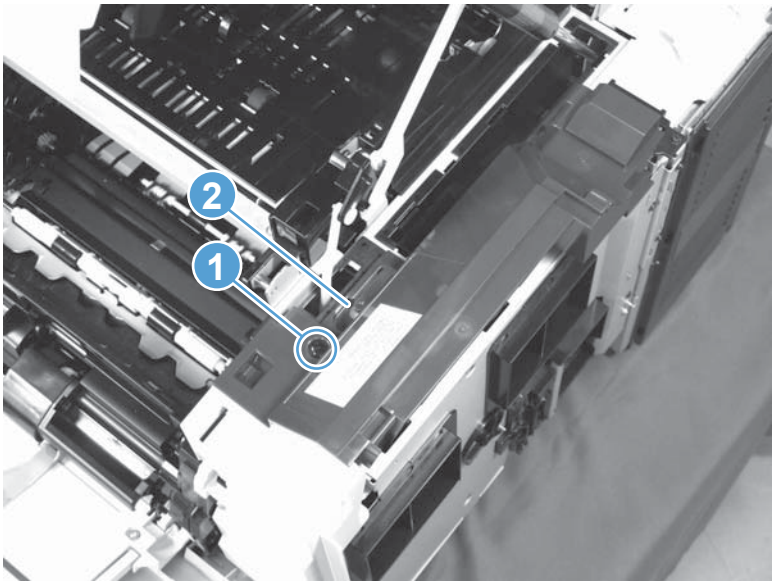


Step 3: Remove the rear-top cover

NOTE: If the top cover is closed, open it now.

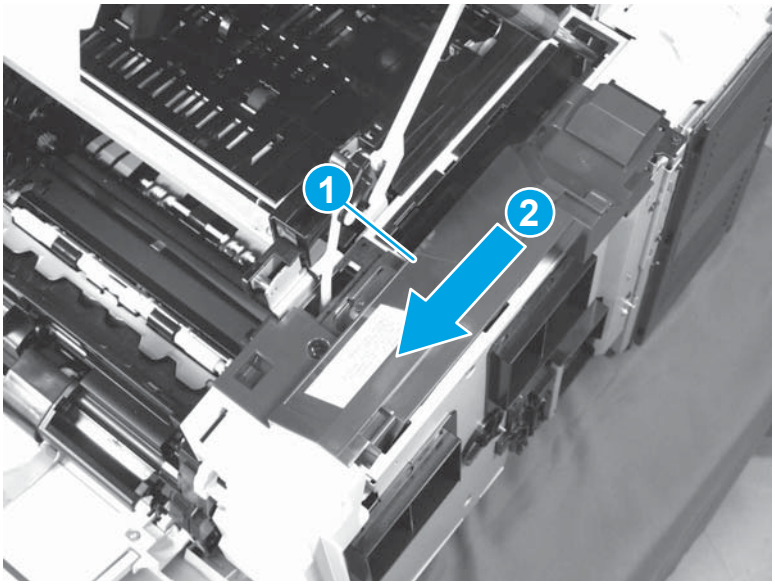
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-687 Remove one screw



2. Push the cover (callout 1) towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-688 Remove the cover

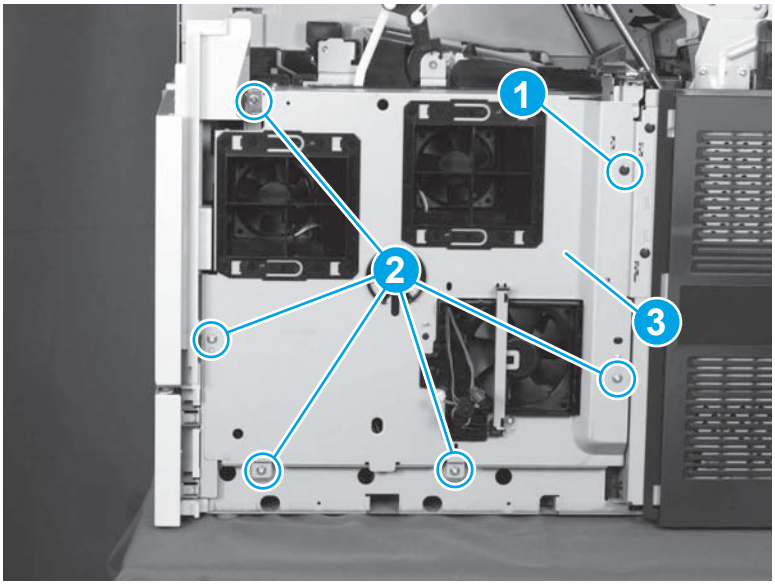


Step 4: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly

1. Remove one black screw (callout 1), remove five silver screws (callout 2), and then slightly rotate the top of the shield (callout 3) away from the product.

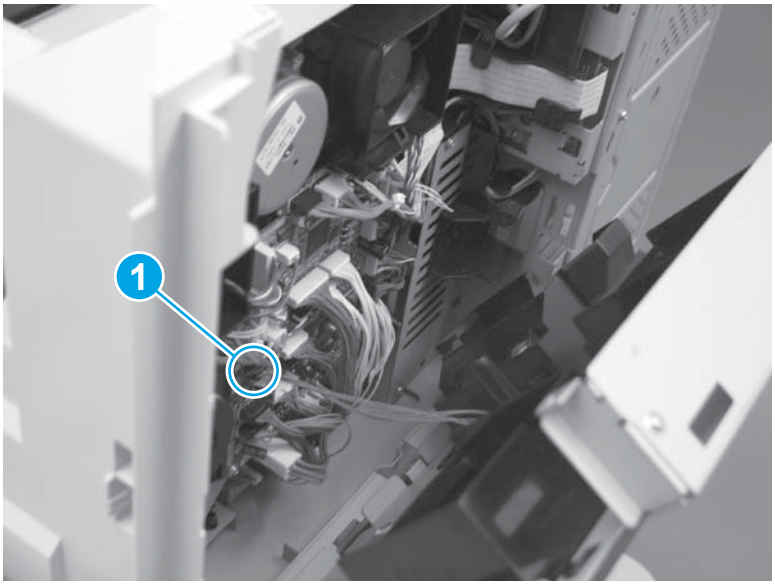
⚠ **CAUTION:** The shield is still connected to the product by a wire harness. Do not completely remove the shield after removing the screws.

Figure 1-689 Remove six screws



2. Disconnect one connector (J42; callout 1) from the DC controller, and then remove the DC controller shield.

Figure 1-690 Disconnect one connector and remove the shield



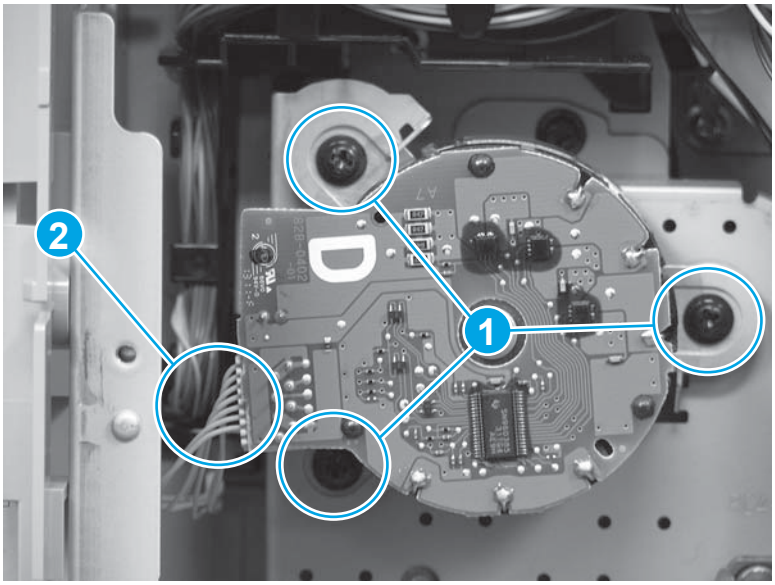
Step 5: Remove the feed motor

▲ At the DC controller side of the product, remove three screws (callout 1), remove the feed motor, and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

NOTE: The feed motor is located at the left-hand side of the DC controller.

TIP: Slightly turn the motor counter clockwise to disengage it from the mounting bracket.

Figure 1-691 Remove the feed motor

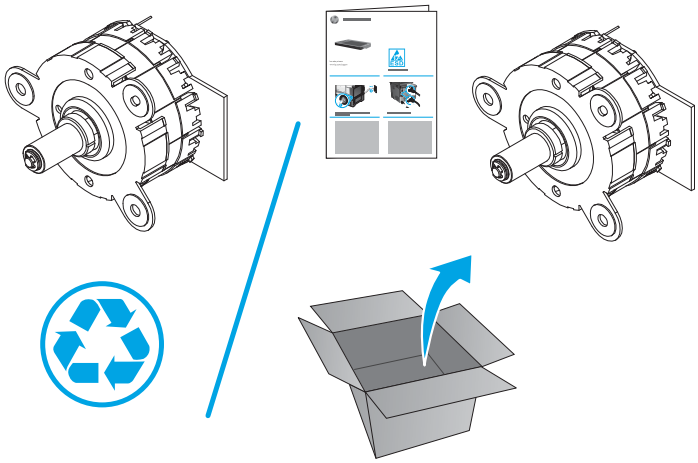


Step 6: Unpack the replacement feed motor

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

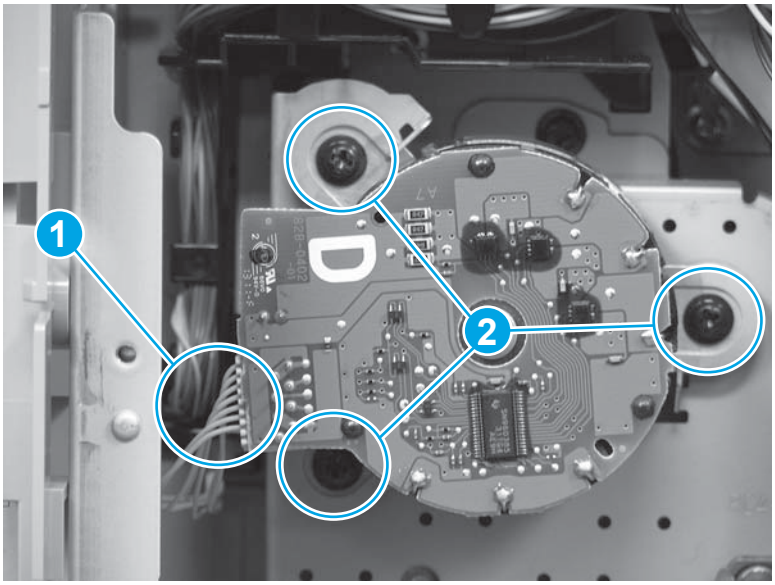


Step 7: Install the feed motor

- Connect one connector (callout 1), and then install three screws (callout 2).

TIP: It easier to connect the connector before mounting the motor to the chassis.

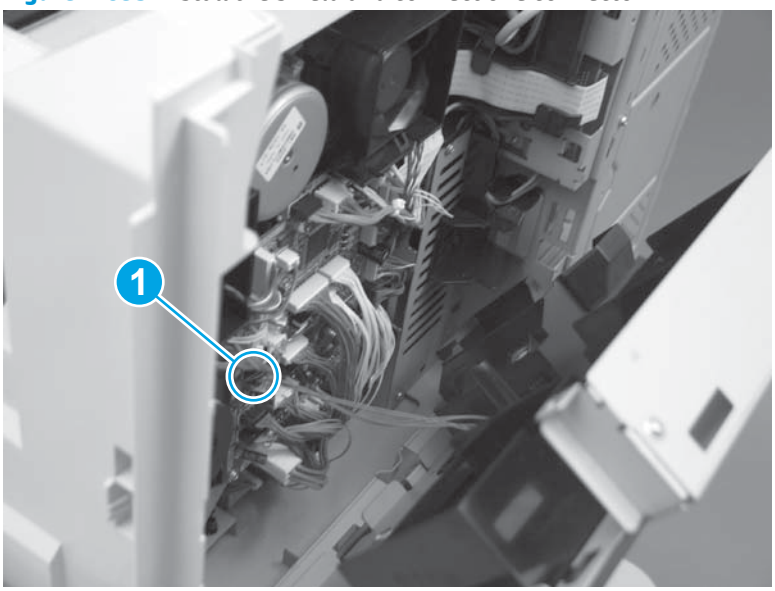
Figure 1-692 Install the feed motor



Step 8: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly

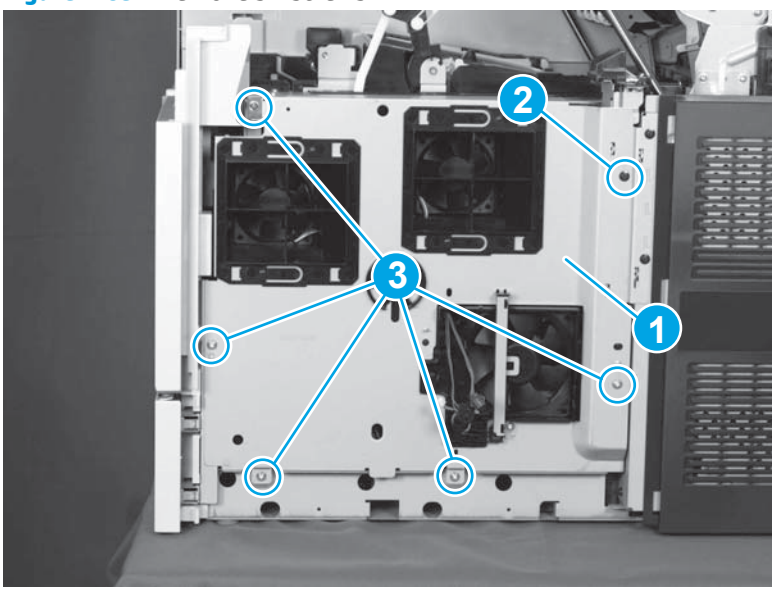
1. Position the shield near the product, and then connect one connector (J42; callout 1).

Figure 1-693 Install the shield and connect one connector



2. Rotate the top of the shield (callout 1) toward the product, install one black screw (callout 2), and then install five silver screws (callout 3).

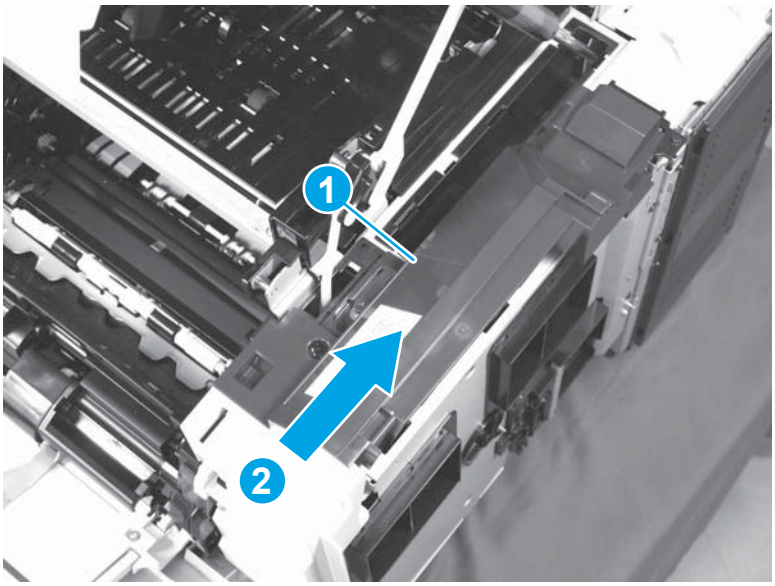
Figure 1-694 Remove six screws



Step 9: Install the rear-top cover

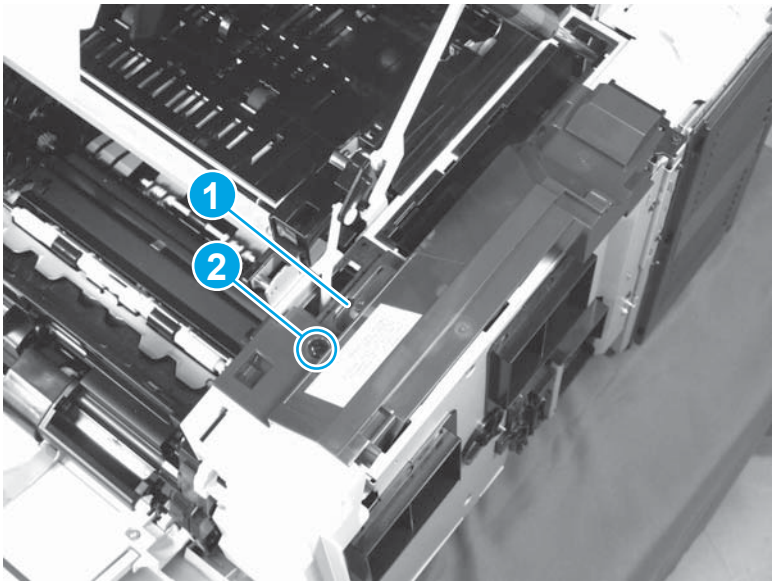
1. Position the cover on the product, Push the cover (callout 1) away Tray 1 to install it (callout 2).

Figure 1-695 Install the cover



2. Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged, and then install one screw (callout 2).

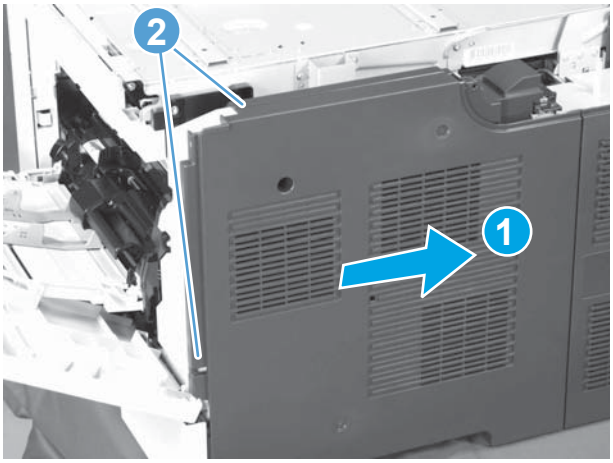
Figure 1-696 Install one screw



Step 10: Install the rear-right cover

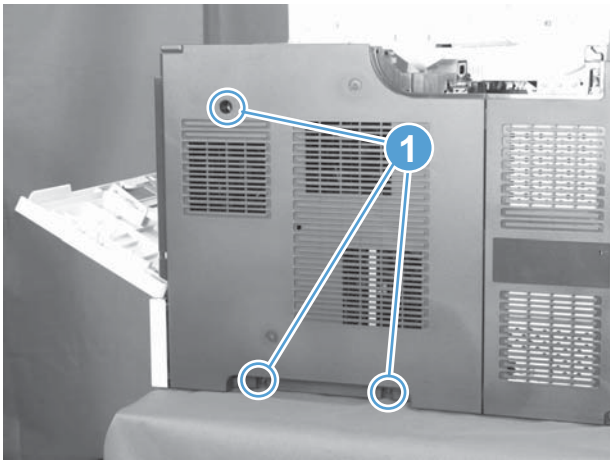
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

Figure 1-697 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

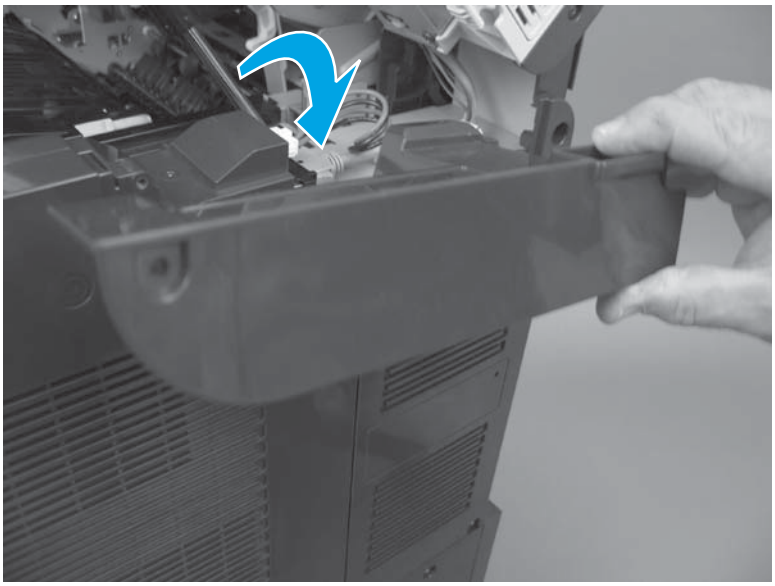
Figure 1-698 Install three screws



Step 11: Install the image scanner cable cover

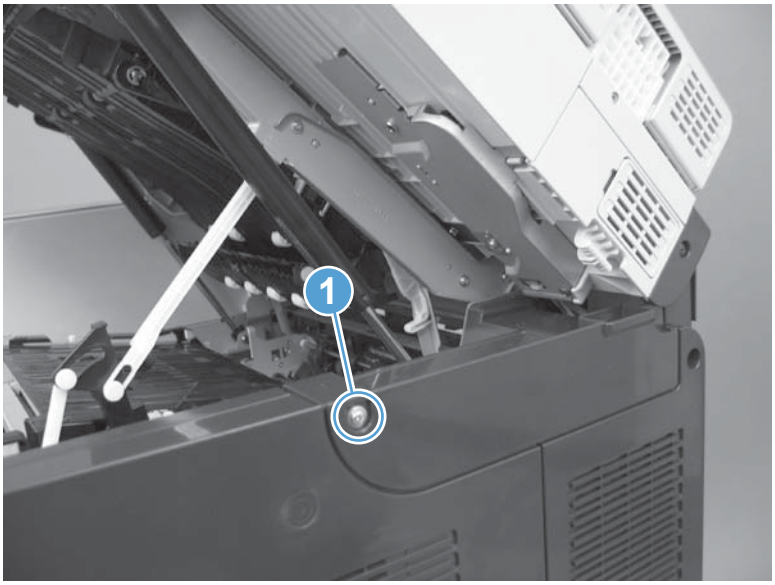
1. Install the cover on the product.

Figure 1-699 Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

Figure 1-700 Install one screw



Step 12: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Drum motor (M102)

Remove the following assemblies:

- Image scanner cable cover. See Image scanner cable cover on page 283.
- Rear-right cover. See Rear-right cover on page 323.
- Rear-top cover. See Rear-top cover on page 335.
- DC controller shield-plate assembly. See DC controller shield-plate assembly on page 382.

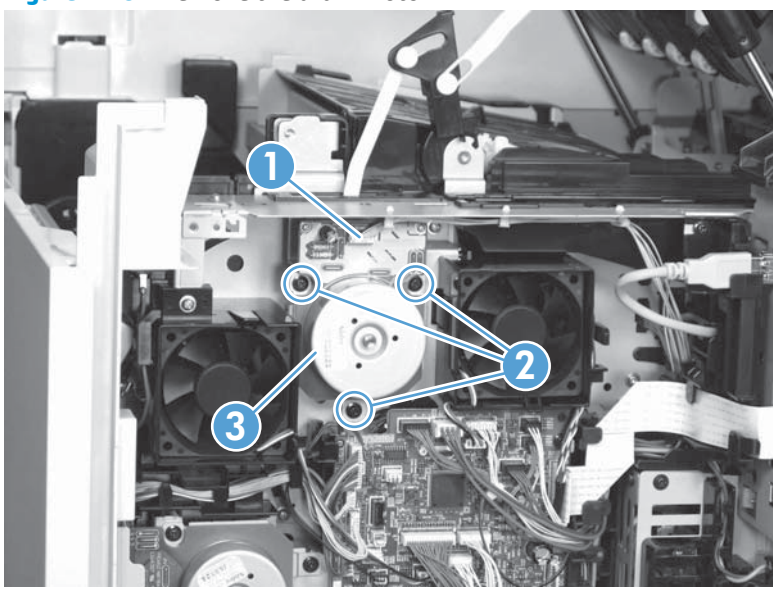
Remove the drum motor

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the drum motor (callout 3).

TIP: Slightly turn the motor counter clockwise to disengage it from the mounting bracket.

Figure 1-701 Remove the drum motor



Fuser motor (M299)

Remove the following assemblies:

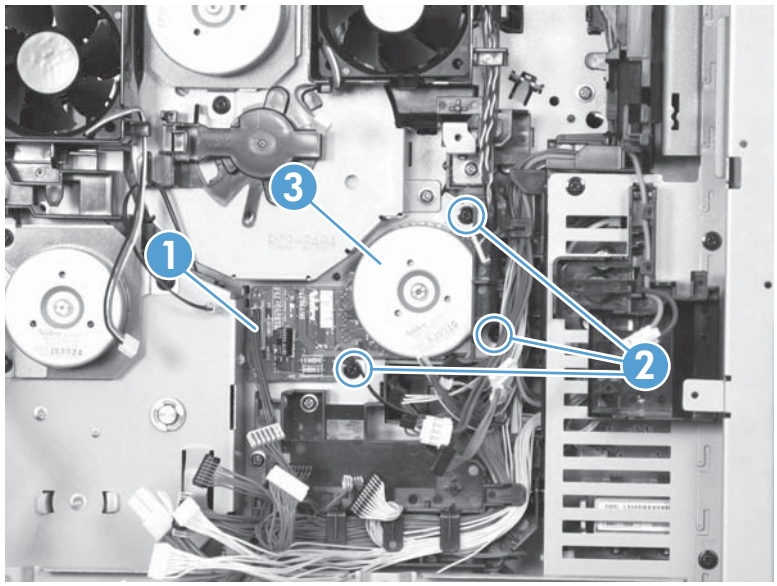
- Image scanner cable cover. See Image scanner cable cover on page 283.
- Rear-right cover. See Rear-right cover on page 323.
- Rear-top cover. See Rear-top cover on page 335.
- DC controller shield-plate assembly. See DC controller shield-plate assembly on page 382.
- DC controller. See DC controller on page 391.

Remove the fuser motor

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the fuser motor (callout 3).

Figure 1-702 Remove the fuser motor



Main fan (FN101)

Remove the following assemblies:

- Front cover. See Front cover on page 274.

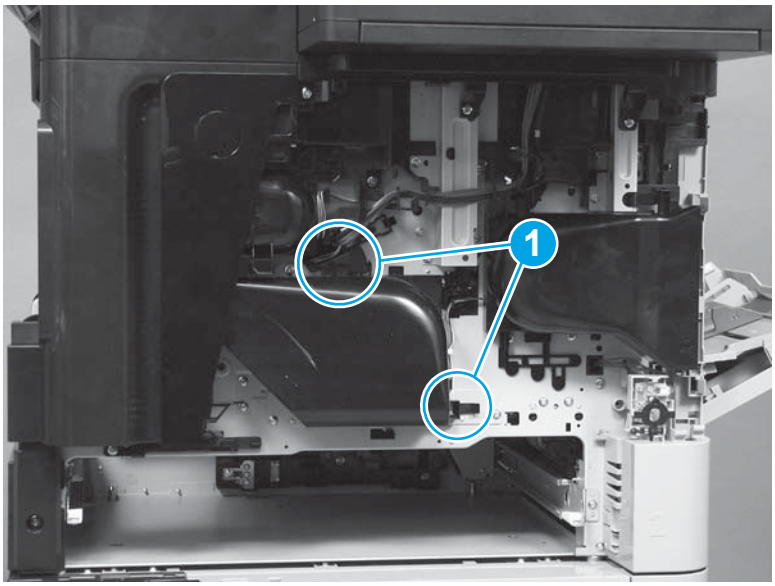
Remove the main fan

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1).

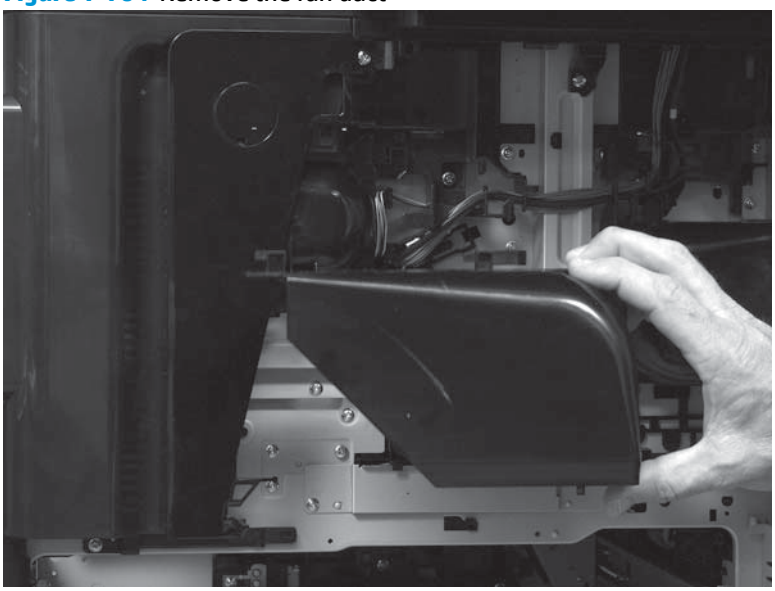
TIP: Pull the bottom most tab away from the chassis to release it.

Figure 1-703 Release two tabs



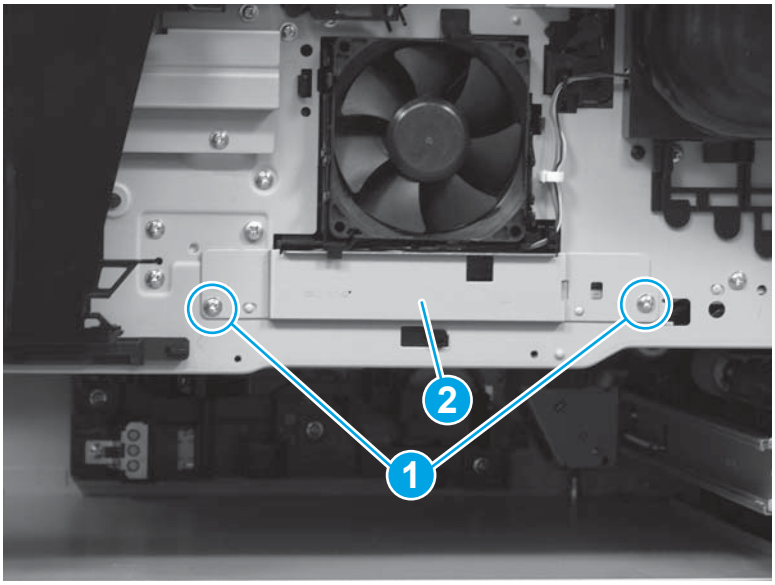
2. Remove the fan duct.

Figure 1-704 Remove the fan duct



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callout 2).

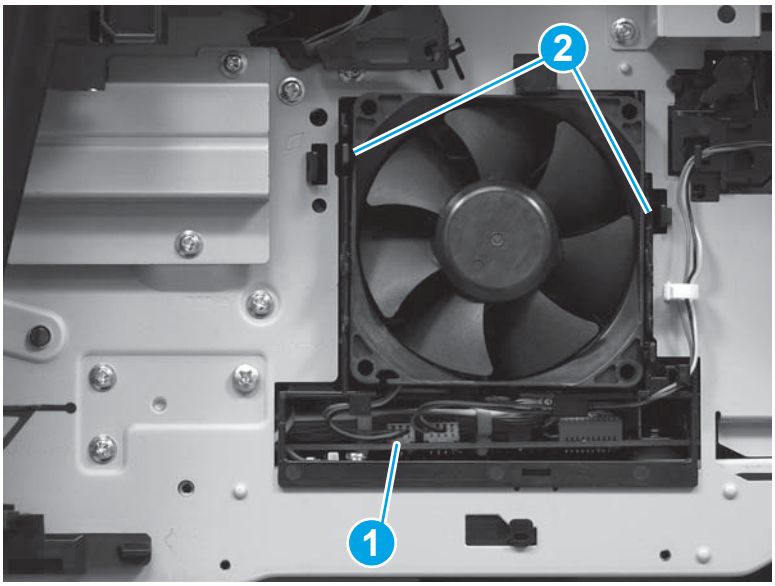
Figure 1-705 Remove two screws and the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the main fan.

Reinstallation tip: To effectively circulate air, the fan must be reinstalled correctly. The arrows embossed on the fan housing must point into the product, and the label on the fan must face inside the product.

Figure 1-706 Remove the main fan



Laser/scanner fan (FN102)

Remove the following assemblies:

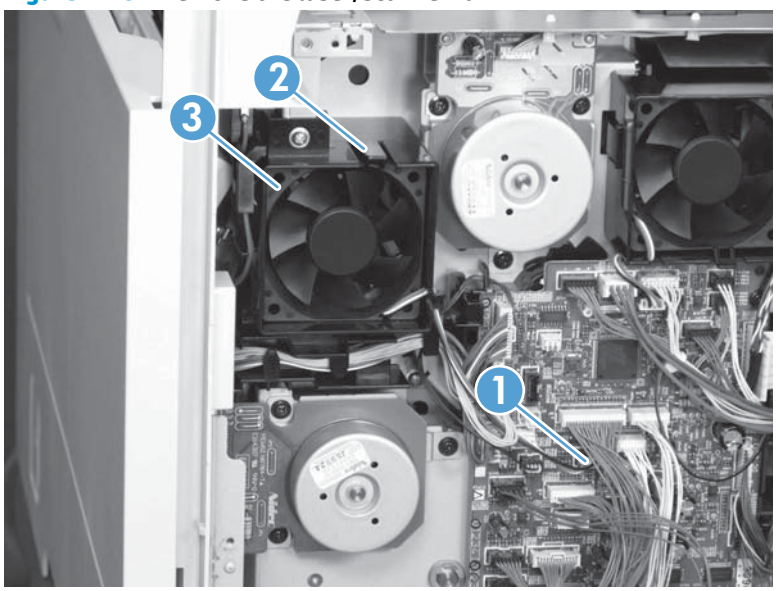
- Front cover. See Front cover on page 274.
- Image scanner cable cover. See Image scanner cable cover on page 283.
- Front-left cover and logo panel assembly. See Front-left cover and logo panel assembly on page 307.
- Rear-right cover. See Rear-right cover on page 323.
- Rear-top cover. See Rear-top cover on page 335.
- DC controller shield-plate assembly. See DC controller shield-plate assembly on page 382.

Remove the laser/scanner fan

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the laser/scanner fan (callout 3).

Figure 1-707 Remove the laser/scanner fan

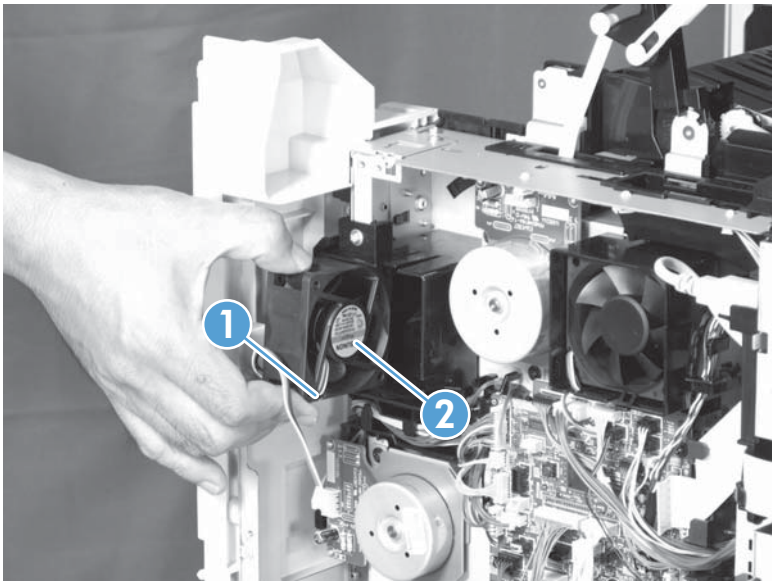


Install the laser/scanner fan

When the laser/scanner fan is installed, make sure of the following:

- The fan wire harness (callout 1) is positioned as shown in the following figure.
- The label (callout 2) on the fan faces inside the product.

Figure 1-708 Install the laser/scanner fan



Cartridge front-side fan (FN103)

Remove the following assemblies:

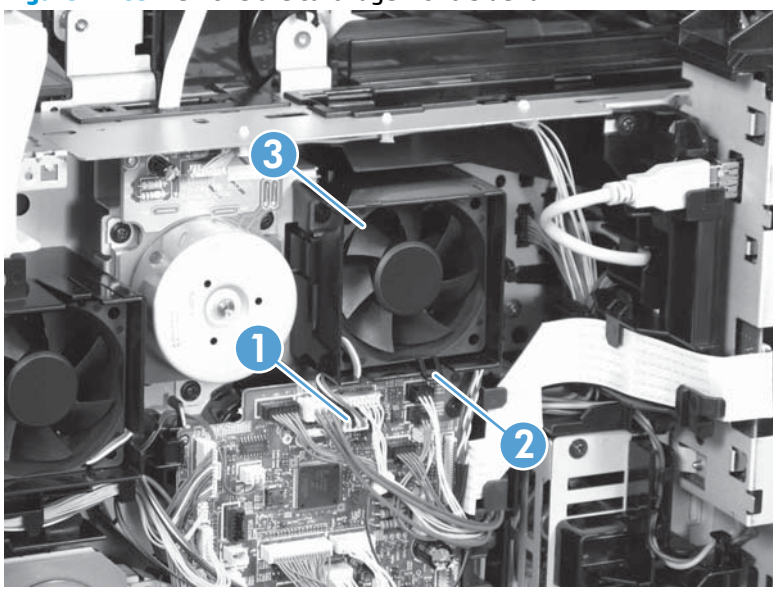
- Image scanner cable cover. See Image scanner cable cover on page 283.
- Rear-right cover. See Rear-right cover on page 323.
- Rear-top cover. See Rear-top cover on page 335.
- DC controller shield-plate assembly. See DC controller shield-plate assembly on page 382.

Remove the cartridge front-side fan

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the cartridge front-side fan (callout 3).

Figure 1-709 Remove the cartridge front-side fan

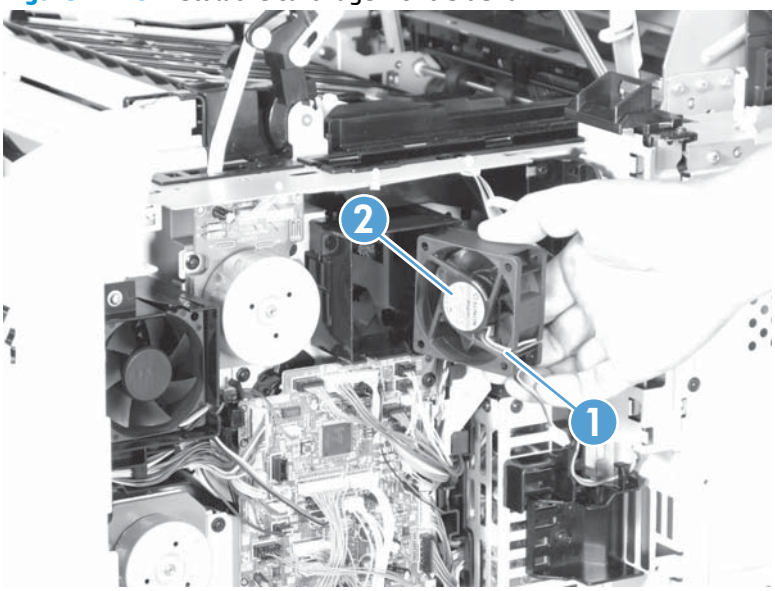


Install the cartridge front-side fan

When the cartridge front-side fan is installed, make sure of the following:

- The fan wire harness (callout 1) is positioned as shown in the following figure.
- The label (callout 2) on the fan faces inside the product.

Figure 1-710 Install the cartridge front-side fan



Low-voltage power supply fan (FN104)

Remove the following assemblies:

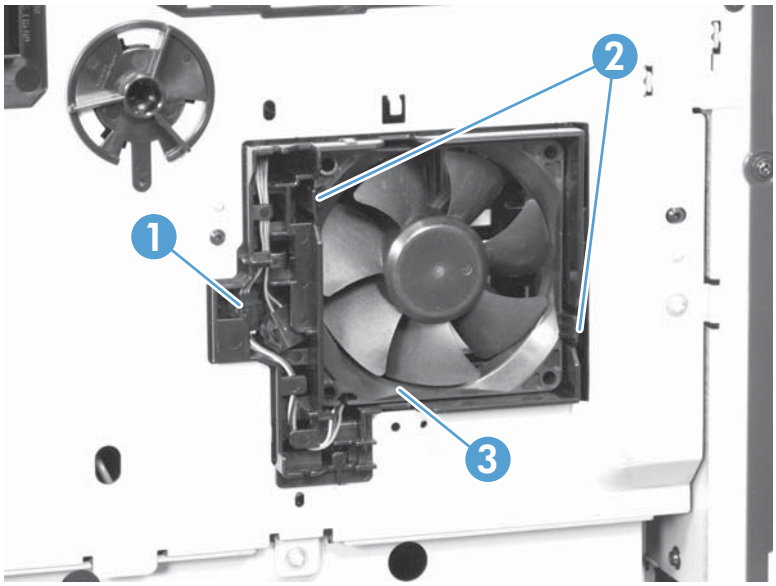
- Image scanner cable cover. See Image scanner cable cover on page 283.
- Rear-right cover. See Rear-right cover on page 323.
- Temperature sensor. See Temperature sensor on page 380.

Remove the low-voltage power supply fan

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the low-voltage power supply fan (callout 3).

Figure 1-711 Remove the low-voltage power supply fan

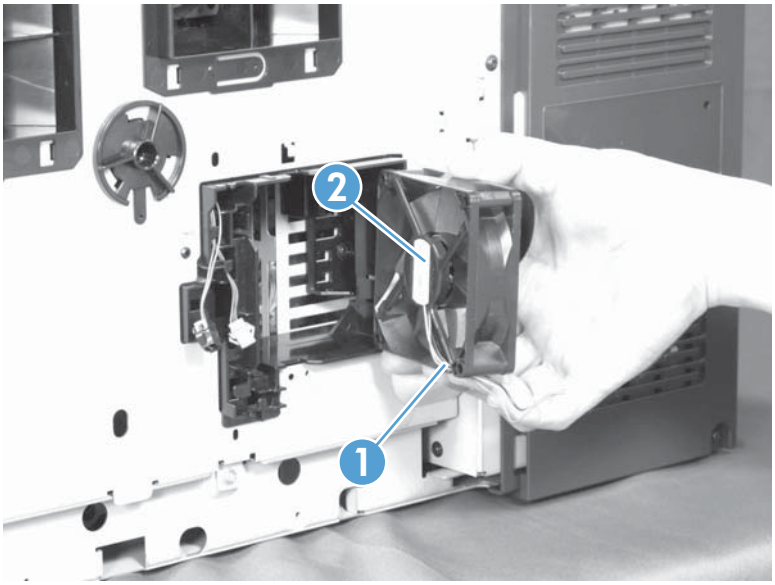


Install the low-voltage power supply fan

When the low-voltage power supply fan is installed, make sure of the following:

- The fan wire harness (callout 1) is positioned as shown in the following figure.
- The label (callout 2) on the fan faces inside the product.

Figure 1-712 Install the low-voltage power supply fan



Reverse assembly fan (FN105)

Remove the following assemblies:

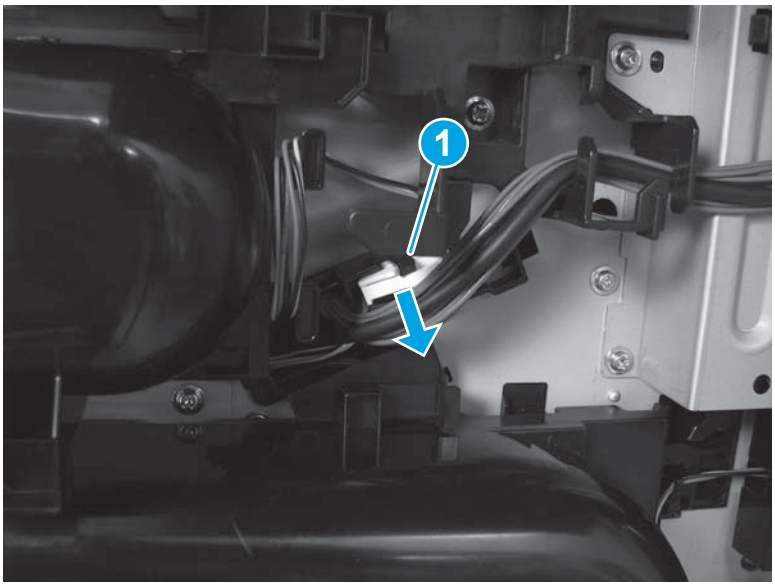
- Front cover. See Front cover on page 274.
- Front-left cover and logo panel assembly. See Front-left cover and logo panel assembly on page 307.

Remove the reverse assembly fan

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

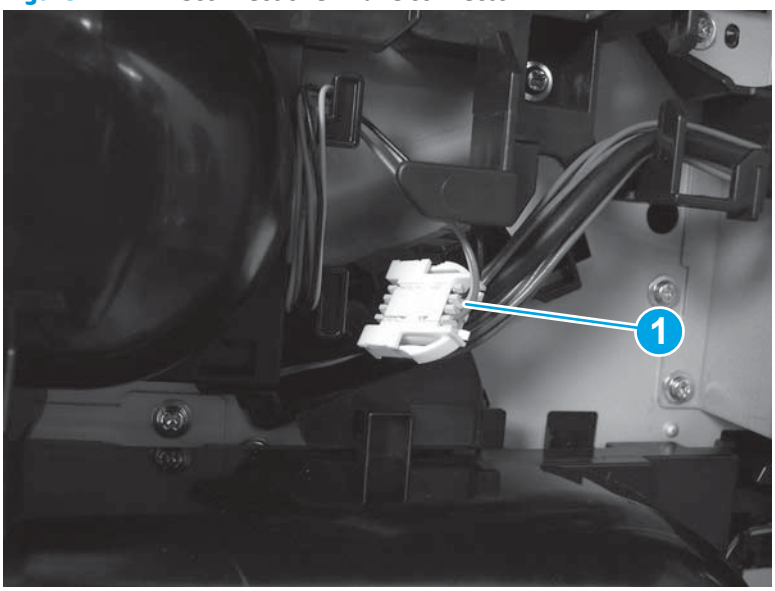
1. Remove one in-line connector (callout 1) from the wire harness.

Figure 1-713 Remove one in-line connector



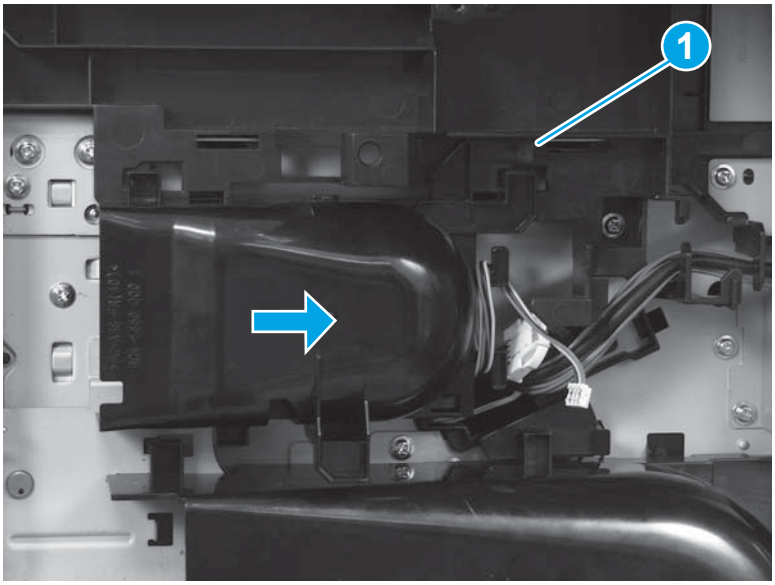
2. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1).

Figure 1-714 Disconnect one in-line connector



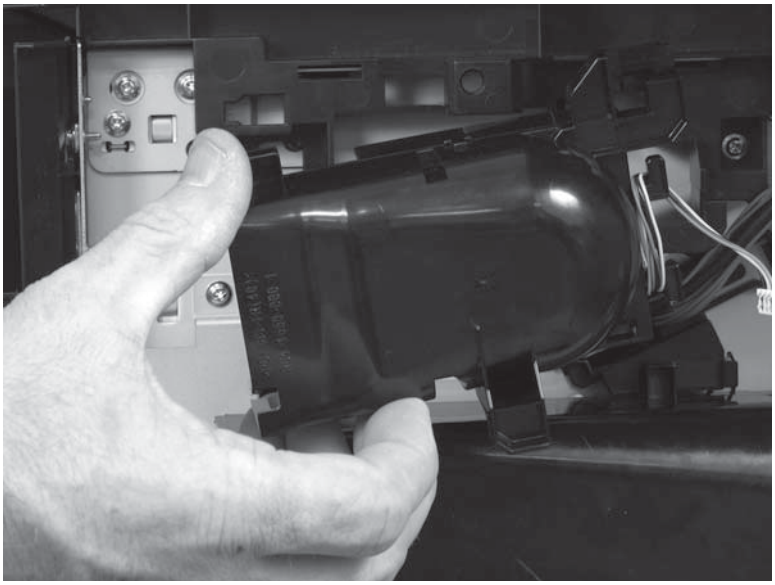
3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the fan and duct to the right to release it.

Figure 1-715 Release the fan and duct



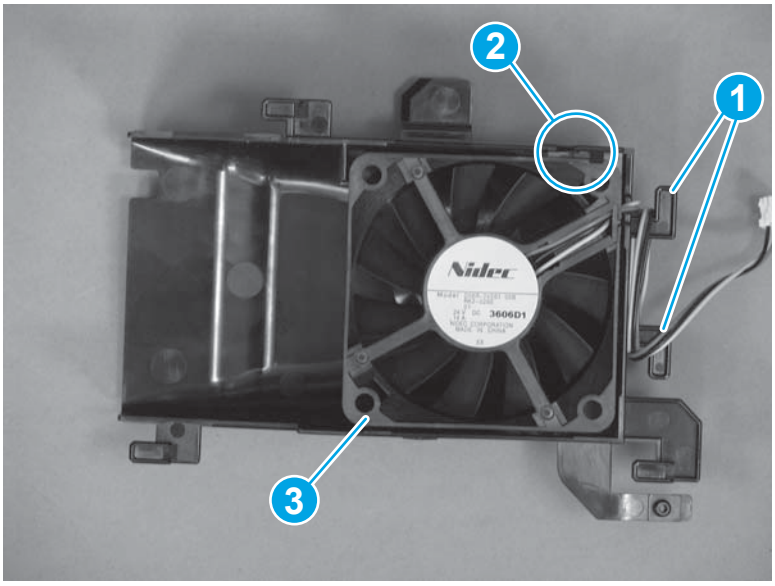
4. Remove the fan and duct.

Figure 1-716 Remove the fan and duct



5. If necessary, release the wire harness from the retainers (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then separate the fan (callout 3) from the duct.

Figure 1-717 Separate the fan from the duct



Cartridge fan (FN301)

Remove the following assemblies:

- Front cover. See Front cover on page 274.

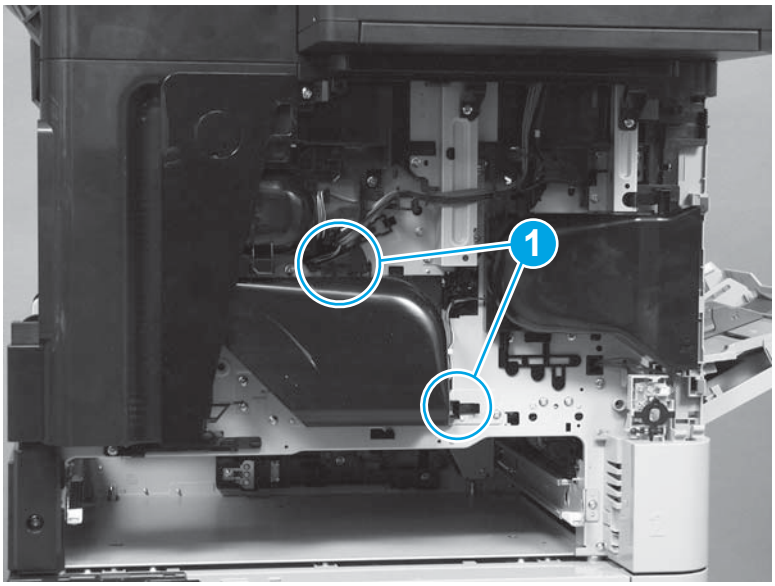
Remove the cartridge fan

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1).

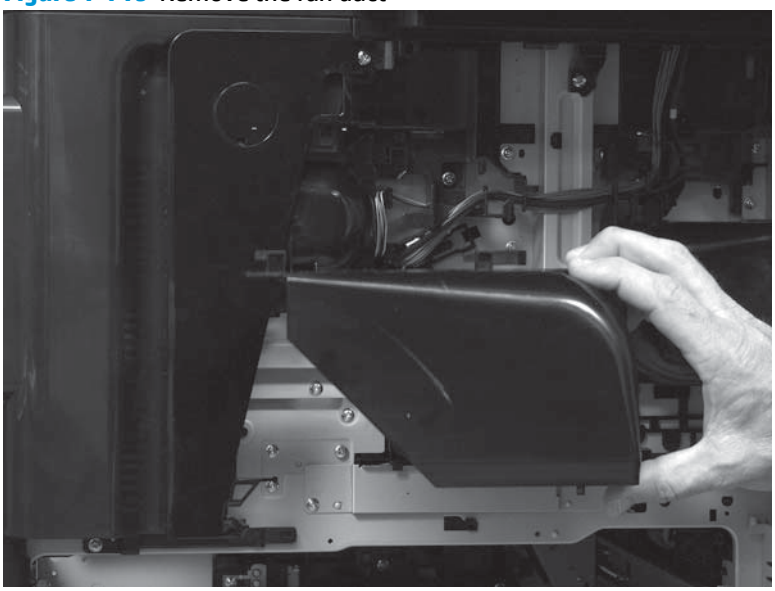
TIP: Pull the bottom most tab away from the chassis to release it.

Figure 1-718 Release two tabs



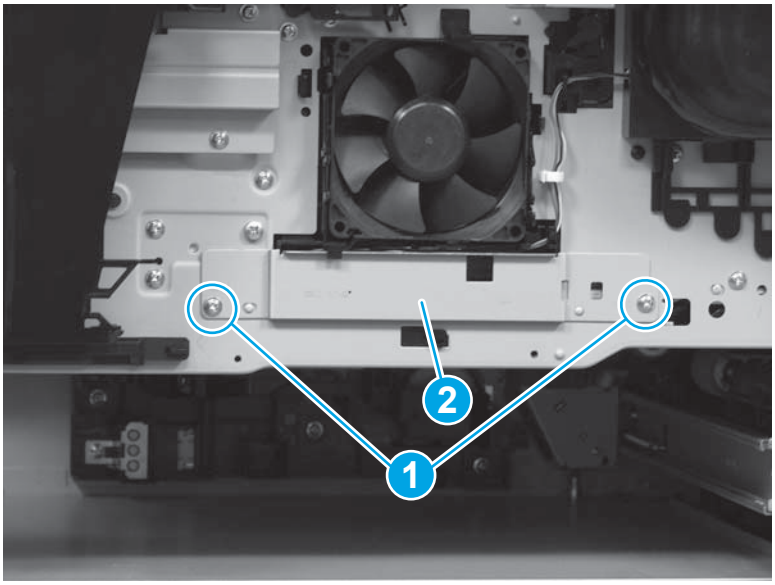
2. Remove the main fan duct.

Figure 1-719 Remove the fan duct



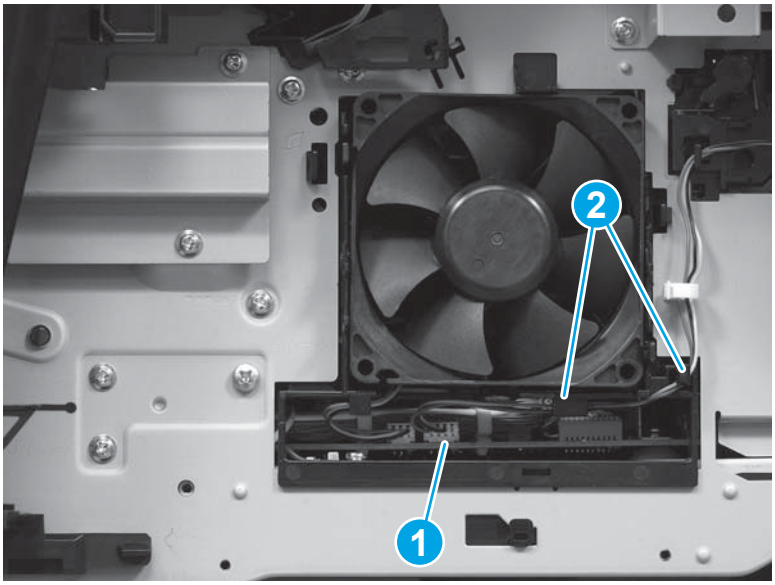
3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-720 Remove two screws and the cover



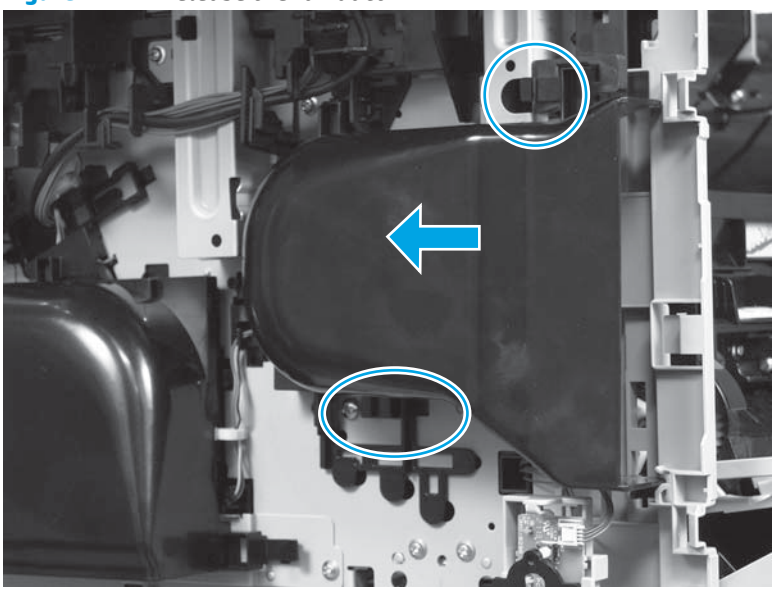
4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from the retainers (callout 2).

Figure 1-721 Disconnect one connector



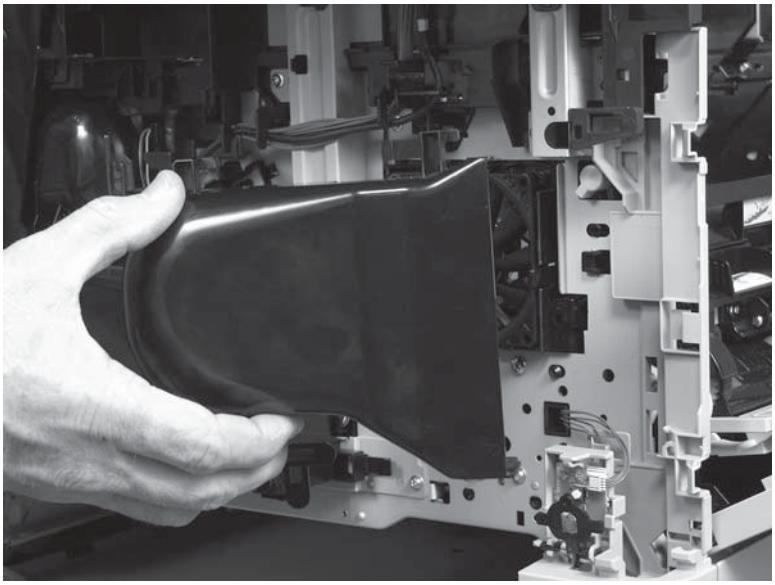
5. Release two tabs, and then slightly slide the cartridge fan duct to the left to release it.

Figure 1-722 Release the fan duct



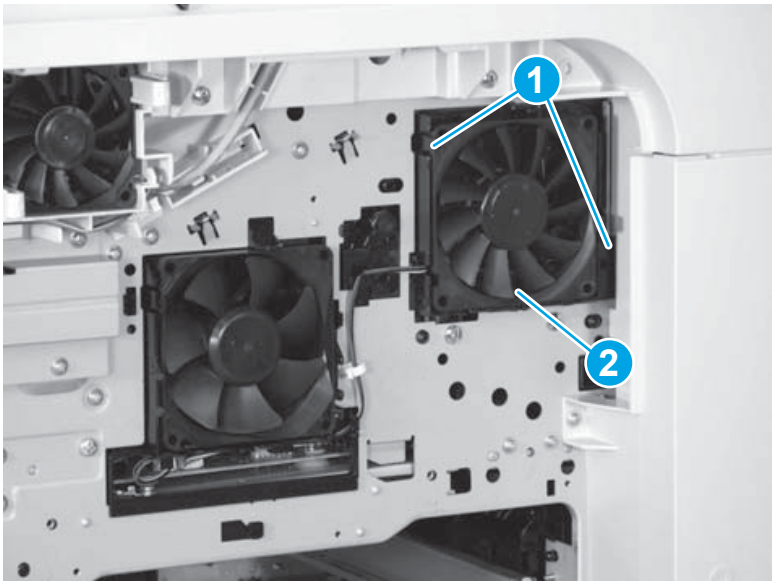
6. Remove the fan duct.

Figure 1-723 Remove the fan duct



7. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then remove the cartridge fan (callout 2).

Figure 1-724 Remove the cartridge fan

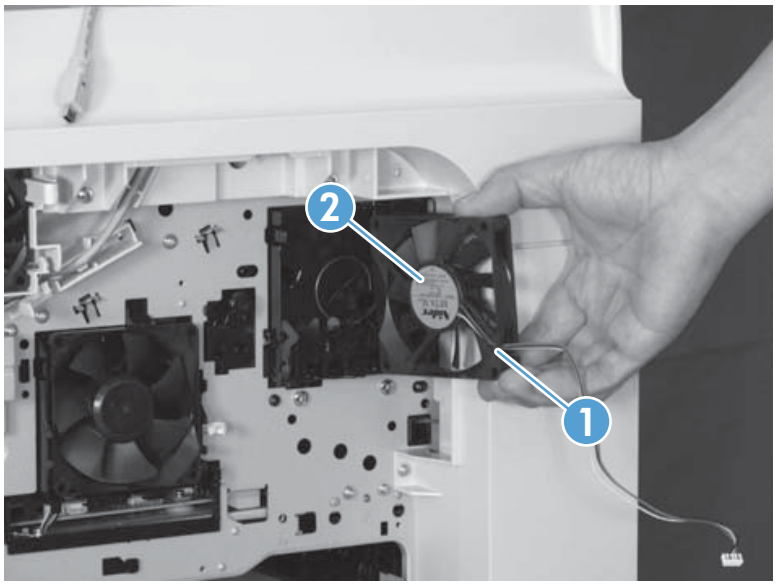


Install the cartridge fan

When you install the main fan, make sure of the following:

- The fan wire harness (callout 1) is positioned as shown in the following figure.
- The label (callout 2) on the fan faces inside the product.

Figure 1-725 Install the cartridge fan



Interlock switch assembly (SW101 and SW106)

NOTE: The interlock switch assembly includes the door switch and switch cable (SW101), and the door sensor and sensor cable (SW106).

Remove the following assemblies:

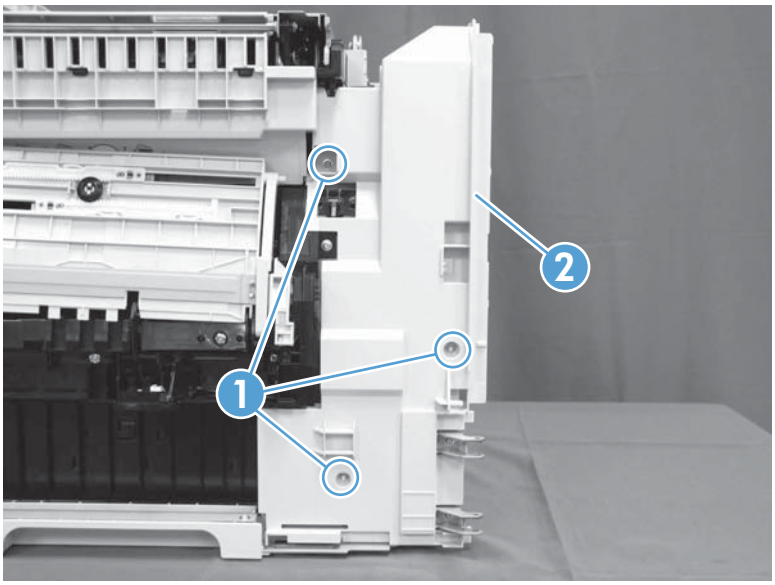
- Image scanner cable cover. See Image scanner cable cover on page 283.
- Tray 1 cover. See Tray 1 cover on page 287.
- Rear-right cover. See Rear-right cover on page 323.
- Rear-top cover. See Rear-top cover on page 335.
- Right-lower door. See Right-lower door on page 345.
- DC controller shield-plate assembly. See DC controller shield-plate assembly on page 382.

Remove the interlock switch assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. Remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the Tray 1 gear cover (callout 2).

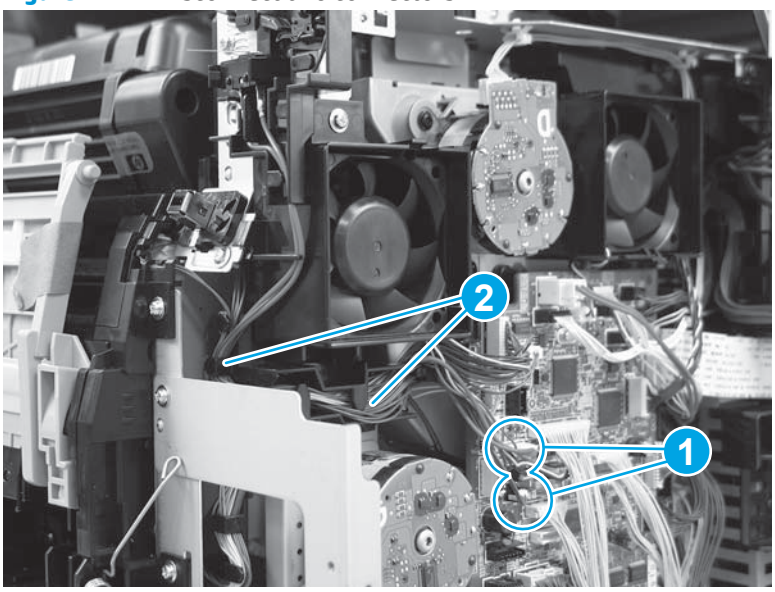
Figure 1-726 Remove the Tray 1 gear cover



2. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1; J13 and J78) on the DC controller, and then release the wire harnesses from the guides (callout 2).

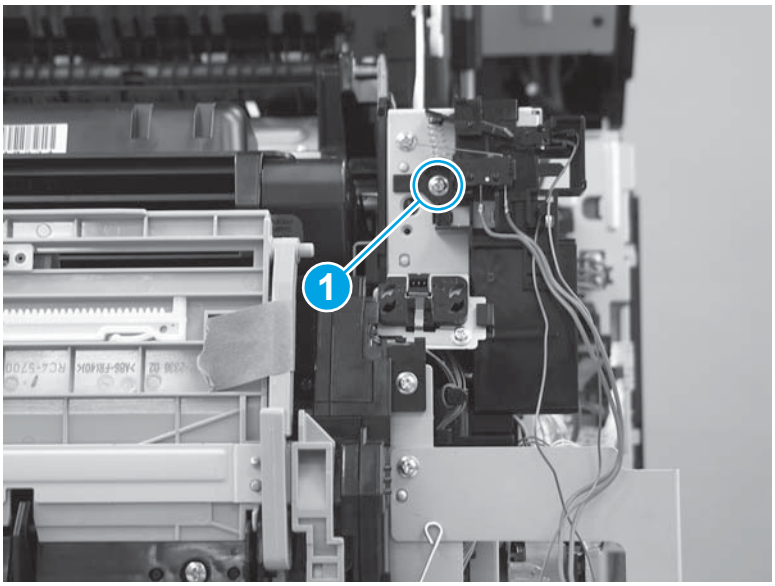
TIP: It might be easier to release the wire harnesses from the guide by first disconnecting additional connectors and releasing additional wire harnesses from the guide.

Figure 1-727 Disconnect two connectors



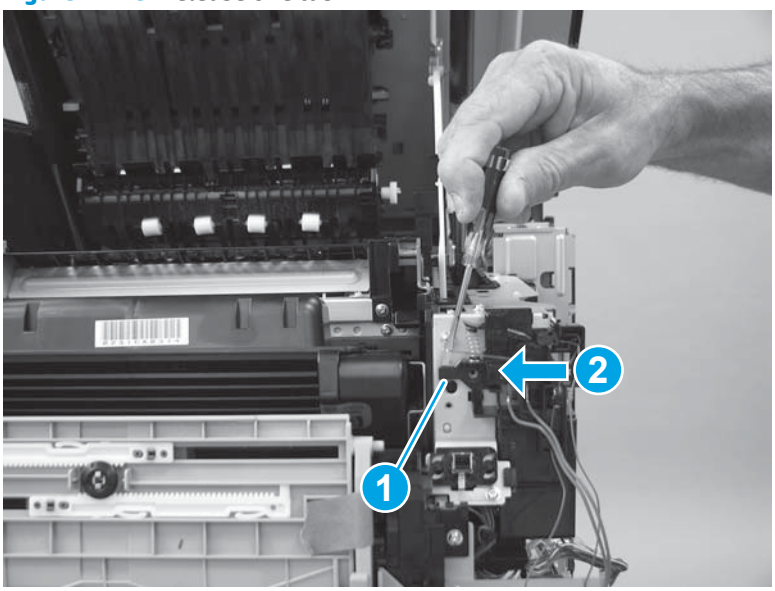
3. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-728 Remove one screw



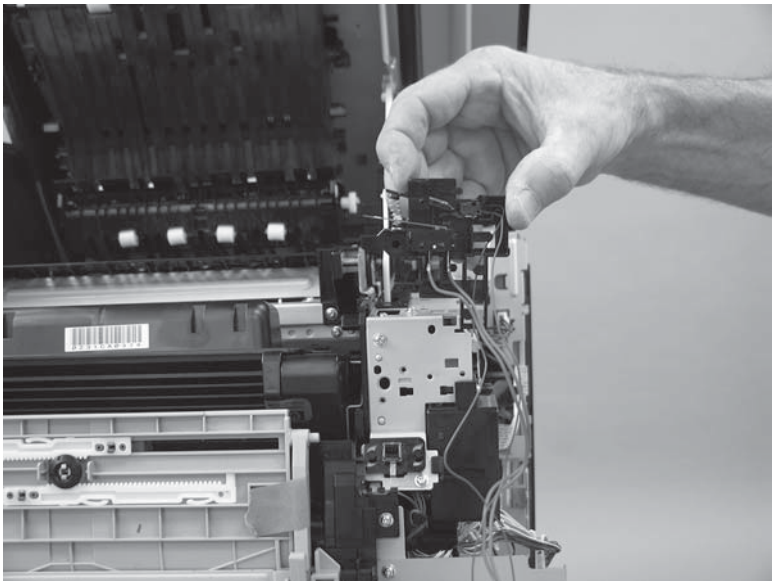
4. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the assembly toward Tray 1 to release it (callout 2).

Figure 1-729 Release one tab



5. Remove the interlock switch assembly.

Figure 1-730 Remove the assembly



Output accessory detection switch (SW104)

Remove the following assemblies:

- Formatter. See Step 1: Remove the formatter on page 24.
- Output bin and bin base assembly. See Output bin and bin base assembly on page 68.

NOTE: If the optional HP Stapling Mailbox is installed, remove it.

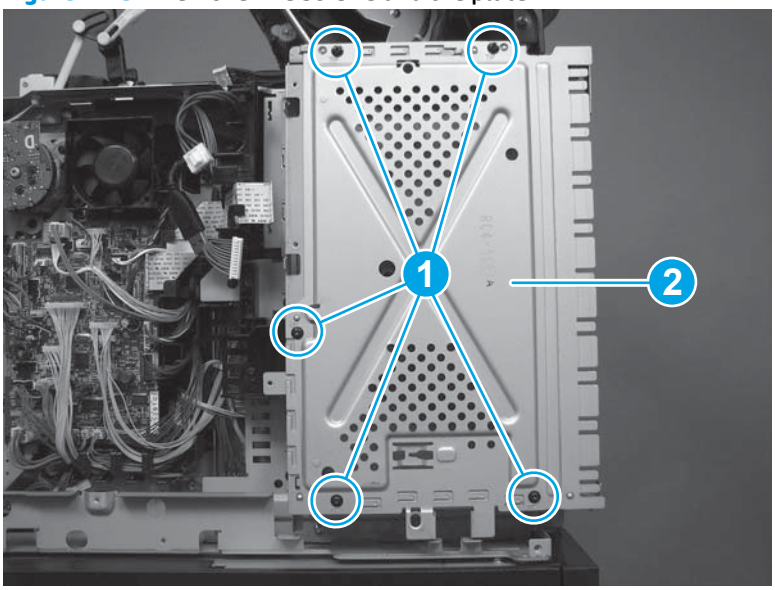
- Duplex accessory. See Duplex accessory on page 70.
- Image scanner cable cover. See Image scanner cable cover on page 283.
- Side-rear cover. See Side-rear cover on page 296.
- Rear-right cover. See Rear-right cover on page 323.
- Rear-left cover. See Rear-left cover on page 327.
- Rear-top cover. See Rear-top cover on page 335.
- DC controller shield-plate assembly. See DC controller shield-plate assembly on page 382.
- Interconnect board (ICB). See Interconnect board (ICB) on page 426.

Remove the output accessory detection switch

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

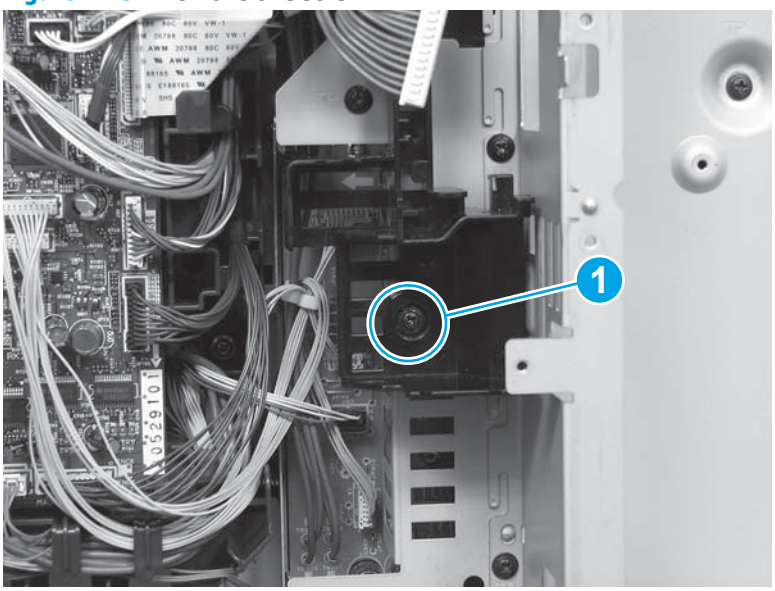
1. Remove five screws (callout 1), and the sheet-metal plate (callout 2).

Figure 1-731 Remove five screws and the plate



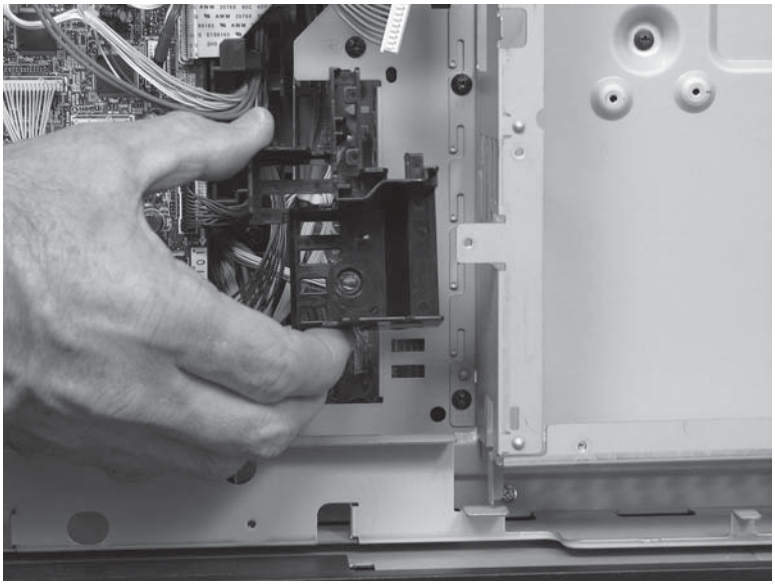
2. Remove one screw (callout 1) near the DC controller.

Figure 1-732 Remove one screw



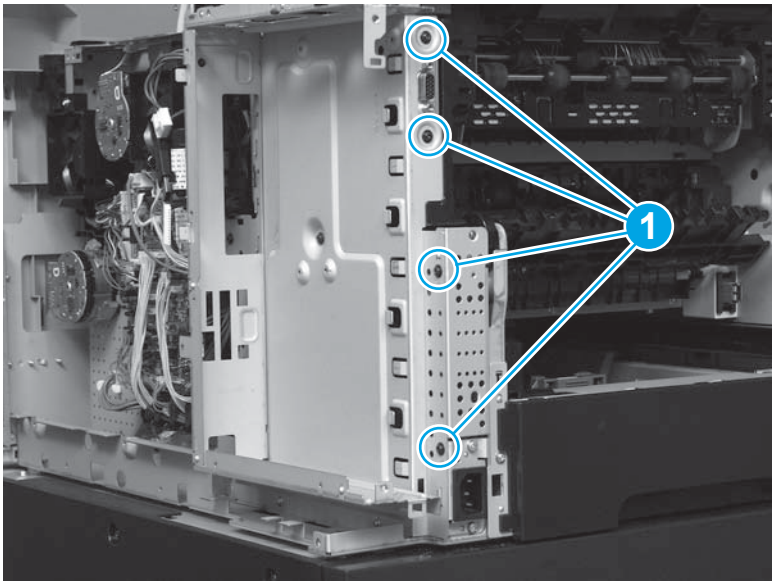
3. Remove the guide (callout 1).

Figure 1-733 Remove the guide



4. Remove four black screws (callout 1).

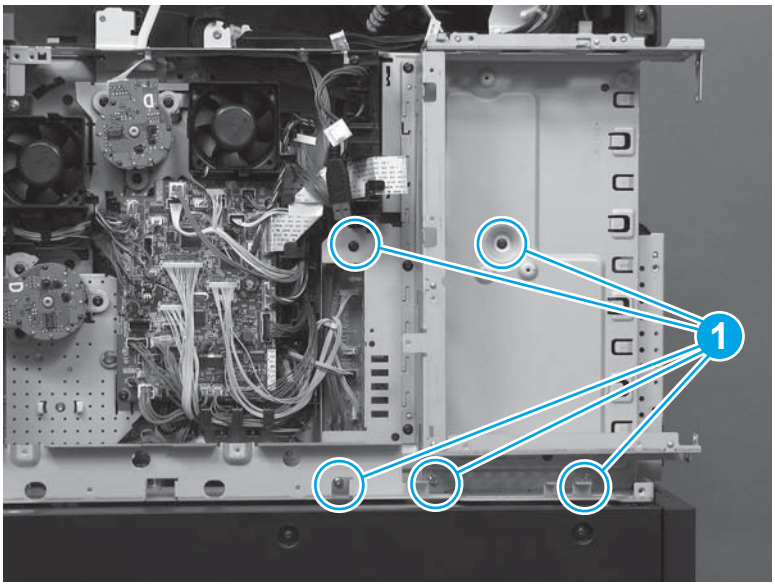
Figure 1-734 Remove four screws



5. Remove five screws (callout 1).

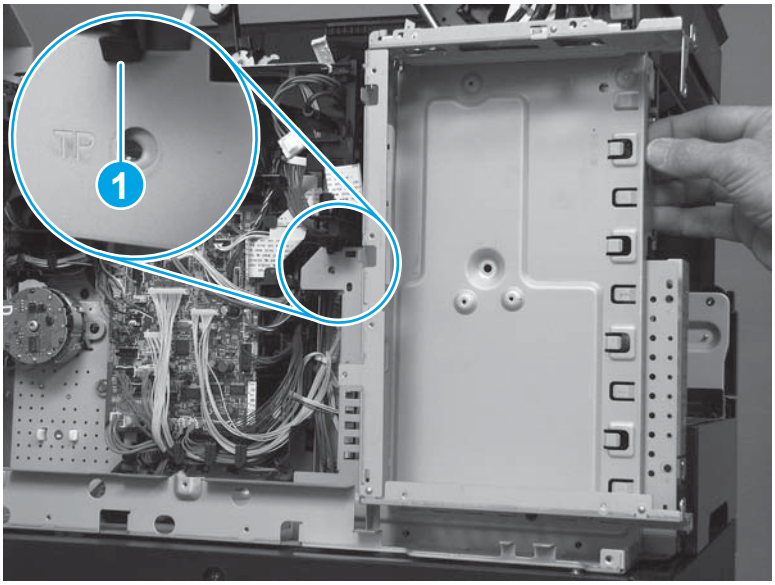
NOTE: The two upper screws are black, and the three screws across the bottom are silver.

Figure 1-735 Remove five screws



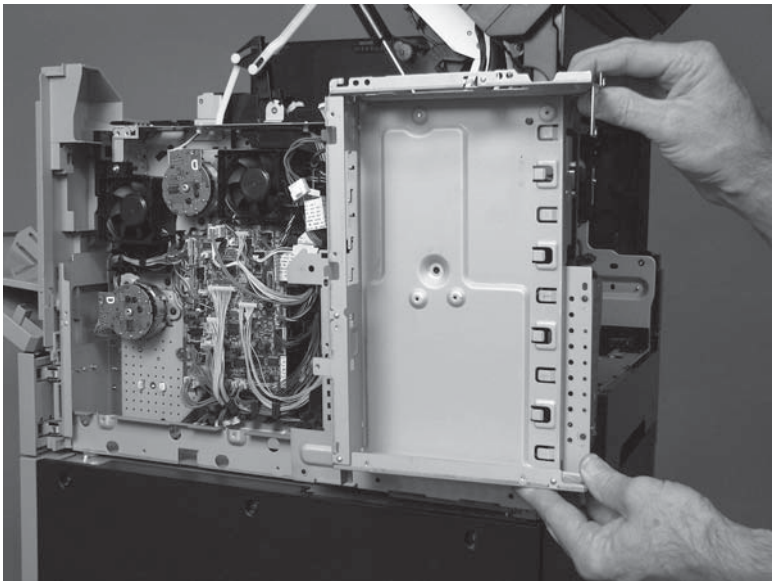
6. Slightly separate the sheet-metal plate from the product, and then release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 1-736 Release one tab



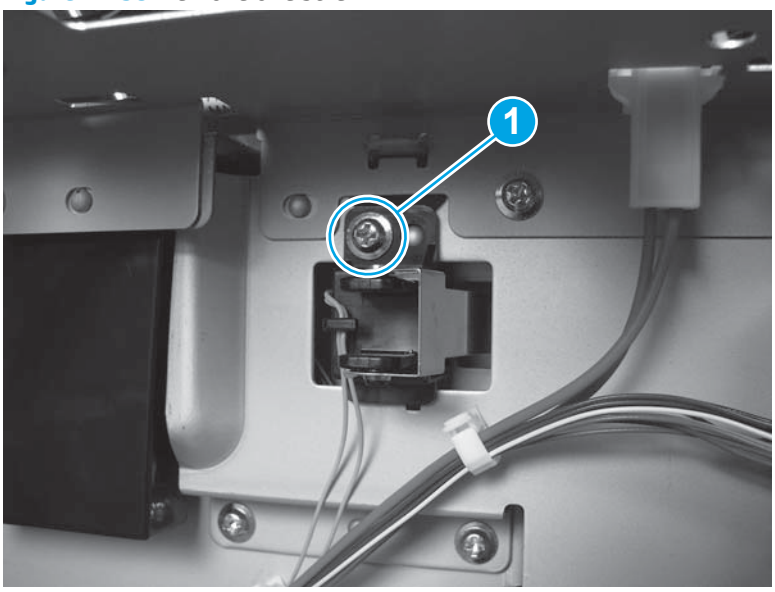
7. Remove the sheet-metal plate from the product.

Figure 1-737 Remove the sheet-metal plate



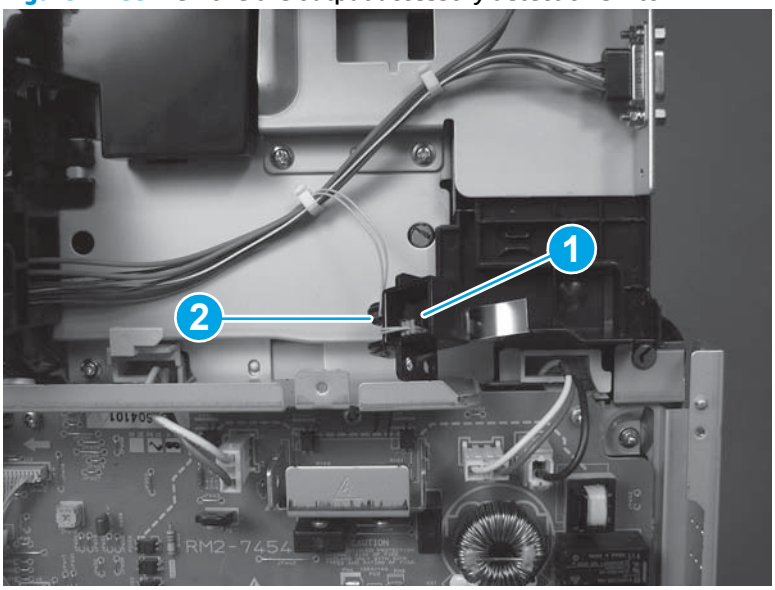
8. Locate the output detection switch (behind the plate removed in the previous step), and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-738 Remove one screw



9. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the switch (callout 2).

Figure 1-739 Remove the output accessory detection switch



Low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter
- Step 2: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox
- Step 3: Remove the duplex accessory
- Step 4: Remove the side-rear cover
- Step 5: Remove the image scanner cable cover
- Step 6: Remove the rear-right cover
- Step 7: Remove the rear-left cover
- Step 8: Remove the rear-top cover
- Step 9: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly
- Step10: Remove the ICB
- Step 11: Remove the LVPS
- Step 12: Unpack the replacement LVPS
- Step 13: Install the LVPS
- Step 14: Install the ICB
- Step 15: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly
- Step 16: Install the rear-top cover
- Step 17: Install the rear-left cover
- Step 18: Install the rear-right cover
- Step 19: Install the image scanner cable cover
- Step 20: Install the side-rear cover
- Step 21: Install the duplex accessory
- Step 22: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox
- Step 23: Install the formatter
- Step 24: Test the installation
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the low-voltage power supply (LVPS) for the HP LaserJet Enterprise M630.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct assembly part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the assembly.

LVPS part number	
RM2-5792-000CN	LVPS (110V)
RM2-5793-000CN	LVPS (220)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

CAUTION: This product contains components that can be damaged by electrostatic discharge (ESD). To reduce the chance of ESD damage, place the product on an ESD mat (if available), and wear an ESD wrist strap connected to a grounded surface. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis before touching an ESD-sensitive part.

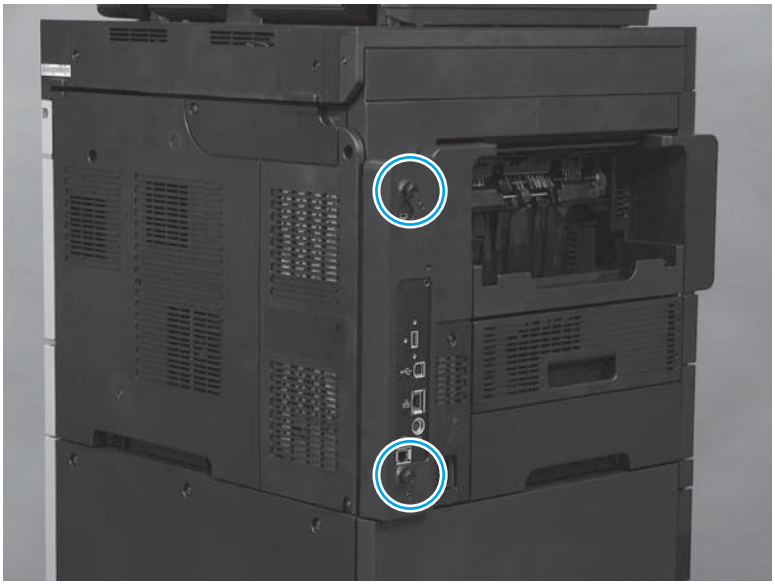
Step 1: Remove the formatter

1. Do the following steps:
   a. Turn off the product.
   b. Disconnect the power cable.

      WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

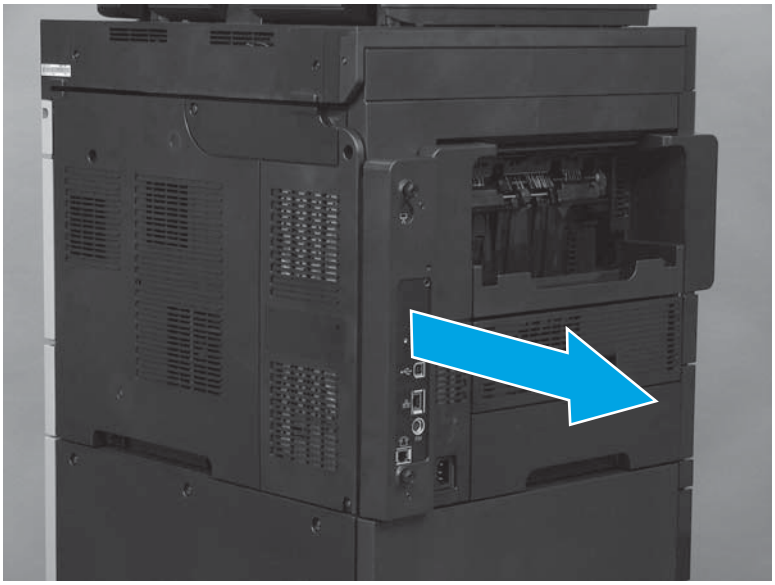
   c. Disconnect all cables and accessories attached to the formatter.
2. Loosen the two thumbscrews on the formatter.

Figure 1-740 Remove the formatter



3. Slide the formatter straight out of the product to remove it.

Figure 1-741 Remove the formatter

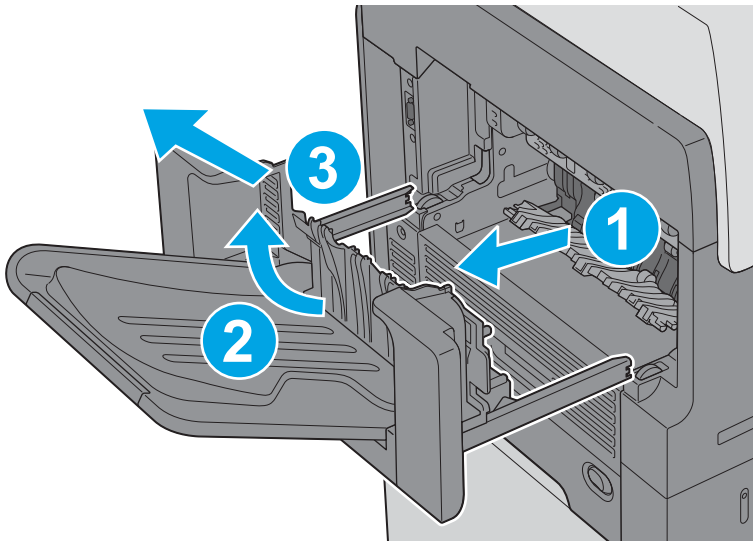


Step 2: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

▲ Do one of the following steps:

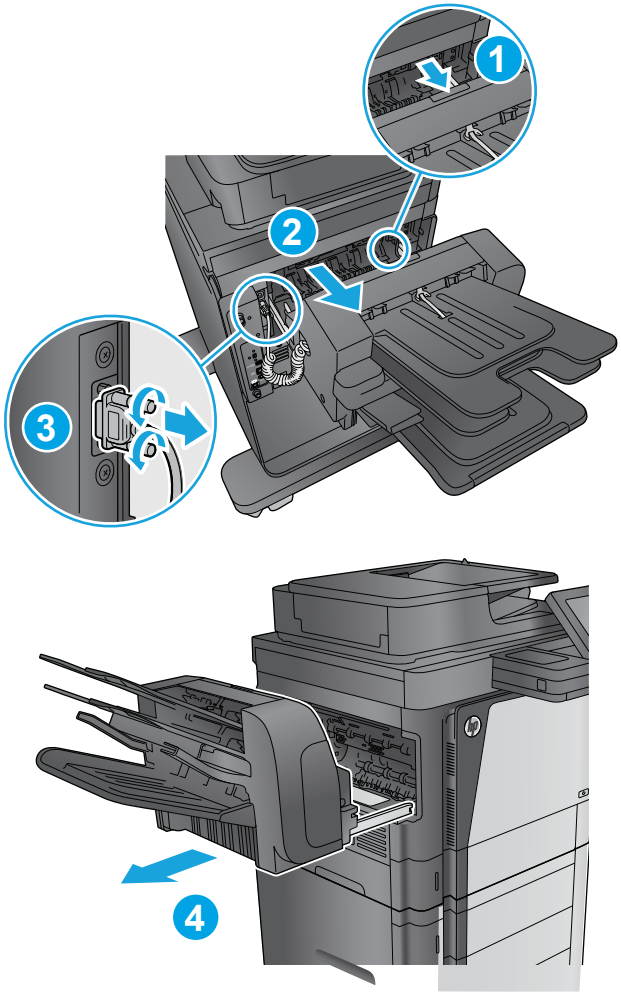
a. **M630dn and M630f**: Slide the bin base away from the product (callout 1) until it stops, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-742 Remove the output bin



b. **M630z**: Press the latch (callout 1), pull the stapling mailbox away from the product (callout 2), disconnect the interface cable (callout 3), and then remove the stapling mailbox (callout 4).

Figure 1-743 Remove the stapling mailbox

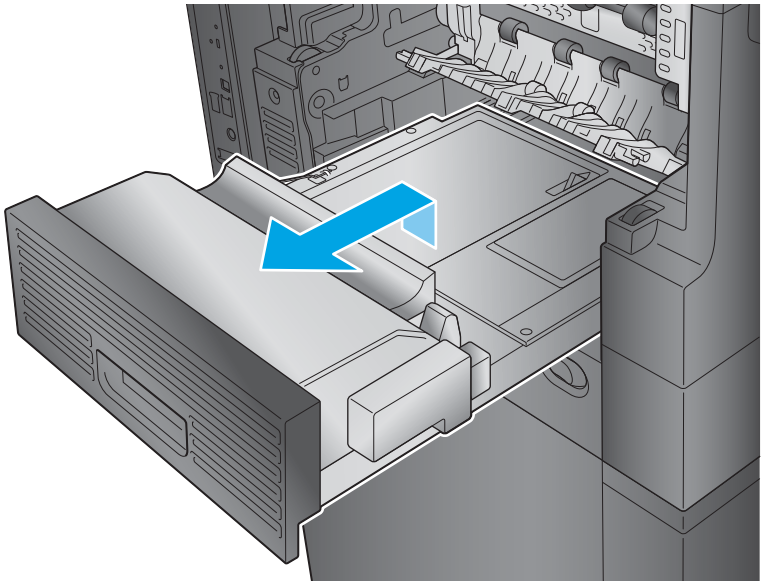


Step 3: Remove the duplex accessory

▲ Slide the duplex assembly away from the product, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails, and then remove it.

NOTE: Locate the duplexer at the left-hand side of the product.

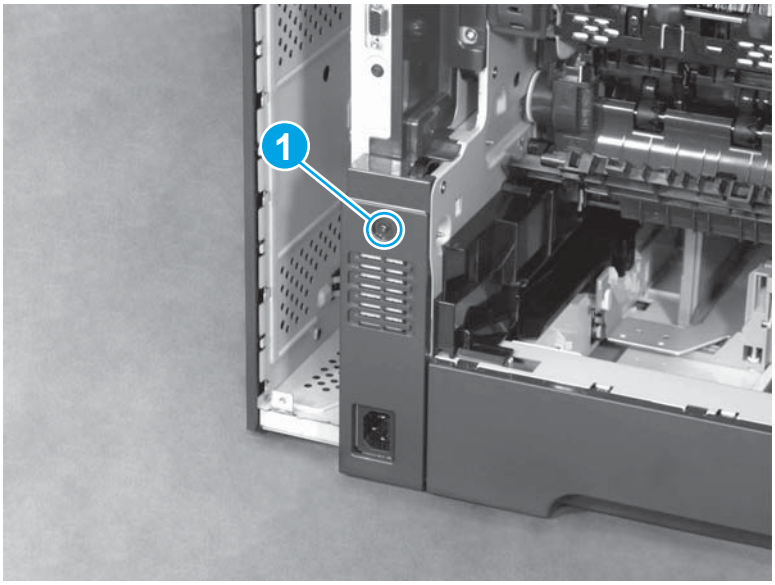
Figure 1-744 Remove the duplex accessory



Step 4: Remove the side-rear cover

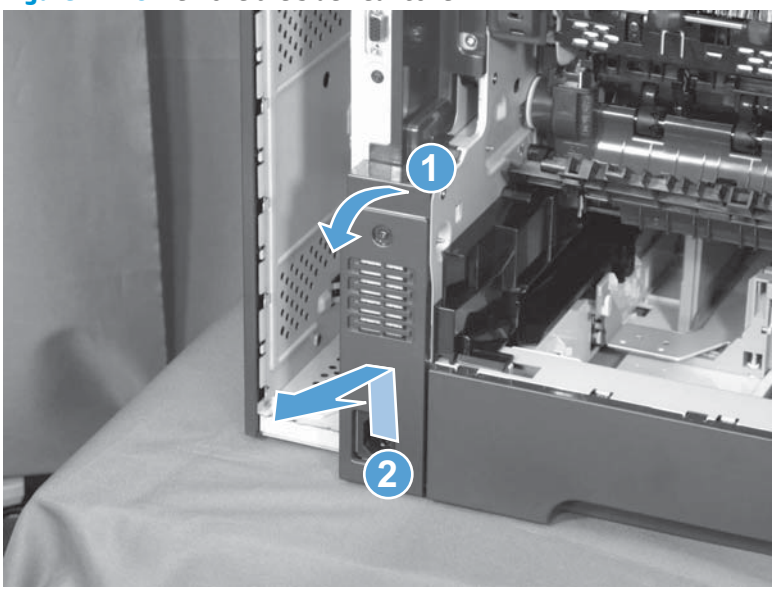
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-745 Remove one screw



2. Rotate the top of the cover away from the product (callout 1), slightly raise the cover to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

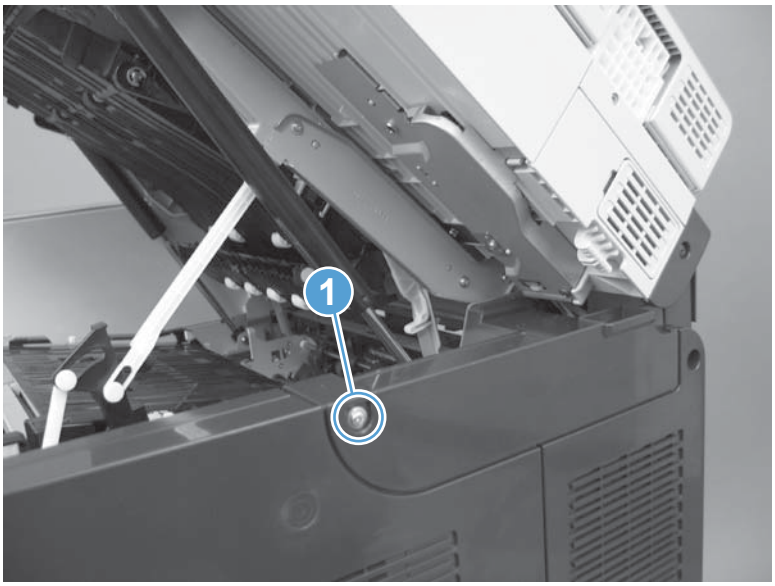
Figure 1-746 Remove the side-rear cover



Step 5: Remove the image scanner cable cover

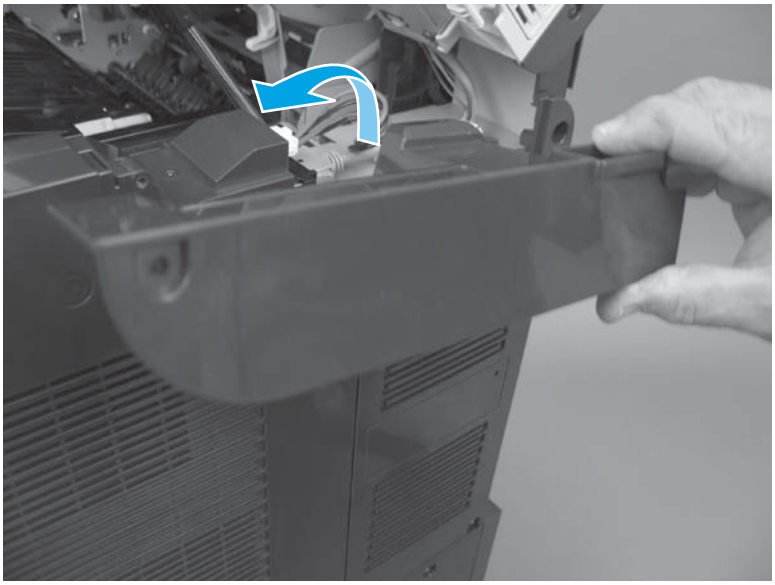
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-747 Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

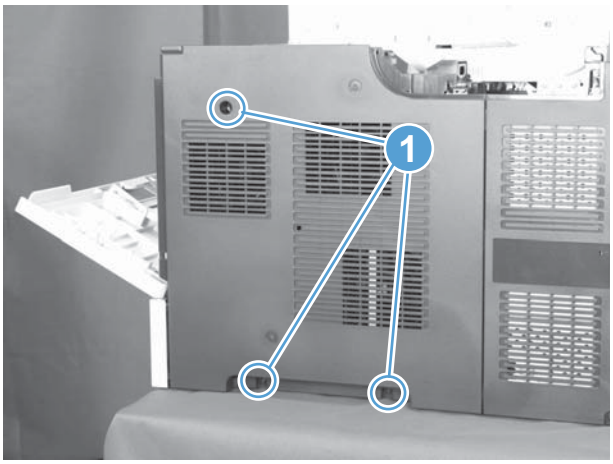
Figure 1-748 Remove the cover



Step 6: Remove the rear-right cover

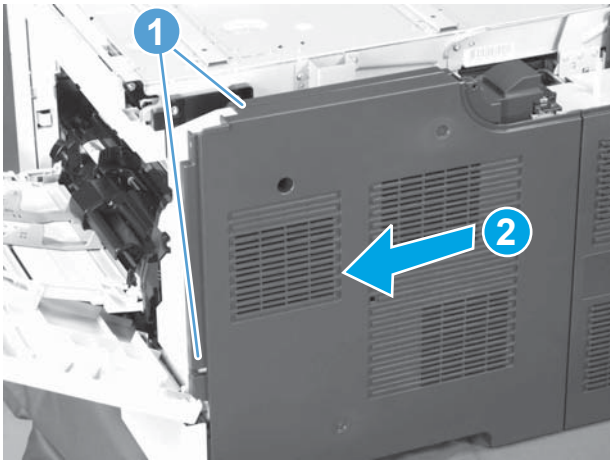
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-749 Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly seperate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

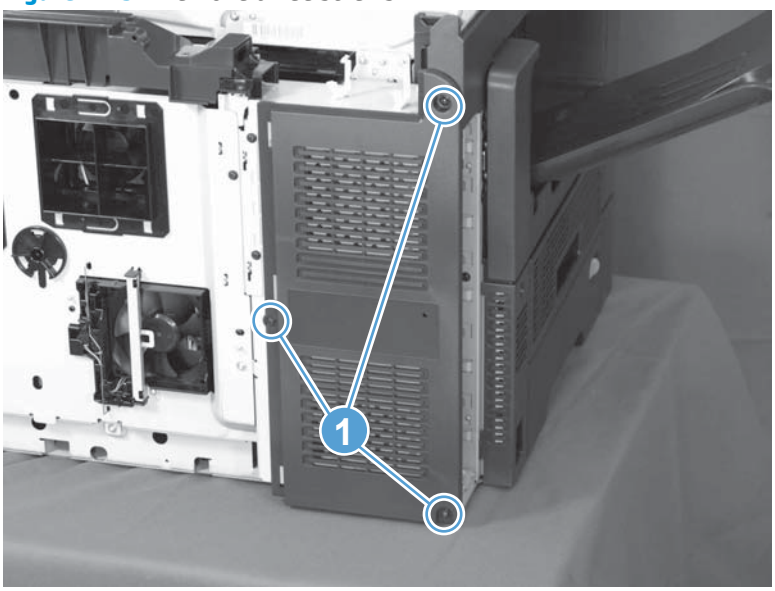
Figure 1-750 Remove the cover



Step 7: Remove the rear-left cover

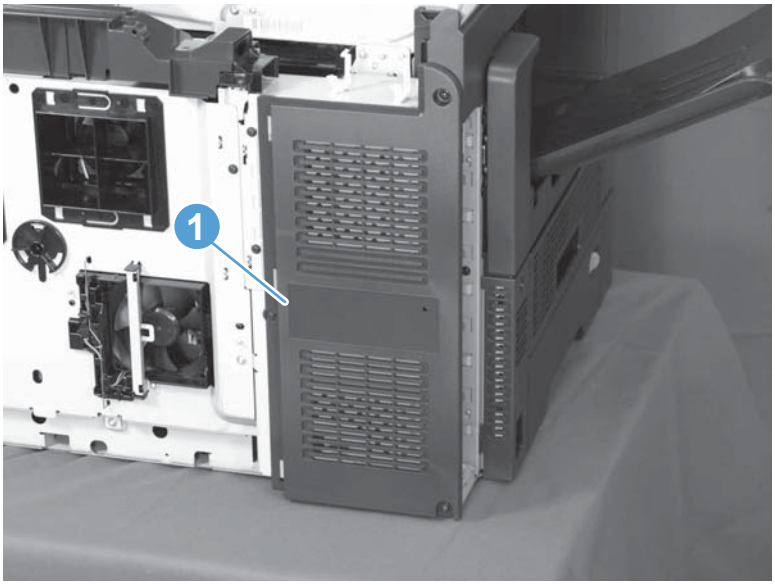
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-751 Remove three screws



2. Remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 1-752 Remove the cover

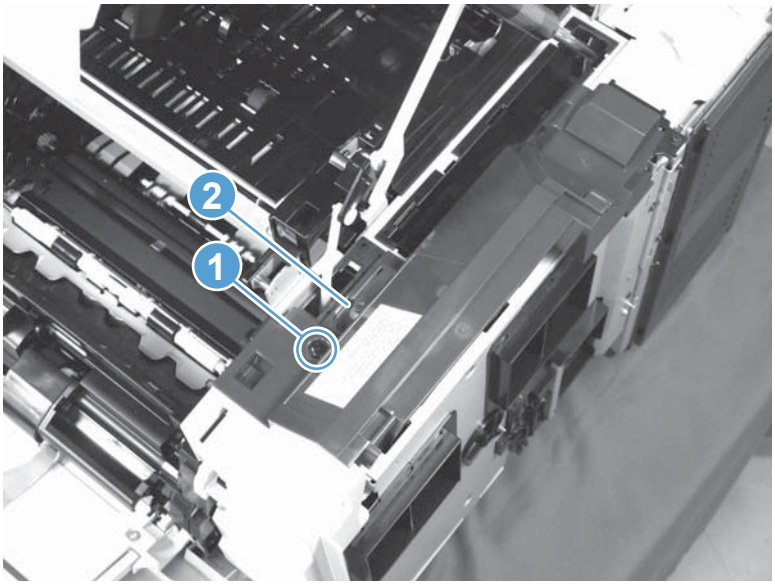


Step 8: Remove the rear-top cover

NOTE: If the top cover is closed, open it now.

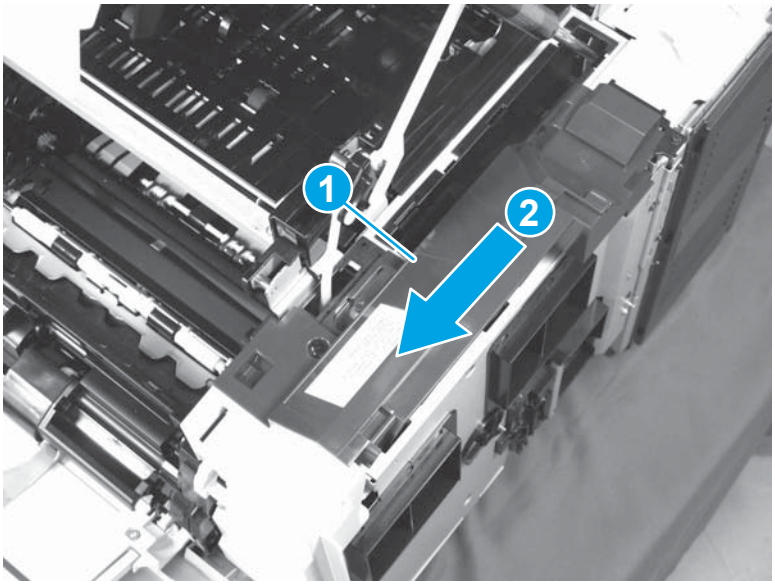
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-753 Remove one screw



2. Push the cover (callout 1) towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-754 Remove the cover

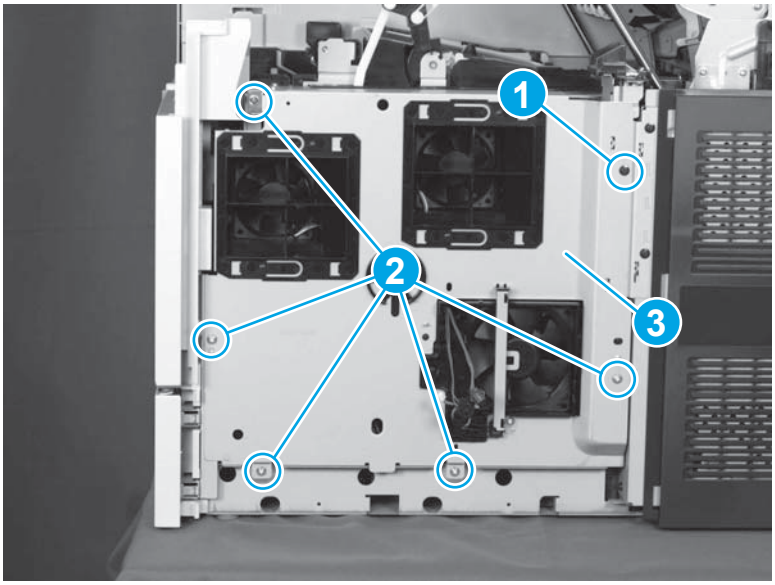


Step 9: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly

1. Remove one black screw (callout 1), remove five silver screws (callout 2), and then slightly rotate the top of the shield (callout 3) away from the product.

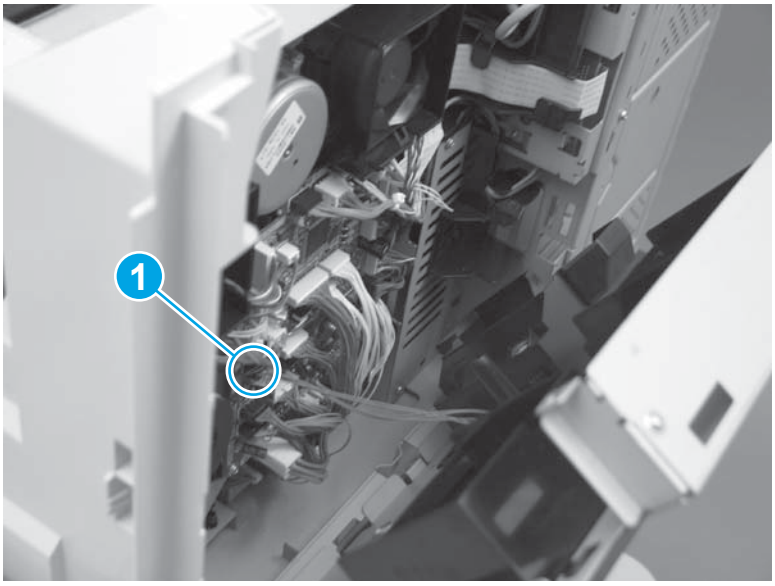
⚠ **CAUTION:** The shield is still connected to the product by a wire harness. Do not completely remove the shield after removing the screws.

Figure 1-755 Remove six screws



2. Disconnect one connector (J42; callout 1) from the DC controller, and then remove the DC controller shield.

Figure 1-756 Disconnect one connector and remove the shield

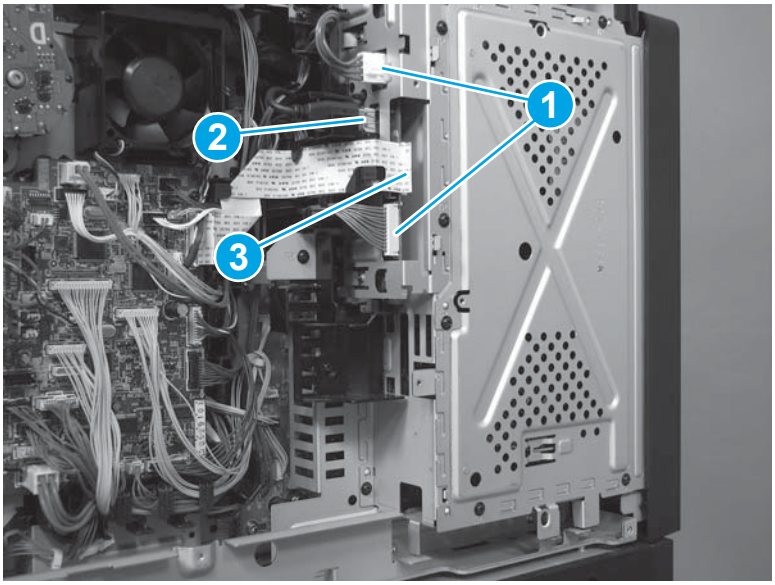


Step10: Remove the ICB

ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), one USB connector (callout 2), and then disconnect one FFC (callout 3).

Figure 1-757 Disconnect four connectors

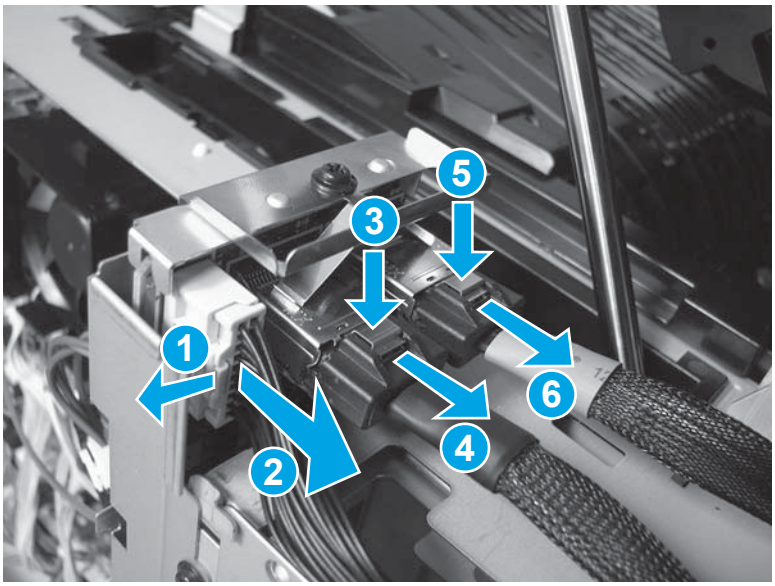


2. Use a small flat-blade screw driver to release three connectors.

TIP: When the two connectors with the metal retainer clips (callouts 3/4/5/6) are reinstalled, make sure that the clips snap in place to securely lock the connectors in place.

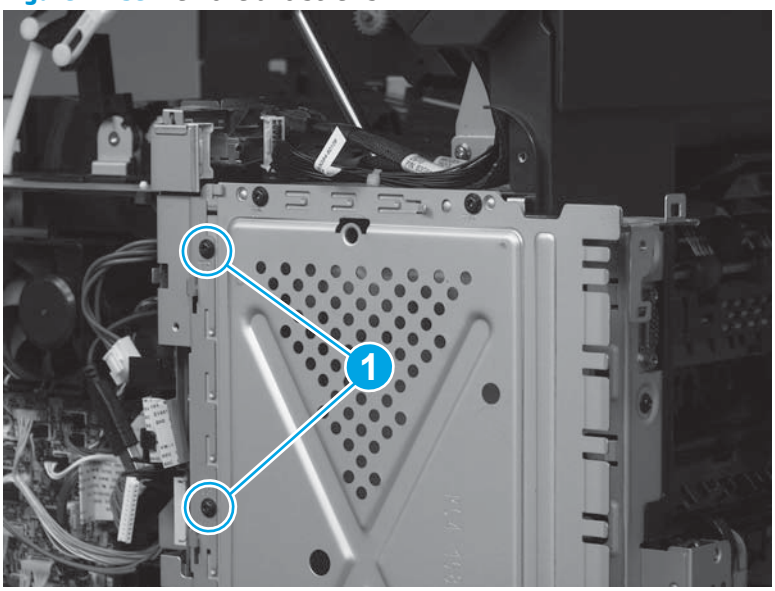
The wire harness with the blue band (callouts 5/6) connects to the inner connector on the ICB when reinstalled.

Figure 1-758 Disconnect three connectors



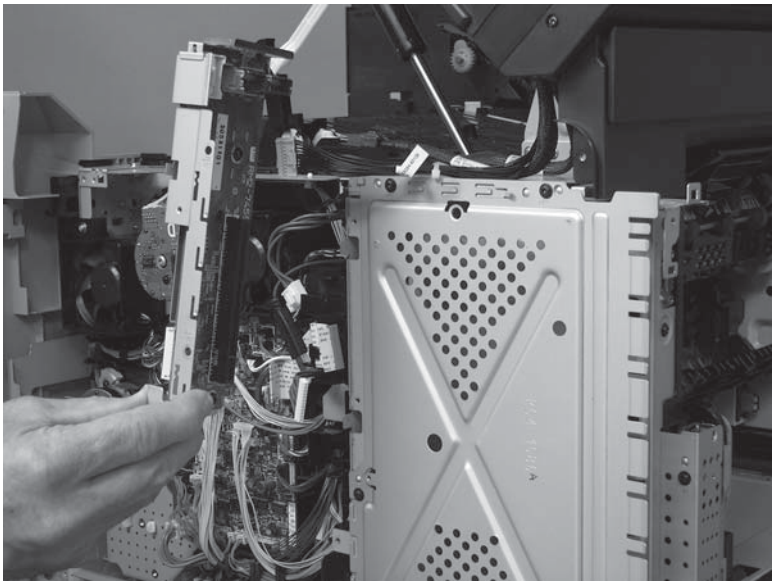
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-759 Remove two screws



4. Remove the ICB.

Figure 1-760 Remove the ICB

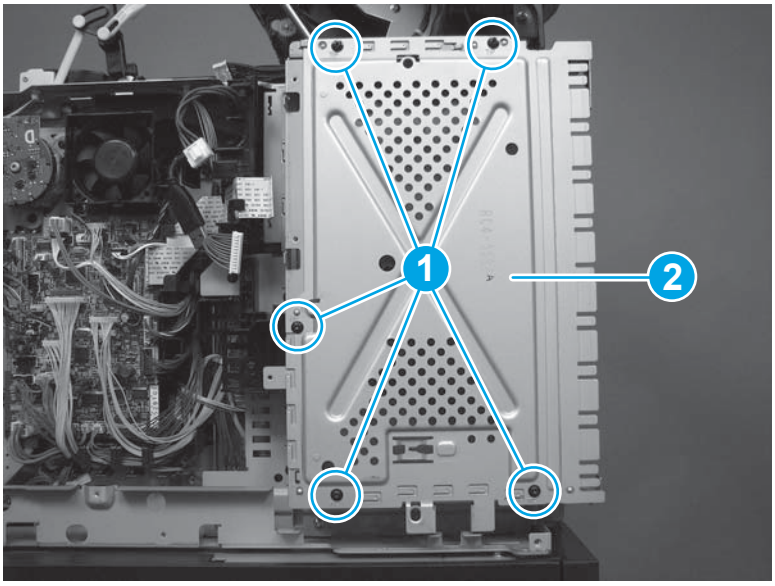


Step 11: Remove the LVPS

ESD sensitive assembly.

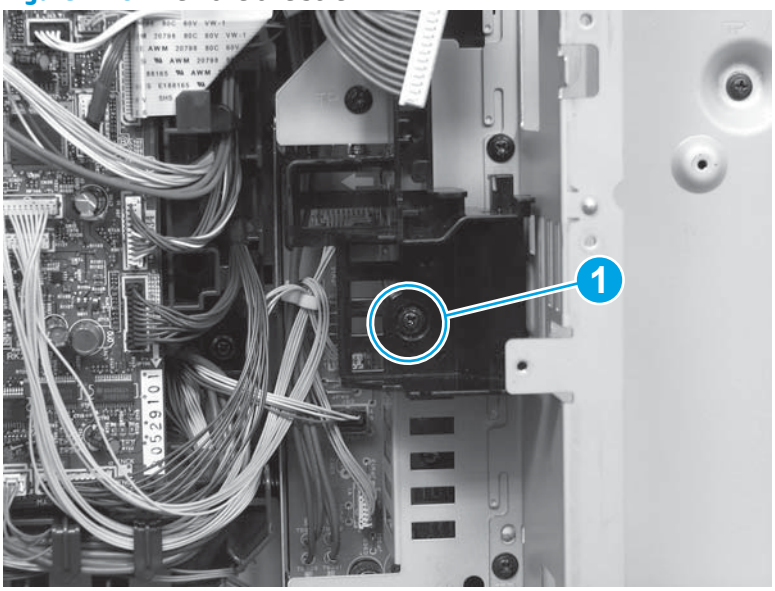
1. Remove five screws (callout 1), and the sheet-metal plate (callout 2).

Figure 1-761 Remove the sheet-metal plate



2. Remove one screw (callout 1) near the DC controller.

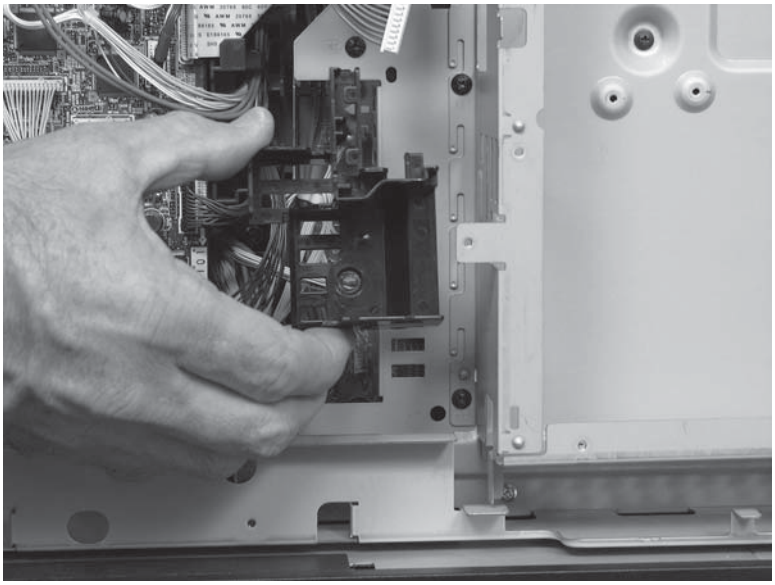
Figure 1-762 Remove one screw



3. Remove the guide (callout 1).

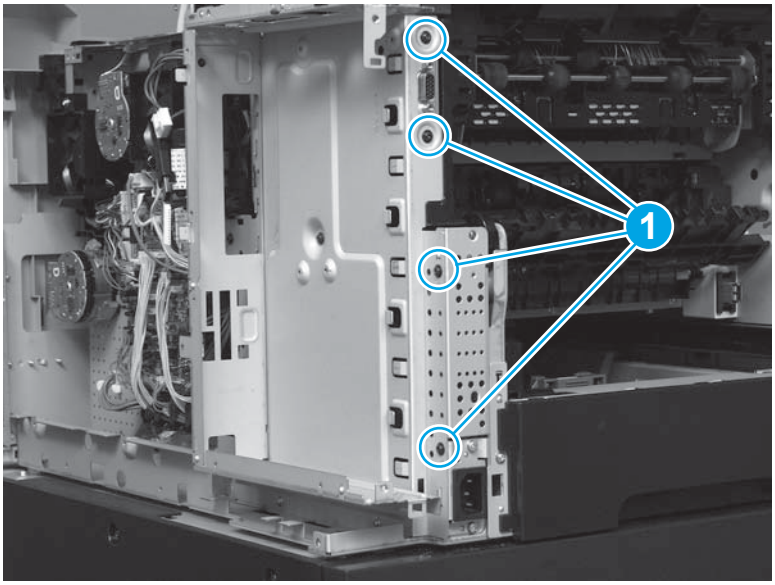
Reinstallation tip: Insert the hook at the top of the guide into the slot in the chassis, and then rotate the bottom of the guide into place.

Figure 1-763 Remove the guide



4. Remove four black screws (callout 1).

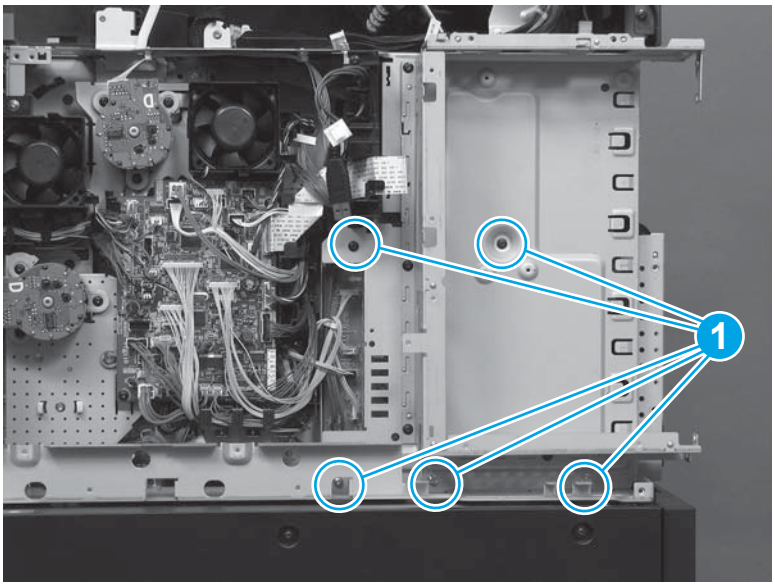
Figure 1-764 Remove four screws



5. Remove five screws (callout 1).

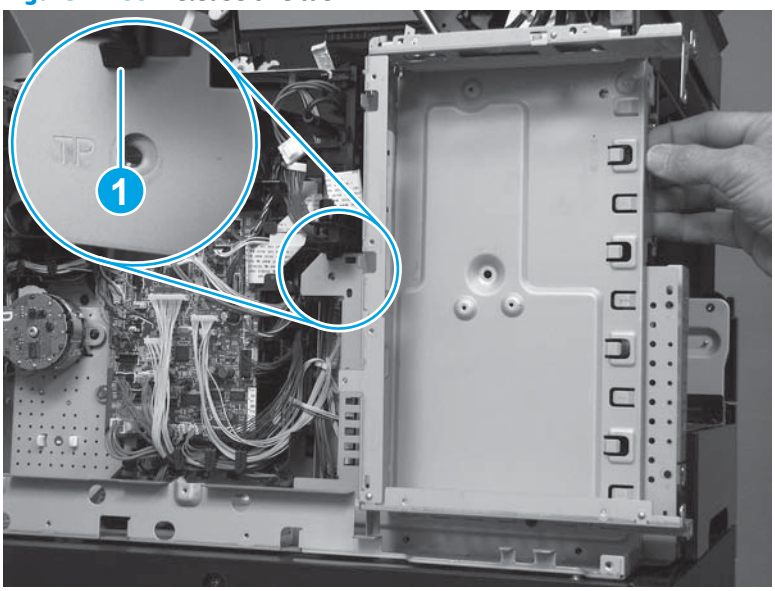
NOTE: The two upper screws are black, and the three screws across the bottom are silver.

Figure 1-765 Remove two screws



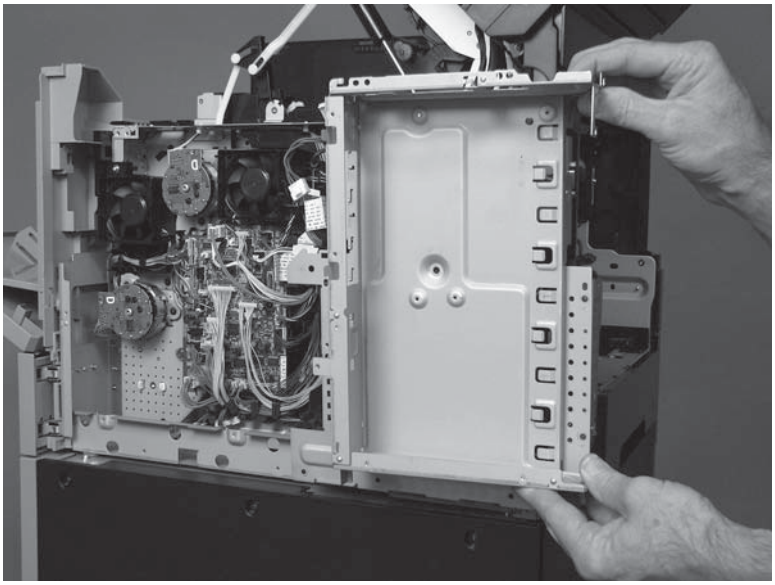
6. Slightly separate the sheet-metal plate from the product, and then release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 1-766 Release one tab



7. Remove the sheet-metal plate from the product.

Figure 1-767 Remove the sheet-metal plate

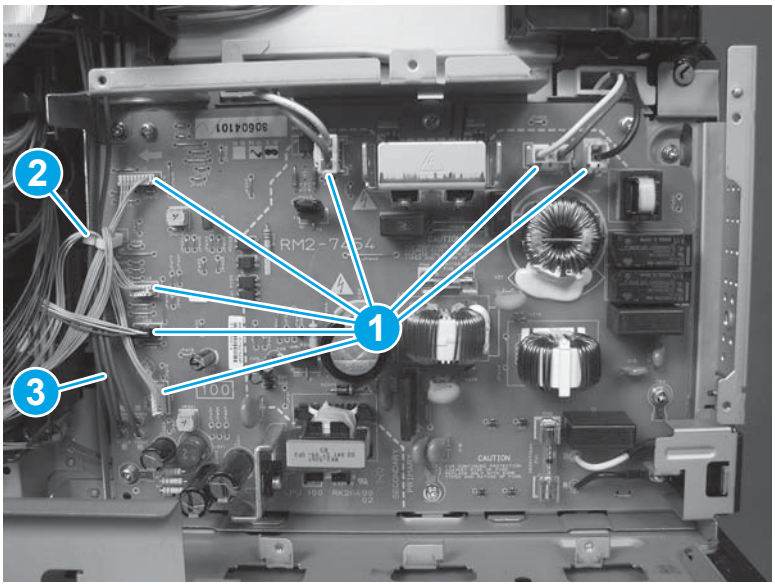


8. Disconnect seven connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

NOTE: These wire-harnesses are stiff and can make the connectors difficult to disconnect.

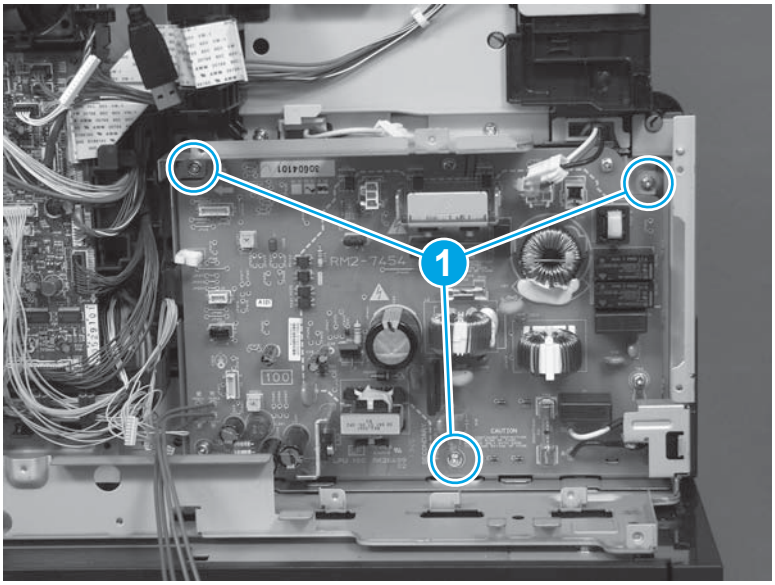
TIP: The 4-wire wire harness (callout 3; two brown and 2 blue wires) cannot be disconnected from the LVPS, and does not need to be released from the retainer.

Figure 1-768 Disconnect seven connectors



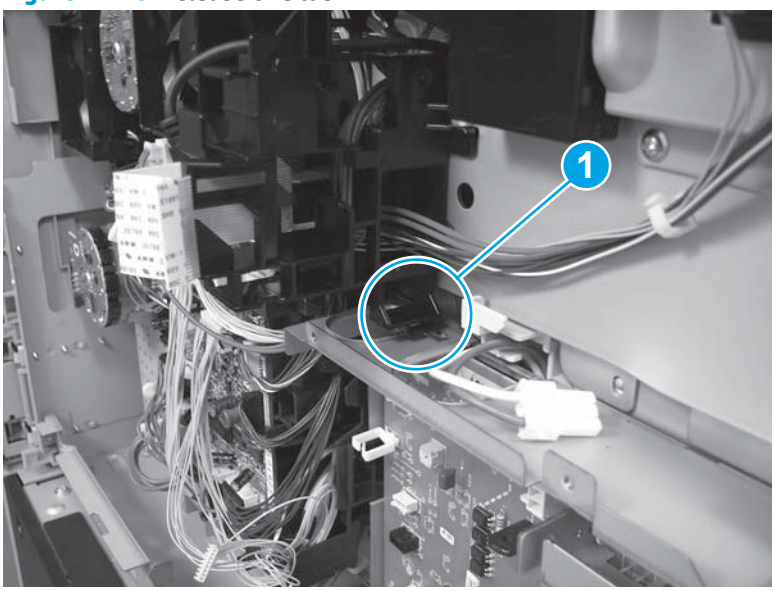
9. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-769 Remove three screws



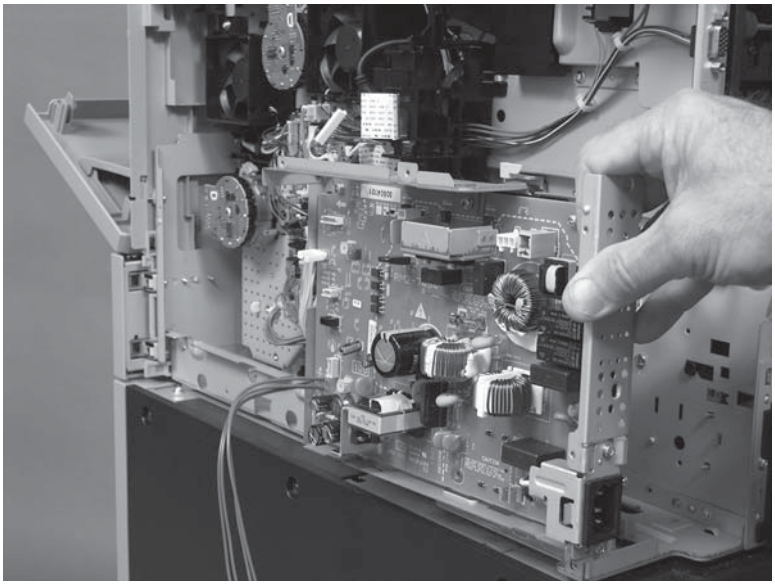
10. Release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 1-770 Release one tab



11. Remove the LVPS.

Figure 1-771 Remove the LVPS



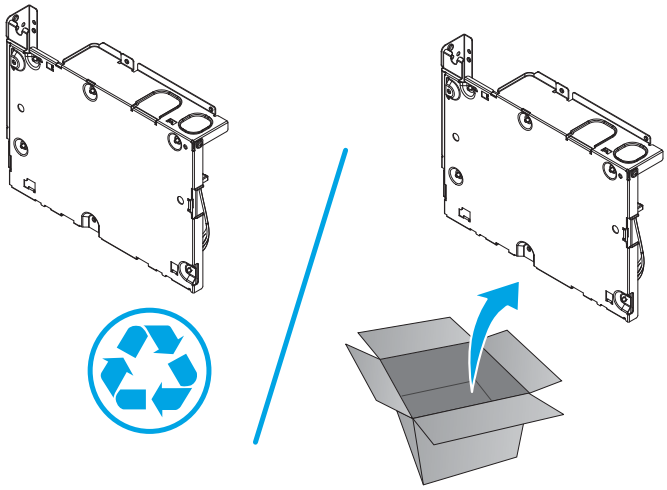
Step 12: Unpack the replacement LVPS

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

Figure 1-772 Recycle and unpack



Step 13: Install the LVPS

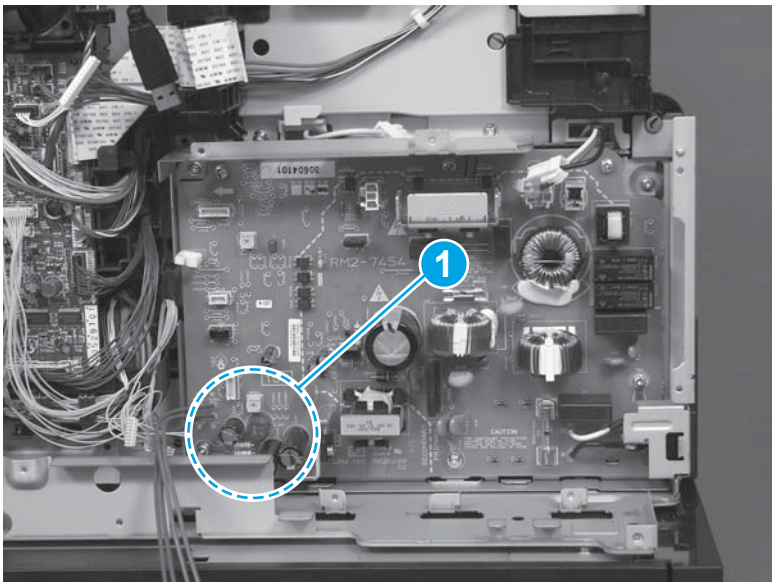
ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Install the LVPS on the product.

IMPORTANT: When installing the LVPS, make sure that the inline connector (callout 1; behind the LVPS) from the DC controller to the cassette media size switch (SW102) is fully seated. This connector is easily dislodged.

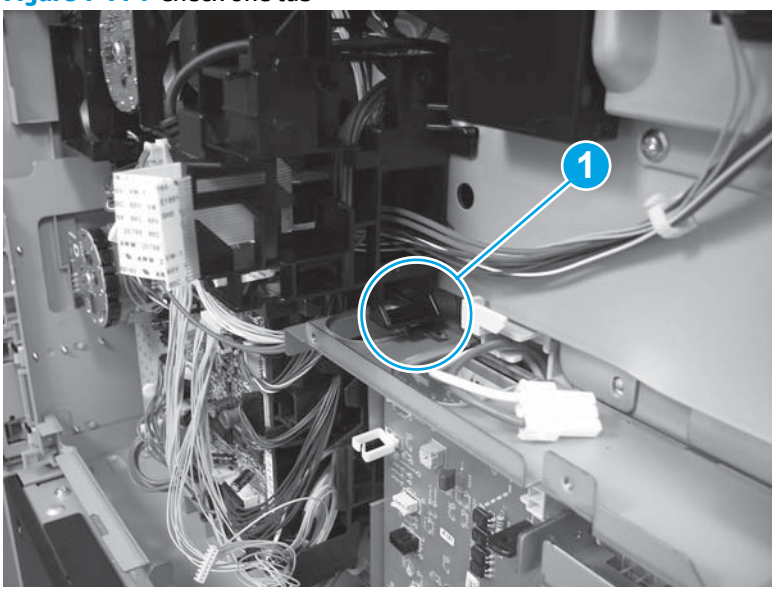
TIP: If a Tray 2 removed error message appears on the control-panel display after servicing the product, check this connector.

Figure 1-773 Install the LVPS



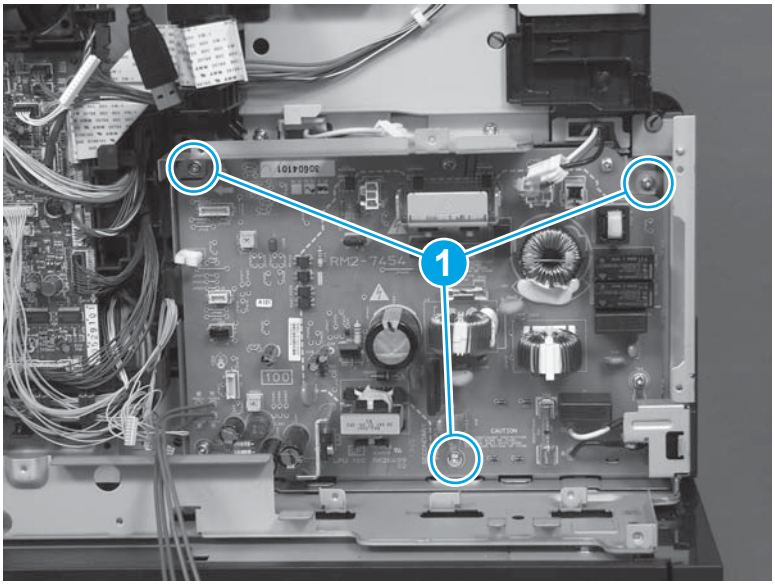
2. Make sure that the LVPS is installed behind one tab (callout 1).

Figure 1-774 Check one tab



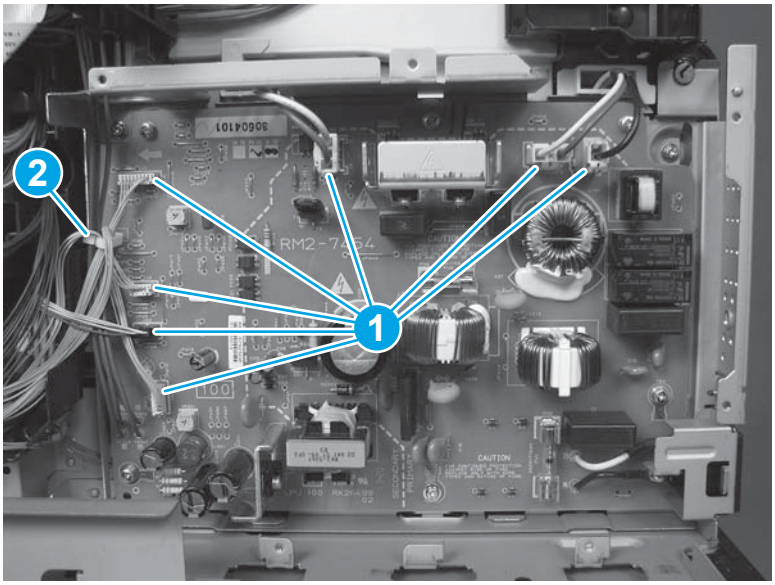
3. Install three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-775 Install three screws



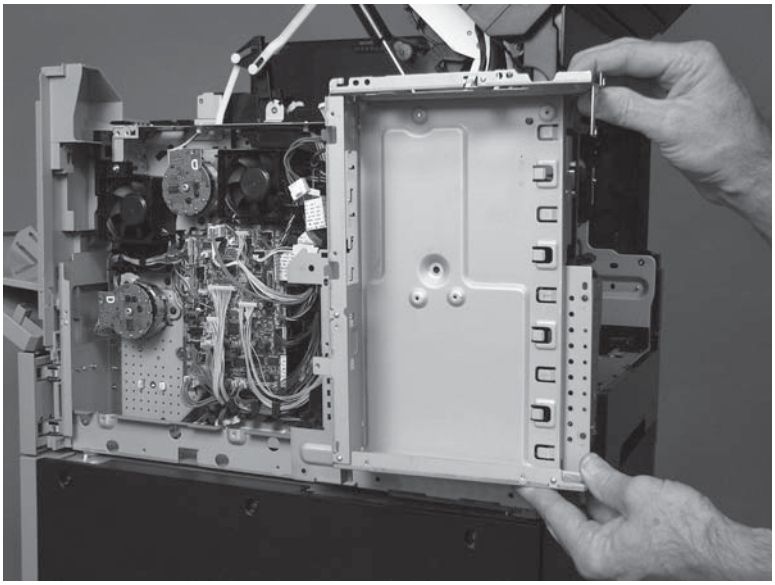
4. Connect seven connectors (callout 1), and then install the wire harness in the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 1-776 Connect seven connectors



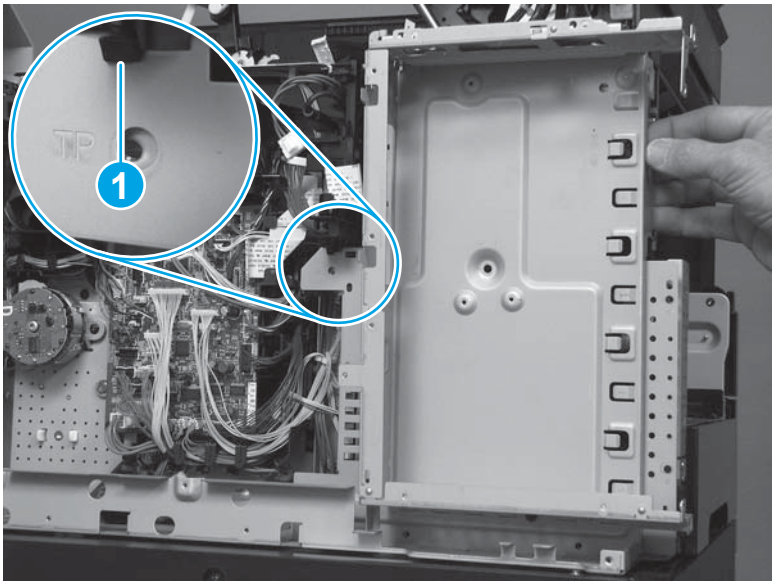
5. Install the sheet-metal plate on the product.

Figure 1-777 Install the sheet-metal plate



6. Make sure that the sheet-metal plate is installed behind one tab (callout 1).

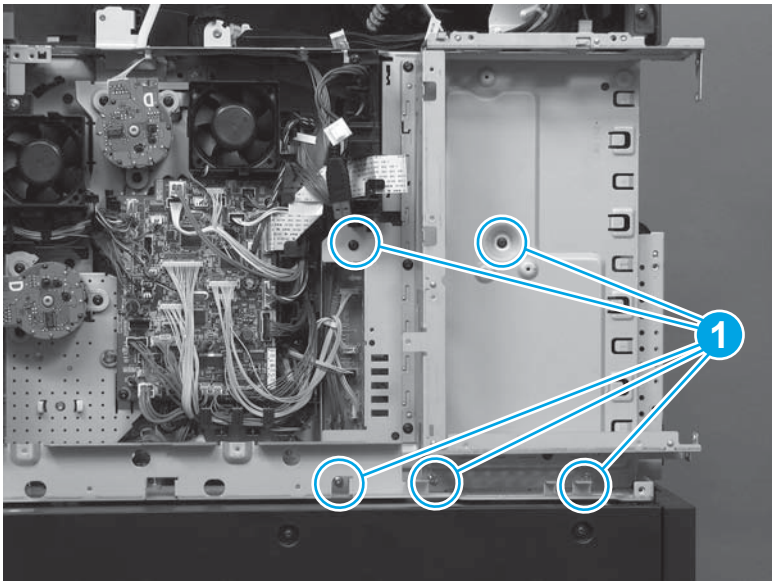
Figure 1-778 Check one tab



7. Install five screws (callout 1).

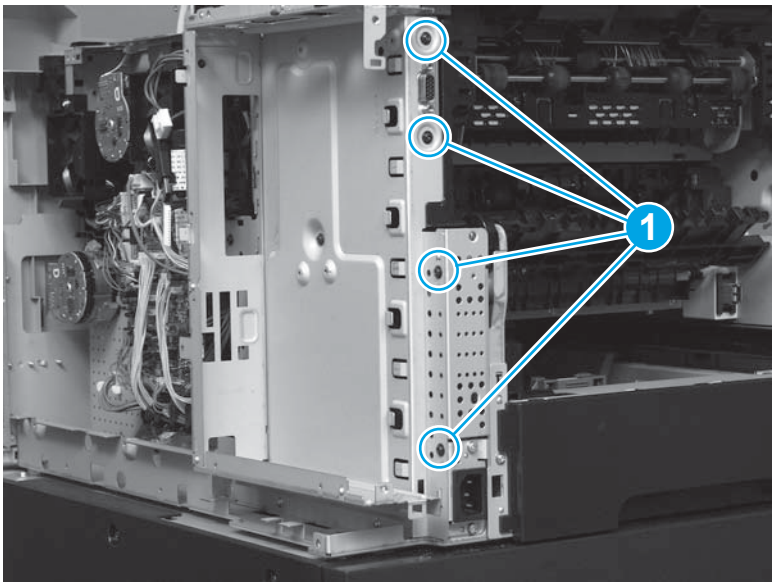
NOTE: The two upper screws are black, and the three screws across the bottom are silver.

Figure 1-779 Install five screws



8. Install four black screws (callout 1).

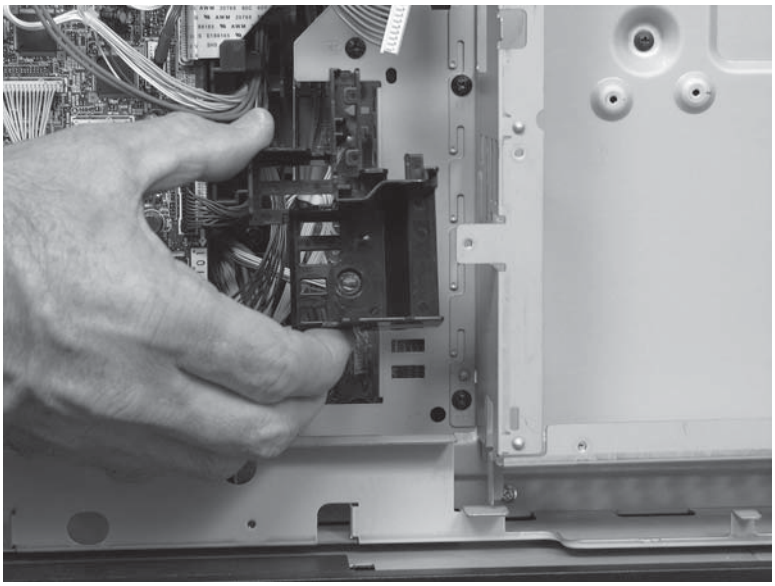
Figure 1-780 Install four screws



9. Install the guide.

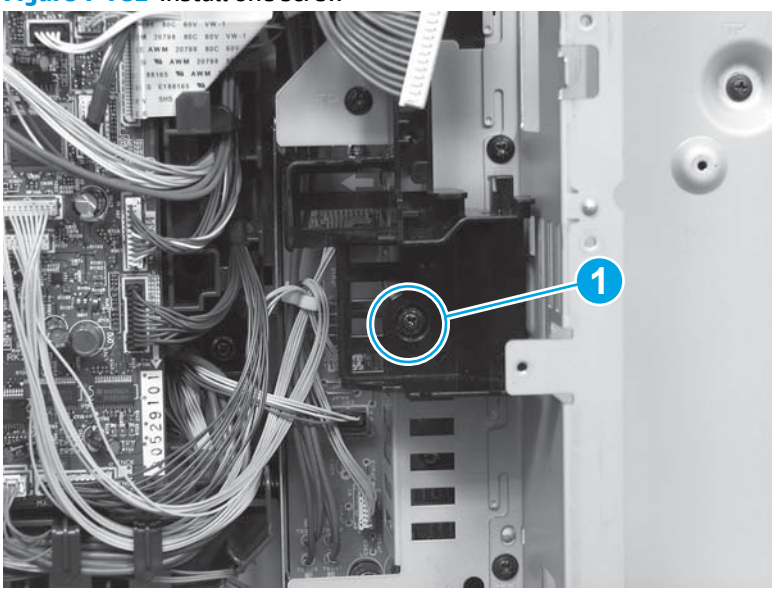
TIP: Insert the hook at the top of the guide into the slot in the chassis, and then rotate the bottom of the guide into place.

Figure 1-781 Install the guide



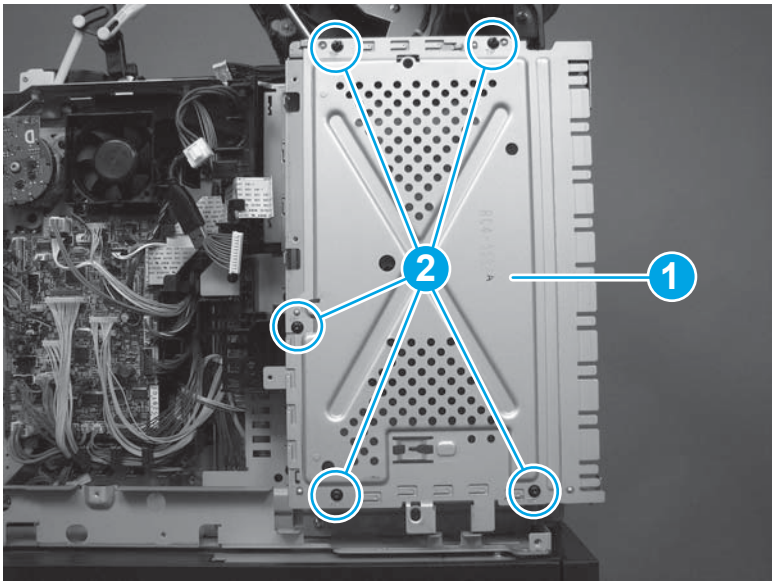
10. Install one screw (callout 1) near the DC controller.

Figure 1-782 Install one screw



11. Install the sheet-metal plate (callout 1), and then install five screws (callout 2).

Figure 1-783 Install the sheet-metal plate

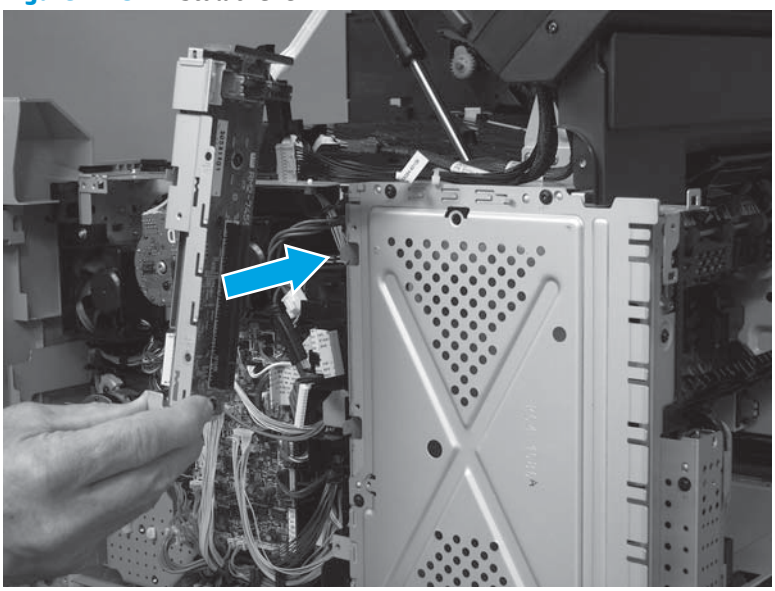


Step 14: Install the ICB

ESD sensitive assembly.

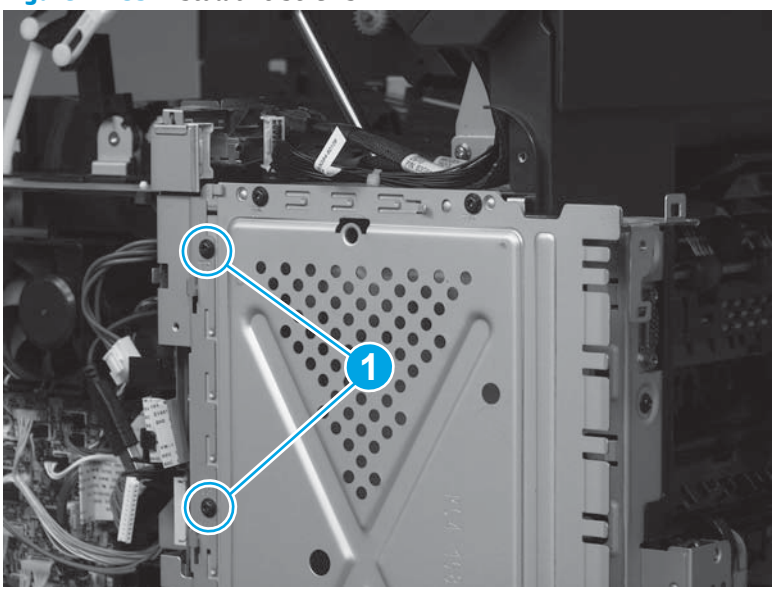
1. Install the ICB on the product.

Figure 1-784 Install the ICB



2. Install two screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-785 Install two screws

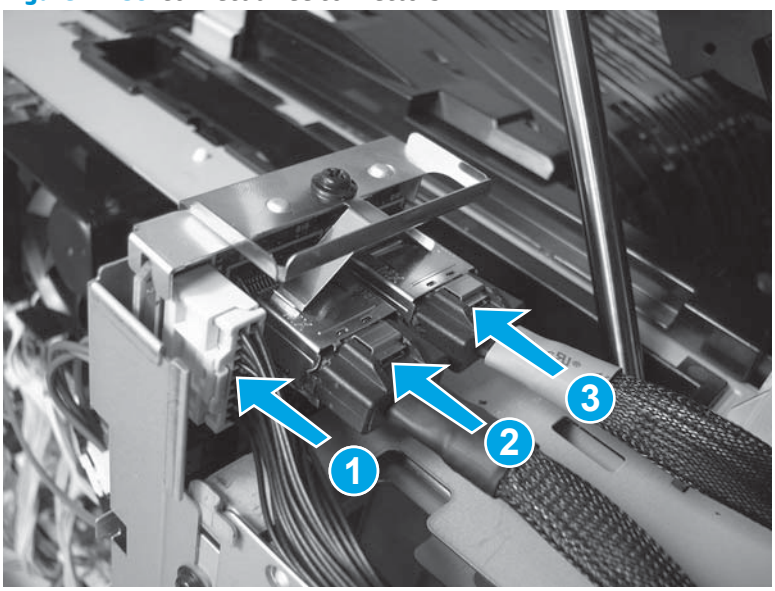


3. At the top of the ICB, connect three connectors.

TIP: When the two connectors with the metal retainer clips (callouts 2/3) are reinstalled, make sure that the clips snap in place to securely lock the connectors in place.

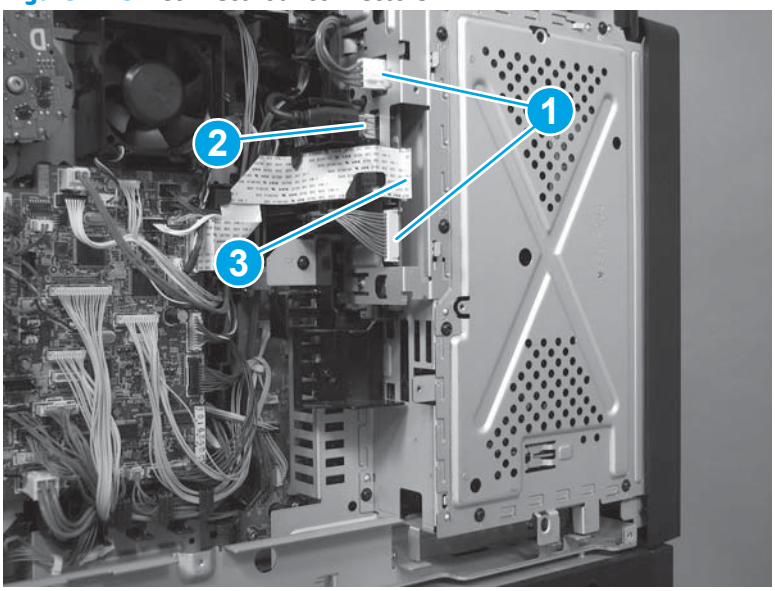
The wire harness with the blue band (callouts 3) connects to the inner connector on the ICB when reinstalled.

Figure 1-786 Connect three connectors



4. Connect two connectors (callout 1), one USB connector (callout 2), and then connect one FFC (callout 3).

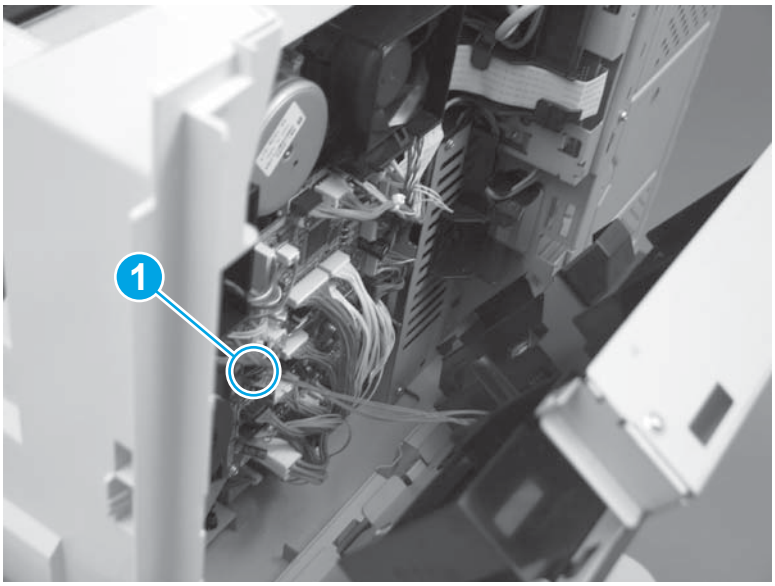
Figure 1-787 Connect four connectors



Step 15: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly

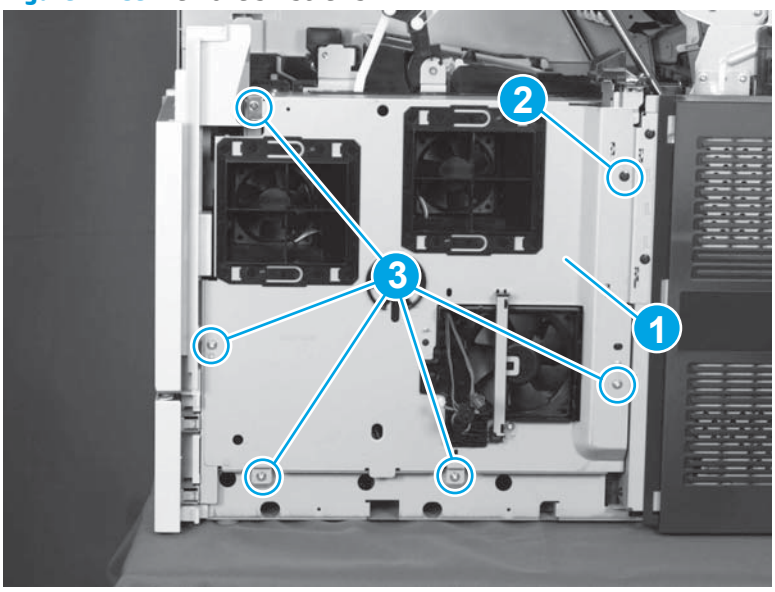
1. Position the shield near the product, and then connect one connector (J42; callout 1).

Figure 1-788 Install the shield and connect one connector



2. Rotate the top of the shield (callout 1) toward the product, install one black screw (callout 2), and then install five silver screws (callout 3).

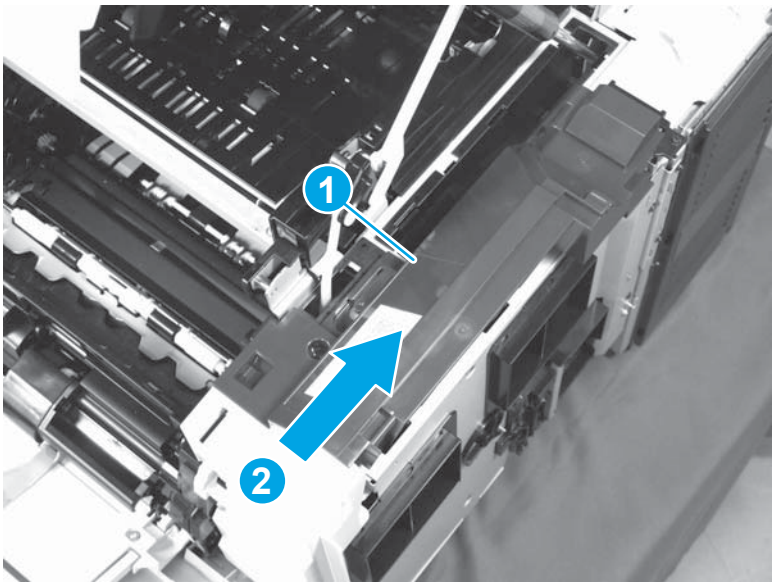
Figure 1-789 Remove six screws



Step 16: Install the rear-top cover

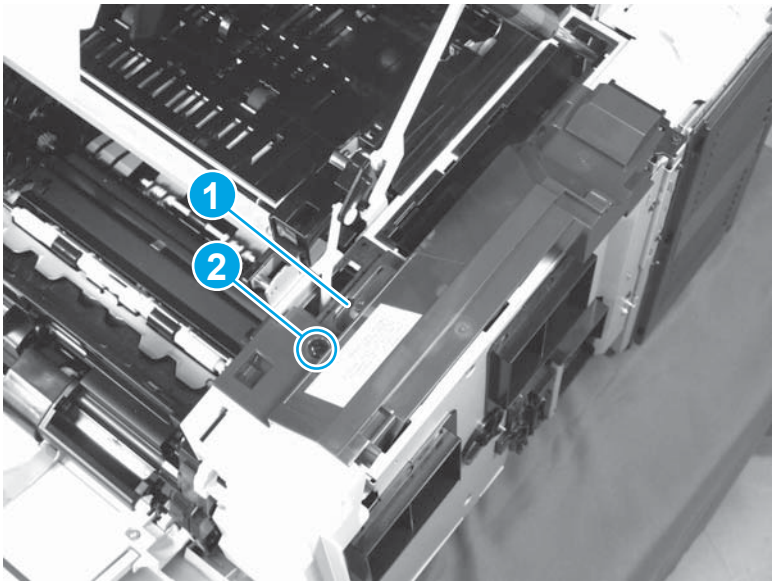
1. Position the cover on the product, Push the cover (callout 1) away Tray 1 to install it (callout 2).

Figure 1-790 Install the cover



2. Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged, and then install one screw (callout 2).

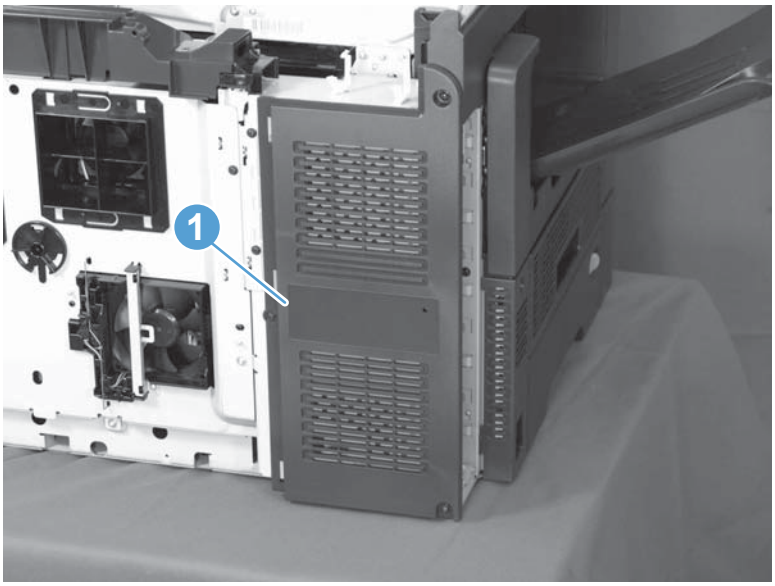
Figure 1-791 Install one screw



Step 17: Install the rear-left cover

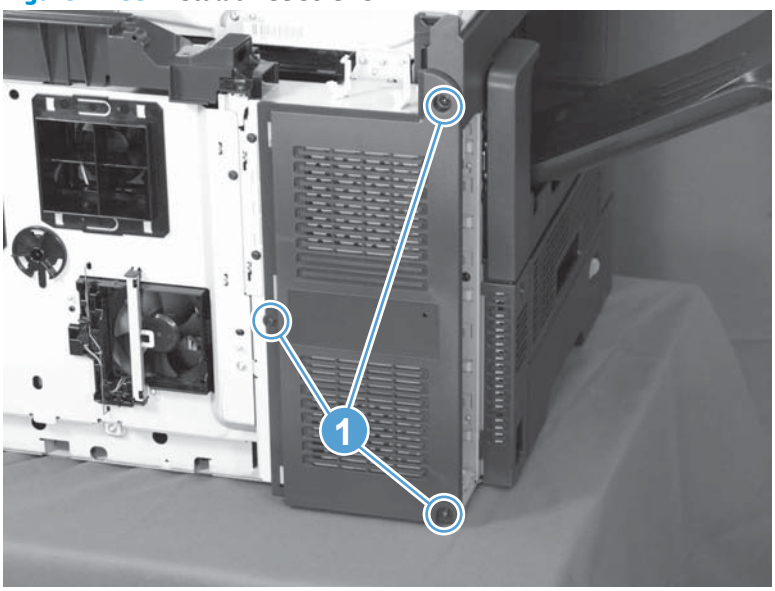
1. Position the cover (callout 1) on the product.

Figure 1-792 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1).

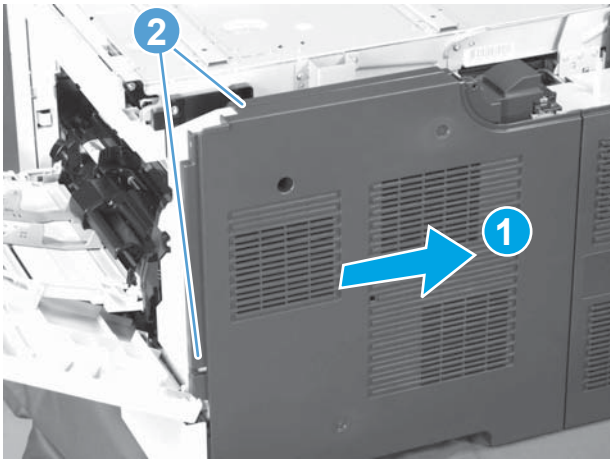
Figure 1-793 Install three screws



Step 18: Install the rear-right cover

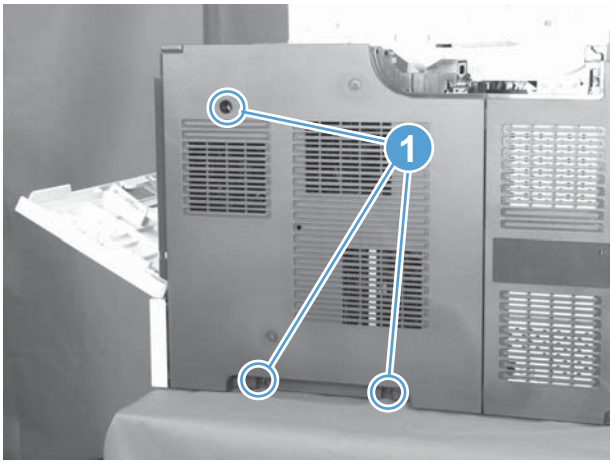
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

Figure 1-794 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

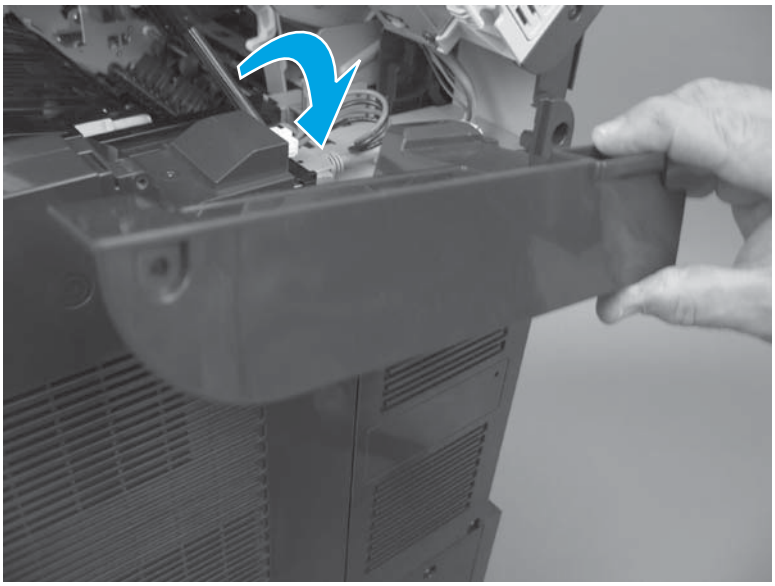
Figure 1-795 Install three screws



Step 19: Install the image scanner cable cover

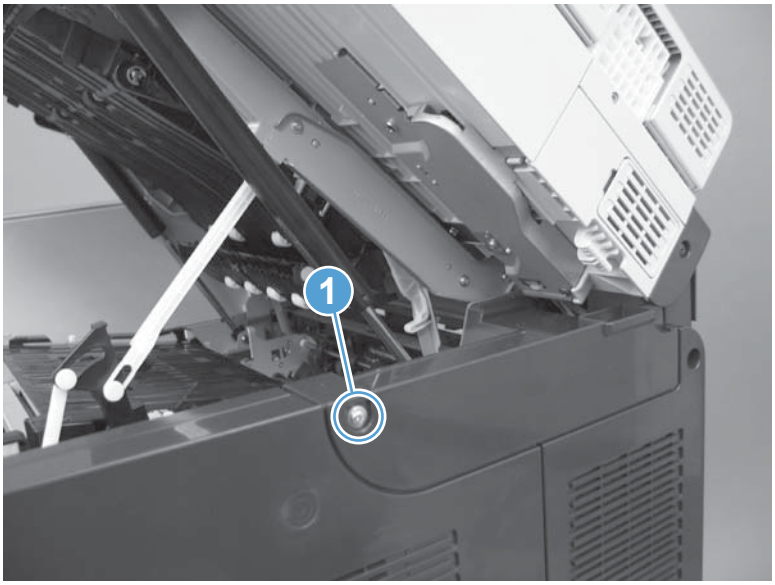
1. Install the cover on the product.

Figure 1-796 Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

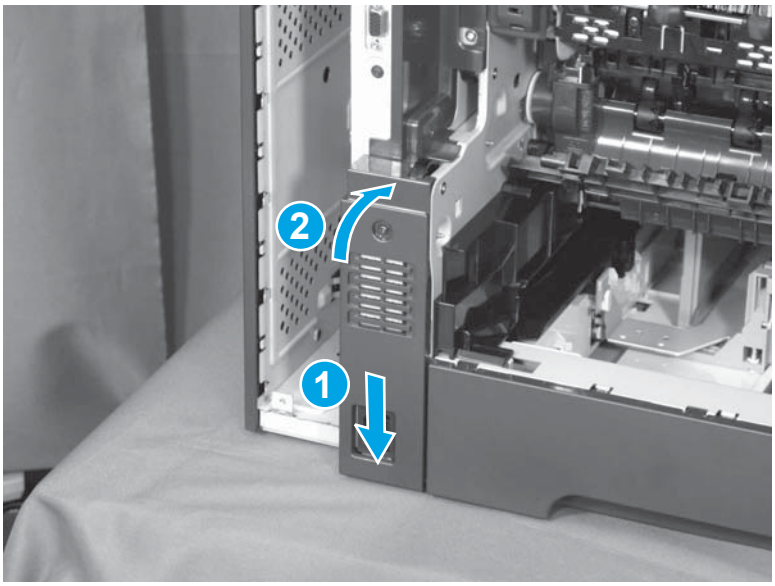
Figure 1-797 Install one screw



Step 20: Install the side-rear cover

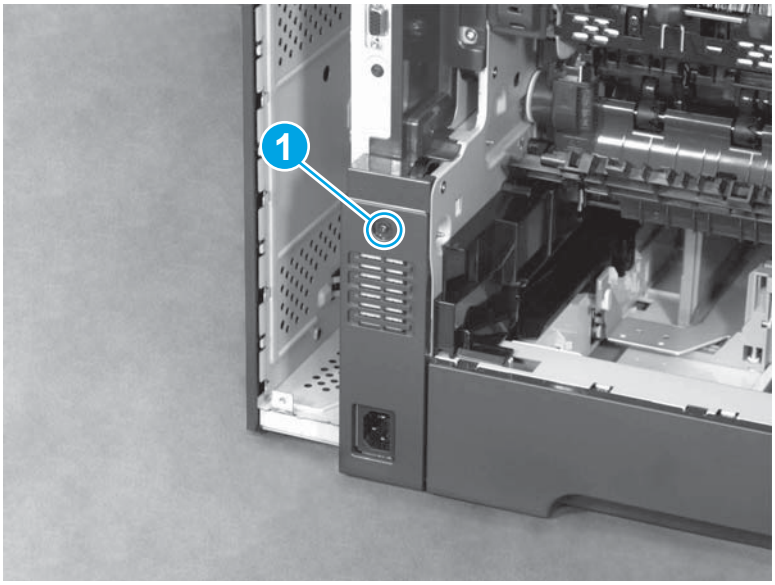
1. Position the bottom of the cover on the product (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the cover toward the product (callout 2) to install it.

Figure 1-798 Install the side-rear cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-799 Install one screw



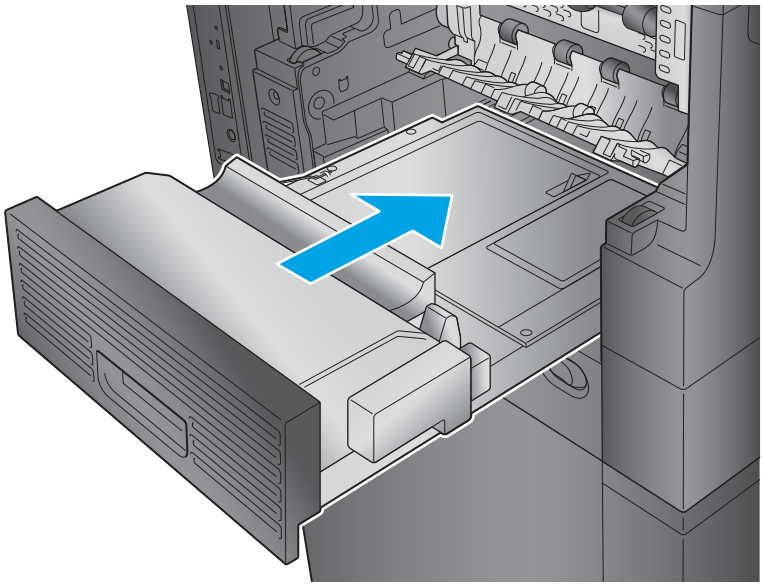
Step 21: Install the duplex accessory

- Position the duplex assembly on the product at a slight angle, engage the slide rails, and then slide the duplex assembly all of the way into the product to install it.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that the duplex accessory is full installed.

NOTE: After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed duplex accessory.

Figure 1-800 Install the duplex accessory

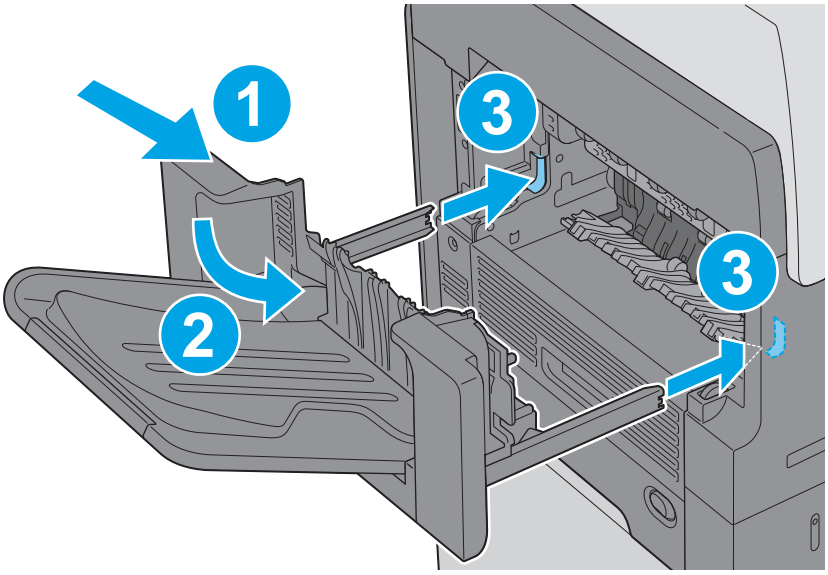


Step 22: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

- Do one of the following:

a. **M630dn and M630f**: Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), and then slide the bin base into the product.

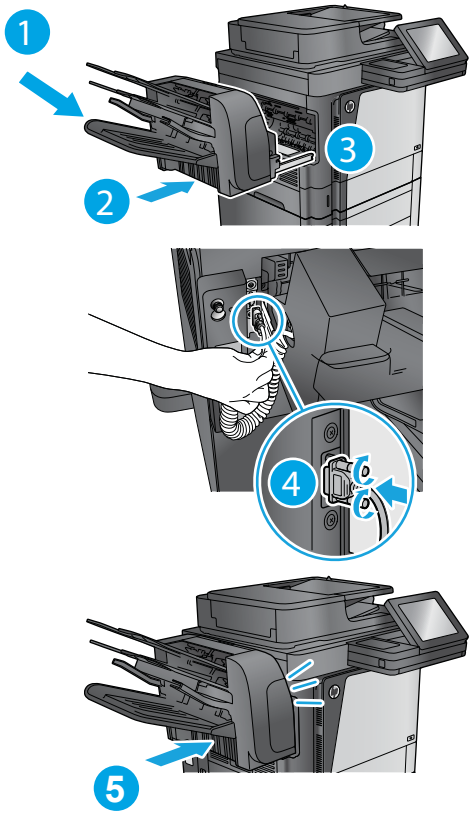
Figure 1-801 Install the output bin



b. **M630z**: Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), connect the interface cable (callout 4). and then slide the stapling mailbox (callout 5) into the product.

TIP: After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed stapling mailbox.

Figure 1-802 Install the stapling mailbox

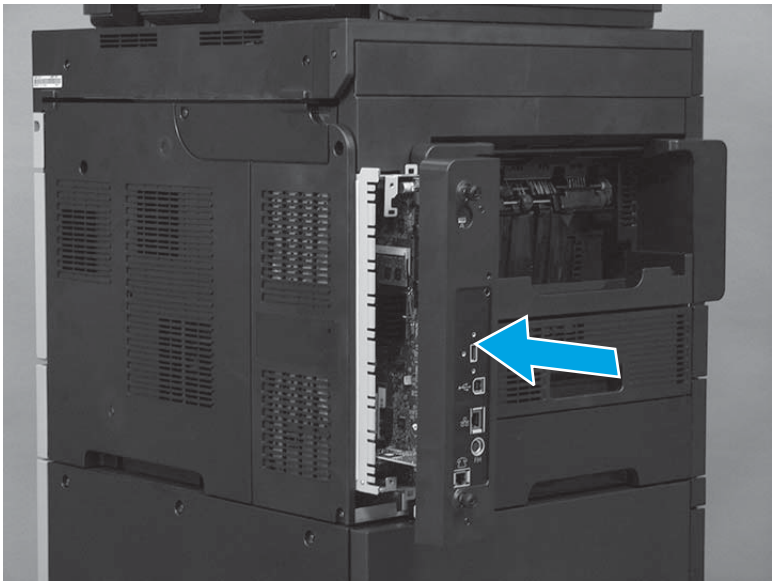


Step 23: Install the formatter

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

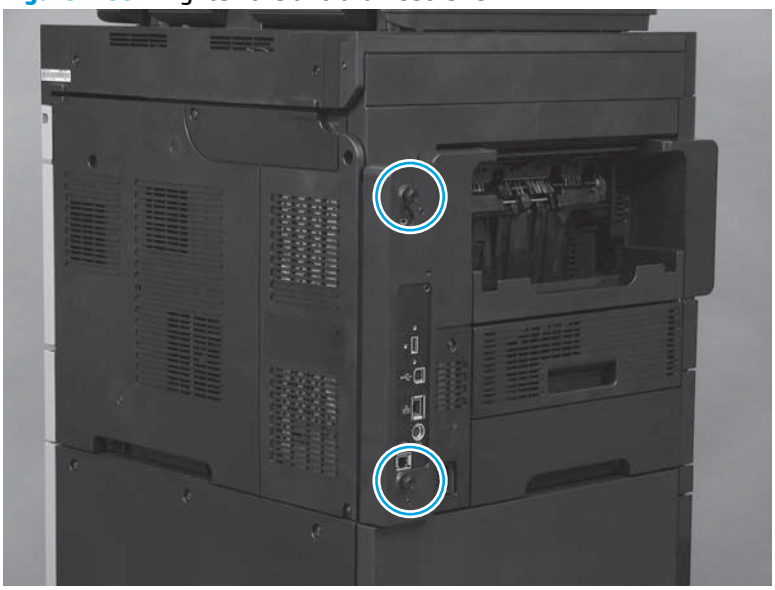
1. Align the formatter with the guides at the top and bottom of the formatter cage and push the formatter into the slot until it is fully seated.

Figure 1-803 Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot



2. Finger-tighten the two thumbscrews.

Figure 1-804 Tighten the two thumbscrews



Step 24: Test the installation

1. Do the following steps:
   a. Reconnect all cables to the formatter.
   b. Plug in the power cord.
2. Turn on the product.

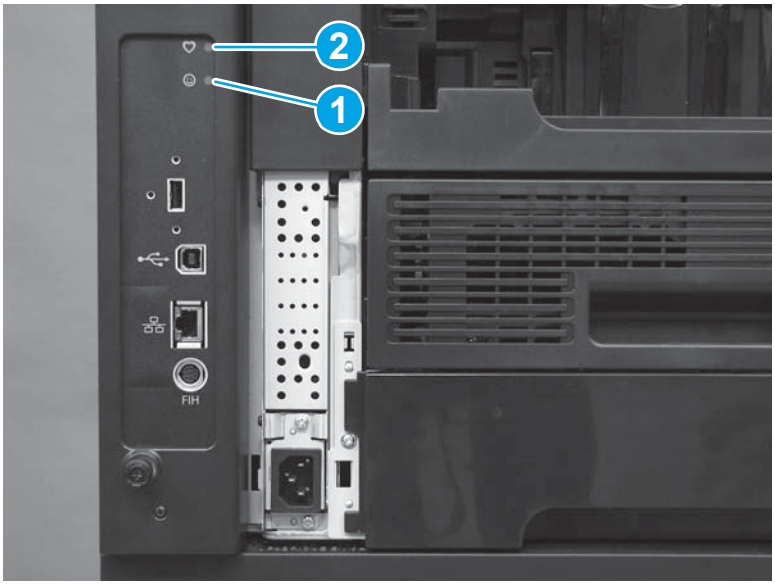
TIP: If the product does not initialize when the power is turned on, make sure that the memory DIMM is correctly installed.

To verify that the formatter is correctly installed, observe the following functions of the LEDs on the formatter:

- The heartbeat LED (callout 1) illuminates if the formatter is functioning correctly.
  - While the product is initializing, the heartbeat LED illuminates solid red for about one second, and then turns solid green for about twenty seconds.
  - After the initialization sequence is complete, the heartbeat LED blinks continuously if the printer is functioning correctly.
- The connectivity LED (callout 2) indicates that the formatter is completely seated. It illuminates green when the product power is turned on and stays green if the formatter is properly seated.

If the LEDs do not correctly function, turn the product power off, remove the formatter, and then reinstall it (make sure that the formatter is fully seated before tightening the thumbscrews).

Figure 1-805 Verify that the formatter is functioning



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Lifter base assembly

Remove the following assemblies:

- Formatter. See Step 1: Remove the formatter on page 24.
- Output bin and bin base assembly. See Output bin and bin base assembly on page 68.

NOTE: If the optional HP Stapling Mailbox is installed, remove it.

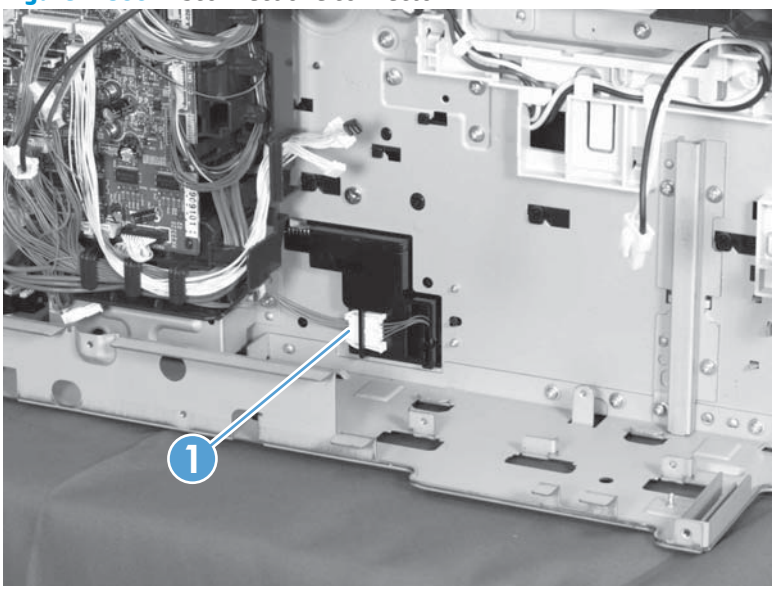
- Duplex accessory. See Duplex accessory on page 70.
- Image scanner cable cover. See Image scanner cable cover on page 283.
- Side-rear cover. See Side-rear cover on page 296.
- Rear-right cover. See Rear-right cover on page 323.
- Rear-left cover. See Rear-left cover on page 327.
- Rear-top cover. See Rear-top cover on page 335.
- DC controller shield-plate assembly. See DC controller shield-plate assembly on page 382.
- DC controller. See DC controller on page 391.
- Interconnect board (ICB). See Interconnect board (ICB) on page 426.
- Low-voltage power supply. See Low-voltage power supply (LVPS) on page 479.

Remove the lifter base assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

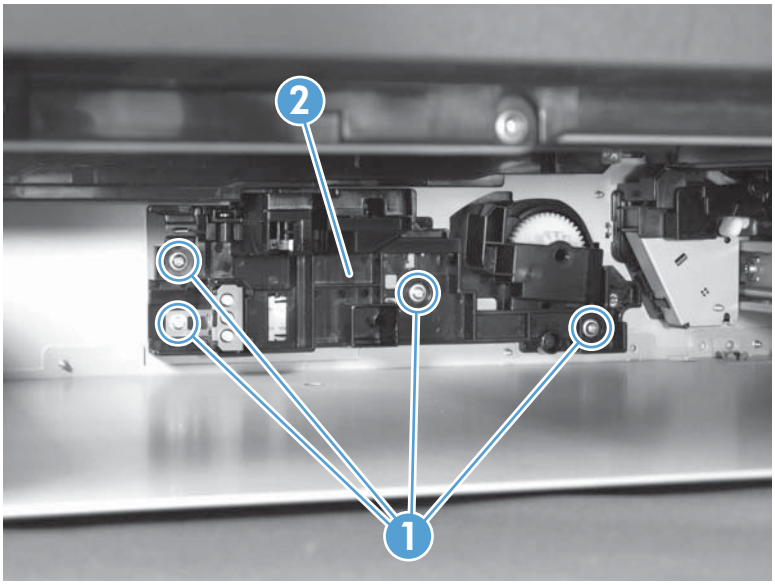
1. Disconnect the left side of one inline connector (callout 1).

Figure 1-806 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove the cassette, remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the lifter assembly.

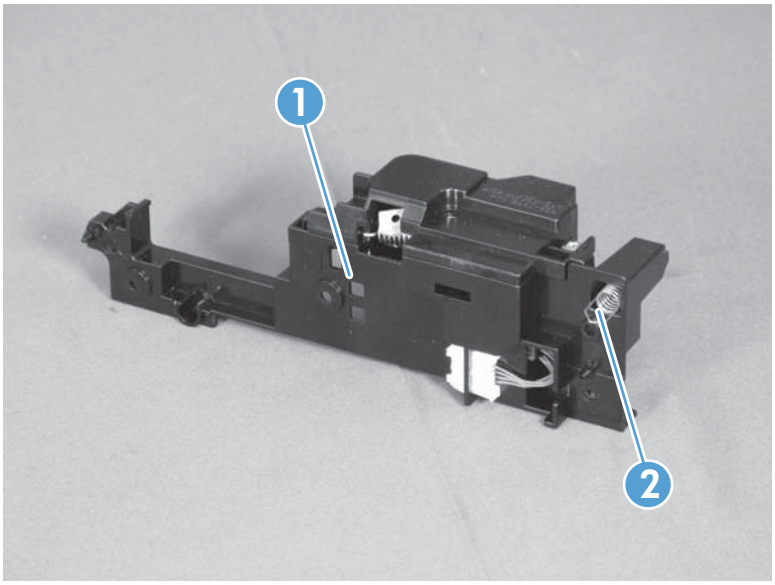
Figure 1-807 Remove the lifter assembly



3. If necessary, remove one spring (callout 1) from the lifter assembly.

CAUTION: Be careful when handling the assembly. The spring is not captive and can be easily dislodged and lost.

Figure 1-808 Remove one spring



Lifter assembly

Remove the following assemblies:

- Formatter. See Step 1: Remove the formatter on page 24.
- Output bin and bin base assembly. See Output bin and bin base assembly on page 68.

NOTE: If the optional HP Stapling Mailbox is installed, remove it.

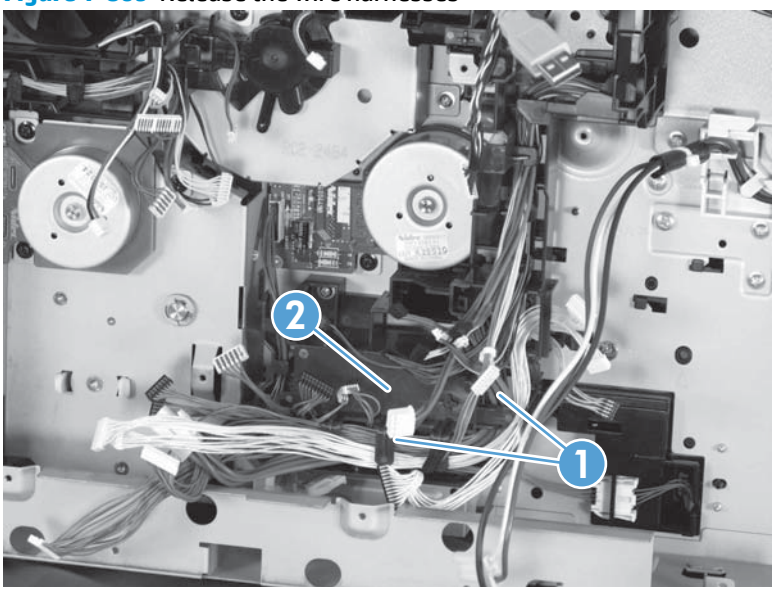
- Duplex accessory. See Duplex accessory on page 70.
- Image scanner cable cover. See Image scanner cable cover on page 283.
- Side-rear cover. See Side-rear cover on page 296.
- Rear-right cover. See Rear-right cover on page 323.
- Rear-left cover. See Rear-left cover on page 327.
- Rear-top cover. See Rear-top cover on page 335.
- DC controller shield-plate assembly. See DC controller shield-plate assembly on page 382.
- DC controller. See DC controller on page 391.
- Interconnect board (ICB). See Interconnect board (ICB) on page 426.

Remove the lifter assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

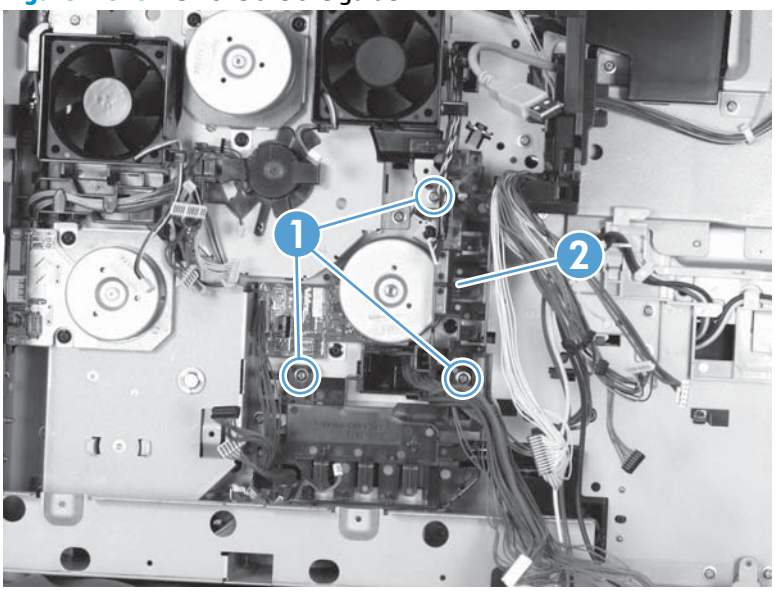
1. Release the wire harnesses (callout 1) from the guides (callout 2).

Figure 1-809 Release the wire harnesses



2. Remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the guide (callout 2).

Figure 1-810 Remove the the guide

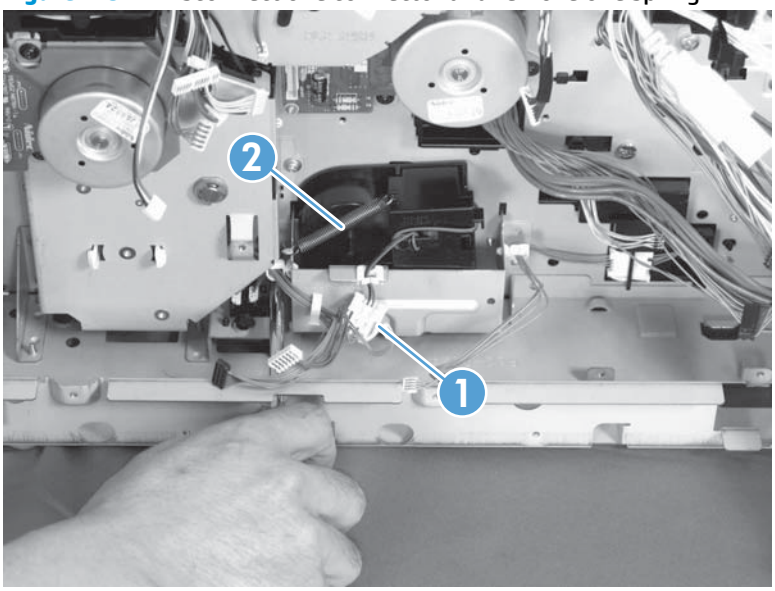


3. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one spring (callout 2).

CAUTION: Be careful when handling the assembly. The spring is not captive and can be easily dislodged and lost.

HP recommends disconnecting the spring from the product chassis, and then leaving it connected to the assembly.

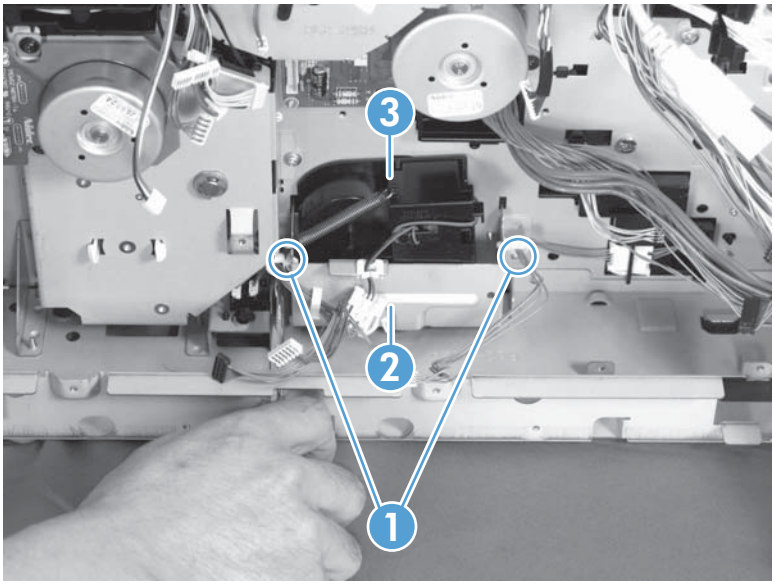
Figure 1-811 Disconnect one connector and remove one spring



4. Remove two screws (callout 1), remove the holder (callout 2), and then remove the lifter assembly (callout 3).

CAUTION: To remove the assembly, two wire harness must be released from the retainers. One of these wire harnesses is not captive and can easily be lost.

Figure 1-812 Remove the lifter assembly



High-voltage power supply (HVPS)

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the formatter
- Step 2: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox
- Step 3: Remove the duplex accessory
- Step 4: Remove the fuser-entrance guide
- Step 5: Remove the fuser
- Step 6: Remove the front cover
- Step 7: Remove the side-rear cover
- Step 8: Remove the image scanner cable cover
- Step 9: Remove the rear-right cover
- Step 10: Remove the rear-left cover
- Step 11: Remove the rear-top cover
- Step 12: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly
- Step 13: Remove the DC controller
- Step 14: Remove the ICB
- Step 15: Remove the LVPS
- Step 16: Remove the HVPS
- Step 17: Unpack the replacement HVPS
- Step 18: Install the HVPS
- Step 19: Install the LVPS
- Step 20: Install the ICB
- Step 21: Install the DC controller
- Step 22: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly
- Step 23: Install the rear-top cover
- Step 24: Install the rear-left cover
- Step 25: Install the rear-right cover
- Step 26: Install the side-rear cover
- Step 27: Install the image scanner cable cover
- Step 28: Install the front cover
- Step 29: Install the fuser

- Step 30: Install the fuser-entrance guide
- Step 31: Install the duplex accessory
- Step 32: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox
- Step 33: Install the formatter
- Step 34: Test the installation
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the high-voltage power supply (HVPS) for the HP LaserJet Enterprise M630.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct assembly part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the assembly.

HVPS part number	
RM2-5826-000CN	HVPS (110V)
RM2-5827-000CN	HVPS (220)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

CAUTION: This product contains components that can be damaged by electrostatic discharge (ESD). To reduce the chance of ESD damage, place the product on an ESD mat (if available), and wear an ESD wrist strap connected to a grounded surface. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis before touching an ESD-sensitive part.

Step 1: Remove the formatter

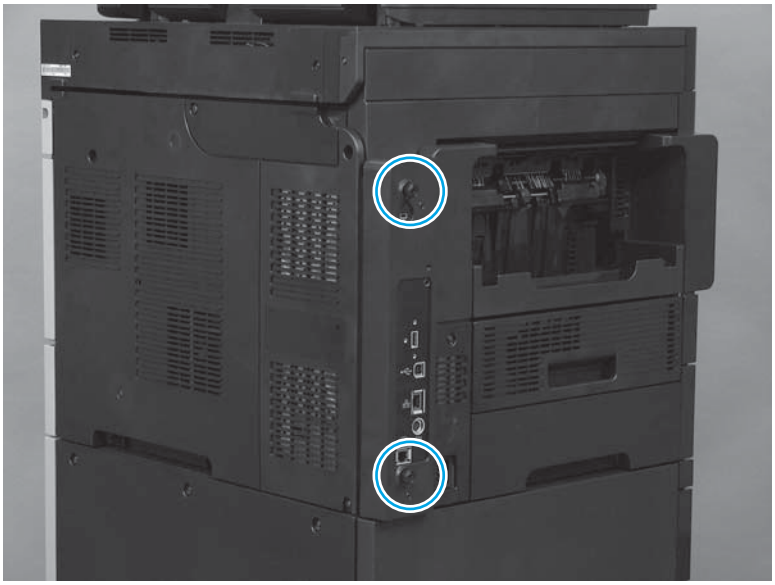
1. Do the following steps:
   a. Turn off the product.
   b. Disconnect the power cable.

      WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

   c. Disconnect all cables and accessories attached to the formatter.

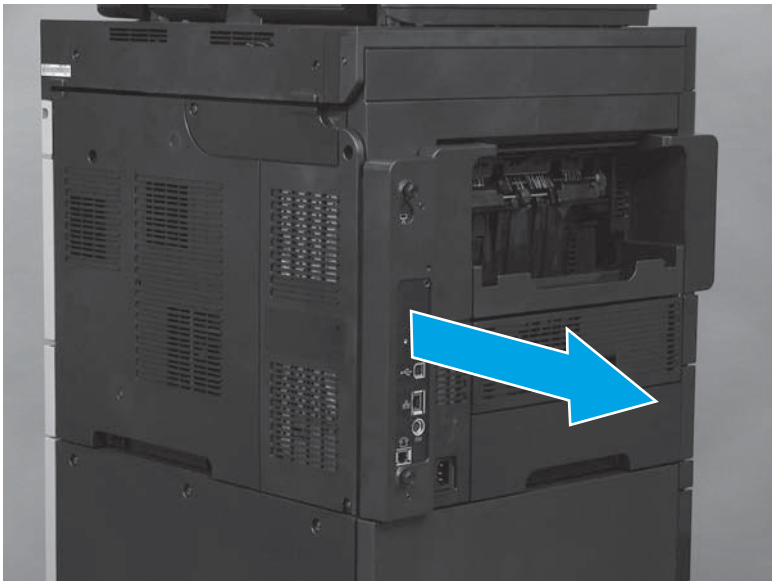
2. Loosen the two thumbscrews on the formatter.

Figure 1-813 Remove the formatter



3. Slide the formatter straight out of the product to remove it.

Figure 1-814 Remove the formatter

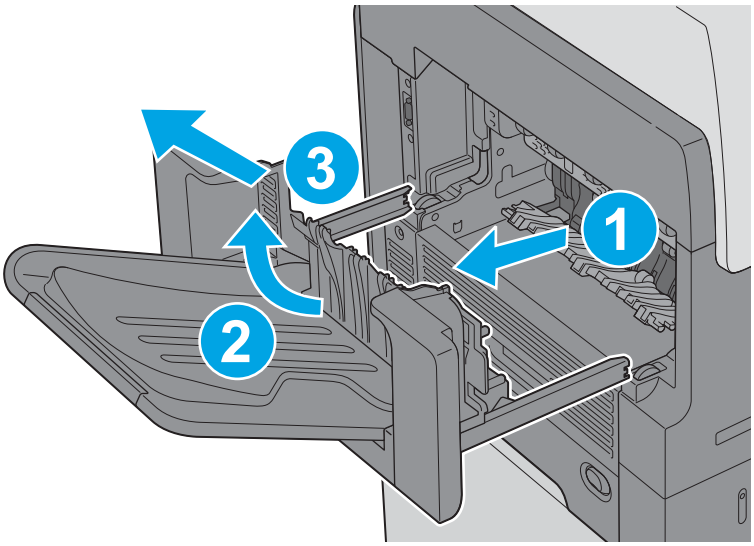


Step 2: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

▲ Do one of the following steps:

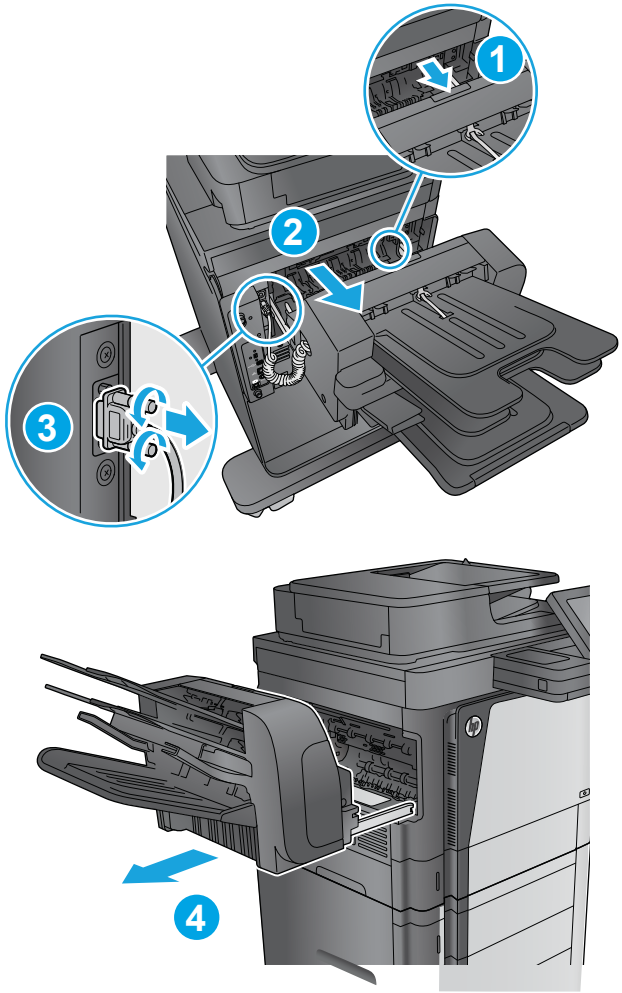
a. **M630dn and M630f**: Slide the bin base away from the product (callout 1) until it stops, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-815 Remove the output bin



b. **M630z**: Press the latch (callout 1), pull the stapling mailbox away from the product (callout 2), disconnect the interface cable (callout 3), and then remove the stapling mailbox (callout 4).

Figure 1-816 Remove the stapling mailbox

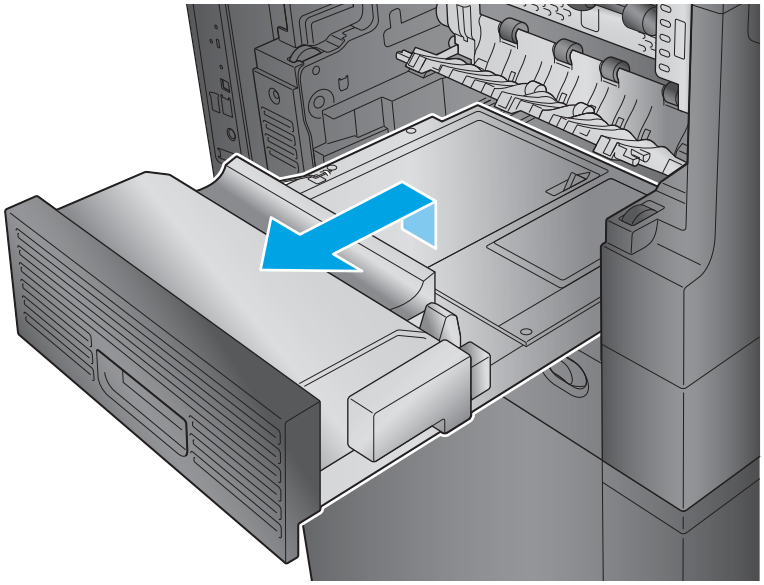


Step 3: Remove the duplex accessory

▲ Slide the duplex assembly away from the product, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails, and then remove it.

NOTE: Locate the duplexer at the left-hand side of the product.

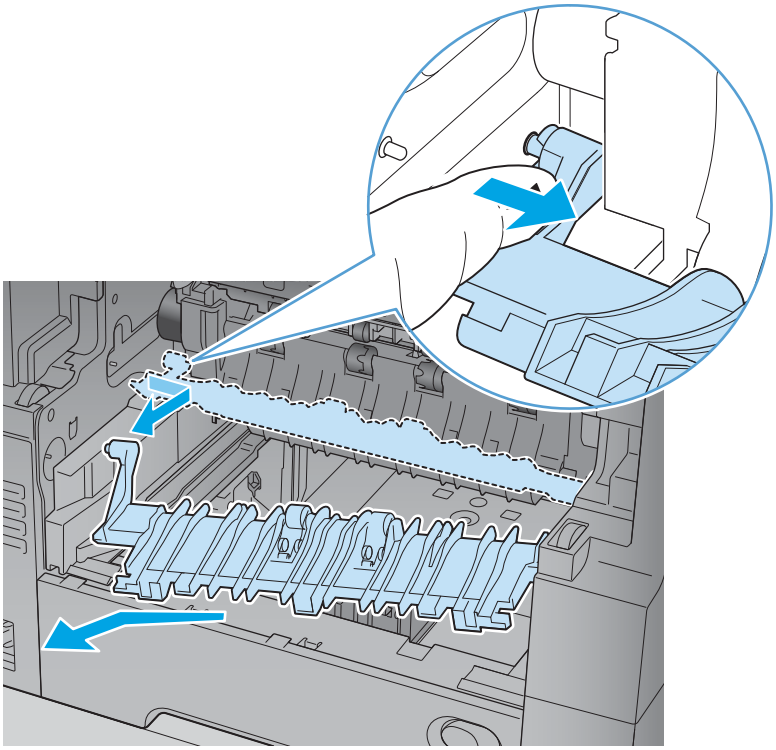
Figure 1-817 Remove the duplex accessory



Step 4: Remove the fuser-entrance guide

1. Flex the rear hinge-pin of the fuser-entrance guideuntil it clears the mounting hole in the product chassis.
2. Rotate the rear of the guide away of the product and slide the guide to the left to release the front hinge-pin. Remove the fuser-entrance guide.

Figure 1-818 Remove the fuser-entrance guide

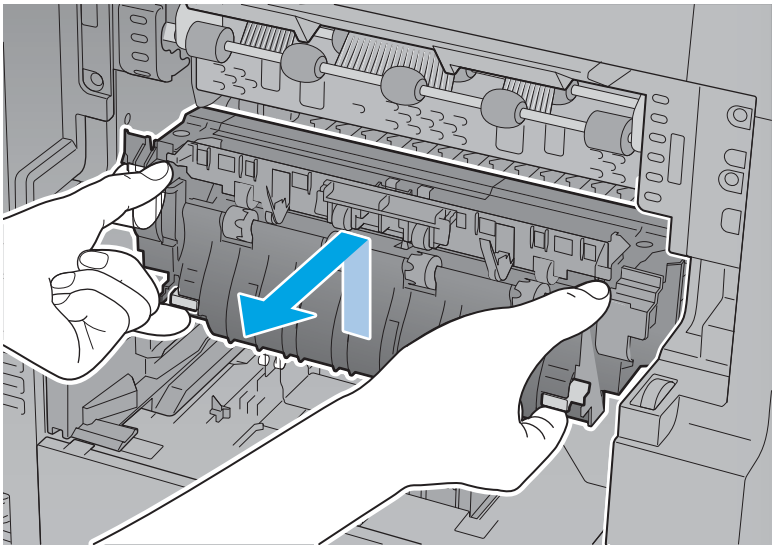


Step 5: Remove the fuser

▲ Squeeze the two blue tabs on the fuser to release it, and then slide it out of the product.

⚠ **CAUTION:** The fuser is very hot. After turning the product power off, allow the fuser to cool for at least 30 minutes before removing it.

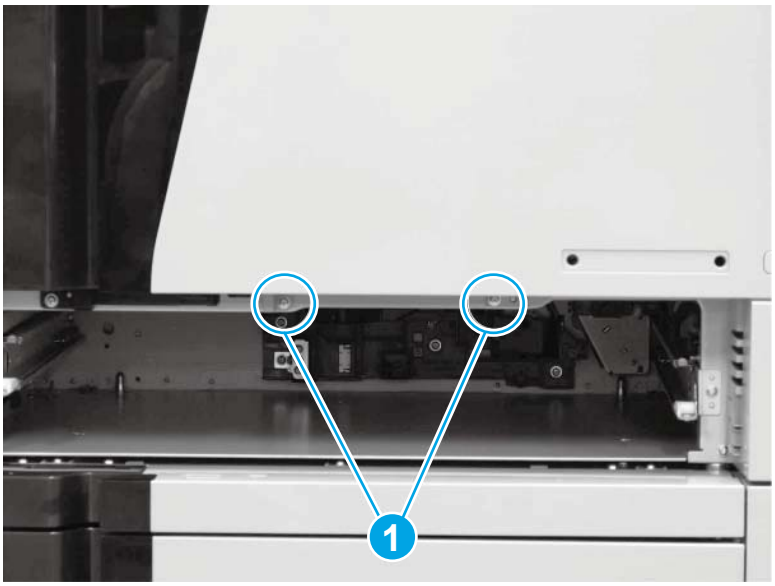
Figure 1-819 Remove the fuser



Step 6: Remove the front cover

1. Remove Tray 2, and then remove two screws (callout 1).

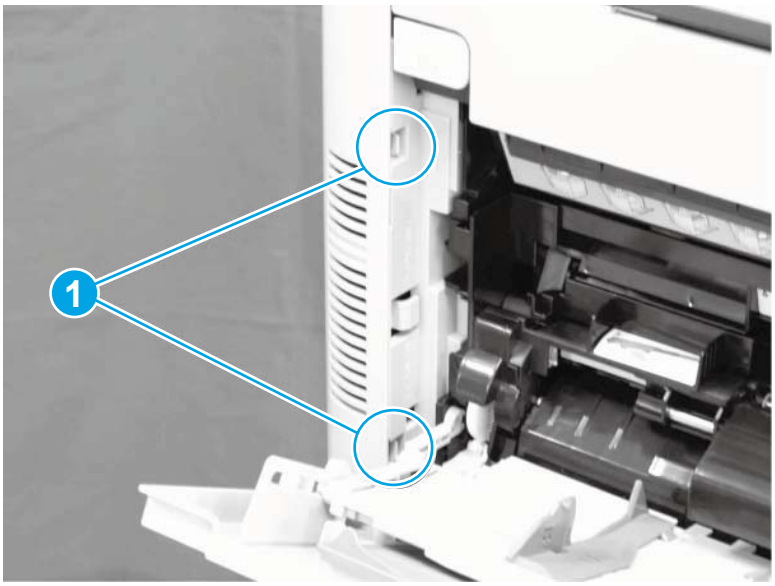
Figure 1-820 Remove two screws



2. Open Tray 1, and then push in on two tabs (callout 1) to release them.

TIP: Release the lower tab first, and then release the upper tab.

Figure 1-821 Release two tabs



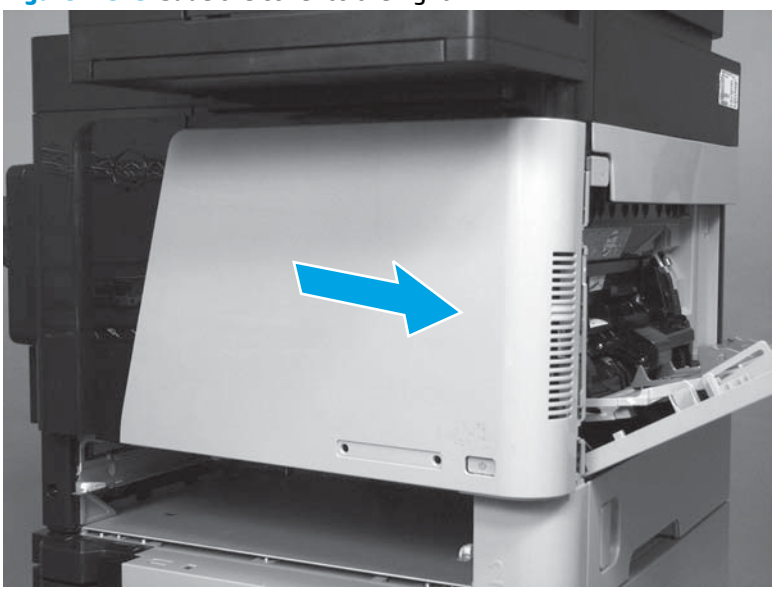
3. Carefully flex the right-upper corner of the cover away from the product to release one locking pin.

Figure 1-822 Release the right-upper corner



4. Slide the cover towards the right side of the product to release it.

Figure 1-823 Slide the cover to the right



5. Remove the cover.

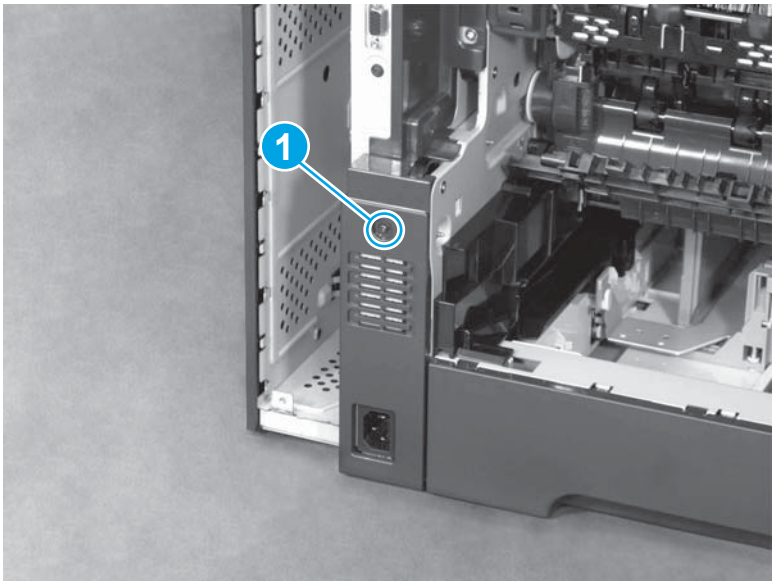
Figure 1-824 Remove the cover



Step 7: Remove the side-rear cover

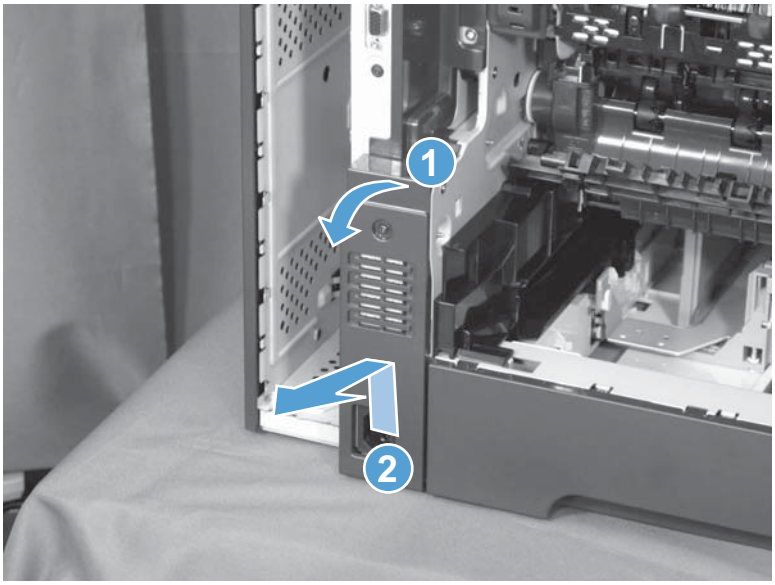
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-825 Remove one screw



2. Rotate the top of the cover away from the product (callout 1), slightly raise the cover to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

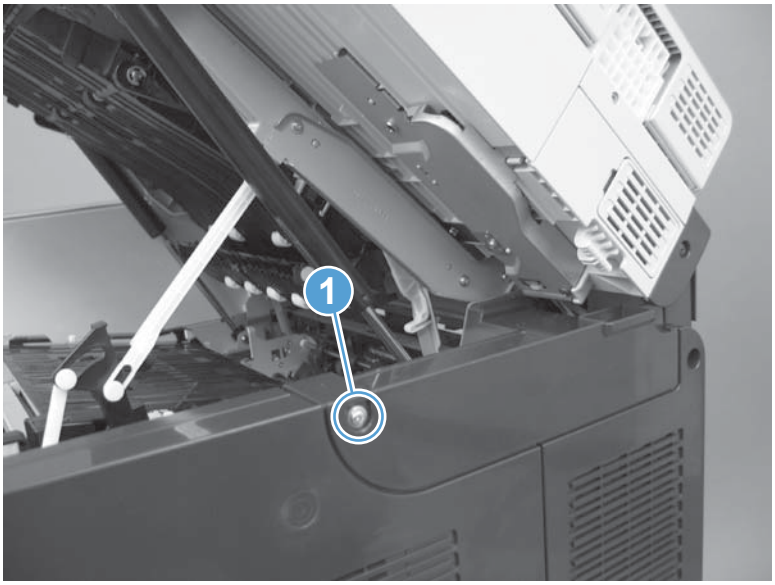
Figure 1-826 Remove the side-rear cover



Step 8: Remove the image scanner cable cover

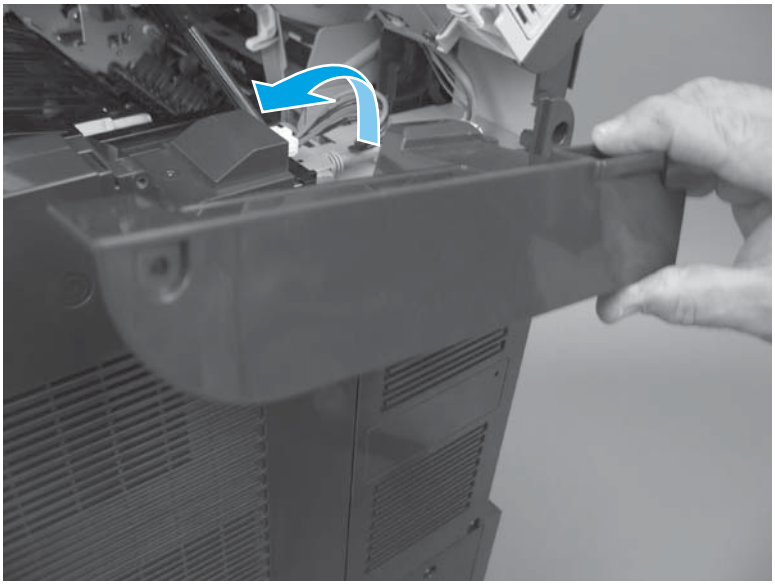
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-827 Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

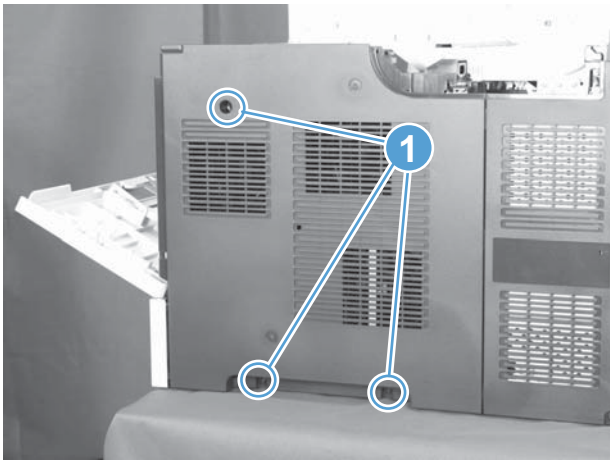
Figure 1-828 Remove the cover



Step 9: Remove the rear-right cover

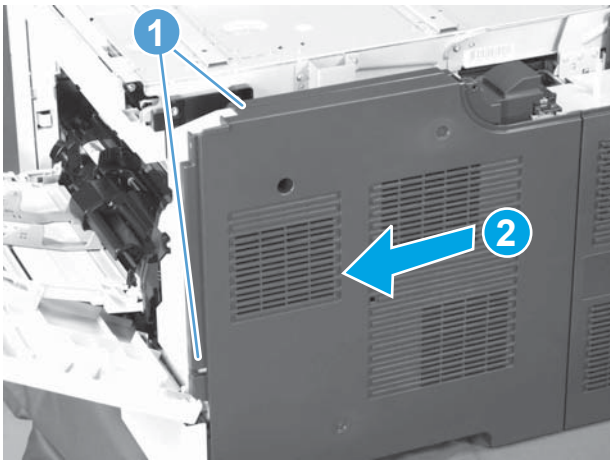
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-829 Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly seperate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

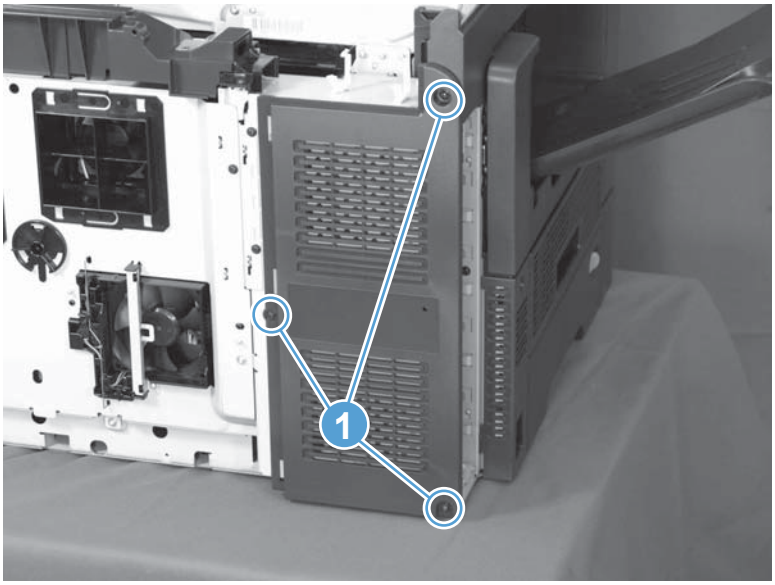
Figure 1-830 Remove the cover



Step 10: Remove the rear-left cover

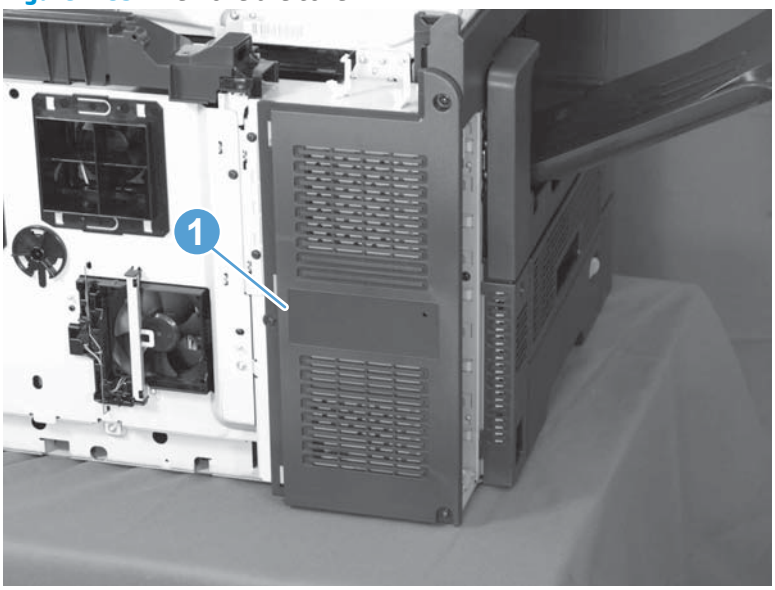
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-831 Remove three screws



2. Remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 1-832 Remove the cover

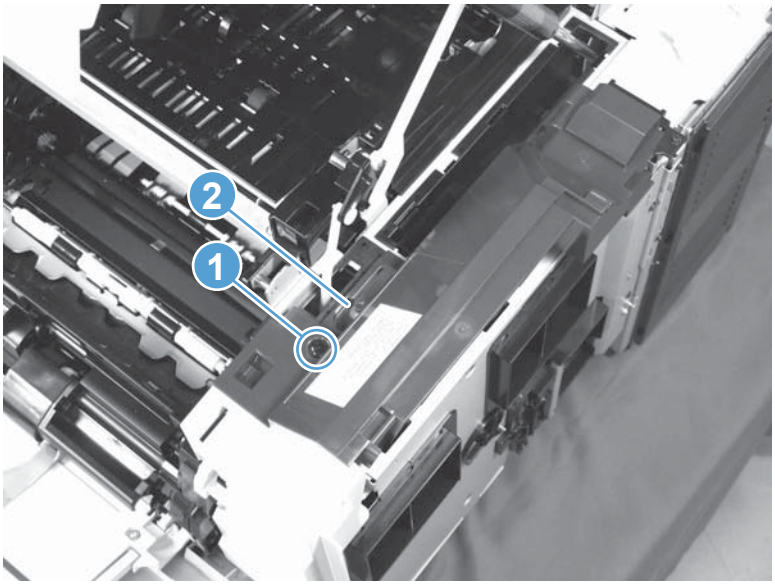


Step 11: Remove the rear-top cover

NOTE: If the top cover is closed, open it now.

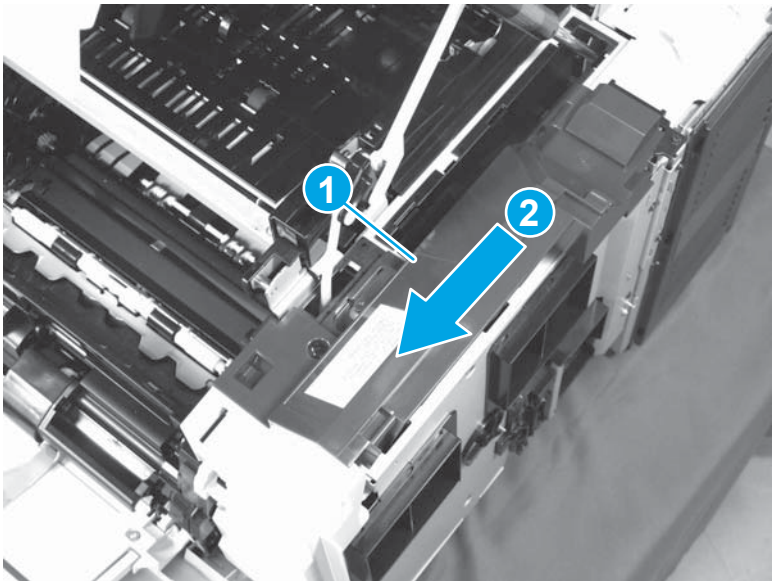
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-833 Remove one screw



2. Push the cover (callout 1) towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-834 Remove the cover

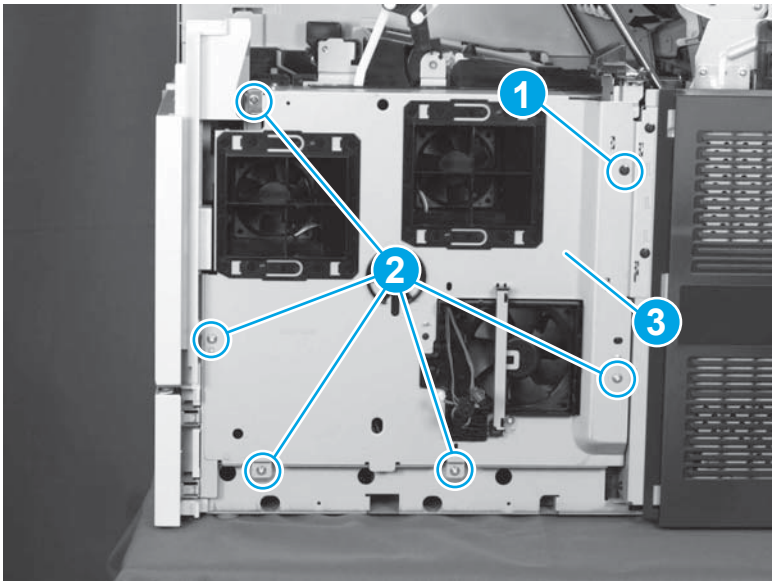


Step 12: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly

1. Remove one black screw (callout 1), remove five silver screws (callout 2), and then slightly rotate the top of the shield (callout 3) away from the product.

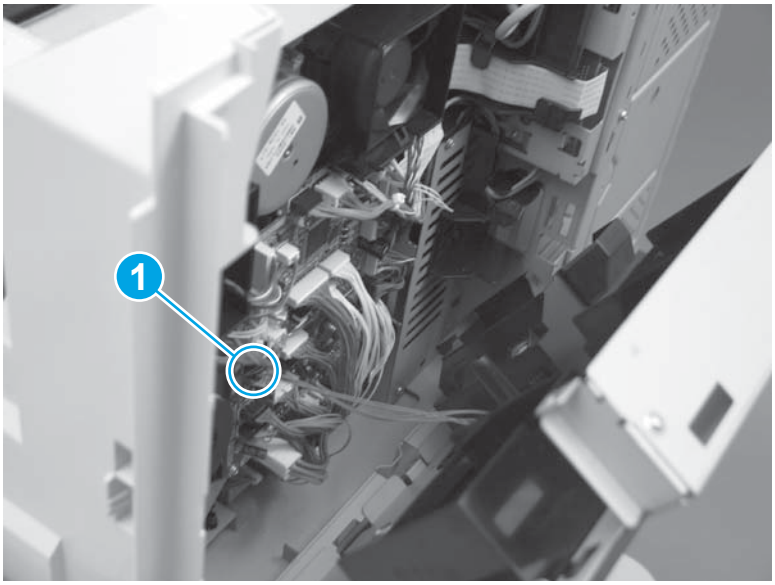
⚠ **CAUTION:** The shield is still connected to the product by a wire harness. Do not completely remove the shield after removing the screws.

Figure 1-835 Remove six screws



2. Disconnect one connector (J42; callout 1) from the DC controller, and then remove the DC controller shield.

Figure 1-836 Disconnect one connector and remove the shield

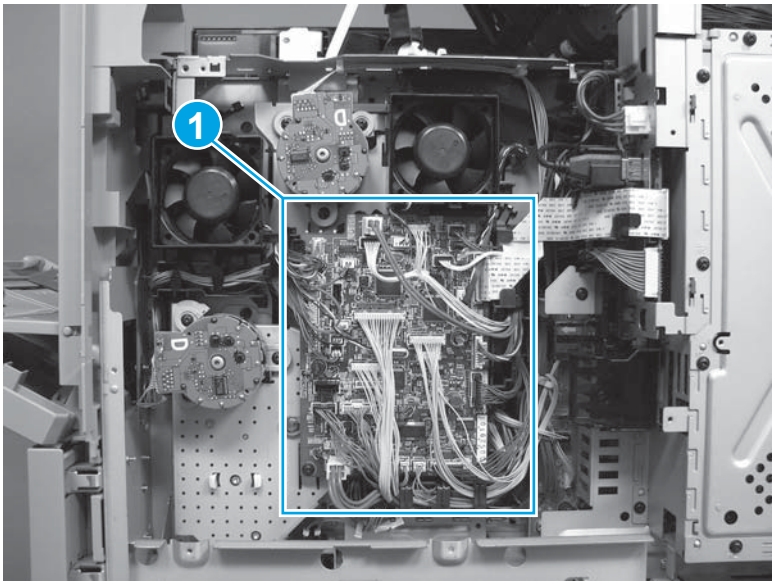


Step 13: Remove the DC controller

1. Disconnect all of the connectors (callout 1) on the DC controller.
   - 34 wire-harness connectors
   - 1 flat-flexible cable (FFC)

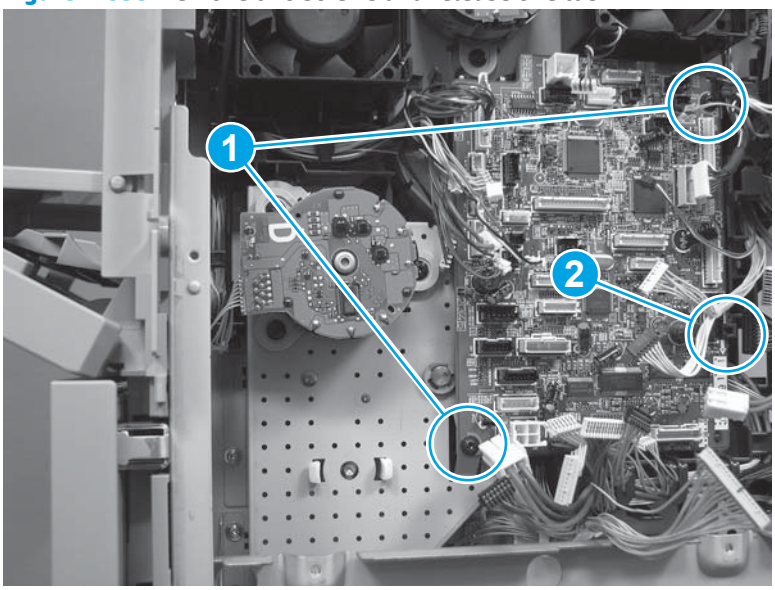
Reinstallation tip: When the DC controller is reinstalled, connectors J42, J59, and J80 are empty.

Figure 1-837 Disconnect all of the connectors



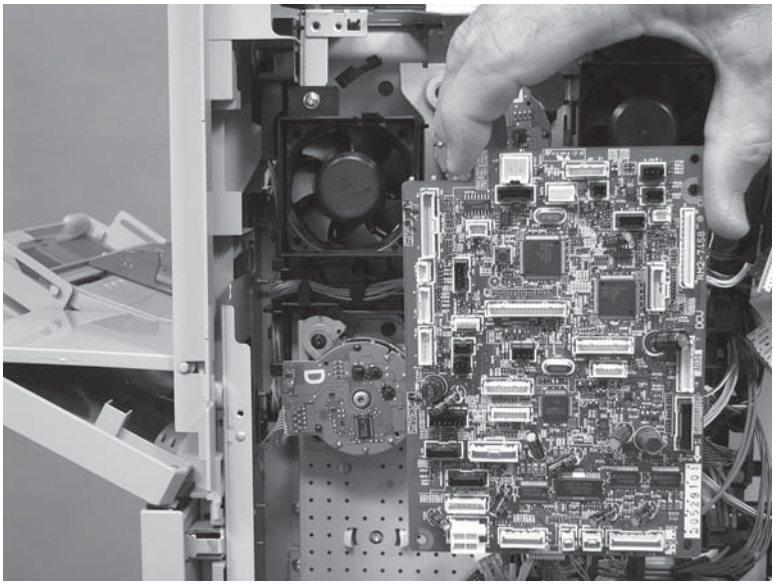
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-838 Remove two screws and release one tab



3. Remove the DC controller.

Figure 1-839 Remove the DC controller

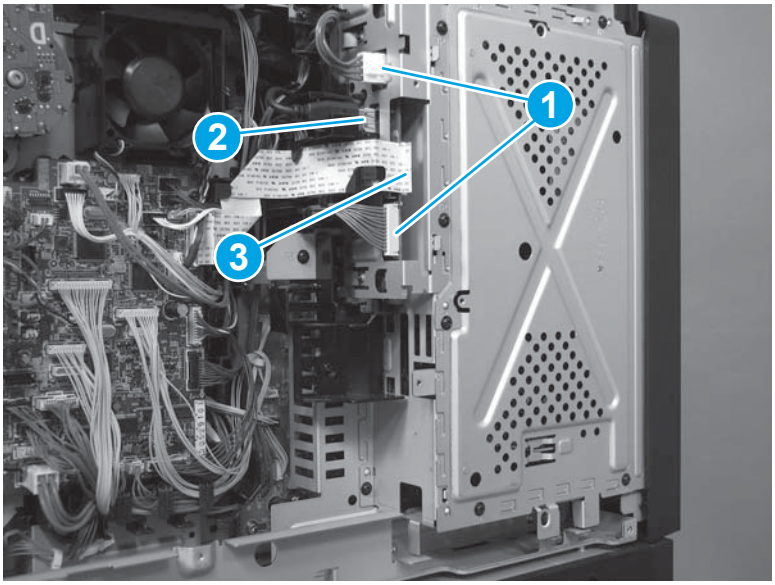


Step 14: Remove the ICB

ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), one USB connector (callout 2), and then disconnect one FFC (callout 3).

Figure 1-840 Disconnect four connectors

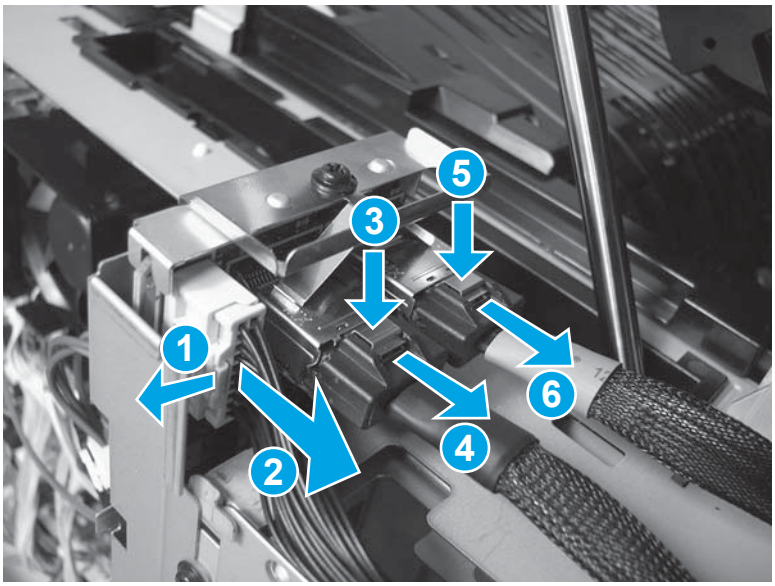


2. Use a small flat-blade screw driver to release three connectors.

TIP: When the two connectors with the metal retainer clips (callouts 3/4/5/6) are reinstalled, make sure that the clips snap in place to securely lock the connectors in place.

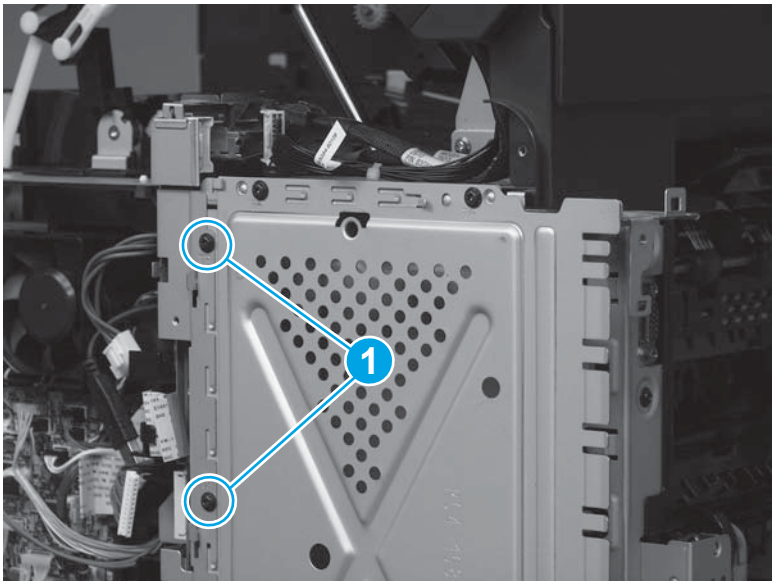
The wire harness with the blue band (callouts 5/6) connects to the inner connector on the ICB when reinstalled.

Figure 1-841 Disconnect three connectors



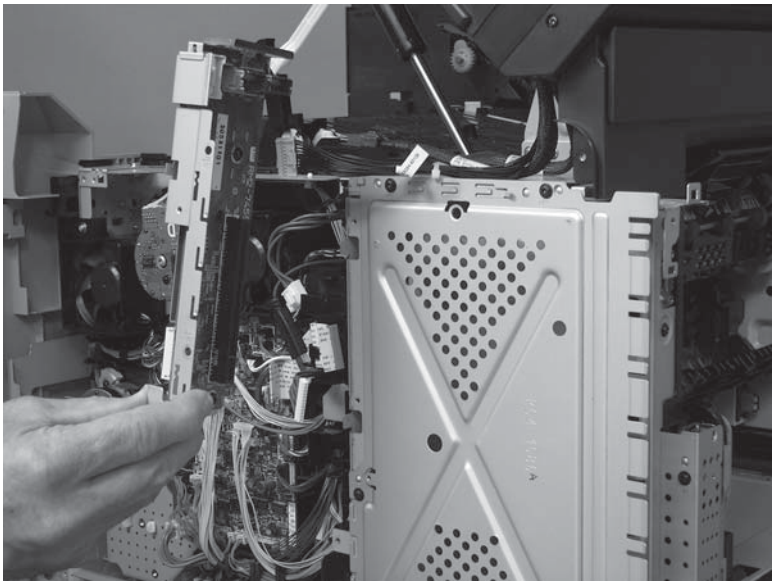
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-842 Remove two screws



4. Remove the ICB.

Figure 1-843 Remove the ICB

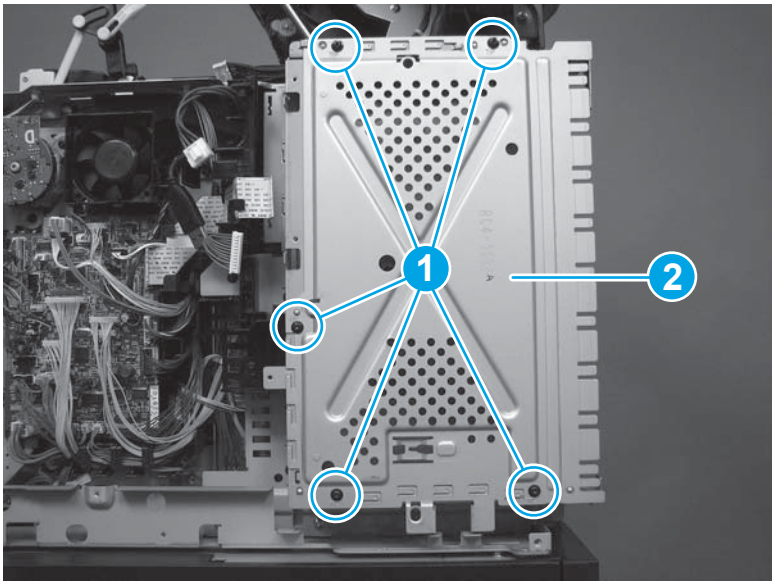


Step 15: Remove the LVPS

ESD sensitive assembly.

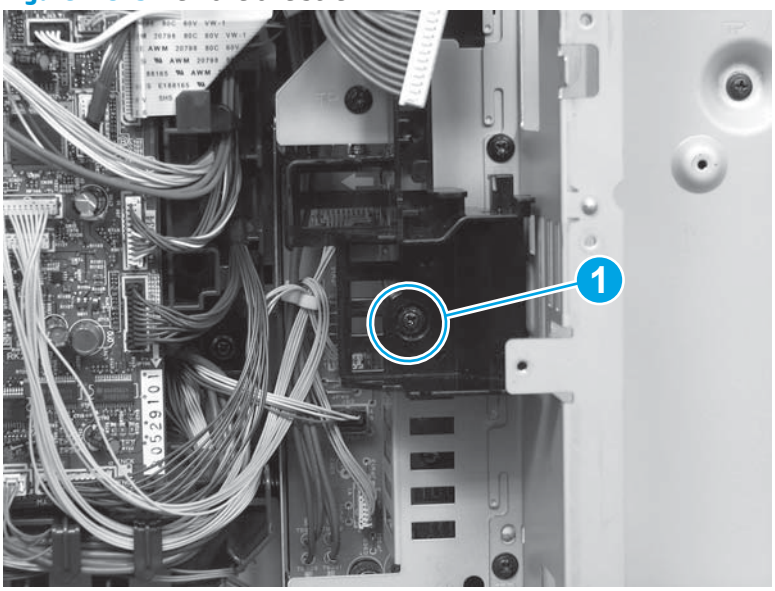
1. Remove five screws (callout 1), and the sheet-metal plate (callout 2).

Figure 1-844 Remove the sheet-metal plate



2. Remove one screw (callout 1) near the DC controller.

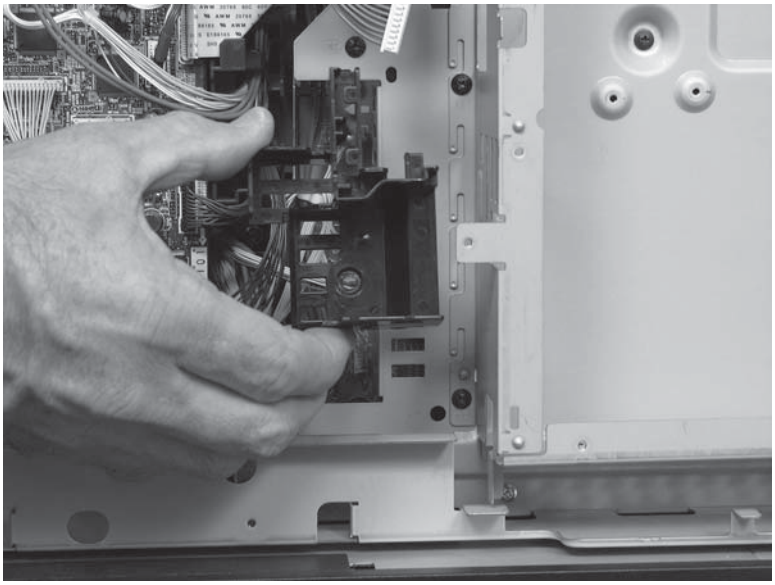
Figure 1-845 Remove one screw



3. Remove the guide (callout 1).

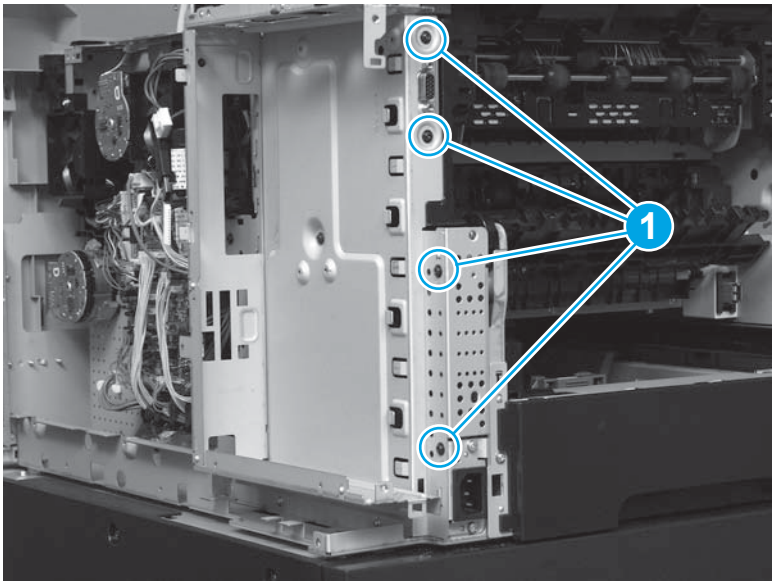
Reinstallation tip: Insert the hook at the top of the guide into the slot in the chassis, and then rotate the bottom of the guide into place.

Figure 1-846 Remove the guide



4. Remove four black screws (callout 1).

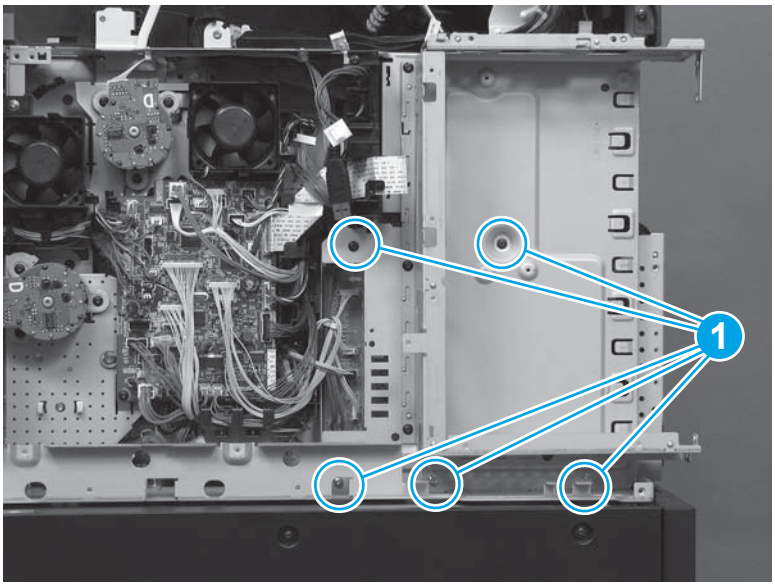
Figure 1-847 Remove four screws



5. Remove five screws (callout 1).

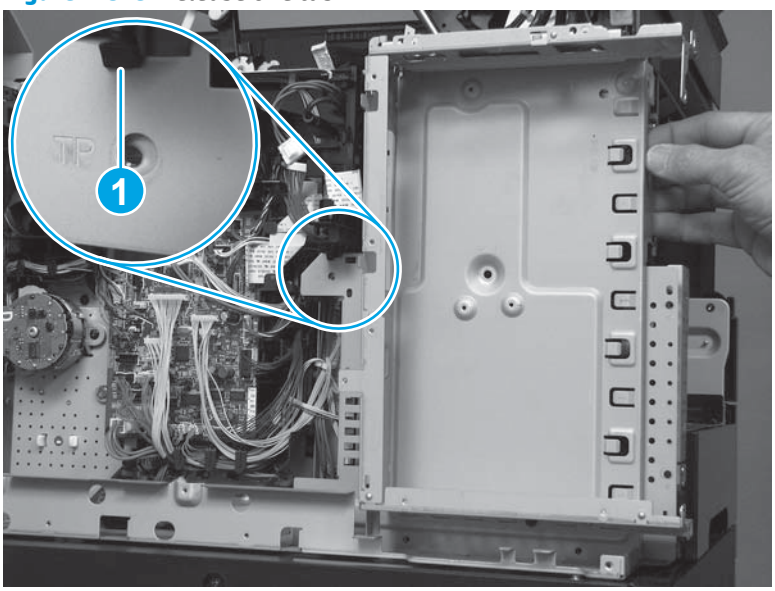
NOTE: The two upper screws are black, and the three screws across the bottom are silver.

Figure 1-848 Remove two screws



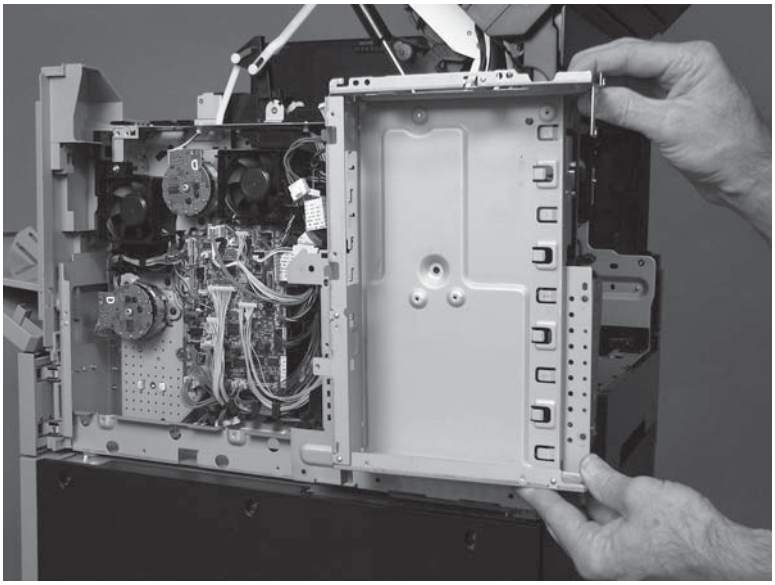
6. Slightly separate the sheet-metal plate from the product, and then release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 1-849 Release one tab



7. Remove the sheet-metal plate from the product.

Figure 1-850 Remove the sheet-metal plate

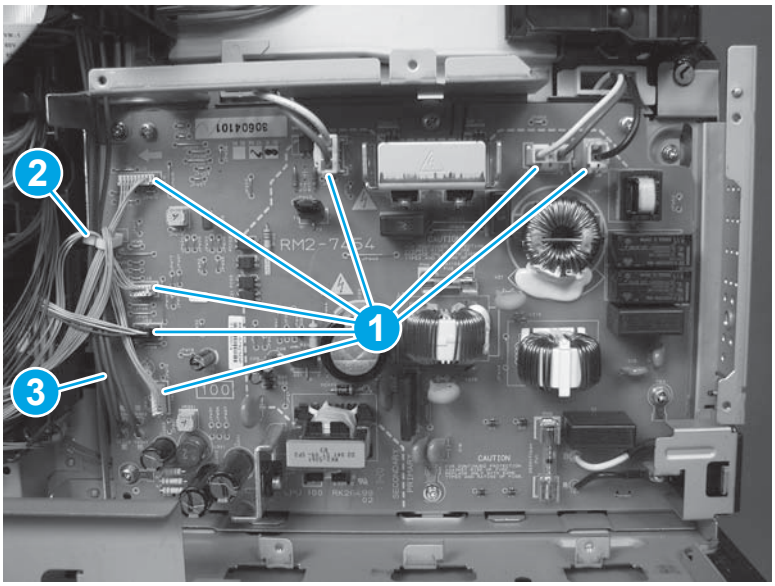


8. Disconnect seven connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

NOTE: These wire-harnesses are stiff and can make the connectors difficult to disconnect.

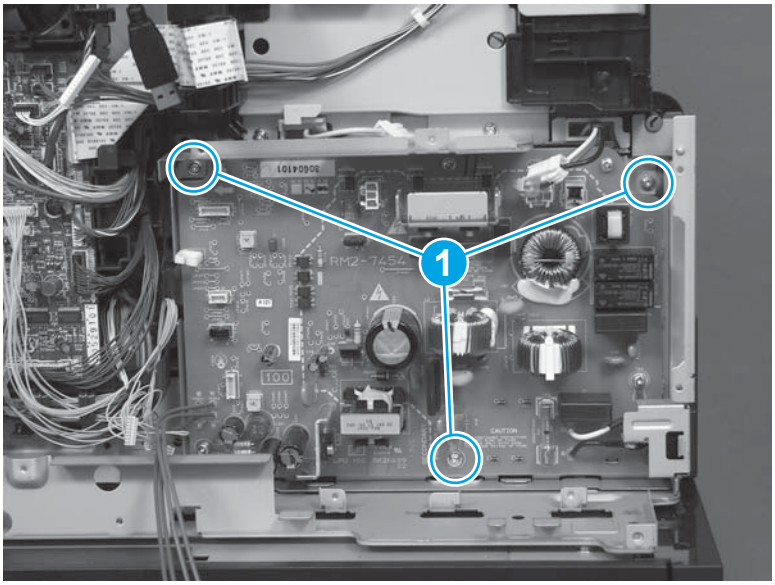
TIP: The 4-wire wire harness (callout 3; two brown and 2 blue wires) cannot be disconnected from the LVPS, and does not need to be released from the retainer.

Figure 1-851 Disconnect seven connectors



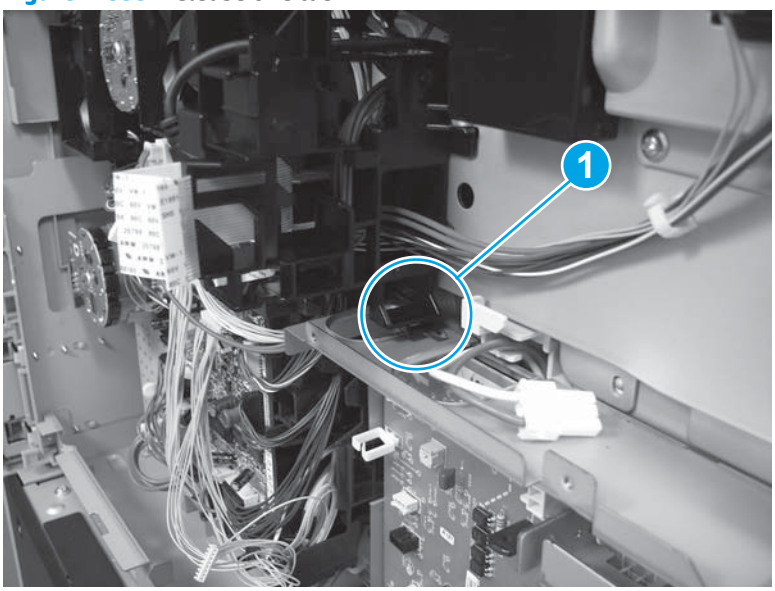
9. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-852 Remove three screws



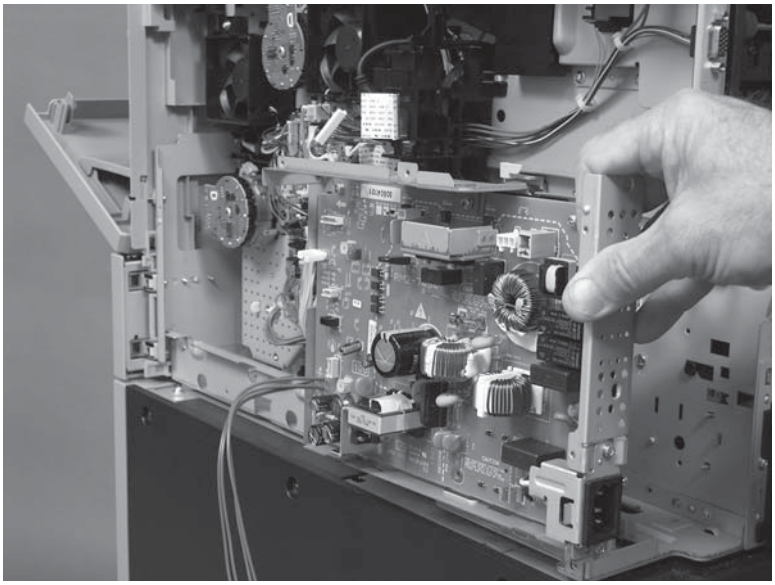
10. Release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 1-853 Release one tab



11. Remove the LVPS.

Figure 1-854 Remove the LVPS

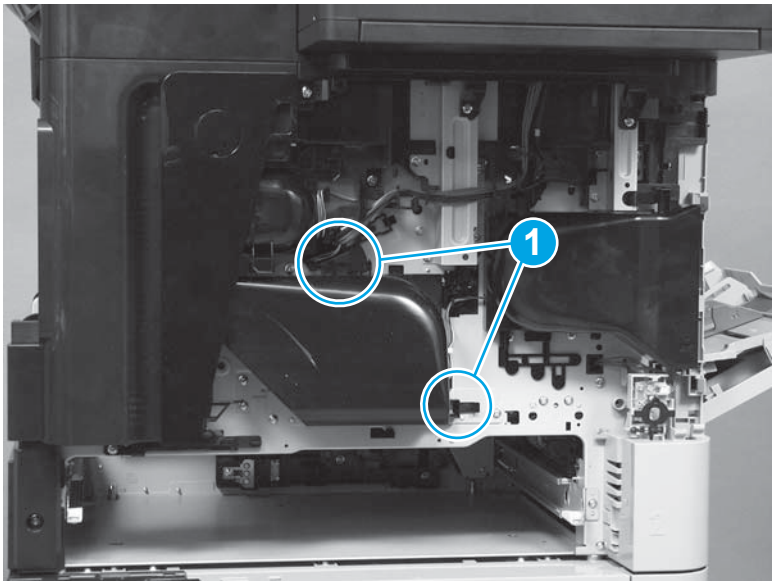


Step 16: Remove the HVPS

ESD sensitive assembly.

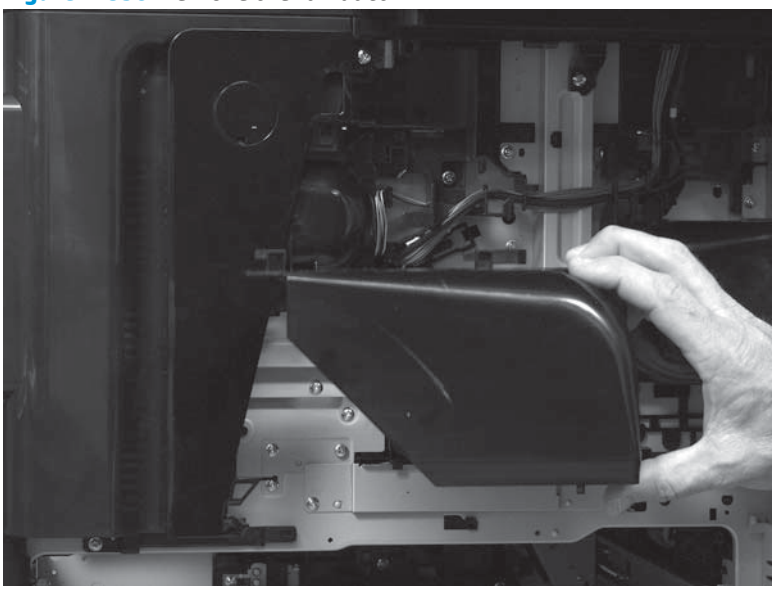
1. Release two tabs (callout 1).

Figure 1-855 Release two tabs



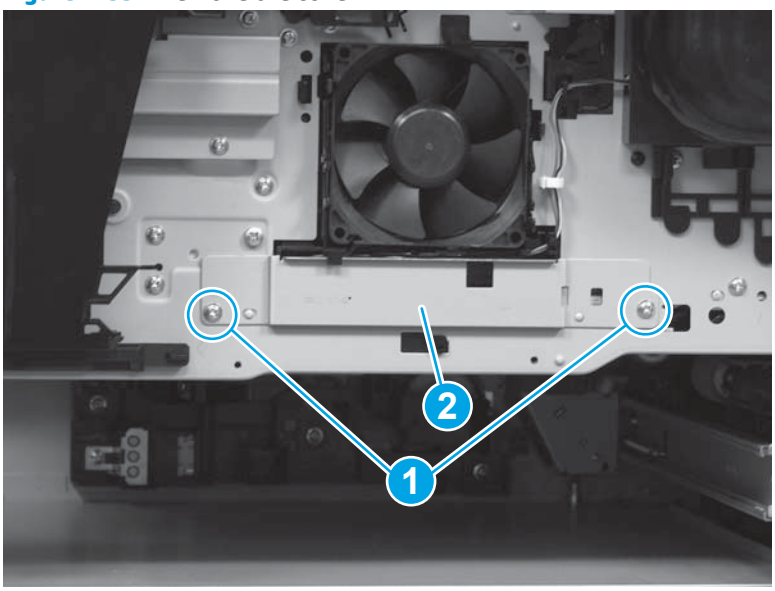
2. Remove the fan duct.

Figure 1-856 Remove the fan duct



3. At the front of the product, remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callout 2).

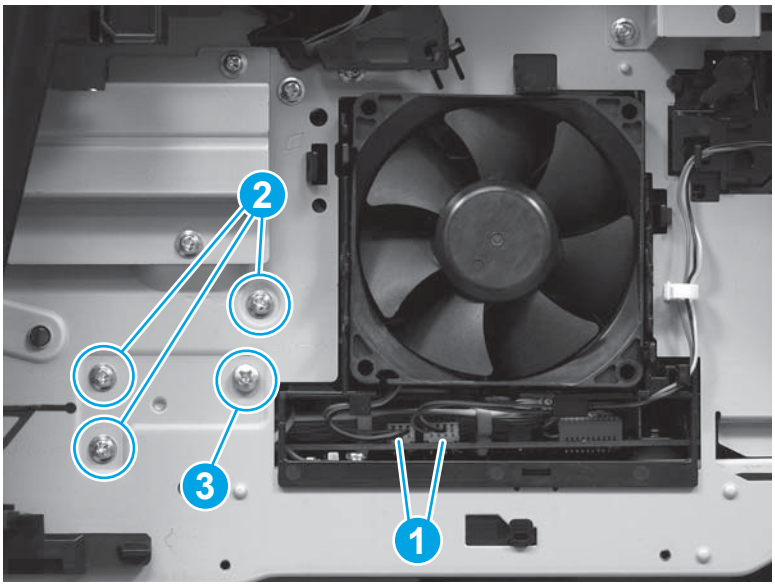
Figure 1-857 Remove the cover



4. At the front side of the product, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove four screws (callout 2/3).

NOTE: One screw (callout 3) is larger than the others.

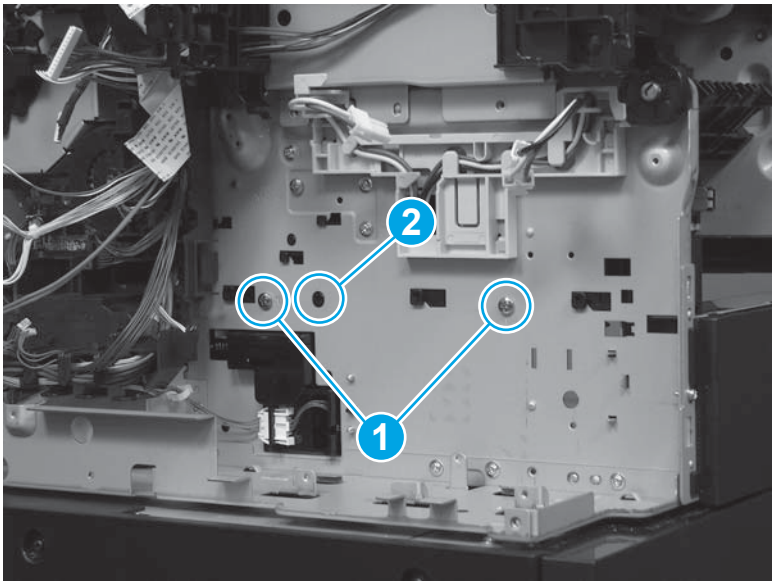
Figure 1-858 Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws



5. At the back of the product, remove two screws (callout 1), and then release one locking button (callout 2).

NOTE: Keep the tab (callout 2) depressed.

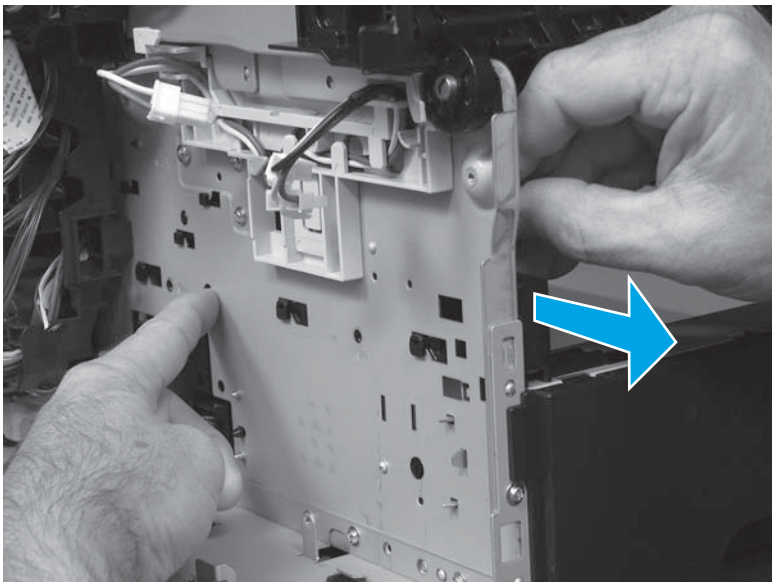
Figure 1-859 Remove two screws and release one tab



6. Slide the guide to the right to release it.

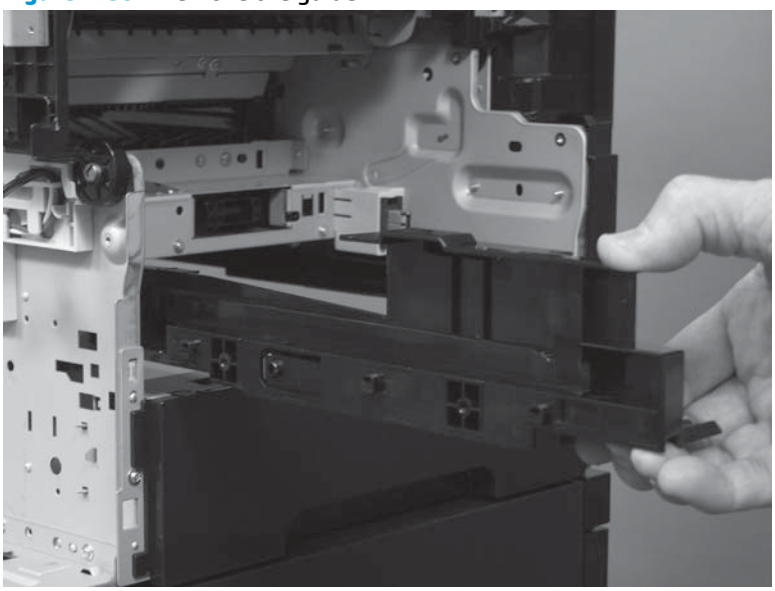
NOTE: The guide is located inside the product chassis (where the removed duplexer would be installed).

Figure 1-860 Release the guide



7. Remove the guide.

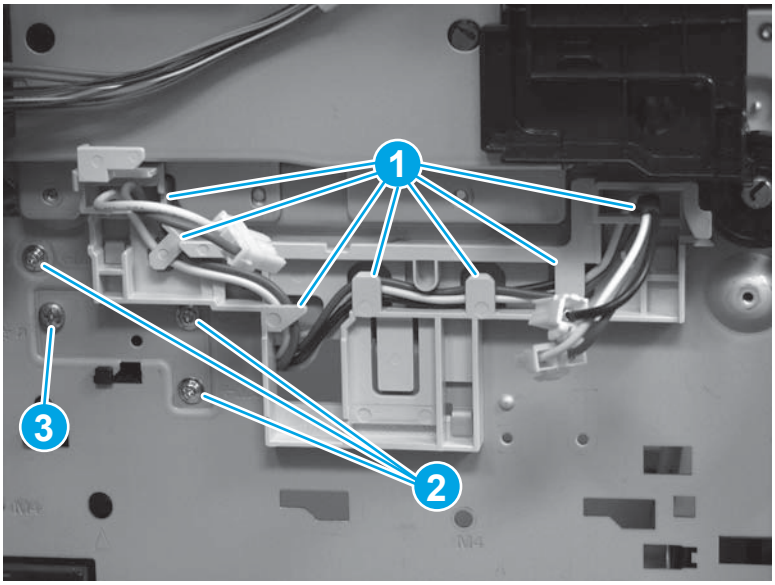
Figure 1-861 Remove the guide



8. At the back of the product, release the LVPS wire harnesses from the guide (callout 1), and then remove four screws (callout 2/3).

NOTE: One screw (callout 3) is larger than the others.

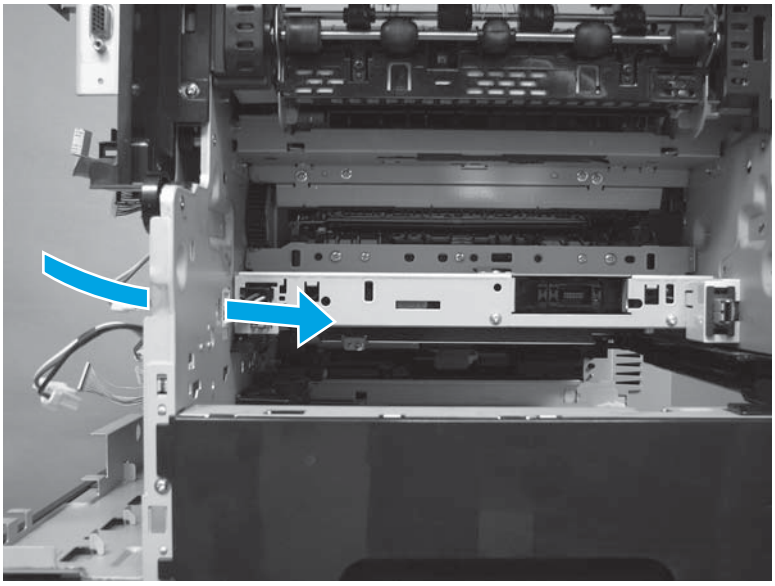
Figure 1-862 Release the wire harnesses and remove four screws



9. Support the HVPS and feed the LVPS wire harnesses through the hole in the chassis.

⚠ **CAUTION:** Be careful. Do not damage the wire harnesses.

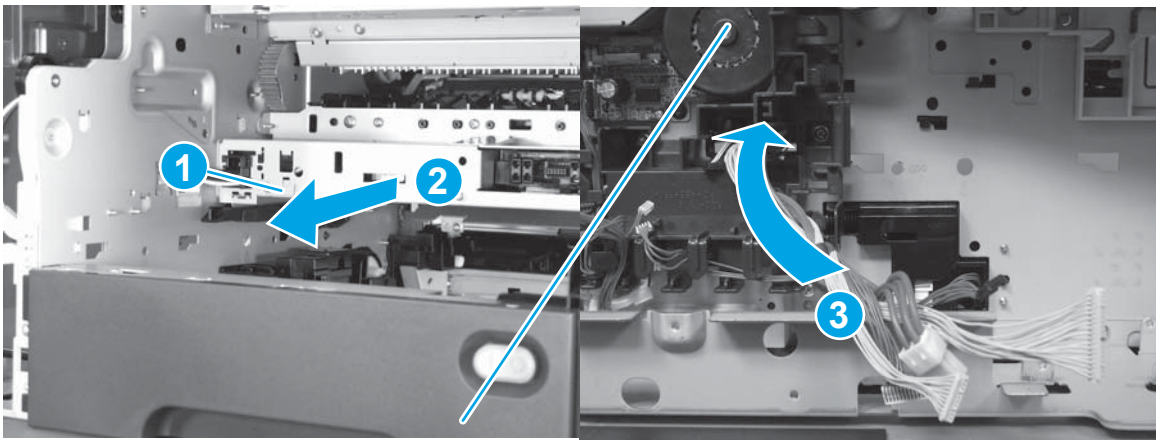
Figure 1-863 Feed the wire harnesses through the hole



10. Slightly slide the HVPS (callout 1) out of the product (callout 2), while at the back of the product feeding the wire harness through the hole in the chassis (callout 3).

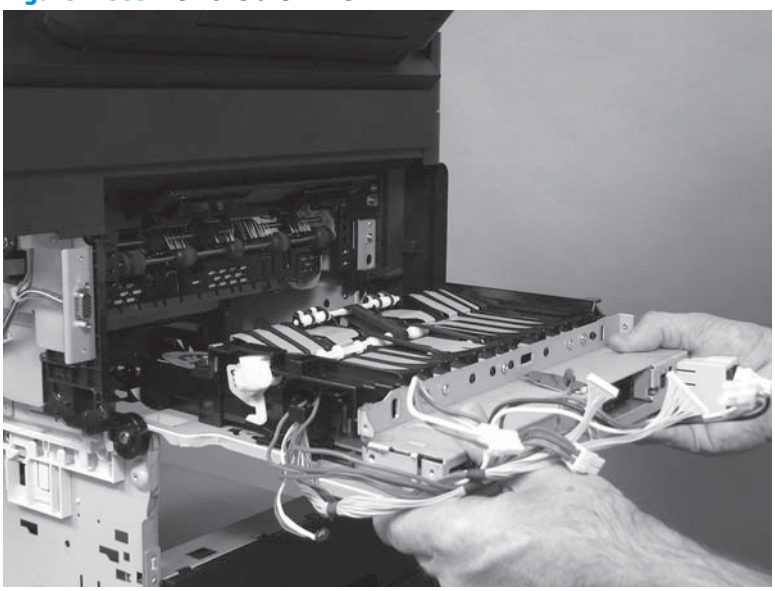
⚠ **CAUTION:** Be careful. Do not damage the wire harnesses.

Figure 1-864 Feed the wire harnesses through the hole



11. Remove the HVPS from the product.

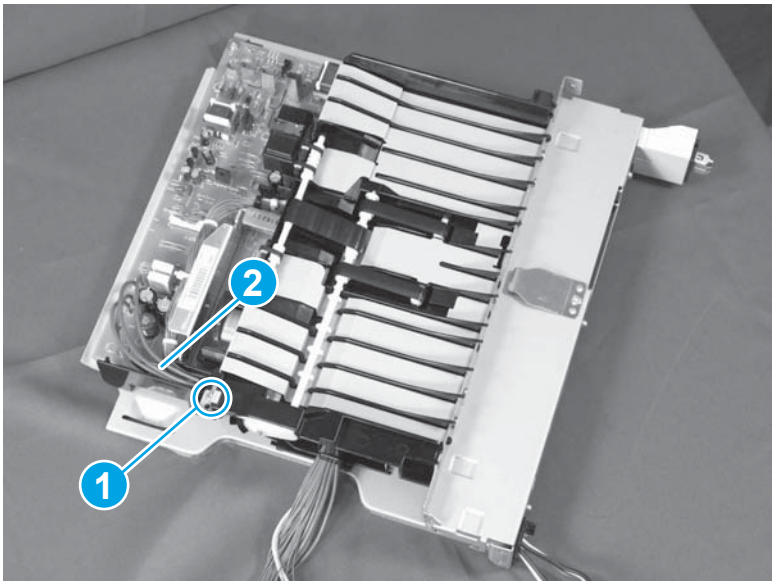
Figure 1-865 Remove the HVPS



12. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the wire harness (callout 2).

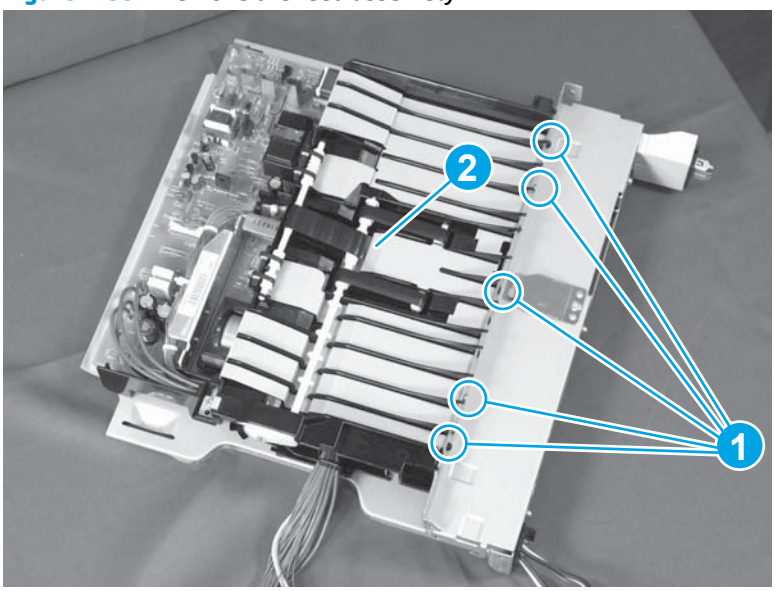
NOTE: If the HVPS is removed to gain access to another assembly, do not remove the feed assembly. If a replacement HVPS is being installed, remove the feed assembly.

Figure 1-866 Remove one screw and release the wire harness



13. Remove five screws (callout 1), and then remove the feed assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-867 Remove the feed assembly



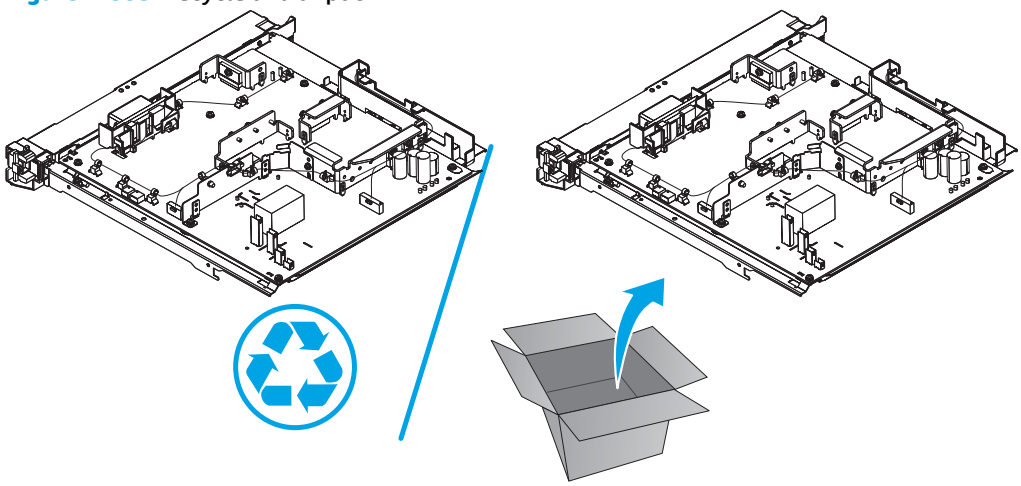
Step 17: Unpack the replacement HVPS

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

Figure 1-868 Recycle and unpack



Step 18: Install the HVPS

NOTE: If a replacement HVPS is being installed, go to step 1.

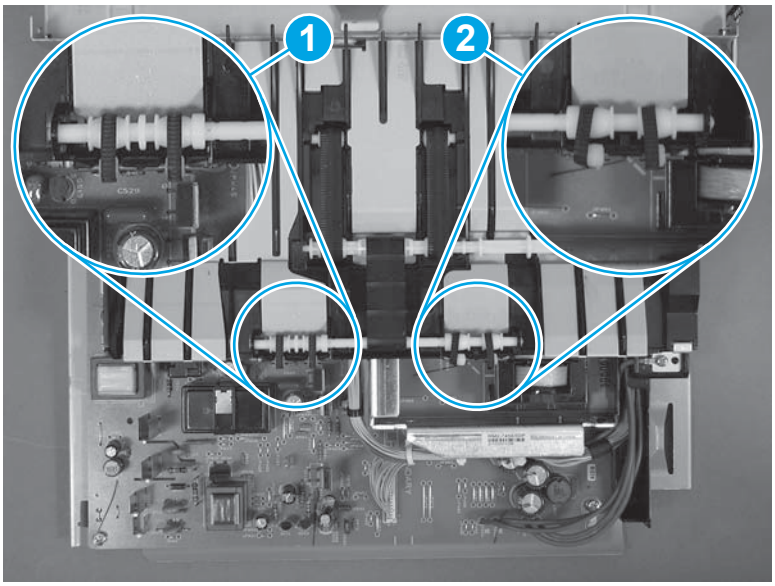
If the HVPS was removed to gain access to another assembly, go to step 7.

ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Be careful when handling the feed assembly. Make sure that the drive belts and belt shafts do not become dislodged. Callout 1 shows the belts and shafts correctly installed. Callout 2 shows the belts and shafts dislodged.

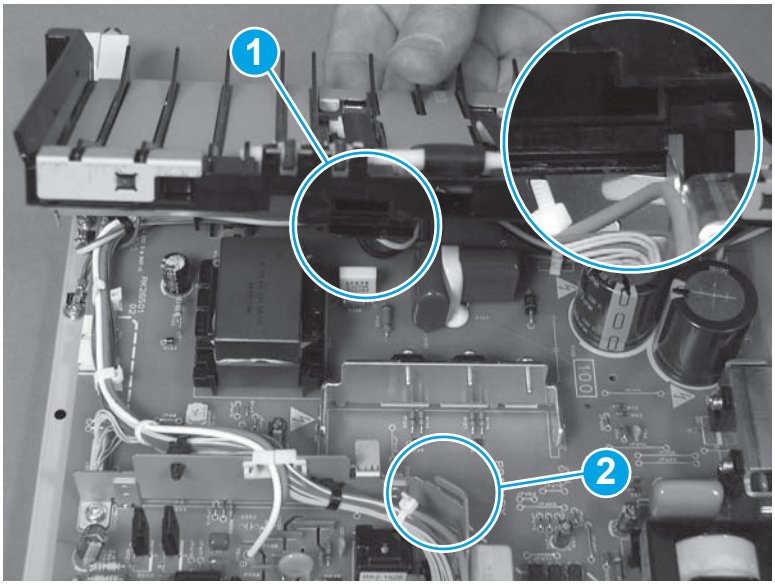
CAUTION: The feed assembly belt shafts are only held captive by the belts. If the belts become dislodged, the shafts can easily be lost.

Figure 1-869 Check the drive belts and belt shafts



2. The foot (callout 1) on the underside of the feed assembly, must fit into the sheet-metal slot (callout 2) on the HVPS.

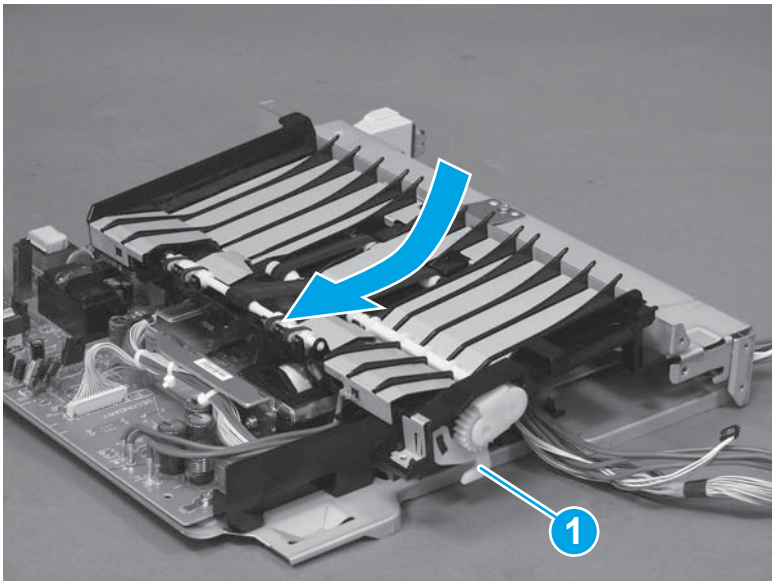
Figure 1-870 Check the foot and slot



3. Install the feed assembly on the replacement HVPS at a slight angle so that the foot on the underside of the feed assembly fits into the sheet-metal slot on the HVPS. See Figure 1-870 Check the foot and slot on page 552.

NOTE: Make sure that the white lever (callout 1) on the assembly is correctly positioned.

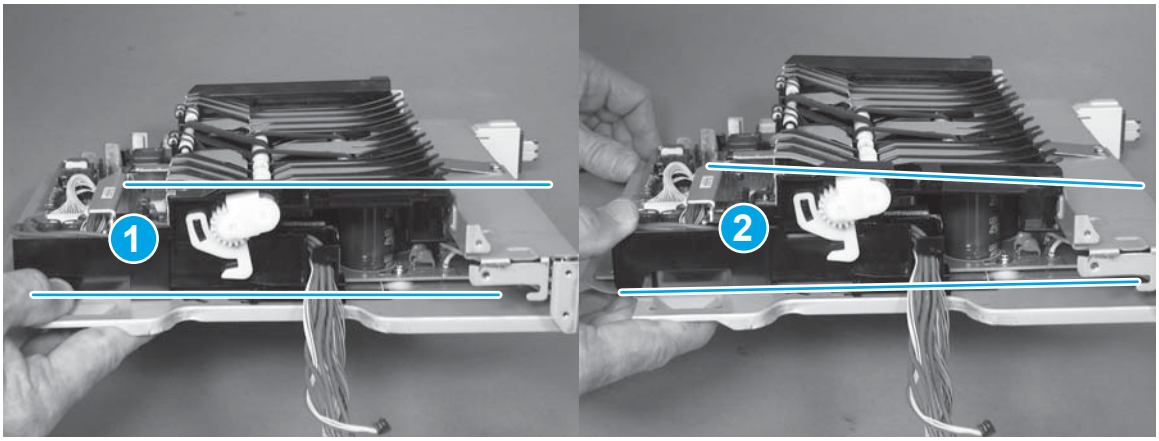
Figure 1-871 Install the feed assembly



4. When correctly nstalled the feed assembly mounts flat (callout 1) on the HVPS. The assembly should not be angled (callout 2)—if the assembly is angled, make sure that the foot on the underside of the assembly is correctly positioned in the sheet-metal slot on the HVPS.

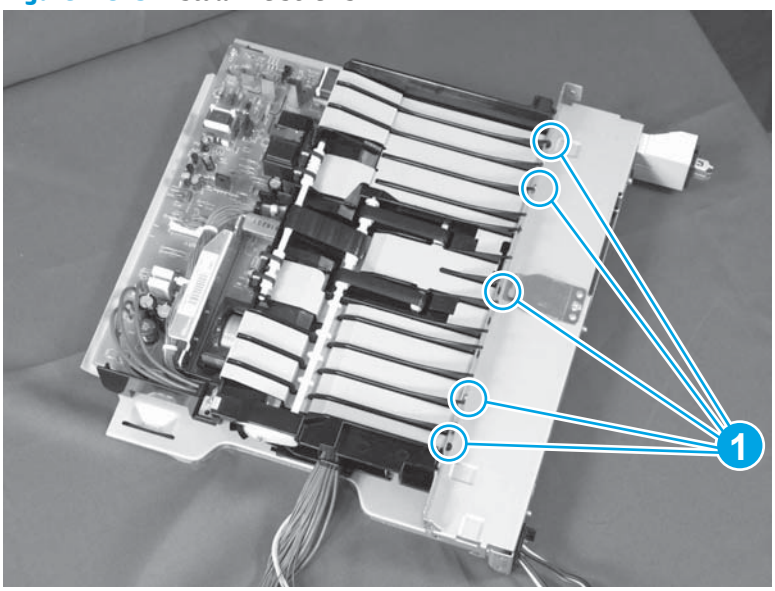
IMPORTANT: Be careful when handling the feed assembly. Make sure that the drive belts and belt shafts do not become dislodged. See Figure 1-869 Check the drive belts and belt shafts on page 552.

Figure 1-872 Verify the feed assembly installation



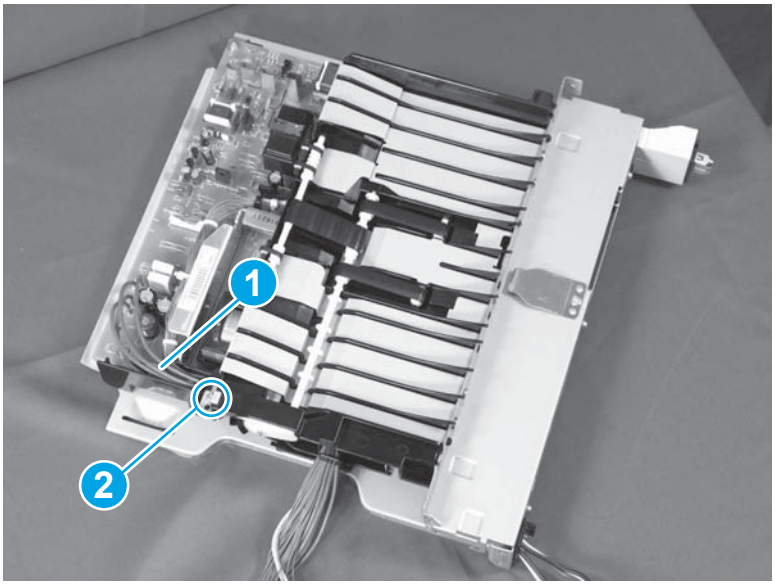
5. Install five screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-873 Install five screws



6. Connect one wire harness (callout 1), and then install one screw (callout 2).

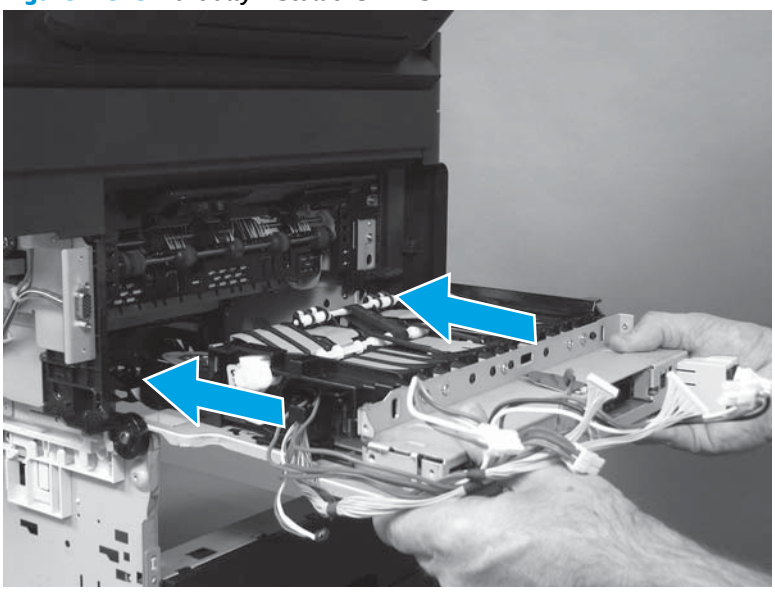
Figure 1-874 Connect one wire harness and install one screw and release



7. Partially slide the HVPS into the product.

Reinstallation tip: The feed assembly must be correctly positioned or the HVPS will not completely slide into the product. If there are problems reinstalling the HVPS, make sure that the feed assembly is correctly mounted. See Figure 1-872 Verify the feed assembly installation on page 553.

Figure 1-875 Partially install the HVPS

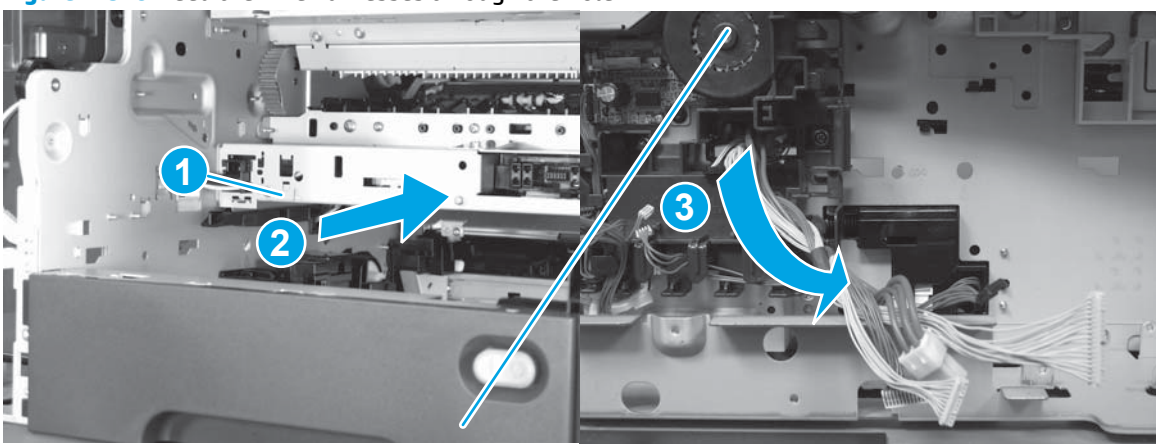


8. Continue to slide the HVPS (callout 1) into the product (callout 2), while at the back of the product feeding the wire harness through the hole in the chassis (callout 3).

CAUTION: Be careful. Do not damage the wire harnesses.

TIP: Keep the HVPS as level as possible when reinstalling it. Make sure that the assembly is correctly positioned on the two side support rails.

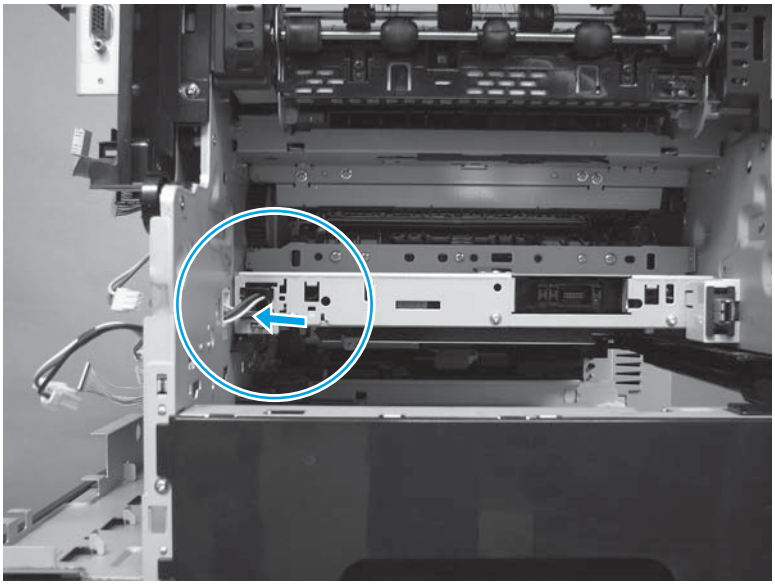
Figure 1-876 Feed the wire harnesses through the hole



9. Support the HVPS and feed the LVPS wire harnesses through the hole in the chassis.

CAUTION: Be careful. Do not damage the wire harnesses.

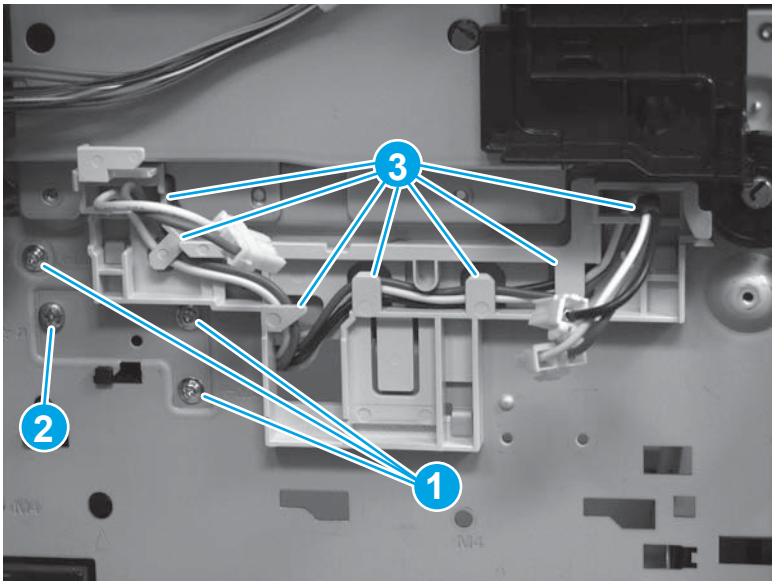
Figure 1-877 Feed the wire harnesses through the hole



10. At the back of the product, install four screws (callout 1/2), and then install the LVPS wire harnesses in the guide (callout 3), and then.

NOTE: One screw (callout 2) is larger than the others.

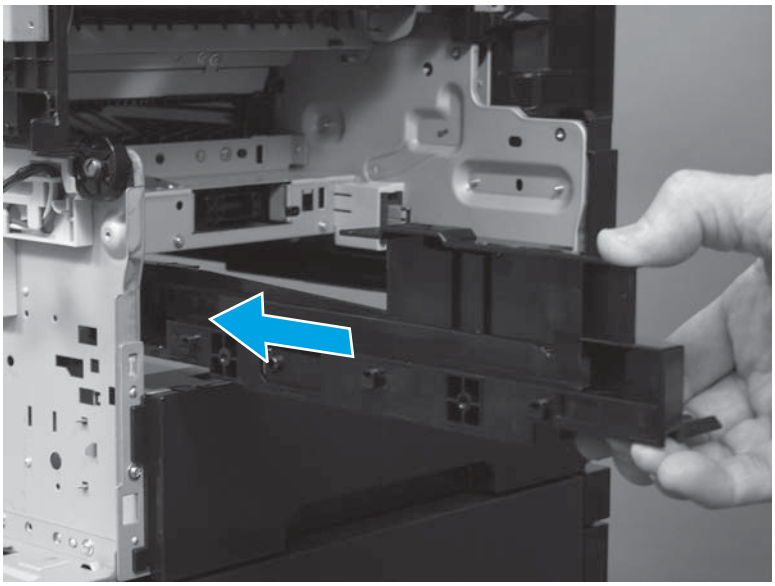
Figure 1-878 Install four screws and install the wire harnesses



11. Install the guide.

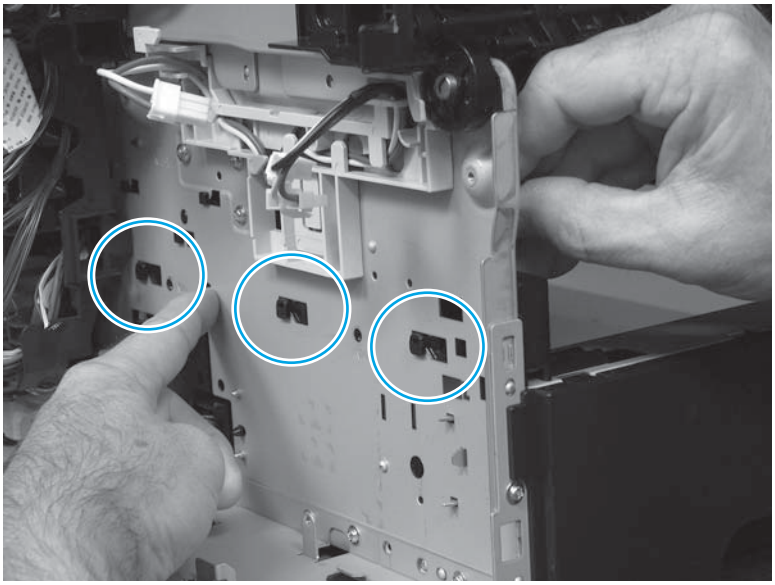
NOTE: The guide is installed inside the product chassis (where the removed duplexer would be installed).

Figure 1-879 Install the guide



12. Make sure that the tabs on the guide are engaged in the slots on the chassis.

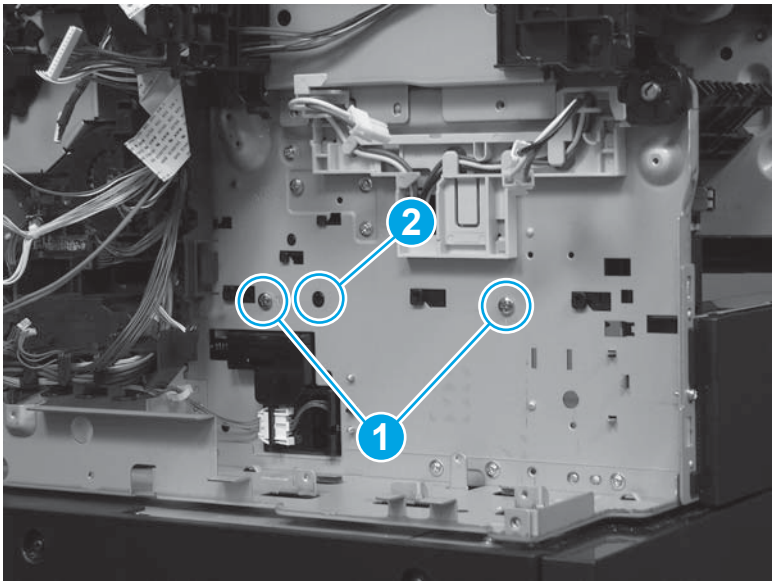
Figure 1-880 Check the guide



13. At the back of the product, install two screws (callout 1).

NOTE: Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged in the hole in the chassis.

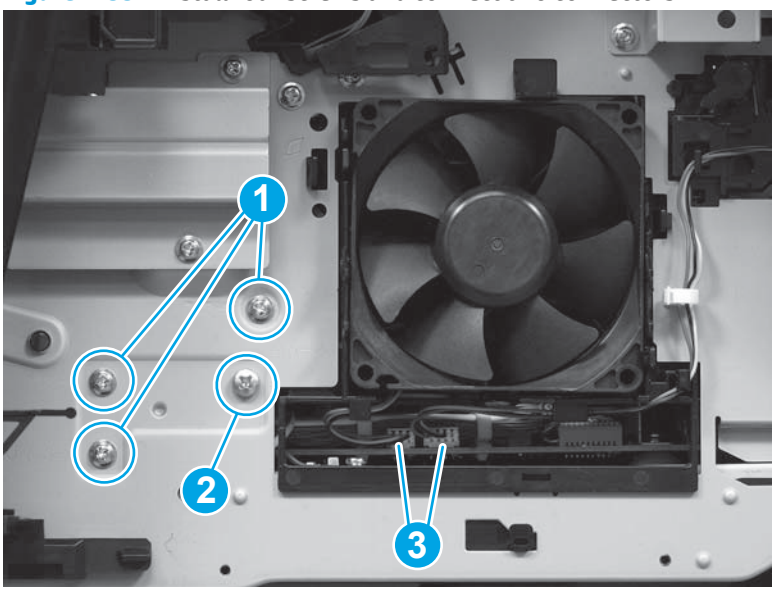
Figure 1-881 Install two screws



14. At the front side of the product, install four screws (callout 1/2), and then connect two connectors (callout 3).

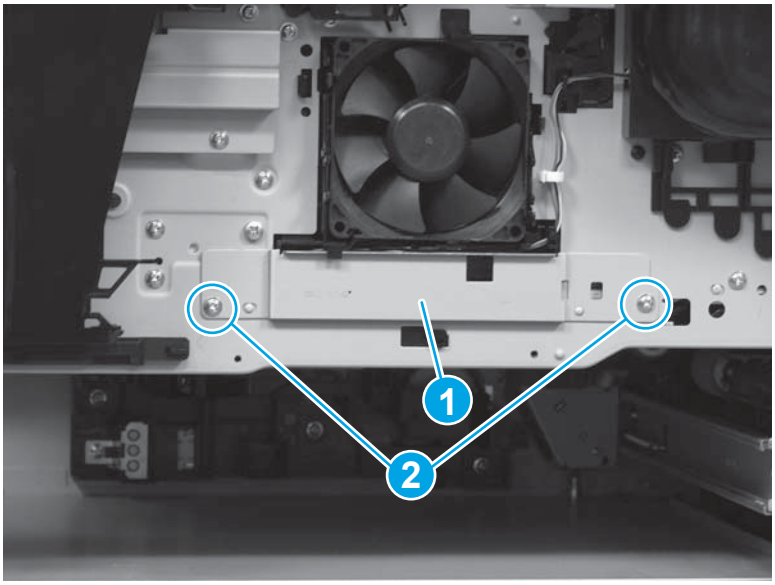
NOTE: One screw (callout 2) is larger than the others.

Figure 1-882 Install four screws and connect two connectors



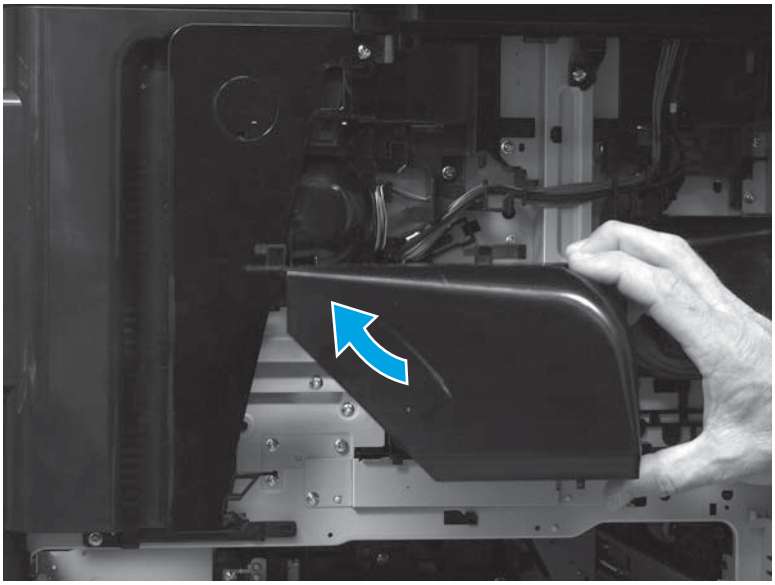
15. At the front of the product, install the cover (callout 1), and then install two screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-883 Install the cover



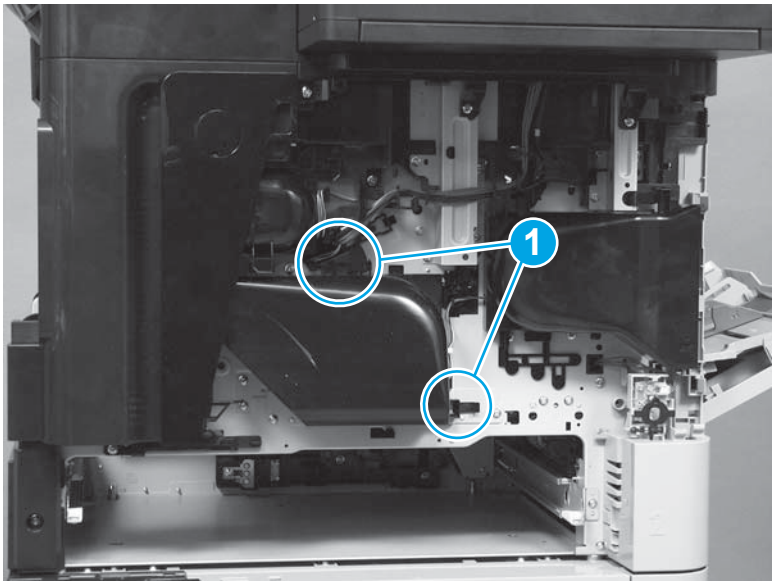
16. Install the fan duct.

Figure 1-884 Install the fan duct



17. Make sure that the two tabs (callout 1) are correctly engaged on the product, and that the fan duct is securely held in place.

Figure 1-885 Check two tabs



Step 19: Install the LVPS

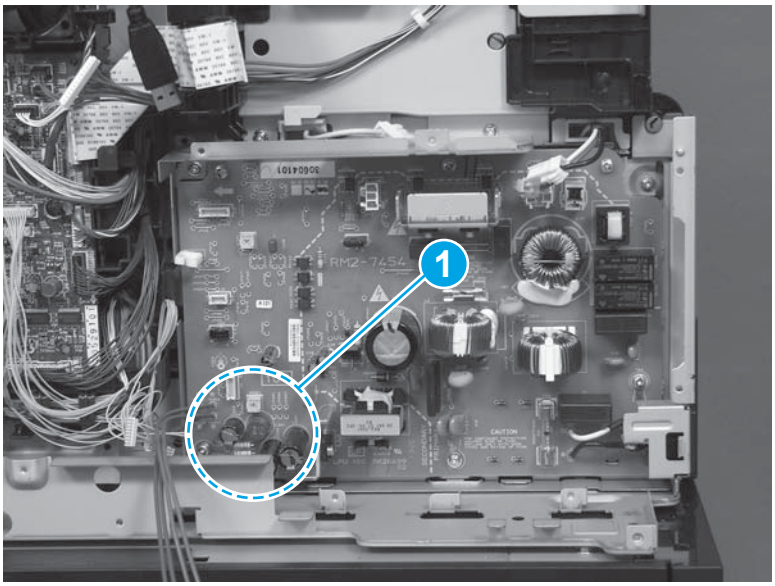
ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Install the LVPS on the product.

IMPORTANT: When installing the LVPS, make sure that the inline connector (callout 1; behind the LVPS) from the DC controller to the cassette media size switch (SW102) is fully seated. This connector is easily dislodged.

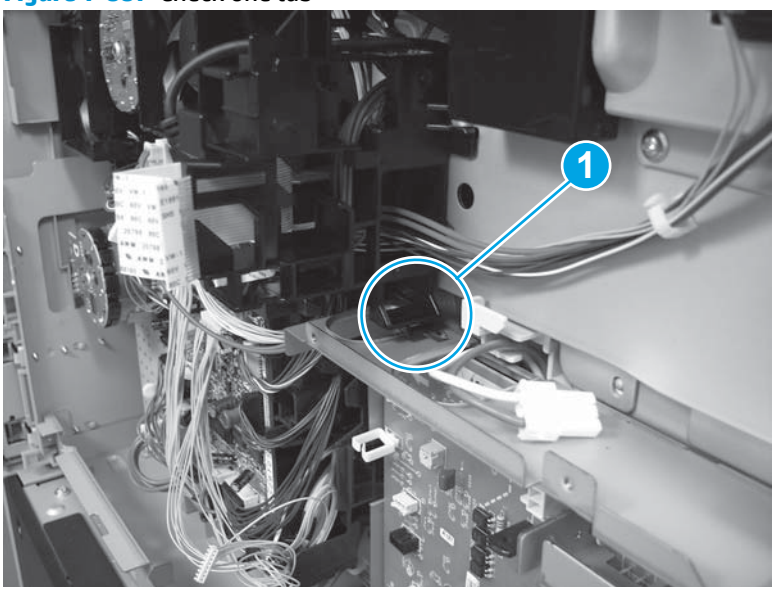
TIP: If a Tray 2 removed error message appears on the control-panel display after servicing the product, check this connector.

Figure 1-886 Install the LVPS



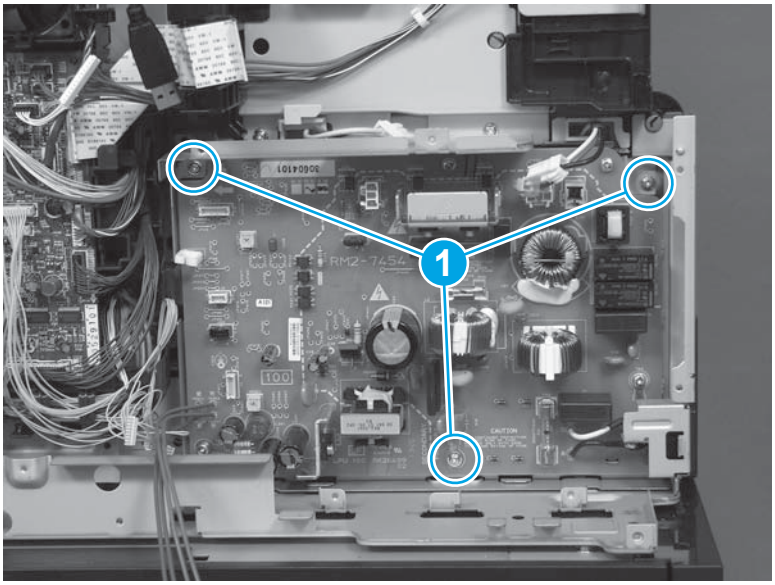
2. Make sure that the LVPS is installed behind one tab (callout 1).

Figure 1-887 Check one tab



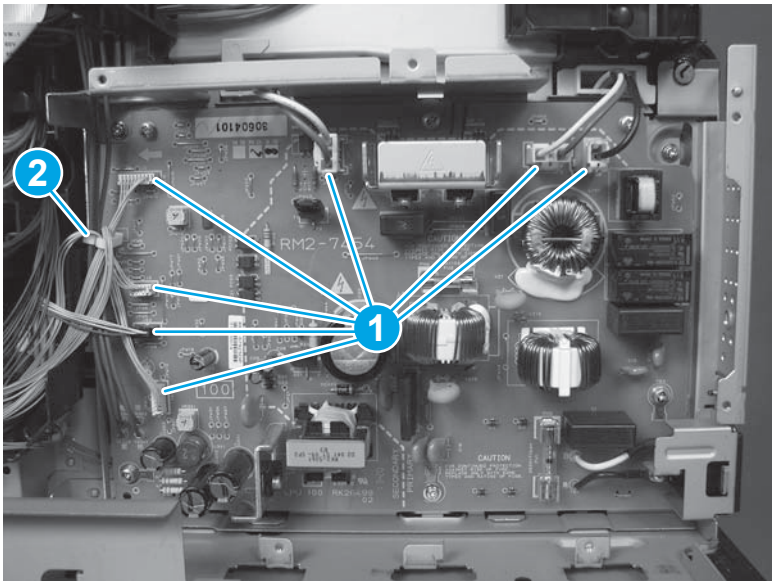
3. Install three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-888 Install three screws



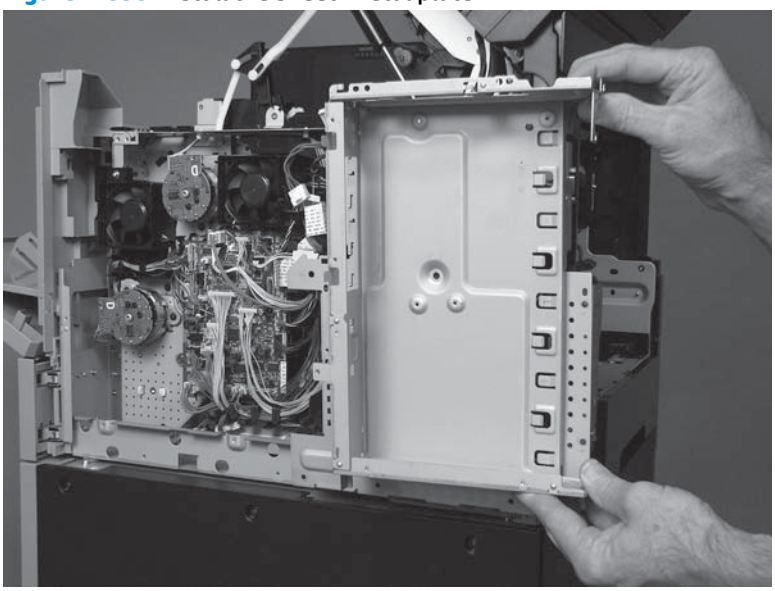
4. Connect seven connectors (callout 1), and then install the wire harness in the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 1-889 Connect seven connectors



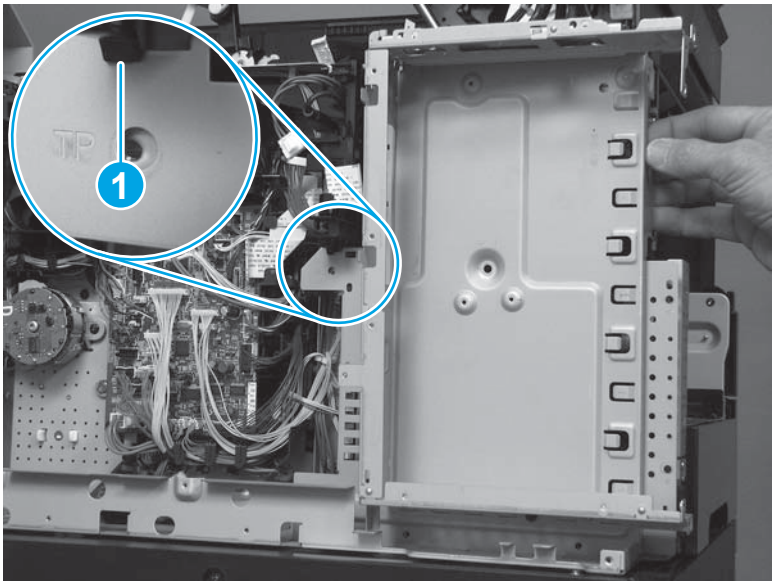
5. Install the sheet-metal plate on the product.

Figure 1-890 Install the sheet-metal plate



6. Make sure that the sheet-metal plate is installed behind one tab (callout 1).

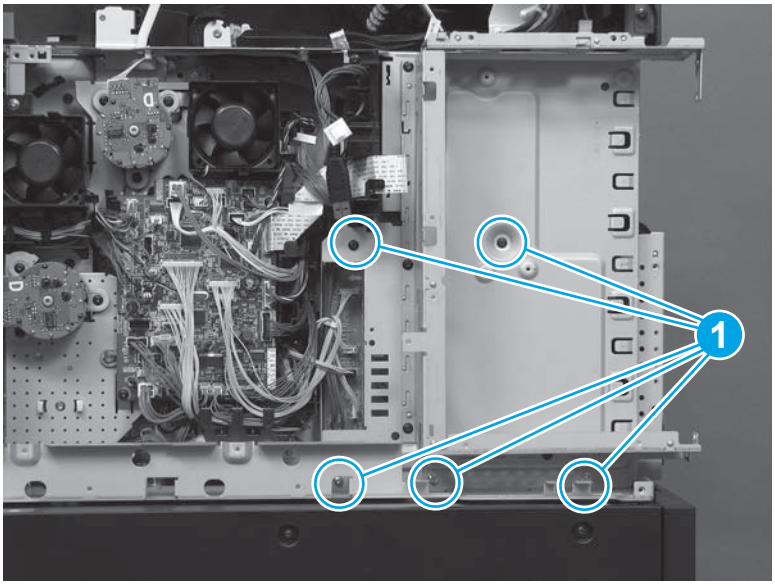
Figure 1-891 Check one tab



7. Install five screws (callout 1).

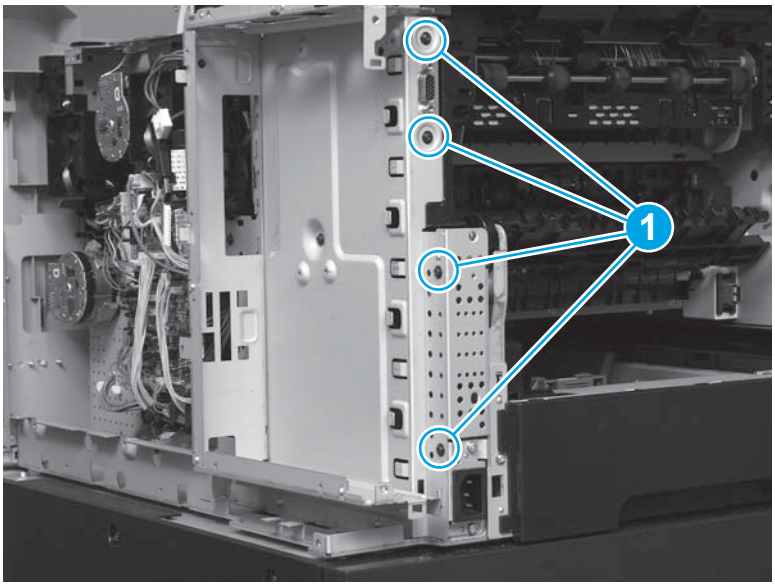
NOTE: The two upper screws are black, and the three screws across the bottom are silver.

Figure 1-892 Install five screws



8. Install four black screws (callout 1).

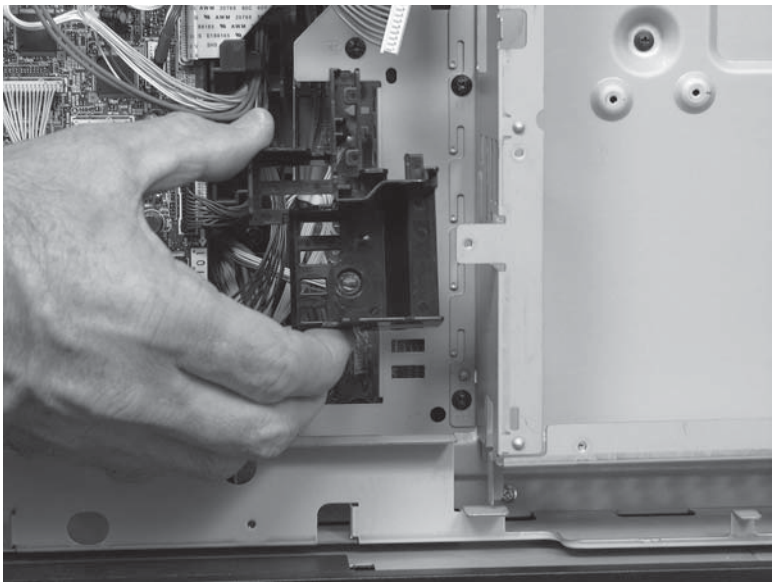
Figure 1-893 Install four screws



9. Install the guide.

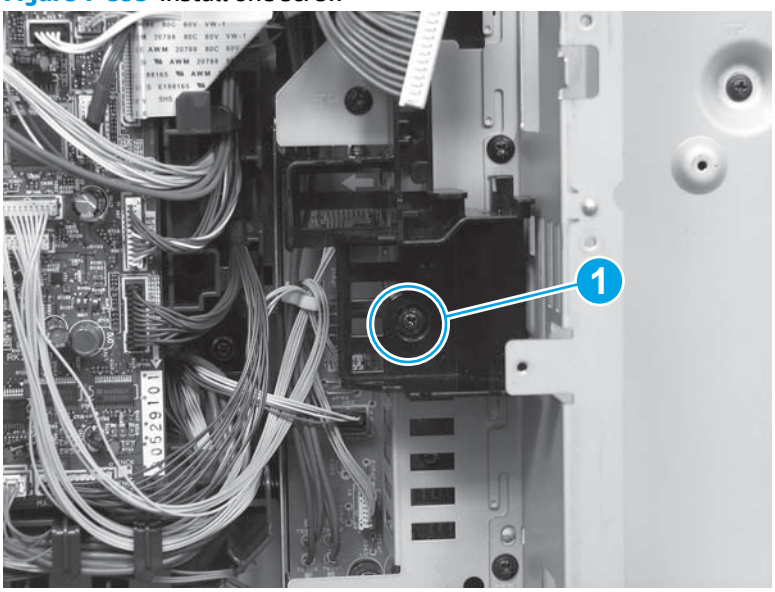
TIP: Insert the hook at the top of the guide into the slot in the chassis, and then rotate the bottom of the guide into place.

Figure 1-894 Install the guide



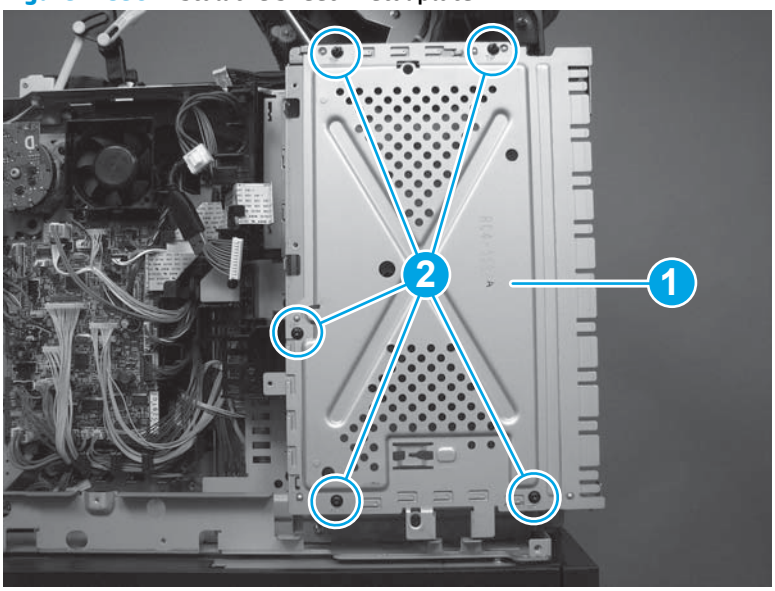
10. Install one screw (callout 1) near the DC controller.

Figure 1-895 Install one screw



11. Install the sheet-metal plate (callout 1), and then install five screws (callout 2).

Figure 1-896 Install the sheet-metal plate

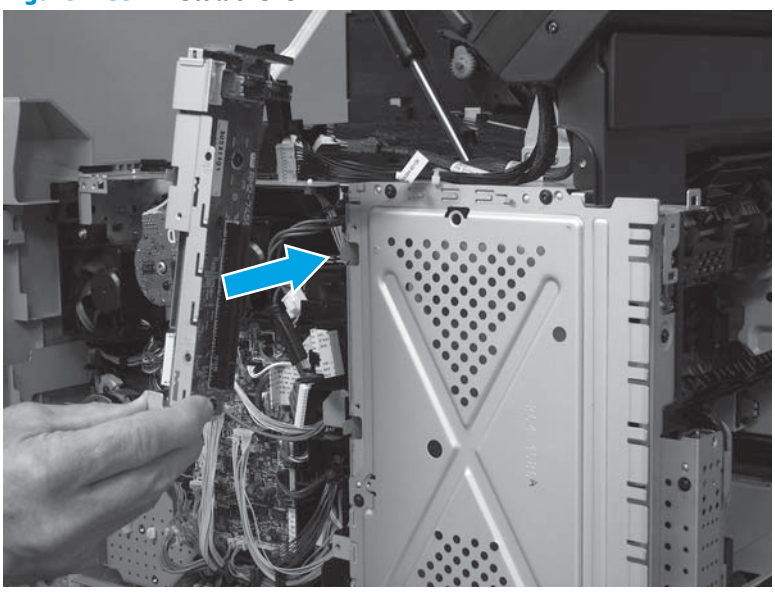


Step 20: Install the ICB

ESD sensitive assembly.

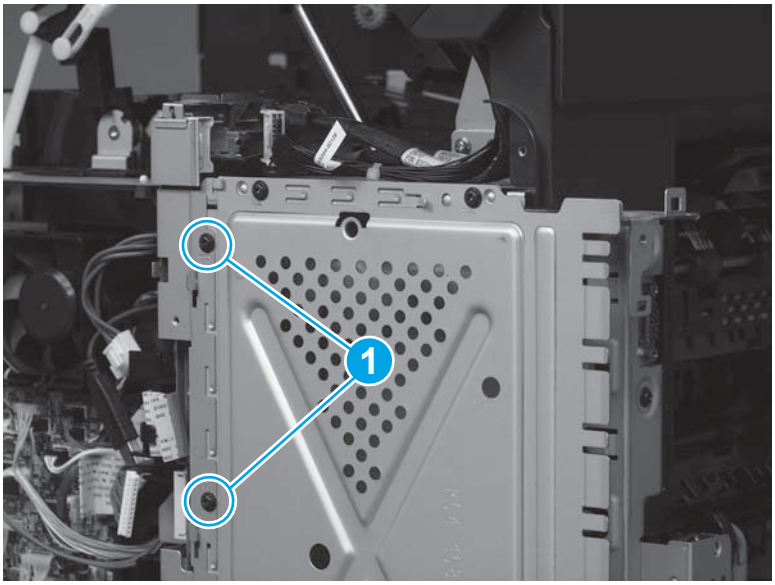
1. Install the ICB on the product.

Figure 1-897 Install the ICB



2. Install two screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-898 Install two screws

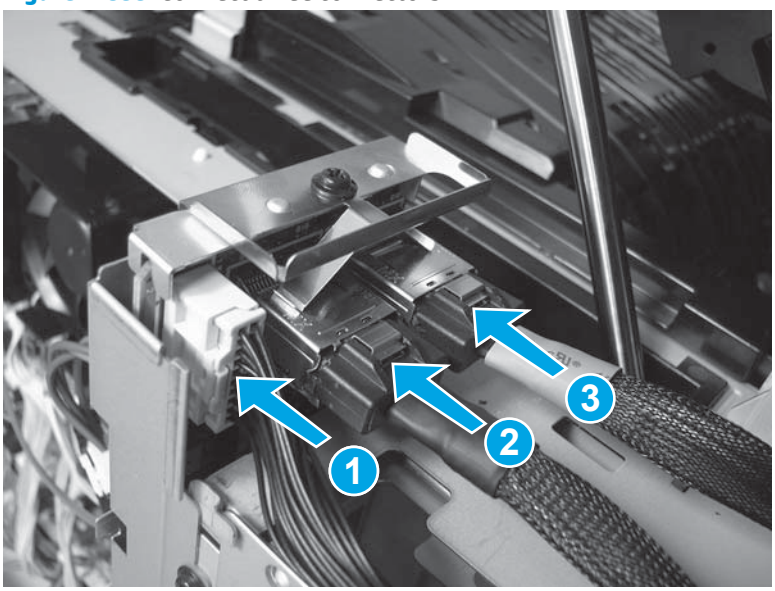


3. At the top of the ICB, connect three connectors.

TIP: When the two connectors with the metal retainer clips (callouts 2/3) are reinstalled, make sure that the clips snap in place to securely lock the connectors in place.

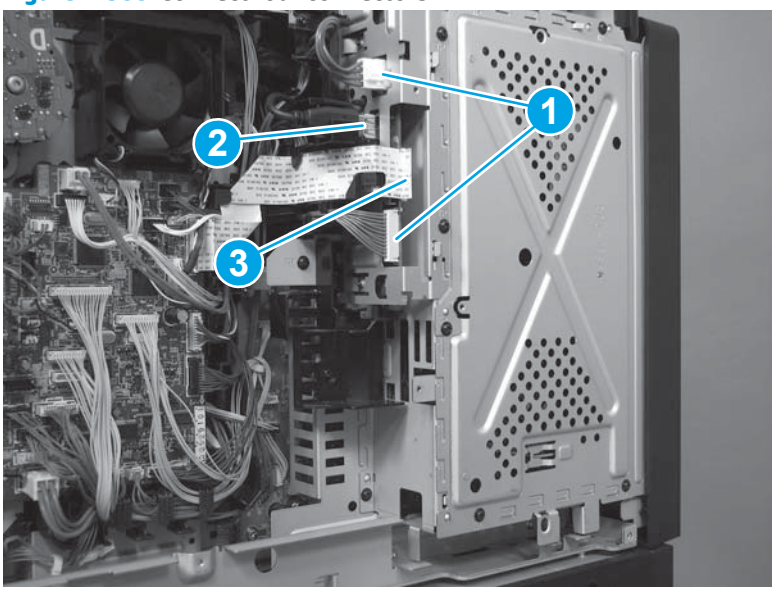
The wire harness with the blue band (callouts 3) connects to the inner connector on the ICB when reinstalled.

Figure 1-899 Connect three connectors



4. Connect two connectors (callout 1), one USB connector (callout 2), and then connect one FFC (callout 3).

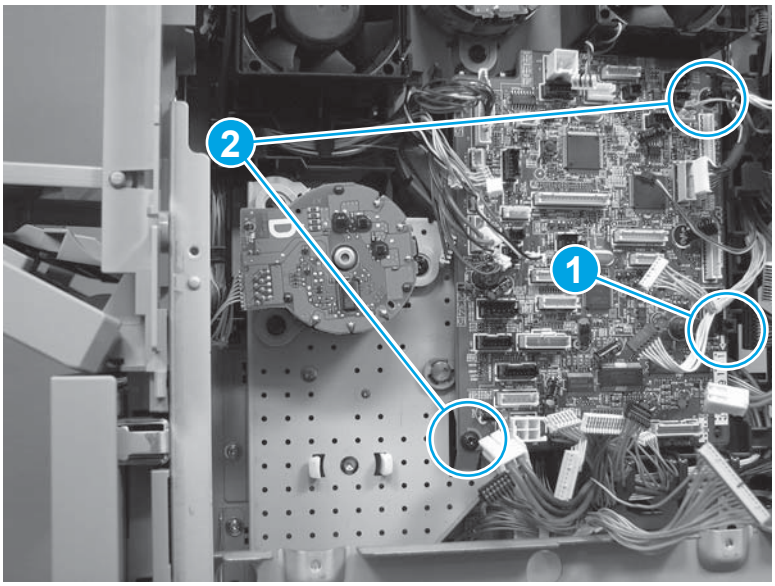
Figure 1-900 Connect four connectors



Step 21: Install the DC controller

1. Position the DC controller on the product, engage one tab (callout 1), and then install two screws (callout 2).

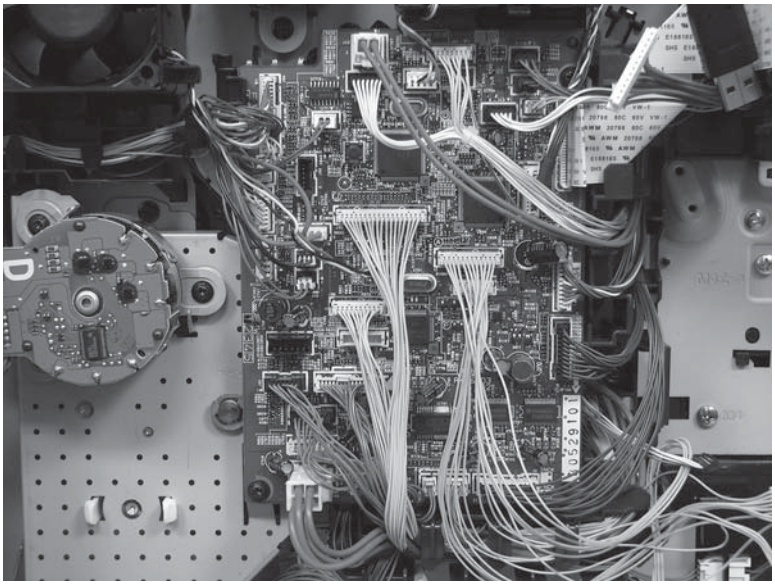
Figure 1-901 Install the DC controller



2. Connect all of the connectors on the DC controller.
   - 34 wire-harness connectors
   - 1 flat-flexible cable (FFC)

Reinstallation tip: Connectors J42, J59, and J80 are empty.

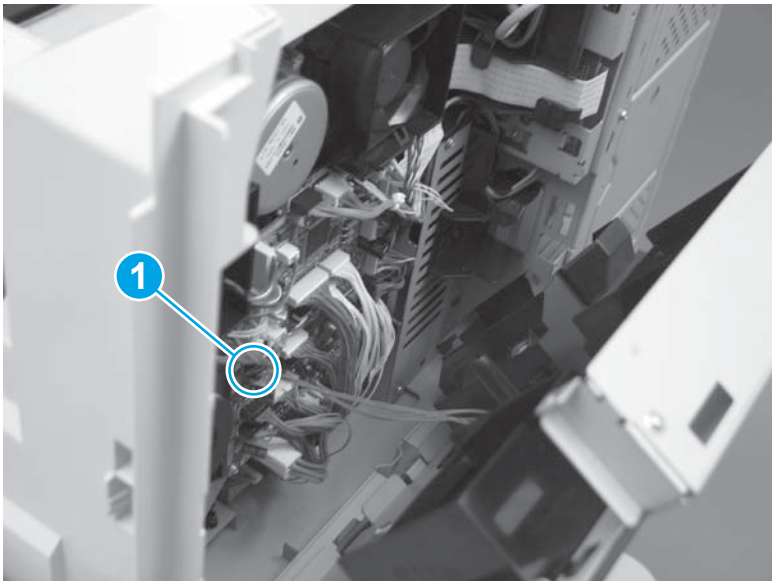
Figure 1-902 Connect all of the connectors



Step 22: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly

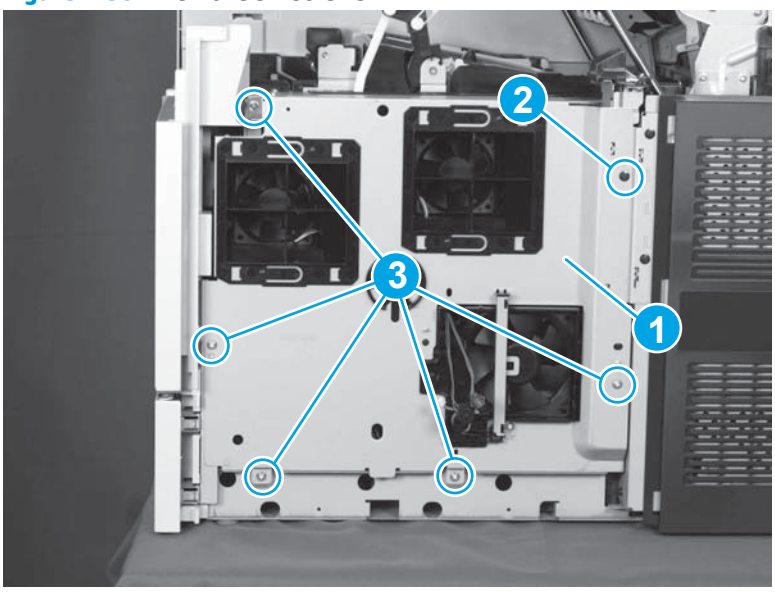
1. Position the shield near the product, and then connect one connector (J42; callout 1).

Figure 1-903 Install the shield and connect one connector



2. Rotate the top of the shield (callout 1) toward the product, install one black screw (callout 2), and then install five silver screws (callout 3).

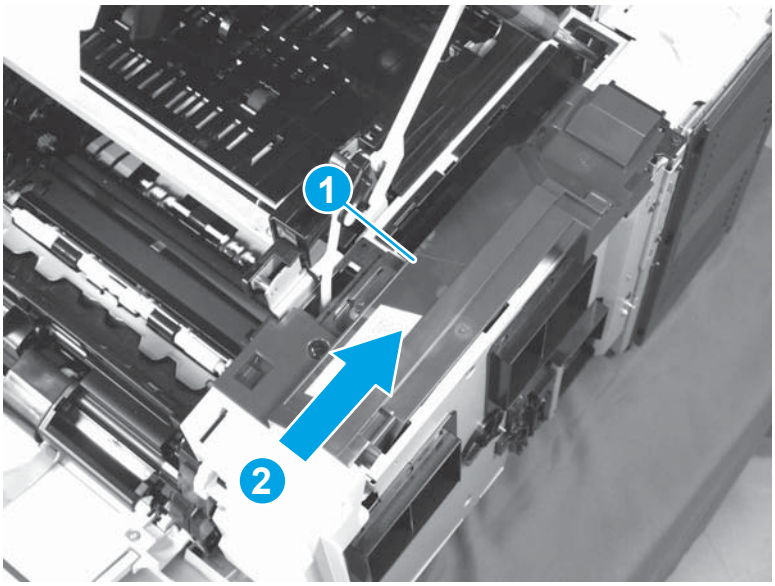
Figure 1-904 Remove six screws



Step 23: Install the rear-top cover

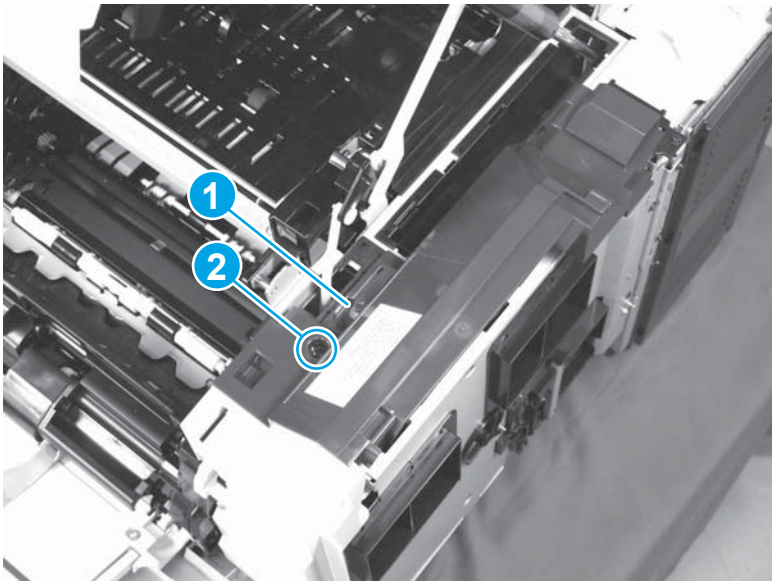
1. Position the cover on the product, Push the cover (callout 1) away Tray 1 to install it (callout 2).

Figure 1-905 Install the cover



2. Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged, and then install one screw (callout 2).

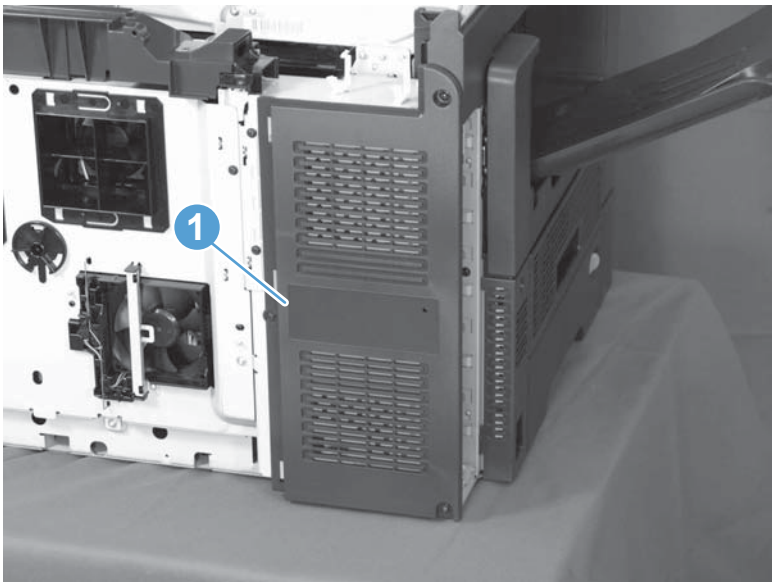
Figure 1-906 Install one screw



Step 24: Install the rear-left cover

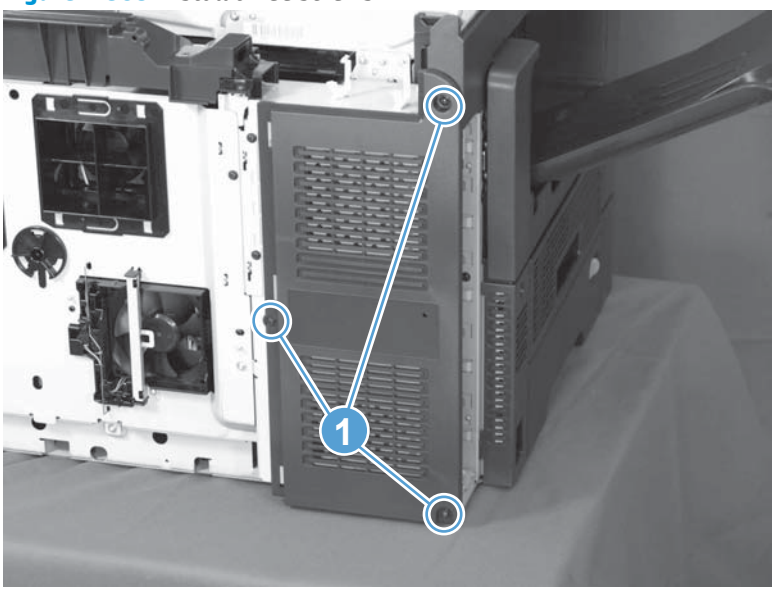
1. Position the cover (callout 1) on the product.

Figure 1-907 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1).

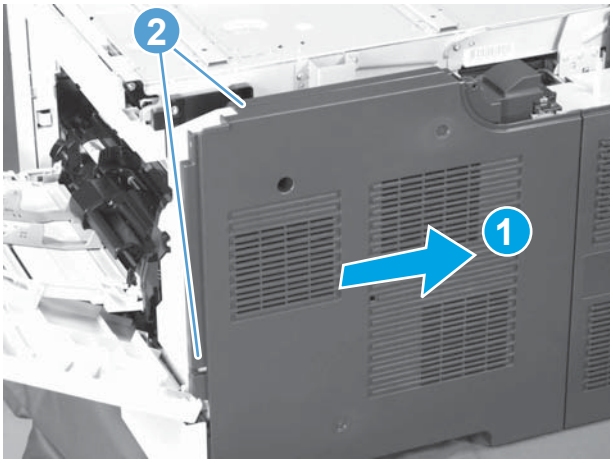
Figure 1-908 Install three screws



Step 25: Install the rear-right cover

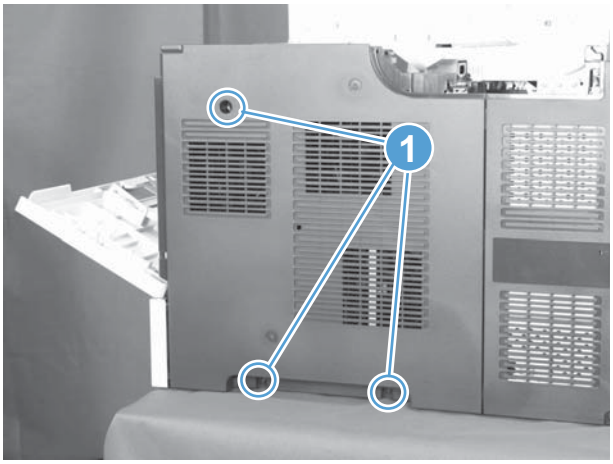
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

Figure 1-909 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

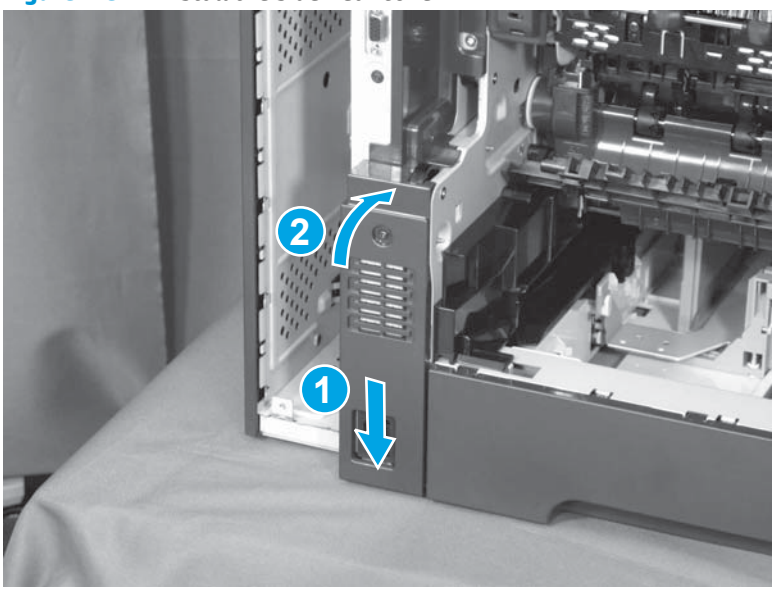
Figure 1-910 Install three screws



Step 26: Install the side-rear cover

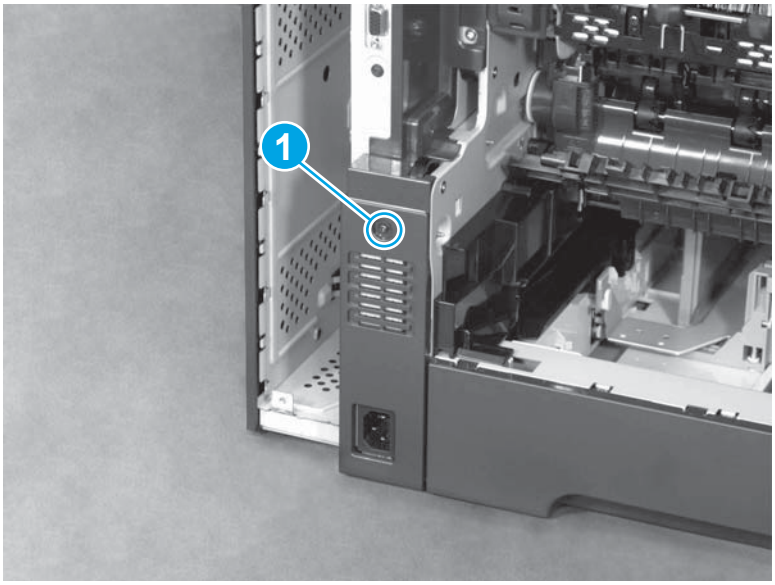
1. Position the bottom of the cover on the product (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the cover toward the product (callout 2) to install it.

Figure 1-911 Install the side-rear cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1).

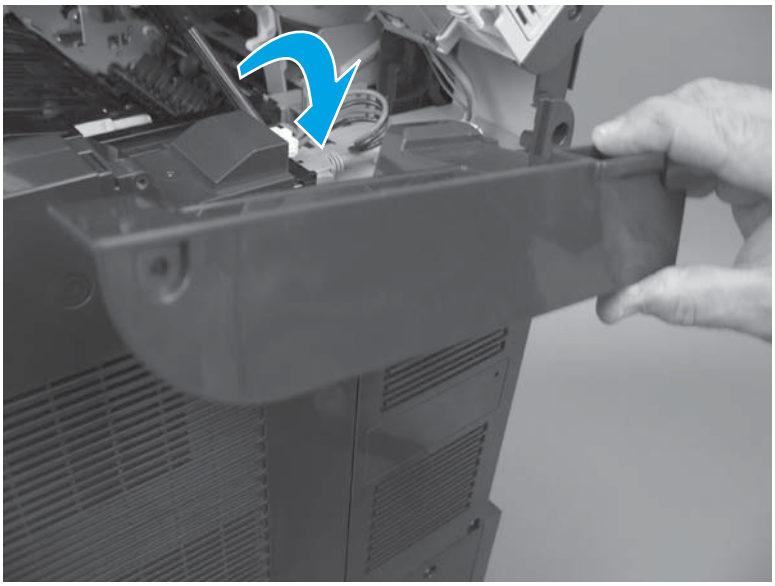
Figure 1-912 Install one screw



Step 27: Install the image scanner cable cover

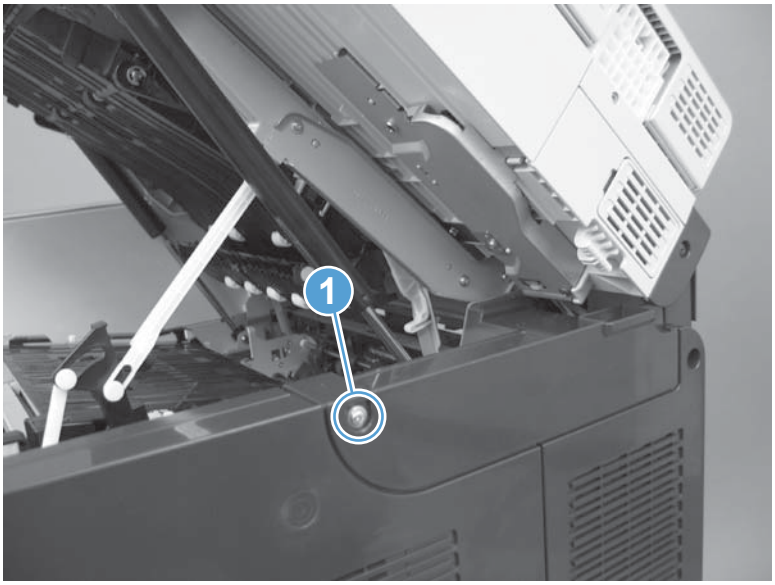
1. Install the cover on the product.

Figure 1-913 Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

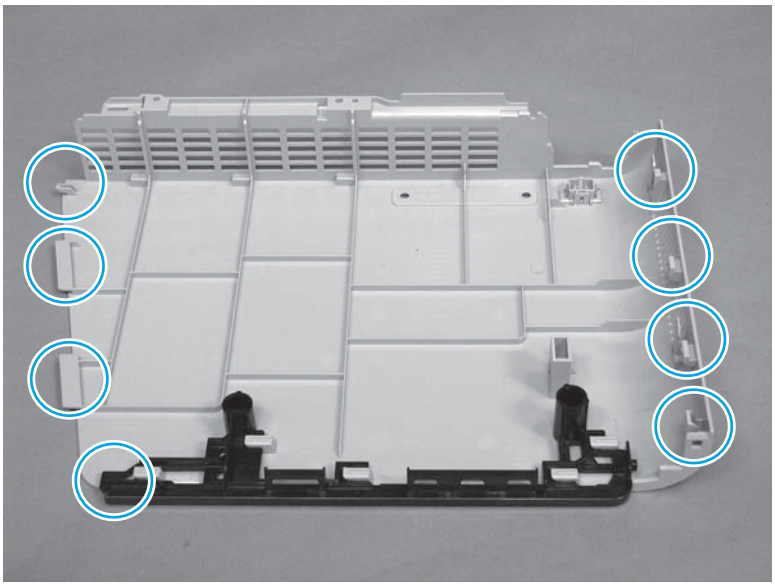
Figure 1-914 Install one screw



Step 28: Install the front cover

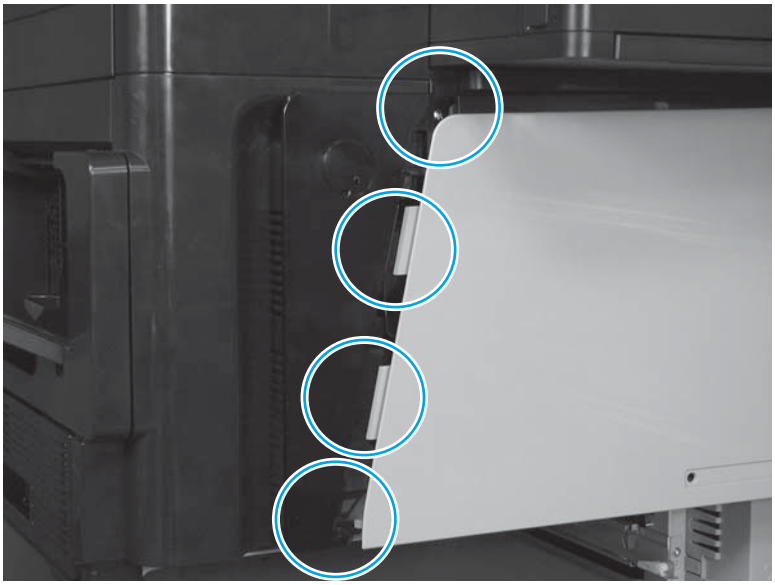
1. Take note of the location of all of the tabs on the back of the cover.

Figure 1-915 Note of the location of the tabs



2. Align the four tabs (callout 1) on the cover with the slots (callout 2) on the logo panel.

Figure 1-916 Align four tabs



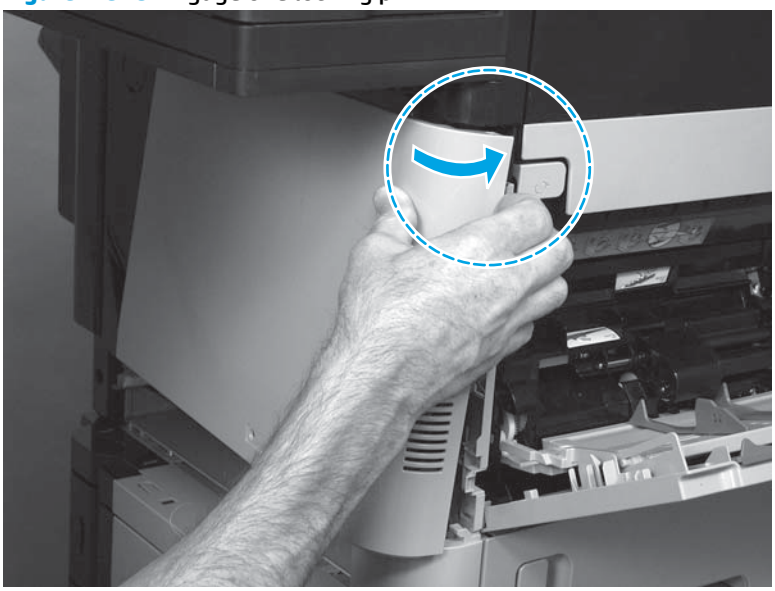
3. Slightly slide the cover toward the left side of the product to engage the tabs in the slots.

Figure 1-917 Slide the cover to the left



4. Carefully flex the right-upper corner of the cover toward from the product to engage one locking pin.

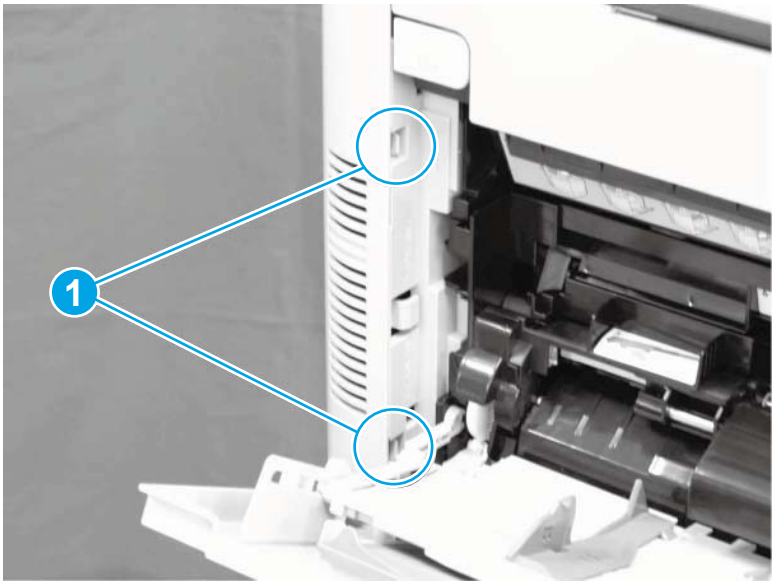
Figure 1-918 Engage one locking pin



5. Engage two tabs (callout 1).

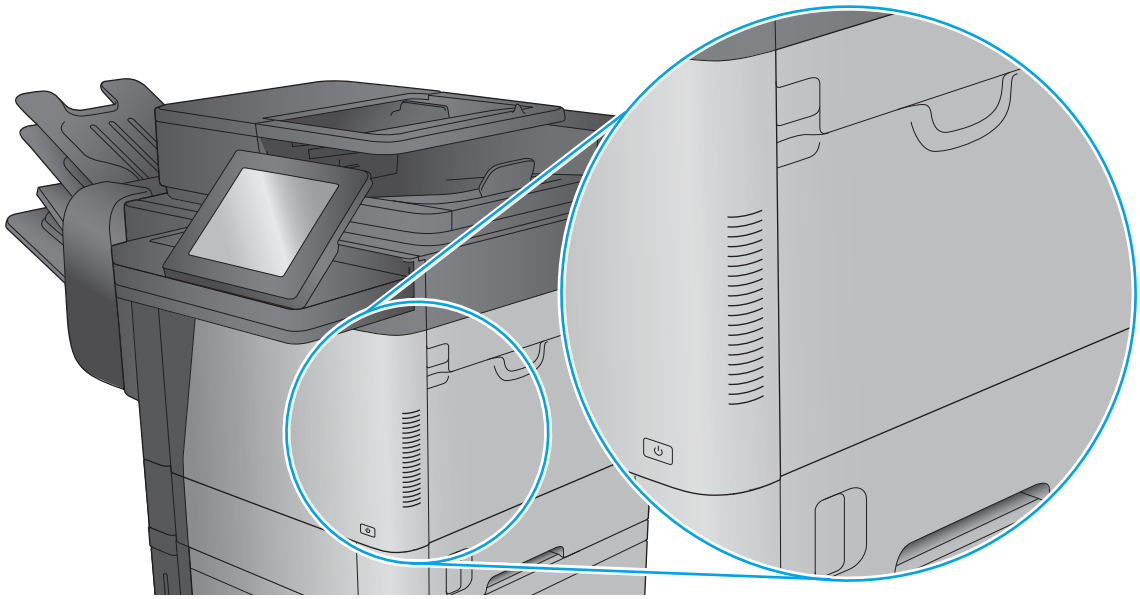
TIP: Engage the upper tab first, and then engage the lower tab.

Figure 1-919 Engage two tabs



6. Close Tray 1, and verify that the gap between the edge of the front cover and the tray is even. If it is uneven, the tabs are not correctly engaged.

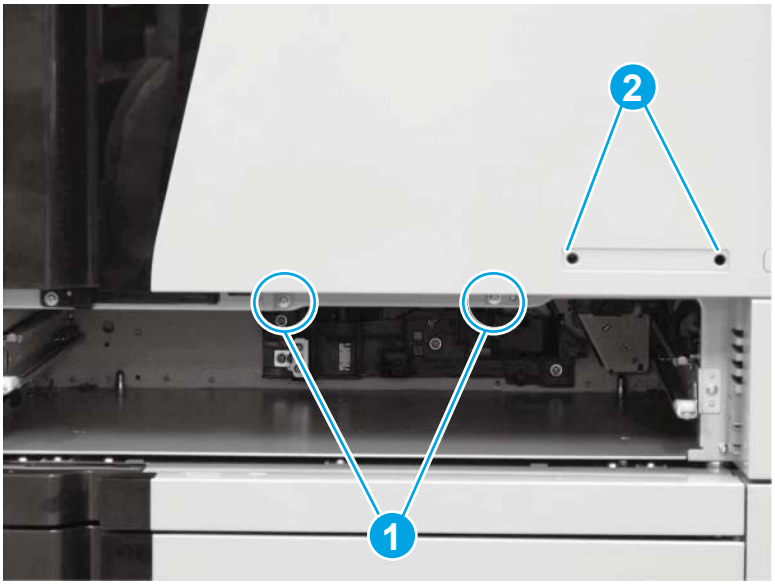
Figure 1-920 Check cover installation



7. Install two screws (callout 1), and then reinstall Tray 2.

Reinstallation tip: To install the product nameplate on the front cover, align the pins on the back side of the nameplate with the holes in the cover (callout 2), and then push in on the nameplate until it snaps in place.

Figure 1-921 Install two screws

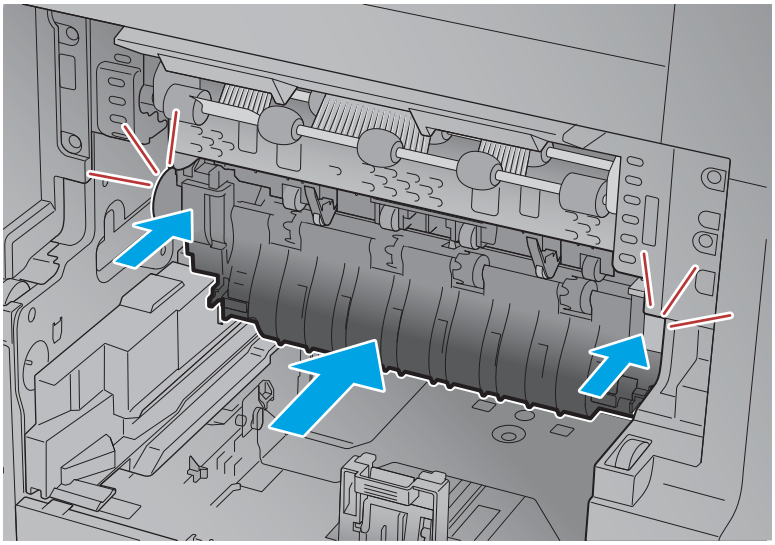


Step 29: Install the fuser

▲ Position the fuser in the product, push in to install it, and then make sure that it is fully seated.

TIP: When the fuser is fully seated, the two blue locking levers make an audible click.

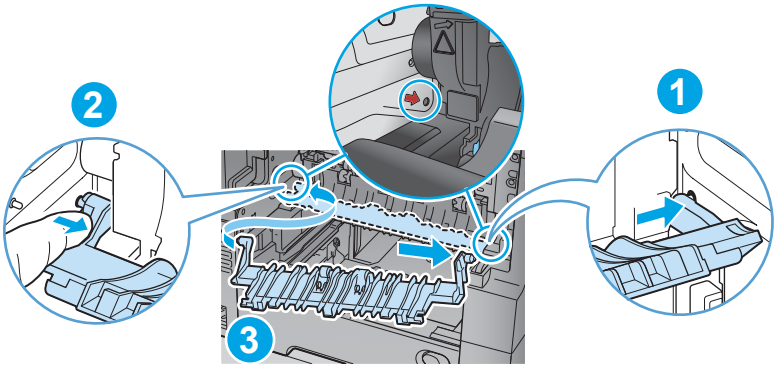
Figure 1-922 Install the fuser



Step 30: Install the fuser-entrance guide

1. Position the front hinge-pin of the fuser-entrance guide in the mounting hole in the product chassis (callout 1).
2. Slightly flex the rear hinge pin (callout 2), rotate the guide into the product (callout 3) to install it.

Figure 1-923 Install the fuser-entrance guide



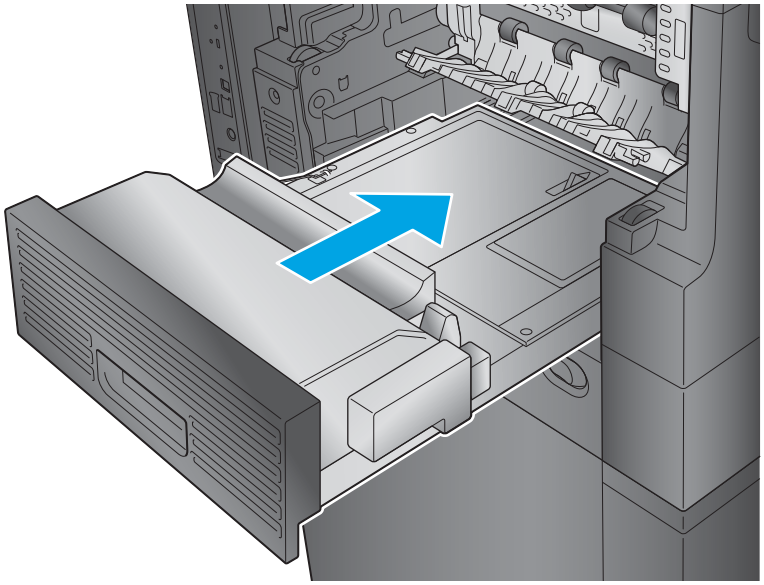
Step 31: Install the duplex accessory

▲ Position the duplex assembly on the product at a slight angle, engage the slide rails, and then slide the duplex assembly all of the way into the product to install it.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that the duplex accessory is full installed.

NOTE: After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed duplex accessory.

Figure 1-924 Install the duplex accessory

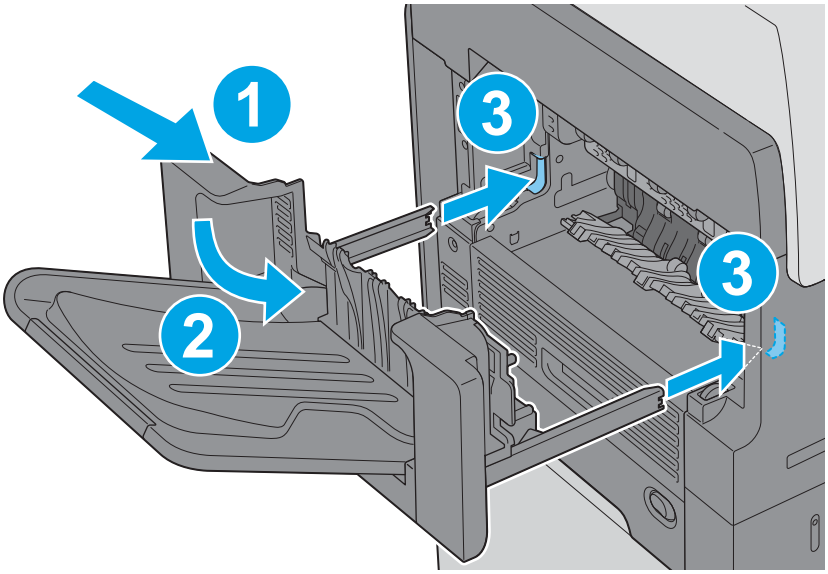


Step 32: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

▲ Do one of the following:

a. **M630dn and M630f**: Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), and then slide the bin base into the product.

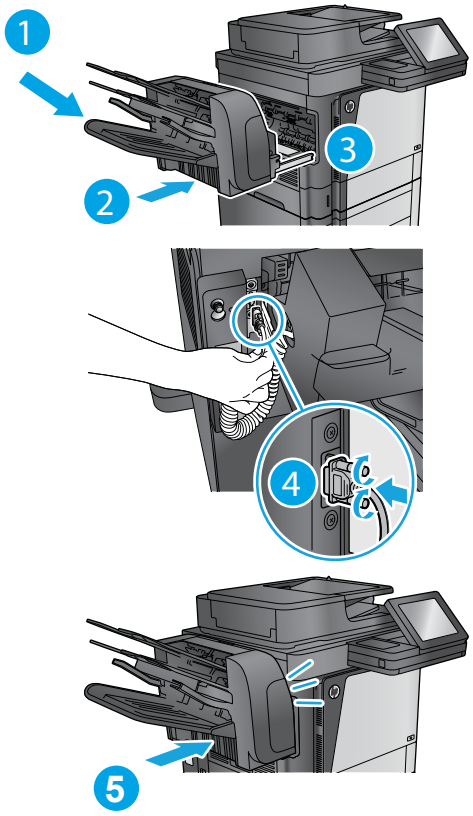
Figure 1-925 Install the output bin



b. **M630z**: Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), connect the interface cable (callout 4). and then slide the stapling mailbox (callout 5) into the product.

TIP: After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed stapling mailbox.

Figure 1-926 Install the stapling mailbox

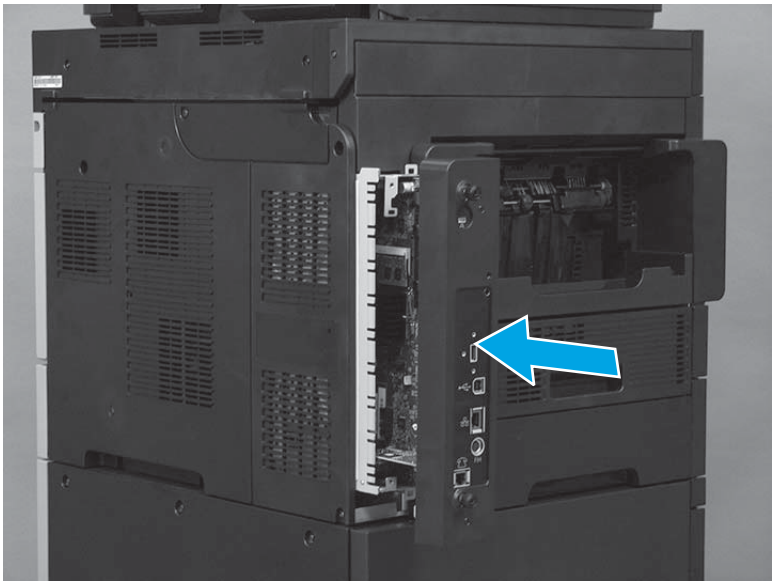


Step 33: Install the formatter

CAUTION: ESD sensitive assembly.

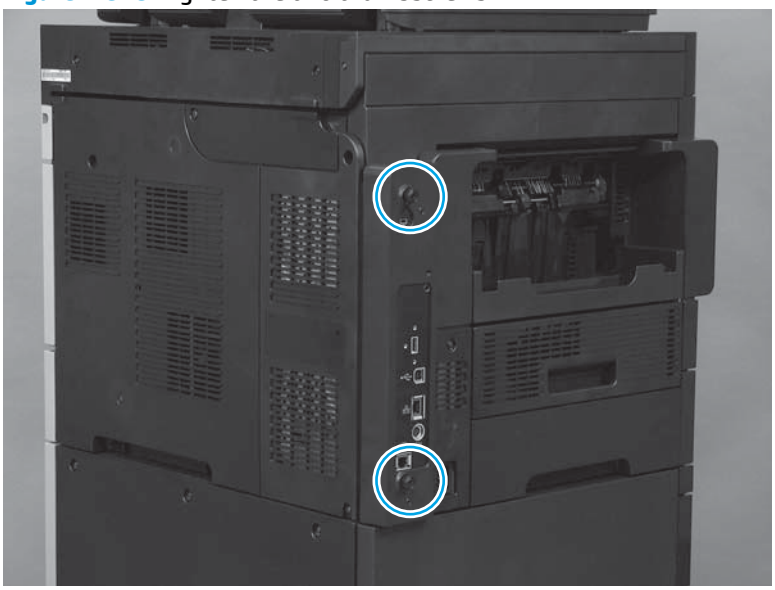
1. Align the formatter with the guides at the top and bottom of the formatter cage and push the formatter into the slot until it is fully seated.

Figure 1-927 Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot



2. Finger-tighten the two thumbscrews.

Figure 1-928 Tighten the two thumbscrews



Step 34: Test the installation

1. Do the following steps:
   a. Reconnect all cables to the formatter.
   b. Plug in the power cord.
2. Turn on the product.

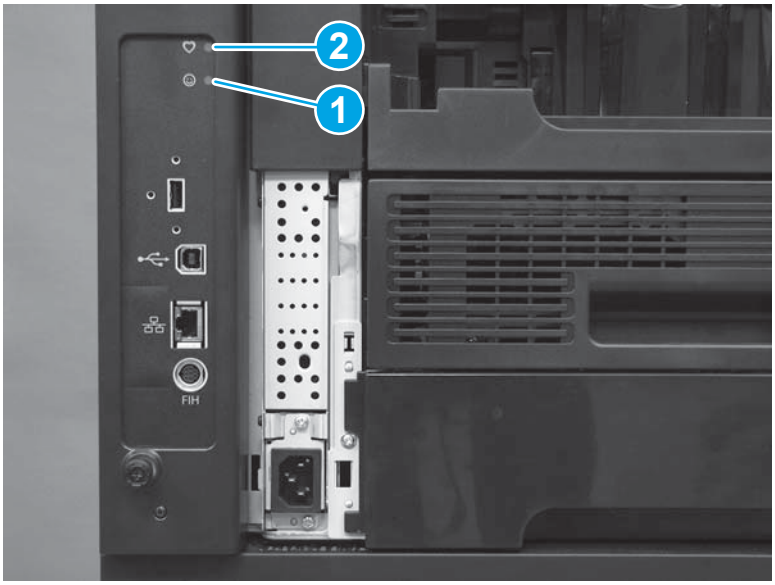
TIP: If the product does not initialize when the power is turned on, make sure that the memory DIMM is correctly installed.

To verify that the formatter is correctly installed, observe the following functions of the LEDs on the formatter:

- The heartbeat LED (callout 1) illuminates if the formatter is functioning correctly.
  - While the product is initializing, the heartbeat LED illuminates solid red for about one second, and then turns solid green for about twenty seconds.
  - After the initialization sequence is complete, the heartbeat LED blinks continuously if the printer is functioning correctly.
- The connectivity LED (callout 2) indicates that the formatter is completely seated. It illuminates green when the product power is turned on and stays green if the formatter is properly seated.

If the LEDs do not correctly function, turn the product power off, remove the formatter, and then reinstall it (make sure that the formatter is fully seated before tightening the thumbscrews).

Figure 1-929 Verify that the formatter is functioning



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Feed roller assembly

Remove the following assemblies:

- Output bin and bin base assembly. See Output bin and bin base assembly on page 68.

NOTE: If the optional HP Stapling Mailbox is installed, remove it.

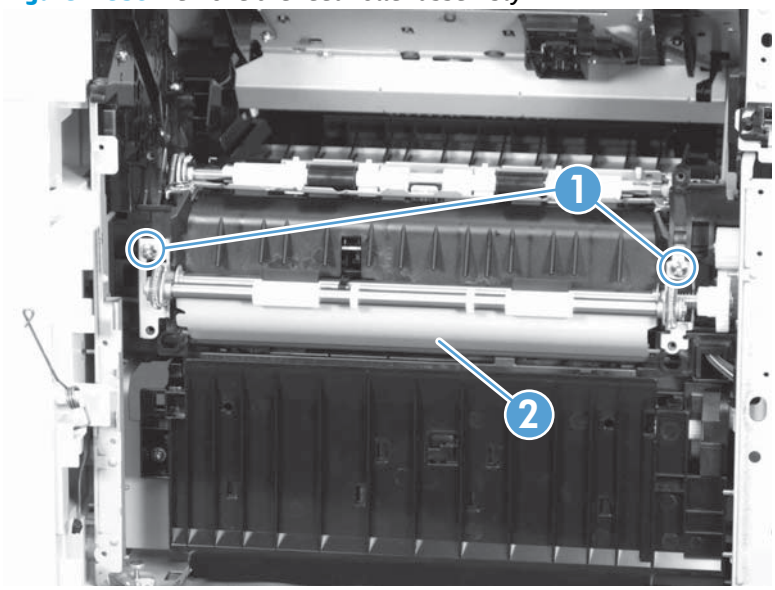
- Image scanner cable cover. See Image scanner cable cover on page 283.
- Tray 1 cover. See Tray 1 cover on page 287.
- Rear-right cover. See Rear-right cover on page 323.
- Rear-top cover. See Rear-top cover on page 335.
- Right-lower door. See Right-lower door on page 345.
- DC controller shield-plate assembly. See DC controller shield-plate assembly on page 382.
- Tray 1 pickup assembly. See Tray 1 pickup assembly on page 403.

Remove the feed roller assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the feed roller assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-930 Remove the feed roller assembly



Pickup drive assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox
- Step 2: Remove the Tray 1 cover
- Step 3: Remove the image scanner cable cover
- Step 4: Remove the rear-right cover
- Step 5: Remove the rear-left cover
- Step 6: Remove the rear-top cover
- Step 7: Remove the right-lower door
- Step 8: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly
- Step 9: Remove the DC controller
- Step 10: Remove the feed motor
- Step 11: Remove the pickup drive assembly
- Step 12: Unpack the replacement pickup drive assembly
- Step 13: Install the pickup drive assembly
- Step 14: Install the feed motor
- Step 15: Install the DC controller
- Step 16: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly
- Step 17: Install the right-lower door
- Step 18: Install the rear-top cover
- Step 19: Install the rear-left cover
- Step 20: Install the rear-right cover
- Step 21: Install the image scanner cable cover
- Step 22: Install the Tray 1 cover
- Step 23: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox
- Step 24: Turn the product power on
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the pickup drive assembly.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Pickup drive assembly part number	
RM2-5804-000CN	Pickup drive assembly

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

Required tools

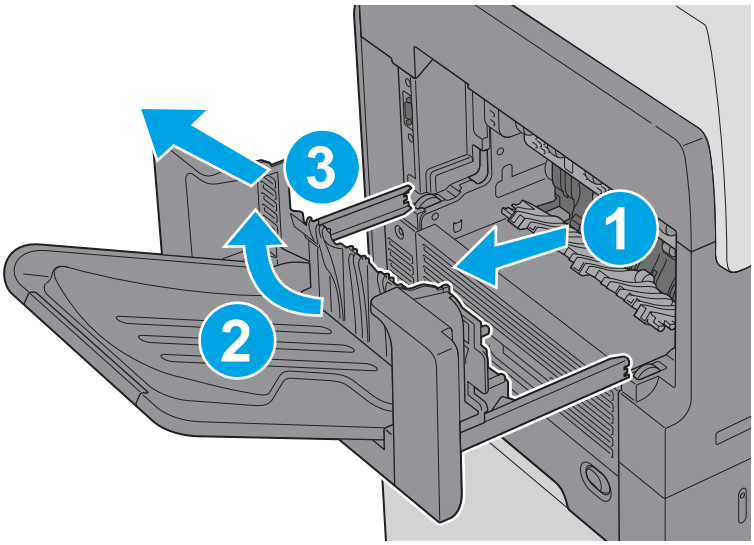
#2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152-mm (6-in) shaft length

Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

▲ Do one of the following steps:

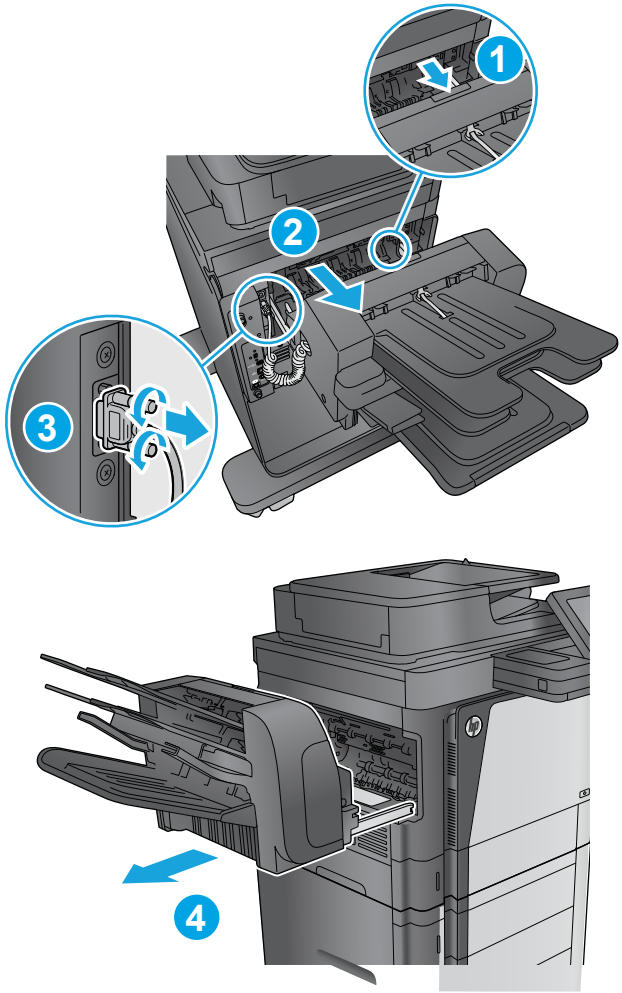
a. **M630dn and M630f**: Slide the bin base away from the product (callout 1) until it stops, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-931 Remove the output bin



b. **M630z**: Press the latch (callout 1), pull the stapling mailbox away from the product (callout 2), disconnect the interface cable (callout 3), and then remove the stapling mailbox (callout 4).

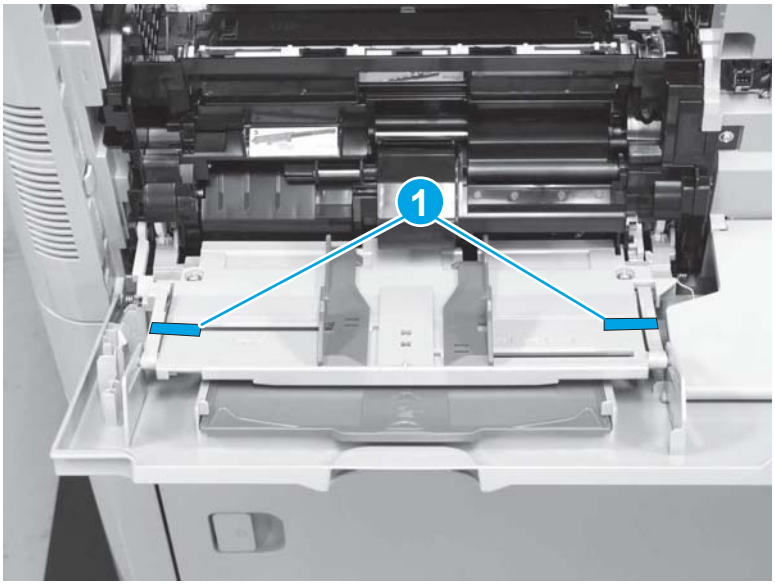
Figure 1-932 Remove the stapling mailbox



Step 2: Remove the Tray 1 cover

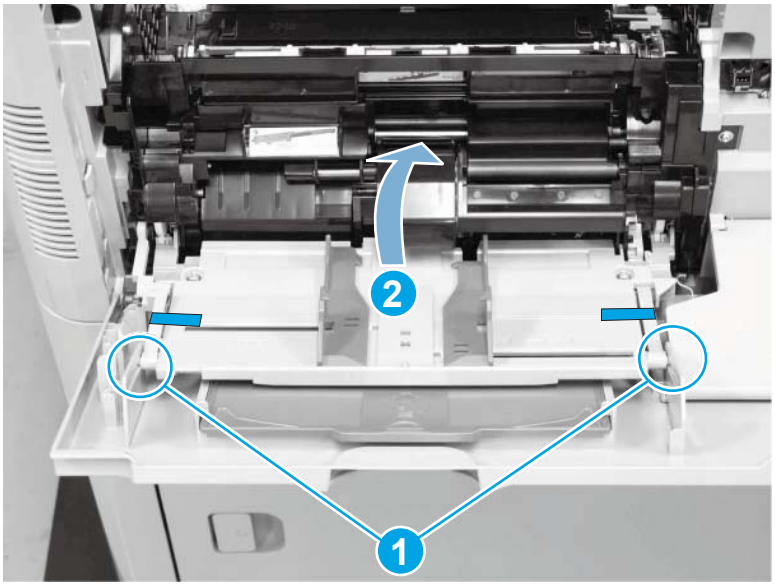
1. Use low adhesive tape to secure the outer retaining pins (callout 1) to the inner tray.

Figure 1-933 Secure the outer retaining pins



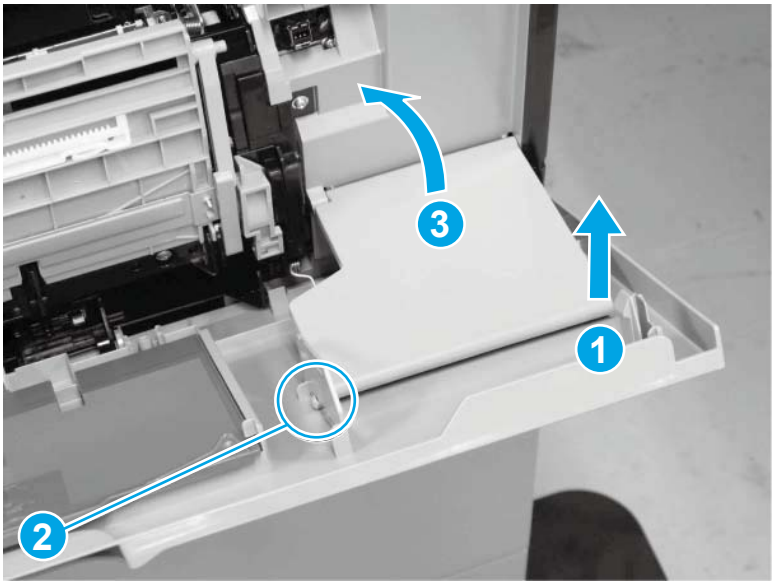
2. Open Tray 1, release the two outer retaining pins (callout 1) on the cover, and then carefully fold the inner tray up (callout 2) and into the product to protect it.

Figure 1-934 Release two outer retaining pins



3. Carefully lift on the outer corner of the tray inner cover (callout 1) to release one pin (callout 2) from the guide, and then fold the inner cover up (callout 3) and into the product.

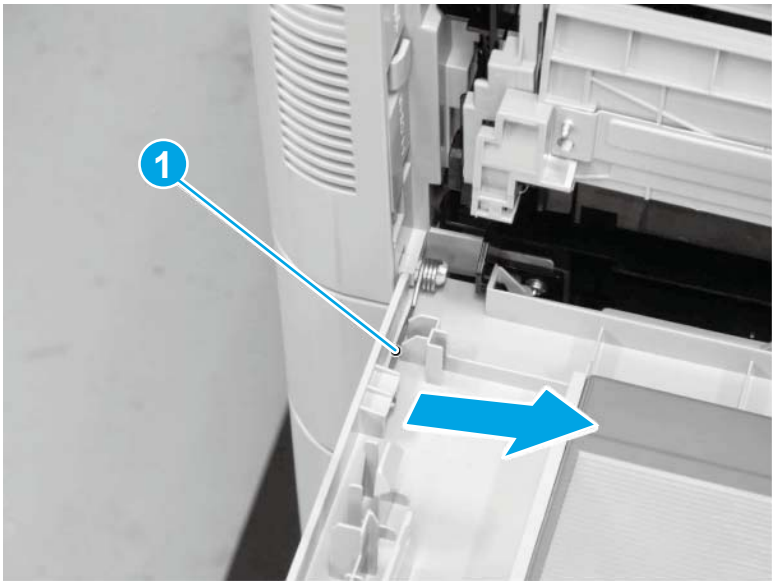
Figure 1-935 Release one pin



4. Release the left-side spring arm (callout 1).

⚠ **CAUTION:** The spring is not captive when the spring arm is released and can be dislodged and lost.

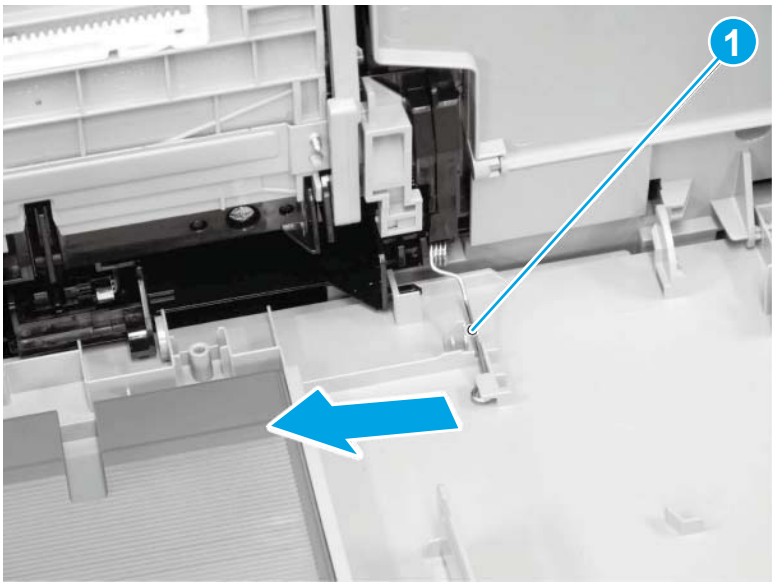
Figure 1-936 Release the left-side spring



5. Release the right-side spring arm (callout 1).

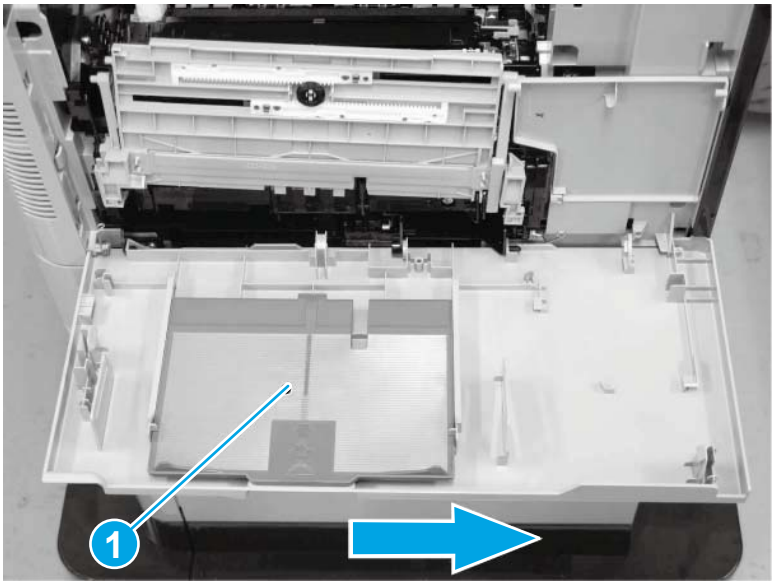
CAUTION: The spring is not captive when the spring arm is released and can be dislodged and lost.

Figure 1-937 Release the right-side spring



6. Slide the cover (callout 1) toward the back of the product to release it, and then remove the cover.

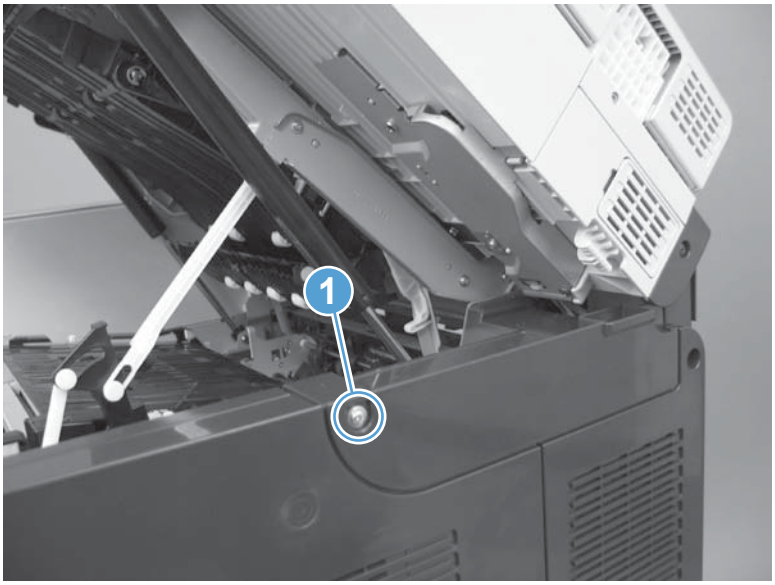
Figure 1-938 Remove the cover



Step 3: Remove the image scanner cable cover

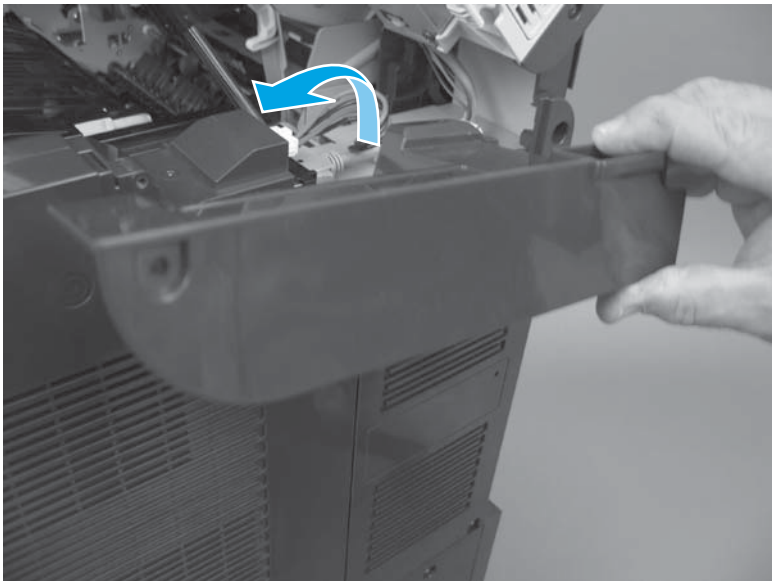
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-939 Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

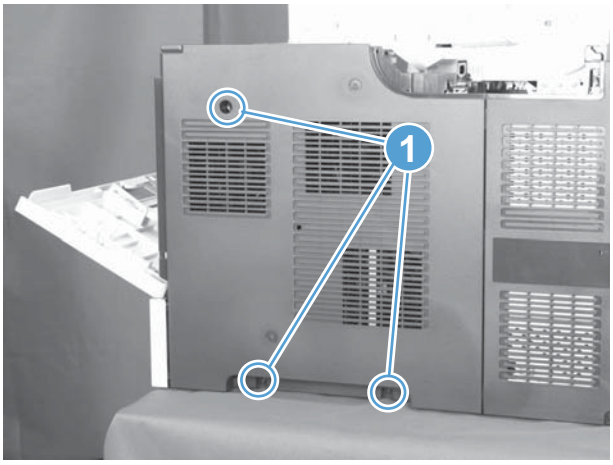
Figure 1-940 Remove the cover



Step 4: Remove the rear-right cover

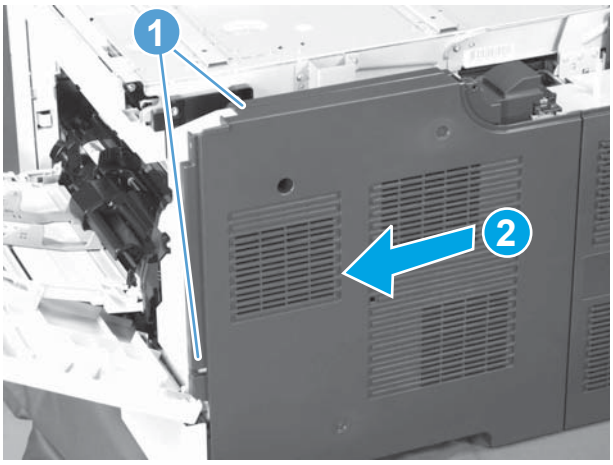
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-941 Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly seperate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

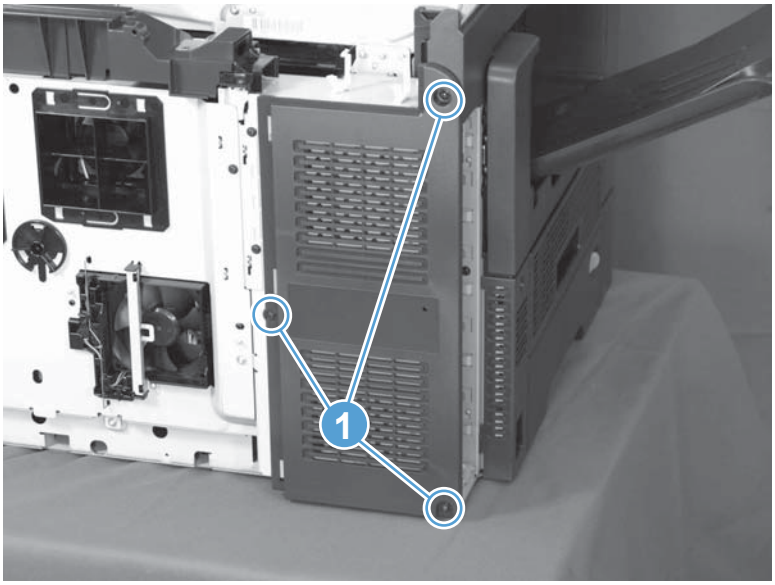
Figure 1-942 Remove the cover



Step 5: Remove the rear-left cover

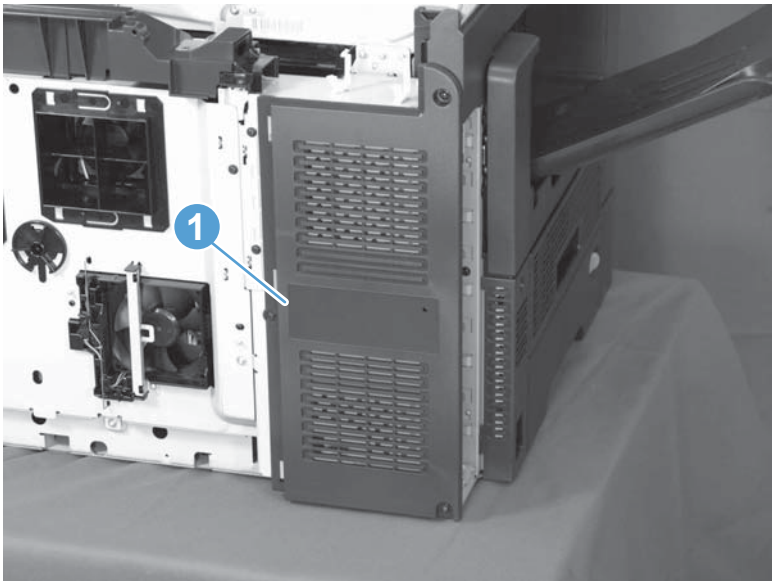
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-943 Remove three screws



2. Remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 1-944 Remove the cover

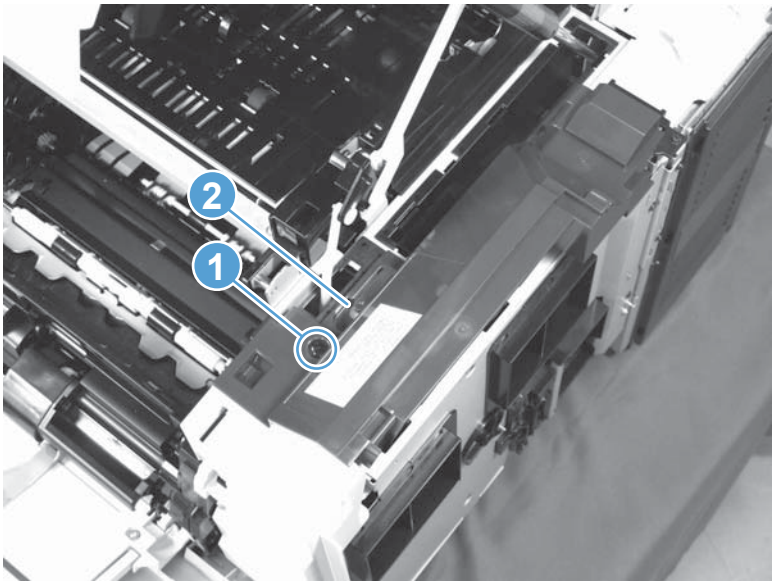


Step 6: Remove the rear-top cover

NOTE: If the top cover is closed, open it now.

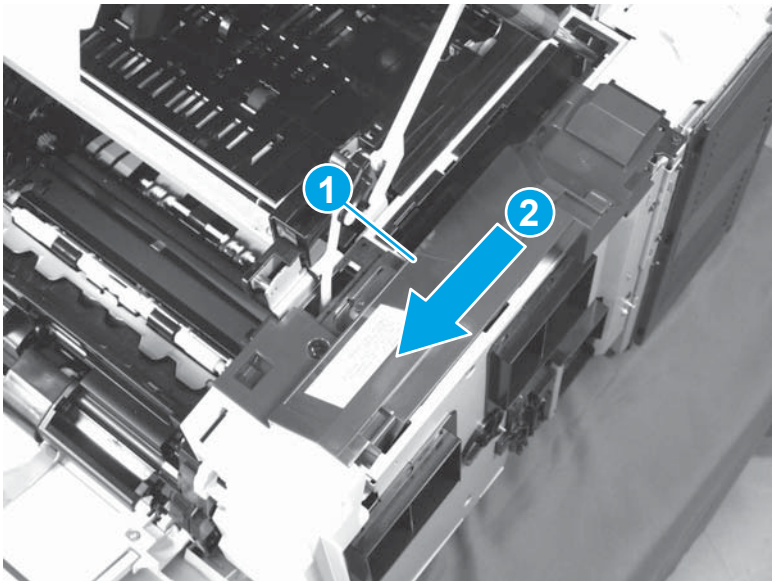
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-945 Remove one screw



2. Push the cover (callout 1) towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

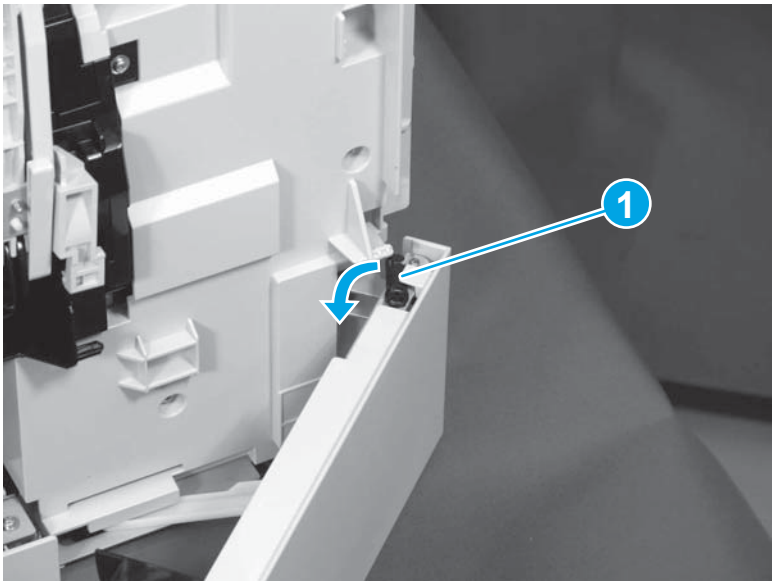
Figure 1-946 Remove the cover



Step 7: Remove the right-lower door

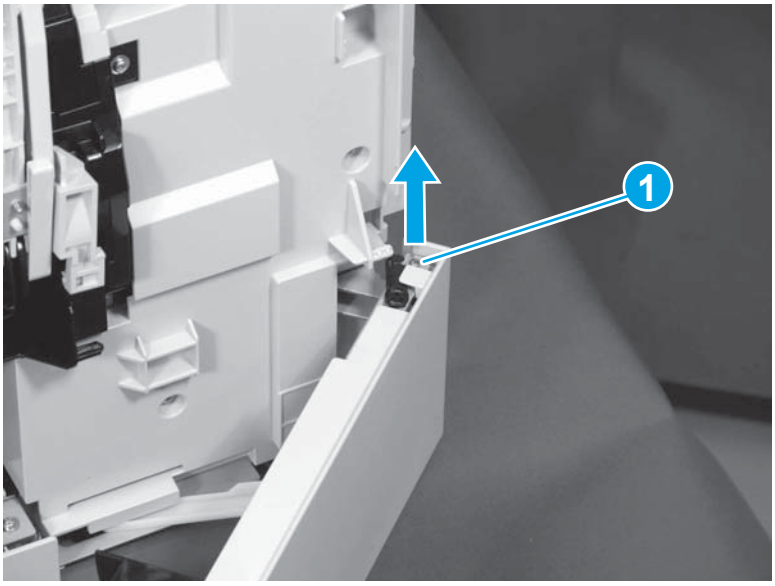
1. Open the right-lower door, and then rotate the stopper (callout 1) to release it.

Figure 1-947 Rotate the stopper



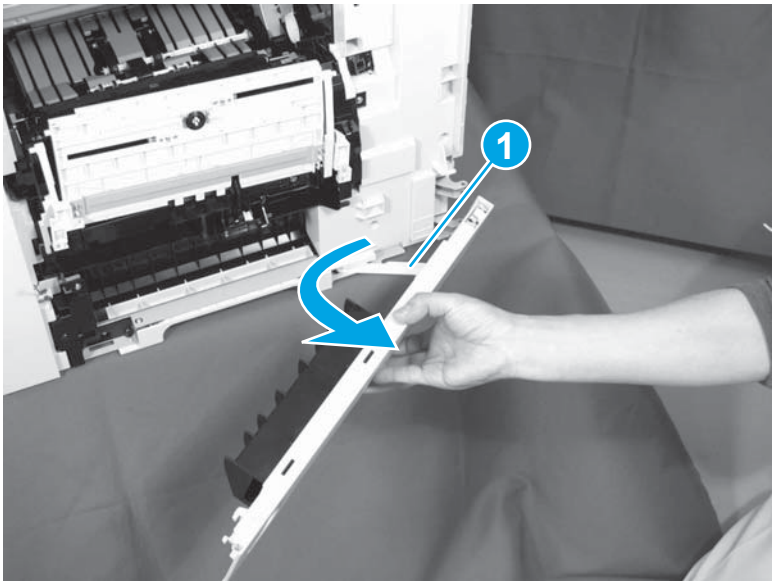
2. Support the door, and then remove the shaft (callout 1).

Figure 1-948 Remove the shaft



3. Release the door-retainer arm (callout 1) by sliding it toward the front of the product, and then remove the door.

Figure 1-949 Remove the door

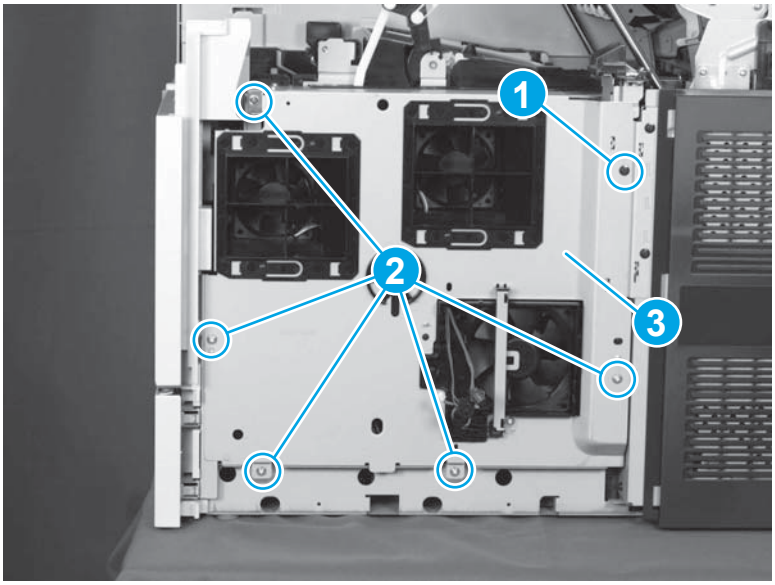


Step 8: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly

1. Remove one black screw (callout 1), remove five silver screws (callout 2), and then slightly rotate the top of the shield (callout 3) away from the product.

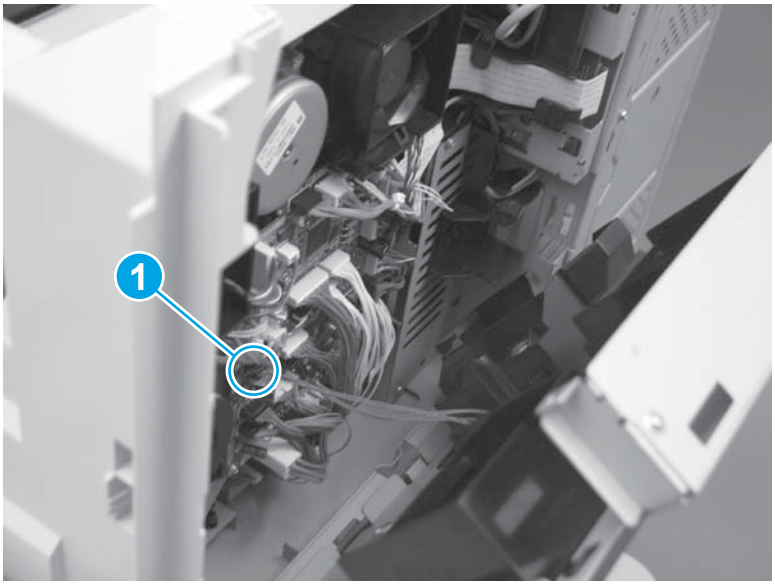
⚠ **CAUTION:** The shield is still connected to the product by a wire harness. Do not completely remove the shield after removing the screws.

Figure 1-950 Remove six screws



2. Disconnect one connector (J42; callout 1) from the DC controller, and then remove the DC controller shield.

Figure 1-951 Disconnect one connector and remove the shield

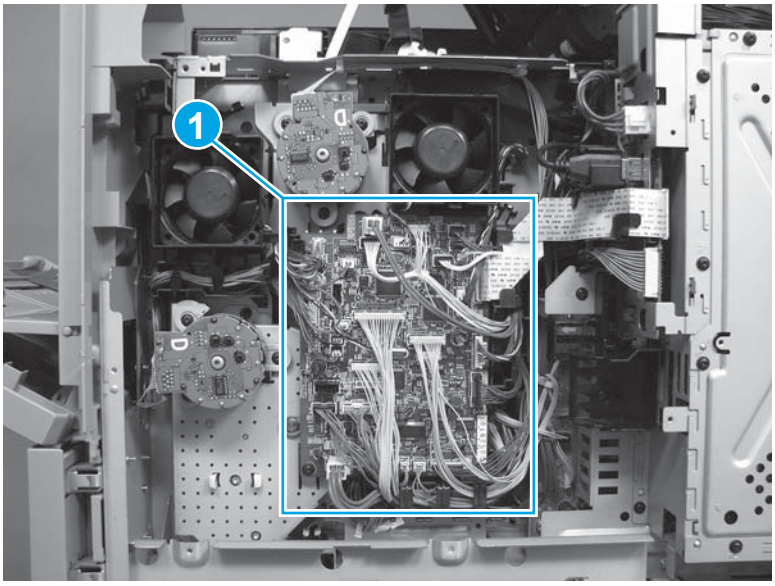


Step 9: Remove the DC controller

1. Disconnect all of the connectors (callout 1) on the DC controller.
   - 34 wire-harness connectors
   - 1 flat-flexible cable (FFC)

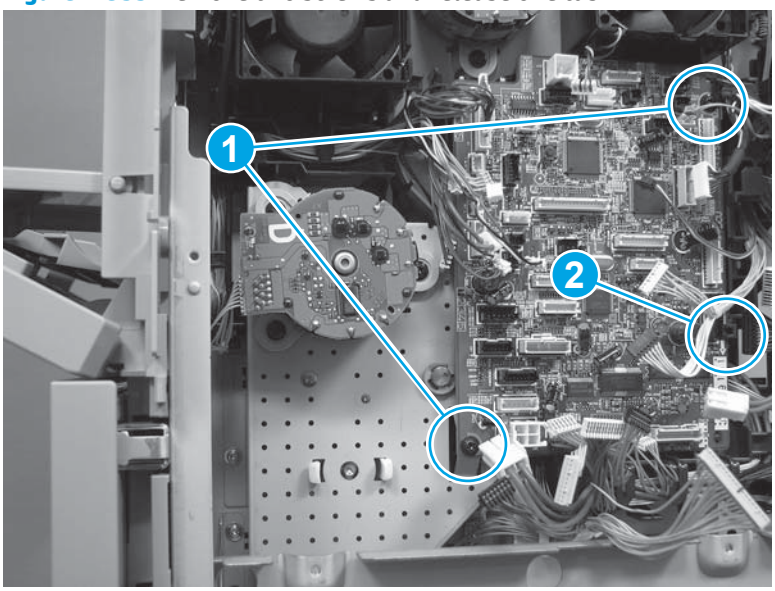
Reinstallation tip: When the DC controller is reinstalled, connectors J42, J59, and J80 are empty.

Figure 1-952 Disconnect all of the connectors



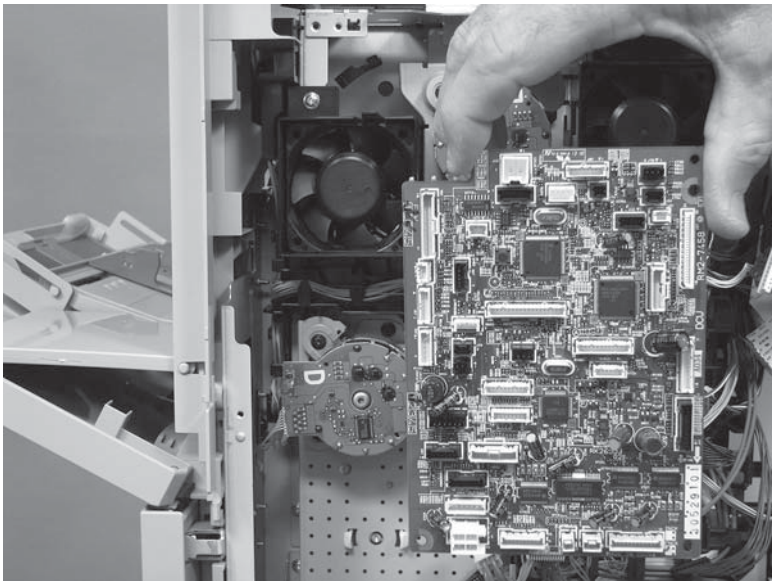
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-953 Remove two screws and release one tab



3. Remove the DC controller.

Figure 1-954 Remove the DC controller



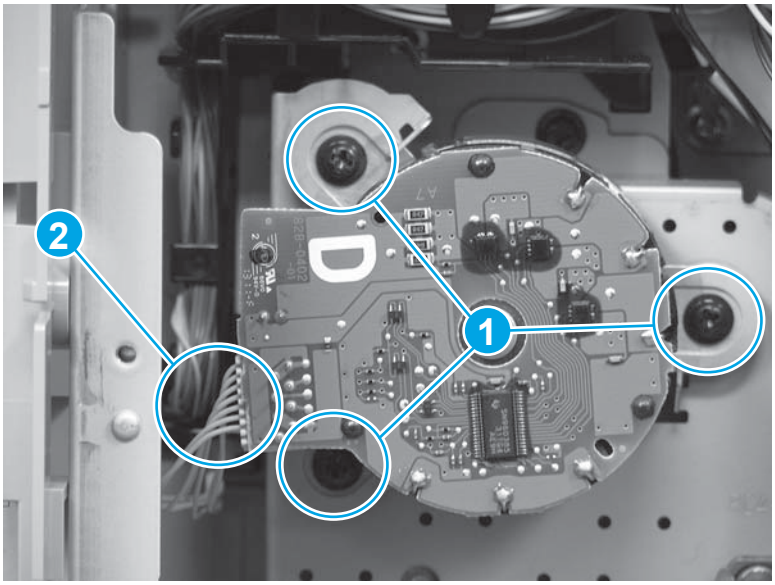
Step 10: Remove the feed motor

▲ At the DC controller side of the product, remove three screws (callout 1), remove the feed motor, and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

NOTE: The feed motor is located at the left-hand side of the DC controller.

TIP: Slightly turn the motor counter clockwise to disengage it from the mounting bracket.

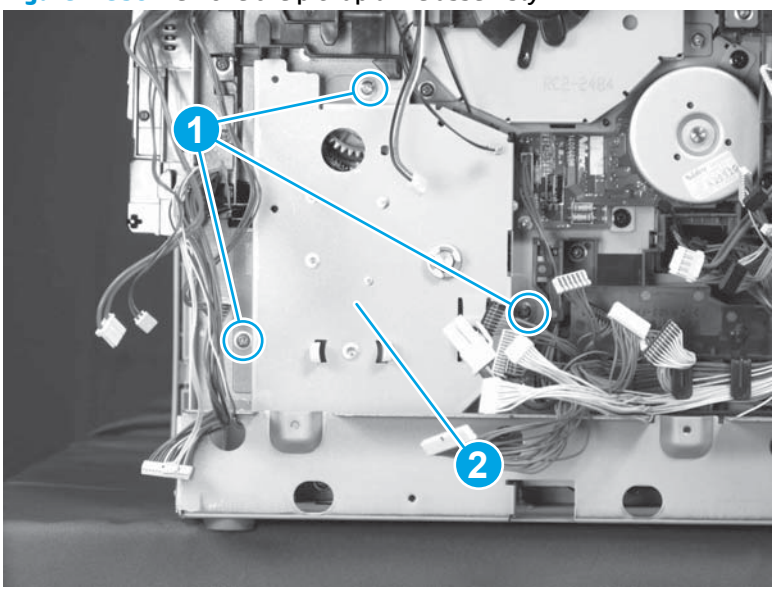
Figure 1-955 Remove the feed motor



Step 11: Remove the pickup drive assembly

▲ Remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the pickup drive assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-956 Remove the pickup drive assembly

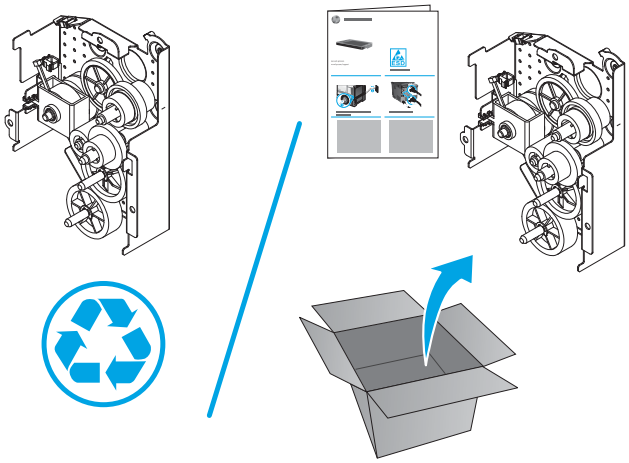


Step 12: Unpack the replacement pickup drive assembly

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

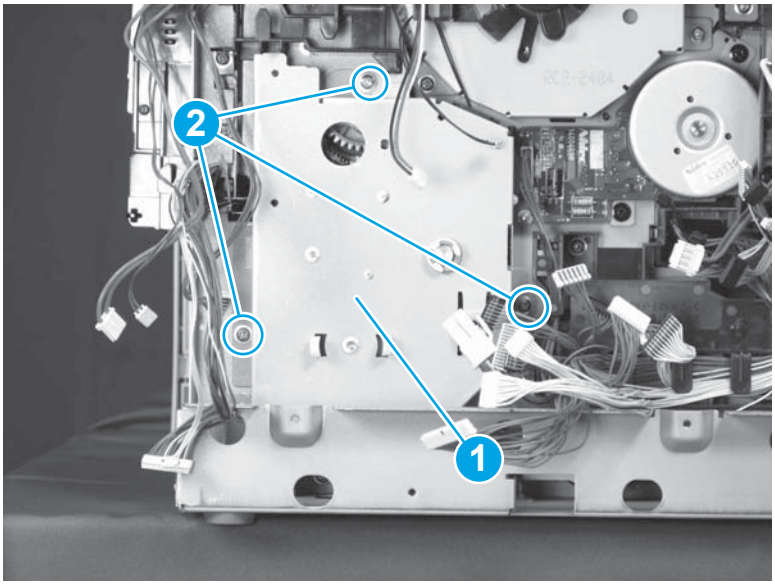


Step 13: Install the pickup drive assembly

1. Position the pickup drive assembly (callout 1) on the product, and then install three screws (callout 2).

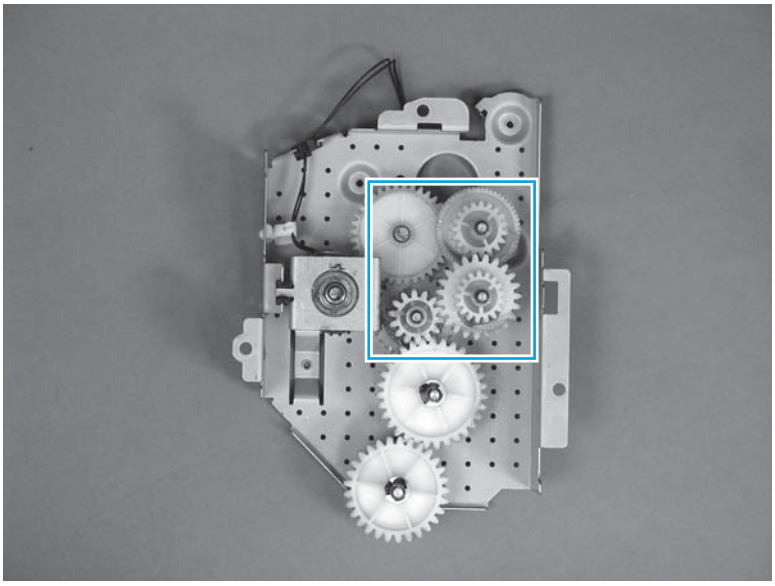
CAUTION: Some of the gears on the backside of the assembly are not captive.

Figure 1-957 Install the pickup drive assembly



2. If the gears located on the backside of the assembly become dislodged, replace them as shown in the figure.

Figure 1-958 Check the pickup drive assembly gears

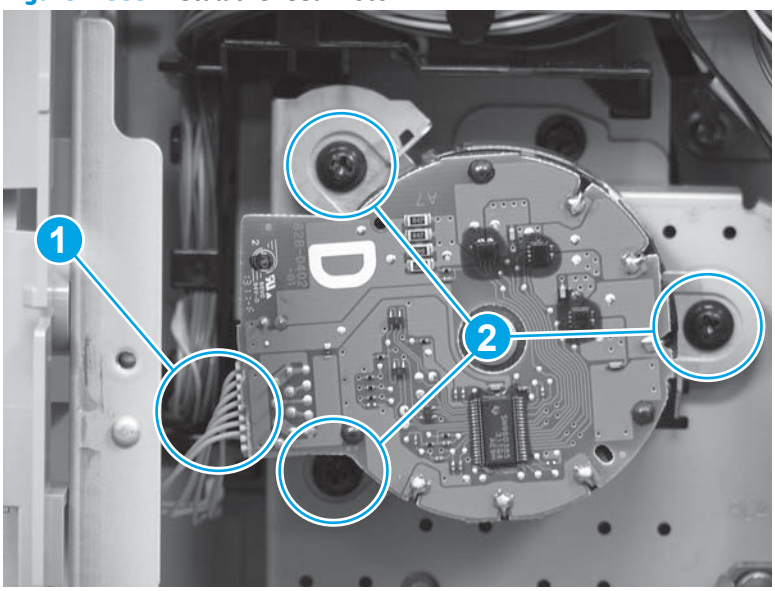


Step 14: Install the feed motor

▲ Connect one connector (callout 1), and then install three screws (callout 2).

TIP: It easier to connect the connector before mounting the motor to the chassis.

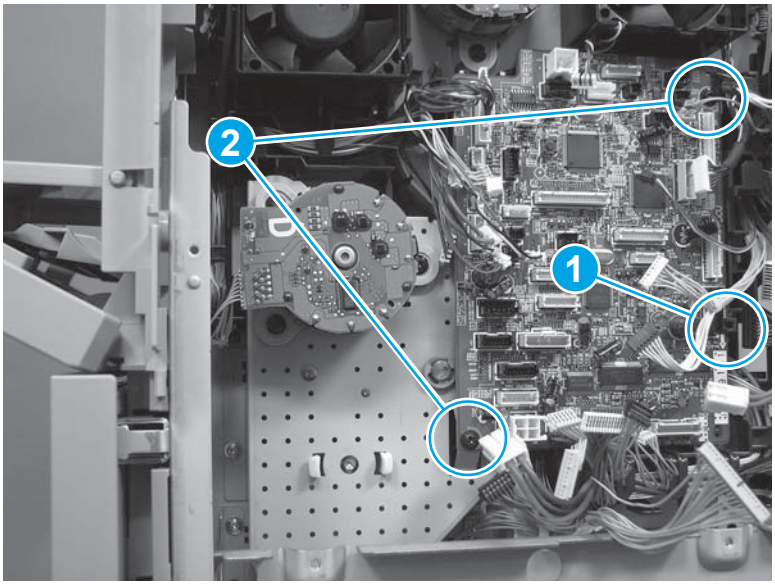
Figure 1-959 Install the feed motor



Step 15: Install the DC controller

1. Position the DC controller on the product, engage one tab (callout 1), and then install two screws (callout 2).

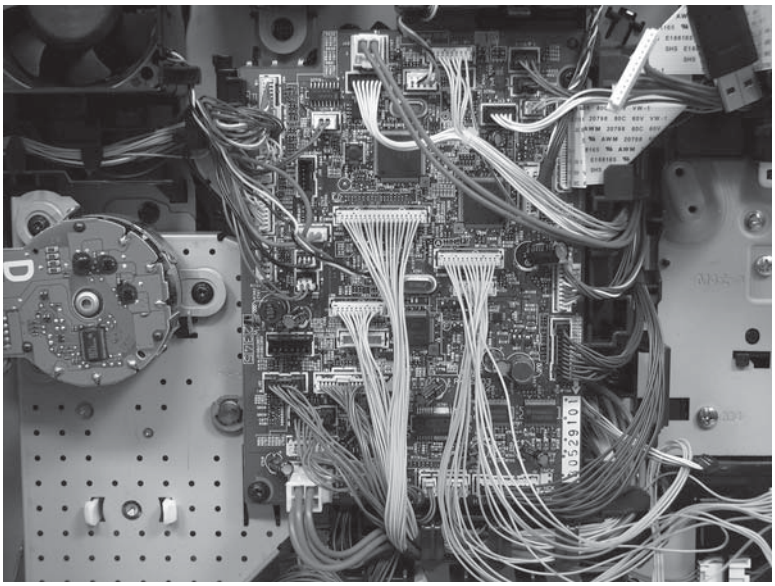
Figure 1-960 Install the DC controller



2. Connect all of the connectors on the DC controller.
   - 34 wire-harness connectors
   - 1 flat-flexible cable (FFC)

Reinstallation tip: Connectors J42, J59, and J80 are empty.

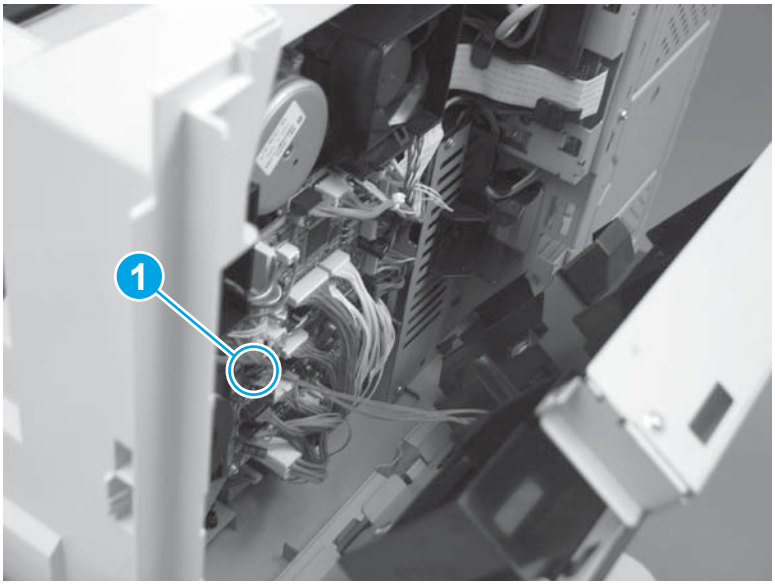
Figure 1-961 Connect all of the connectors



Step 16: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly

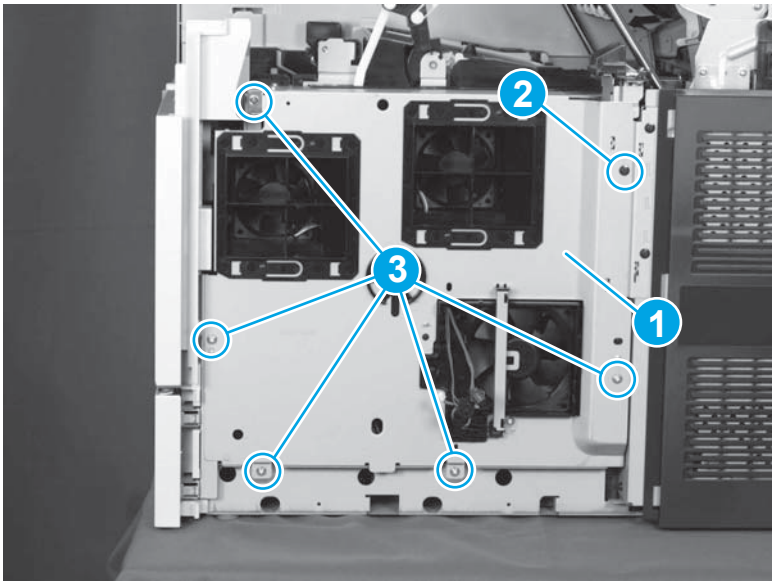
1. Position the shield near the product, and then connect one connector (J42; callout 1).

Figure 1-962 Install the shield and connect one connector



2. Rotate the top of the shield (callout 1) toward the product, install one black screw (callout 2), and then install five silver screws (callout 3).

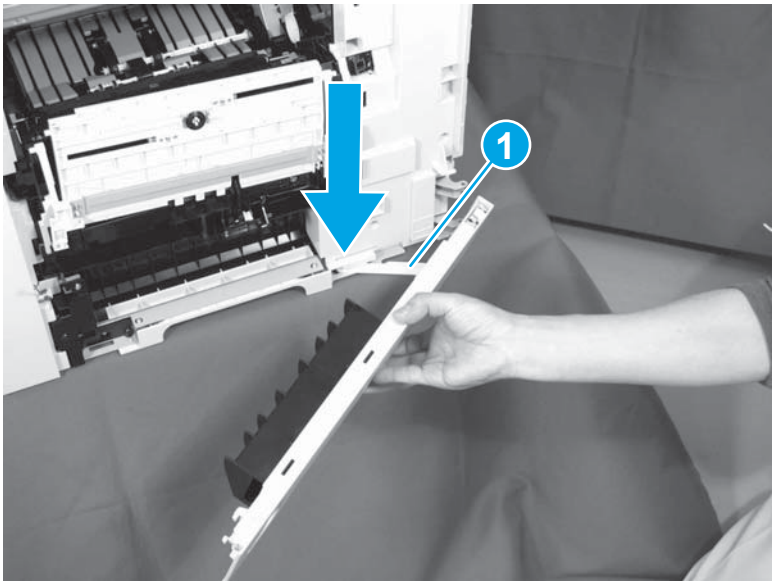
Figure 1-963 Remove six screws



Step 17: Install the right-lower door

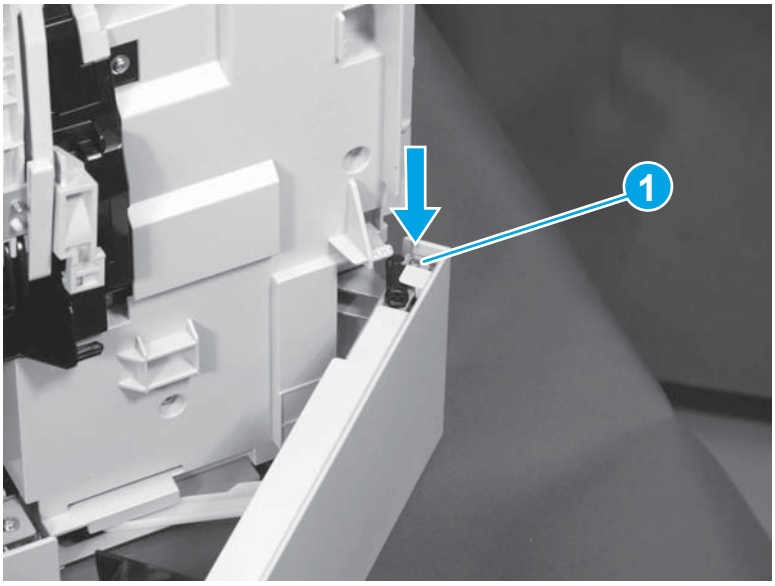
1. Install the door-retainer arm (callout 1) in the slot, and then position the right edge of the door on the product.

Figure 1-964 Install the door



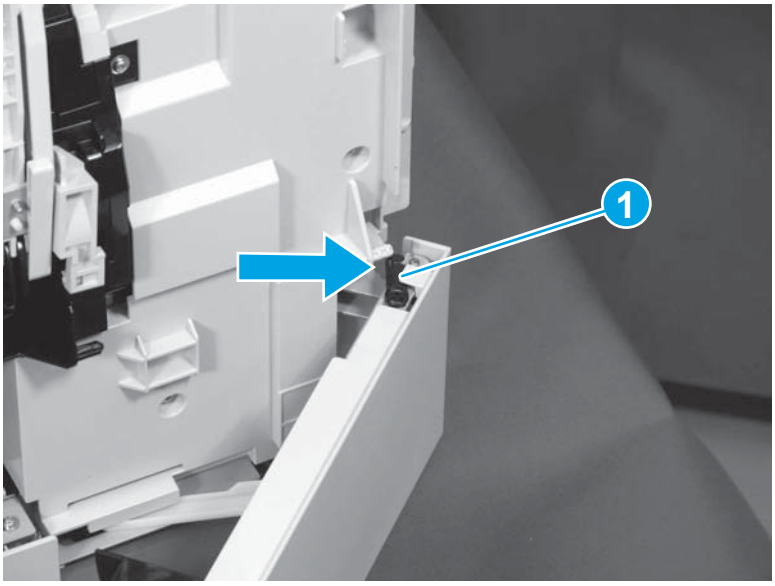
2. Install the shaft (callout 1).

Figure 1-965 Install the shaft



3. Rotate the stopper (callout 1) to until it locks in place.

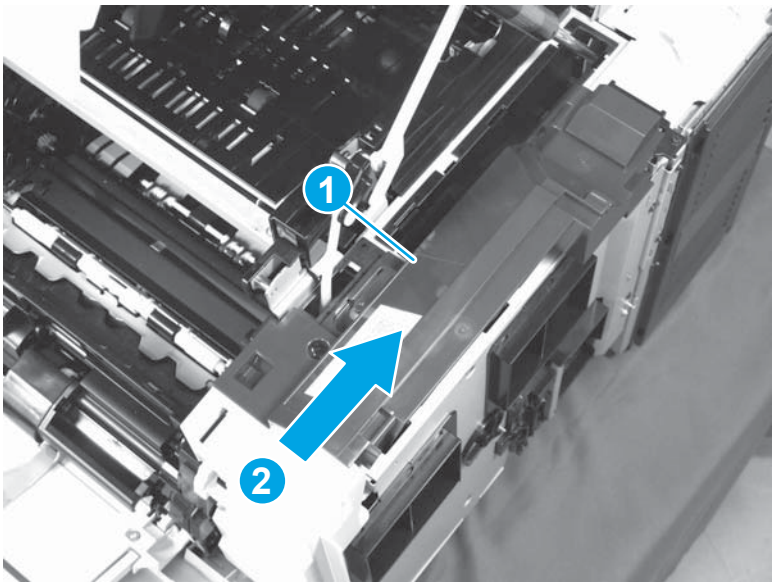
Figure 1-966 Rotate the stopper



Step 18: Install the rear-top cover

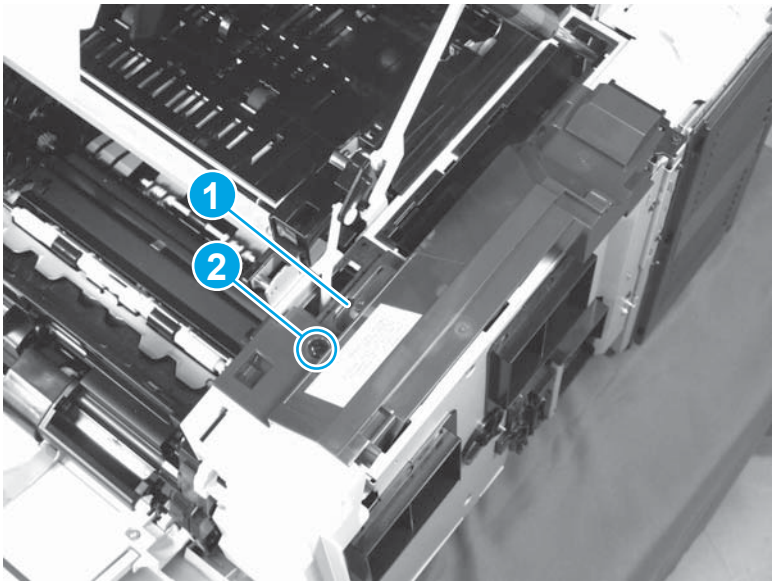
1. Position the cover on the product, Push the cover (callout 1) away Tray 1 to install it (callout 2).

Figure 1-967 Install the cover



2. Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged, and then install one screw (callout 2).

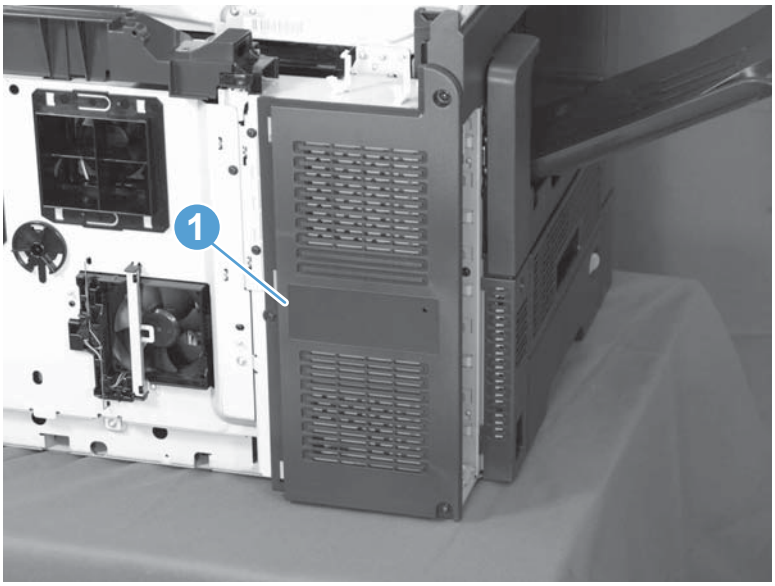
Figure 1-968 Install one screw



Step 19: Install the rear-left cover

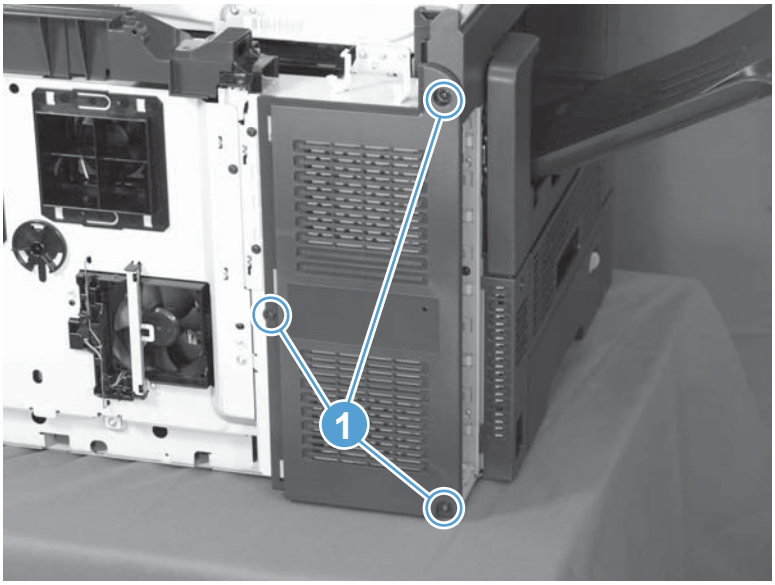
1. Position the cover (callout 1) on the product.

Figure 1-969 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1).

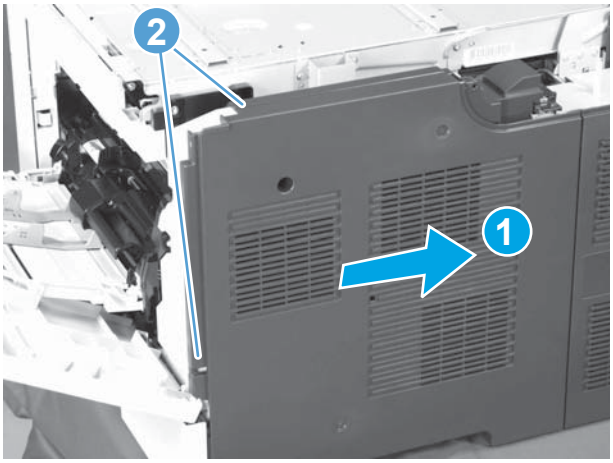
Figure 1-970 Install three screws



Step 20: Install the rear-right cover

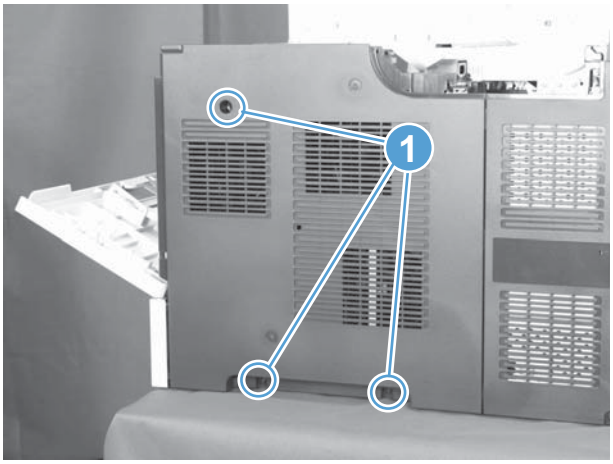
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

Figure 1-971 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

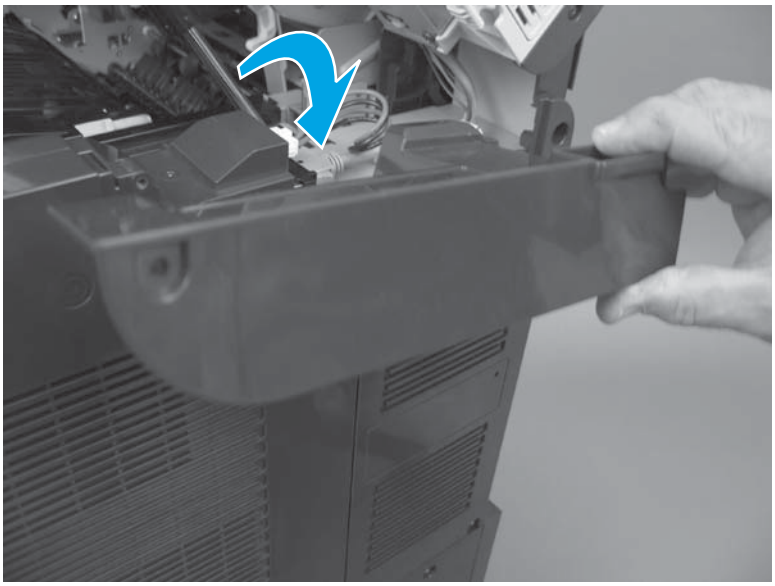
Figure 1-972 Install three screws



Step 21: Install the image scanner cable cover

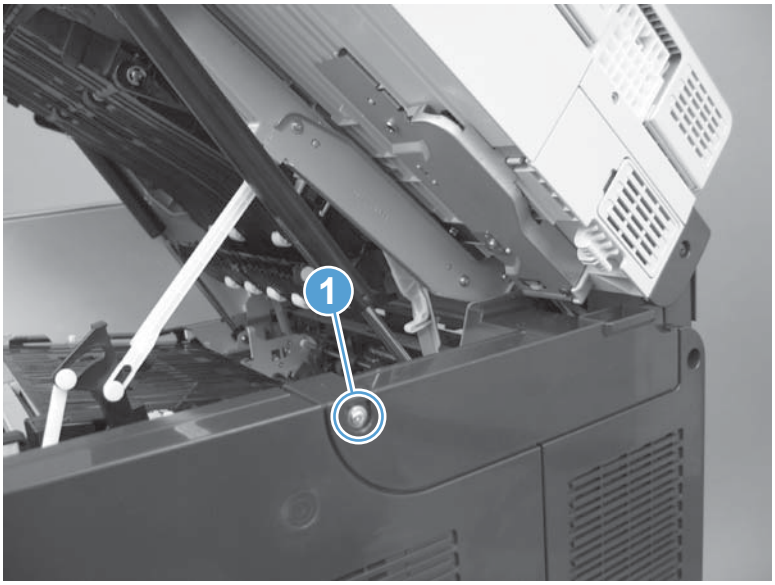
1. Install the cover on the product.

Figure 1-973 Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

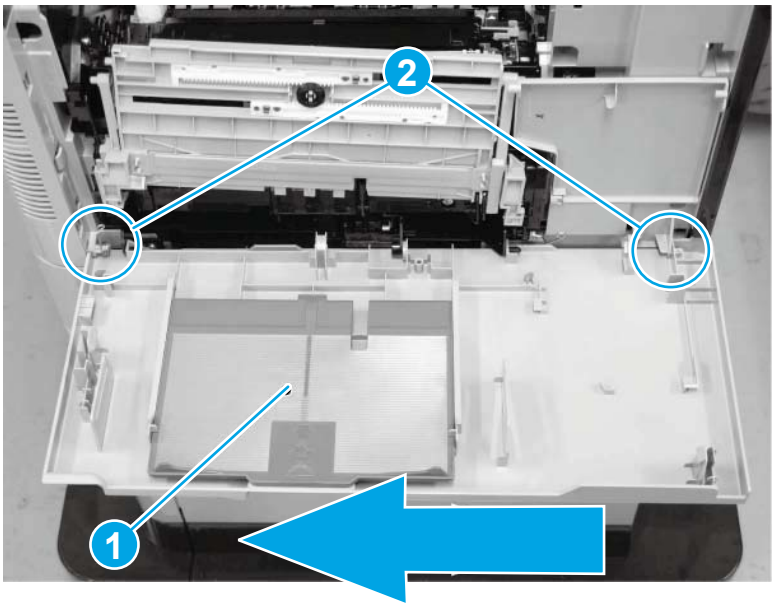
Figure 1-974 Install one screw



Step 22: Install the Tray 1 cover

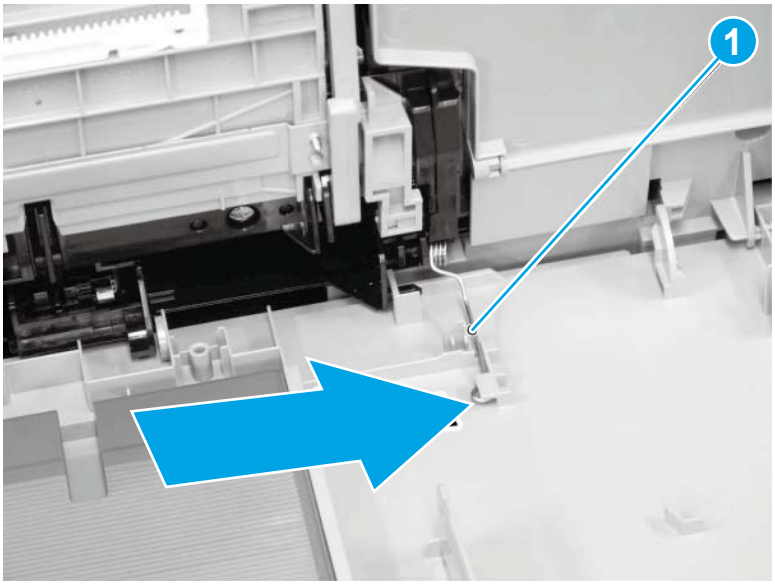
1. Slide the cover (callout 1) toward the front of the product to install it on the hinge pins (callout 2).

Figure 1-975 Install the cover



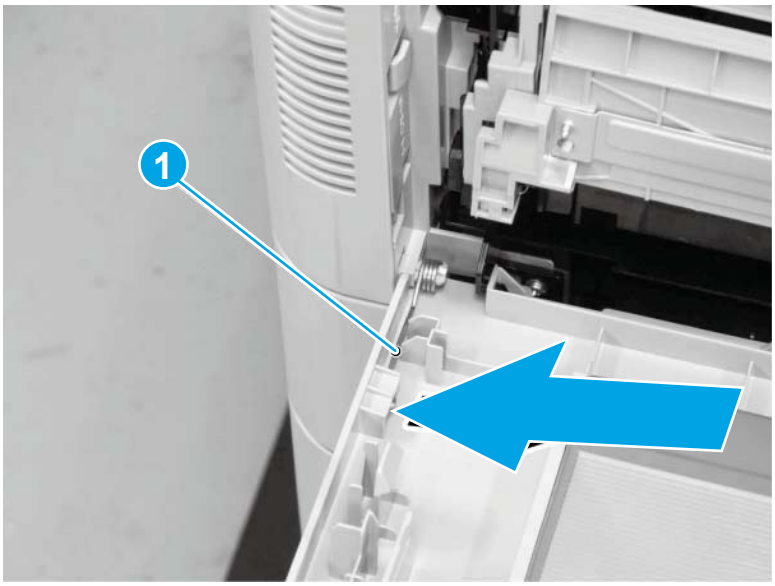
2. Engage the right-side spring arm (callout 1).

Figure 1-976 Engage the right-side spring



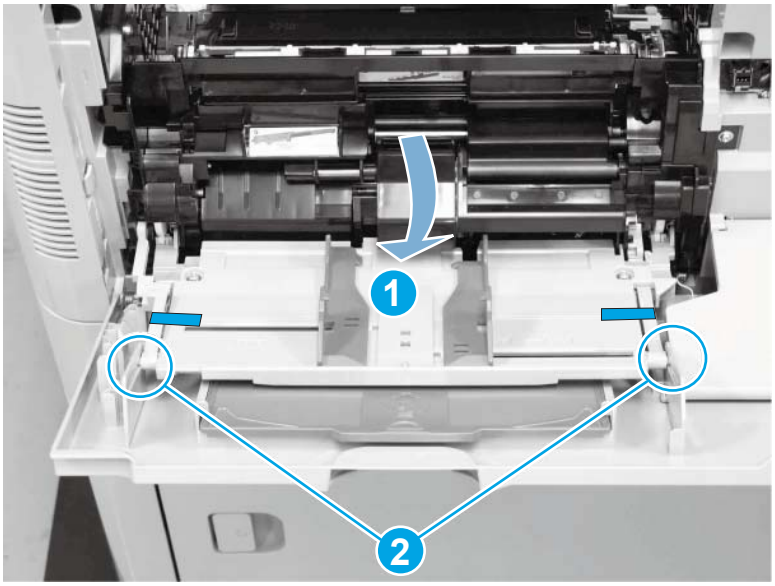
3. Engage the left-side spring arm (callout 1).

Figure 1-977 Engage the left-side spring



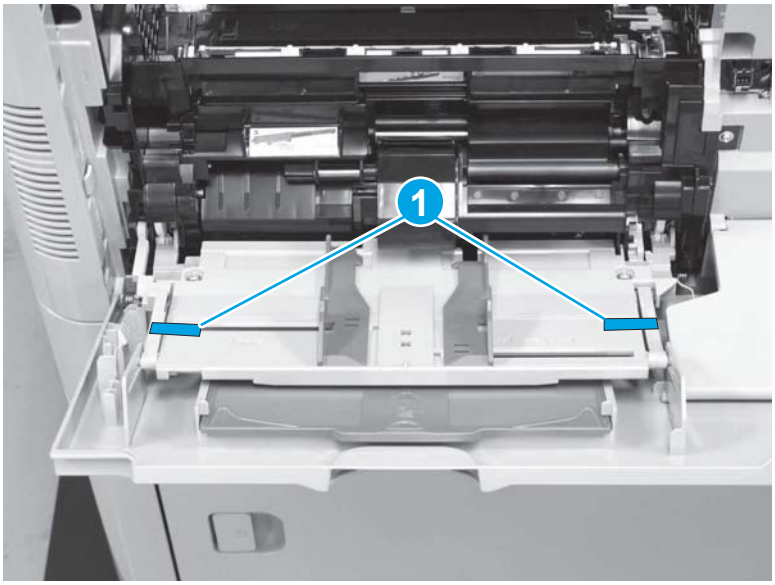
4. Lower the inner tray assembly (callout 1), and then engage the two outer retaining pins (callout 2) on the cover.

Figure 1-978 Engage two outer retaining pins



5. Remove the low adhesive tape (callout 1), and then close the tray.

Figure 1-979 Remove the low adhesive tape

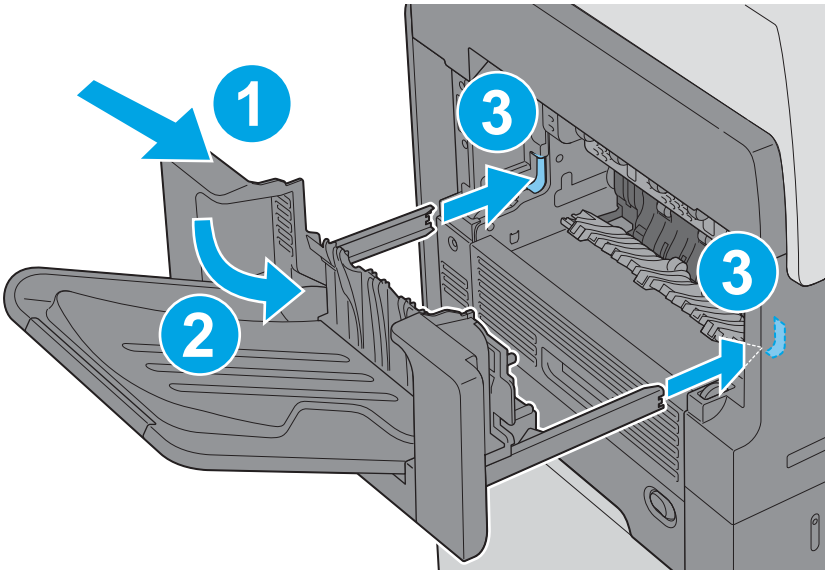


Step 23: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

▲ Do one of the following:

a. **M630dn and M630f**: Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), and then slide the bin base into the product.

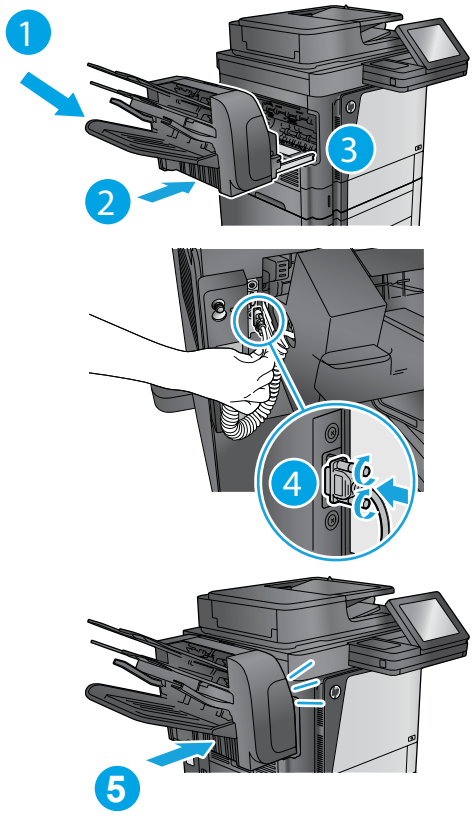
Figure 1-980 Install the output bin



b. **M630z**: Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), connect the interface cable (callout 4). and then slide the stapling mailbox (callout 5) into the product.

TIP: After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed stapling mailbox.

Figure 1-981 Install the stapling mailbox



Step 24: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Cassette pickup assembly

- Introduction
- Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox
- Step 2: Remove the Tray 1 cover
- Step 3: Remove the cassette-door-open detection switch
- Step 4: Remove the image scanner cable cover
- Step 5: Remove the rear-right cover
- Step 6: Remove the rear-left cover
- Step 7: Remove the rear-top cover
- Step 8: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly
- Step 9: Remove the DC controller
- Step 10: Remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly
- Step 11: Remove the feed motor
- Step 12: Remove the pickup drive assembly
- Step 13: Remove the cassette pickup assembly
- Step 14: Unpack the replacement cassette pickup assembly
- Step 15: Install the cassette pickup assembly
- Step 16: Install the pickup drive assembly
- Step 17: Install the feed motor
- Step 18: Install the Tray 1 pickup assembly
- Step 19: Install the DC controller
- Step 20: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly
- Step 21: Install the rear-top cover
- Step 22: Install the rear-left cover
- Step 23: Install the rear-right cover
- Step 24: Install the image scanner cable cover
- Step 25: Install the cassette-door-open detection switch
- Step 26: Install the Tray 1 cover
- Step 27: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox
- Step 28: Turn the product power on
- Parts Return

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the cassette pickup assembly.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Cassette pickup assembly part number	
RM1-5919-000CN	Cassette pickup assembly **NOTE:** This assembly is also called the paper pickup assembly.

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

Required tools

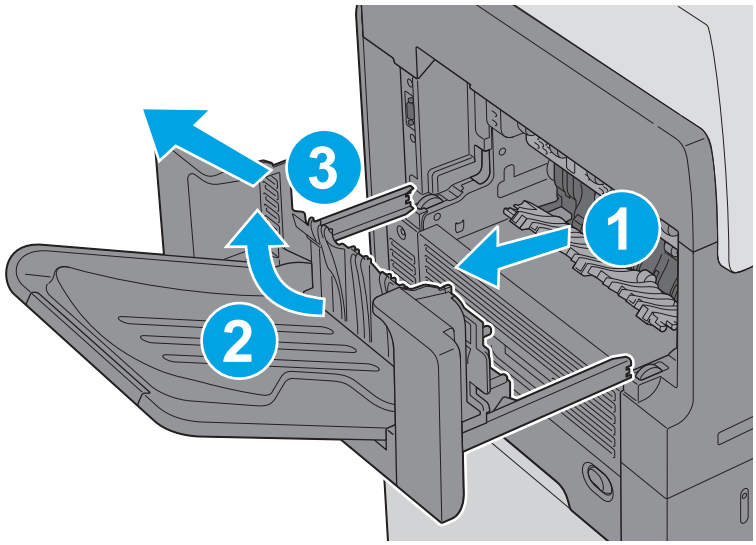
#2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152-mm (6-in) shaft length

Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

▲ Do one of the following steps:

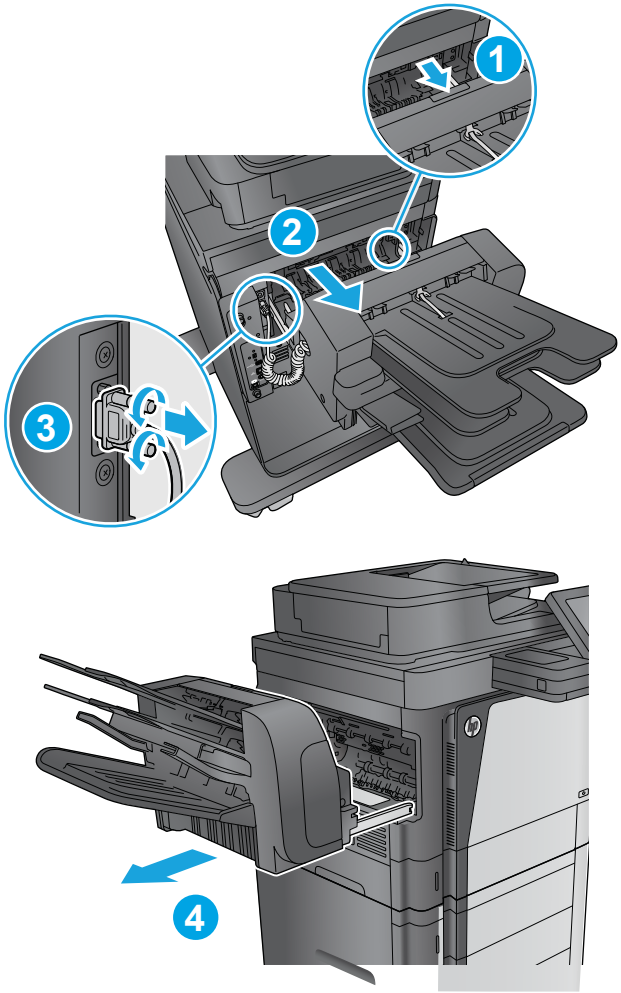
a. **M630dn and M630f**: Slide the bin base away from the product (callout 1) until it stops, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-982 Remove the output bin



b. **M630z**: Press the latch (callout 1), pull the stapling mailbox away from the product (callout 2), disconnect the interface cable (callout 3), and then remove the stapling mailbox (callout 4).

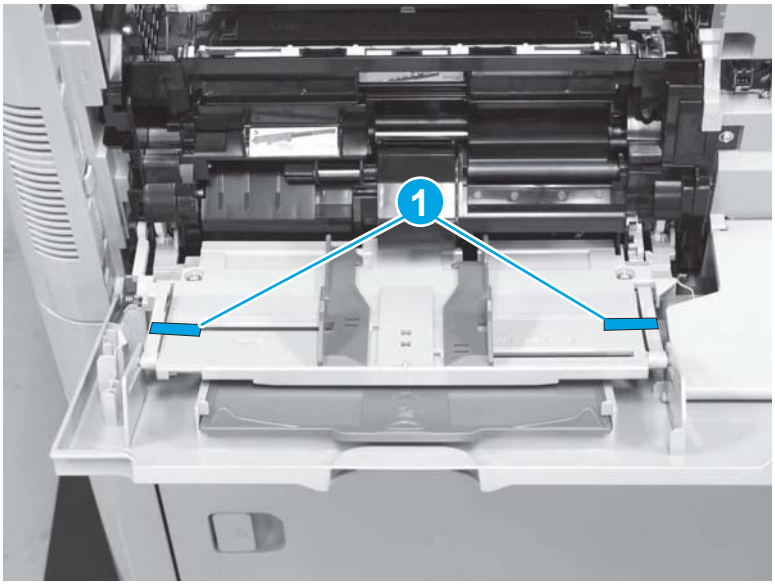
Figure 1-983 Remove the stapling mailbox



Step 2: Remove the Tray 1 cover

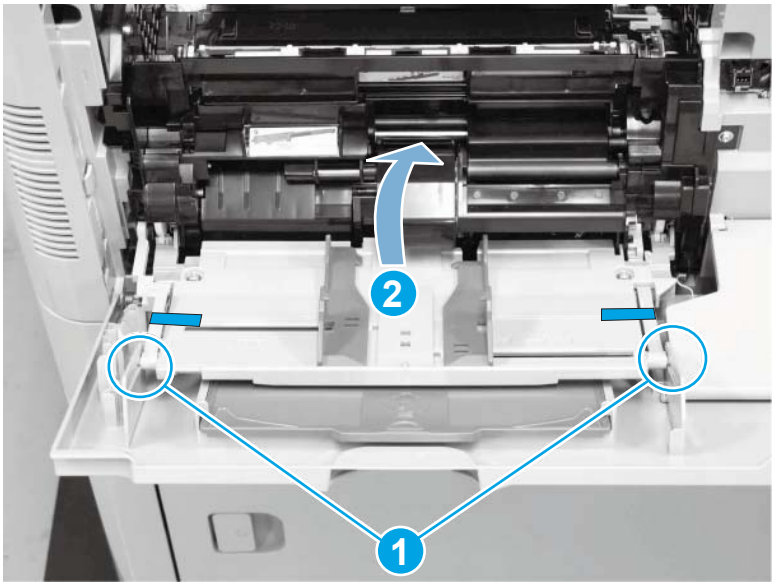
1. Use low adhesive tape to secure the outer retaining pins (callout 1) to the inner tray.

Figure 1-984 Secure the outer retaining pins



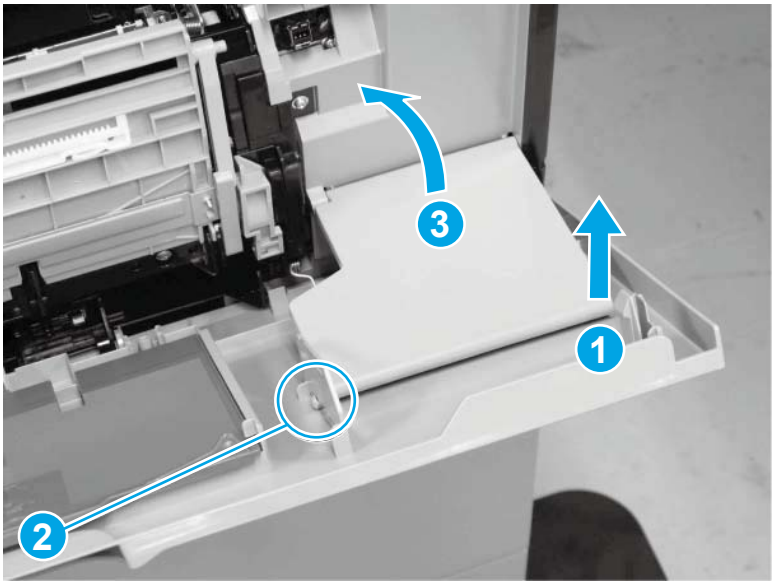
2. Open Tray 1, release the two outer retaining pins (callout 1) on the cover, and then carefully fold the inner tray up (callout 2) and into the product to protect it.

Figure 1-985 Release two outer retaining pins



3. Carefully lift on the outer corner of the tray inner cover (callout 1) to release one pin (callout 2) from the guide, and then fold the inner cover up (callout 3) and into the product.

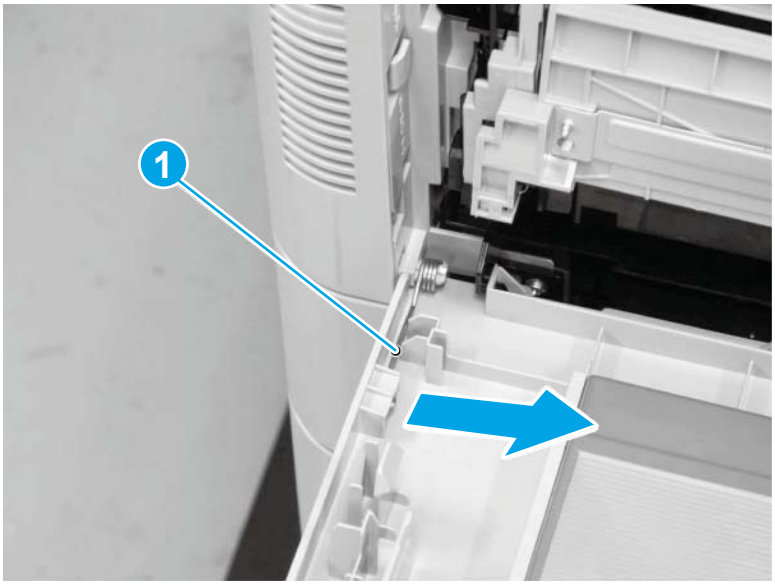
Figure 1-986 Release one pin



4. Release the left-side spring arm (callout 1).

CAUTION: The spring is not captive when the spring arm is released and can be dislodged and lost.

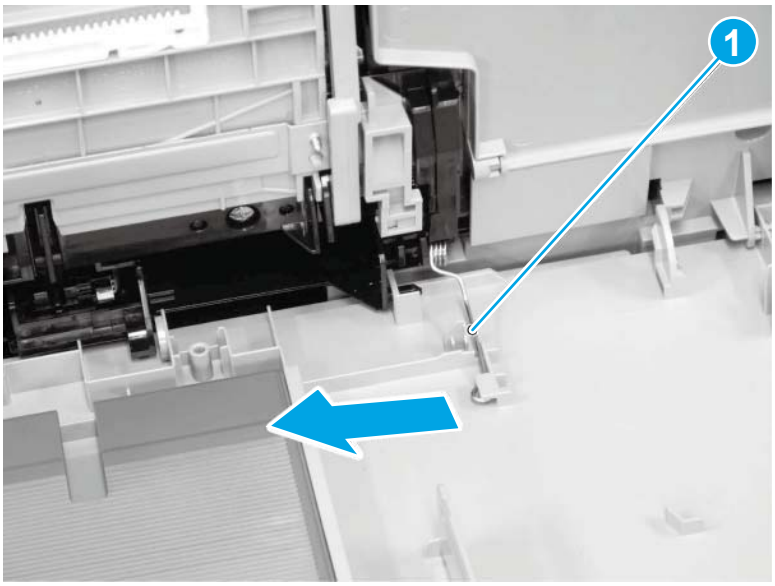
Figure 1-987 Release the left-side spring



5. Release the right-side spring arm (callout 1).

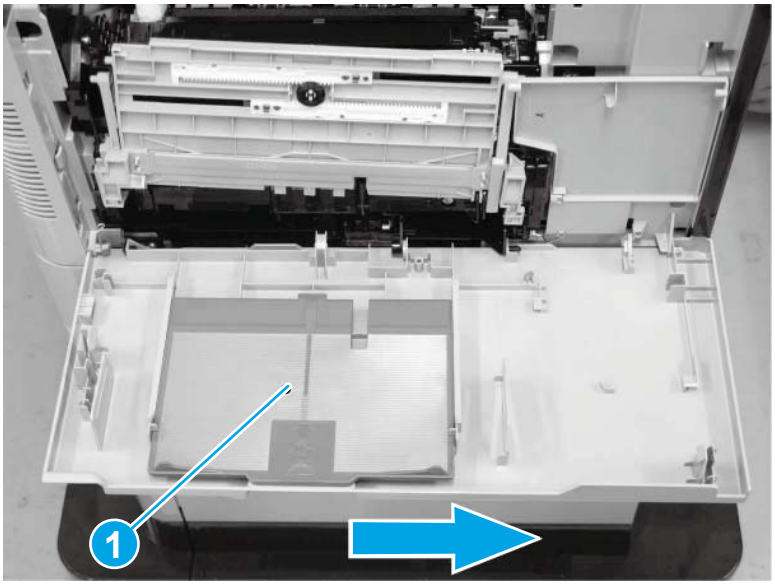
⚠ **CAUTION:** The spring is not captive when the spring arm is released and can be dislodged and lost.

Figure 1-988 Release the right-side spring



6. Slide the cover (callout 1) toward the back of the product to release it, and then remove the cover.

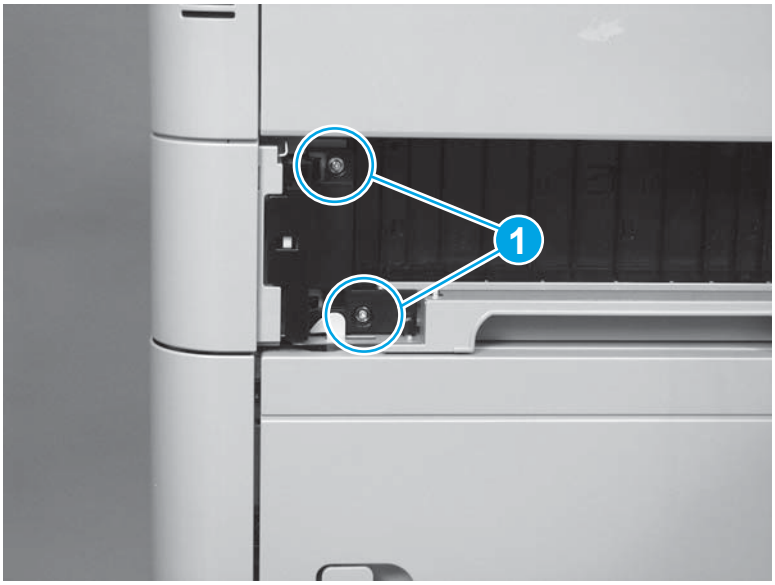
Figure 1-989 Remove the cover



Step 3: Remove the cassette-door-open detection switch

1. Open the right-lower door, and then remove two screws (callout 1).

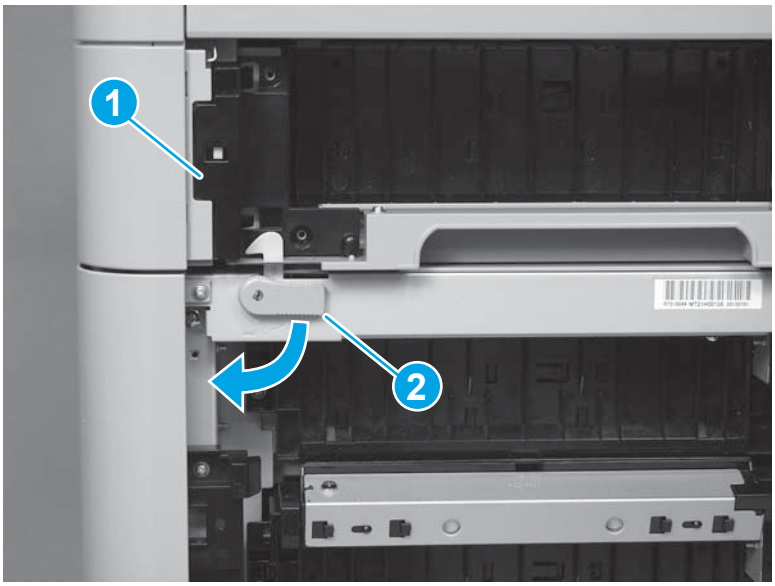
Figure 1-990 Remove two screws



2. Remove the switch cover (callout 1).

TIP: If the product is installed on an optional input accessory, open the accessory right door, and then release the blue lever (callout 2) to lower the locking latch to make removing the cover easier.

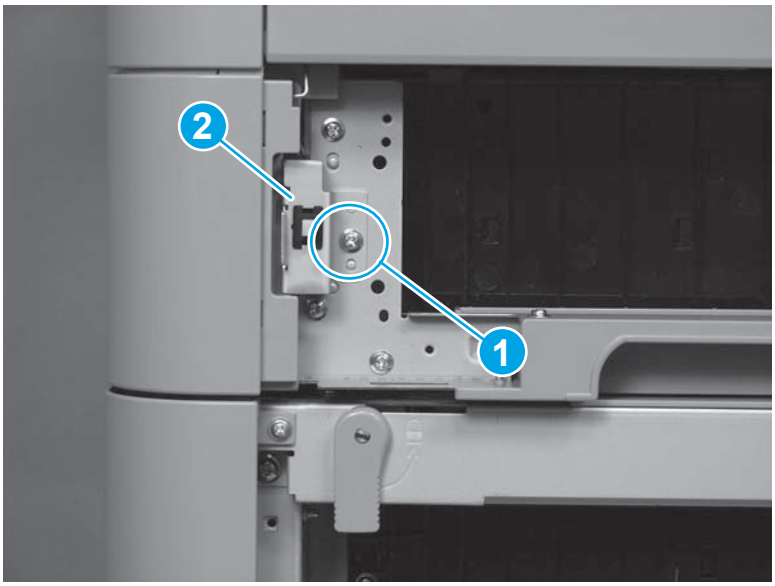
Figure 1-991 Remove the cover



3. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then separate the switch assembly (callout 2) from the product.

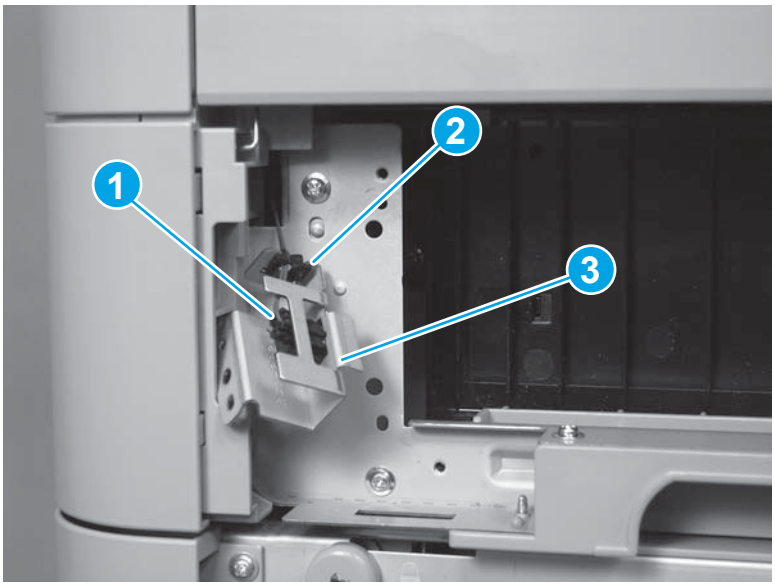
⚠ **CAUTION:** A wire harness connects the switch assembly to the product. Do not attempt to completely remove the switch assembly.

Figure 1-992 Remove one screw



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release the wire harness from the retainer (callout 2), and then remove the switch assembly (callout 3).

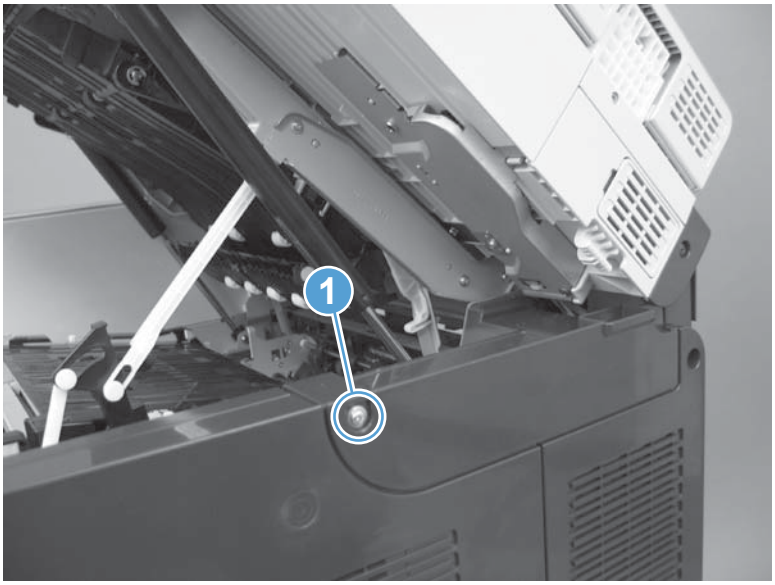
Figure 1-993 Remove the switch



Step 4: Remove the image scanner cable cover

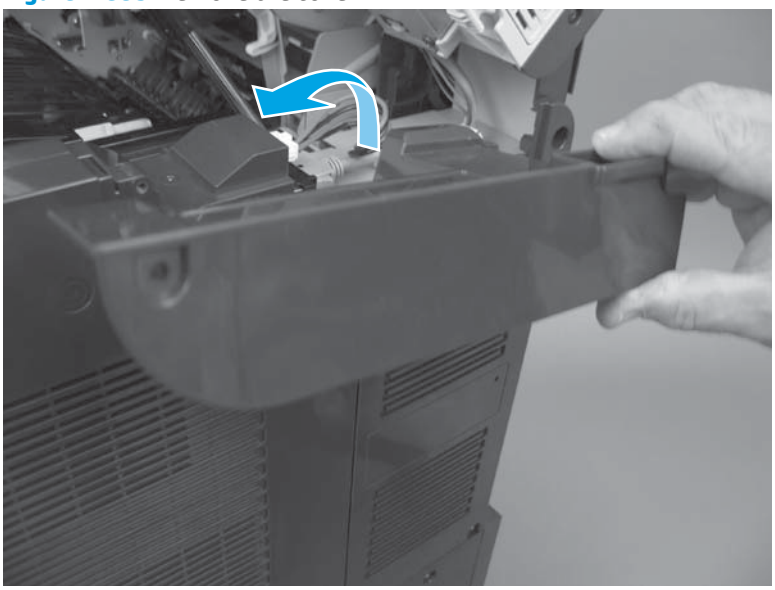
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-994 Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

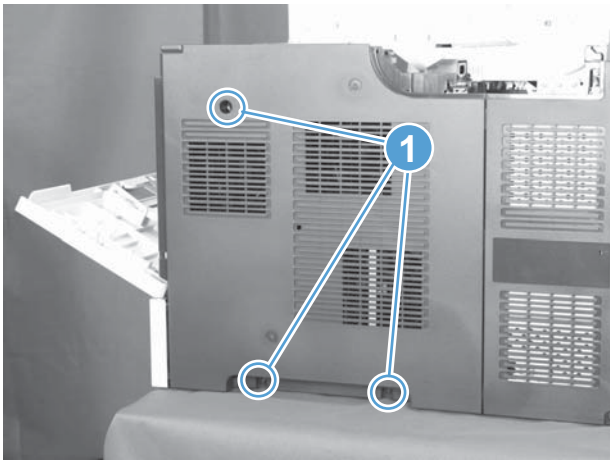
Figure 1-995 Remove the cover



Step 5: Remove the rear-right cover

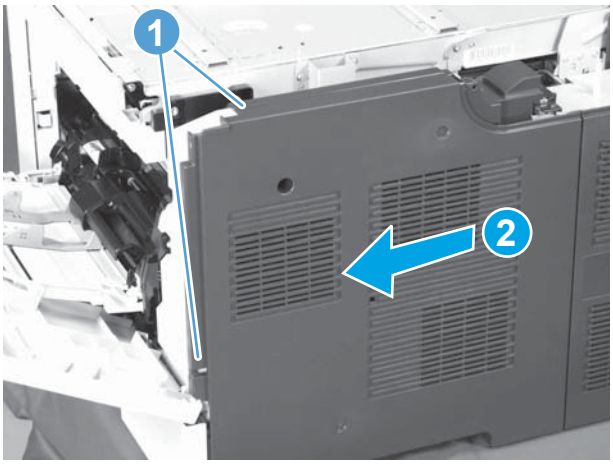
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-996 Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly seperate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

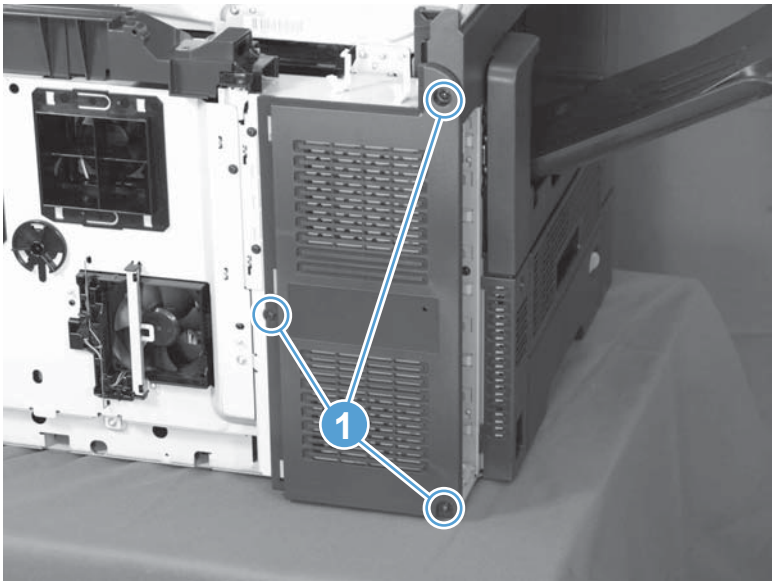
Figure 1-997 Remove the cover



Step 6: Remove the rear-left cover

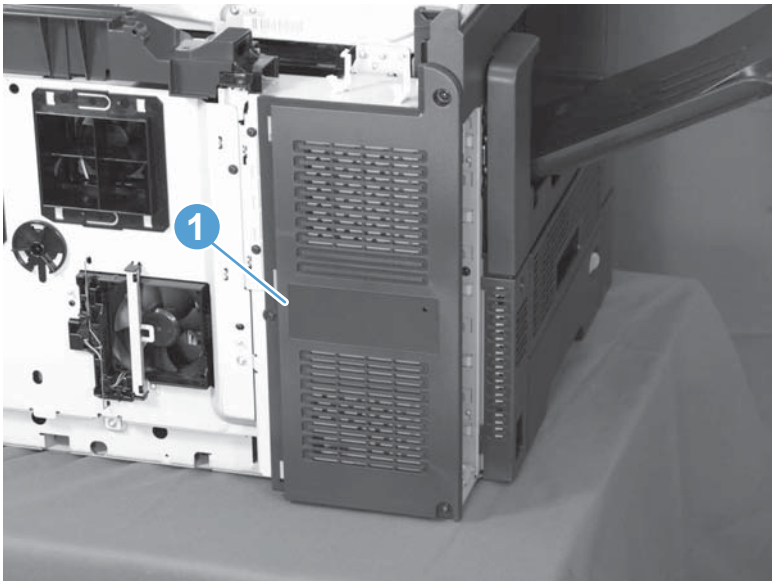
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-998 Remove three screws



2. Remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 1-999 Remove the cover

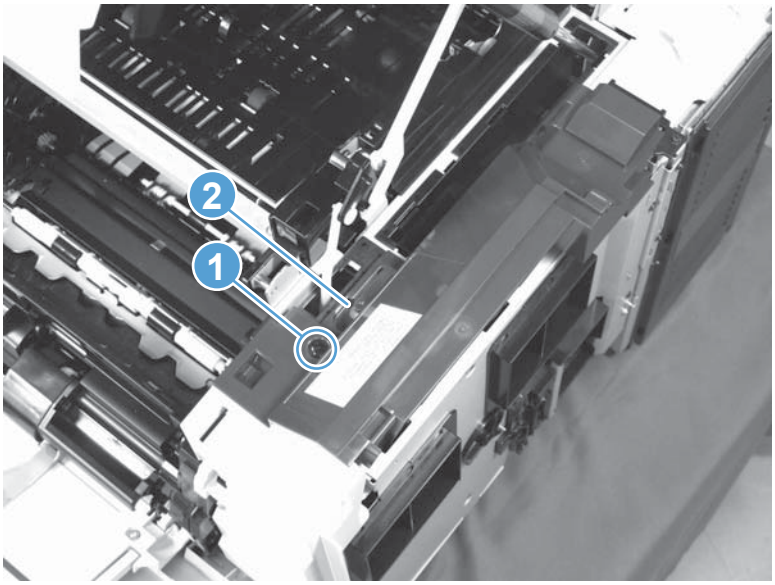


Step 7: Remove the rear-top cover

NOTE: If the top cover is closed, open it now.

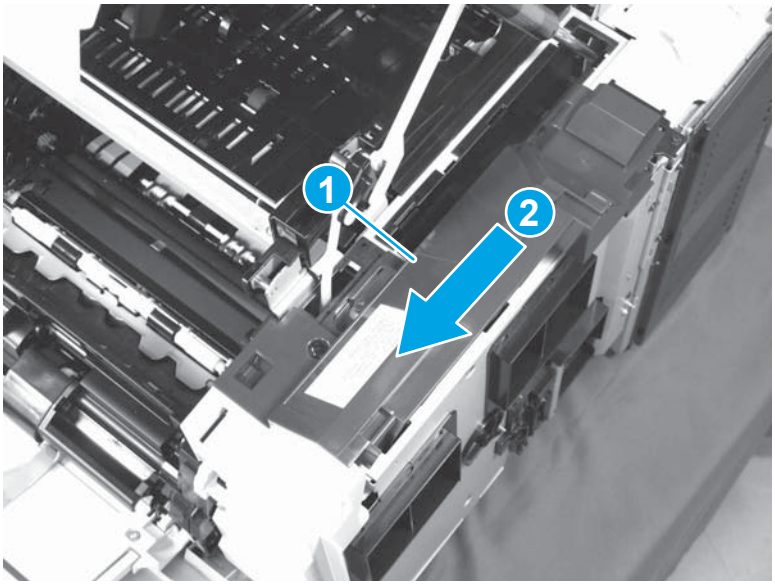
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-1000 Remove one screw



2. Push the cover (callout 1) towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-1001 Remove the cover

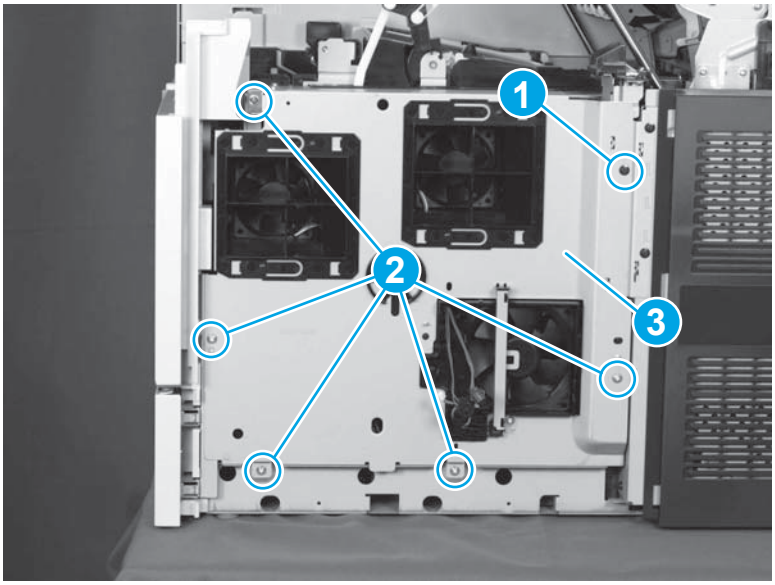


Step 8: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly

1. Remove one black screw (callout 1), remove five silver screws (callout 2), and then slightly rotate the top of the shield (callout 3) away from the product.

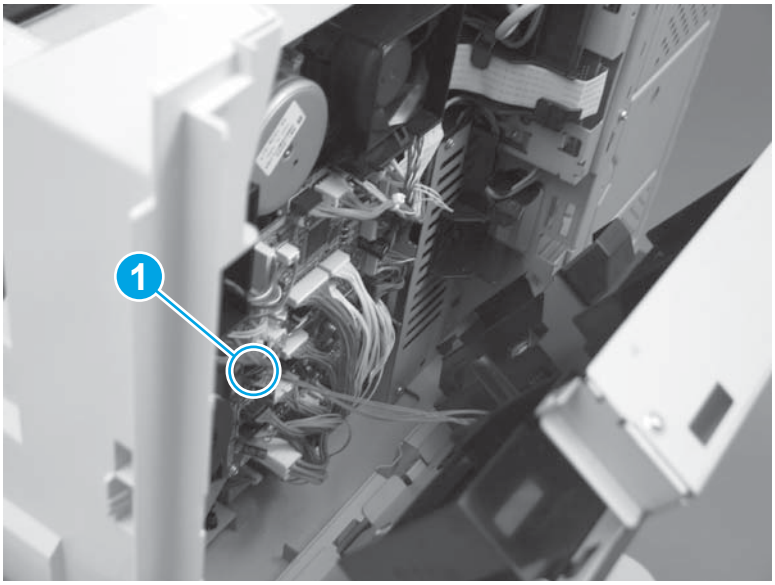
⚠ **CAUTION:** The shield is still connected to the product by a wire harness. Do not completely remove the shield after removing the screws.

Figure 1-1002 Remove six screws



2. Disconnect one connector (J42; callout 1) from the DC controller, and then remove the DC controller shield.

Figure 1-1003 Disconnect one connector and remove the shield

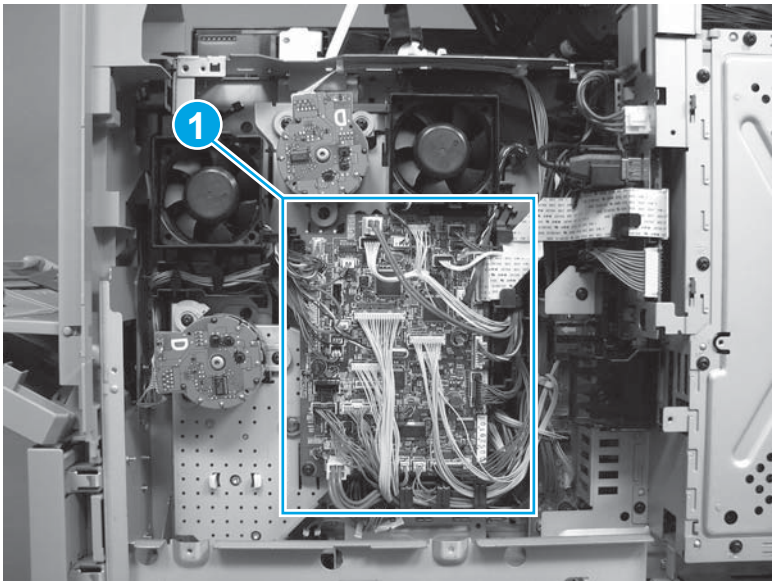


Step 9: Remove the DC controller

1. Disconnect all of the connectors (callout 1) on the DC controller.
   - 34 wire-harness connectors
   - 1 flat-flexible cable (FFC)

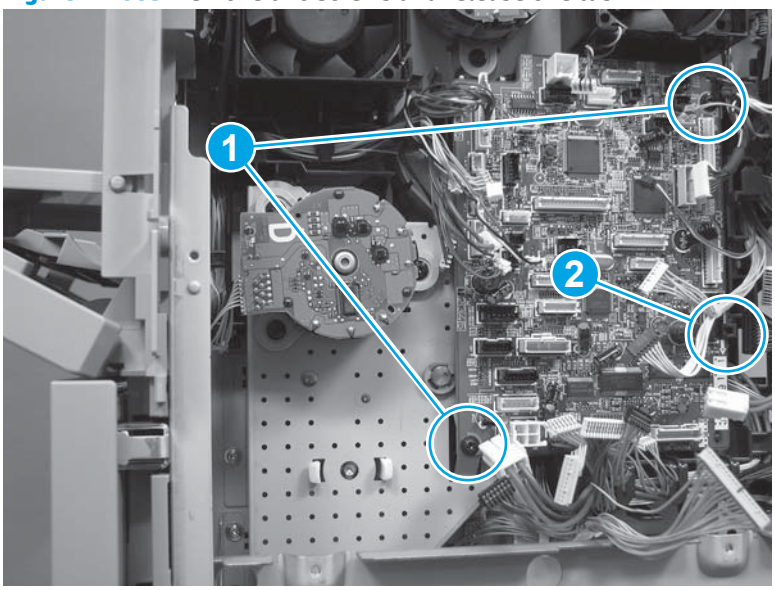
Reinstallation tip: When the DC controller is reinstalled, connectors J42, J59, and J80 are empty.

Figure 1-1004 Disconnect all of the connectors



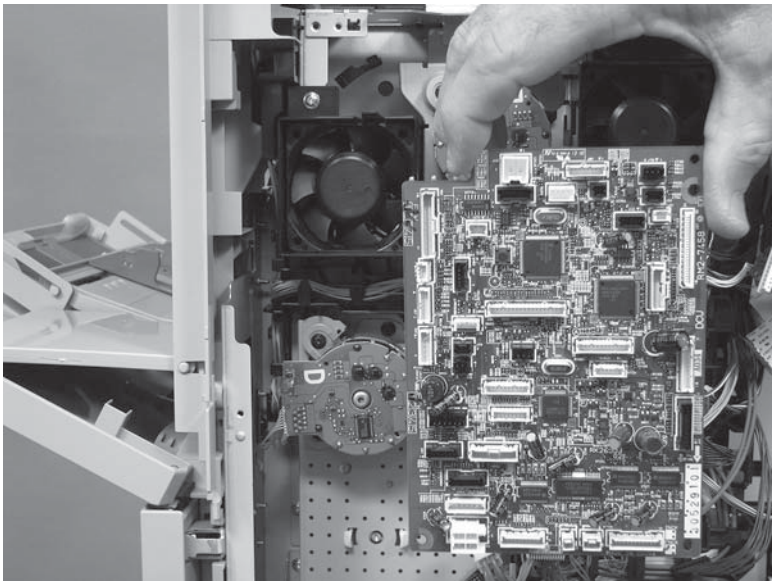
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-1005 Remove two screws and release one tab



3. Remove the DC controller.

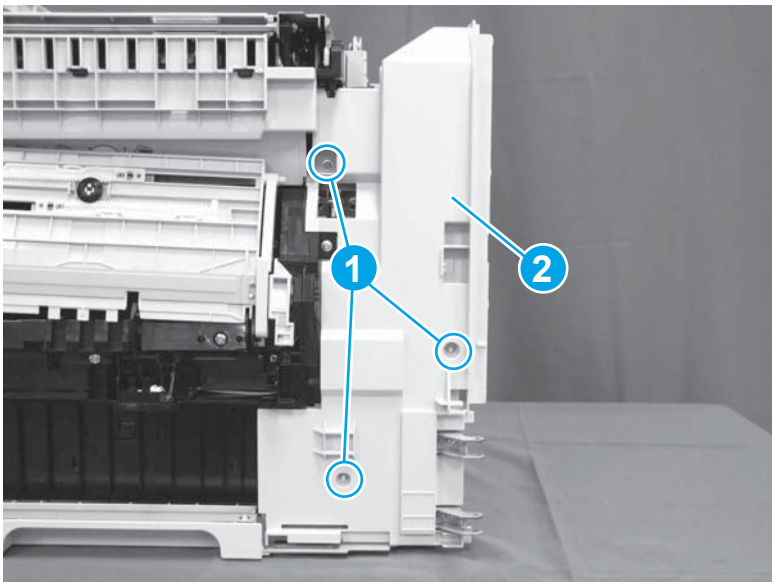
Figure 1-1006 Remove the DC controller



Step 10: Remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly

1. Remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the Tray 1 gear cover (callout 2).

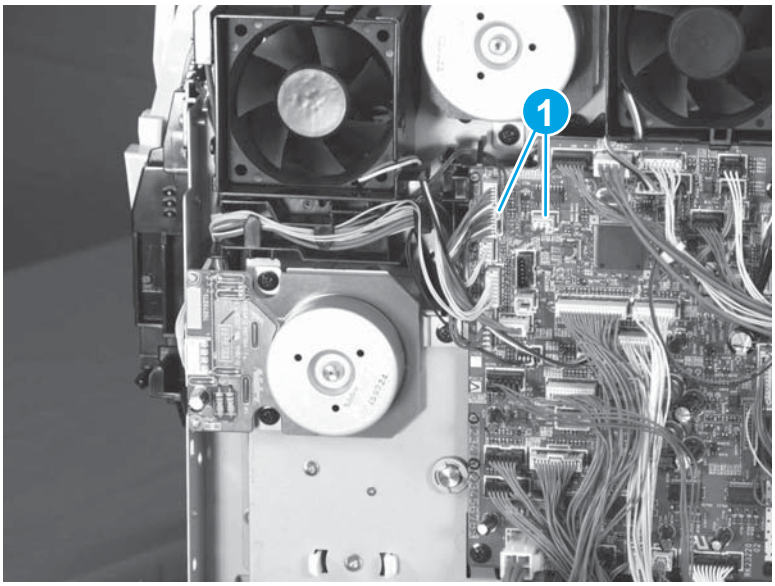
Figure 1-1007 Remove three screws and the Tray 1 gear cover



2. Disconnect two connectors (J71 and J81; callout 1).

NOTE: The feed motor is shown installed in the figure below, but it has been removed earlier in this procedure.

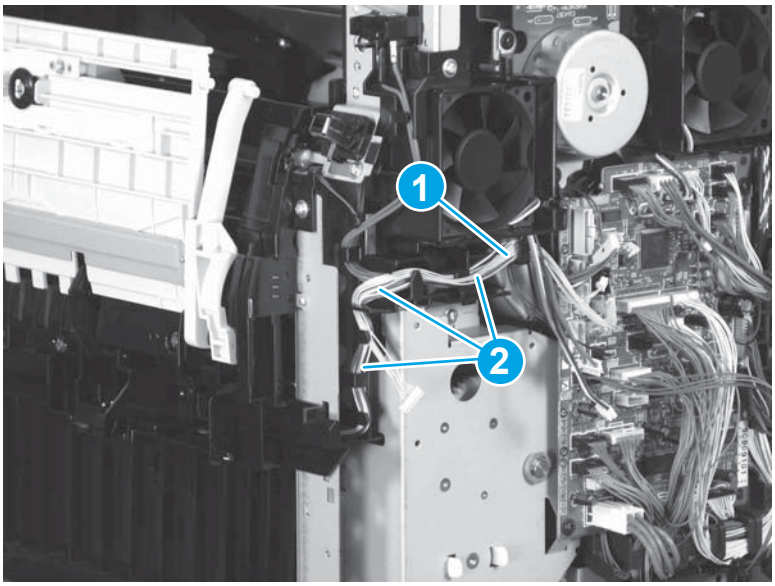
Figure 1-1008 Disconnect two connectors



3. Release the wire harnesses (callout 1) from the guide (callout 2).

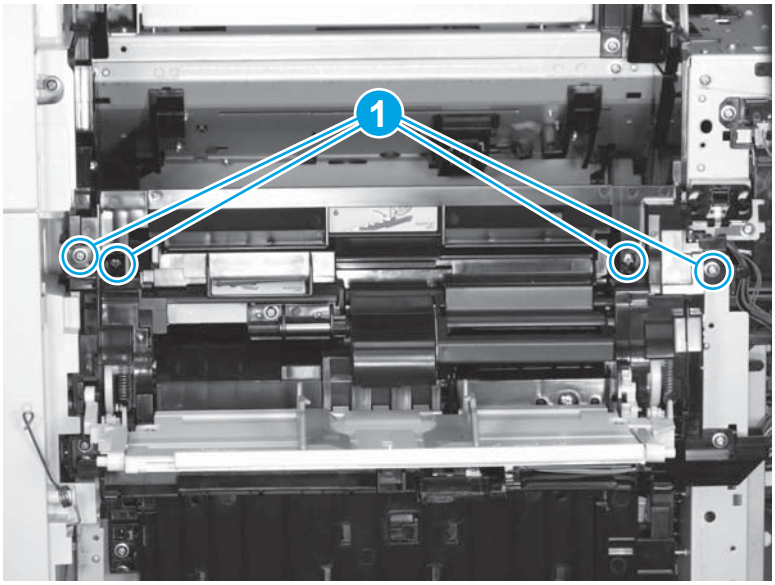
NOTE: The feed motor is shown removed in the figure below, but it does not need to be removed.

Figure 1-1009 Release the wire harnesses



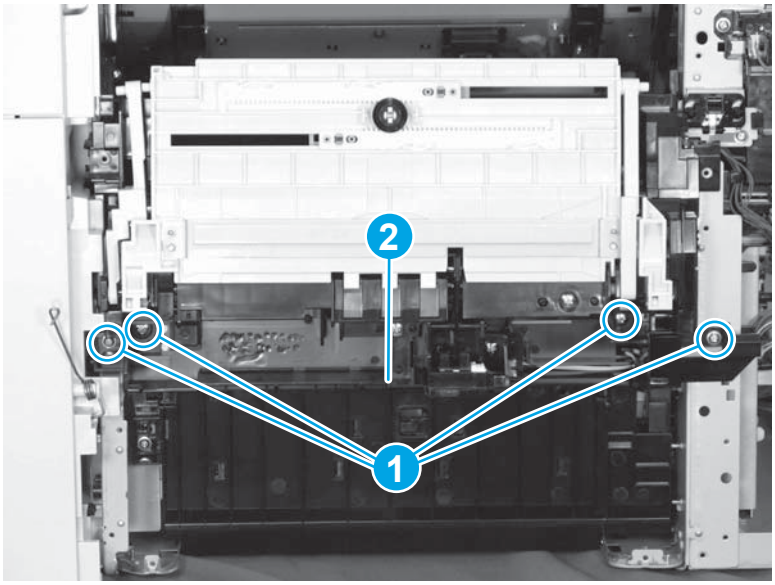
4. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-1010 Remove four screws



5. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-1011 Remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly



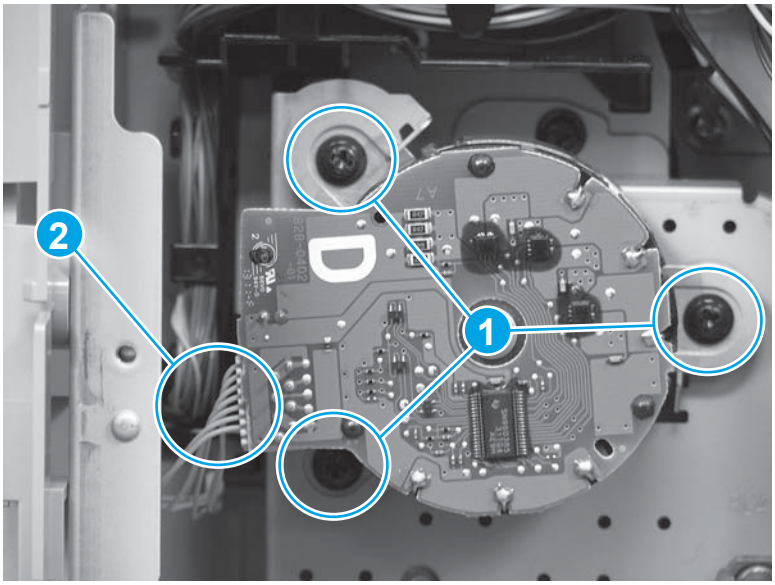
Step 11: Remove the feed motor

▲ At the DC controller side of the product, remove three screws (callout 1), remove the feed motor, and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

NOTE: The feed motor is located at the left-hand side of the DC controller.

TIP: Slightly turn the motor counter clockwise to disengage it from the mounting bracket.

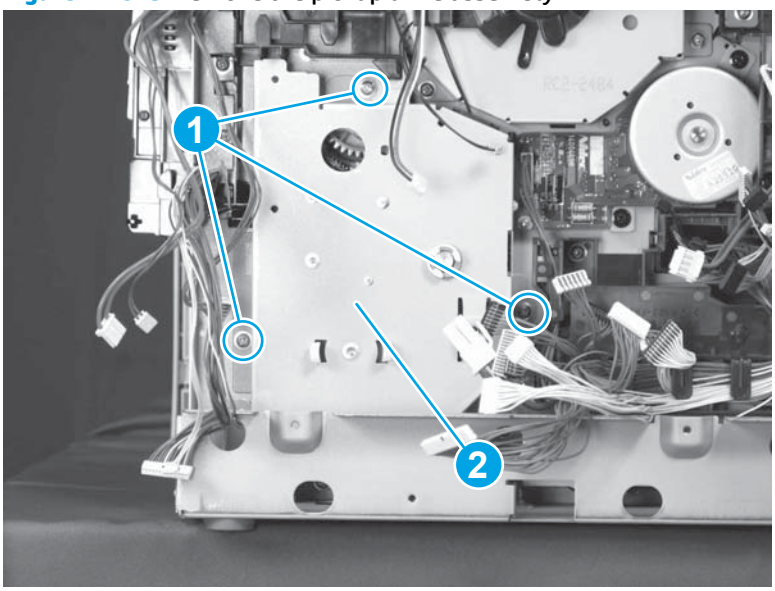
Figure 1-1012 Remove the feed motor



Step 12: Remove the pickup drive assembly

▲ Remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the pickup drive assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-1013 Remove the pickup drive assembly



Step 13: Remove the cassette pickup assembly

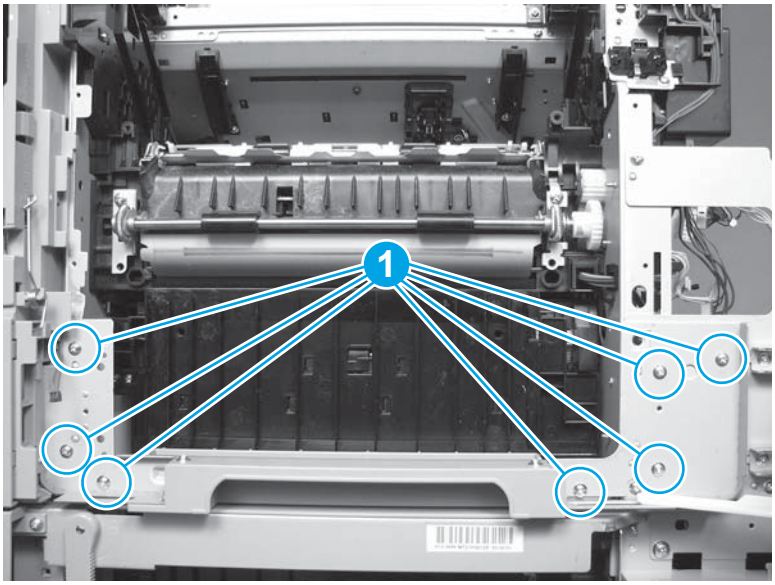
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the cassette rail (callout 2).

Figure 1-1014 Remove one screw and the cassette rail



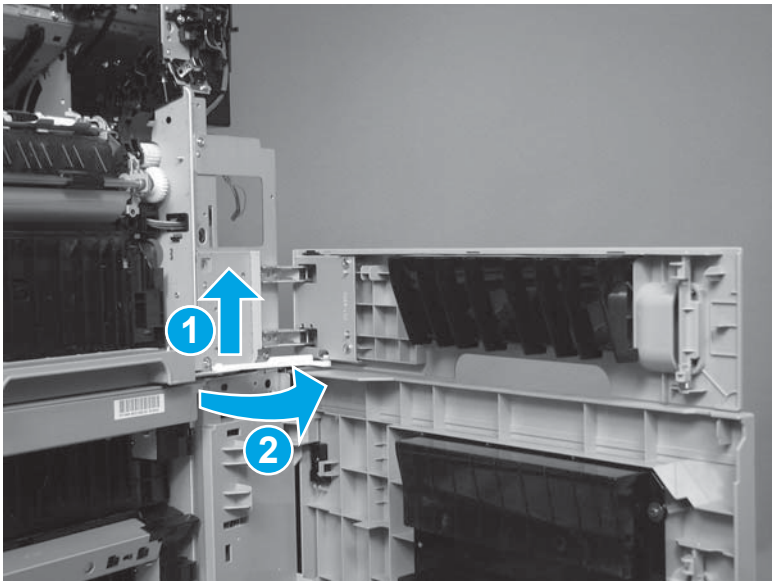
2. Remove seven screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-1015 Remove seven screws



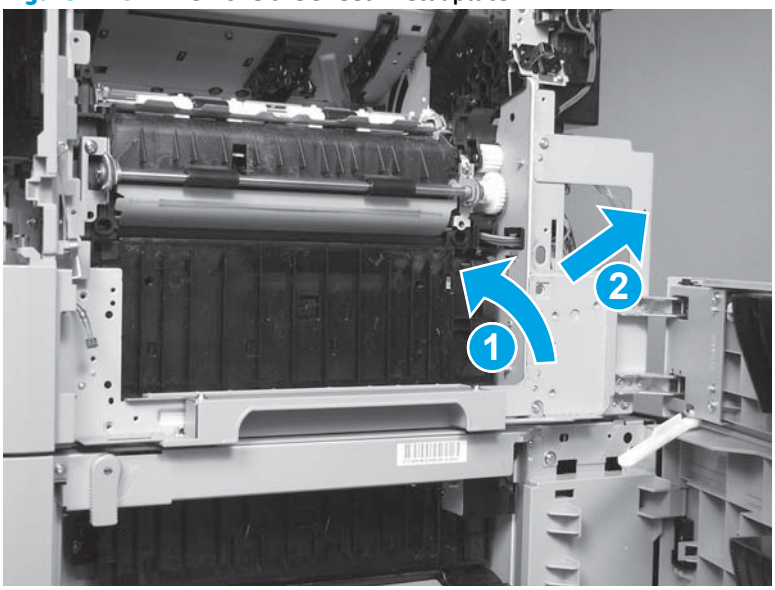
3. Open the right lower cover, lift up on the retainer arm to disengage it (callout 1), and then rotate it out of the way (callout 2).

Figure 1-1016 Disengage the cover retainer



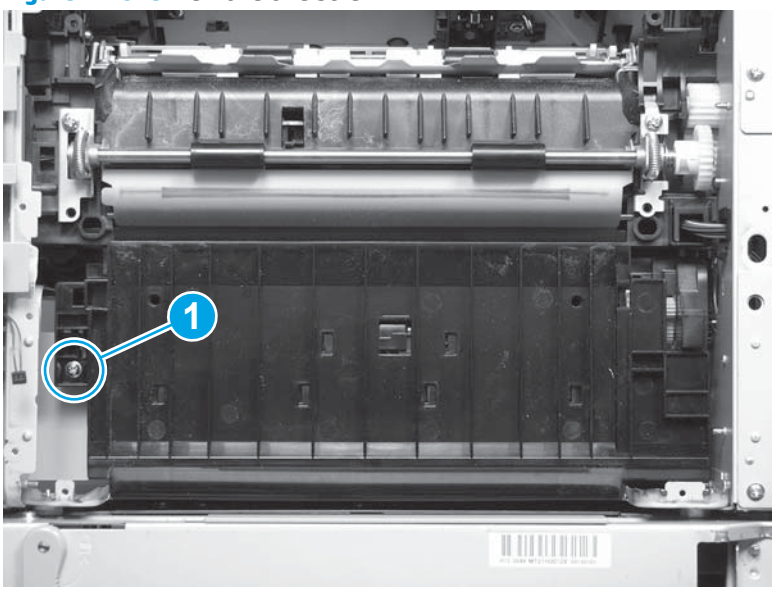
4. Rotate the sheet-metal plate up (callout 1), and then remove it (callout 2).

Figure 1-1017 Remove the sheet-metal plate



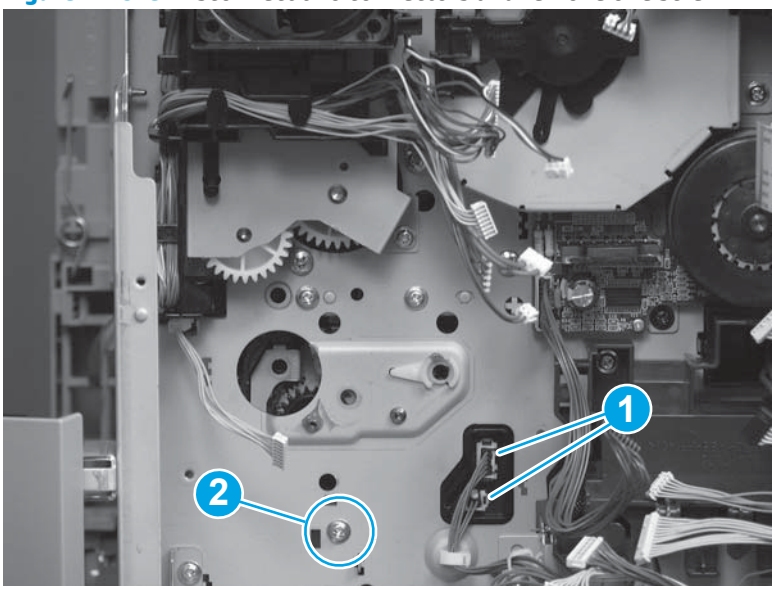
5. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-1018 Remove one screw



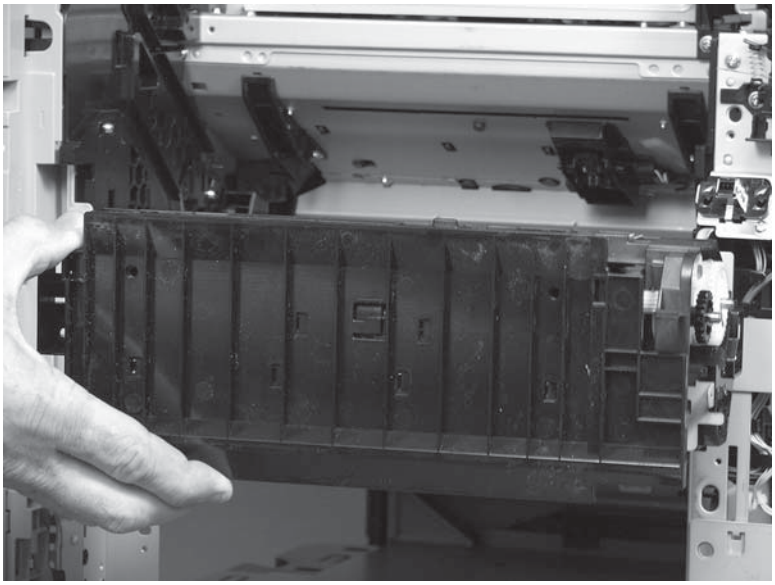
6. At the DC controller side of the product, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 1-1019 Disconnect two connectors and remove one screw



7. Remove the cassette pickup assembly.

Figure 1-1020 Remove the cassette pickup assembly

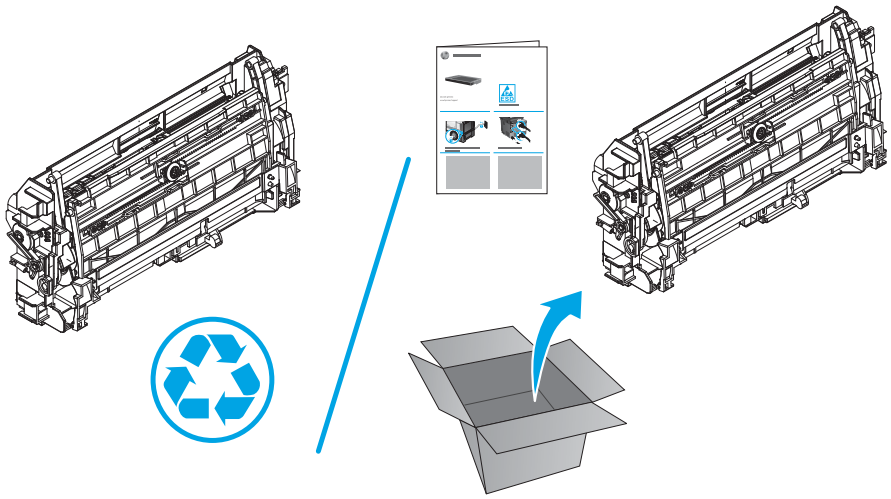


Step 14: Unpack the replacement cassette pickup assembly

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

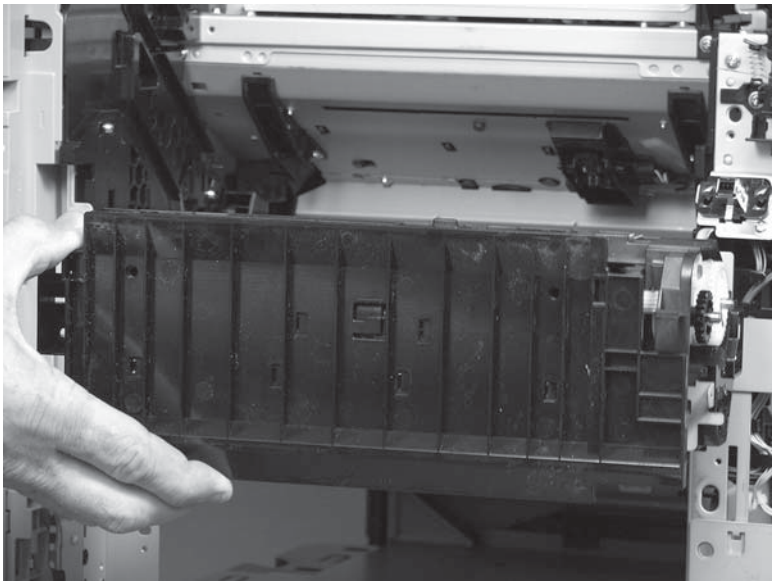
NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 15: Install the cassette pickup assembly

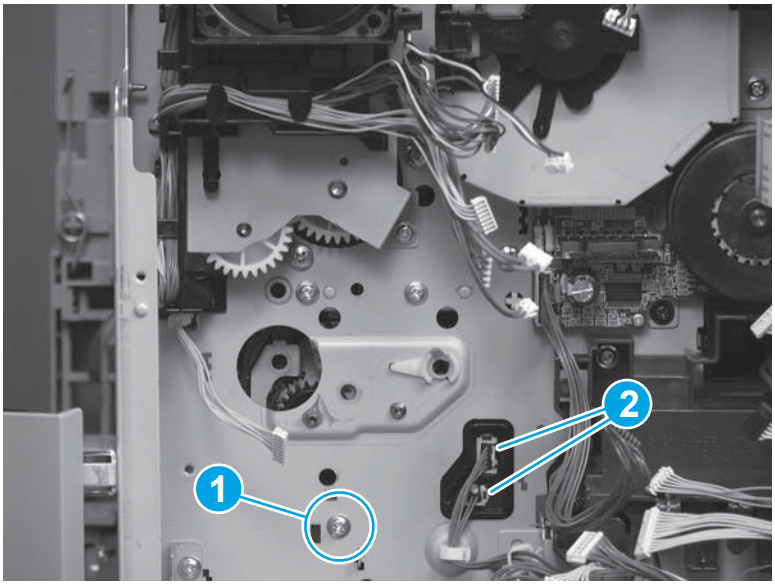
1. Position the cassette pickup assembly on the product.

Figure 1-1021 Install the cassette pickup assembly



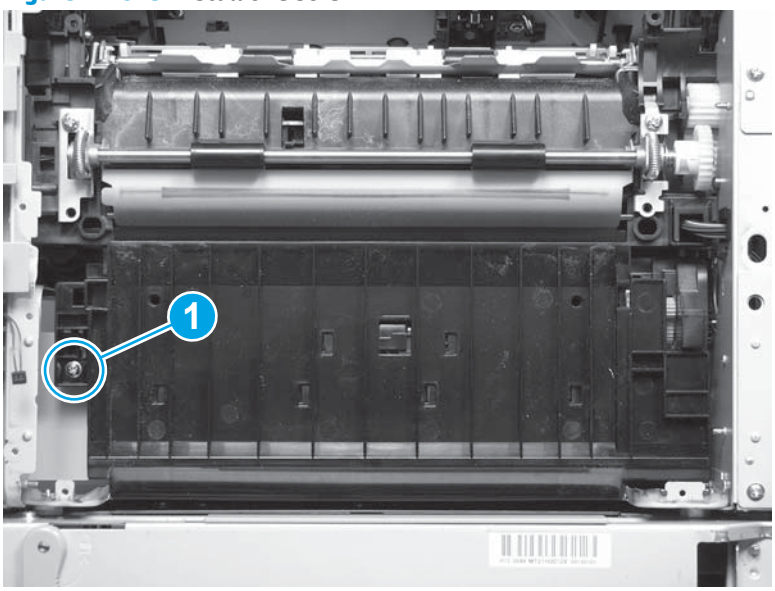
2. At the DC controller side of the product, install one screw (callout 1), and then connect two connectors (callout 2).

Figure 1-1022 Install one screw and connect two connectors



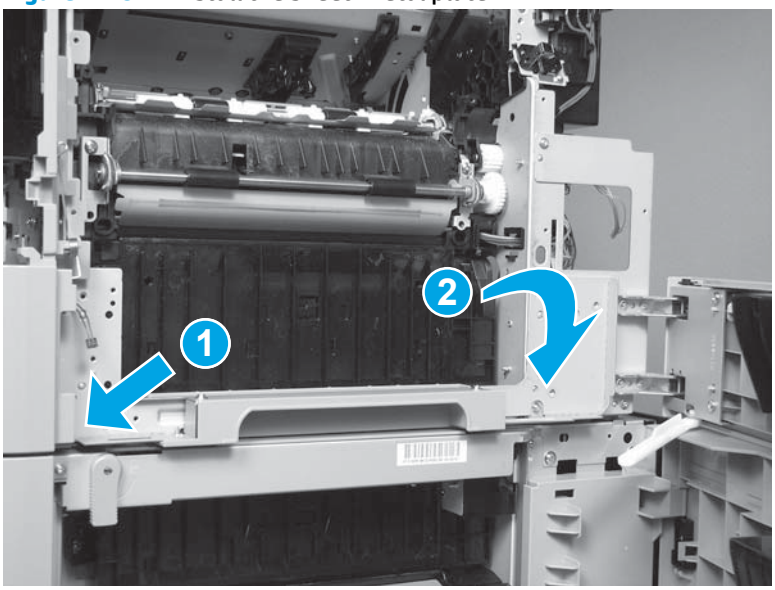
3. Install one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-1023 Install one screw



4. Position the corner of the sheet-metal plate (callout 1) on the product, and then rotate it down (callout 2) to install it.

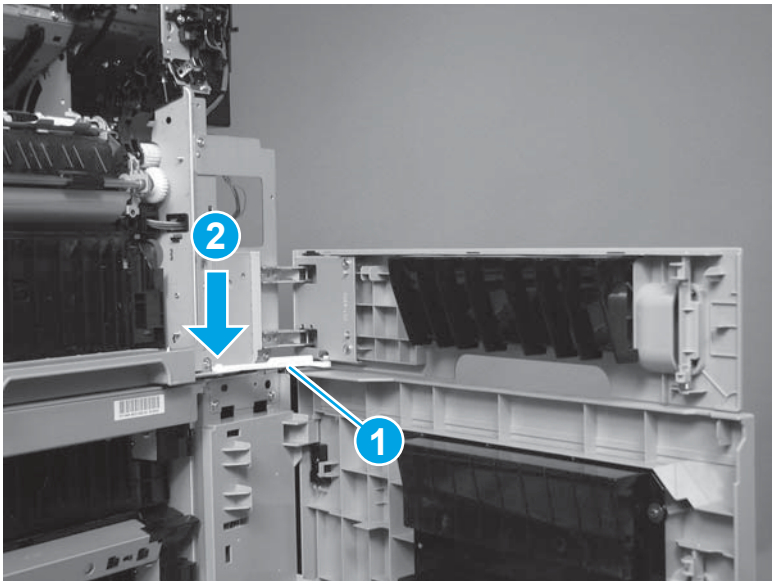
Figure 1-1024 Install the sheet-metal plate



5. Rotate the retainer arm (callout 1) into place, and then engage it with the slot in the product (callout 2).

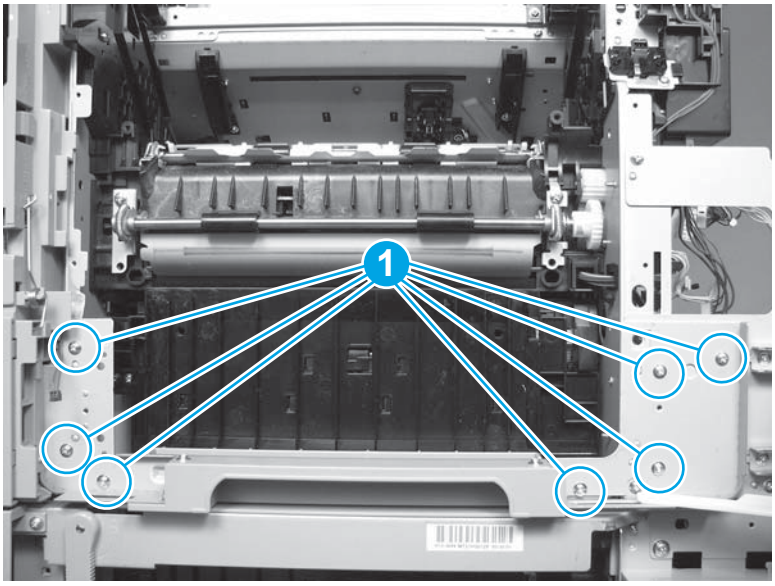
TIP: Slightly raise the sheet-metal plate to make engaging the retainer arm easier.

Figure 1-1025 Engage the cover retainer



6. Install seven screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-1026 Install seven screws



7. Install the cassette rail (callout 1), and then install one screw (callout 2).

Figure 1-1027 Install the cassette rail and one screw

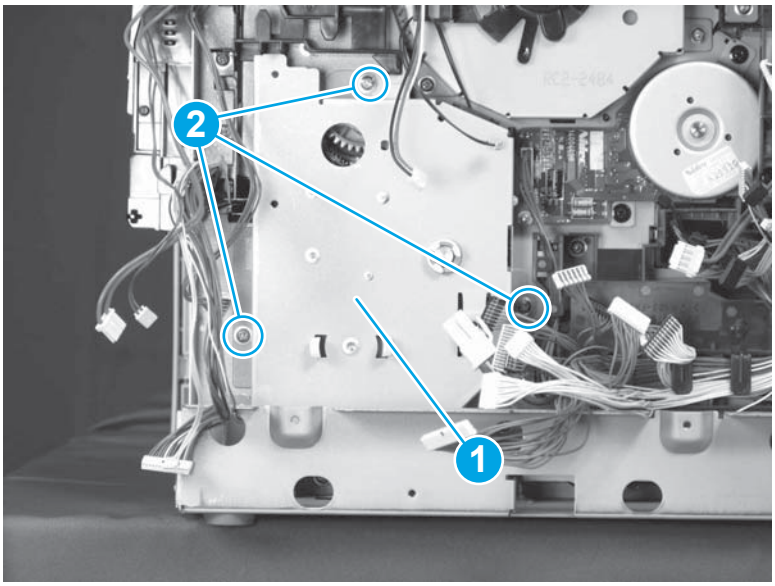


Step 16: Install the pickup drive assembly

1. Position the pickup drive assembly (callout 1) on the product, and then install three screws (callout 2).

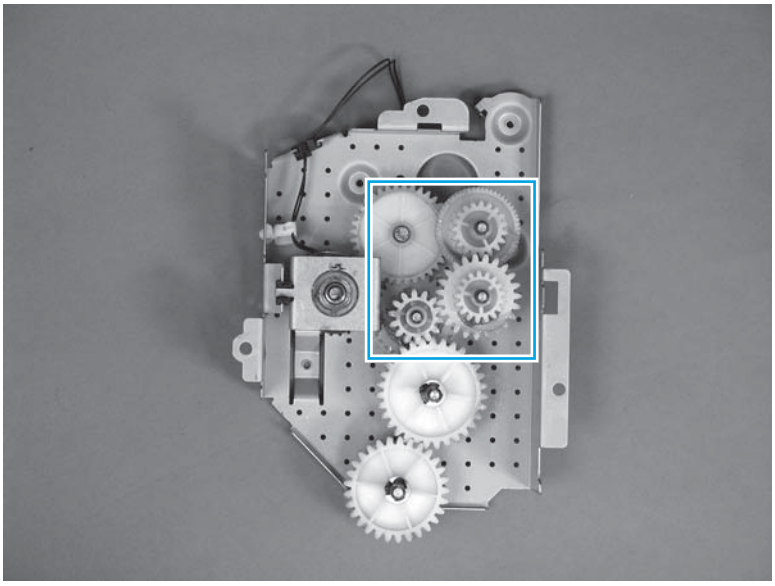
CAUTION: Some of the gears on the backside of the assembly are not captive.

Figure 1-1028 Install the pickup drive assembly



2. If the gears located on the backside of the assembly become dislodged, replace them as shown in the figure.

Figure 1-1029 Check the pickup drive assembly gears

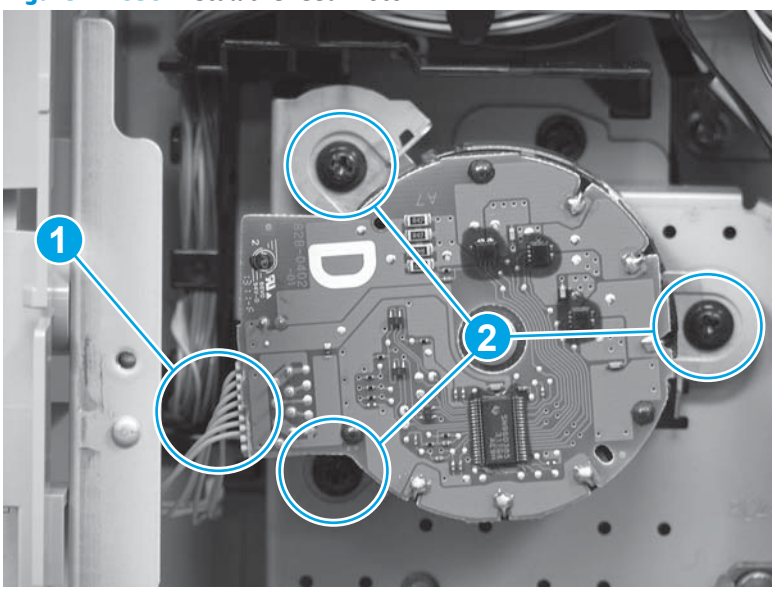


Step 17: Install the feed motor

▲ Connect one connector (callout 1), and then install three screws (callout 2).

TIP: It easier to connect the connector before mounting the motor to the chassis.

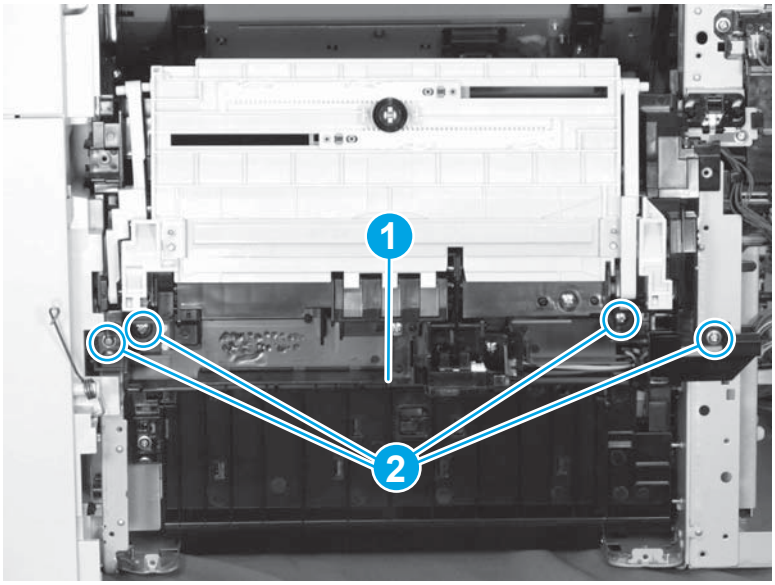
Figure 1-1030 Install the feed motor



Step 18: Install the Tray 1 pickup assembly

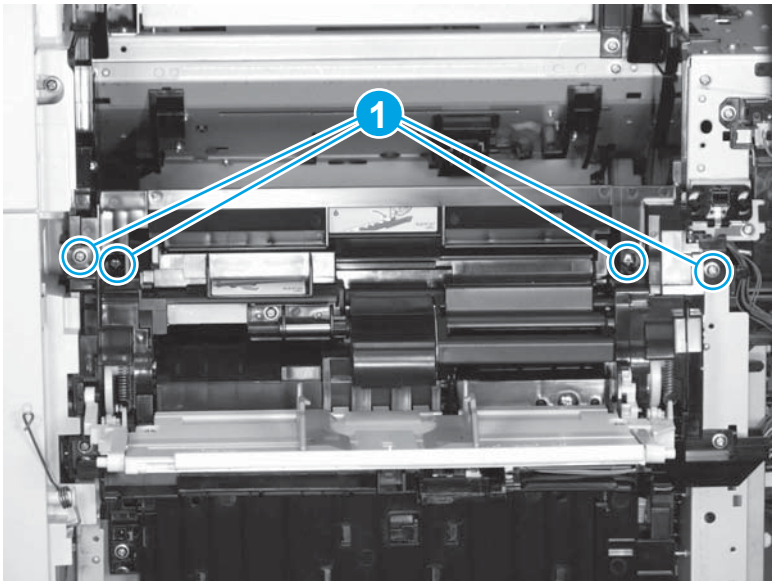
1. Position the Tray 1 pickup assembly (callout 1) on the product, and then install four screws (callout 2).

Figure 1-1031 Install the Tray 1 pickup assembly



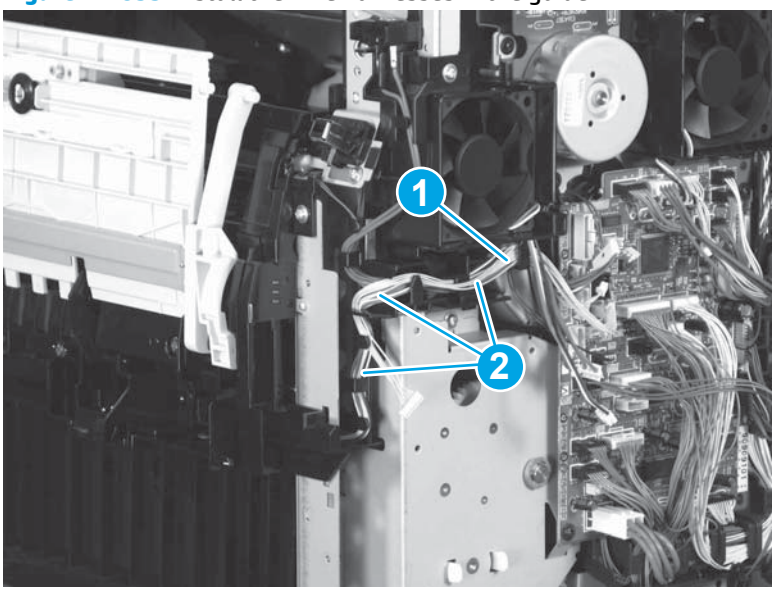
2. Install four screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-1032 Install four screws



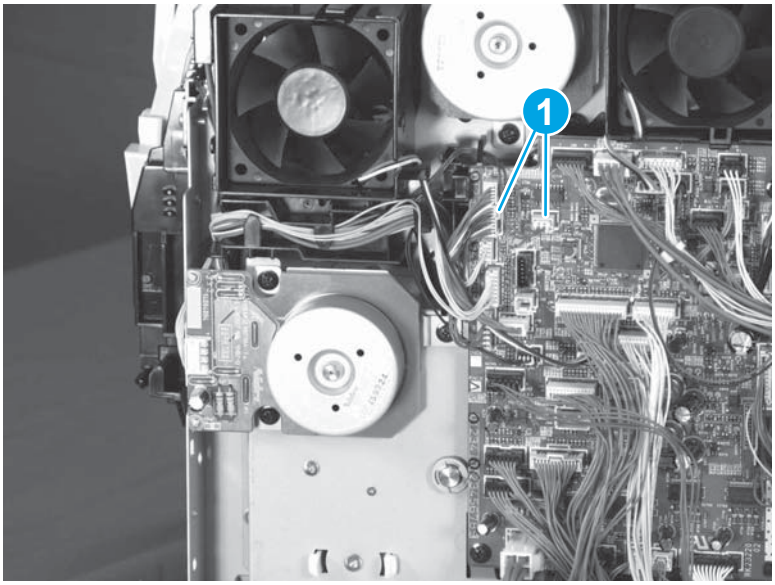
3. Install the wire harnesses (callout 1) in the guide (callout 2).

Figure 1-1033 Install the wire harnesses in the guide



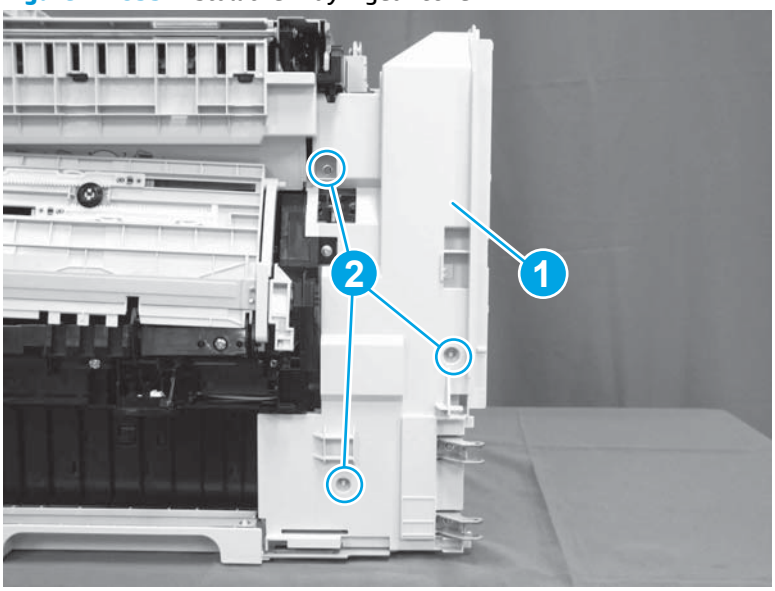
4. Connect two connectors (J71 and J81; callout 1).

Figure 1-1034 Connect two connectors



5. Position the Tray 1 gear cover (callout 1) on the product, and then install three screws (callout 2).

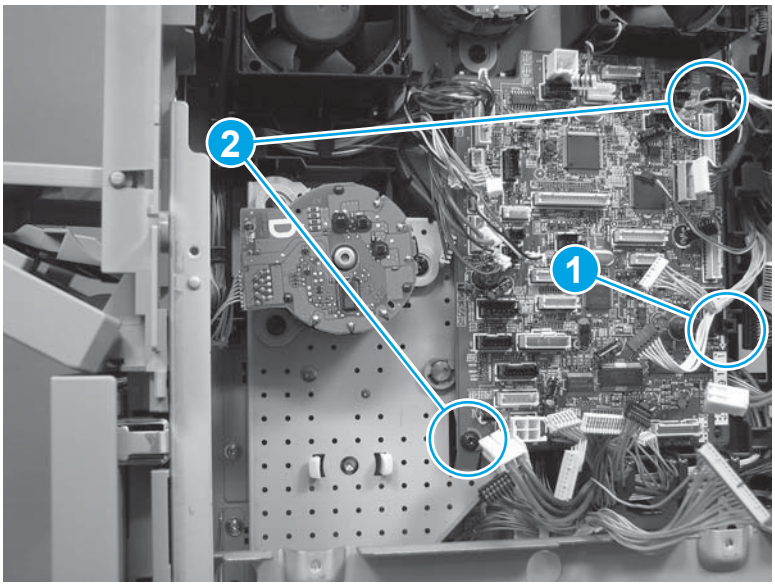
Figure 1-1035 Install the Tray 1 gear cover



Step 19: Install the DC controller

1. Position the DC controller on the product, engage one tab (callout 1), and then install two screws (callout 2).

Figure 1-1036 Install the DC controller

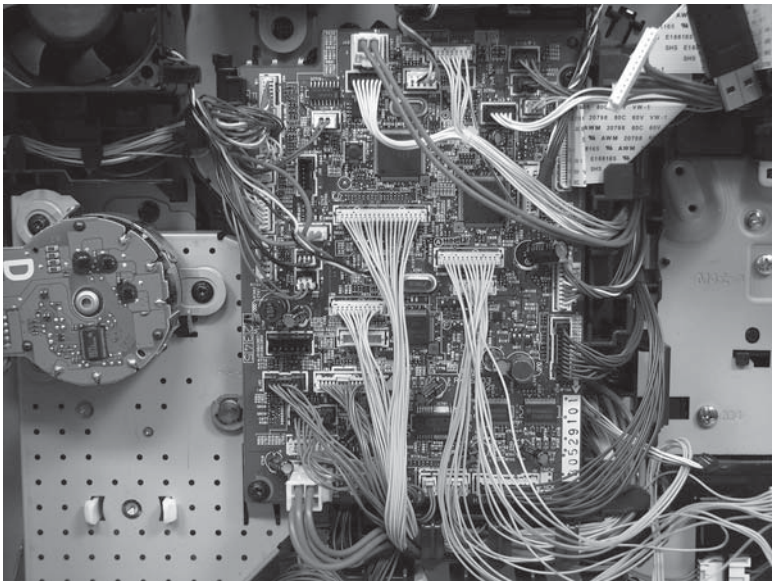


2. Connect all of the connectors on the DC controller.

- 34 wire-harness connectors
- 1 flat-flexible cable (FFC)

Reinstallation tip: Connectors J42, J59, and J80 are empty.

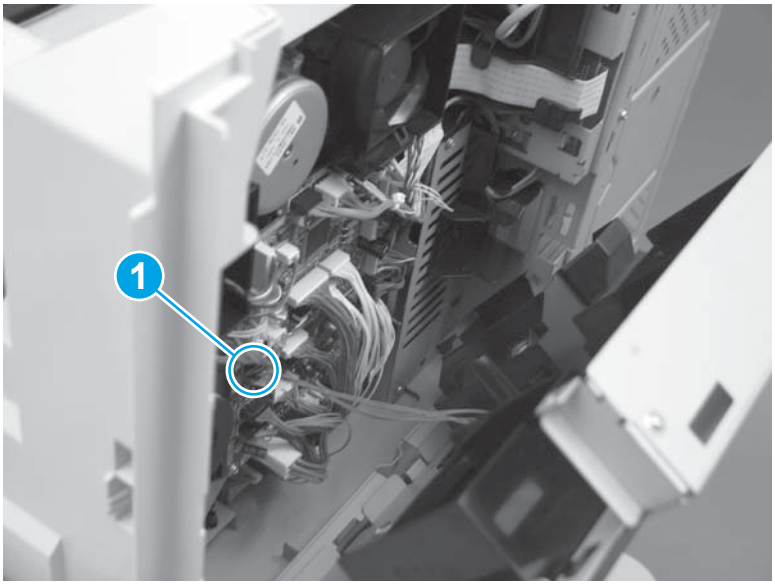
Figure 1-1037 Connect all of the connectors



Step 20: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly

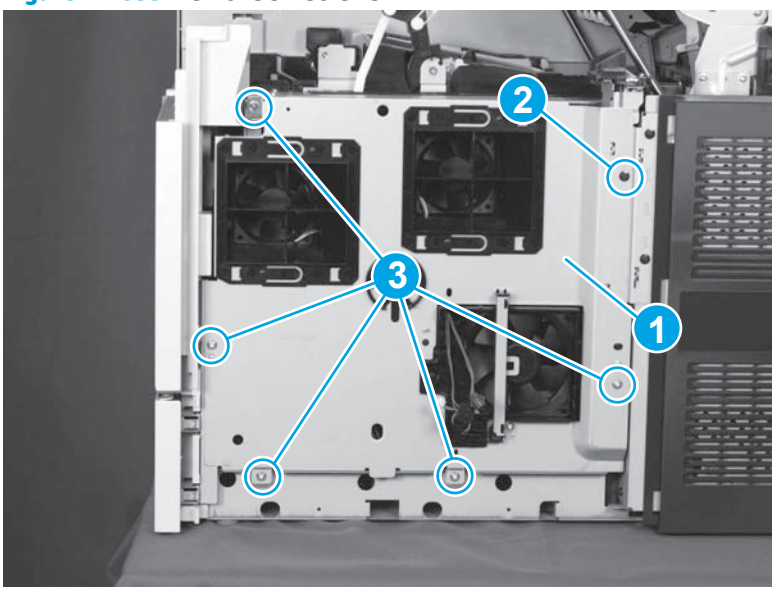
1. Position the shield near the product, and then connect one connector (J42; callout 1).

Figure 1-1038 Install the shield and connect one connector



2. Rotate the top of the shield (callout 1) toward the product, install one black screw (callout 2), and then install five silver screws (callout 3).

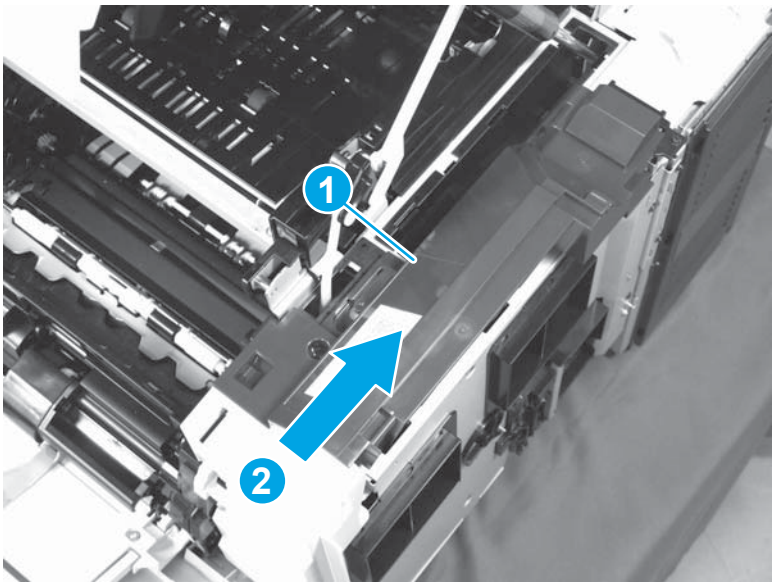
Figure 1-1039 Remove six screws



Step 21: Install the rear-top cover

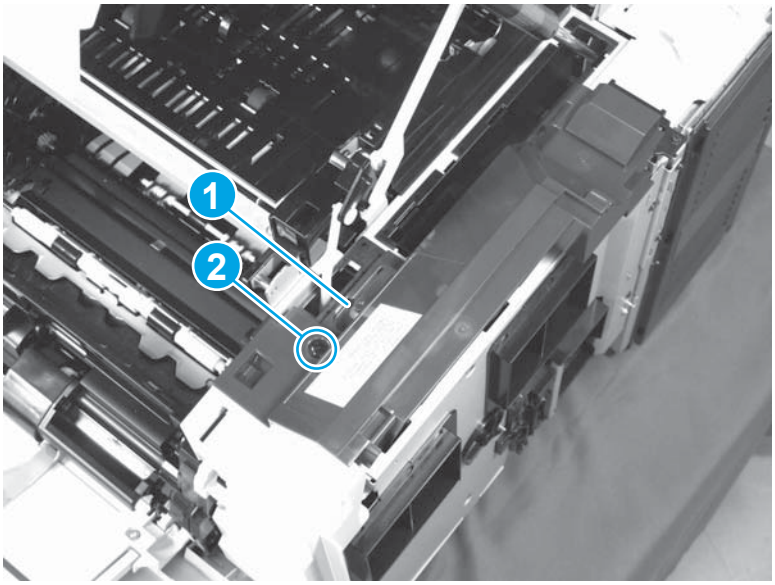
1. Position the cover on the product, Push the cover (callout 1) away Tray 1 to install it (callout 2).

Figure 1-1040 Install the cover



2. Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged, and then install one screw (callout 2).

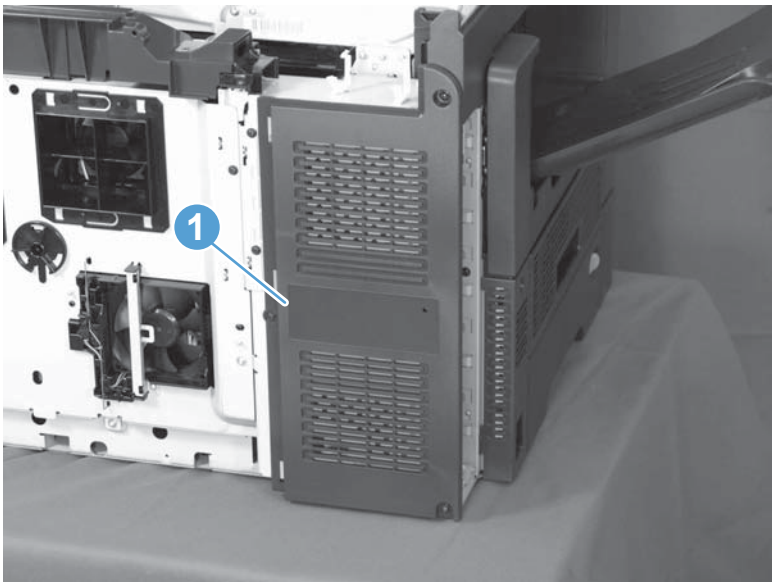
Figure 1-1041 Install one screw



Step 22: Install the rear-left cover

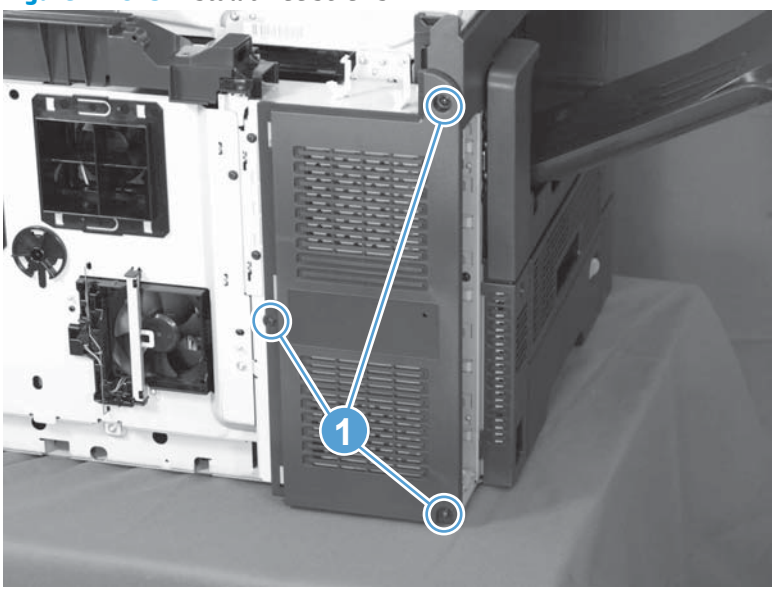
1. Position the cover (callout 1) on the product.

Figure 1-1042 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1).

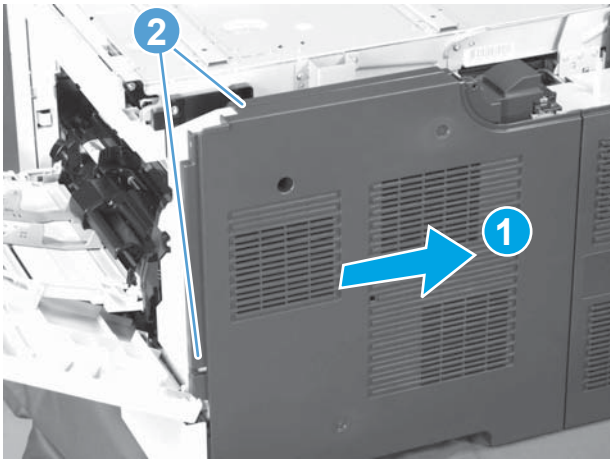
Figure 1-1043 Install three screws



Step 23: Install the rear-right cover

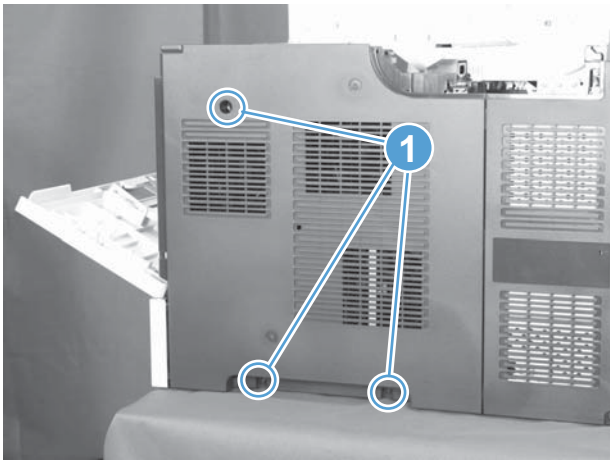
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

Figure 1-1044 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

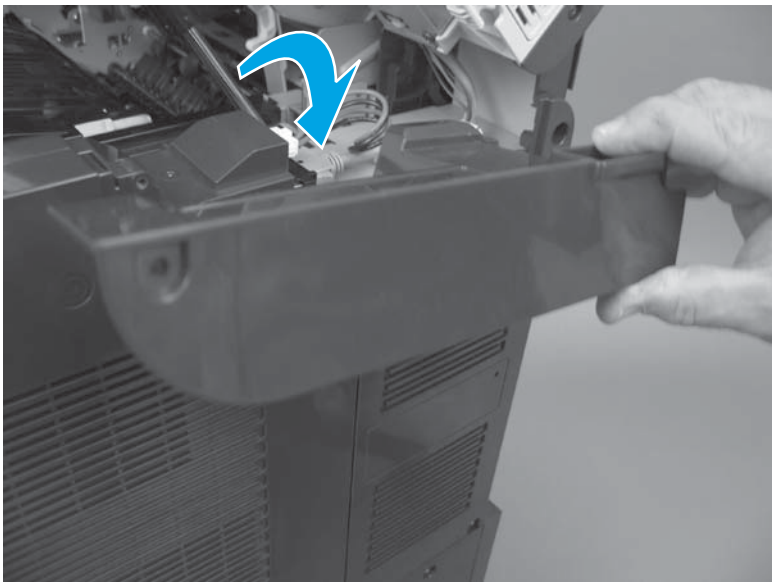
Figure 1-1045 Install three screws



Step 24: Install the image scanner cable cover

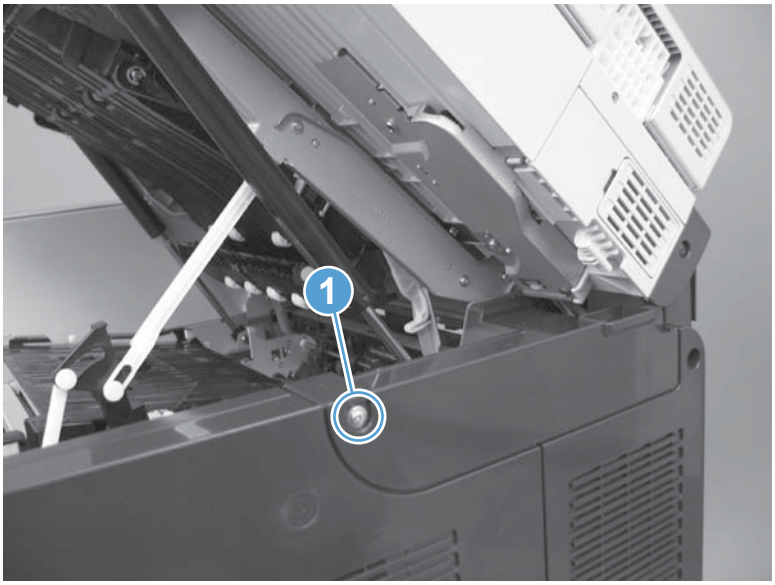
1. Install the cover on the product.

Figure 1-1046 Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

Figure 1-1047 Install one screw

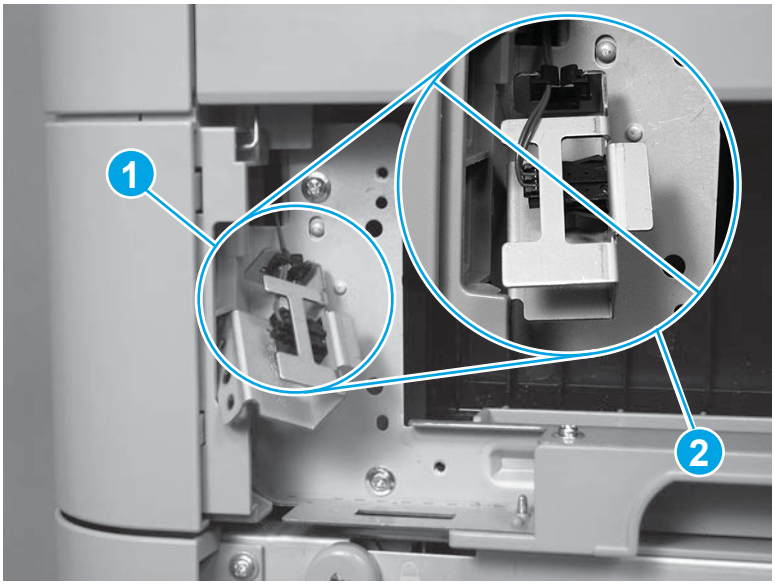


Step 25: Install the cassette-door-open detection switch

1. Connect one connector, and then install the wire harness in the retainer (callout 1).

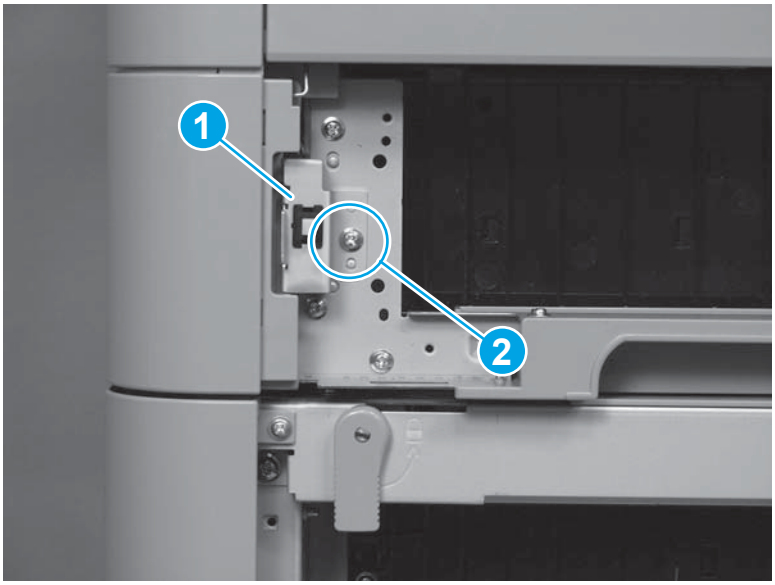
IMPORTANT: Make sure that the wire harness is routed *inside* the bracket. It must not be routed outside of the bracket (callout 2).

Figure 1-1048 Connect one connector



2. Position the switch assembly (callout 1) on the product, and then install one screw (callout 2).

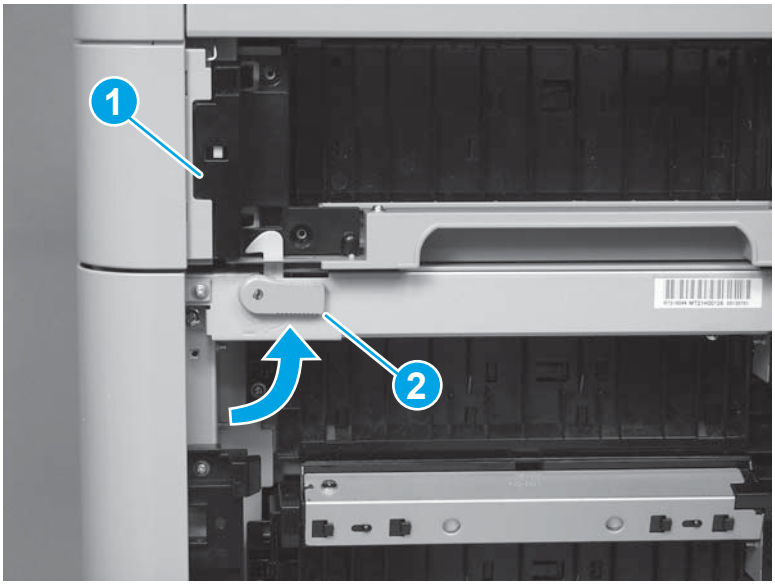
Figure 1-1049 Install one screw



3. Install the switch cover (callout 1).

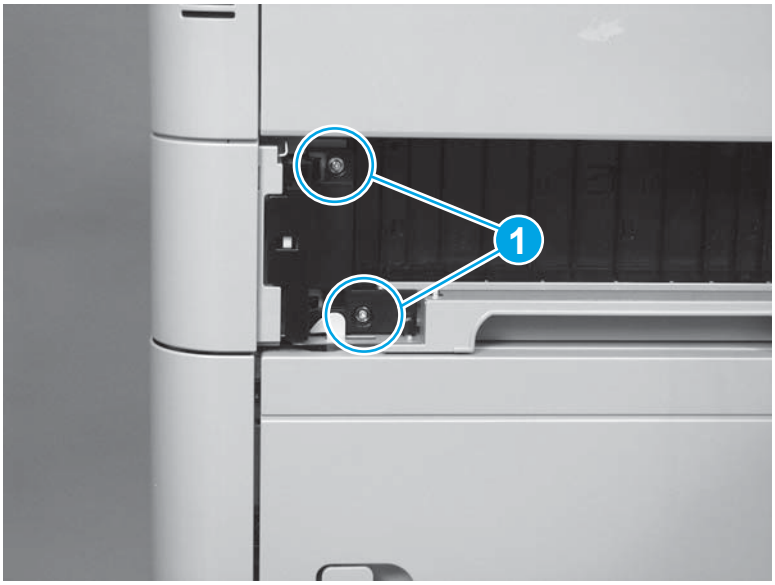
NOTE: If the product is installed on an optional input accessory, make sure to rotate the blue lever (callout 2) to lock the latch.

Figure 1-1050 Install the cover



4. Install two screws (callout 1), and then close all of the doors.

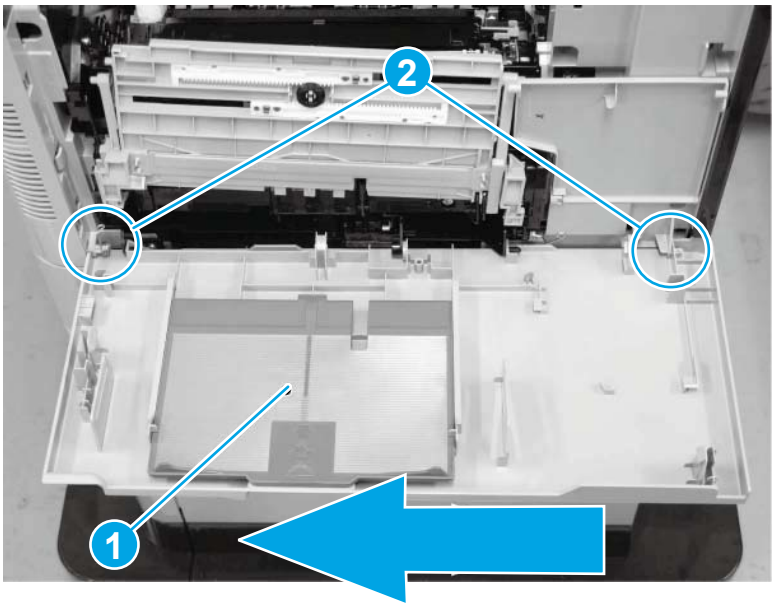
Figure 1-1051 Install two screws



Step 26: Install the Tray 1 cover

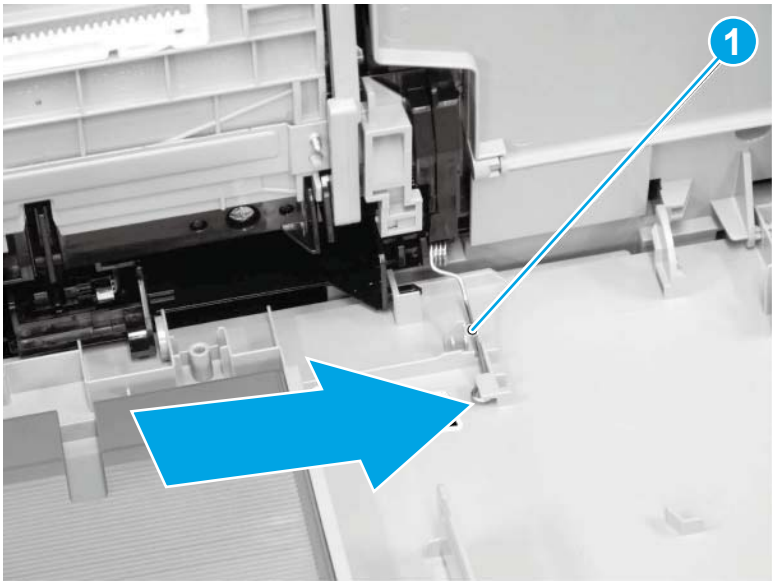
1. Slide the cover (callout 1) toward the front of the product to install it on the hinge pins (callout 2).

Figure 1-1052 Install the cover



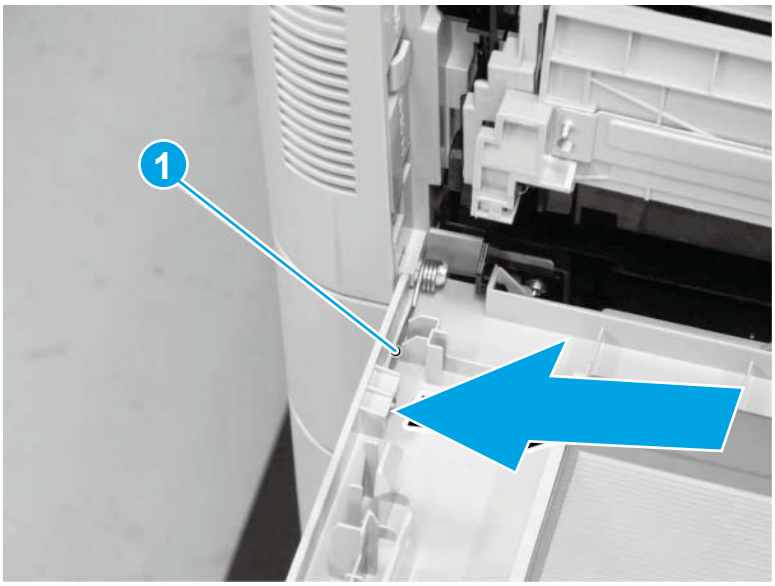
2. Engage the right-side spring arm (callout 1).

Figure 1-1053 Engage the right-side spring



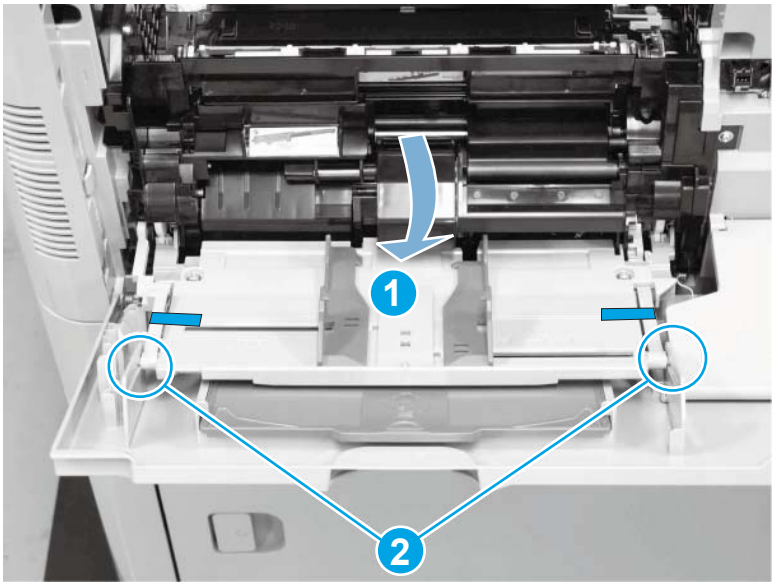
3. Engage the left-side spring arm (callout 1).

Figure 1-1054 Engage the left-side spring



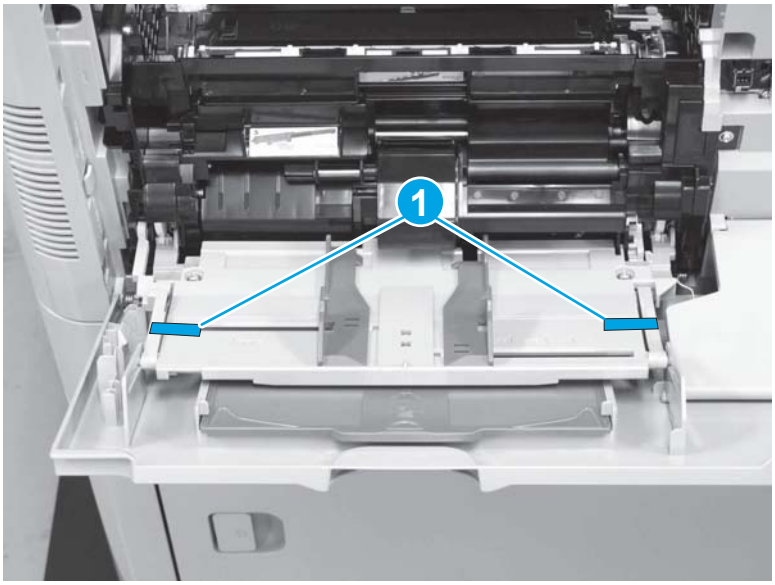
4. Lower the inner tray assembly (callout 1), and then engage the two outer retaining pins (callout 2) on the cover.

Figure 1-1055 Engage two outer retaining pins



5. Remove the low adhesive tape (callout 1), and then close the tray.

Figure 1-1056 Remove the low adhesive tape

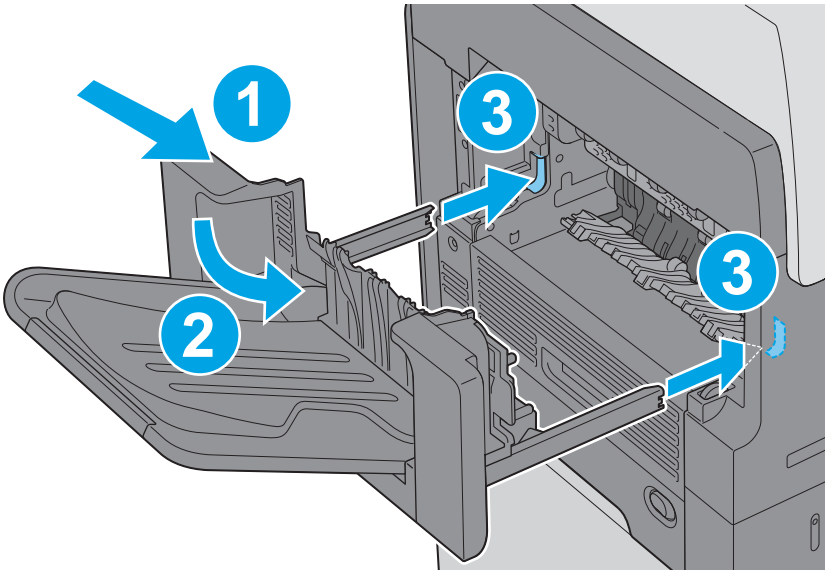


Step 27: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

▲ Do one of the following:

a. **M630dn and M630f**: Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), and then slide the bin base into the product.

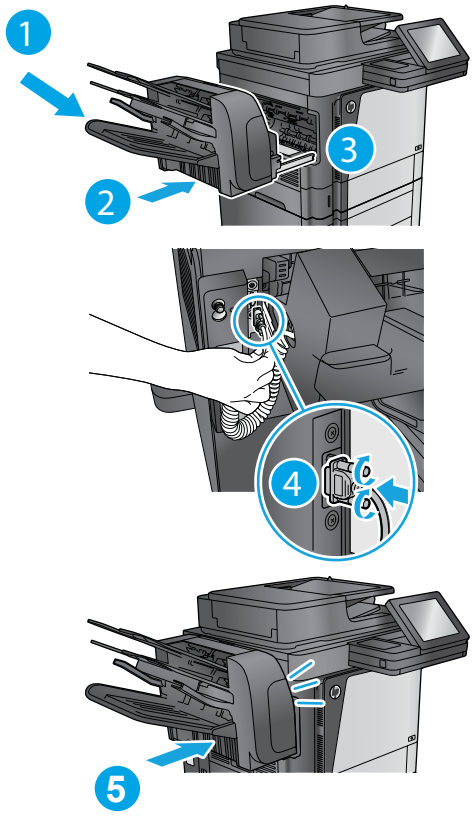
Figure 1-1057 Install the output bin



b. **M630z**: Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), connect the interface cable (callout 4). and then slide the stapling mailbox (callout 5) into the product.

TIP: After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed stapling mailbox.

Figure 1-1058 Install the stapling mailbox



Step 28: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Optional input and output accessories

NOTE: HP recommends removing the accessories from the product before servicing them.

Some of the figures in this section might look slightly different than the M630 accessories. However, the procedures are correct for this product.

- 1x500-sheet paper feeder
- 1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet
- 2,500-sheet high capacity input (HCI)
- Stapling mailbox

1x500-sheet paper feeder

NOTE: HP recommends removing the accessory from the product before servicing it.

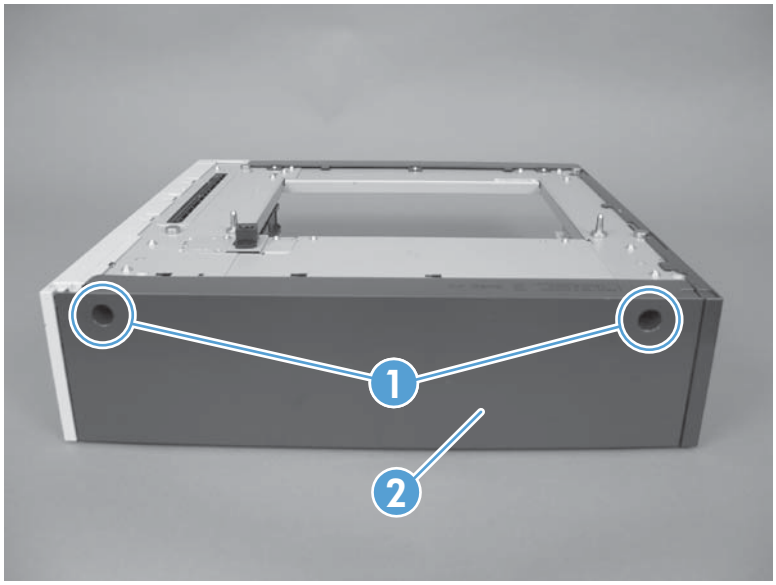
Some of the figures in this section might look slightly different than the M630 accessory. However, the procedures are correct for this product.

- Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)
- Left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)
- Right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)
- Right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)
- Front-upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)
- Pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)
- Pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)
- Lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)
- Lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)
- Controller printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the rear cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-1059 Remove the rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



Left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) on page 658.

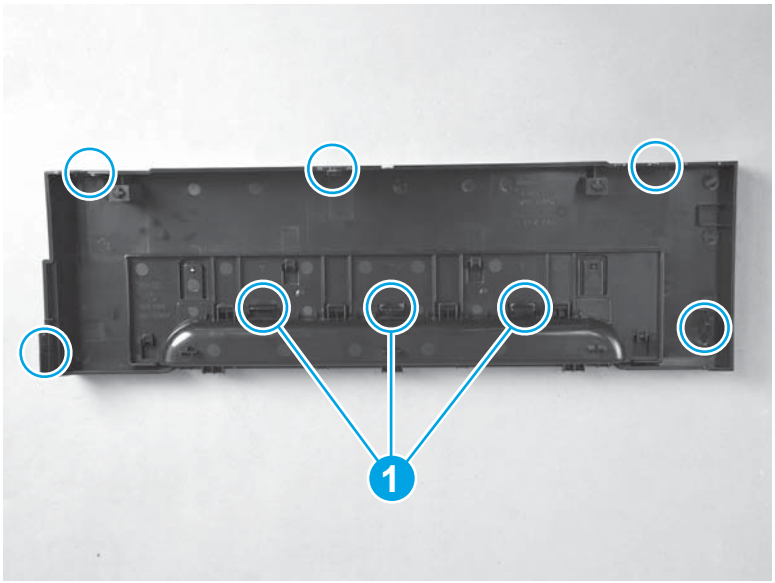
NOTE: Remove the Tray 3 cassette if it has not already been removed.

Remove the left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

1. The figure below shows the left cover removed. Take note of the locations of the tabs.

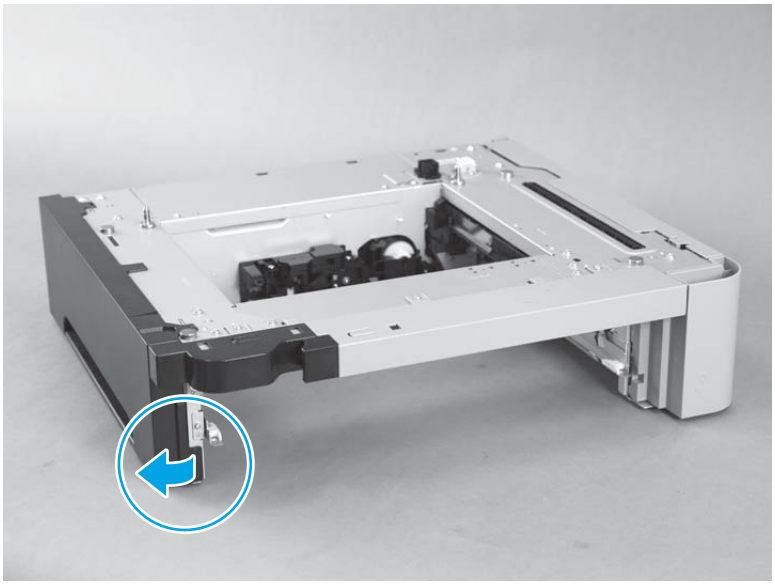
NOTE: The three tabs (callout 1) along the inside middle are of the cover are difficult to see when removing the cover.

Figure 1-1060 Left cover tab locations (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



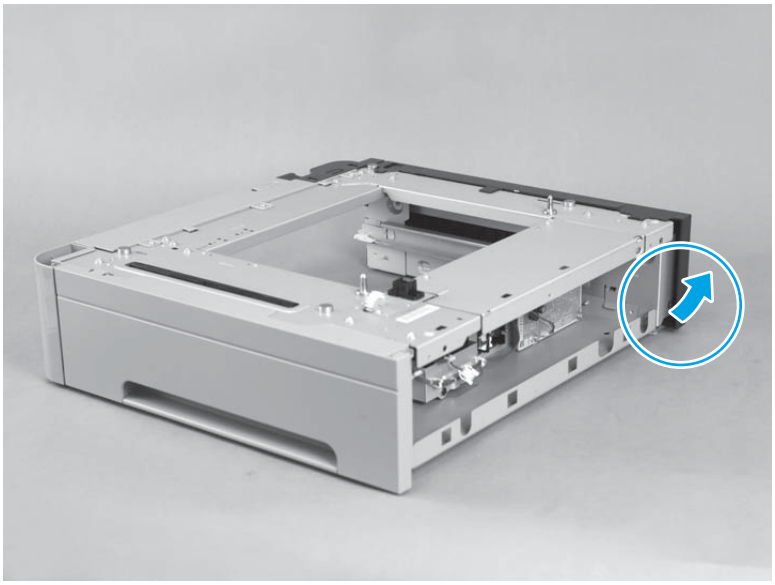
2. At the front of the accessory, release one tab, and then slightly separate the corner of the cover from the chassis.

Figure 1-1061 Release one tab (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



3. At the rear of the accessory, release one tab, and then slightly separate the corner of the cover from the chassis.

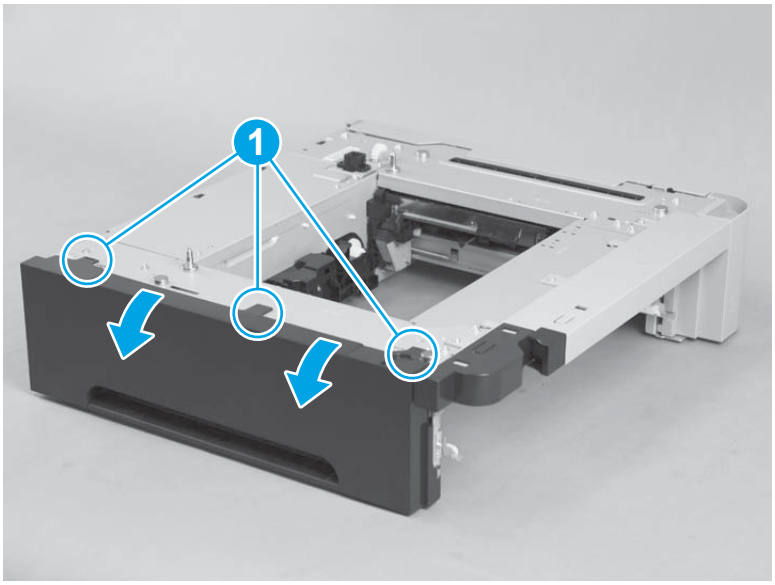
Figure 1-1062 Release one tab (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



4. At the top of the accessory, release three tabs (callout 1), and then slightly separate the top edge of the cover from the chassis.

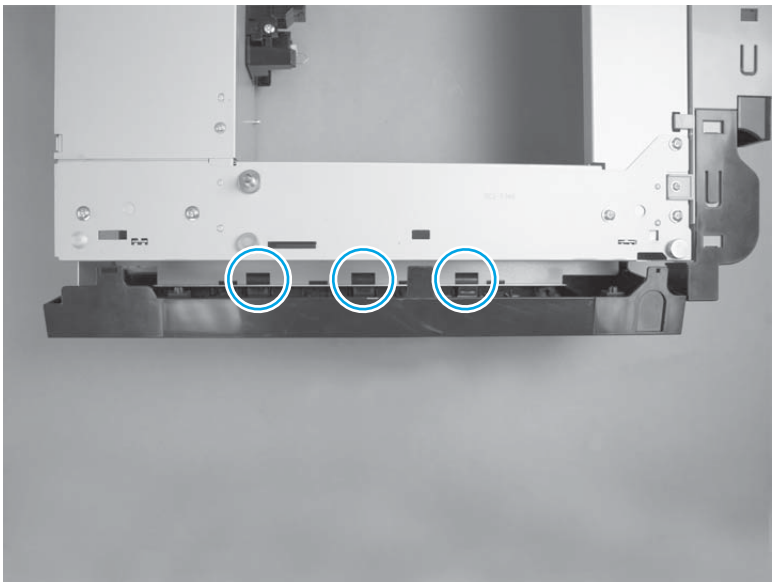
CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the chassis by three inner tabs.

Figure 1-1063 Release three tabs (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



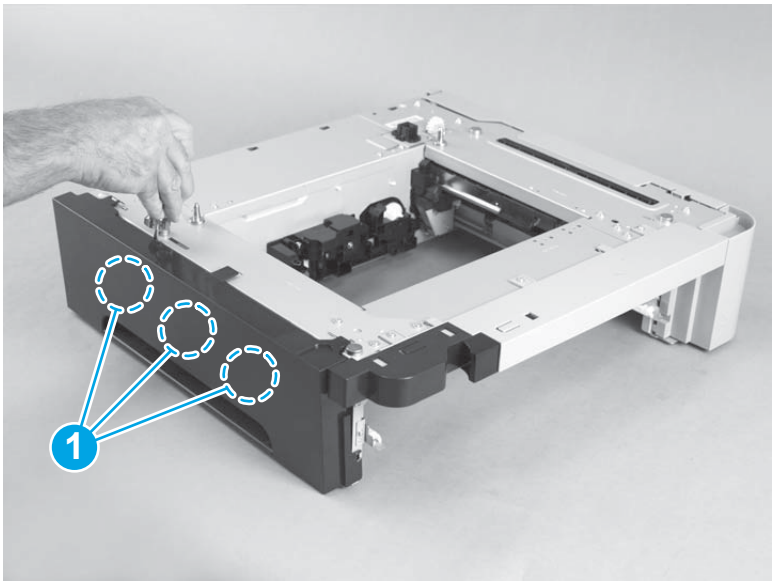
5. Look down at the top of the accessory, and then locate the three inner mounting tabs.

Figure 1-1064 Locate three tabs (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



6. Use a long-blade screwdriver to release the three inner mounting tabs (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-1065 Remove the left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



Right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) on page 658.

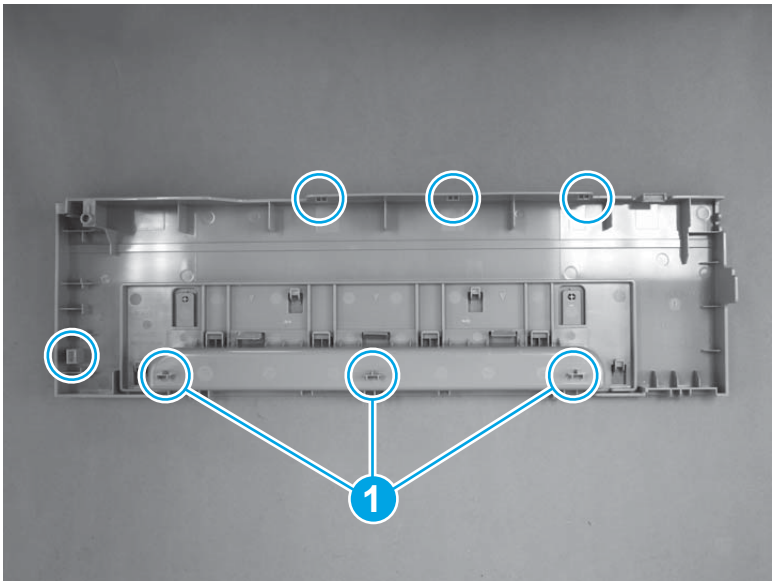
NOTE: Remove the Tray 3 cassette if it has not already been removed.

Remove the right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

1. The figure below shows the left cover removed. Take note of the locations of the tabs.

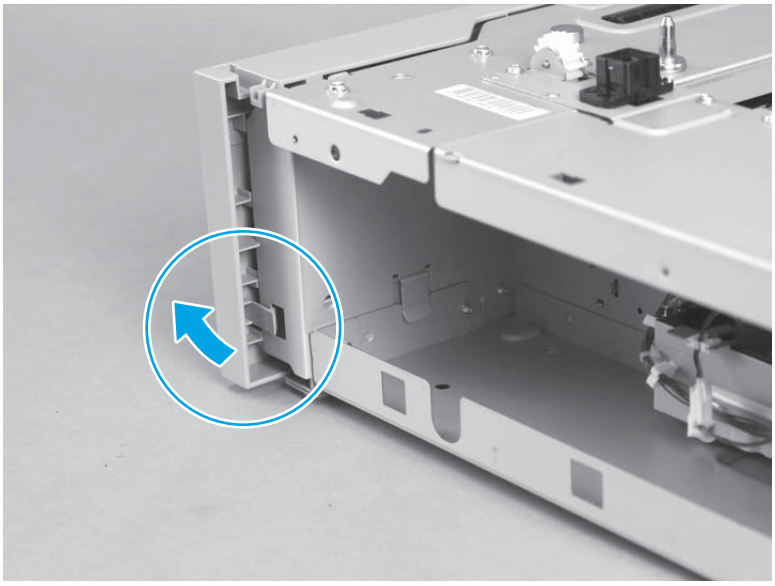
NOTE: The three tabs (callout 1) along the inside middle are of the cover are difficult to see when removing the cover.

Figure 1-1066 Left cover tab locations (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



2. At the rear of the accessory, release one tab, and then slightly separate the corner of the cover from the chassis.

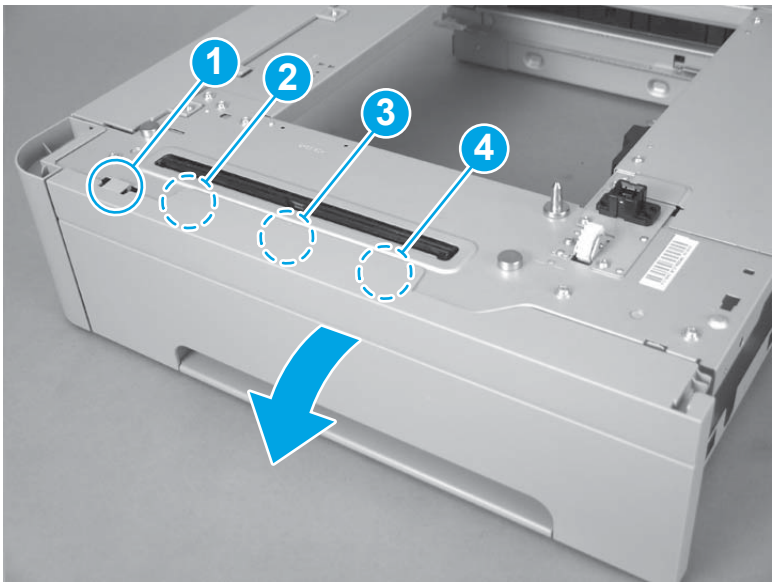
Figure 1-1067 Release one tab (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



3. At the top of the accessory, release four tabs in the order shown below (callout 1/2/3/4), and then slightly separate the top edge of the cover from the chassis.

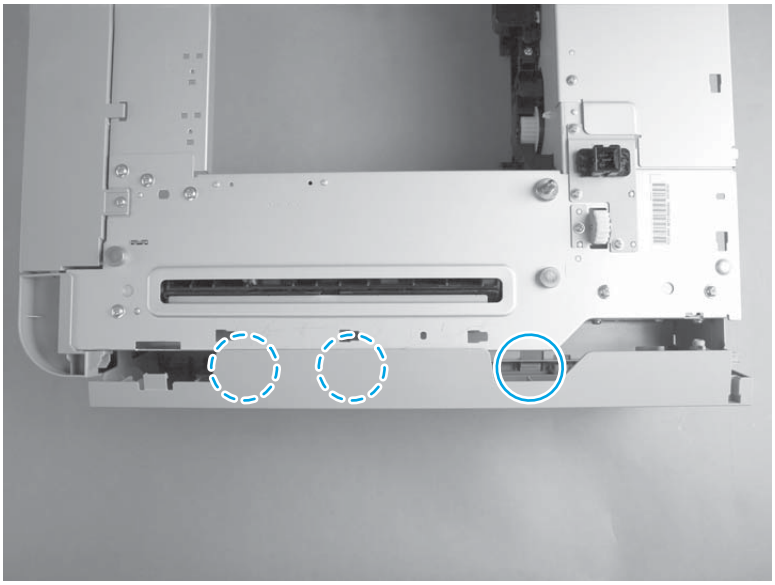
CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the chassis by three inner tabs.

Figure 1-1068 Release four tabs (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



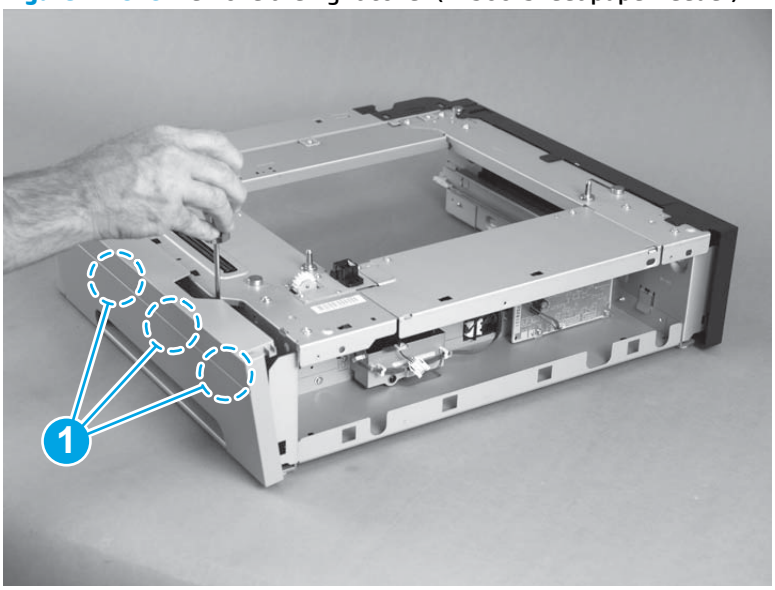
4. Look down at the top of the accessory, and then locate the three inner mounting tabs.

Figure 1-1069 Locate three tabs (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



5. Use a long-blade screwdriver to release the three inner mounting tabs (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-1070 Remove the right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



Right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

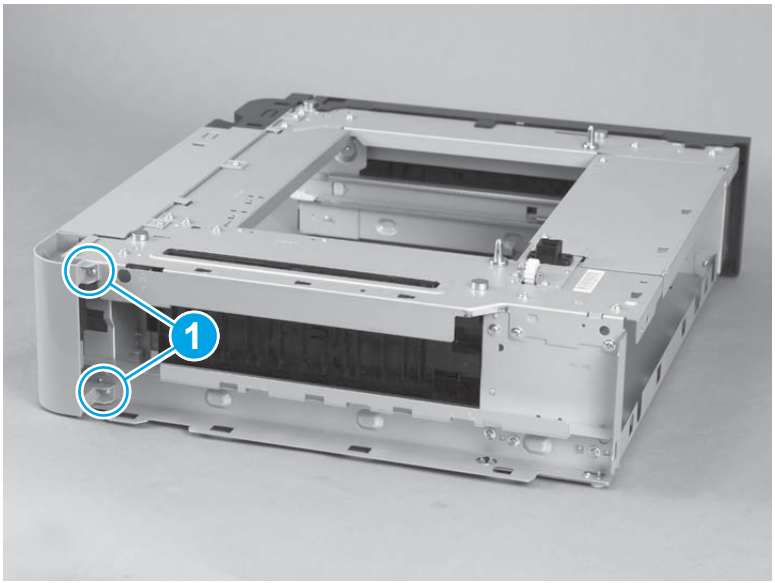
- Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) on page 658.
- Right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See Right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) on page 663.

NOTE: Remove the Tray 3 cassette if it has not already been removed.

Remove the right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

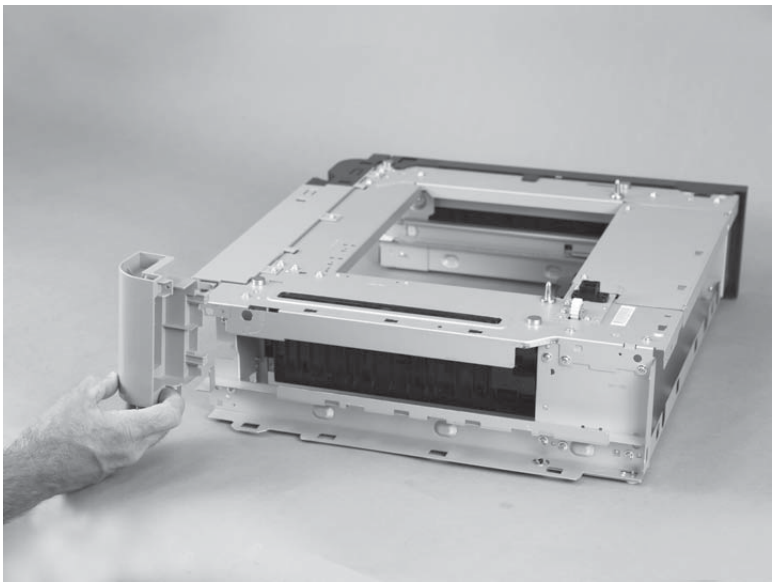
1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-1071 Remove two screws (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



2. Remove the cover.

Figure 1-1072 Remove the cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



Front-upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

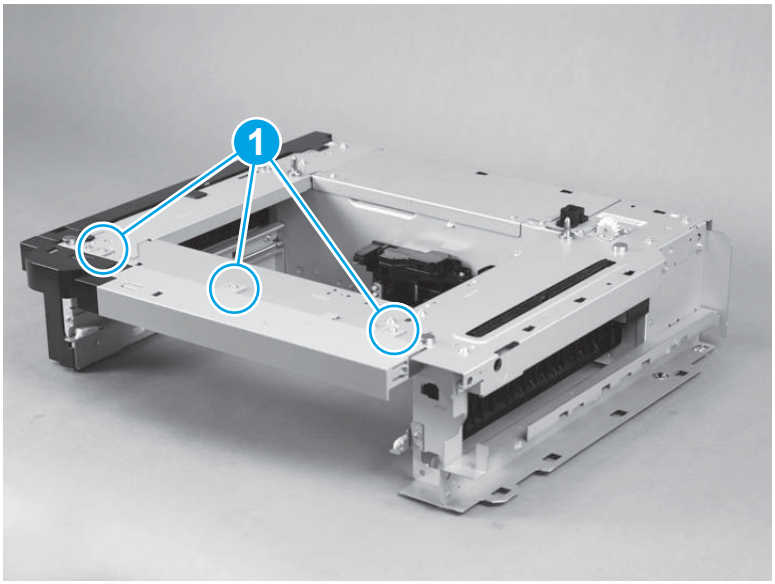
- Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) on page 658.
- Right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See Right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) on page 663.
- Right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See Right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) on page 666.

NOTE: Remove the Tray 3 cassette if it has not already been removed.

Remove the front-upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

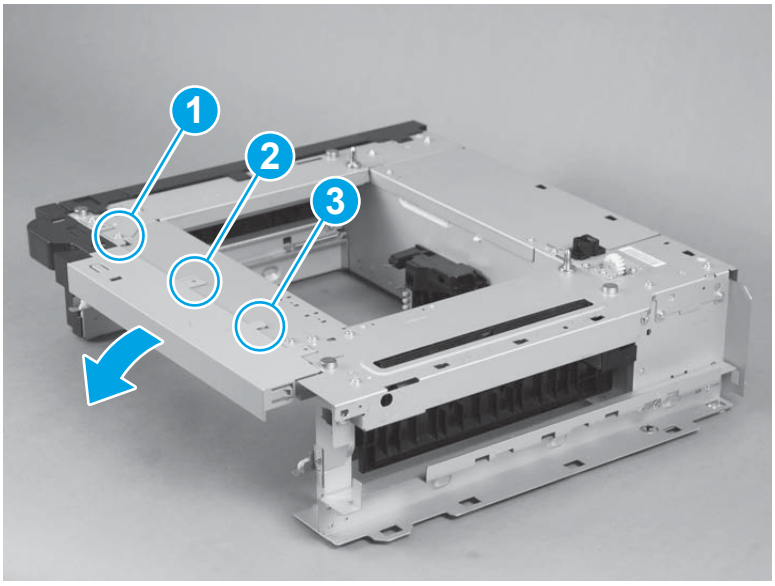
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-1073 Remove three screws (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



2. Release three tabs in the order shown below (callout 1/2/3), and then rotate the top edge of the cover away from the chassis to remove the cover.

Figure 1-1074 Remove the front-upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



Pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

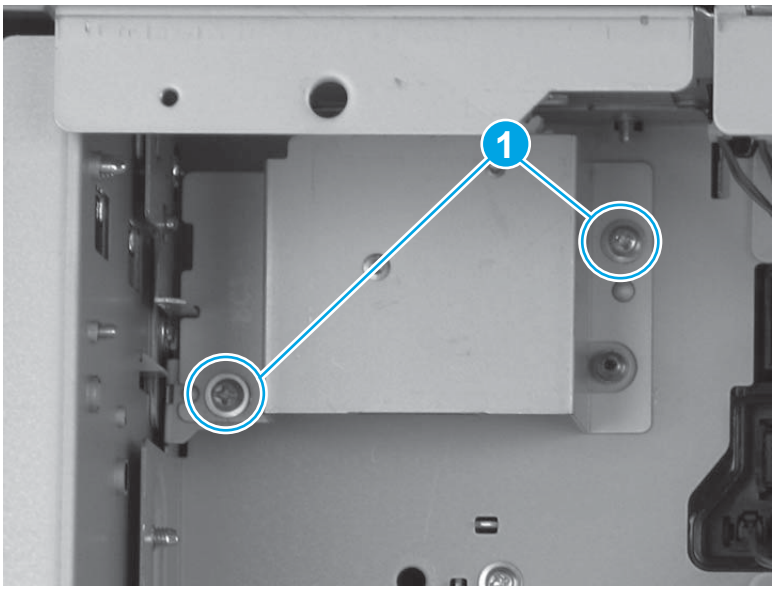
Remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) on page 658.

Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

1. At the rear of the accessory, remove two screws (callout 1).

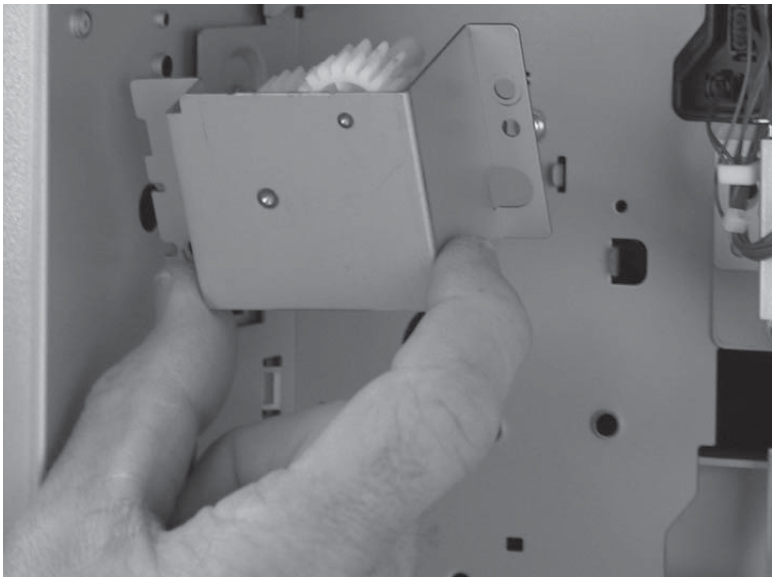
Figure 1-1075 Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



2. Remove the pickup drive assembly.

CAUTION: The gears on the back side of the drive assembly are not captive. If they become dislodged, see Install the pickup drive assembly on page 670 to reinstall them.

Figure 1-1076 Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

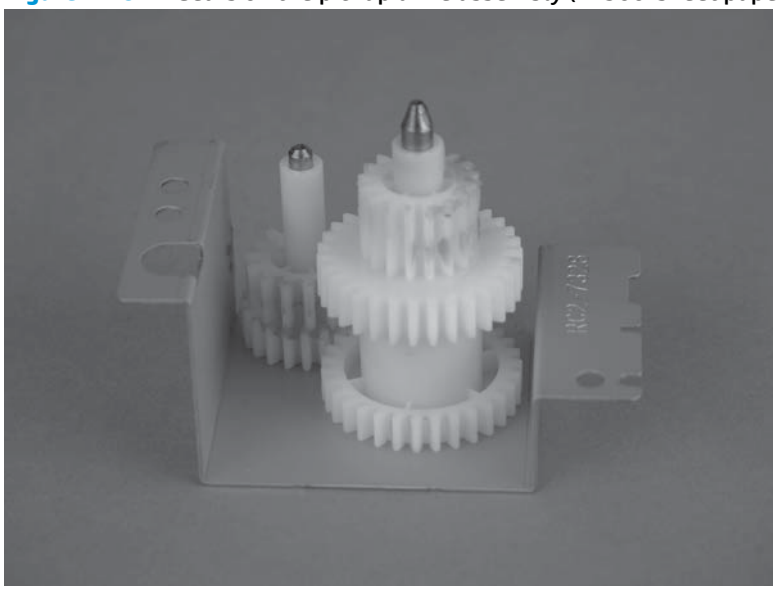


Install the pickup drive assembly

If the gears on the drive assembly become dislodged, use the figure to reinstall them.

NOTE: Do not remove the grease that is on the gears when handling them.

Figure 1-1077 Gears on the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



Pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

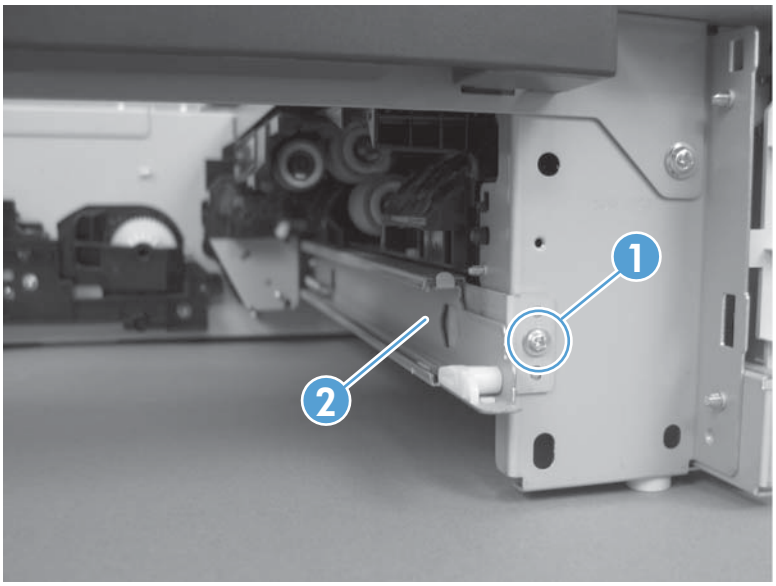
Remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) on page 658.
- Right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See Right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) on page 663.
- Right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See Right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) on page 666.

Remove the pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

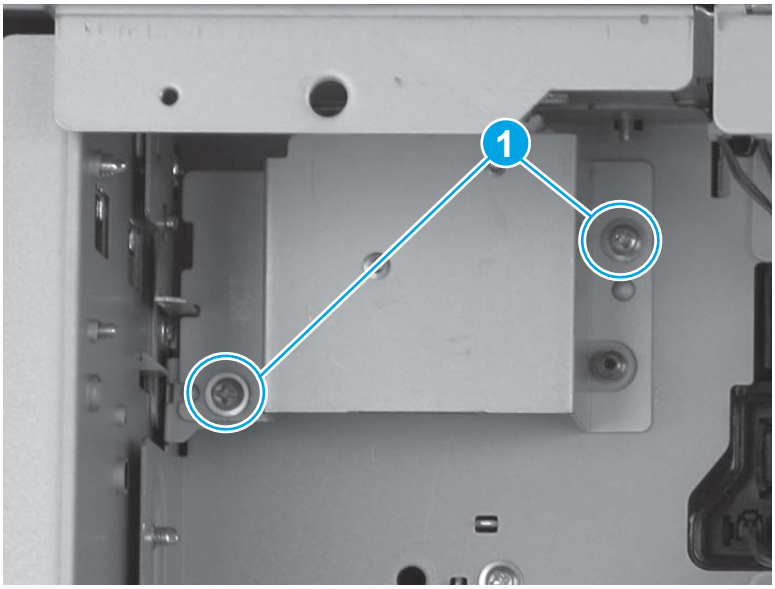
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the tray rail (callout 2).

Figure 1-1078 Remove the tray rail (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



2. At the rear of the accessory, remove two screws (callout 1).

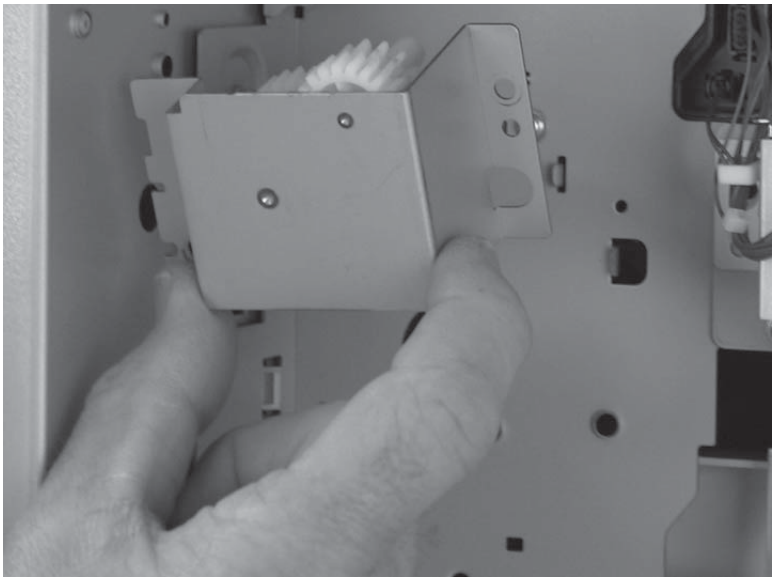
Figure 1-1079 Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



3. Remove the pickup drive assembly.

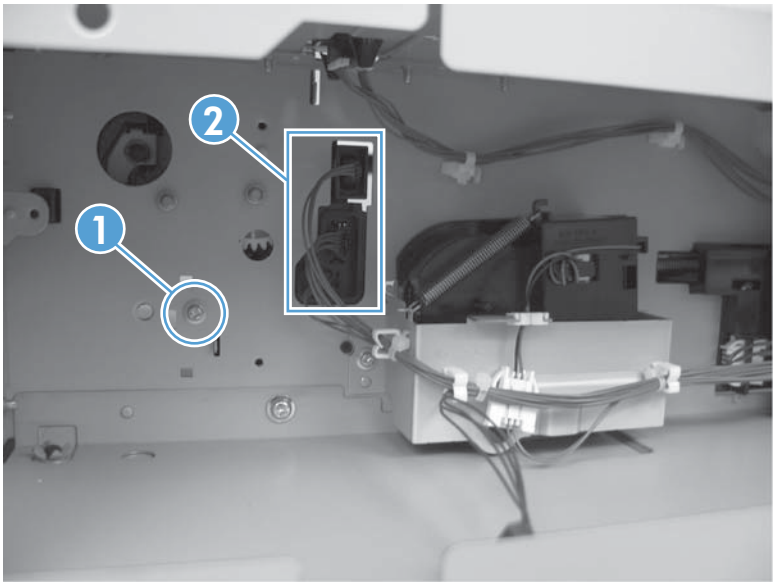
CAUTION: The gears on the back side of the drive assembly are not captive. If they become dislodged, see Install the pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) on page 674 to reinstall them.

Figure 1-1080 Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



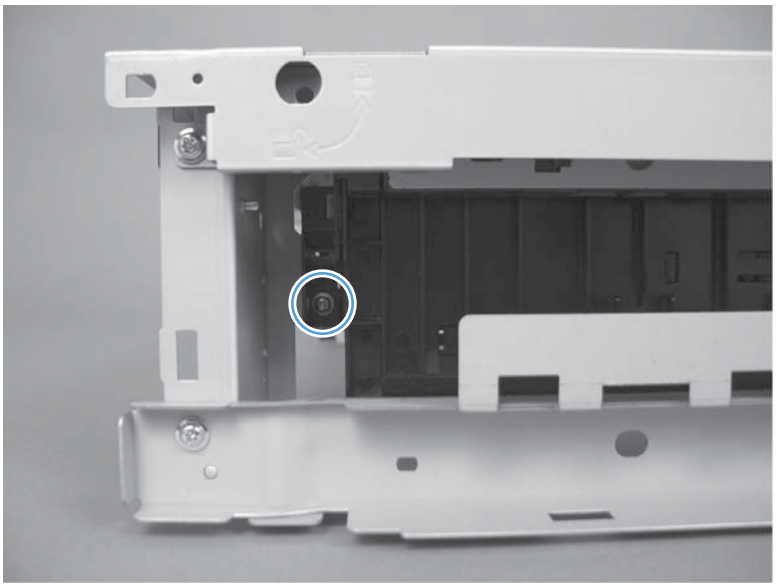
4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 1-1081 Remove one screw and disconnect three connectors (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



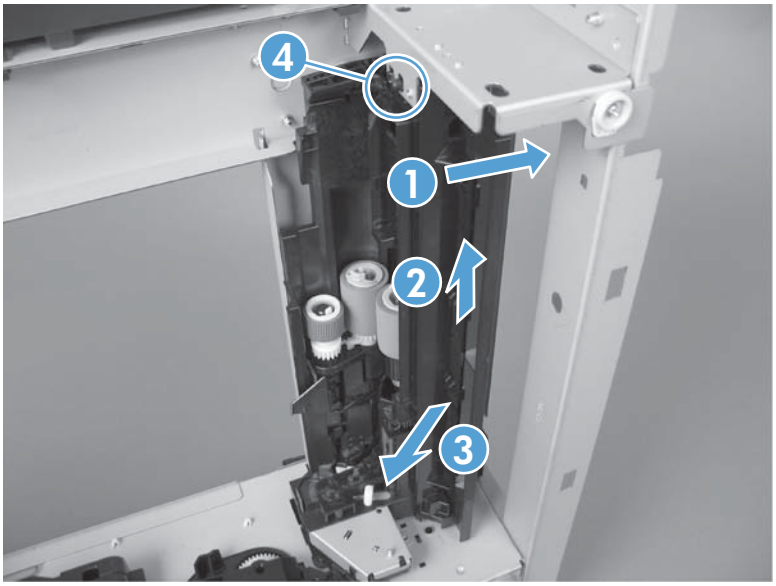
5. Remove one screw.

Figure 1-1082 Remove one screw (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



6. Move the top of the assembly to the right (callout 1) until the post (callout 4) is free of the hole. Lift the assembly (callout 2), and then pull the bottom of the assembly (callout 3) to remove it.

Figure 1-1083 Remove the pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

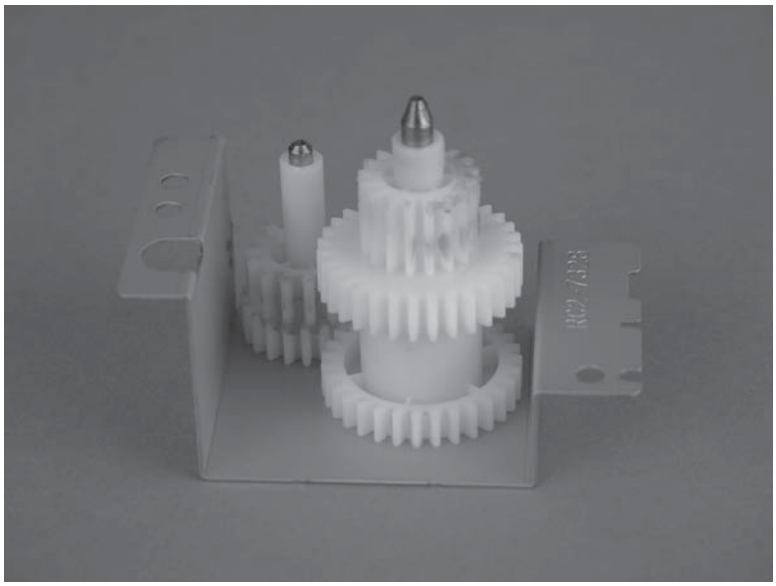


Install the pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

If the gears on the drive assembly become dislodged, use the figure to reinstall them.

NOTE: Do not remove the grease that is on the gears when handling them.

Figure 1-1084 Gears on the paper drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



Lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

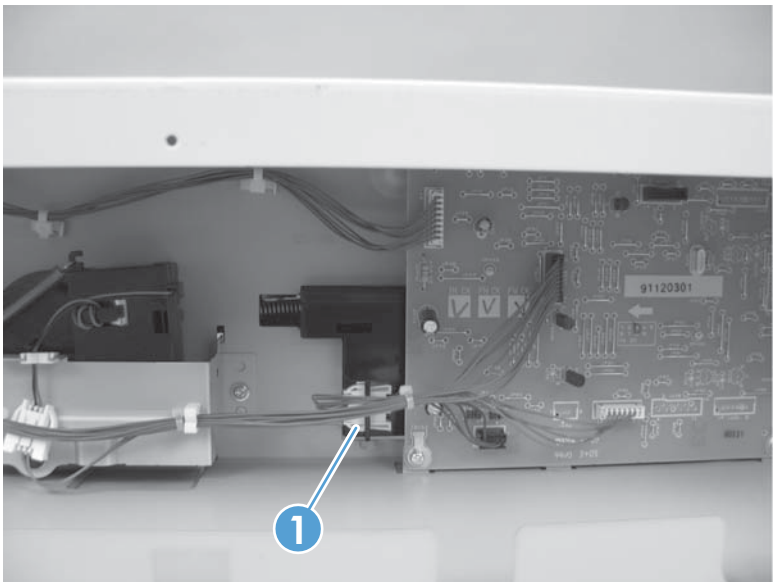
Remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) on page 658.

Remove the lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

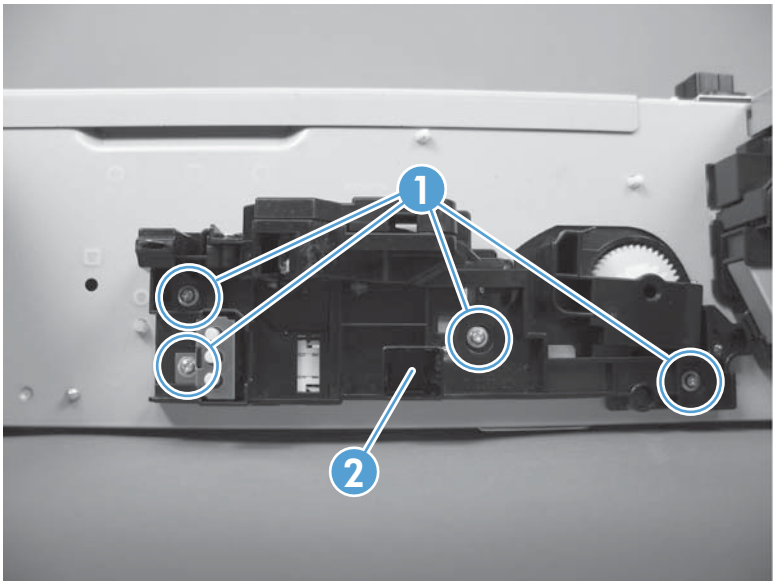
Figure 1-1085 Disconnect one connector (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the lifter assembly (callout 2).

NOTE: There is a spring behind the lifter assembly that is not captive. Do not lose the spring when the assembly is removed. make sure that the spring is correctly positioned when the assembly is reinstalled.

Figure 1-1086 Remove the lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



Lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

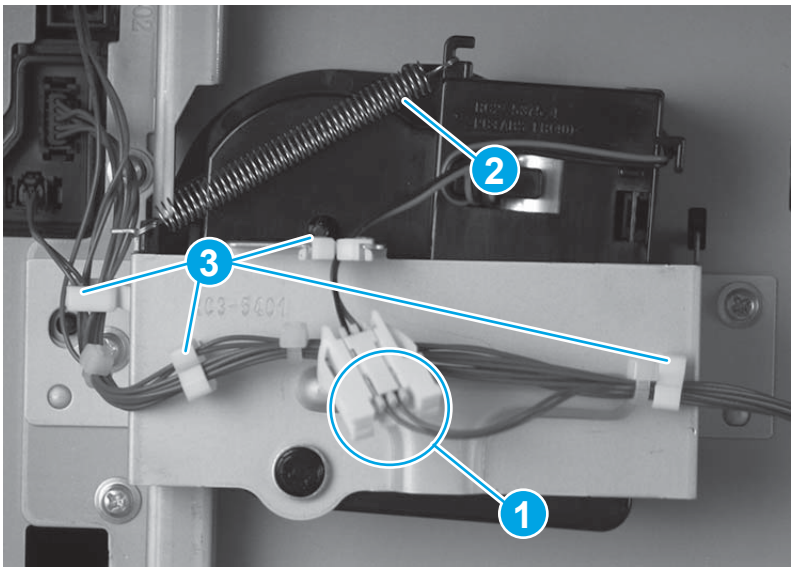
Remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) on page 658.

Remove the lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

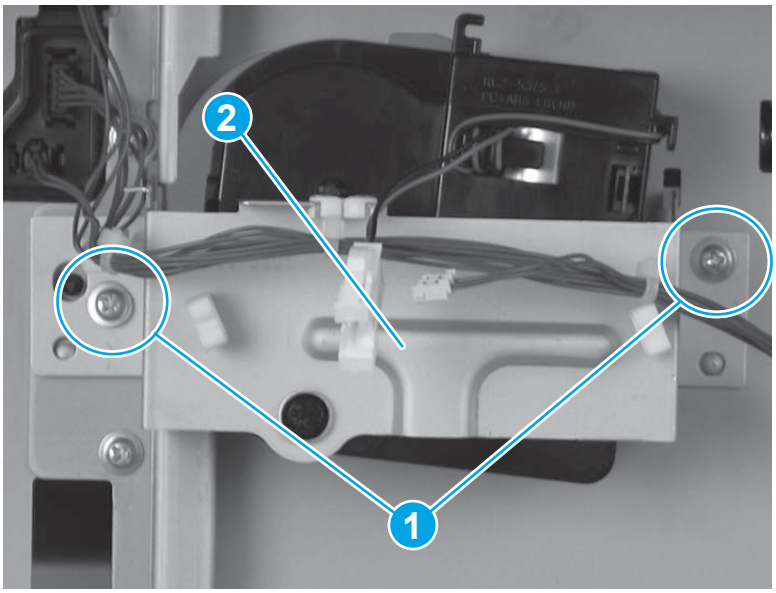
1. At the rear of the accessory, disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove one spring (callout 2), and then release the wire harnesses from the guides (callout 3).

   Figure 1-1087 Disconnect one connector and remove one spring (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

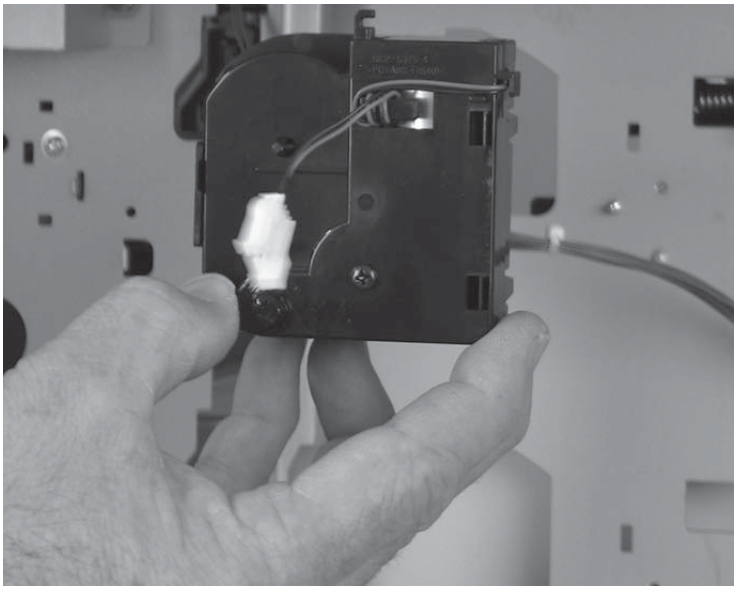
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the sheet-metal plate (callout 2).

   Figure 1-1088 Remove the sheet-metal plate (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

3. Remove the lifter assembly.

Figure 1-1089 Remove the lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



Controller printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

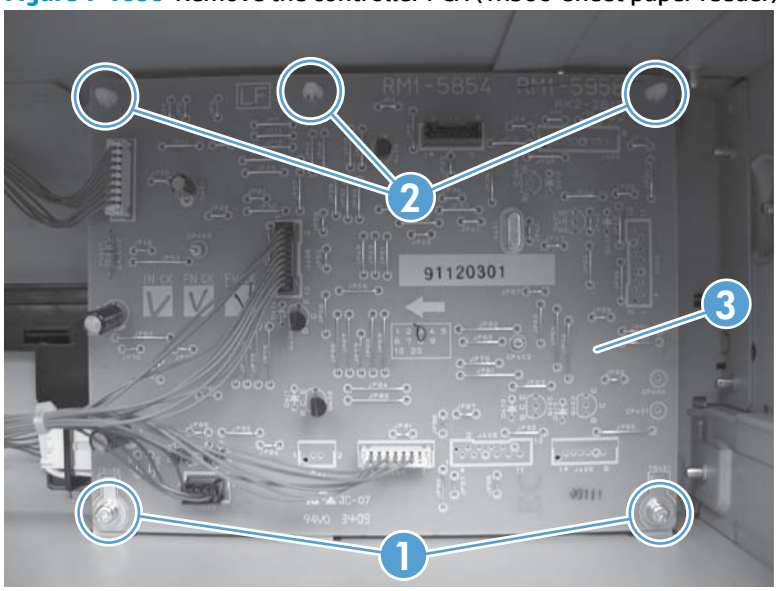
- Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) on page 658.

Remove the controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

CAUTION: ESD-sensitive part.

Disconnect all connectors, remove two screws (callout 1), use a pair of needle nose pliers to release three standoffs (callout 2), and then remove the PCA (callout 3).

Figure 1-1090 Remove the controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet

NOTE: HP recommends removing the accessory from the product before servicing it.

Some of the figures in this section might look slightly different than the M630 accessory. However, the procedures are correct for this product.

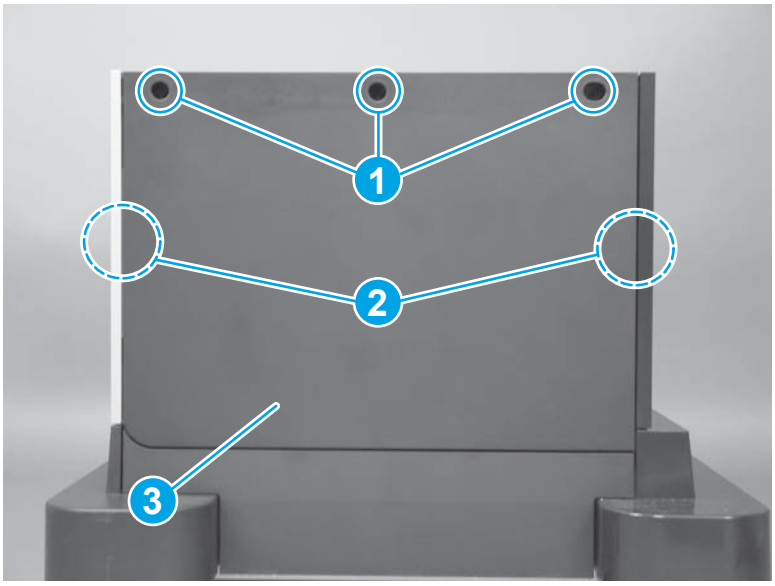
- Rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
- Stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
- Stock box and rails (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
- Left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
- Front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
- Right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
- Right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
- Right center cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
- Right-door hinge cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
- Pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
- Paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
- Lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
- Lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
- Controller printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- Remove three screws (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the rear and rear lower cover (callout 3).

Figure 1-1091 Remove the rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

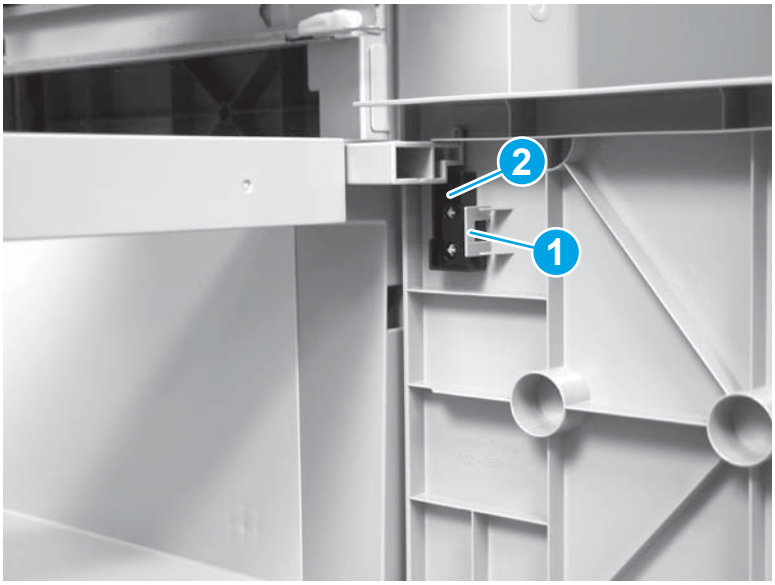


Stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

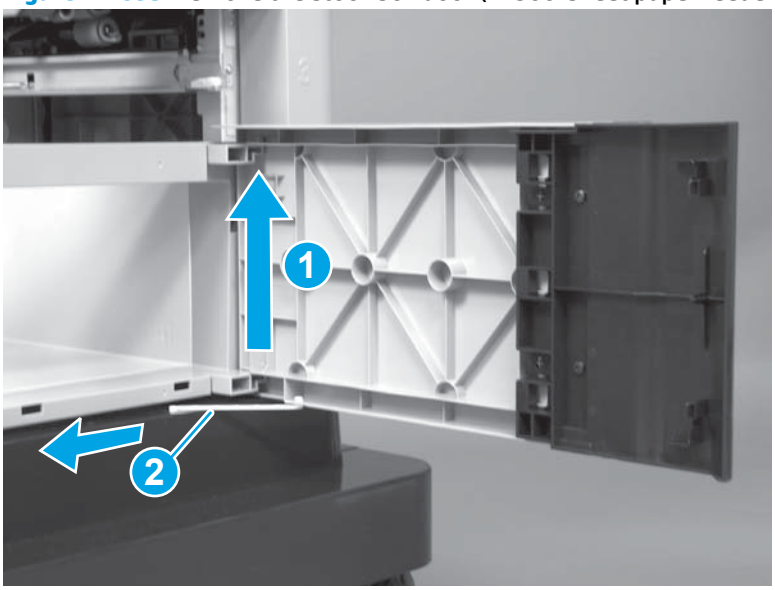
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the stopper (callout 2).

Figure 1-1092 Remove the stopper (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



2. Lift up on the door to remove it from the hinge pins (callout 1), slide it to the left to release the link arm (callout 2), and then remove it.

Figure 1-1093 Remove the stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



Stock box and rails (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Remove the following assemblies:

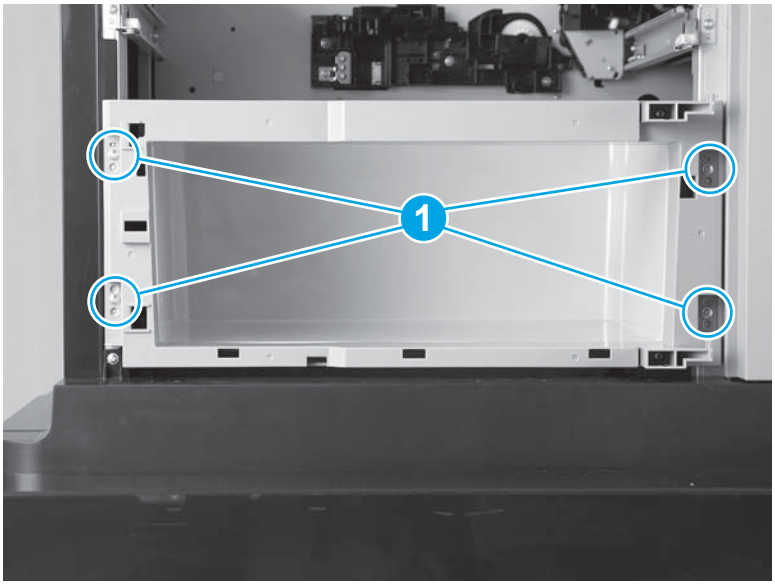
- Stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See Stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) on page 681.

Remove the stock box and rails

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

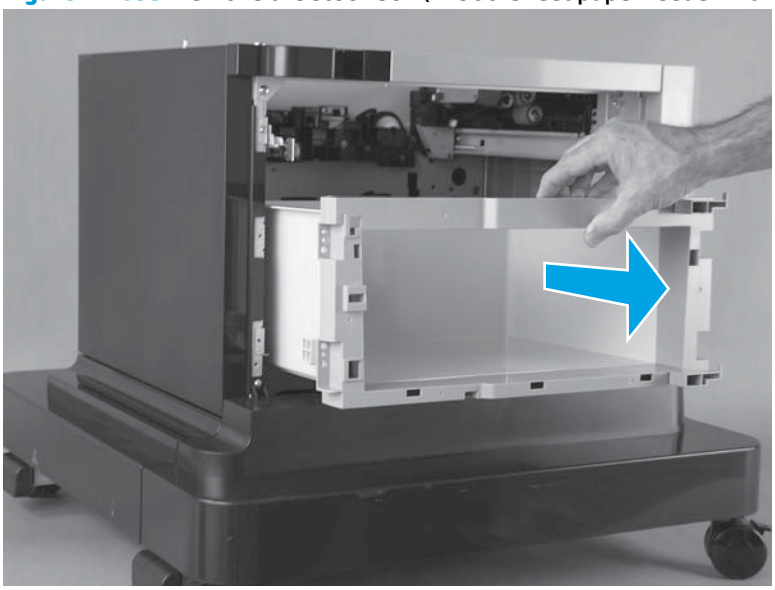
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-1094 Remove four screws (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



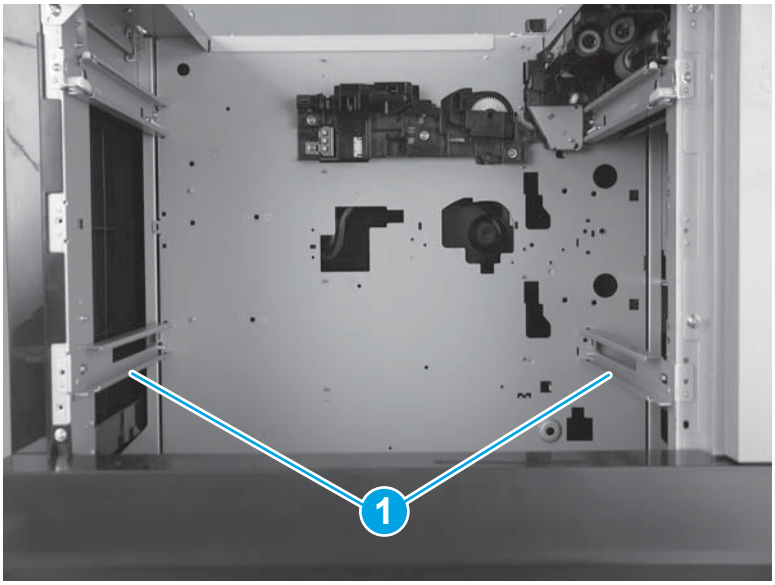
2. Slide the stock box out of the accessory to remove it.

Figure 1-1095 Remove the stock box (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



3. Remove the stock box rails.

Figure 1-1096 Remove the stock box rails (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



Left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Remove the following assemblies:

- Rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See Rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) on page 680.
- Stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See Stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) on page 681.
- Stock box and rails (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See Stock box and rails (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) on page 682.

NOTE: The output accessory must be removed from the product before servicing this assembly.

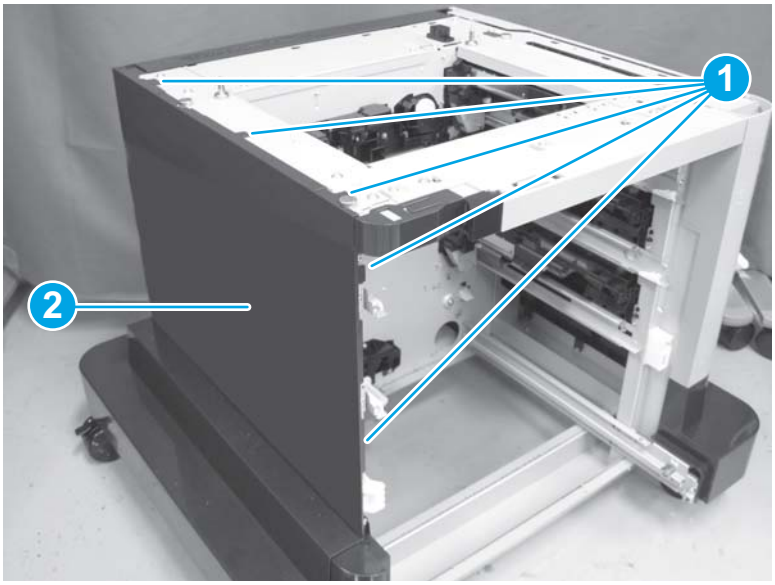
Remove the left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

▲ Release five tabs (callout 1), and then remove the left cover (callout 2).

NOTE: The figure below shows the 2,500-sheet paper feeder. However, this procedure is valid for the 1x500-sheet accessory.

Figure 1-1097 Remove the left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



Front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Remove the following assemblies:

- Stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See Stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) on page 681.

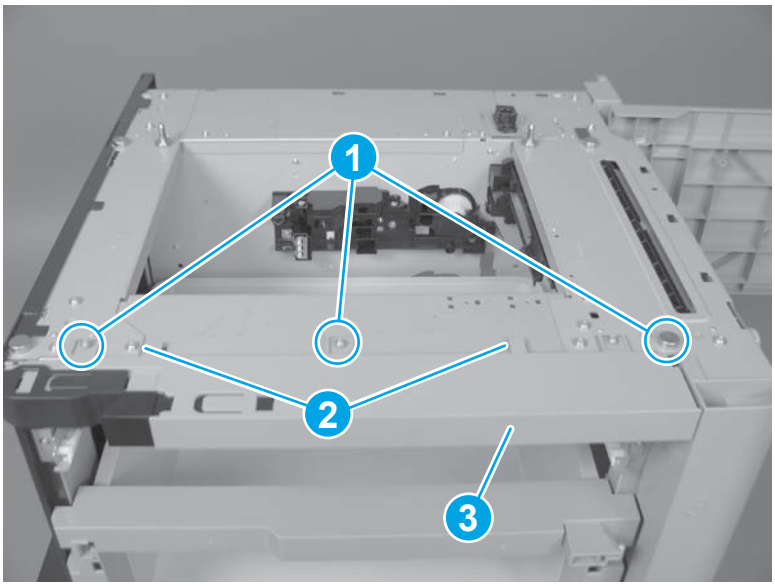
NOTE: The output accessory must be removed from the product before servicing this assembly.

Remove the front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

▲ Remove three screws (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the front upper cover (callout 3).

Figure 1-1098 Remove the front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



Right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Remove the following assemblies:

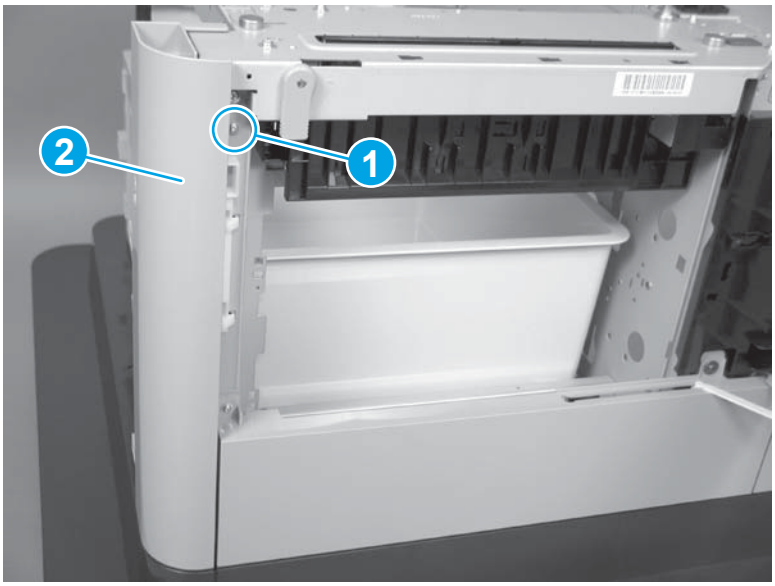
- Stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See Stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) on page 681.
- Front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See Front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) on page 685.

Remove the right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

▲ Open the right door. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the right-front cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-1099 Remove the right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

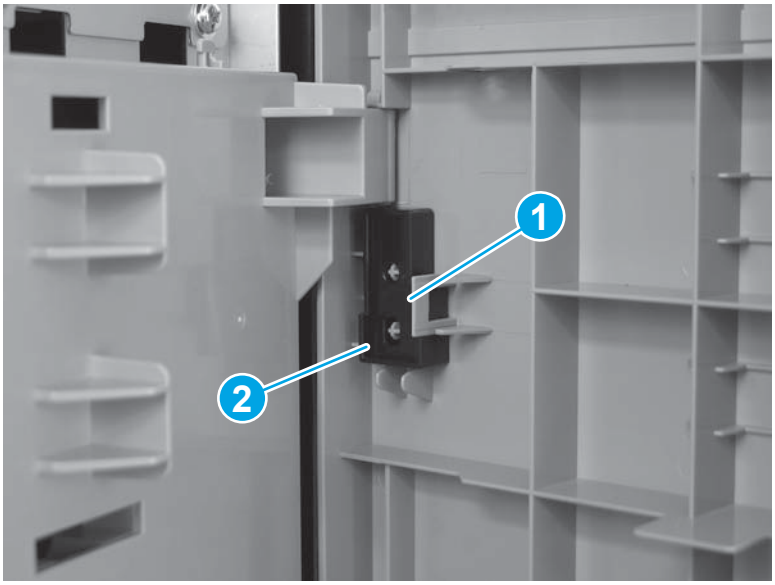


Right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

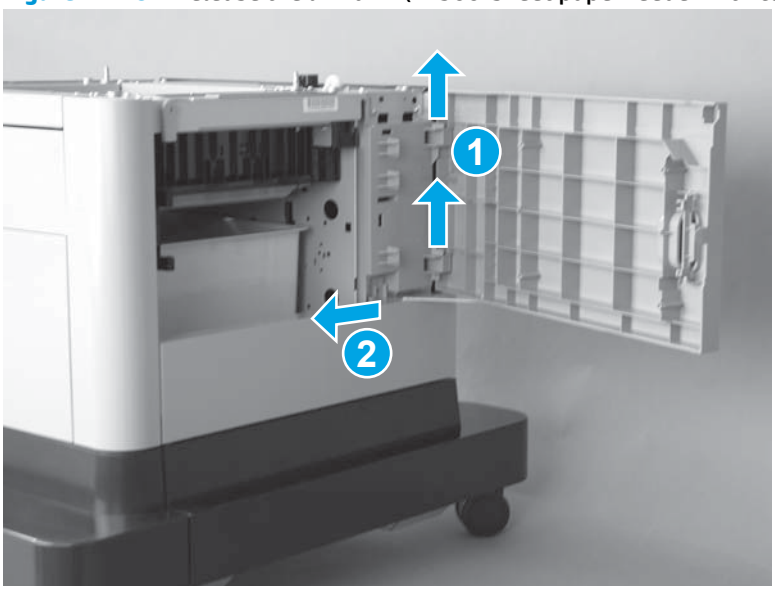
1. Open the right door, release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the stopper (callout 2).

Figure 1-1100 Remove the stopper (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



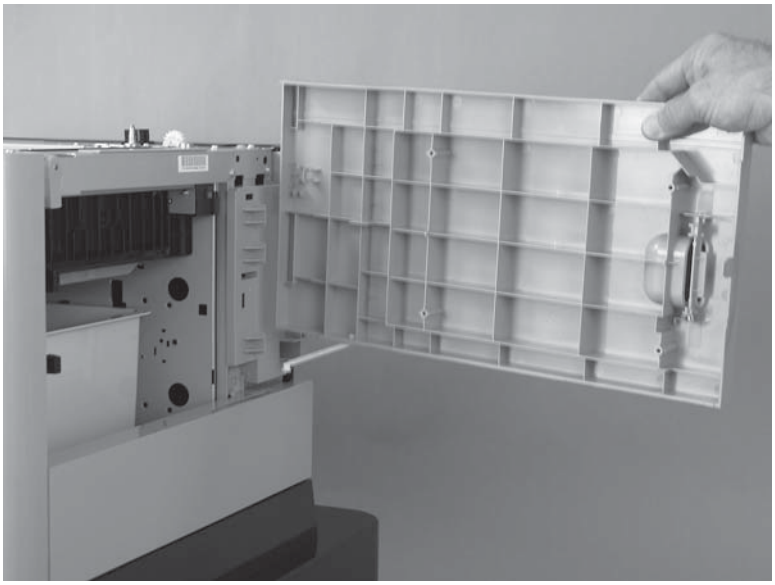
2. Lift up on the door (callout 1) to remove it from the hinge pins, and then slide it to the left to release the link arm (callout 2).

Figure 1-1101 Release the link arm (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



3. Remove the right door.

Figure 1-1102 Remove the right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



Right center cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Remove the following assemblies:

- Right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See Right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) on page 687.

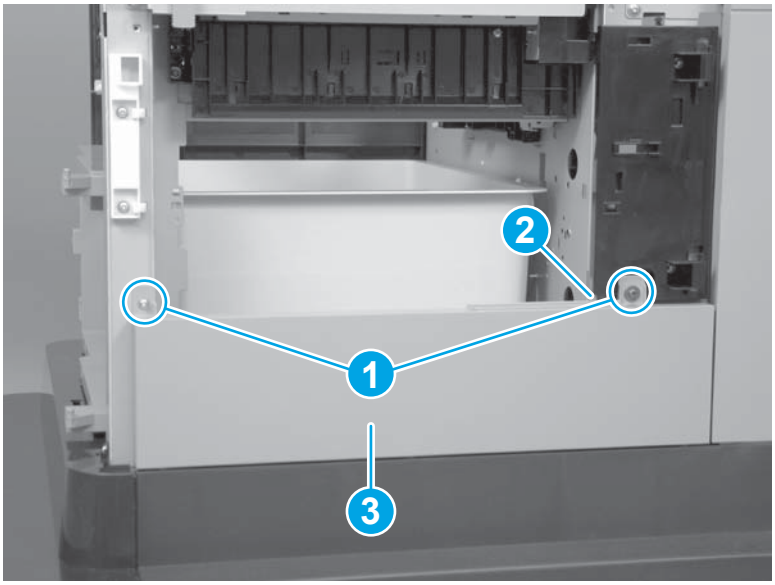
Remove the right center cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

▲ Remove two screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the right center cover (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: The screw for the right side of the cover—near the tab (callout 2)—is a shoulder screw.

Figure 1-1103 Remove the right center cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



Right-door hinge cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Remove the following assemblies:

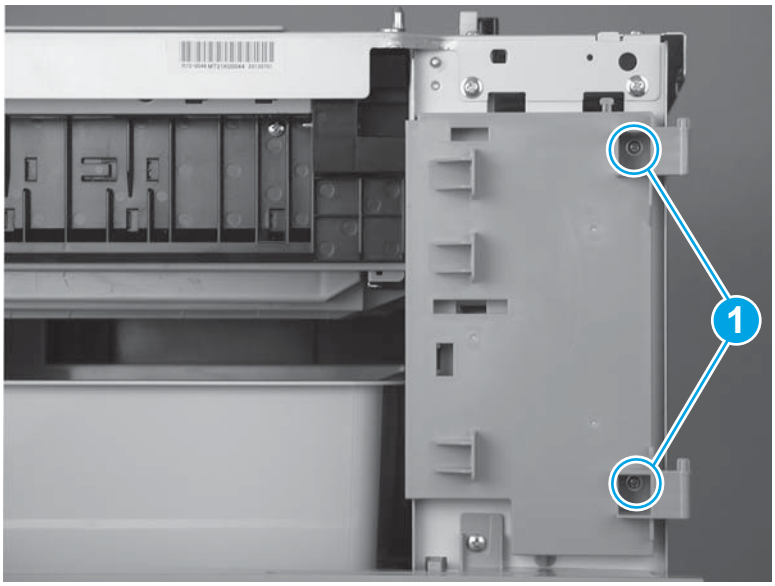
- Rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See Rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) on page 680.
- Right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See Right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) on page 687.

Remove the right-door hinge cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

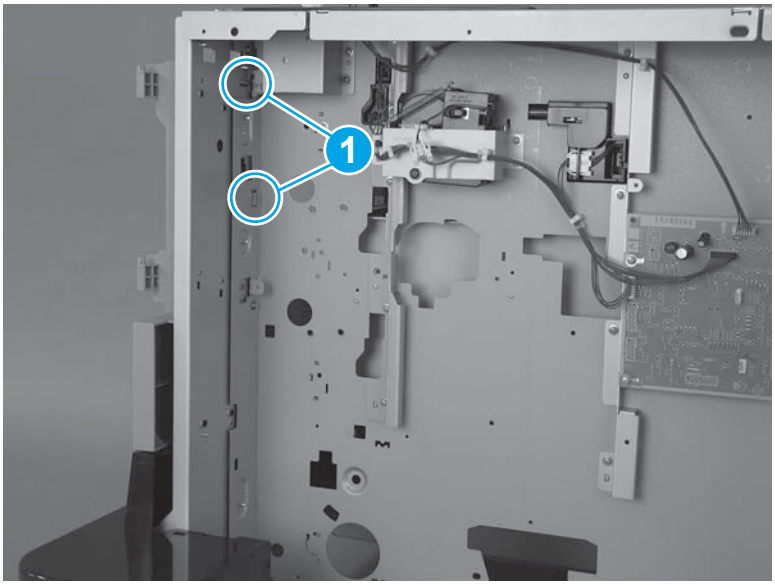
1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-1104 Remove the screws (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



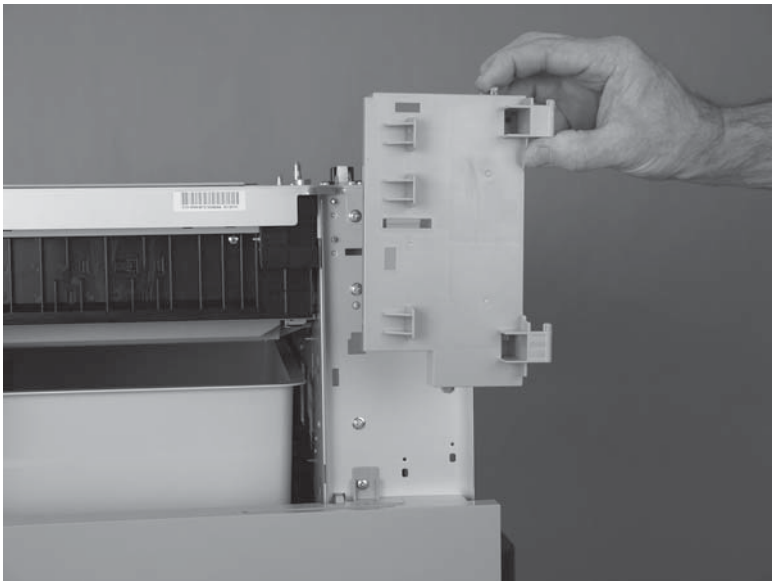
2. Release two tabs (callout 1).

Figure 1-1105 Release two tabs (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



3. Remove the right-door hinge cover.

Figure 1-1106 Remove the right-door hinge cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



Pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Remove the following assemblies:

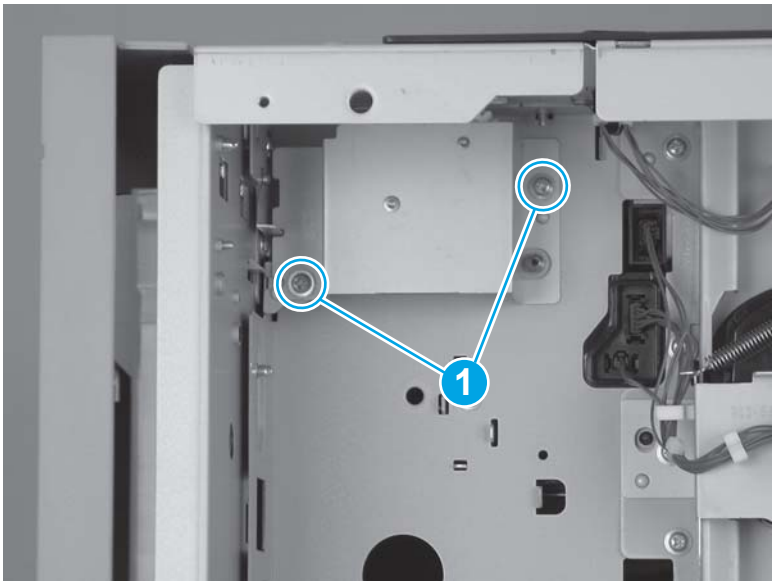
- Rear and rear lower cover. See Rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) on page 680.

Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. At the rear of the accessory, remove two screws (callout 1).

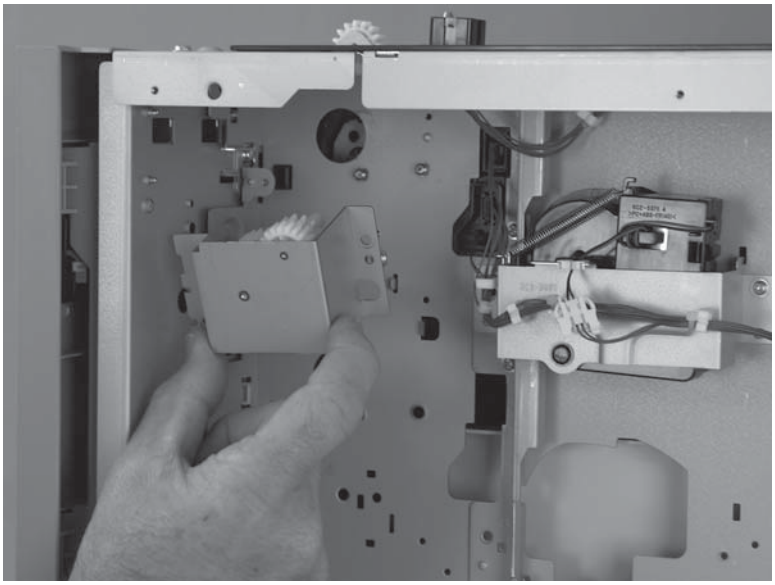
Figure 1-1107 Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



2. Remove the pickup drive assembly.

⚠ **CAUTION:** The gears on the back side of the drive assembly are not captive. If they become dislodged, see Install the paper drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) on page 694 to reinstall them.

Figure 1-1108 Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

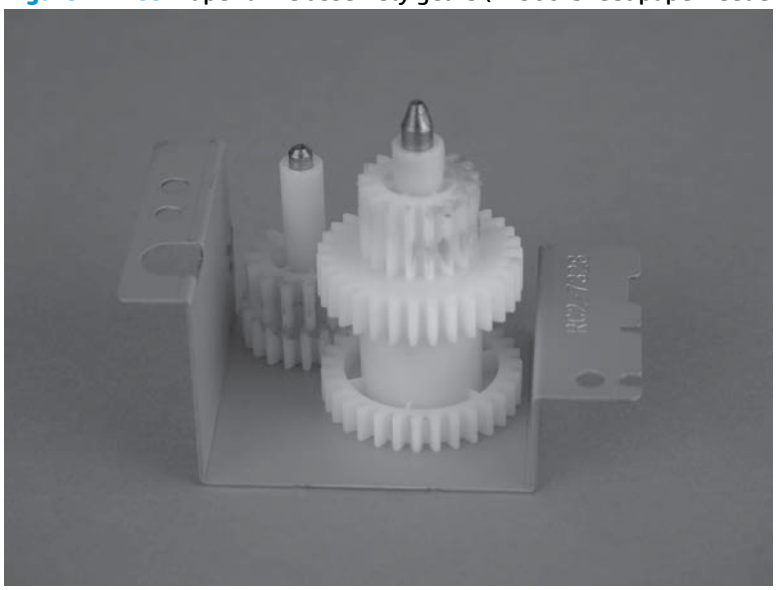


Install the paper drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

If the gears on the drive assembly become dislodged, use the figure to reinstall them.

NOTE: Do not remove the grease that is on the gears when handling them.

Figure 1-1109 Paper drive assembly gears (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



Paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Remove the following assemblies:

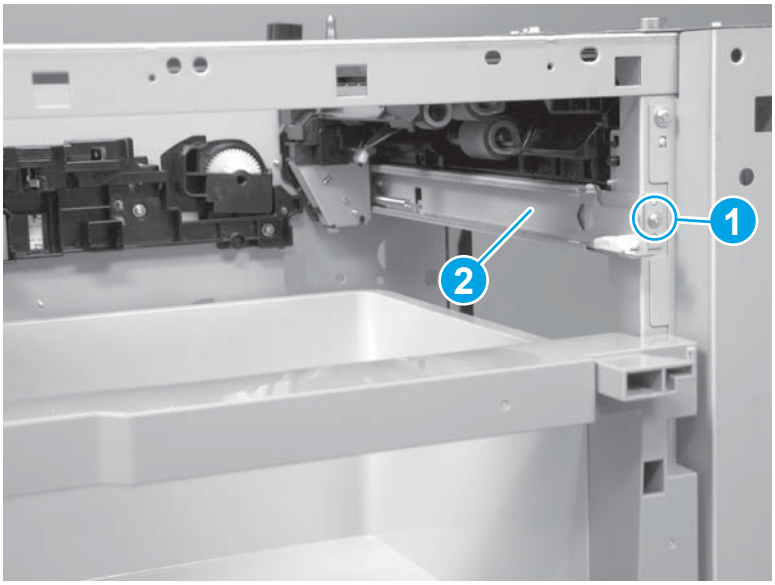
- Rear and rear lower cover. See Rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) on page 680.
- Stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See Stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) on page 681
- Front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See Front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) on page 685.
- Right front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See Right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) on page 686.

Remove the paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

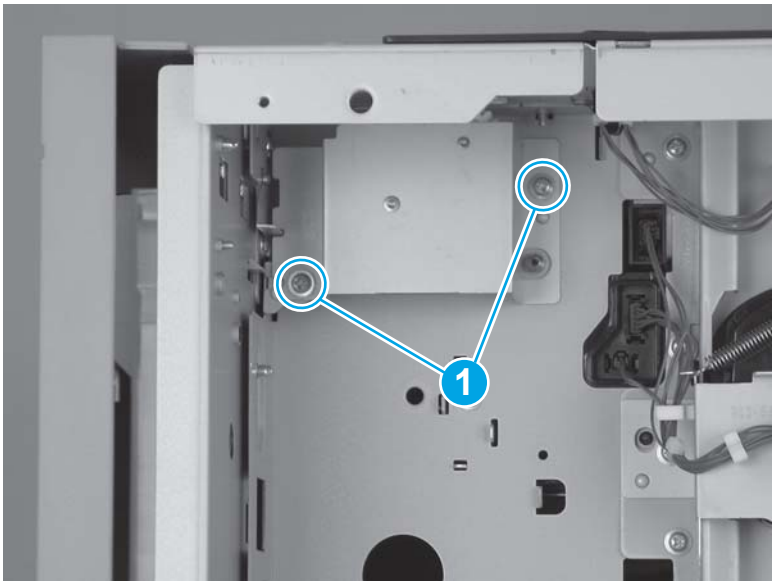
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the tray rail (callout 2).

Figure 1-1110 Remove the tray rail (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



2. At the rear of the accessory, remove two screws (callout 1).

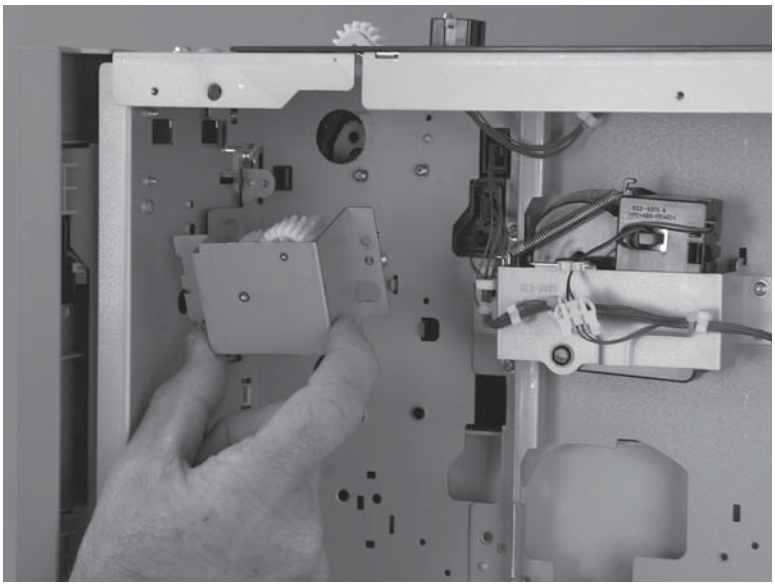
Figure 1-1111 Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



3. Remove the pickup drive assembly.

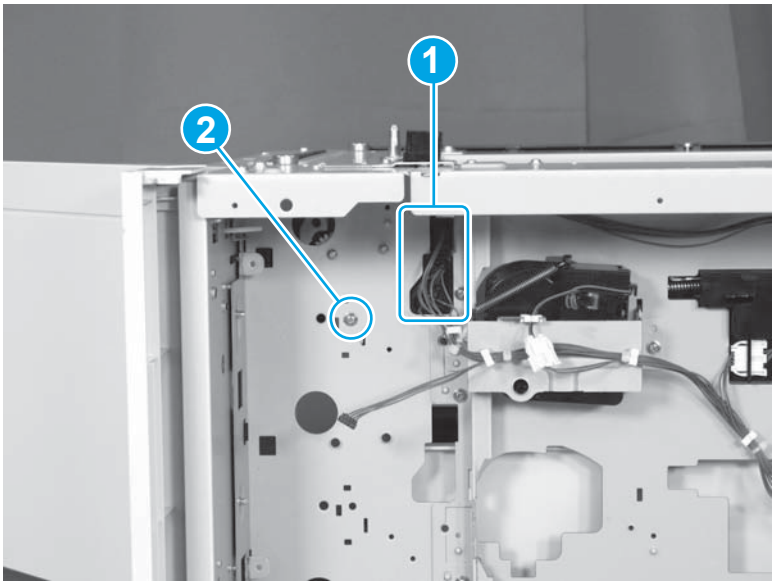
CAUTION: The gears on the back side of the drive assembly are not captive. If they become dislodged, see Install the paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) on page 698 to reinstall them.

Figure 1-1112 Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



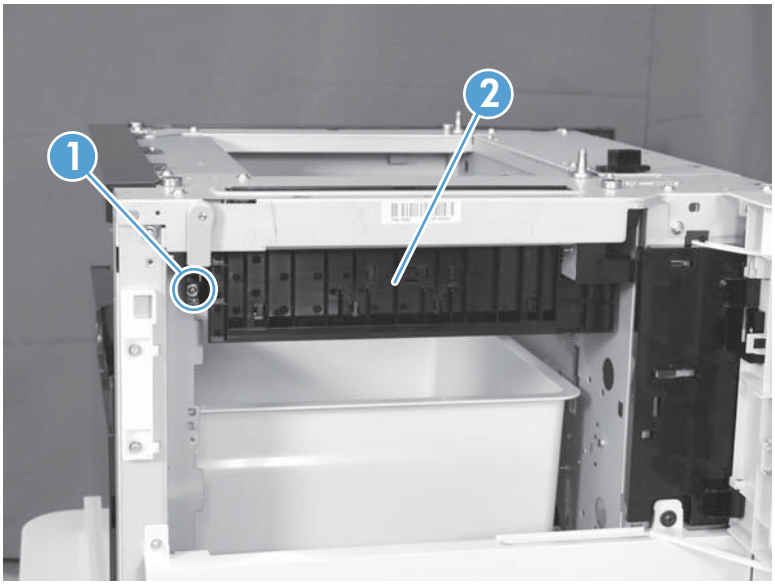
4. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 1-1113 Disconnect connectors and remove the screw (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



5. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the paper-pickup assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-1114 Remove the paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

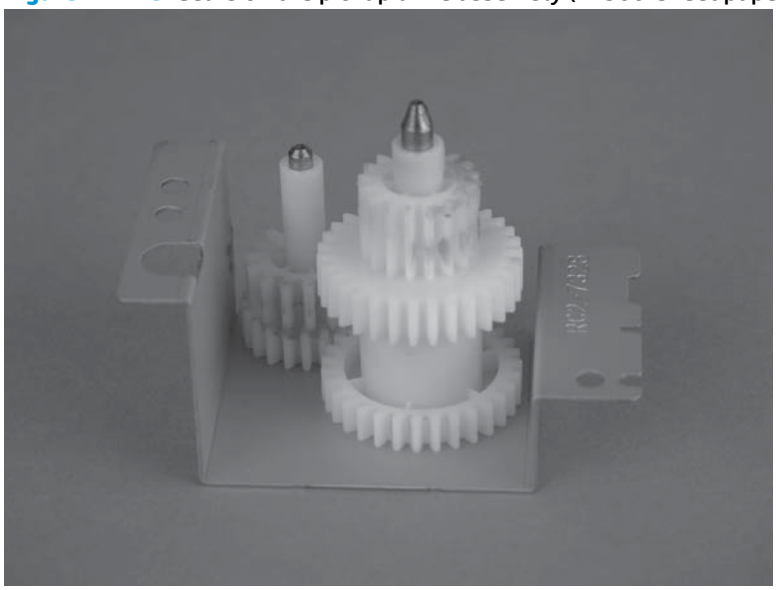


Install the paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

If the gears on the drive assembly become dislodged, use the figure to reinstall them.

NOTE: Do not remove the grease that is on the gears when handling them.

Figure 1-1115 Gears on the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



Lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Remove the following assemblies:

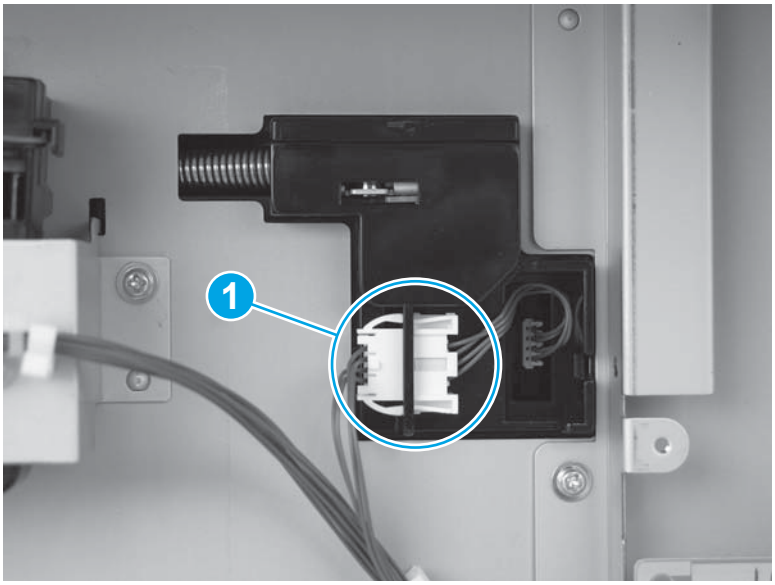
- Rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See Rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) on page 680.

Remove the lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

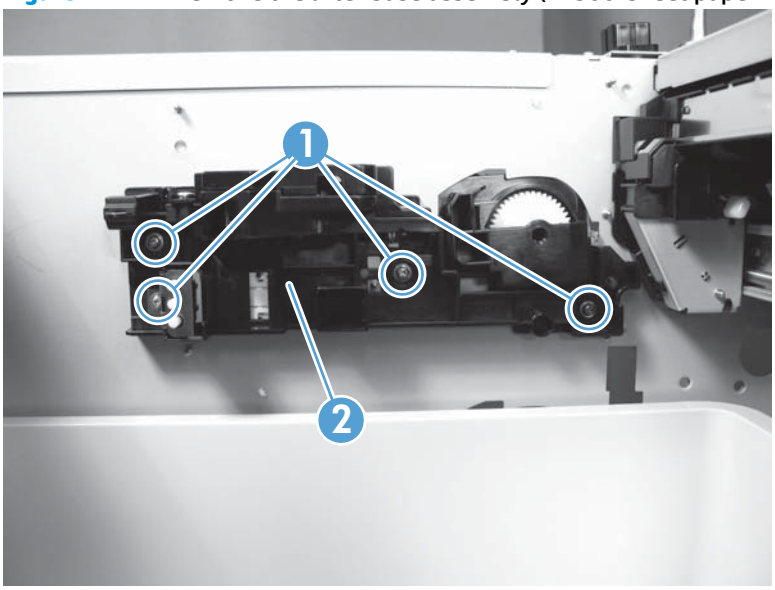
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 1-1116 Disconnect connector (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the lifter assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-1117 Remove the lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



Lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Remove the following assemblies:

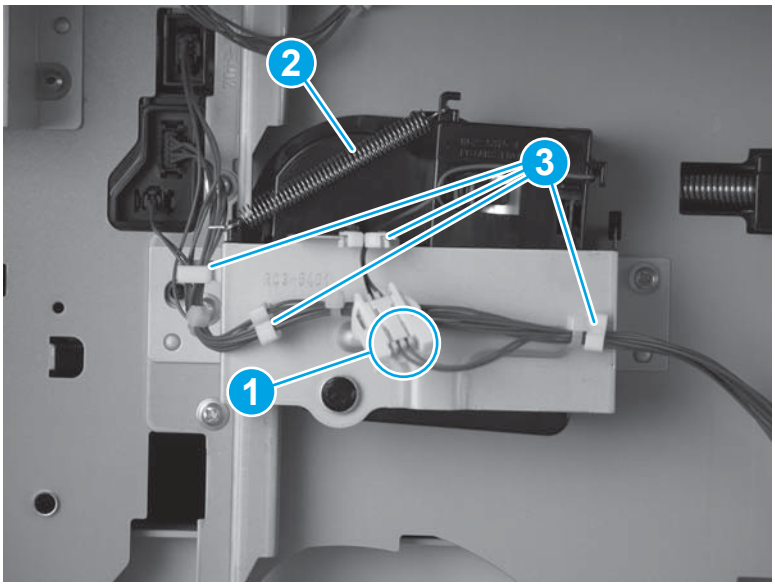
- Rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See Rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) on page 680.

Remove the lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

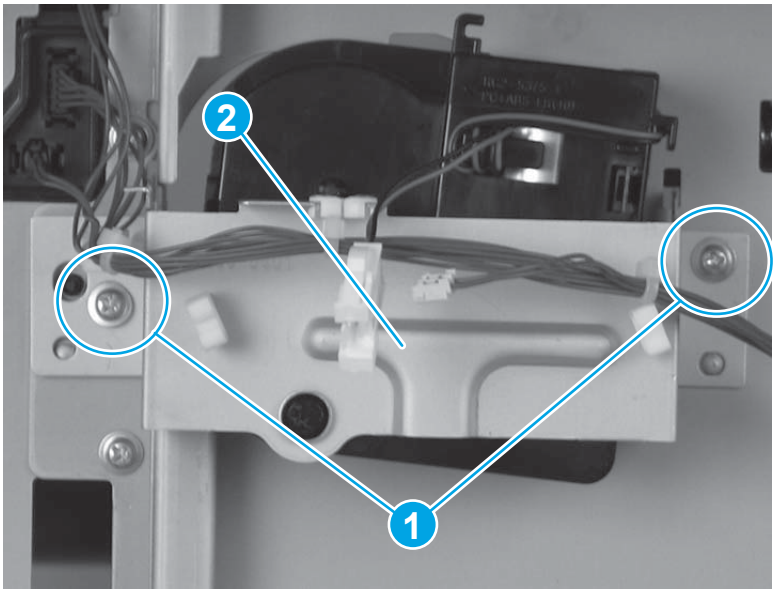
1. At the rear of the accessory, disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove one spring (callout 2), and then release the wire harnesses from the guides (callout 3).

Figure 1-1118 Disconnect one connector and remove one spring (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



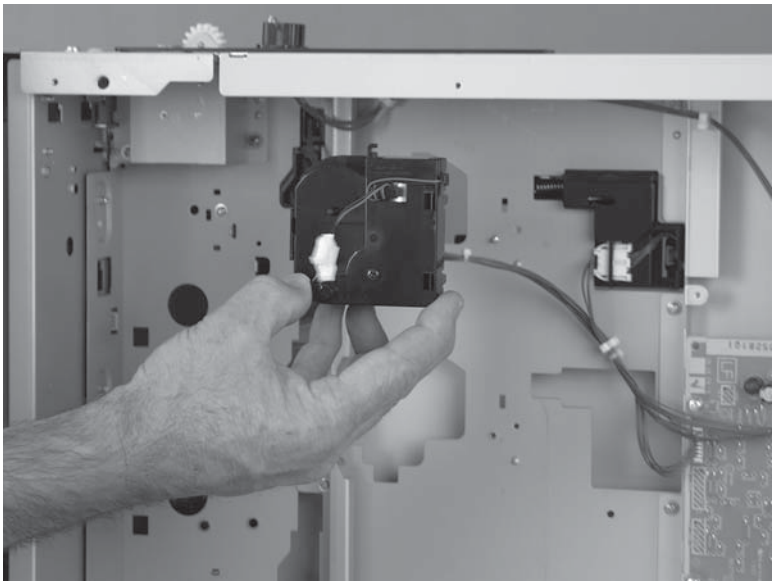
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the sheet-metal plate (callout 2).

Figure 1-1119 Remove the sheet-metal plate (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



3. Remove the lifter assembly.

Figure 1-1120 Remove the lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



Controller printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Remove the following assemblies

- Rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See Rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) on page 680.

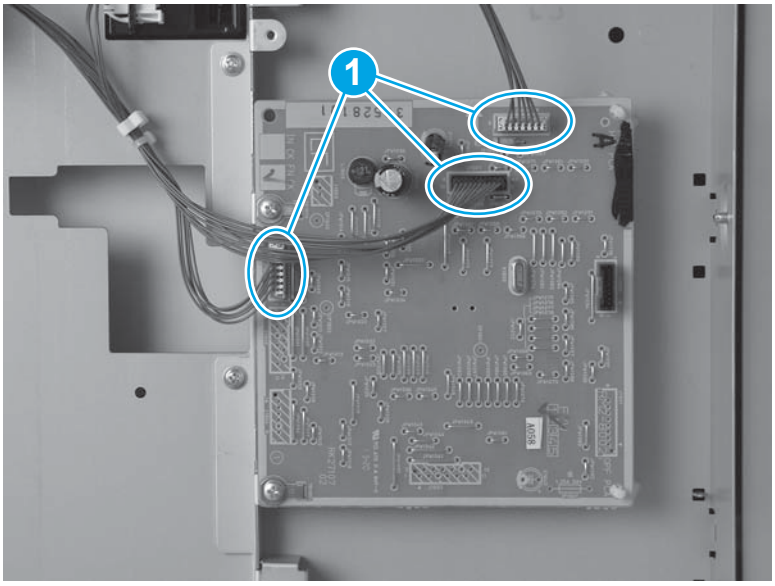
Remove the controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

CAUTION: ESD-sensitive assembly.

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

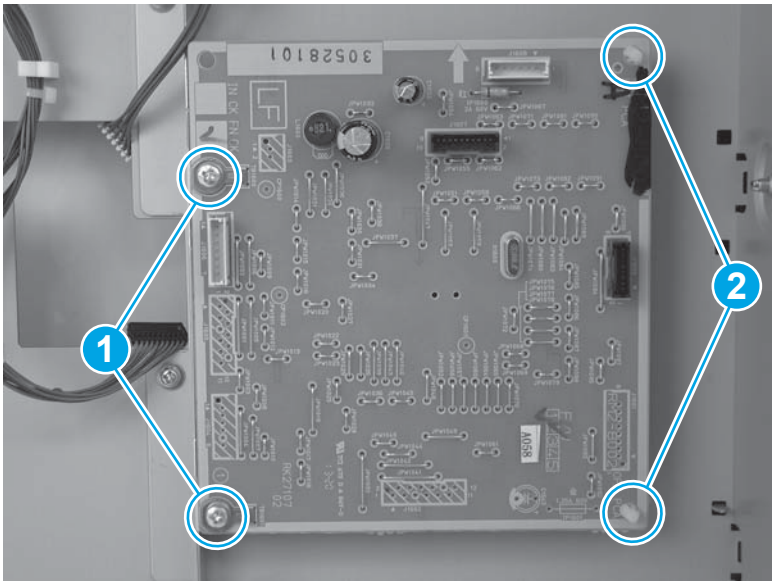
1. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1).

Figure 1-1121 Disconnect three connectors (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



2. Remove two screws (callout 1), use a pair needle-nose pliers to release two standoffs (callout 2), and then remove the controller PCA.

Figure 1-1122 Remove the controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



2,500-sheet high capacity input (HCI)

NOTE: HP recommends removing the accessory from the product before servicing it.

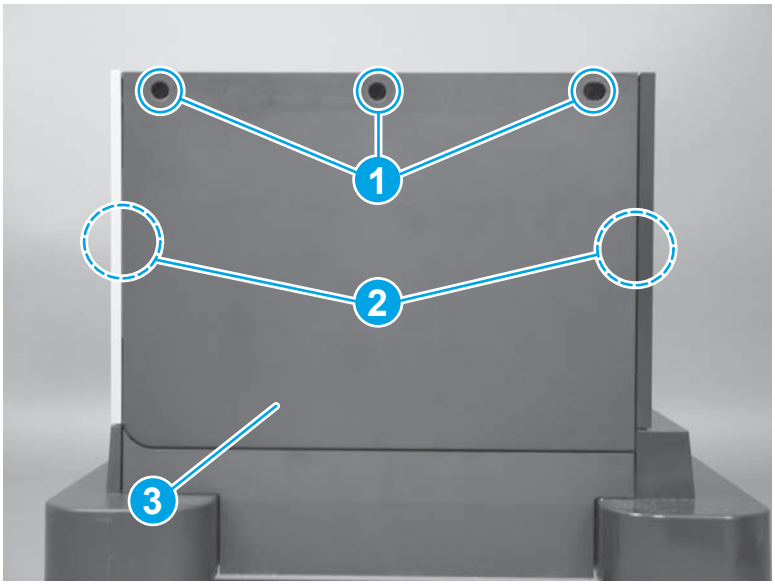
- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder)
- Right door (HCI optional paper feeder)
- Right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder)
- Right lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder)
- Front upper cover (HCI optional paper feeder)
- Right front cover (HCI optional paper feeder)
- Left cover (HCI optional paper feeder)
- Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
- Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
- Tray 5 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
- Pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
- Tray 3 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
- Tray 4 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
- Tray 3 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
- Tray 4 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
- Tray 5 lifter drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
- Controller printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (HCI optional paper feeder)

Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- Remove three screws (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the rear and rear lower cover (callout 3).

Figure 1-1123 Remove rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

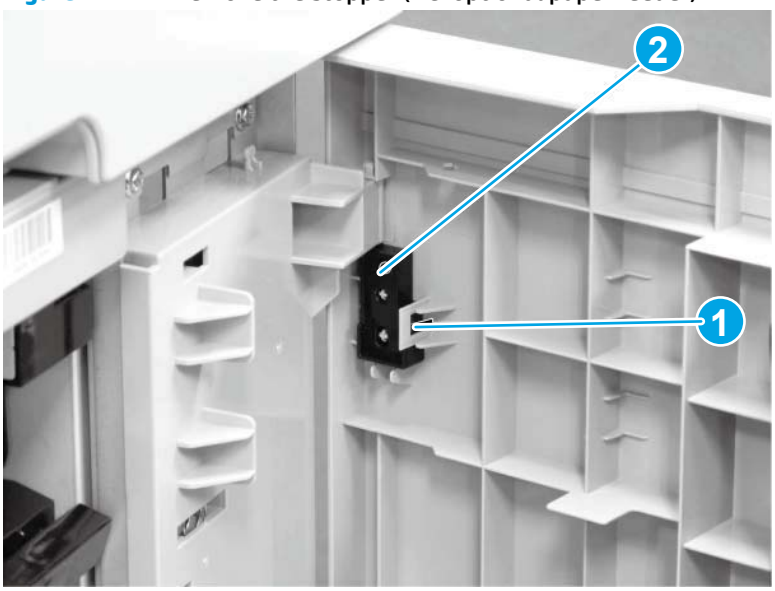


Right door (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

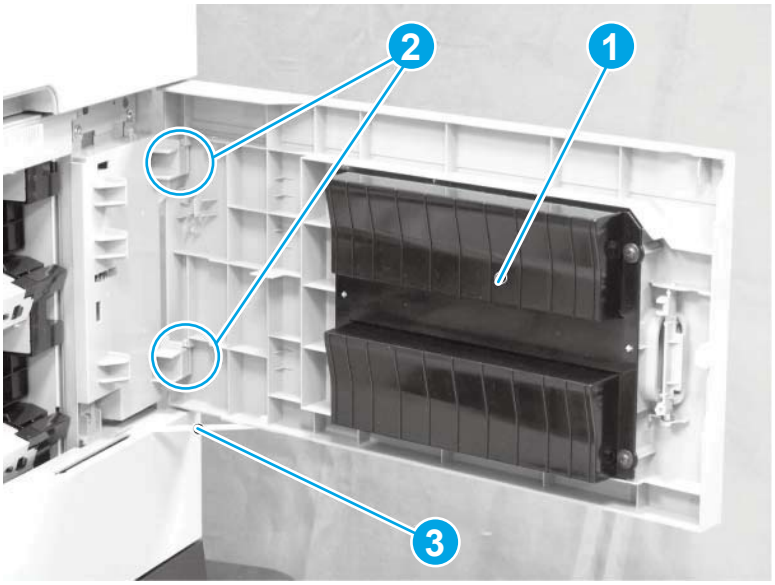
1. Open the right door, release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the stopper (callout 2)

Figure 1-1124 Remove the stopper (HCI optional paper feeder)



2. Lift up on the door (callout 1) to remove it from the hinge pins (callout 2), slide it to the left to release the link arm (callout 3), and then remove the door.

Figure 1-1125 Remove the right door (HCI optional paper feeder)



Right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

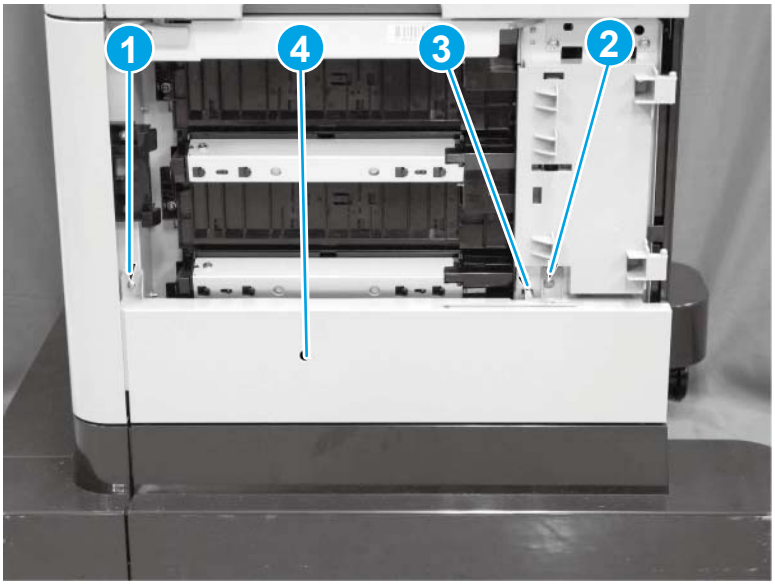
- Right door (HCI optional paper feeder). See Right door (HCI optional paper feeder) on page 706.

Remove the right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

▲ Remove one screw (callout 1), remove one shoulder screw (callout 2), release one tab (callout 3), and then remove the right cover (callout 4).

Figure 1-1126 Remove the right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder)



Right lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

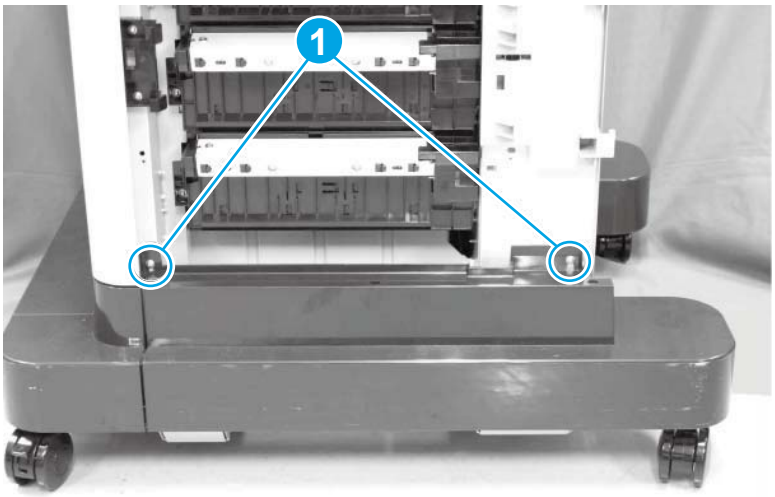
- Right door (HCI optional paper feeder). See Right door (HCI optional paper feeder) on page 706.
- Right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See Right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder) on page 707.

Remove the right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

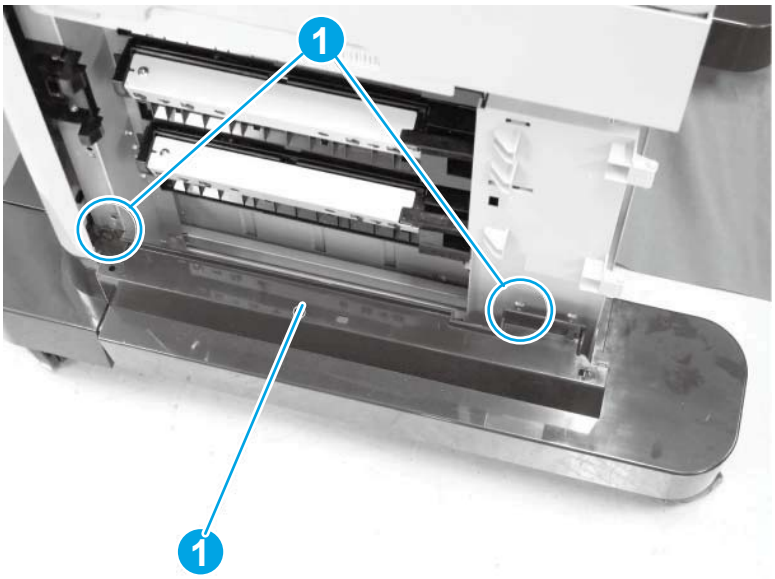
1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-1127 Remove the screws (HCI optional paper feeder)



2. Release two pins (callout 1), and then remove the lower right cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-1128 Remove the right lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

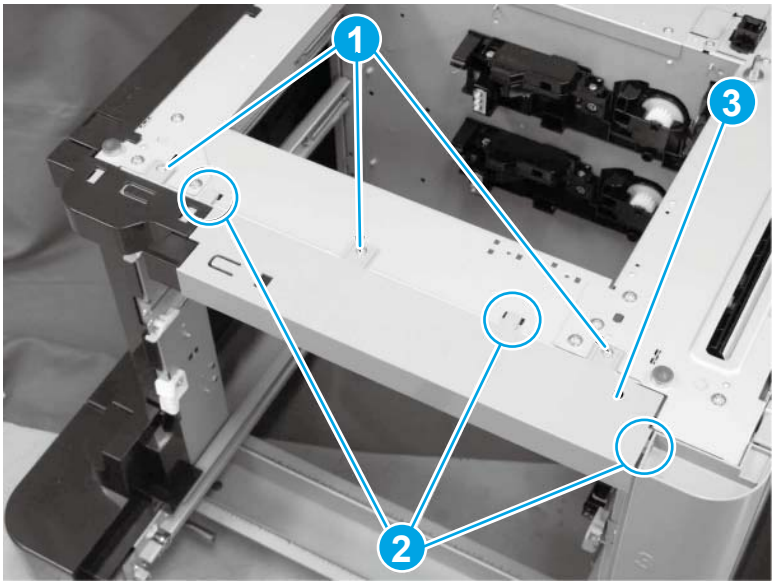


Front upper cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- Remove three screws (callout 1), release three tabs (callout 2), and then remove the front upper cover (callout 3).

Figure 1-1129 Remove the front upper cover (HCI optional paper feeder)



Right front cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

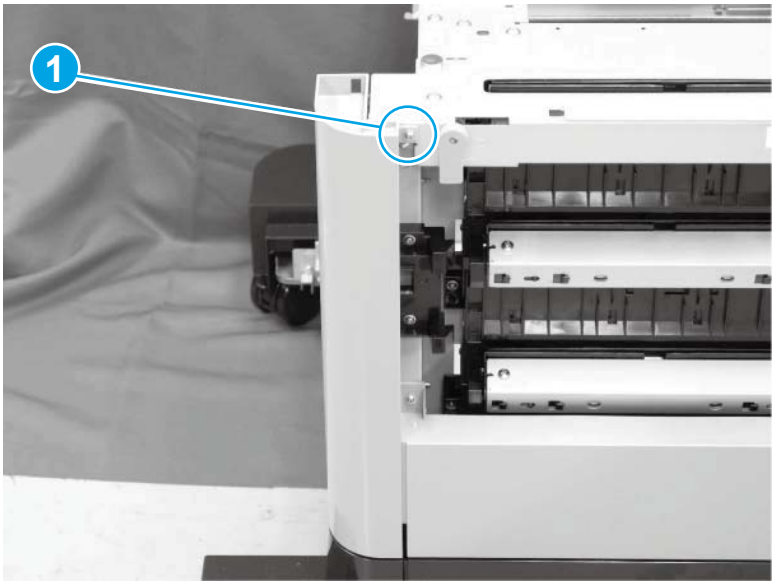
- Front upper cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See Front upper cover (HCI optional paper feeder) on page 709.

Remove the right front cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

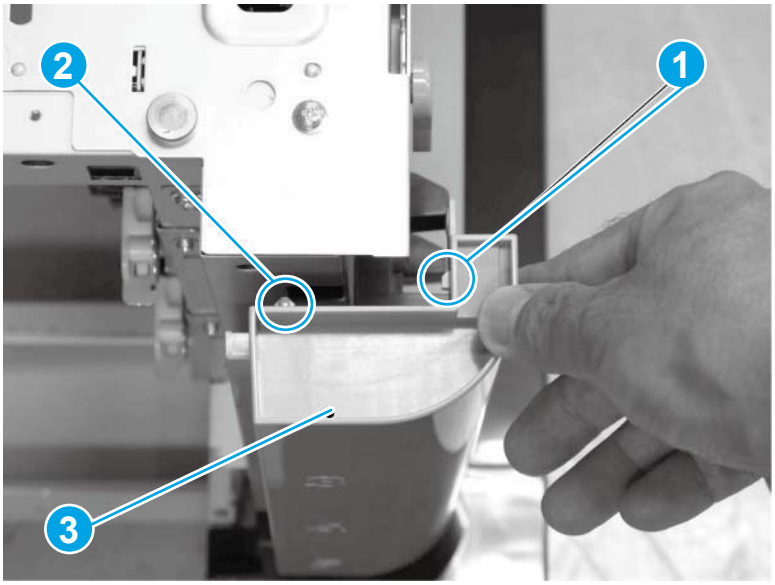
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-1130 Remove the screw (HCI optional paper feeder)



2. Release one tab (callout 1), release one pin (callout 2), and then pull up to remove the right front cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-1131 Remove the right front cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

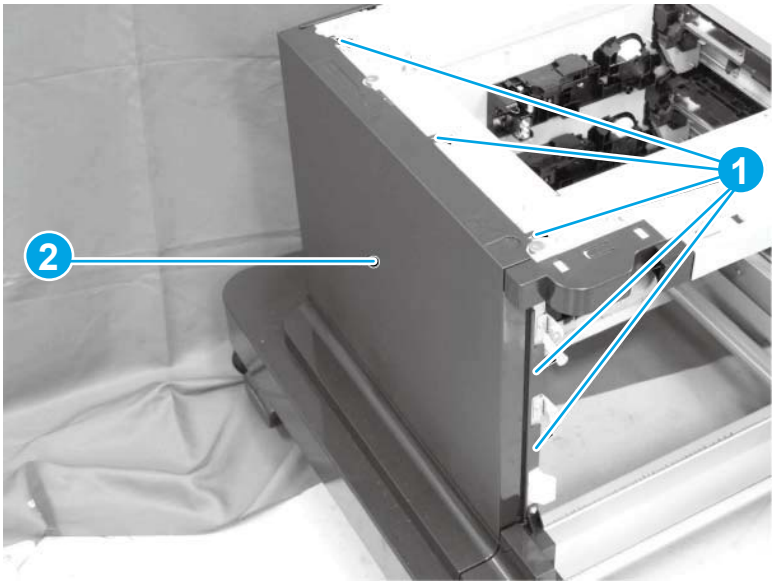


Left cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- Release five tabs (callout 1), and then remove the left cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-1132 Remove the left cover (HCI optional paper feeder)



Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

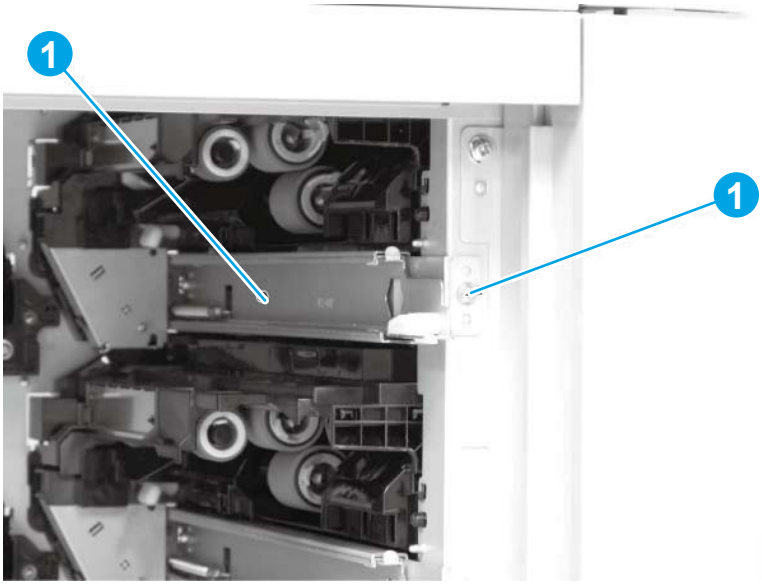
- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder) on page 705.

Remove the Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the tray rail (callout 2).

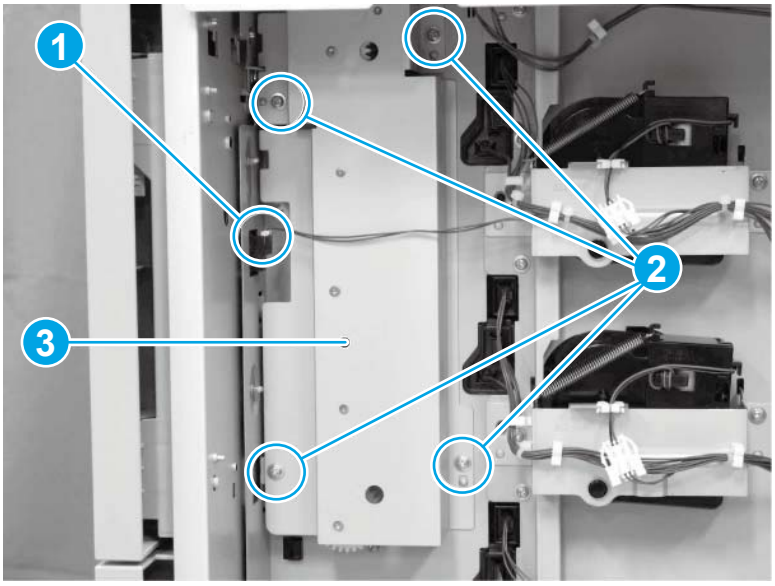
Figure 1-1133 Remove the tray rail (HCI optional paper feeder)



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the pickup drive assembly (callout 3).

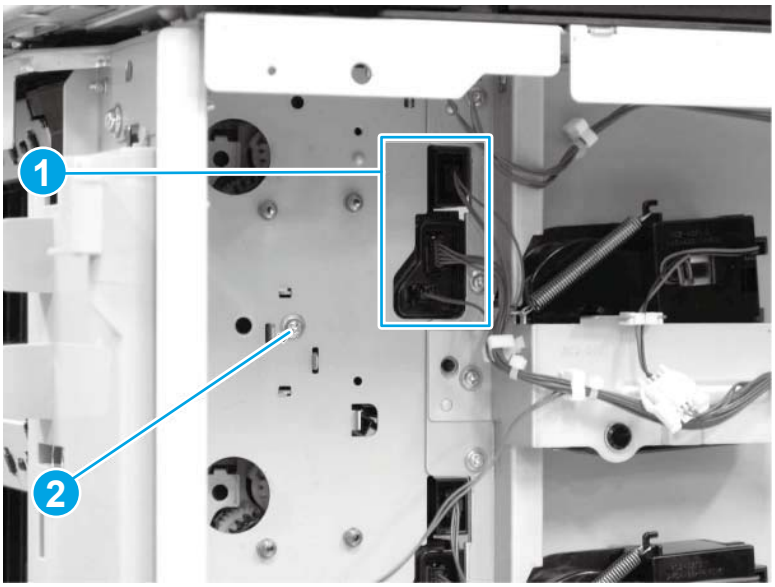
⚠ **CAUTION:** The gears on the back side of the drive assembly are not captive. If they become dislodged, see Install the Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) on page 715 to reinstall them.

Figure 1-1134 Remove the pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



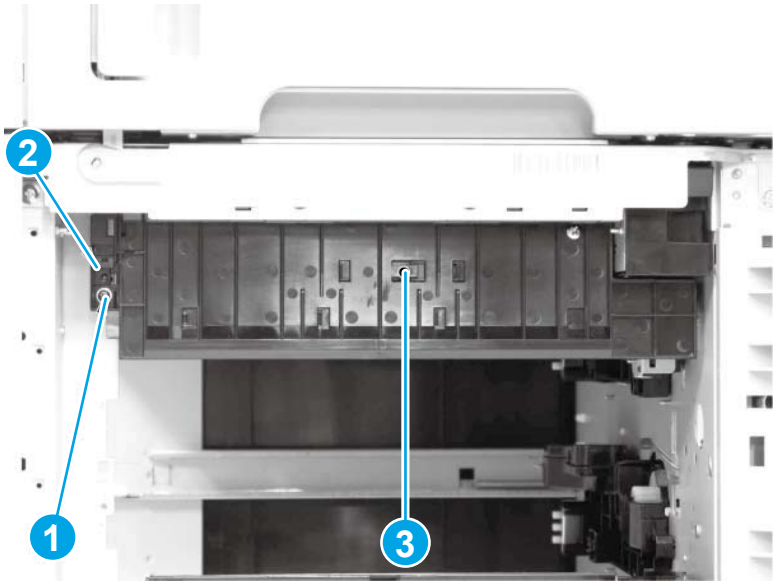
3. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 1-1135 Disconnect connectors and remove the screw (HCI optional paper feeder)



4. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the Tray 3 pickup assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-1136 Remove the Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

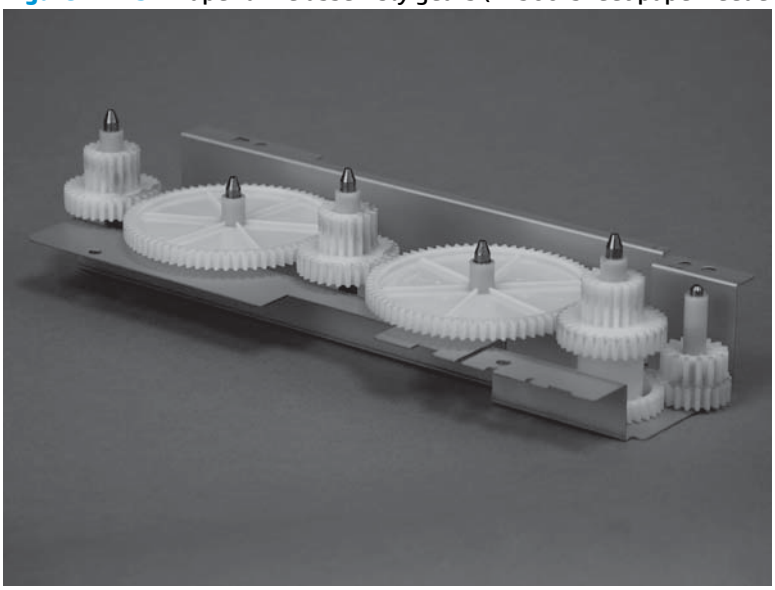


Install the Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

If the gears on the drive assembly become dislodged, use the figure to reinstall them.

NOTE: Do not remove the grease that is on the gears when handling them.

Figure 1-1137 Paper drive assembly gears (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

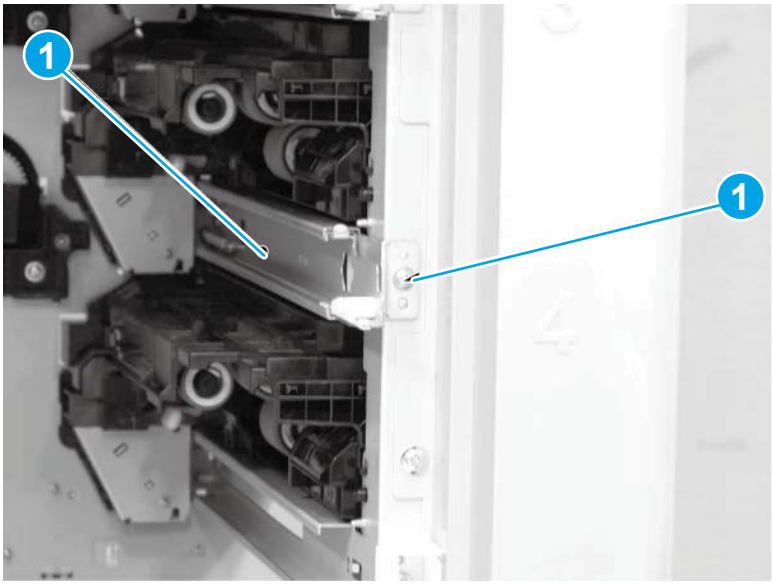
- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder) on page 705.

Remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the tray rail (callout 2).

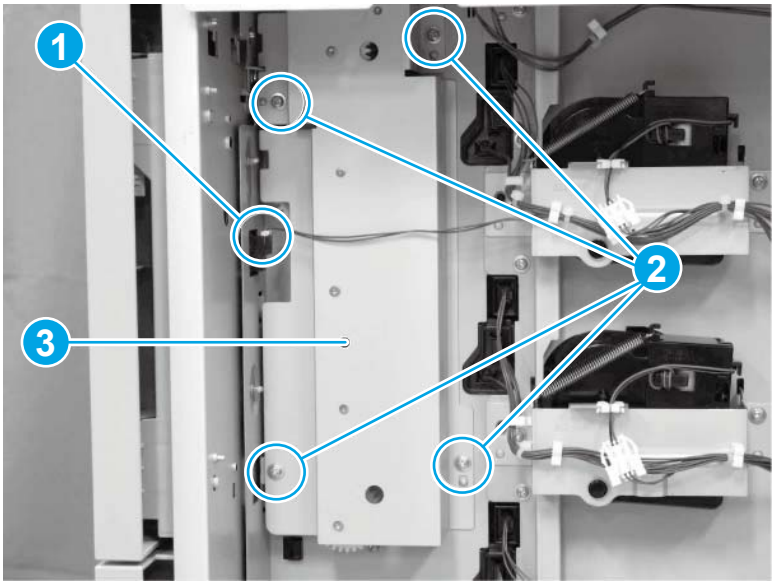
Figure 1-1138 Remove the tray rail (HCI optional paper feeder)



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the pickup drive assembly (callout 3).

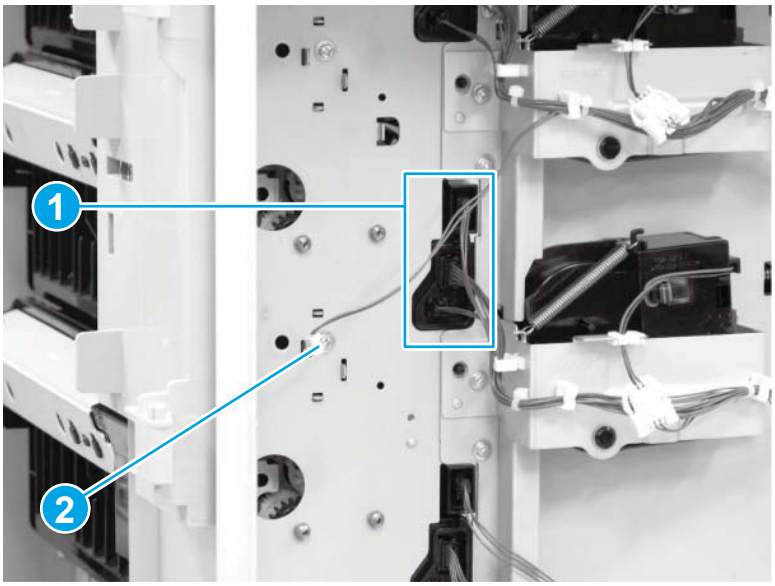
CAUTION: The gears on the back side of the drive assembly are not captive. If they become dislodged, see Install the Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) on page 715 to reinstall them.

Figure 1-1139 Remove the pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



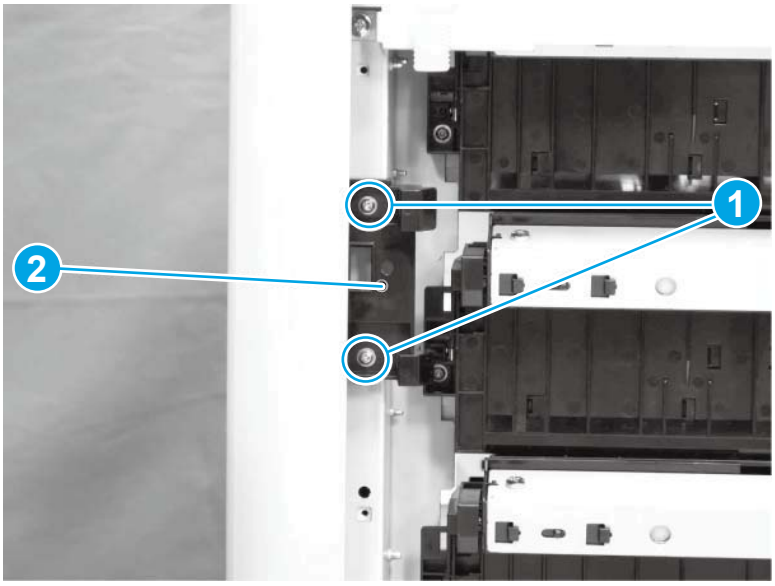
3. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 1-1140 Disconnect connectors and remove the screw (HCI optional paper feeder)



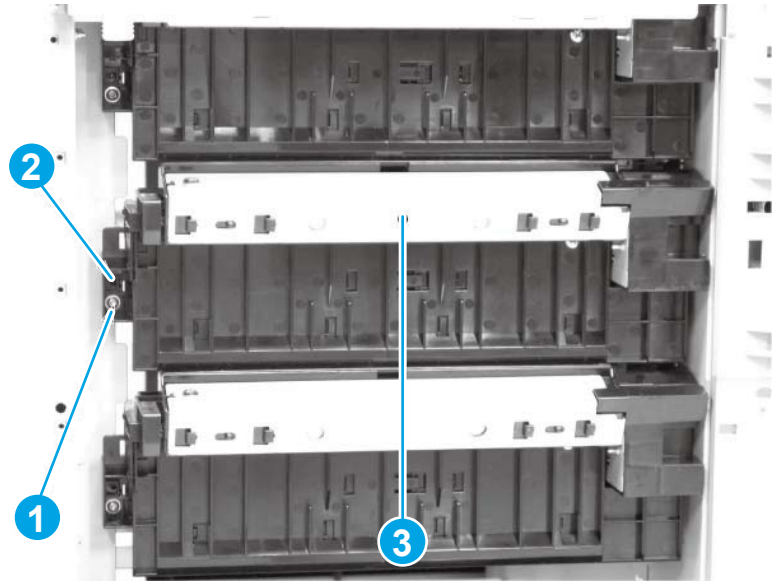
4. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the latch holder (callout 2).

Figure 1-1141 Remove the latch holder (HCI optional paper feeder)



5. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-1142 Remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

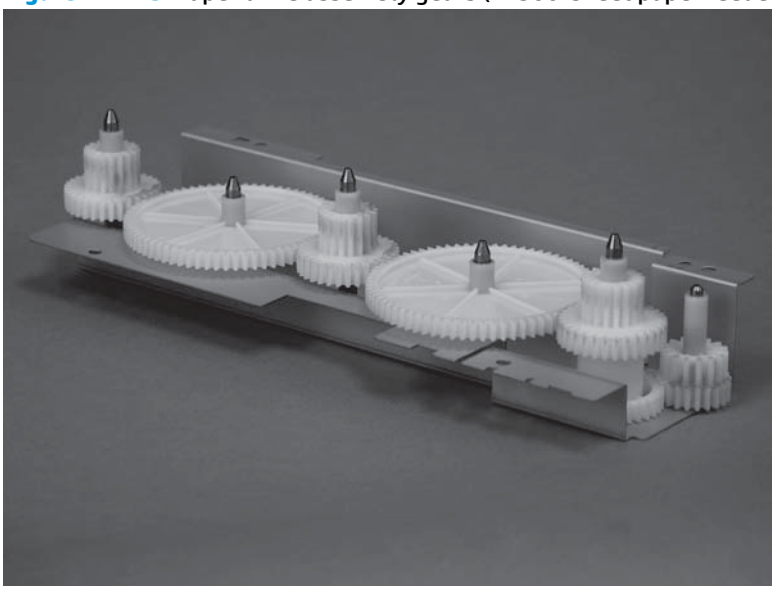


Install the Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

If the gears on the drive assembly become dislodged, use the figure to reinstall them.

NOTE: Do not remove the grease that is on the gears when handling them.

Figure 1-1143 Paper drive assembly gears (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



Tray 5 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

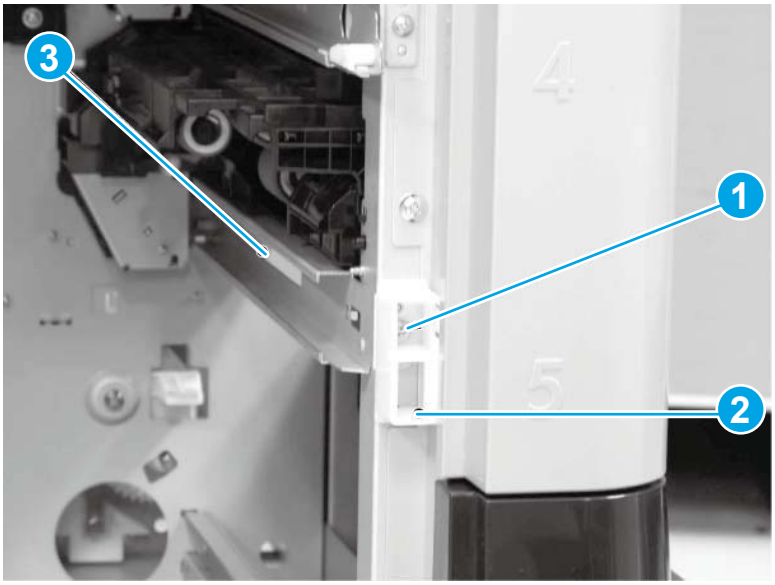
- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder) on page 705.

Remove the Tray 5 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

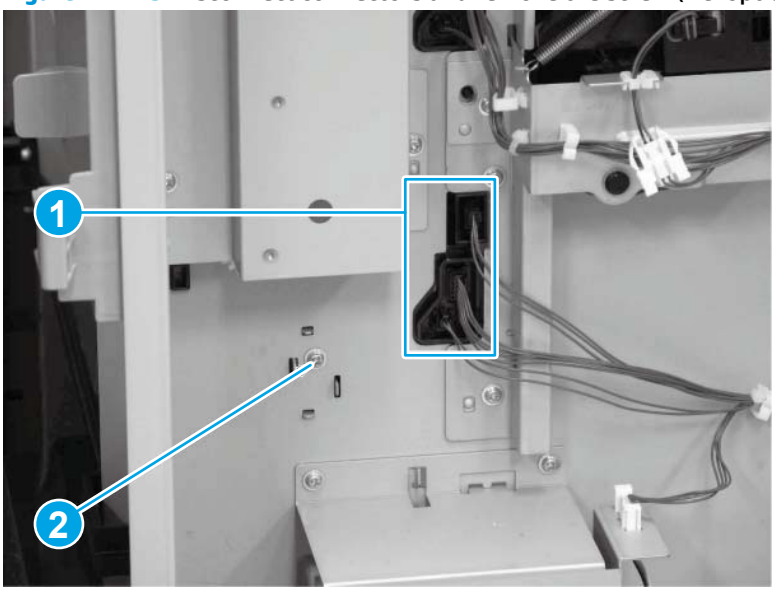
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), remove the cover (callout 2), and then remove the tray rail (callout 3).

Figure 1-1144 Remove the tray rail (HCI optional paper feeder)



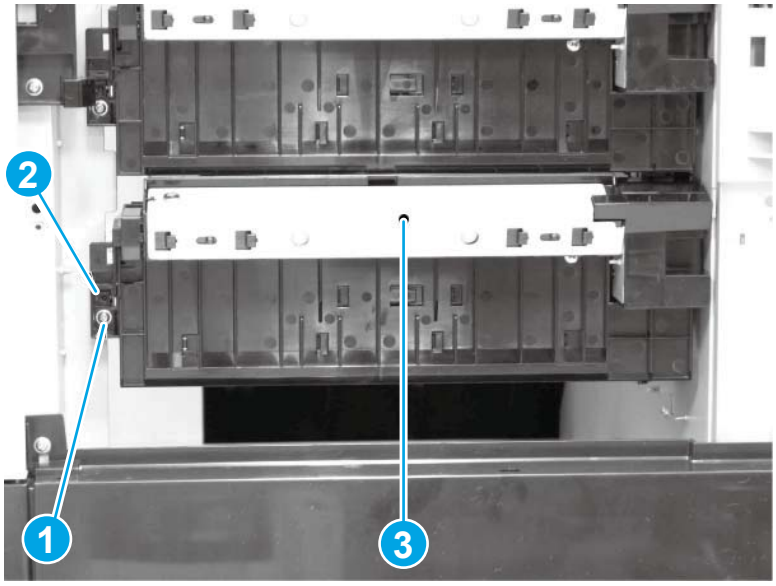
2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 1-1145 Disconnect connectors and remove the screw (HCI optional paper feeder)



3. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the Tray 5 pickup assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-1146 Remove the Tray 5 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



Pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder) on page 705.

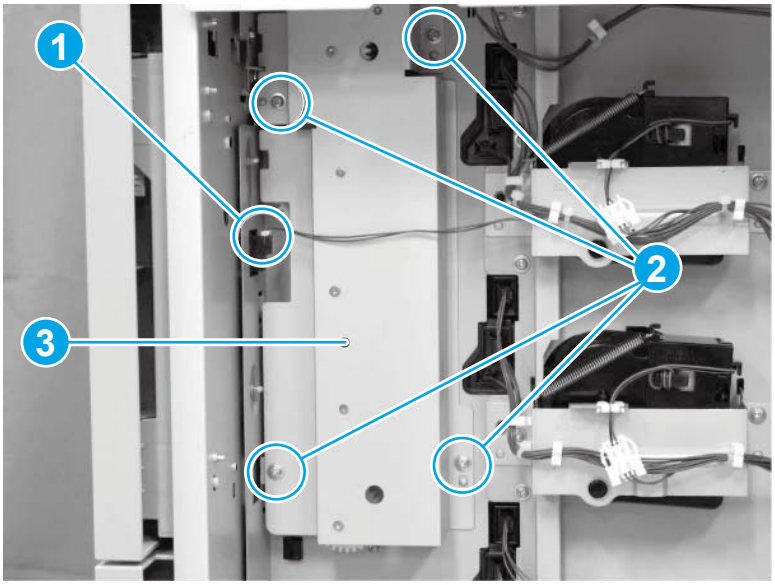
Remove the pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

▲ Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the pickup drive assembly (callout 3).

⚠ **CAUTION:** The gears on the back side of the drive assembly are not captive. If they become dislodged, see Install the pickup drive assembly on page 723 to reinstall them.

Figure 1-1147 Remove the pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

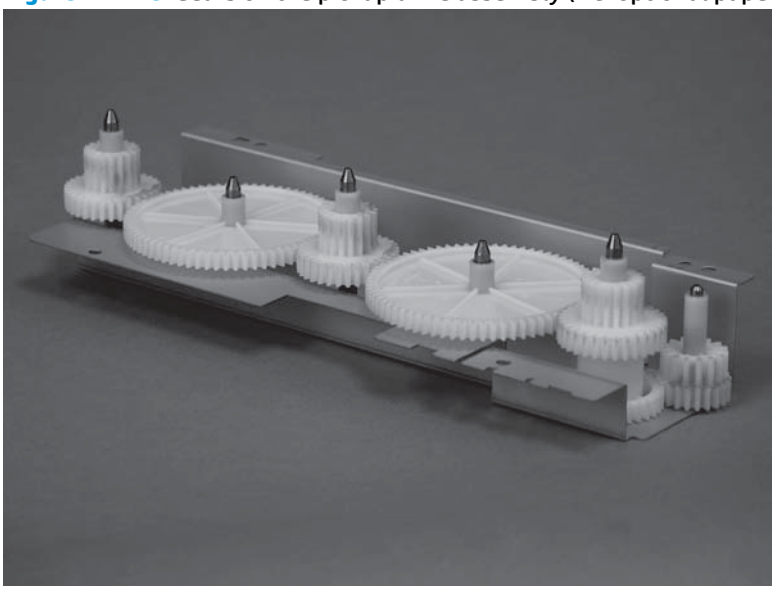


Install the pickup drive assembly

If the gears on the drive assembly become dislodged, use the figure to reinstall them.

NOTE: Do not remove the grease that is on the gears when handling them.

Figure 1-1148 Gears on the pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



Tray 3 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

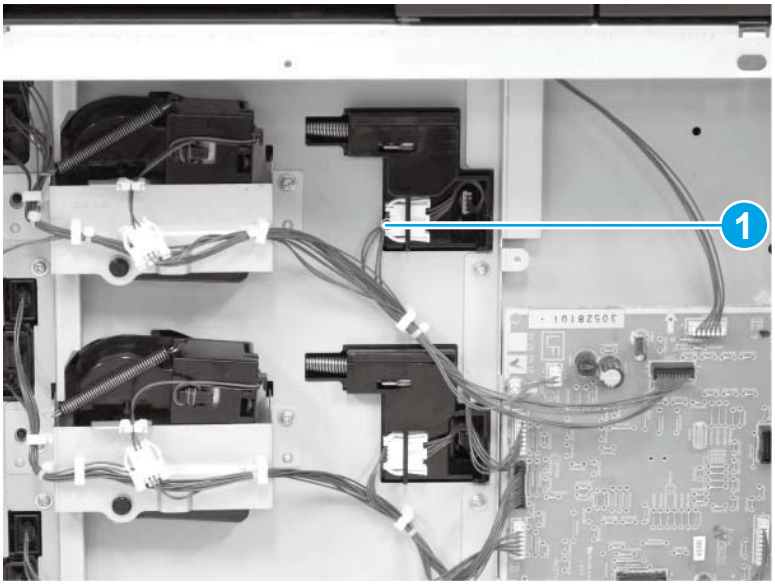
- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder) on page 705.

Remove the Tray 3 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

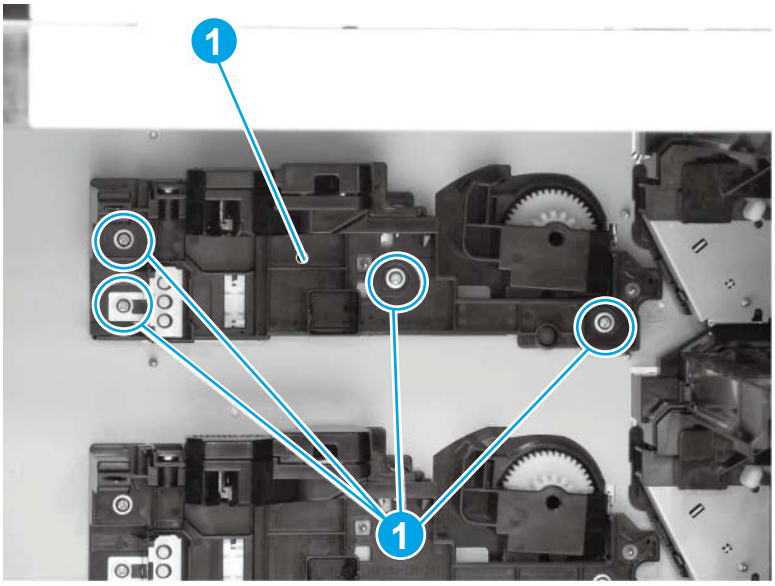
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 1-1149 Disconnect connector (HCI optional paper feeder)



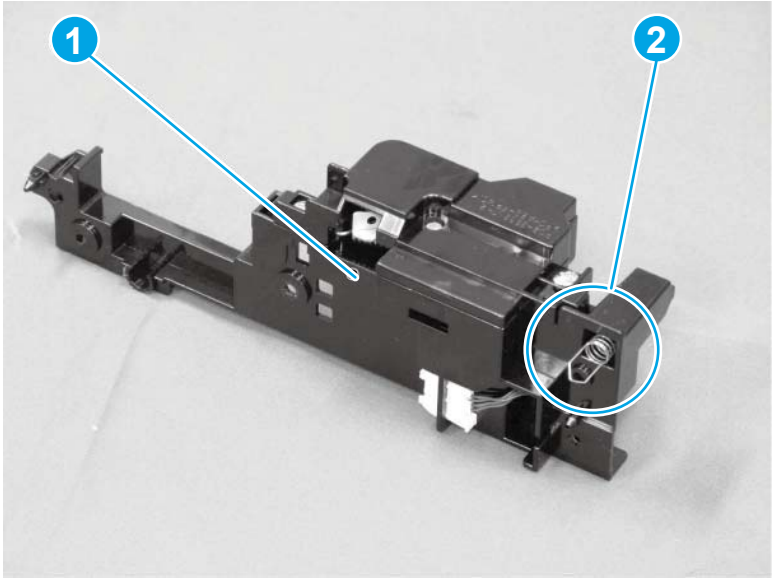
2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the Tray 3 lifter base assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-1150 Remove the Tray 3 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



3. Remove the Tray 3 lifter base assembly (callout 1) spring (callout 2).

Figure 1-1151 Remove the lifter base assembly spring (HCI optional paper feeder)



Tray 4 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

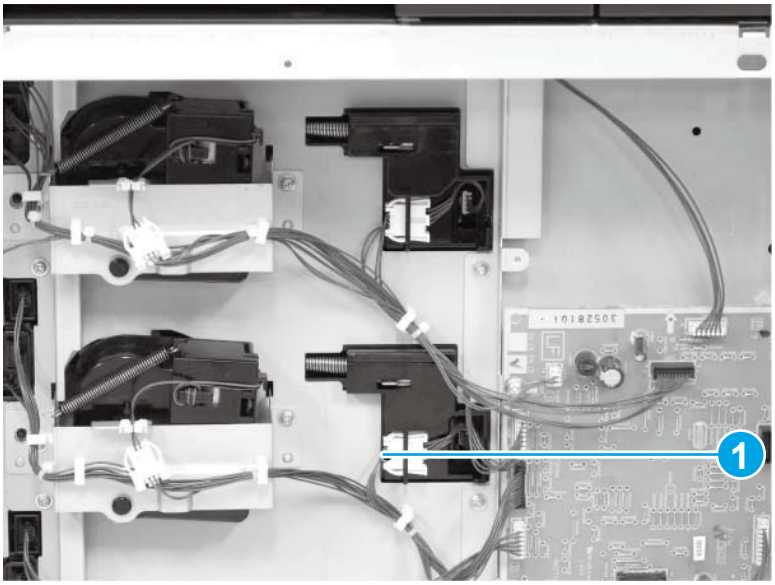
- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder) on page 705.

Remove the Tray 4 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

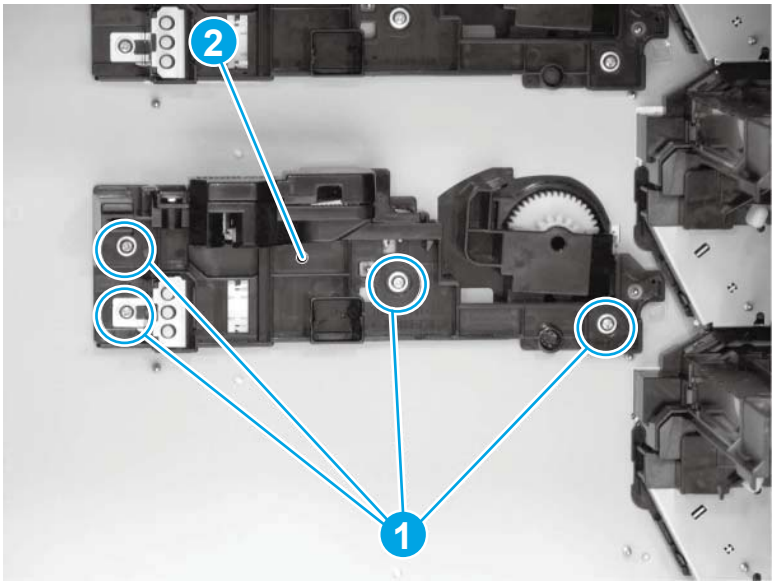
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 1-1152 Disconnect connector (HCI optional paper feeder)



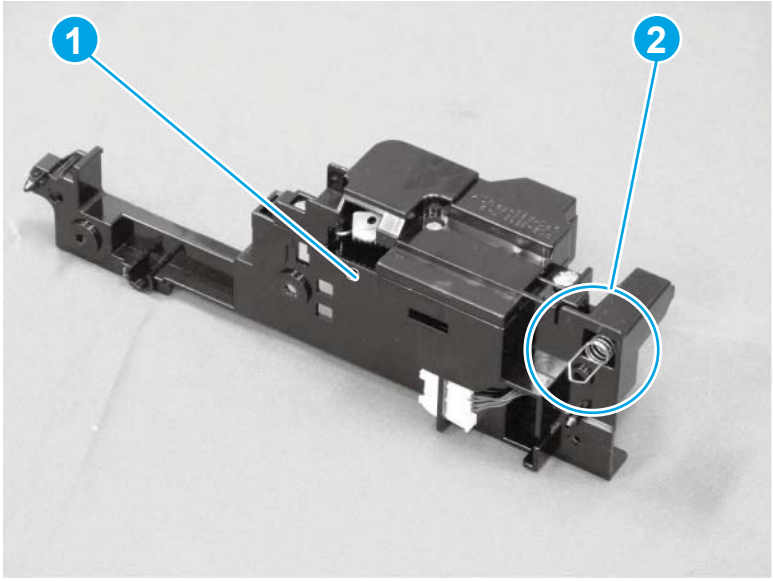
2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the Tray 4 lifter base assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-1153 Remove the Tray 4 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



3. Remove the Tray 4 lifter base assembly (callout 1) spring (callout 2).

Figure 1-1154 Remove the lifter base assembly spring (HCI optional paper feeder)



Tray 3 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

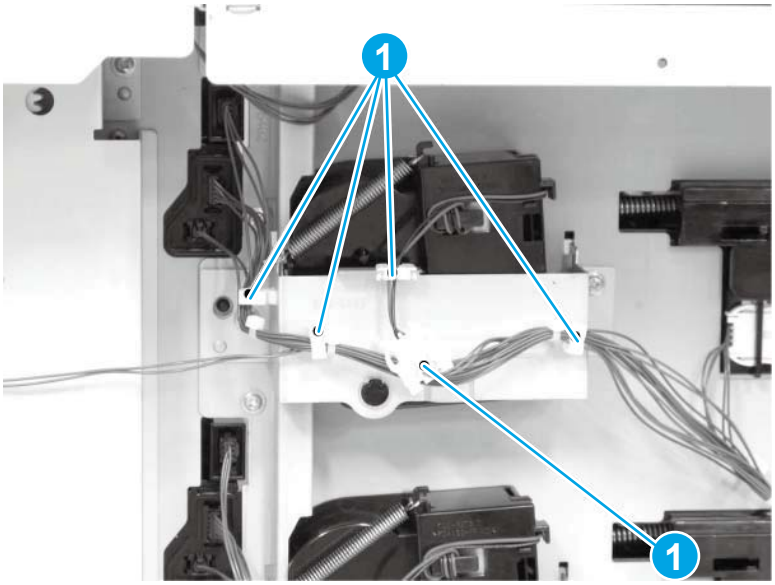
- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder) on page 705.

Remove the Tray 3 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

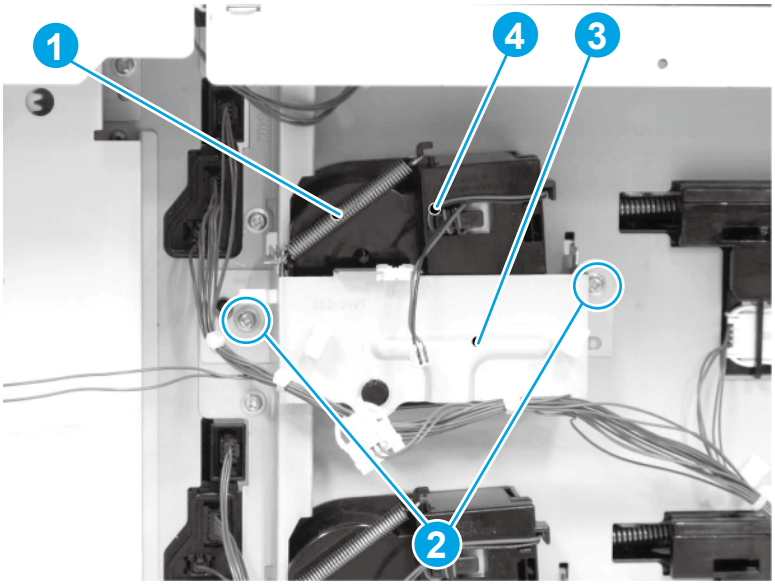
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and the release the wire harnesses from four retainers (callout 2).

Figure 1-1155 Disconnect connectors (HCI optional paper feeder)



2. Remove one spring (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), remove the sheet-metal plate (callout 3), and then remove the Tray 3 lifter assembly (callout 4).

Figure 1-1156 Remove the Tray 3 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



Tray 4 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

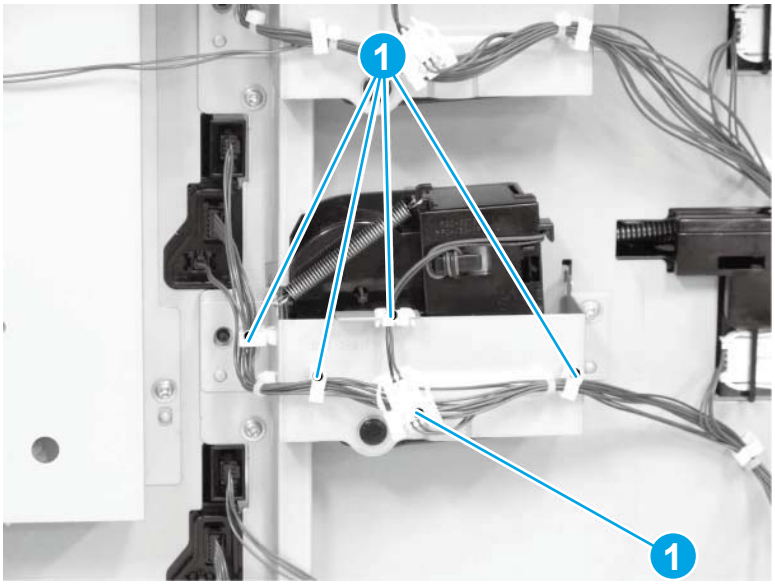
- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder) on page 705.

Remove the Tray 4 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

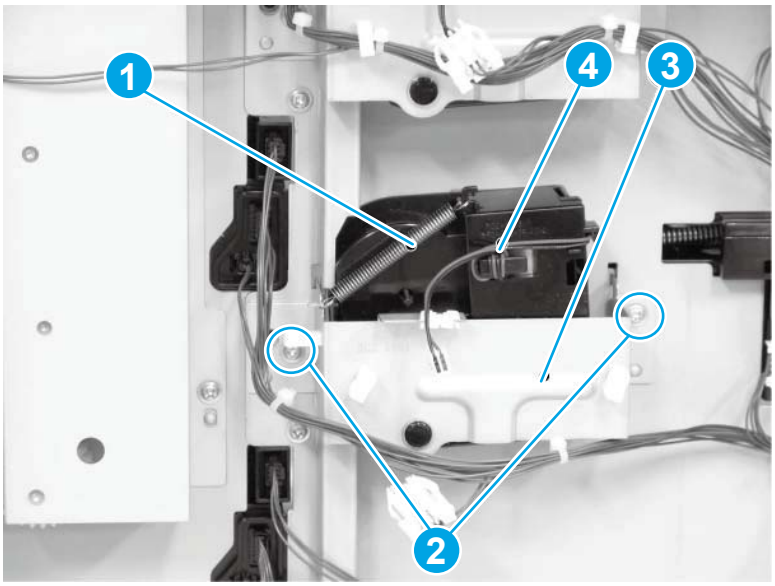
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and the release the wire harnesses from four retainers (callout 2).

Figure 1-1157 Disconnect connectors (HCI optional paper feeder)



2. Remove one spring (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), remove the sheet-metal plate (callout 3), and then remove the Tray 4 lifter assembly (callout 4).

Figure 1-1158 Remove the Tray 4 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



Tray 5 lifter drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

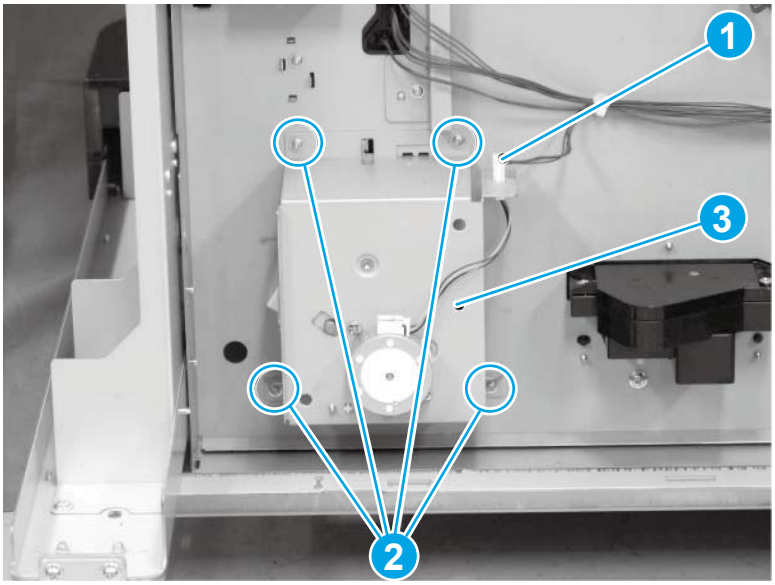
- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder) on page 705.
- Right door (HCI optional paper feeder). See Right door (HCI optional paper feeder) on page 706.
- Right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See Right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder) on page 707.
- Right lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See Right lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder) on page 708.

Remove the Tray 5 lifter drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

▲ Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the Tray 5 lifter drive assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-1159 Remove the Tray 5 lifter drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



Controller printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (HCI optional paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder) on page 705.

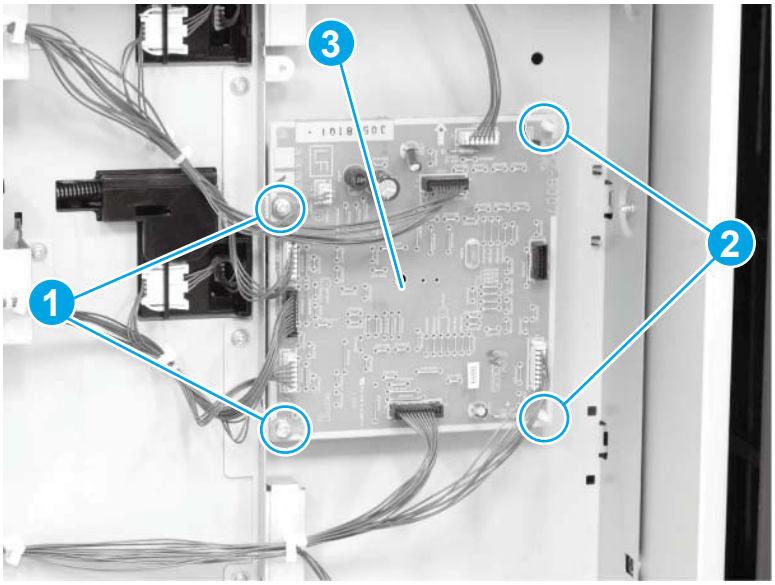
Remove the controller PCA (HCI optional paper feeder)

⚠ **CAUTION:** ESD-sensitive part.

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

▲ Disconnect all of the connectors, remove two screws (callout 1), use a pair needle-nose pliers to release two standoffs (callout 2), and then remove the feeder PCA (callout 3).

Figure 1-1160 Remove the controller PCA (HCI optional paper feeder)



Stapling mailbox

NOTE: HP recommends removing the accessory from the product before servicing it.

Some of the figures in this section might look slightly different than the M630 accessory. However, the procedures are correct for this product.

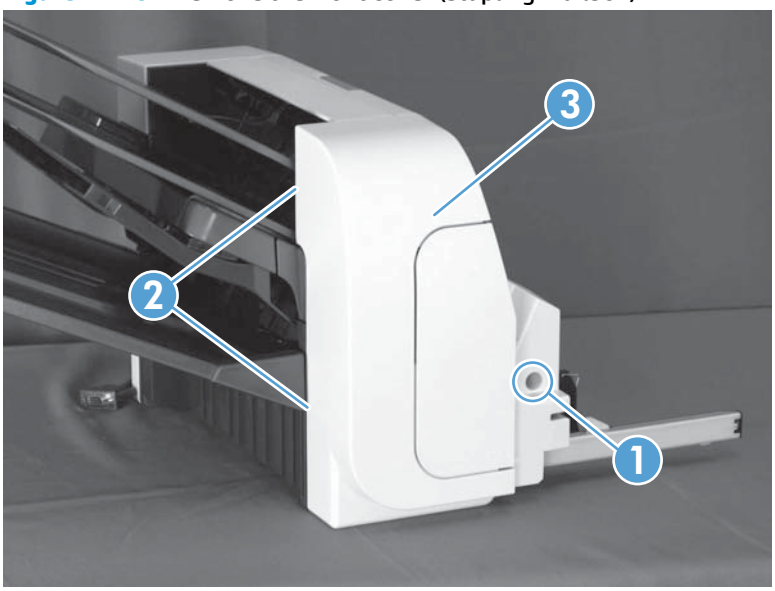
- Front cover (stapling mailbox)
- Rear cover (stapling mailbox)
- Handle assembly (stapling mailbox)
- Top cover (stapling mailbox)
- Output bin 3 (stapling mailbox)
- Output bin assembly cover (stapling mailbox)
- Driver printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (stapling mailbox)
- Output bin sensor printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (stapling mailbox)
- Stapler assembly (stapling mailbox)
- Jogger assembly (stapling mailbox)
- Output bin solenoid (stapling mailbox)
- Output bin assembly (stapling mailbox)
- Stage top assembly (stapling mailbox)
- Stage assembly (stapling mailbox)
- Output bin 3 drive assembly (stapling mailbox)

Front cover (stapling mailbox)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

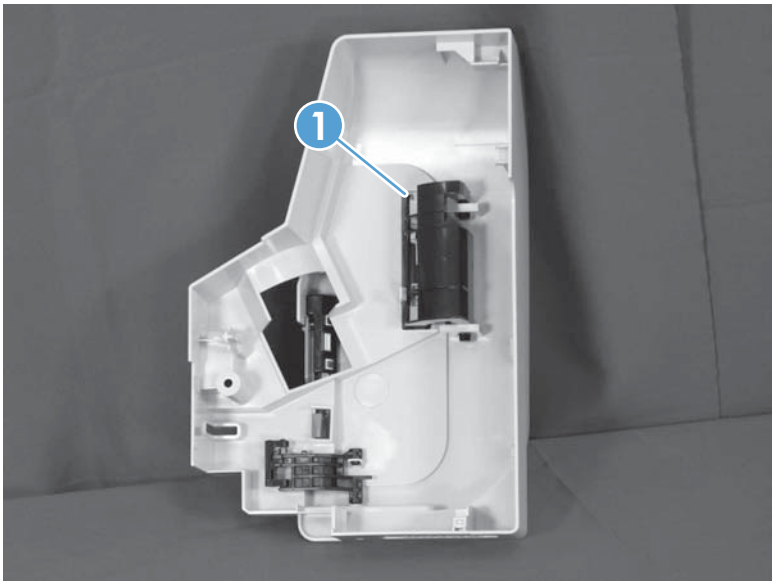
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the front cover (callout 3).

Figure 1-1161 Remove the front cover (stapling mailbox)



2. If necessary, remove the lever assembly (callout 1) from the cover.

Figure 1-1162 Remove the lever assembly (stapling mailbox)

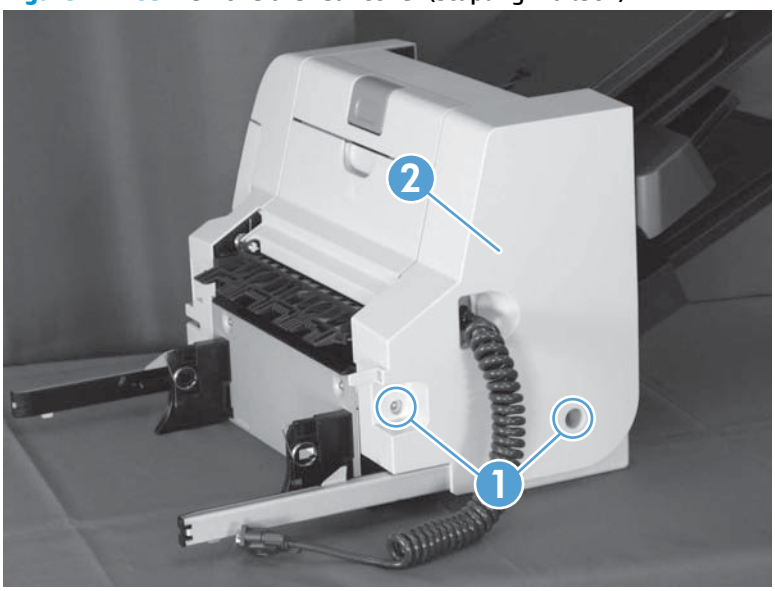


Rear cover (stapling mailbox)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the rear cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-1163 Remove the rear cover (stapling mailbox)



Handle assembly (stapling mailbox)

Remove the following assemblies:

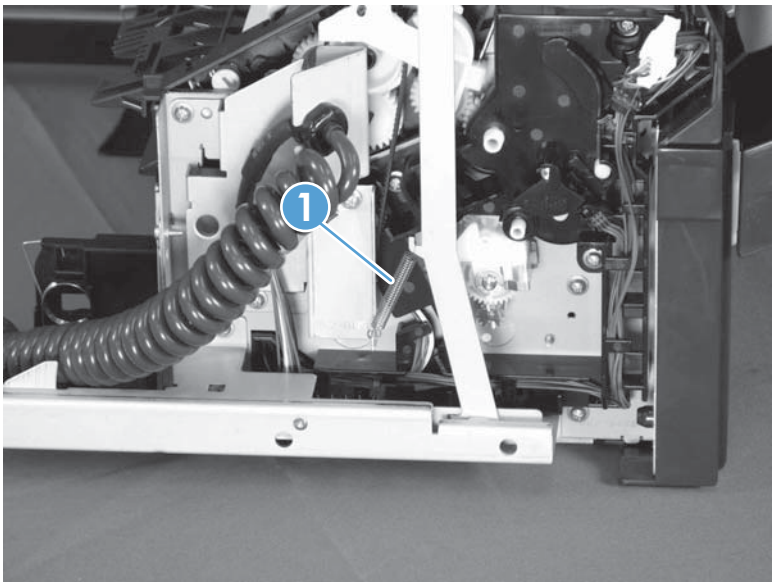
- Front cover. See Front cover (stapling mailbox) on page 733.
- Rear cover. See Rear cover (stapling mailbox) on page 734.

Remove the handle assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

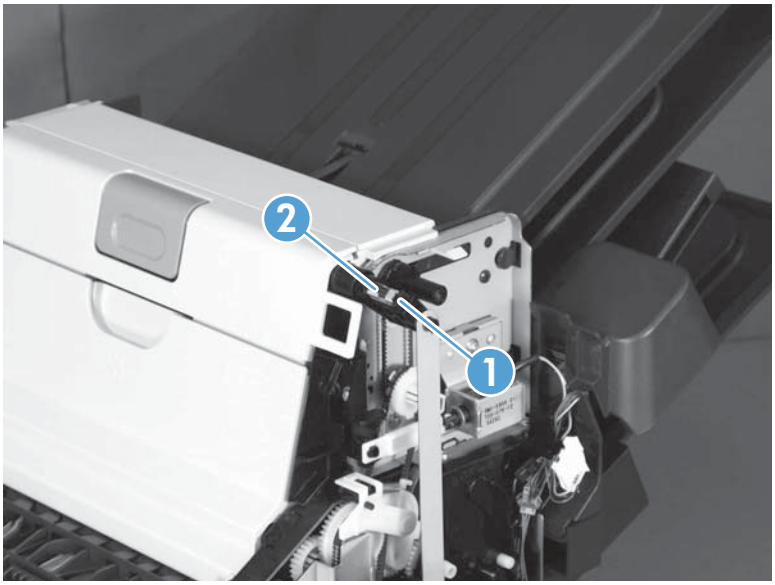
1. Remove one spring (callout 1).

Figure 1-1164 Remove one spring (stapling mailbox)



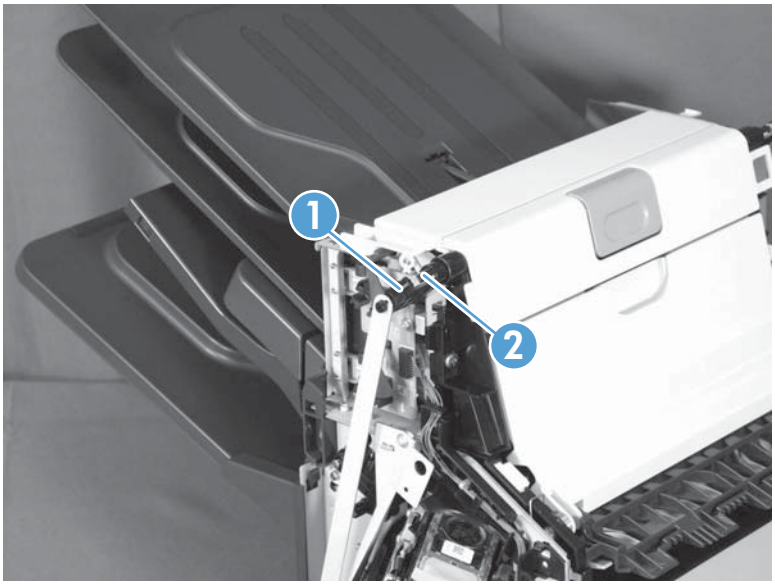
2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the bushing (callout 2).

Figure 1-1165 Remove the bushing (stapling mailbox)



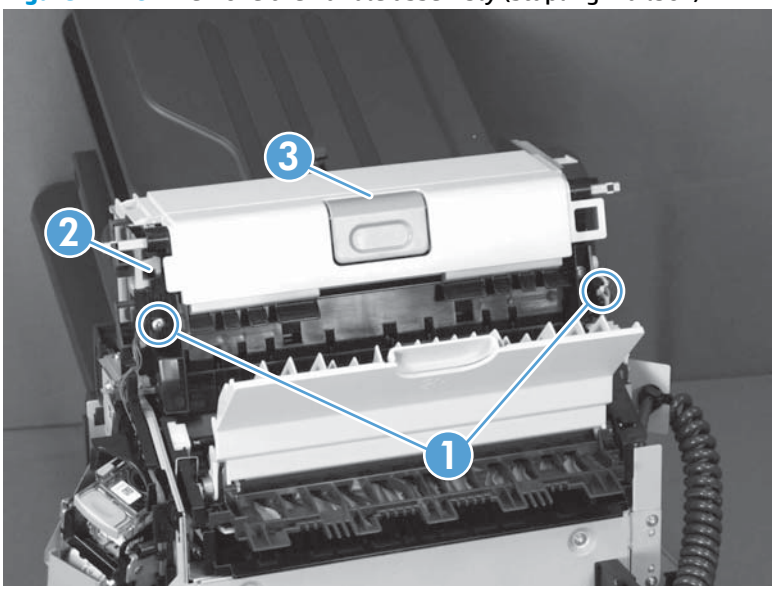
3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the bushing (callout 2).

Figure 1-1166 Remove the bushing (stapling mailbox)



4. Remove two screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the handle assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-1167 Remove the handle assembly (stapling mailbox)



Top cover (stapling mailbox)

Remove the following assemblies:

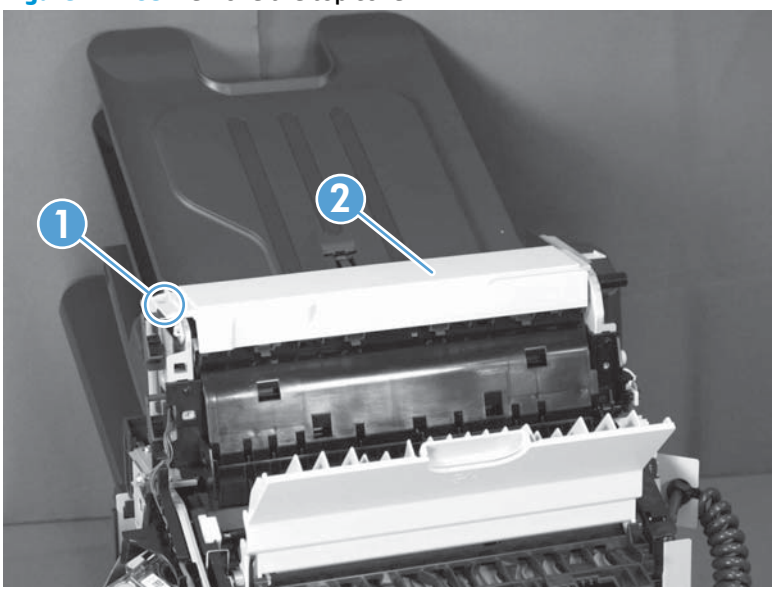
- Front cover (stapling mailbox). See Front cover (stapling mailbox) on page 733.
- Rear cover (stapling mailbox). See Rear cover (stapling mailbox) on page 734.
- Handle assembly (stapling mailbox). See Handle assembly (stapling mailbox) on page 735.

Remove the top cover

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

▲ Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the top cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-1168 Remove the top cover

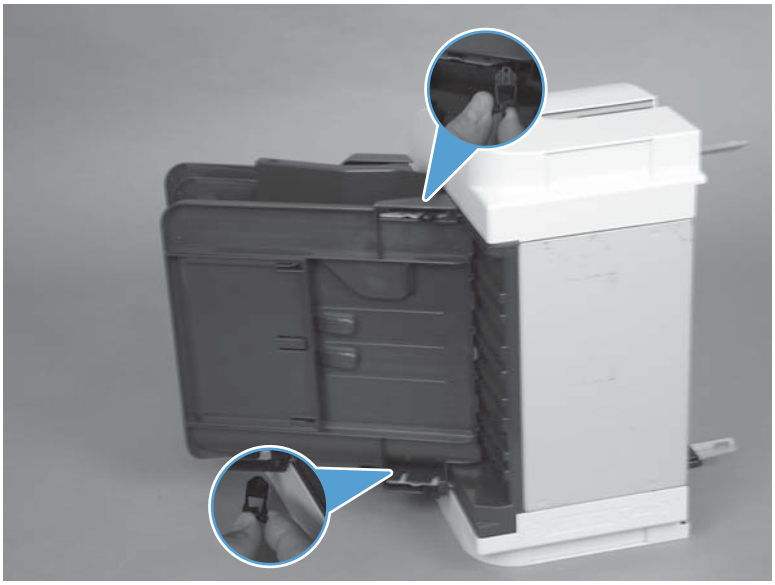


Output bin 3 (stapling mailbox)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

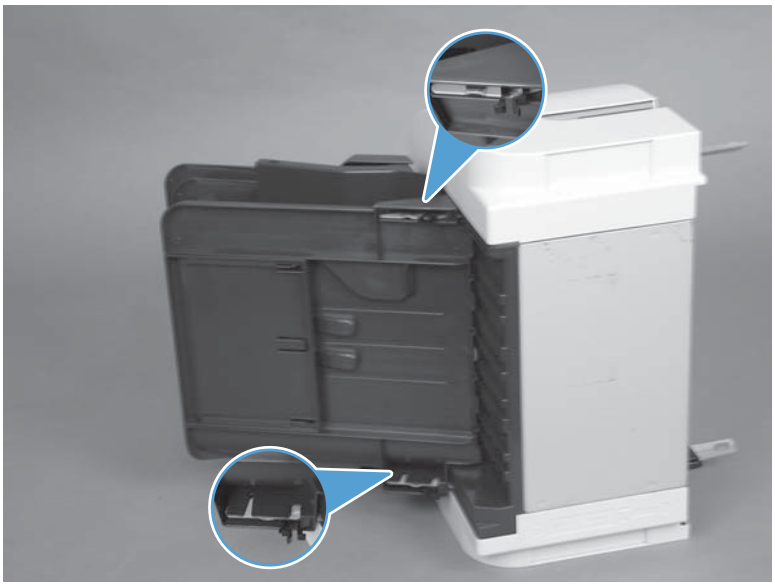
1. Squeeze and pull two stoppers to remove them from the output bin.

Figure 1-1169 Remove two stoppers (stapling mailbox)



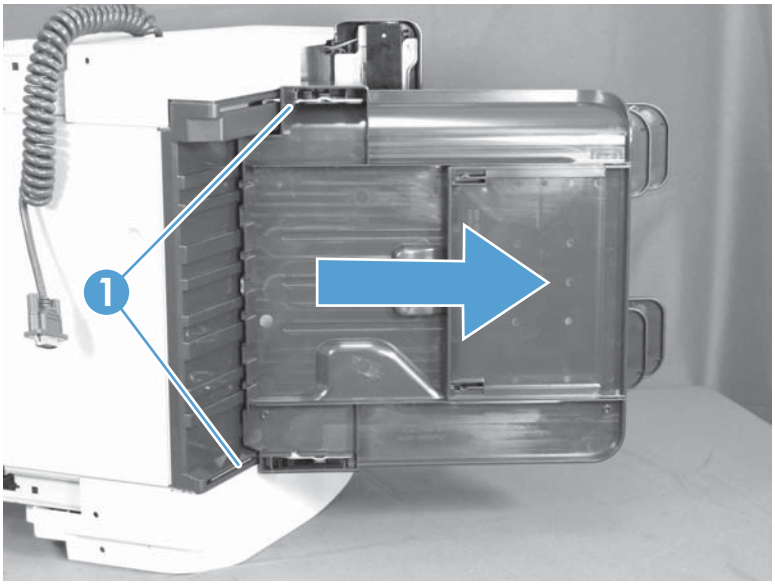
NOTE: When reinstalling the output bin, make sure the two stoppers are installed in the correct position.

Figure 1-1170 Reinstall the two stoppers (stapling mailbox)



2. Release two tabs (callout 1) and then slide the output bin away from the stapling mailbox chassis to remove it.

Figure 1-1171 Remove the output bin (stapling mailbox)



Output bin assembly cover (stapling mailbox)

Remove the following assemblies:

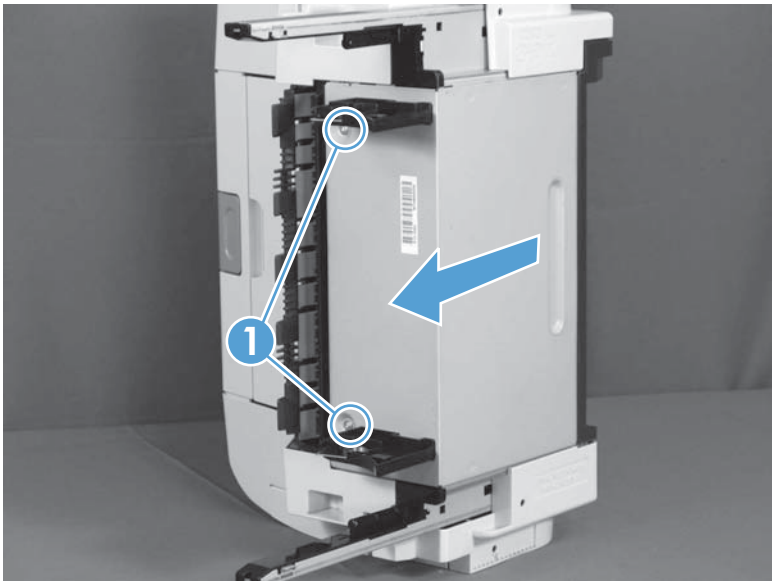
- Front cover (stapling mailbox). See Front cover (stapling mailbox) on page 733.
- Rear cover (stapling mailbox). See Rear cover (stapling mailbox) on page 734.
- Output bin 3 (stapling mailbox). See Output bin 3 (stapling mailbox) on page 738.

Remove the output bin assembly cover

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

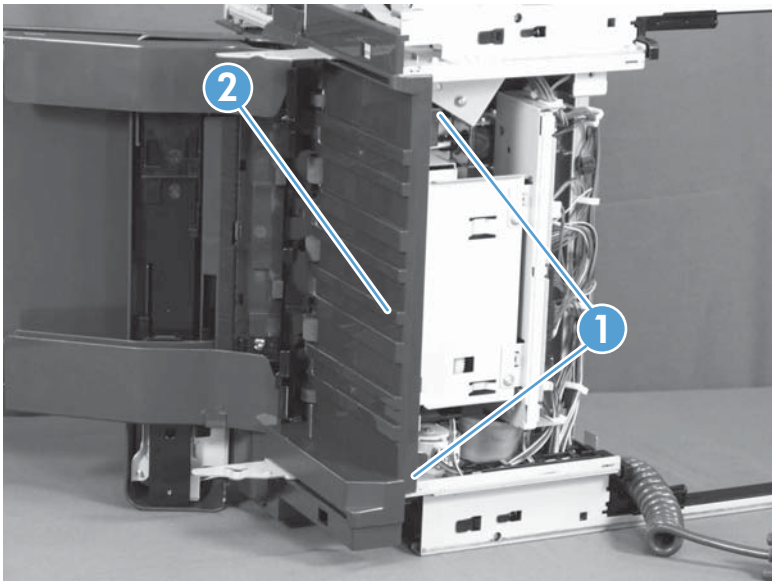
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the PCA cover away from the stapling mailbox chassis to remove it.

Figure 1-1172 Remove the PCA cover (stapling mailbox)



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then remove the output bin cover assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-1173 Remove the output bin assembly cover (stapling mailbox)



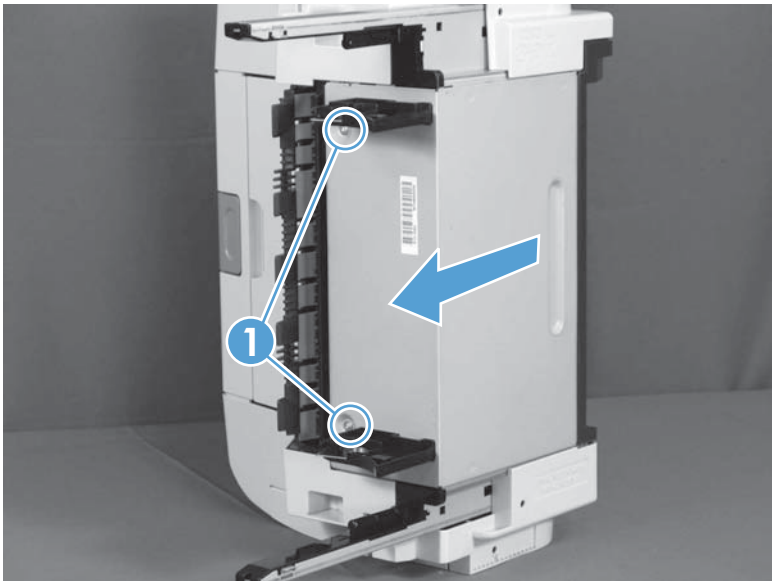
Driver printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (stapling mailbox)

CAUTION: ESD-sensitive part.

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

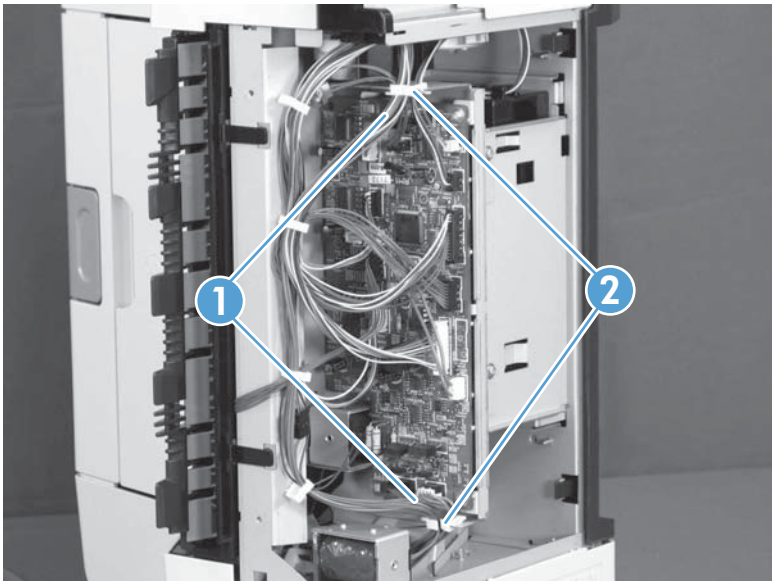
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the PCA cover away from the stapling mailbox chassis to remove it.

Figure 1-1174 Remove the PCA cover (stapling mailbox)



2. Release the wire harnesses (callout 1) from the guide (callout 2).

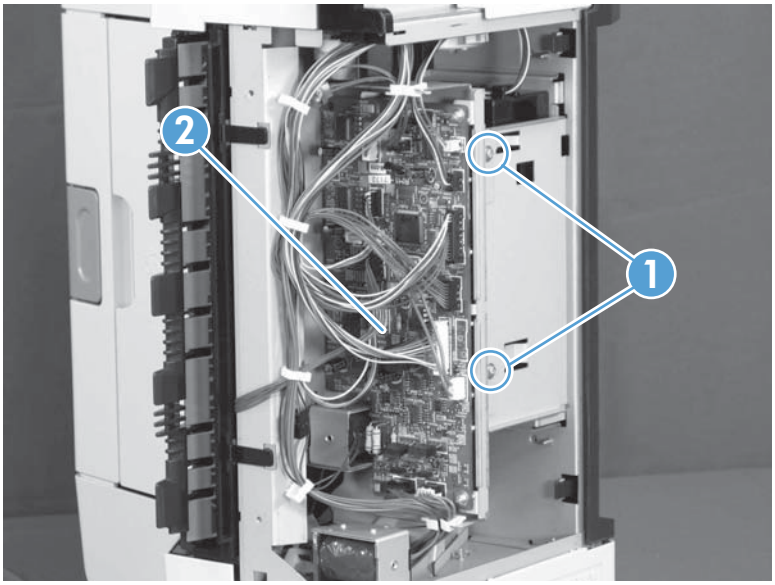
Figure 1-1175 Release the wire harnesses (stapling mailbox)



3. Disconnect all connectors from the PCA, remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the PCA (callout 2).

NOTE: Connector J460 is empty.

Figure 1-1176 Remove the PCA (stapling mailbox)



Output bin sensor printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (stapling mailbox)

Remove the following assemblies:

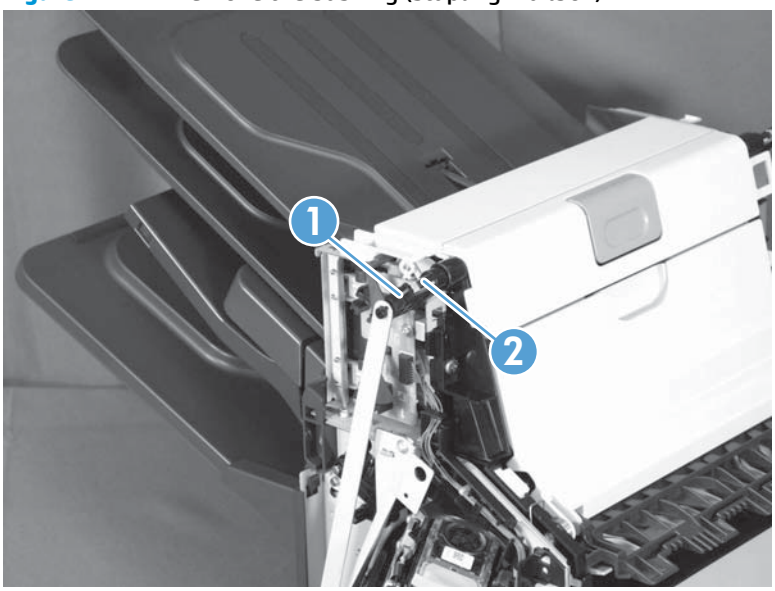
- Front cover (stapling mailbox). See Front cover (stapling mailbox) on page 733.

Remove the output bin sensor PCA

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

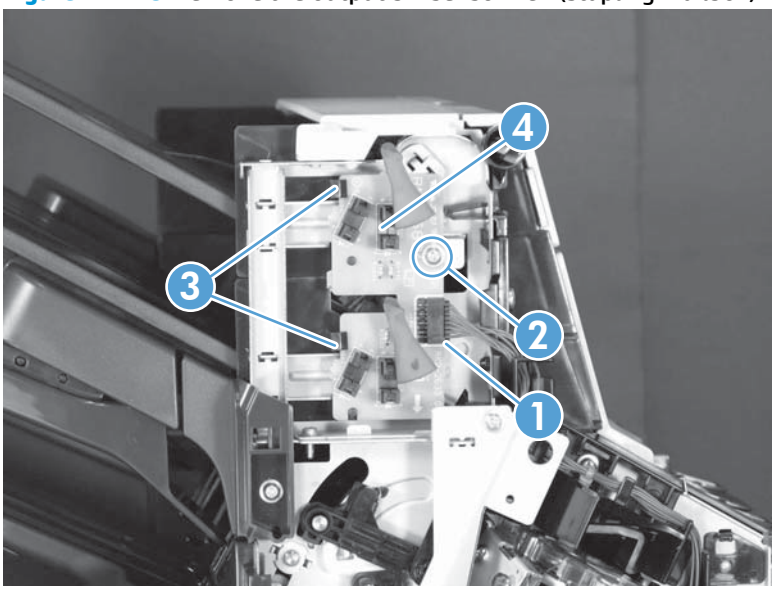
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the bushing (callout 2).

Figure 1-1177 Remove the bushing (stapling mailbox)



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove one screw (callout 2), release two tabs (callout 3), and then remove the output bin sensor PCA (callout 4).

Figure 1-1178 Remove the output bin sensor PCA (stapling mailbox)



Stapler assembly (stapling mailbox)

Remove the following assemblies:

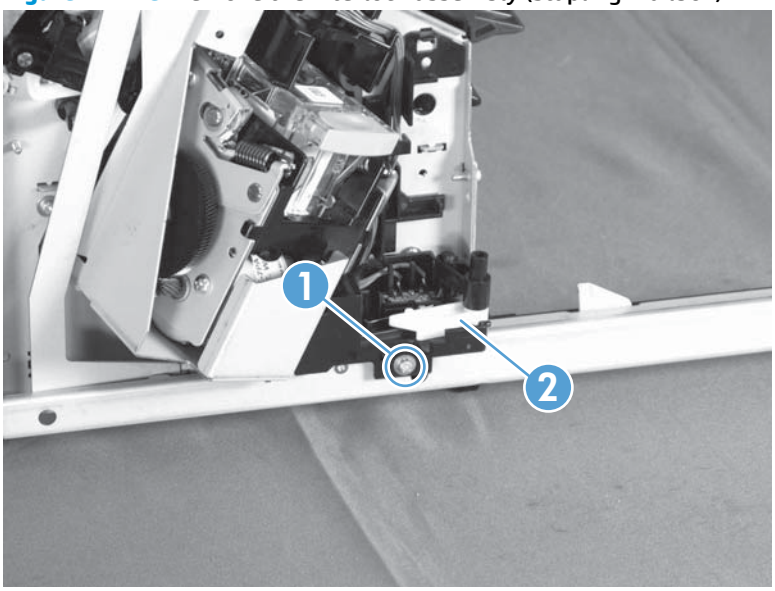
- Front cover (stapling mailbox). See Front cover (stapling mailbox) on page 733.

Remove the stapler assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

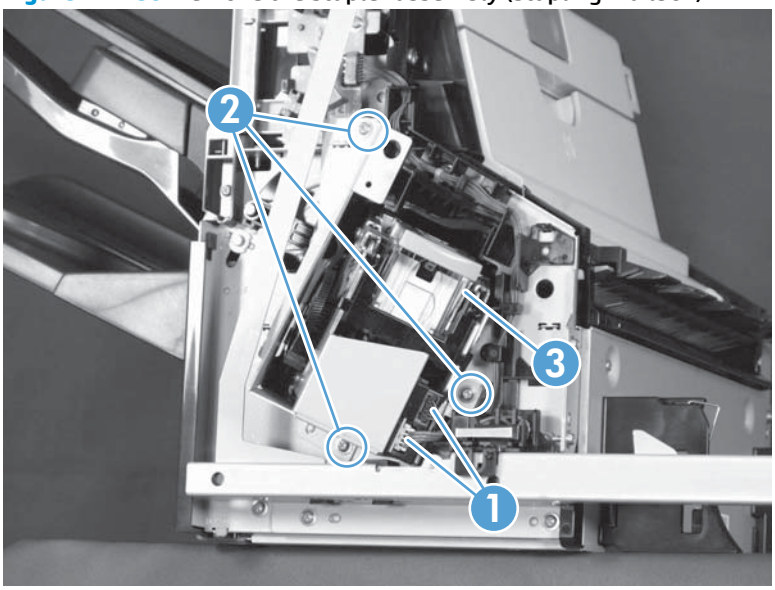
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the interlock assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-1179 Remove the interlock assembly (stapling mailbox)



2. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the stapler assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-1180 Remove the stapler assembly (stapling mailbox)



Jogger assembly (stapling mailbox)

Remove the following assemblies:

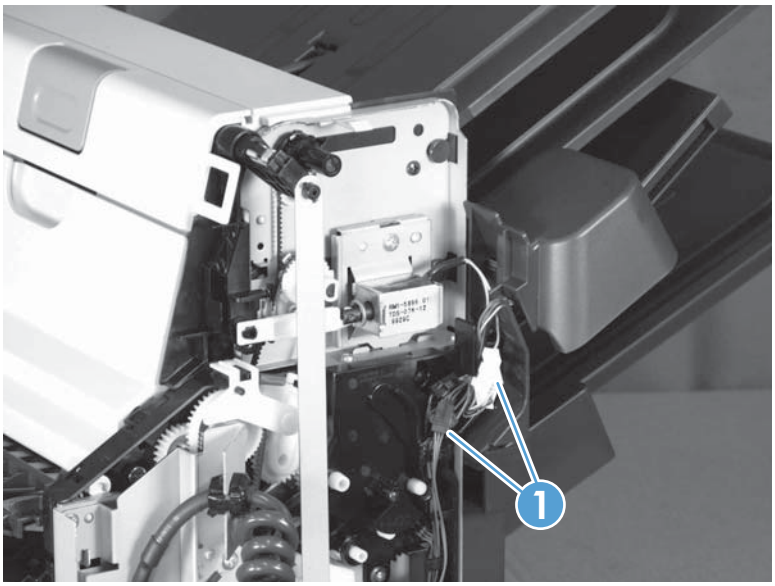
- Front cover (stapling mailbox). See Front cover (stapling mailbox) on page 733.
- Rear cover (stapling mailbox). See Rear cover (stapling mailbox) on page 734.

Remove the jogger assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

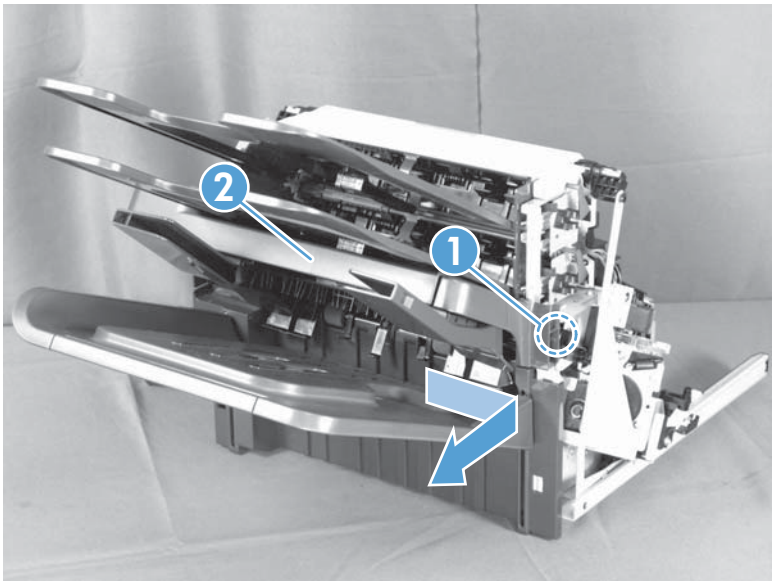
1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1).

Figure 1-1181 Disconnect two connectors (stapling mailbox)



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), slide the jogger assembly (callout 2) toward the right-side of the stapler, and then pull the assembly away from the stapler to remove it.

Figure 1-1182 Remove the jogger assembly (stapling mailbox)



Output bin solenoid (stapling mailbox)

Remove the following assemblies:

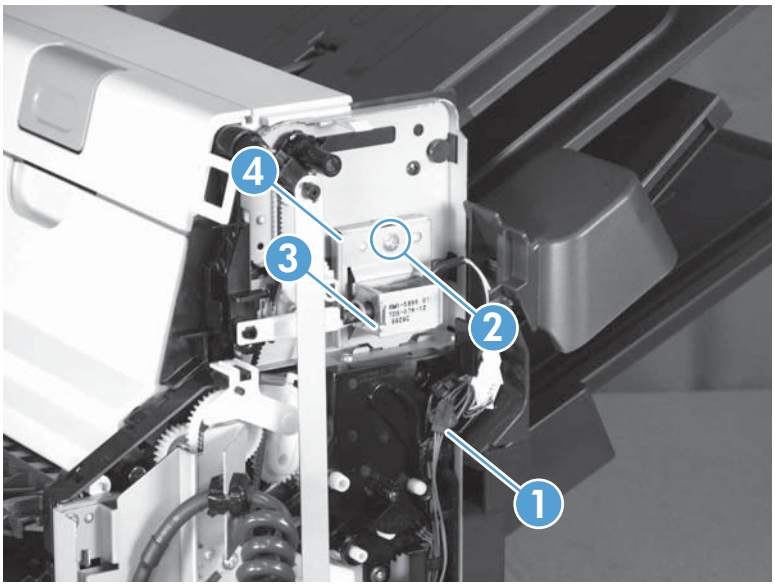
- Front cover (stapling mailbox). See Front cover (stapling mailbox) on page 733.
- Rear cover (stapling mailbox). See Rear cover (stapling mailbox) on page 734.

Remove the output bin solenoid

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

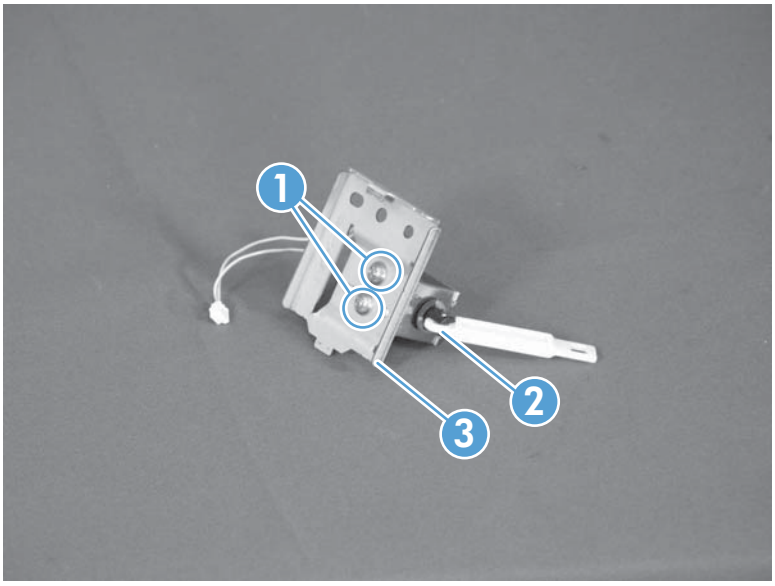
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove one screw (callout 2), and then remove the output bin solenoid (callout 3) and the sheet-metal plate (callout 4) together.

Figure 1-1183 Remove the output bin solenoid and sheet-metal plate (stapling mailbox)



2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then separate the output bin solenoid (callout 2) from the sheet-metal plate (callout 3).

Figure 1-1184 Remove the output bin solenoid (stapling mailbox)



Output bin assembly (stapling mailbox)

Remove the following assemblies:

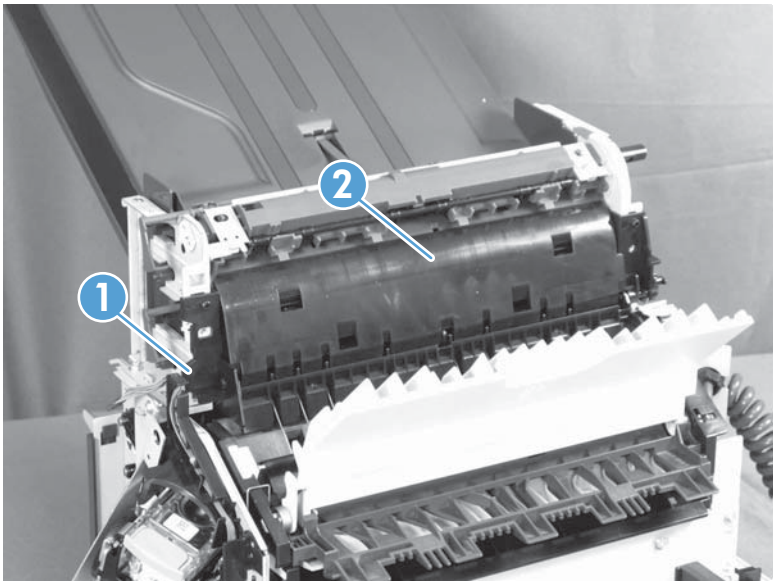
- Front cover (stapling mailbox). See Front cover (stapling mailbox) on page 733.
- Rear cover (stapling mailbox). See Rear cover (stapling mailbox) on page 734.
- Handle assembly (stapling mailbox). See Handle assembly (stapling mailbox) on page 735.
- Top cover (stapling mailbox). See Top cover (stapling mailbox) on page 737.
- Output bin sensor PCA (stapling mailbox). See Output bin sensor printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (stapling mailbox) on page 744.
- Jogger assembly (stapling mailbox). See Jogger assembly (stapling mailbox) on page 746.
- Output bin solenoid (stapling mailbox). See Output bin solenoid (stapling mailbox) on page 747.

Remove the output bin assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

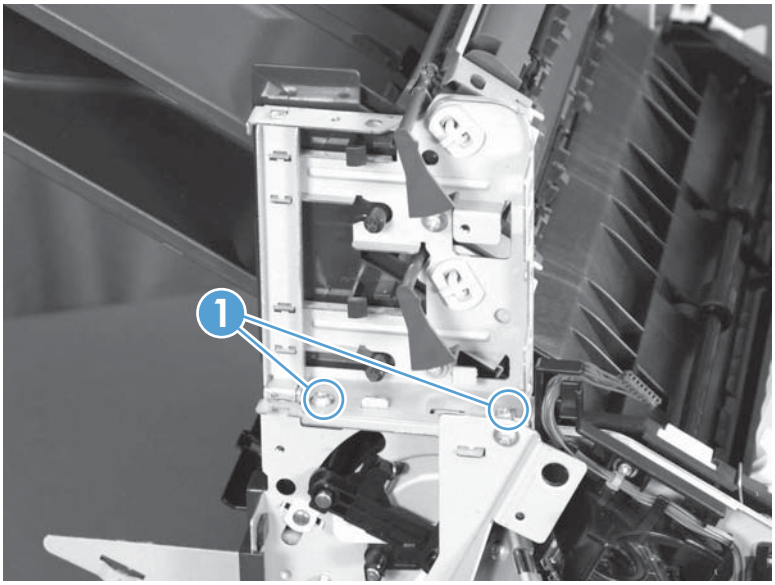
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the output-bin flapper assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-1185 Remove the output-bin flapper assembly (stapling mailbox)



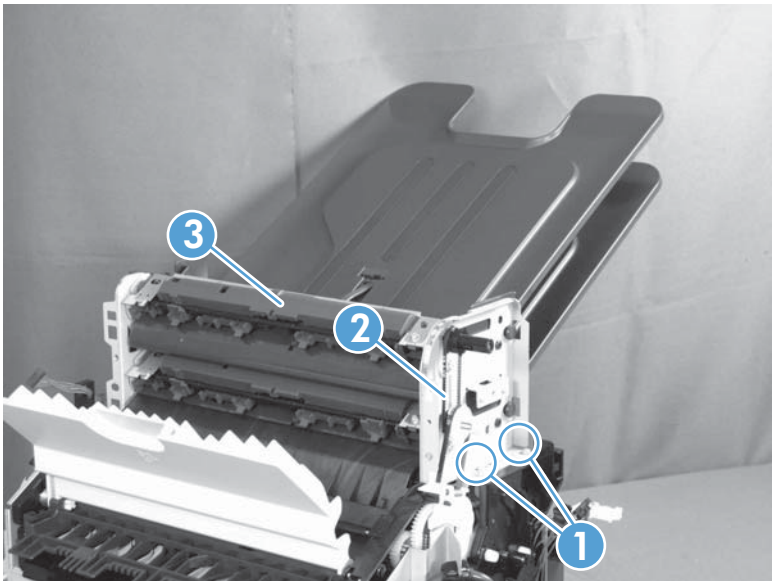
2. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-1186 Remove two screws (stapling mailbox)



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), remove the belt (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-1187 Remove the output bin assembly (stapling mailbox)



Stage top assembly (stapling mailbox)

Remove the following assemblies:

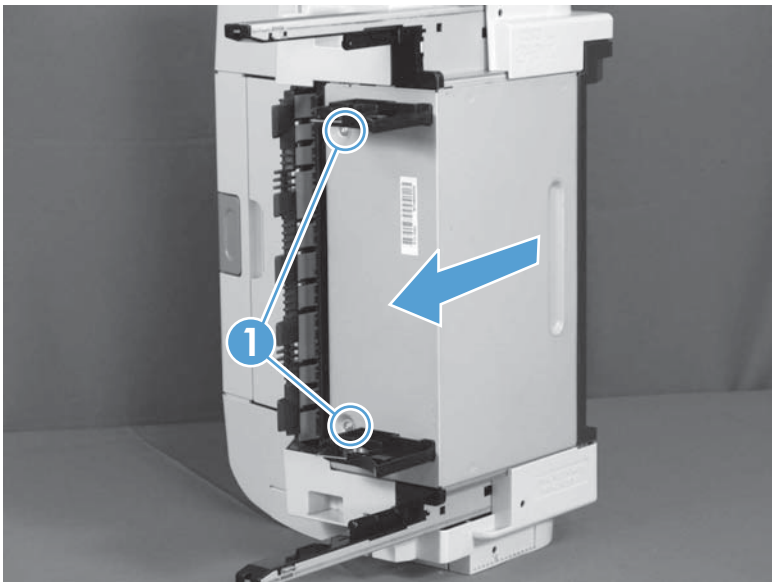
- Front cover (stapling mailbox). See Front cover (stapling mailbox) on page 733.
- Rear cover (stapling mailbox). See Rear cover (stapling mailbox) on page 734.
- Handle assembly (stapling mailbox). See Handle assembly (stapling mailbox) on page 735.
- Top cover (stapling mailbox). See Top cover (stapling mailbox) on page 737.
- Output bin sensor PCA (stapling mailbox). See Output bin sensor printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (stapling mailbox) on page 744.
- Stapler assembly (stapling mailbox). See Stapler assembly (stapling mailbox) on page 745.
- Jogger assembly (stapling mailbox). See Jogger assembly (stapling mailbox) on page 746.
- Output bin solenoid (stapling mailbox). See Output bin solenoid (stapling mailbox) on page 747.
- Output bin assembly (stapling mailbox). See Output bin assembly (stapling mailbox) on page 749.

Remove the stage top assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

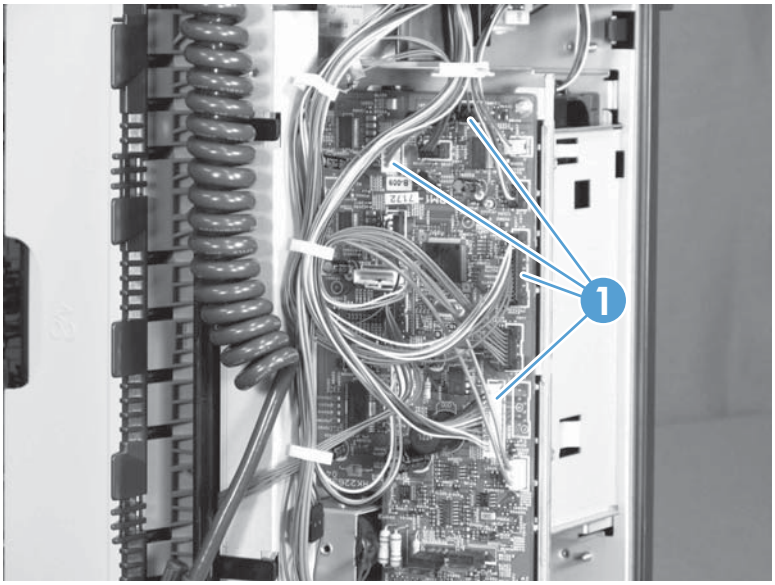
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the PCA cover away from the stapling mailbox chassis to remove it.

Figure 1-1188 Remove the PCA cover (stapling mailbox)



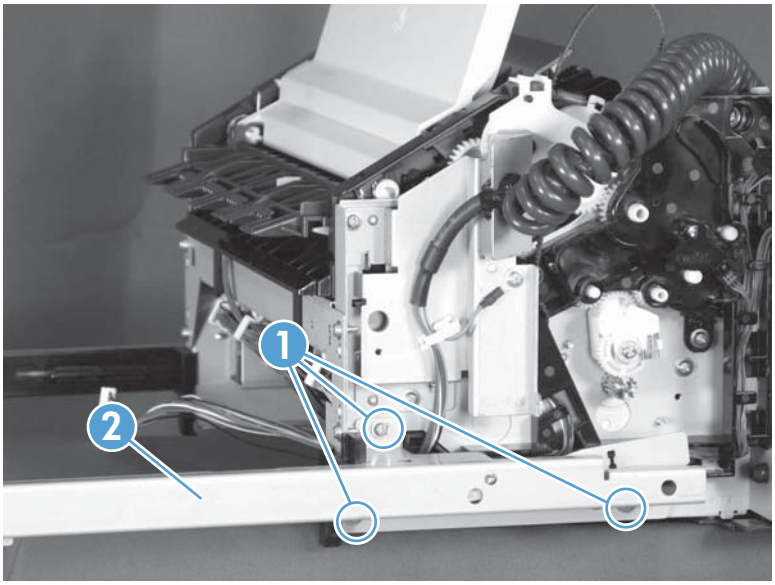
2. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1).

Figure 1-1189 Disconnect four connectors (stapling mailbox)



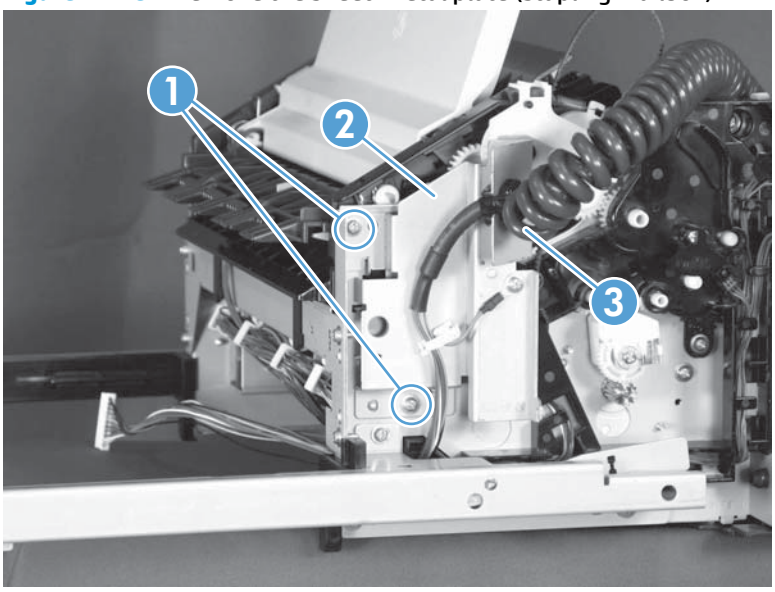
3. Remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the rear-rail assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-1190 Remove the rear-rail assembly (stapling mailbox)



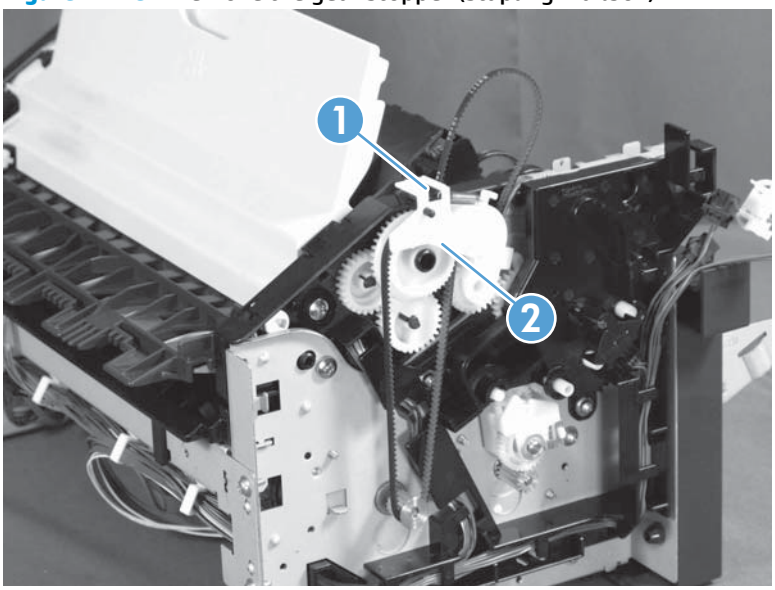
4. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the sheet-metal plate (callout 2) and wire harness (callout 3) together.

Figure 1-1191 Remove the sheet-metal plate (stapling mailbox)



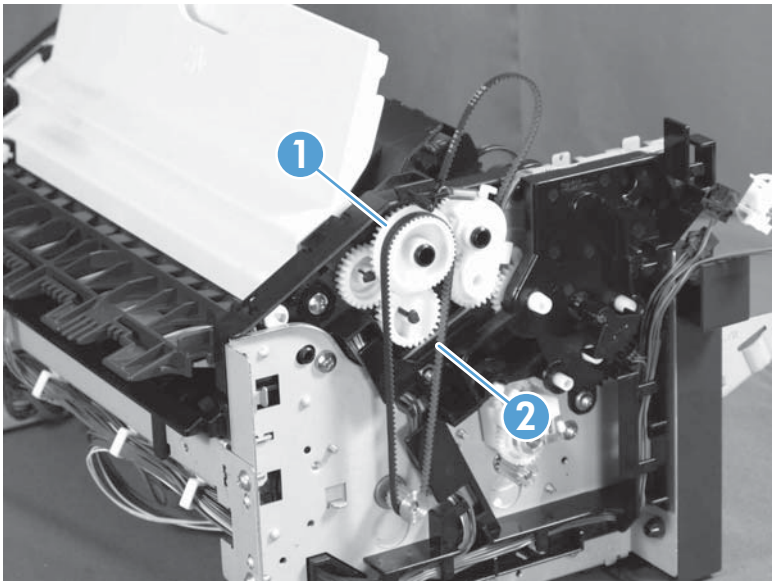
5. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the gear stopper (callout 2).

Figure 1-1192 Remove the gear stopper (stapling mailbox)



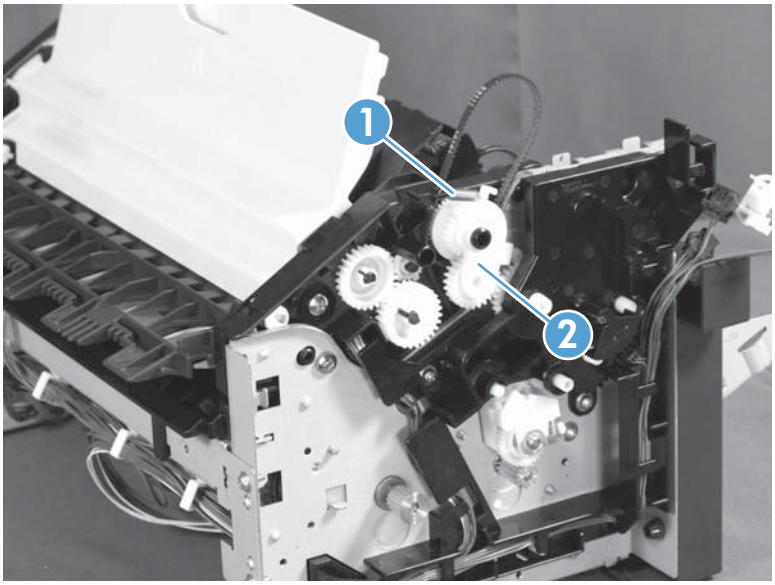
6. Remove one gear (callout 1), and then remove the belt (callout 2).

Figure 1-1193 Remove one gear and the belt (stapling mailbox)



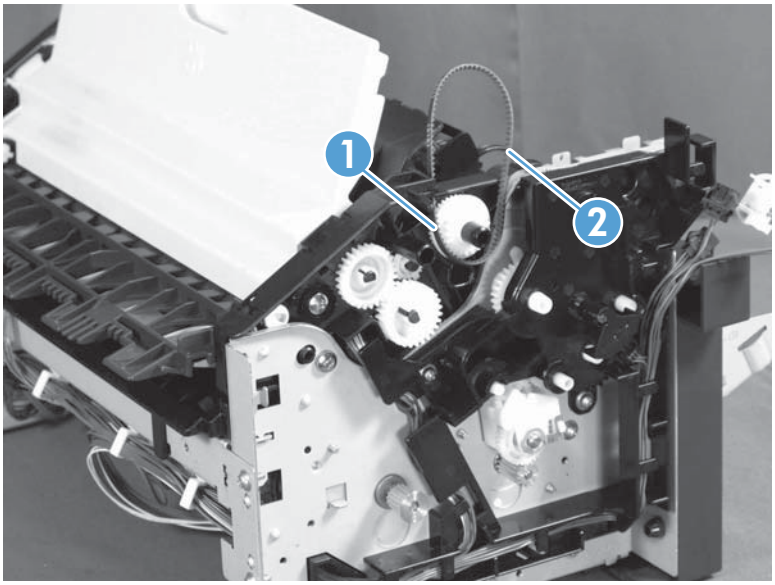
7. Release one spring (callout 1), and then remove the swing gear (callout 2).

Figure 1-1194 Release one spring and remove the swing gear (stapling mailbox)



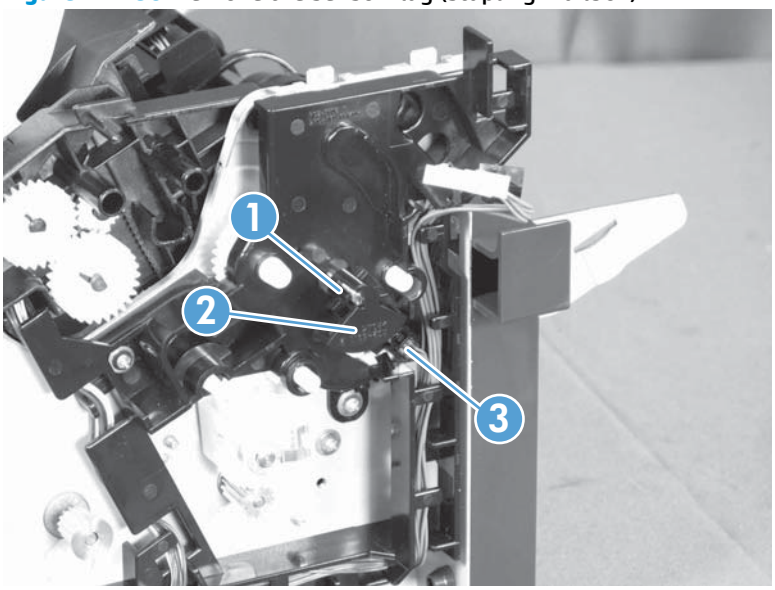
8. Remove one gear (callout 1), and then remove the belt (callout 2).

Figure 1-1195 Remove one gear and remove the belt (stapling mailbox)



9. Release one tab (callout 1), remove the sensor flag (callout 2), and then disconnect one connector (callout 3).

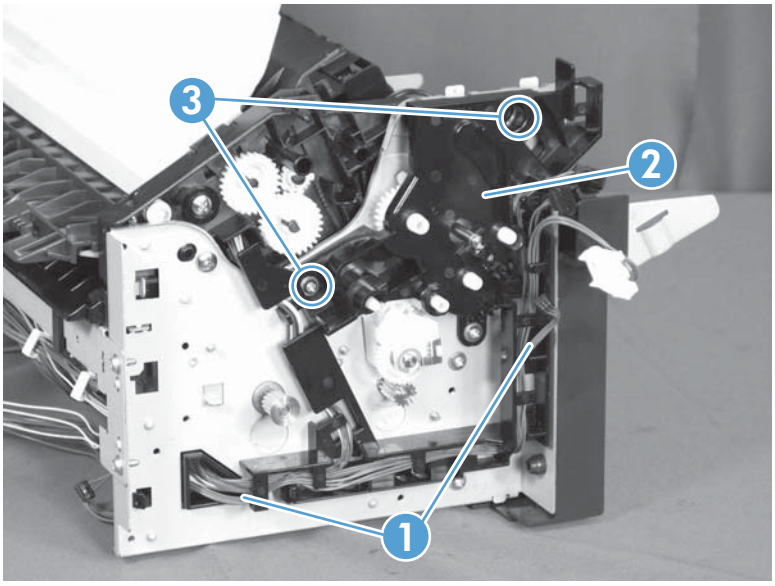
Figure 1-1196 Remove the sensor flag (stapling mailbox)



10. Release the wire harnesses (callout 1) from the guide (callout 2), remove two screws (callout 3), and then remove the guide (callout 2).

⚠ **CAUTION:** Not all of the gears behind the guide are captive. Make sure that they are not dislodged when the guide is removed.

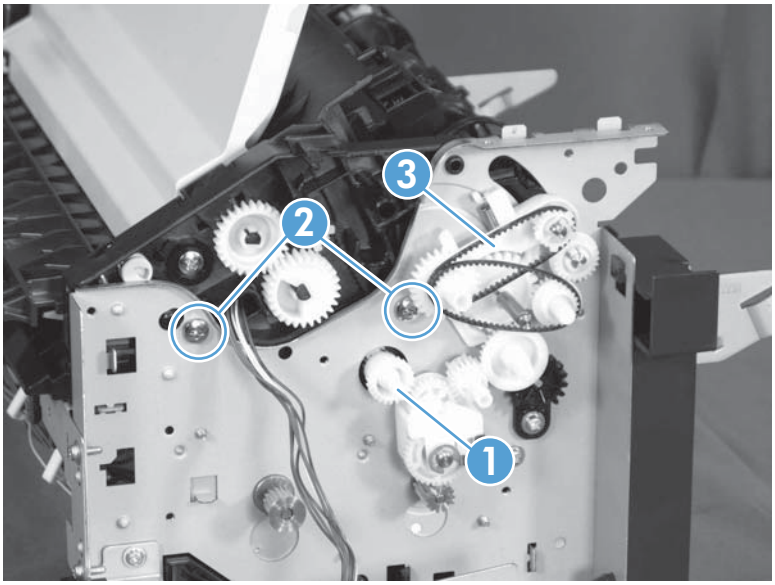
Figure 1-1197 Remove the guide (stapling mailbox)



11. Remove one gear (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

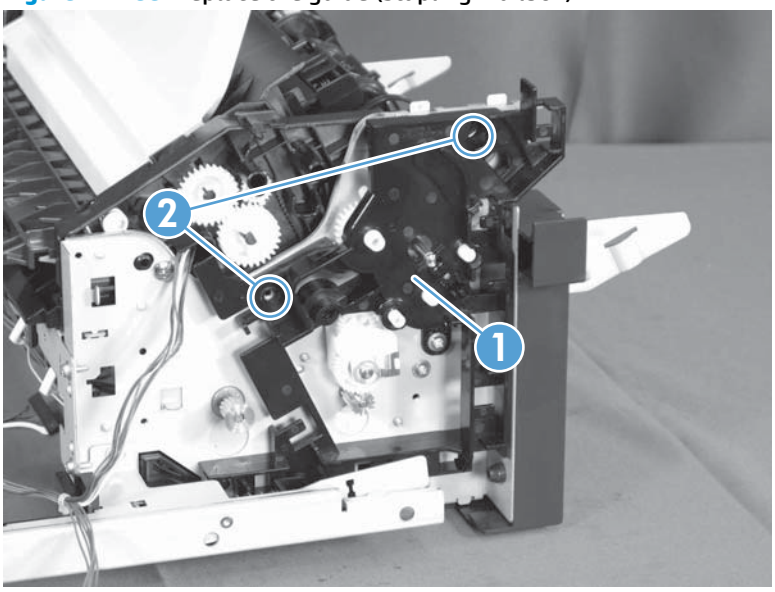
⚠ **CAUTION:** Not all of the gears are captive. Make sure that they are not dislodged.

Figure 1-1198 Remove one gear (stapling mailbox)



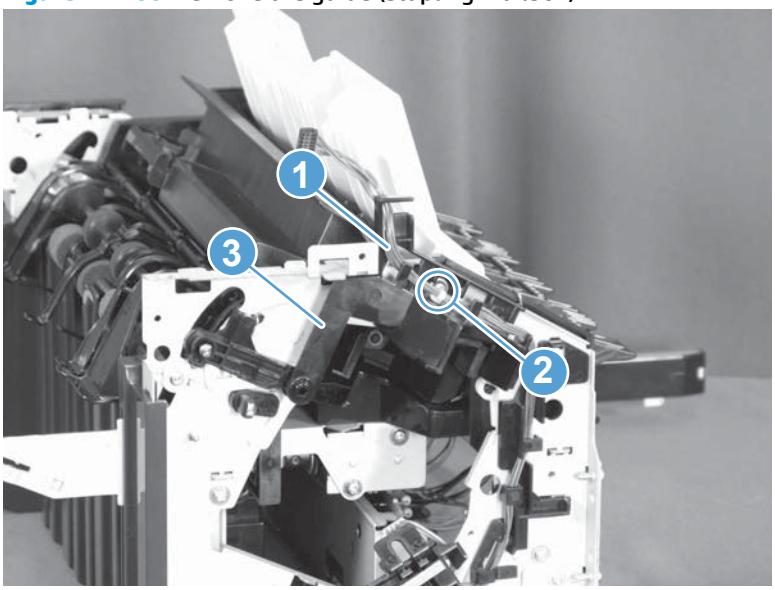
12. Replace the guide (callout 1), and then install two screws (callout 2) to secure it and prevent loose gears from becoming dislodged.

Figure 1-1199 Replace the guide (stapling mailbox)



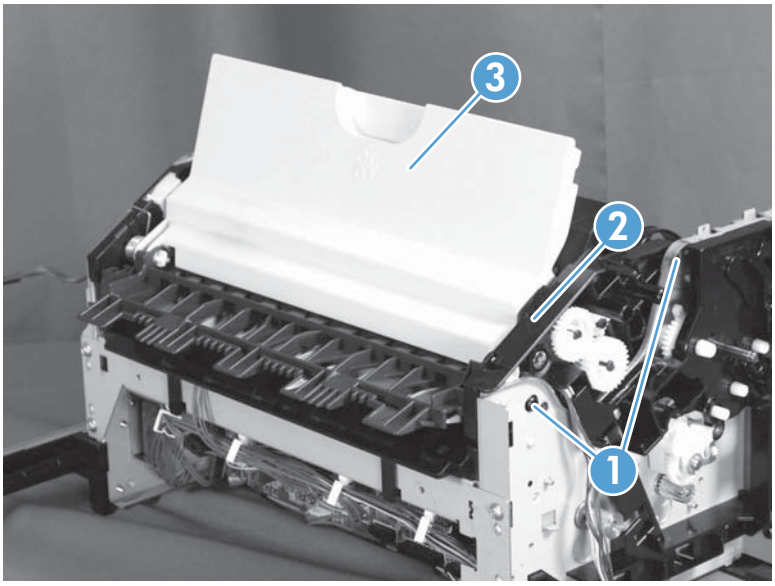
13. Release the wire harnesses (callout 1) from the guide (callout 2), and then remove the guide (callout 3).

Figure 1-1200 Remove the guide (stapling mailbox)



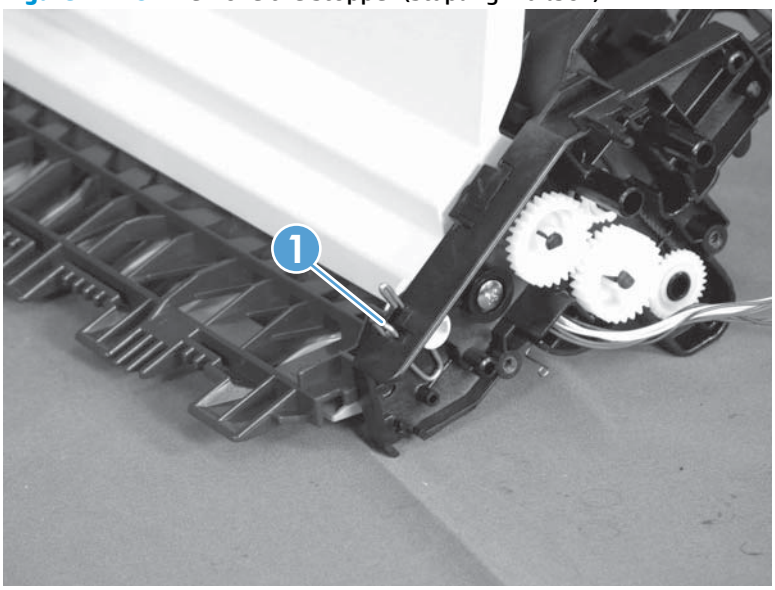
14. Release two bosses (callout 1), and then remove the stage top assembly (callout 2) and the right door (callout 3) together.

Figure 1-1201 Remove the stage top assembly and right door (stapling mailbox)



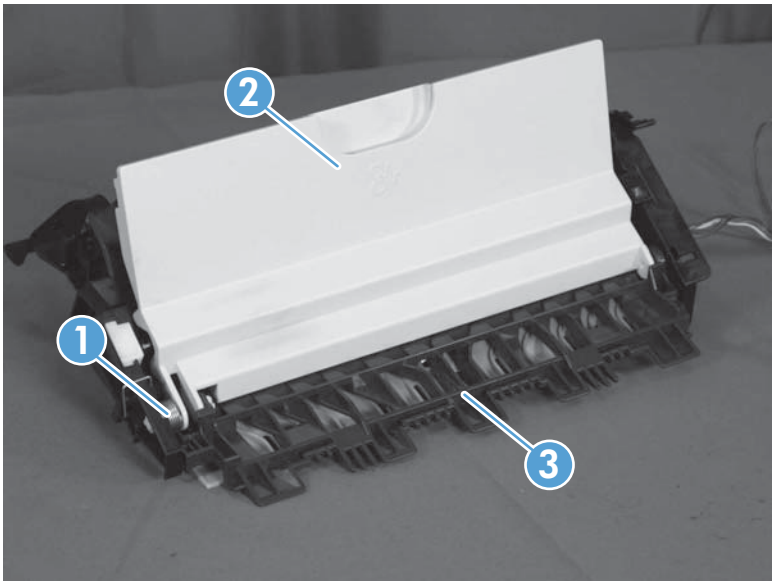
15. Remove the stopper (callout 1).

Figure 1-1202 Remove the stopper (stapling mailbox)



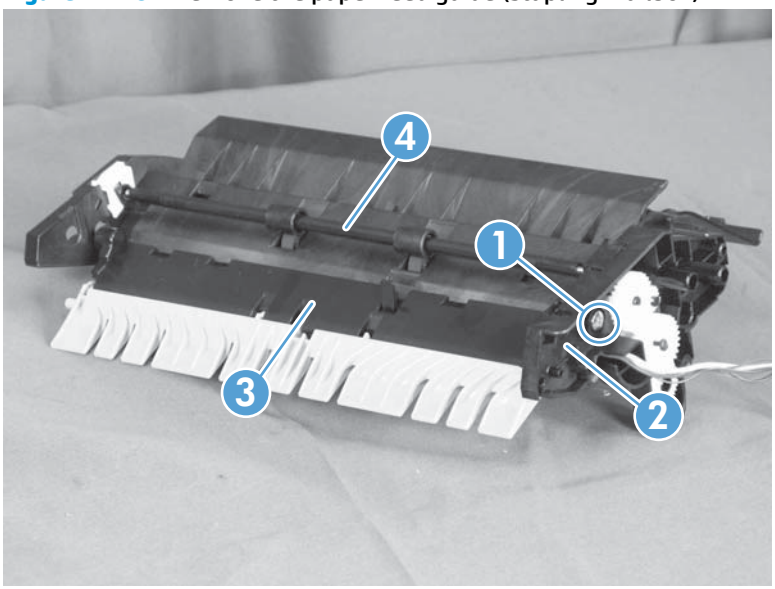
16. Remove one spring (callout 1), and then remove the right door (callout 2) and the inlet guide (callout 3) together.

Figure 1-1203 Remove the right door and inlet guide (stapling mailbox)



17. Remove one screw (callout 1), remove the bushing (callout 2), and then remove the paper feed guide (callout 3) from the stage top assembly (callout 4).

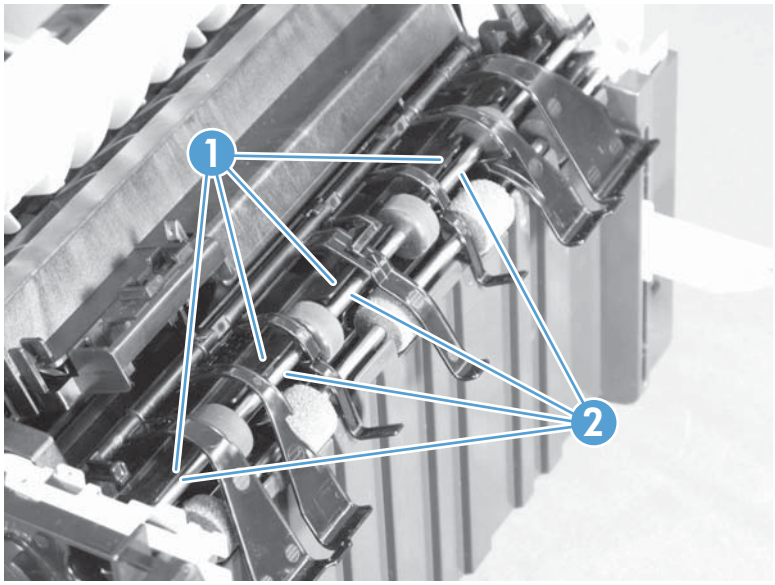
Figure 1-1204 Remove the paper feed guide (stapling mailbox)



Install the stage top assembly

When installing the stage top assembly, make sure to insert the guide (callout 1) of the assembly **under** the shaft (callout 2) of the output bin 3 upper delivery roller.

Figure 1-1205 Install the stage top assembly (stapling mailbox)



Stage assembly (stapling mailbox)

Remove the following assemblies:

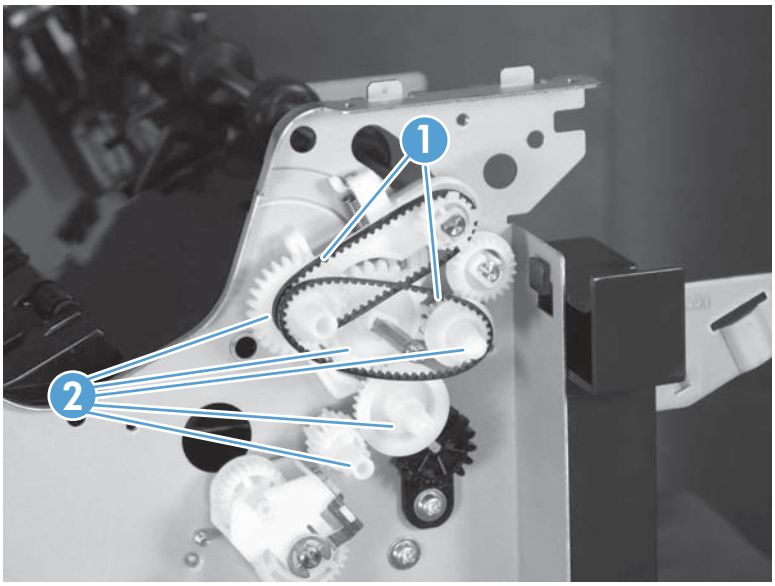
- Front cover (stapling mailbox). See Front cover (stapling mailbox) on page 733.
- Rear cover (stapling mailbox). See Rear cover (stapling mailbox) on page 734.
- Handle assembly (stapling mailbox). See Handle assembly (stapling mailbox) on page 735.
- Top cover (stapling mailbox). See Top cover (stapling mailbox) on page 737.
- Output bin sensor PCA (stapling mailbox). See Output bin sensor printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (stapling mailbox) on page 744.
- Stapler assembly (stapling mailbox). See Stapler assembly (stapling mailbox) on page 745.
- Jogger assembly (stapling mailbox). See Jogger assembly (stapling mailbox) on page 746.
- Output bin solenoid (stapling mailbox). See Output bin solenoid (stapling mailbox) on page 747.
- Output bin assembly (stapling mailbox). See Output bin assembly (stapling mailbox) on page 749.
- Stage top assembly (stapling mailbox). See Stage top assembly (stapling mailbox) on page 751.

Remove the stage assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

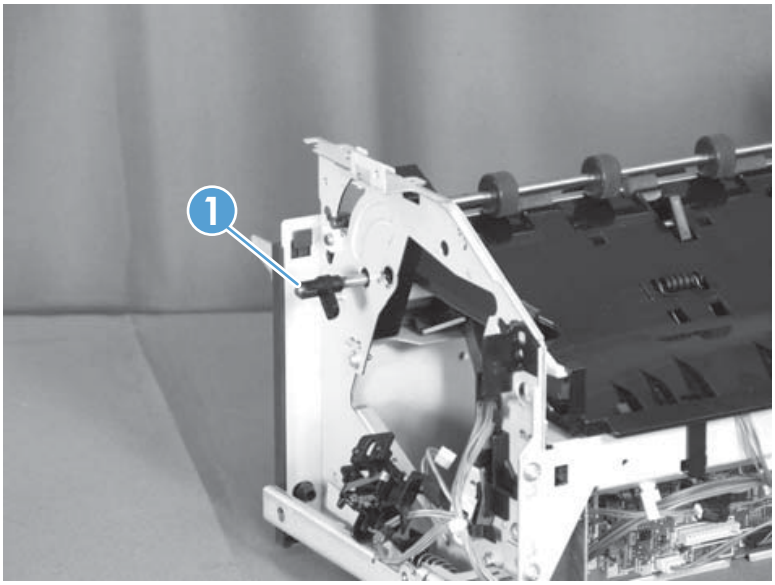
1. Remove two belts (callout 1), and then remove five gears (callout 2).

Figure 1-1206 Remove two belts and five gears (stapling mailbox)



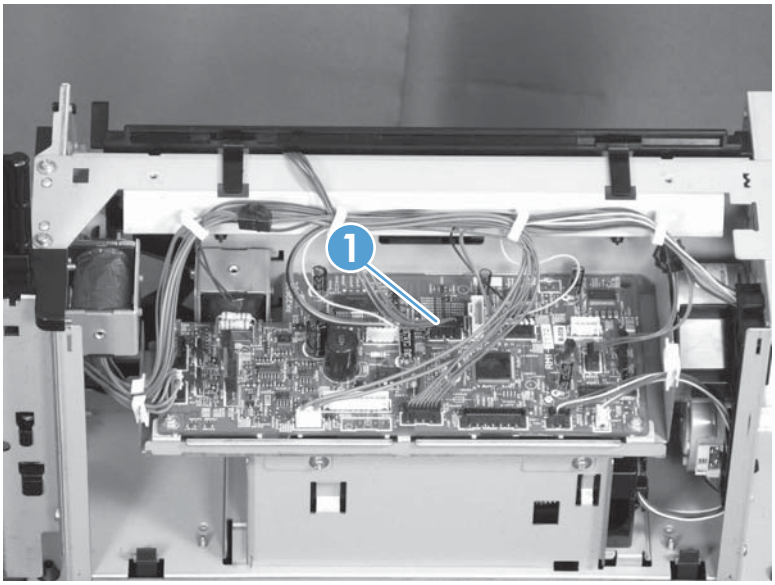
2. Pull out the shaft (callout 1).

Figure 1-1207 Pull out the shaft (stapling mailbox)



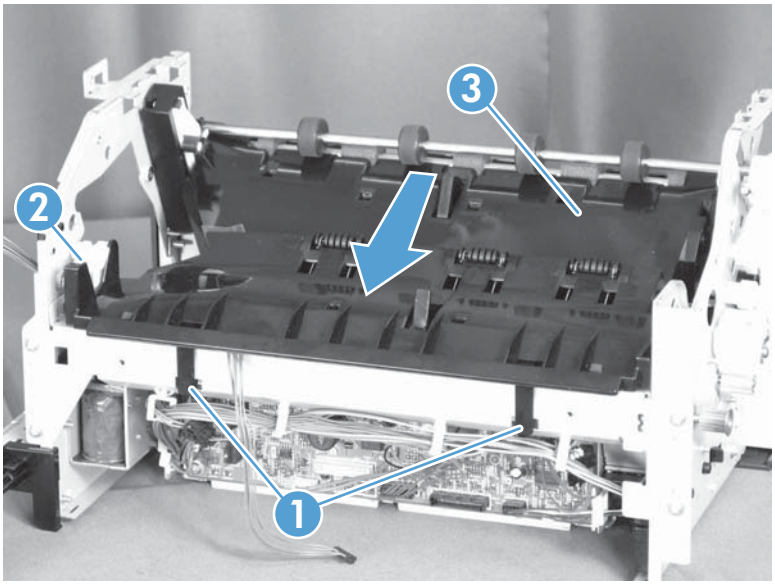
3. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 1-1208 Disconnect one connector (stapling mailbox)



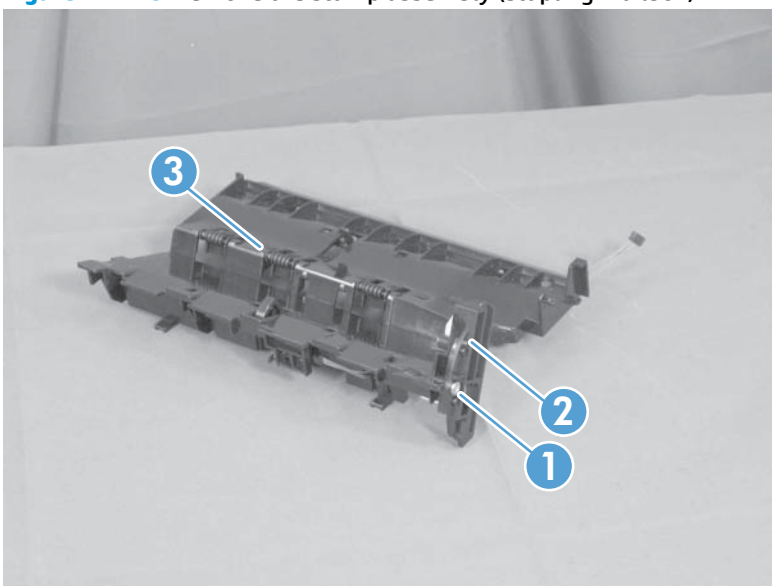
4. Release two tabs (callout 1), remove the solenoid arm (callout 2), and then slide the stage assembly (callout 3) as shown below to remove it.

Figure 1-1209 Remove the stage assembly (stapling mailbox)



5. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the stamp assembly (callout 2) from the stage assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-1210 Remove the stamp assembly (stapling mailbox)



Output bin 3 drive assembly (stapling mailbox)

Remove the following assemblies:

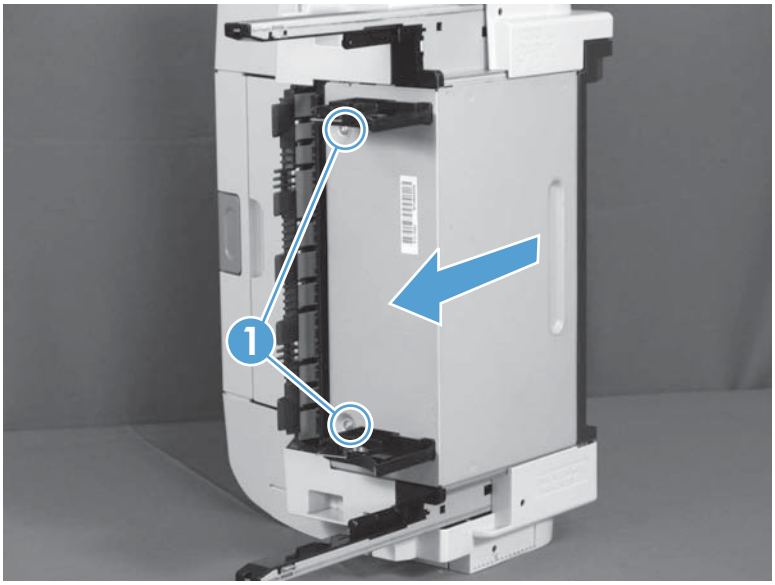
- Front cover (stapling mailbox). See Front cover (stapling mailbox) on page 733.
- Rear cover (stapling mailbox). See Rear cover (stapling mailbox) on page 734.
- Output bin 3 (stapling mailbox). See Output bin 3 (stapling mailbox) on page 738.
- Output bin assembly cover (stapling mailbox). See Output bin assembly cover (stapling mailbox) on page 740.

Remove the output bin 3 drive assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

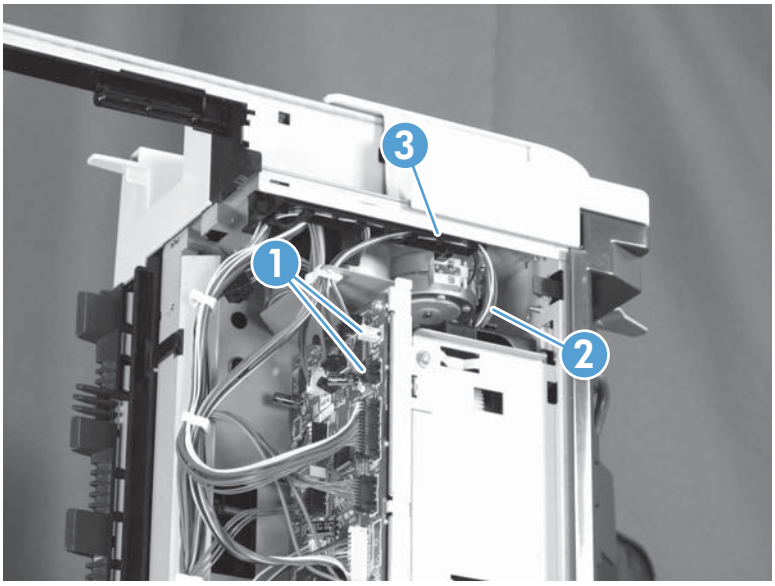
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the PCA cover away from the stapling mailbox chassis to remove it.

Figure 1-1211 Remove the PCA cover (stapling mailbox)



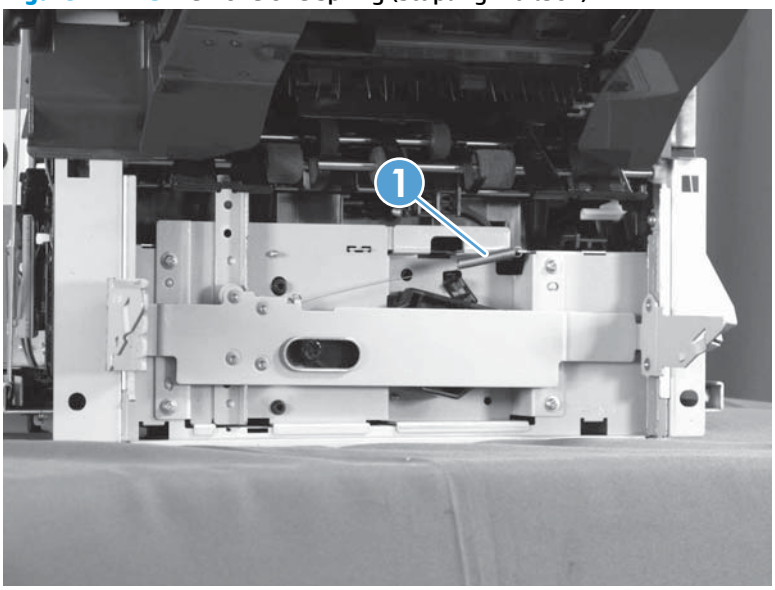
2. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses (callout 2) from the guide (callout 3).

Figure 1-1212 Disconnect two connectors (stapling mailbox)



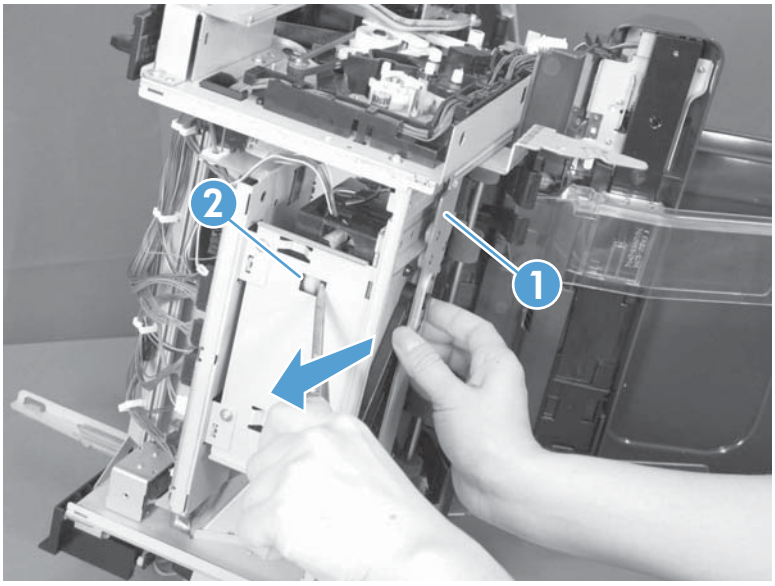
3. Remove one spring (callout 1).

Figure 1-1213 Remove one spring (stapling mailbox)



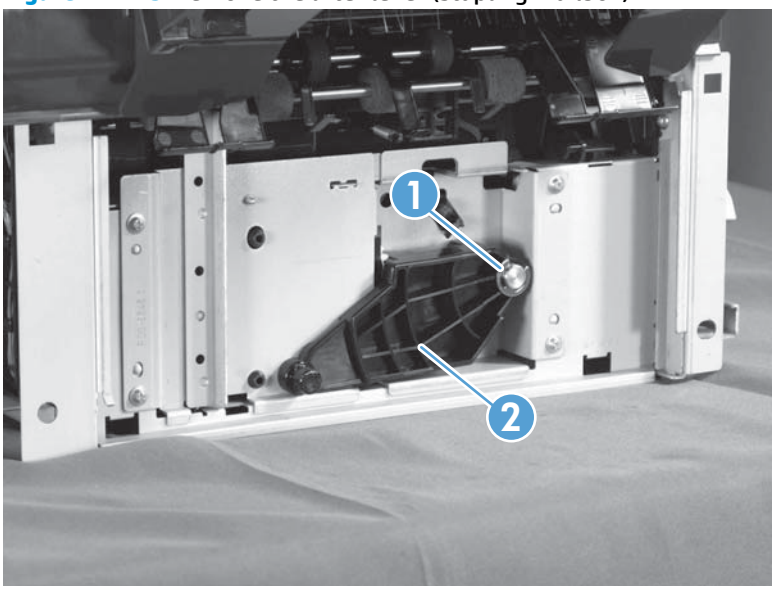
4. Use a screw driver to disengage the gear (callout 1), and then slide the tray support (callout 2) as shown below to remove it.

Figure 1-1214 Remove the tray support (stapling mailbox)



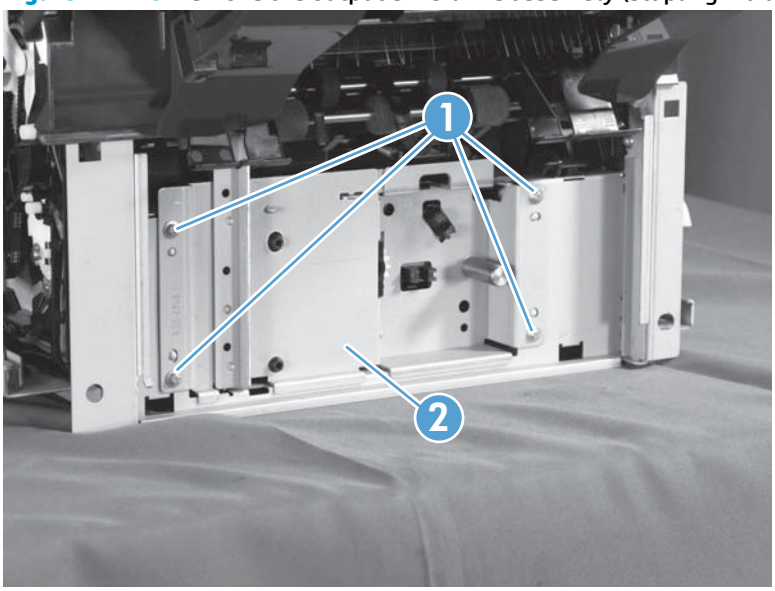
5. Remove one e-ring (callout 1), and then remove the lifter lever (callout 2).

Figure 1-1215 Remove the lifter lever (stapling mailbox)



6. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the output bin 3 drive assembly.

Figure 1-1216 Remove the output bin 3 drive assembly (stapling mailbox)



2 Parts and diagrams

- For additional service and support information
- Order parts, accessories, and supplies
- How to use the parts lists and diagrams
- Document feeder and scanner components
- Document feeder components
- Scanner control board (SCB)
- Control panel
- Covers
- Upper plate assembly
- Internal components
- 1x500-sheet paper feeder
- 1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet
- 2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder
- Stapling mailbox
- Envelope feeder
- Alphabetical parts list
- Numerical parts list

For additional service and support information

HP service personnel, go to the Link Service Access Work Bench (SAW) at http://h41302.www4.hp.com/km/saw/home.do.

Channel partners, go to Link HP Channel Services Network (CNS) at https://h30125.www3.hp.com/hpcsn.

- Install and configure
- Product specifications
- Up to date control-panel message (CPMD) troubleshooting
- Solutions for product issues and emerging issues
- Remove and replace part instructions and videos
- Service advisories
- Warranty & regulatory information

Order parts, accessories, and supplies

Use the following list to locate part number and ordering information for the product:

- Information on where to order parts

  See Ordering information on page 771.

- Related documentation available for the product

  See Related documentation on page 771.

- Part numbers for supplies

  See Supplies part numbers on page 772.

- Part numbers for both customer-replaceable and service-replaceable kits

  See Customer self-repair kits on page 772 and Service replacement kits on page 774.

- Part numbers for accessories

  See Accessories on page 775.

Ordering information

Table 2-1 Ordering information

Order supplies and paper	www.hp.com/go/suresupply
Order genuine HP parts or accessories	www.hp.com/buy/parts
Order through service or support providers	Contact an HP-authorized service or support provider.
Order using HP software	For information about using the HP software to order parts, accessories, and supplies, see the product user guide.

Related documentation

Table 2-2 Related documentation and software

Item	Description	Part number
HP LaserJet Enterprise M630 User Guide	Product user guide	B3G84-90904
HP LaserJet Enterprise M630 Repair Manual	English repair manual	Not applicable
HP LaserJet Enterprise M630 Troubleshooting Manual	English troubleshooting manual	Not applicable

Supplies part numbers

Table 2-3 Supplies part numbers

Item	Description	Part number
HP LaserJet toner cartridges	High-capacity toner cartridge	CF281X (new)
		CF281-67902 (service)
	Standard-capacity toner cartridge	CF281A (new)
		CF281-67901 (service)

Customer self-repair kits

Following are the customer-replaceable kits available for the product. Each kit includes parts and installation instructions.

The customer self-repair (CSR) level indicates the expected difficulty the customer will experience when replacing this part:

- **A**: Easy
- **B**: Difficult

Table 2-4 Customer self-repair kits

Item	Description	CSR level	Part number
Control panel replacement kit	• Control panel assembly	A	B3G84-67908
Stapling mailbox replacement kit	• 900-sheet, 3-bin stapling mailbox	A	B3M76-67902
Staple cartridge replacement kit	• HP staple cartridge refill	A	C8085-60541
1x500-sheet paper feeder kit	• 500-sheet paper feeder	A	B3M73-67902
1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet kit	• 500-sheet paper feeder and cabinet	A	B3M74-67902
2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder kit	• 2,500-sheet paper feeder	A	B3M75-67902
Envelope feeder kit	• Envelope feeder	A	B3G87-67902
HP LaserJet postcard media insert tray kit	• HP LaserJet postcard media insert tray	A	CC497-67902
Duplex assembly kit	• Duplex assembly	A	B3G84-67903
Formatter assembly kit	• Formatter printed circuit assembly (PCA) • Formatter tray with fax opening • Formatter extension cover bracket	A	B3G85-67901

Table 2-4 Customer self-repair kits (continued)

Item	Description	CSR level	Part number
Formatter assembly kit (India/ China only)	• Formatter printed circuit assembly (PCA) • Formatter tray with fax opening • Formatter extension cover bracket	A	B3G85-67902
Hard disk drive kit	• 320 GB encrypted hard disk drive • Cradle	B	B3G85-67903
Hard disk drive kit (U.S. government only)	• FIPS HDD 500 GB hard disk drive • Cradle	B	B3G85-67904
Solid-state memory (SSM) kit	• 8 GB SSM module • Retainer bracket	B	B3G84-67907
1 GB memory DIMM kit	• 1 GB memory DIMM	A	B3G84-67910
2 GB memory DIMM kit	• 2 GB memory DIMM	A	B3G84-67909
Fax card kit	• HP LaserJet MFP Analog Fax Accessory 500	A	A2W77-67910
USB wireless print server kit	• Jetdirect 2700w USB Wireless Print Server	A	J8026-61001
NFC accessory kit	• HP Jetdirect 2800w NFC & Wireless Direct Accessory	A	J8029-61001
Fuser service kit (110V)	• 110V Fuser	A	B3M77-67903
Fuser service kit (220V)	• 220V Fuser	A	B3M78-67903
Fuser entrance guide kit	• Face-up open guide assembly	A	B3G84-67904
Tray 1 roller kit	• Paper pickup, feed, and separation rollers for Tray 1	B	B3G84-67906
Tray 2–5 roller kit	• Paper pickup and feed rollers for Trays 2–5	A	B3G84-67905
Transfer roller kit	• Transfer roller	A	B3G84-67901
ADF roller maintenance kit	• Document feeder roller • Document feeder separation pad	A	L2725-60002
ADF separation pad spring kit	• Document feeder separation pad spring	A	5851-4879
ADF white backing kit	• White backing for the document feeder • Mylar strips	A	5851-6084
Backside background selector kit	• Backside background selector for the document feeder	A	5851-5022
Service maintenance kit (110V)	• 110V Fuser • Transfer roller • Tray 2–5 pickup and feed rollers	A	B3M77-67902
Service maintenance kit (220V)	• 220V Fuser • Transfer roller • Tray 2–5 pickup and feed rollers	A	B3M78-67902

Table 2-4 Customer self-repair kits (continued)

Item	Description	CSR level	Part number
U.S. English keyboard kit (M630z)	• U.S. English keyboard	A	5851-5380
U.K. English keyboard kit (M630z)	• U.K. English keyboard	A	5851-5008
Keyboard overlay kit (M630z)	• Keyboard overlay	A	5851-6019 (FR, IT, RU, DE, ES: UK Kybd) 5851-6020 (FR-CN, ES-LA, ES: US Kybd) 5851-6021 (FR-SW, DE-SW, DA: UK Kybd) 5851-6022 (ZHTW, ZHCN) 5851-6023 (ES, PT) 5851-6024 (JA-KG, JA-KT)

Service replacement kits

Following are the service replacement kits available for the product that include installation instructions. These kits are not customer-replaceable and must be installed by authorized service providers.

See the diagrams and parts lists following How to use the parts lists and diagrams on page 776 for a complete listing of all service parts available for the product.

Table 2-5 Service replacement kits

Item	Description	Part number
Front cover assembly kit	• Front cover • Nameplate • Jewel	B3G85-67905
Mylar kit	• Mylar strips	B3G86-67903
Scanner control board (SCB) kit	• Scanner control board	B3G86-67904
ADF whole unit kit	• ADF whole unit • ADF white backing	B3G86-67901
Image scanner whole unit kit	• Image scanner whole unit • ADF white backing • Mylar strips	B3G86-67905

Accessories

Table 2-6 Accessories

Item	Description	Part number
1x500-sheet paper feeder	500-sheet paper feeder accessory	B3M73A (new) B3M73-67902 (service)
1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet	500-sheet paper feeder and storage cabinet accessory	B3M74A (new) B3M74-67902 (service)
2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder	2,500-sheet paper feeder accessory	B3M75A (new) B3M75-67902 (service)
Stapling mailbox	900-sheet, 3-bin stapling mailbox accessory	B3M76A (new) B3M76-67902 (service)
Envelope feeder	Envelope feeder accessory	B3G87A (new) B3G87-67902 (service)
HP LaserJet postcard media insert tray	Tray insert for printing small-size paper	CC497A (new) CC497-67902 (service)
HP LaserJet MFP Analog Fax Accessory 500	Analog fax accessory	CC487A (new) A2W77-67910 (service)
HP Jetdirect 2700w USB wireless print server	Accessory for wireless printing	J8026A (new) J8026-61001 (service)
HP Jetdirect 2800w NFC/wireless direct accessory	Wireless direct accessory for “touch” printing from mobile devices	J8029A (new) J8029-61001 (service)

How to use the parts lists and diagrams

The figures in this chapter show the major subassemblies in the product and their component parts. A parts list table follows each exploded view assembly diagram. Each table lists the item number, the associated part number, and the description of each part. If a part is not listed in the table, then it is not a field replacement unit (FRU).

CAUTION: Be sure to order the correct part. When looking for part numbers for electrical components, pay careful attention to the voltage that is listed in the description column. Doing so will ensure that the part number selected is for the correct model.

NOTE: In this manual, the abbreviation “PCA” stands for “printed circuit-board assembly.” Components described as a PCA might consist of a single circuit board or a circuit board plus other parts, such as cables and sensors.

Document feeder and scanner components

Figure 2-1 Document feeder and scanner components

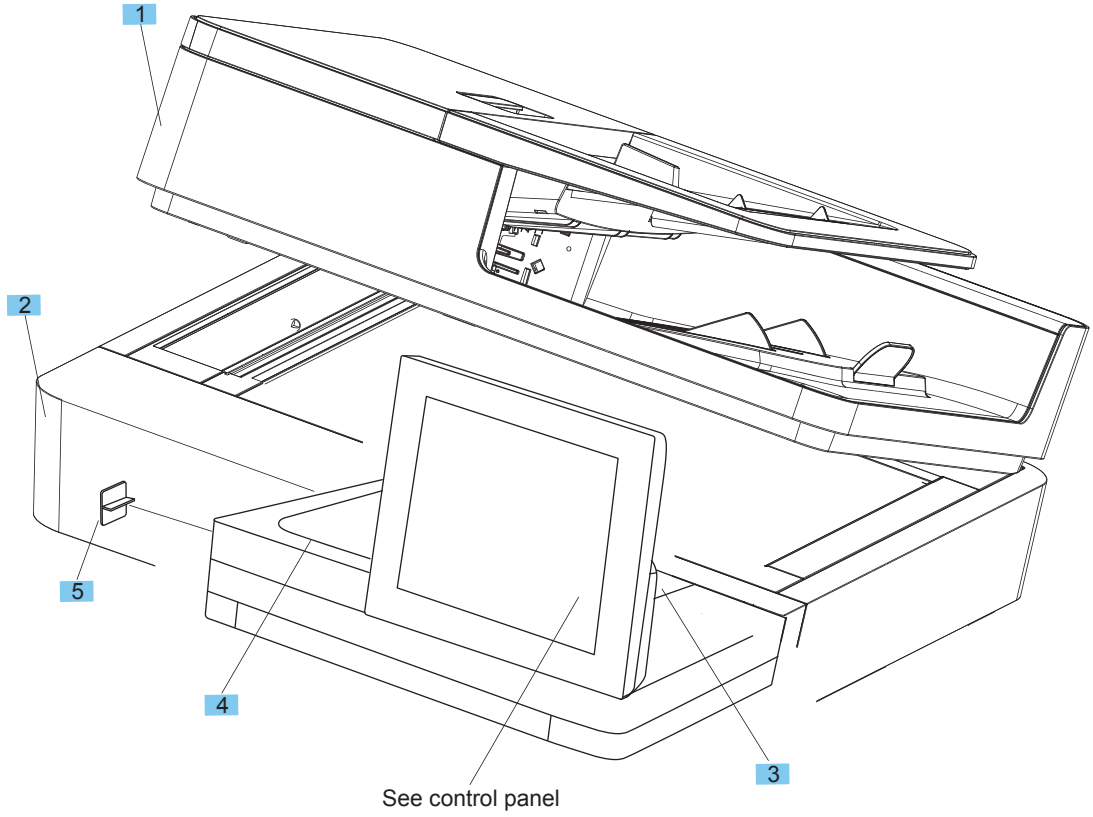


Table 2-7 Document feeder and scanner components

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Kit, document feeder, complete with white backing[1]	B3G86-67901	1
2	Kit, image scanner assembly, complete with white backing[2]	B3G86-67905	1
3	Cover, control panel access	5042-9118	1
4	Cover, HIP	5851-5361	1
5	Cover, USB	5851-5360	1

[1] When the document feeder assembly is replaced, use the Service menu to set the Document feeder Kit Interval, ADF Count, and Clean Rollers Count values to zero.

[2] When the image scanner assembly is replaced, use the Service menu to set the Flatbed Count value to zero.

Document feeder components

Document feeder components (1 of 2)

Figure 2-2 Document feeder components (1 of 2)

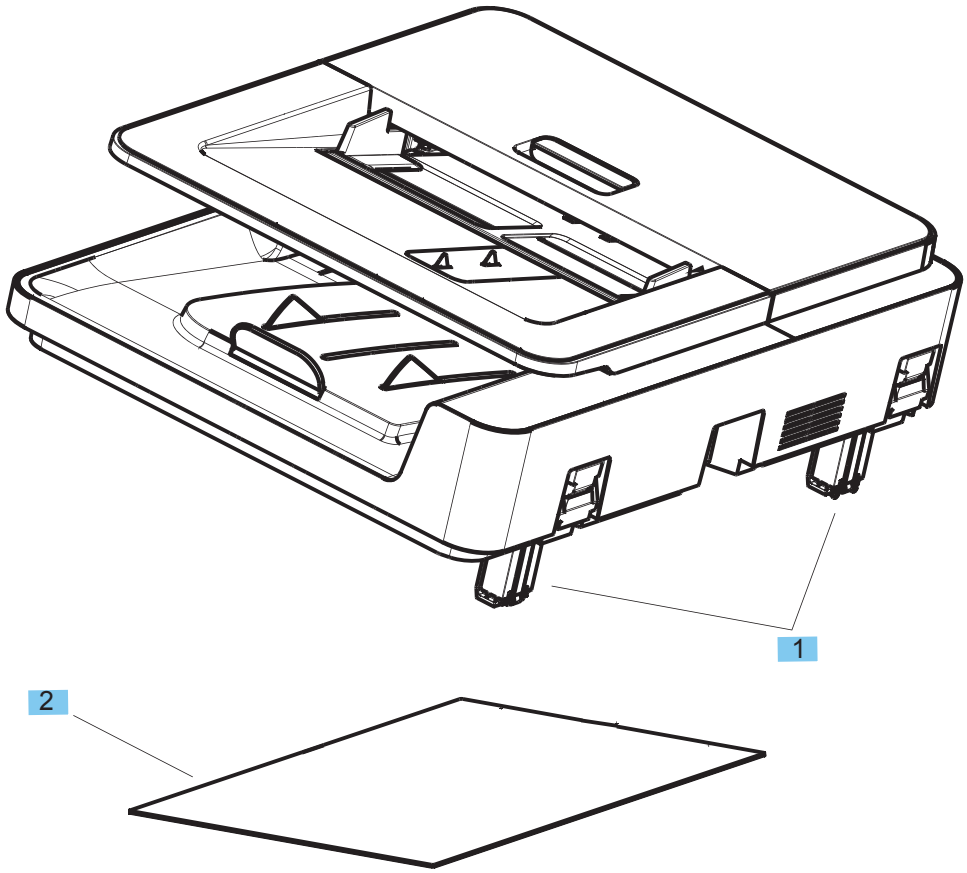


Table 2-8 Document feeder components (1 of 2)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Assembly, Hinge HR	B4A39-60008	2
2	Kit, ADF white backing	5851-6084	1

Document feeder components (2 of 2)

Figure 2-3 Document feeder components (2 of 2)

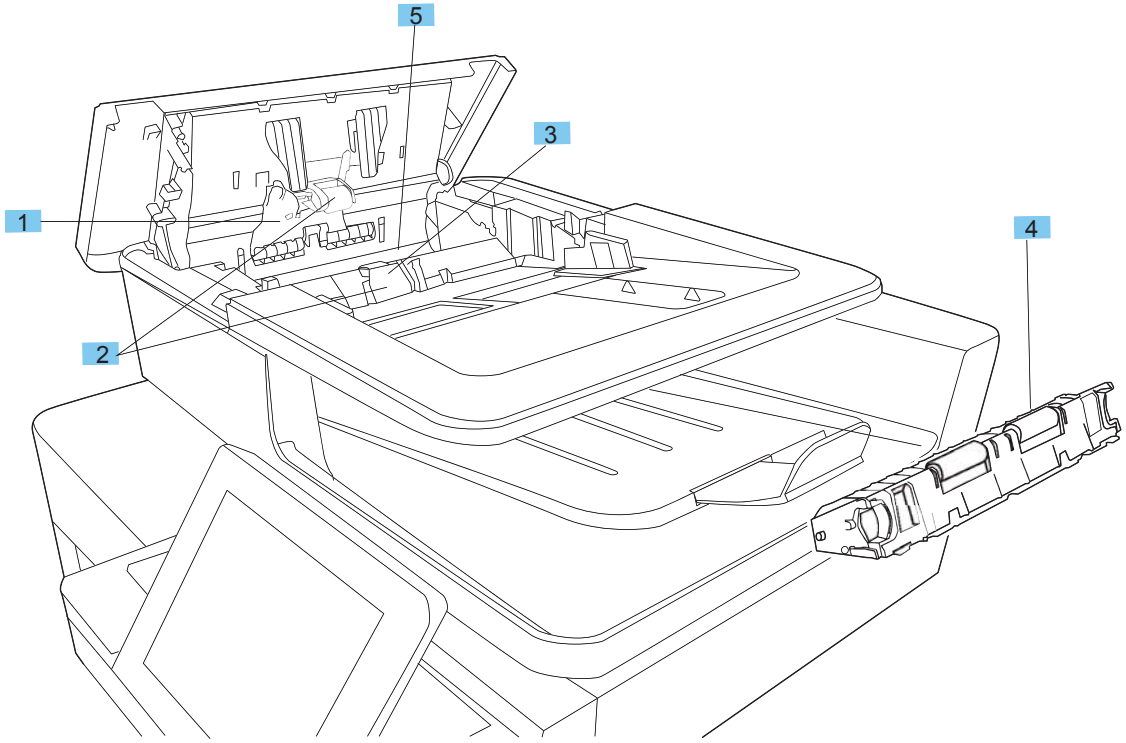


Table 2-9 Document feeder components (2 of 2)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Cover, document-feeder roller	CC355-40013	1
2	Kit, ADF roller maintenance (includes roller and separation pad)	L2725-60002	1
3	Kit, ADF separation pad spring	5851-4879	1
4	Kit, background selector for backside scan	5851-5022	1
5	Kit, document feeder mylar strip	B3G86-67903	2

Scanner control board (SCB)

Figure 2-4 Scanner control board (SCB)

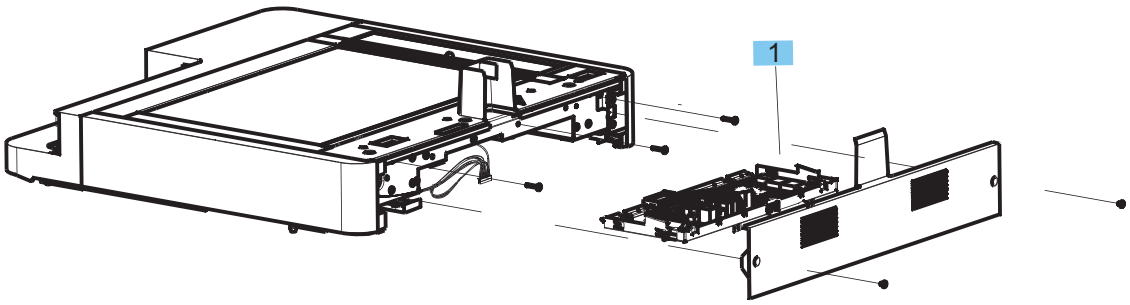


Table 2-10 Scanner control board (SCB)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Scanner control board	B3G86-67904	1
Not shown	Cable, SCB wire harness	B3G84-60109	1
Not shown	Cable, SCB right	B3G84-60107	1
Not shown	Cable, SCB left	B3G84-60108	1

Control panel

Figure 2-5 Control panel

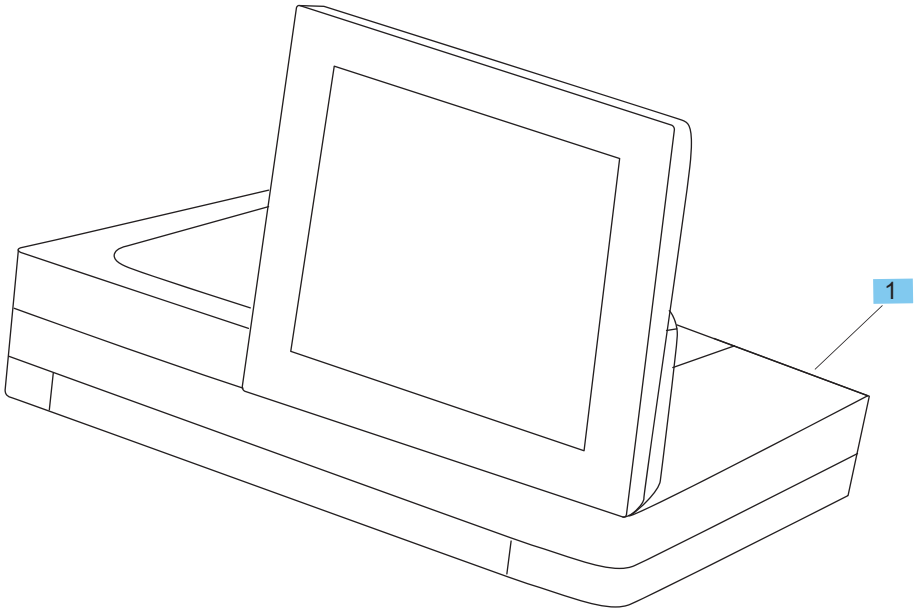


Table 2-11 Control panel

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Kit, control panel (without keyboard)	B3G84-67908	1
Not shown	Thumbscrew, control panel	5851-0660	1
Not shown	Kit, U.S. English keyboard (M630z)	5851-5380	1
Not shown	Kit, U.K. English keyboard (M630z)	5851-5008	1

Covers

Figure 2-6 Covers

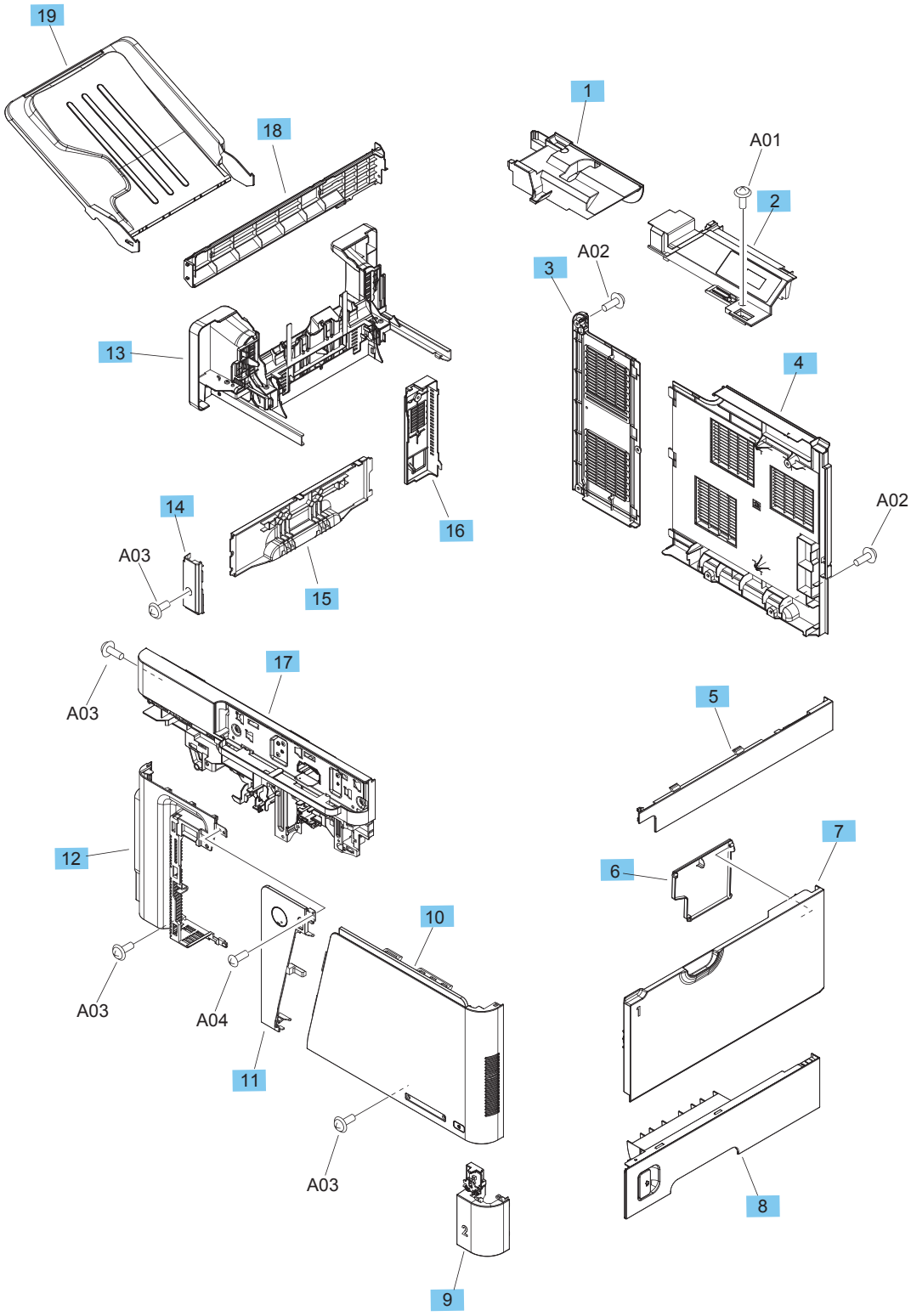


Table 2-12 Covers

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Cover, IS cable	RC4-1575-000CN	1
2	Cover, rear top	RC4-1574-000CN	1
3	Cover, rear left	RC4-5692-000CN	1
4	Cover, rear right	RL2-0999-000CN	1
5	Cover, IS right	RC4-1527-000CN	1
6	Cover, MP (Tray 1) inner	RC4-3948-000CN	1
7	Assembly, MP (Tray 1) cover	RM2-5816-000CN	1
8	Assembly, right lower door	RM2-5820-000CN	1
9	Assembly, power switch	RM2-5818-000CN	1
10	Kit, front cover assembly	B3G85-67905	1
11	Panel, logo	RL2-1000-000CN	1
12	Cover, front left	RC4-1515-000CN	1
13	Assembly, tray base (part of output bin assembly kit)	B3G84-69702	1
14	Cover, front left lower	RC4-5717-000CN	1
15	Cover, cassette (Tray 2) left	RC4-1573-000CN	1
16	Cover, side rear	RC4-5716-000CN	1
17	Assembly, front top cover	RM2-5814-000CN	1
18	Cover, IS left lower	RC4-5693-000CN	1
19	Assembly, paper delivery tray (part of output bin assembly kit)	B3G84-69702	1

Upper plate assembly

Figure 2-7 Upper plate assembly

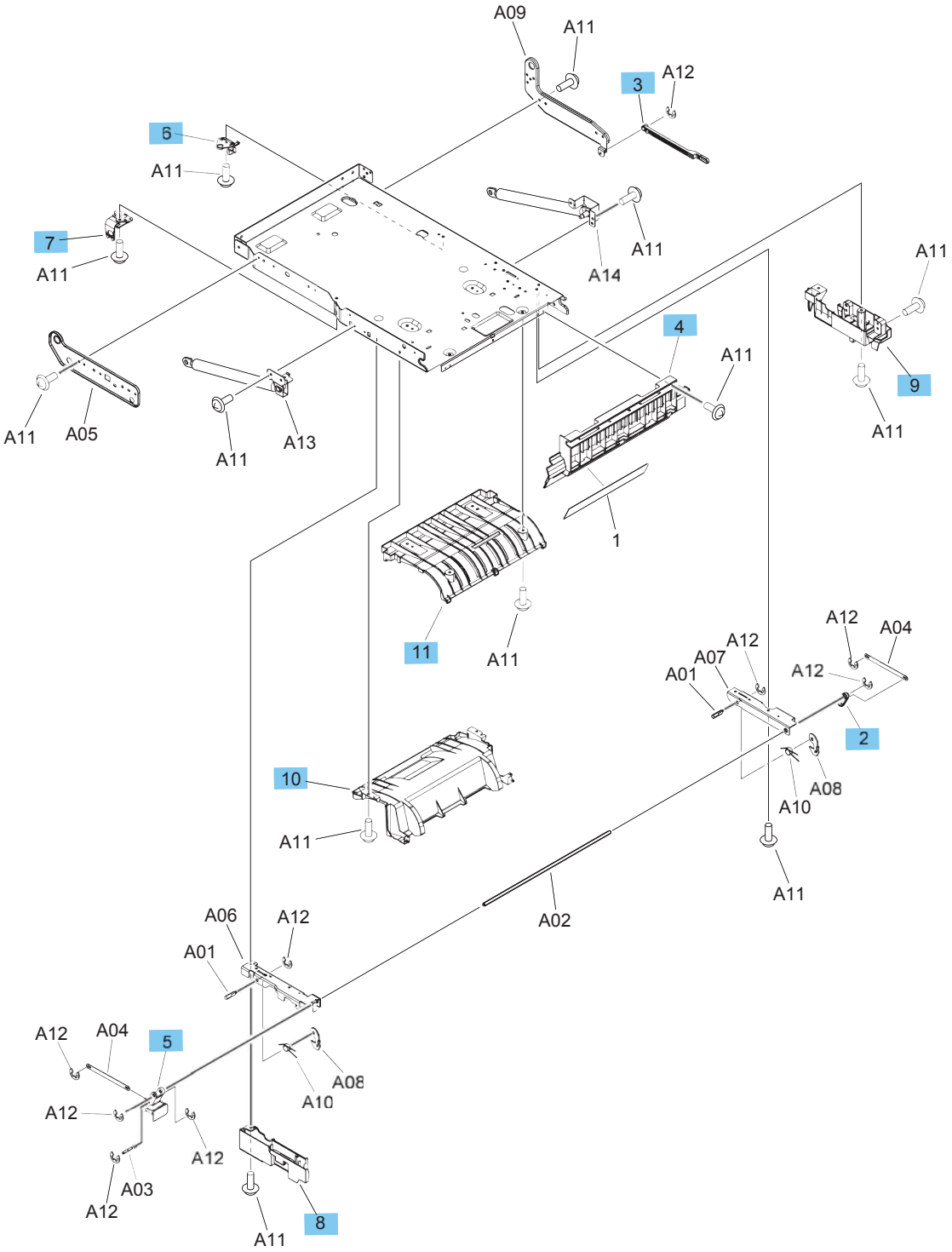


Table 2-13 Upper plate assembly

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Link, handle	RC1-2822-000CN	1
3	Rod, link	RC4-5729-000CN	1
4	Holder, shutter, light	RC4-5707-000CN	1
5	Handle, lock	RC4-5690-000CN	1
6	Block upper guide support, rear	RC4-1531-000CN	1
7	Block upper guide support, front	RC4-1530-000CN	1
8	Cover, IS lock, front	RC4-5721-000CN	1
9	Cover, IS lock, rear	RC4-1537-000CN	1
10	Guide, cartridge, upper	RC4-1529-000CN	1
11	Guide, legal	RC2-8029-000CN	1

Internal components

Internal components (1 of 5)

Figure 2-8 Internal components (1 of 5)

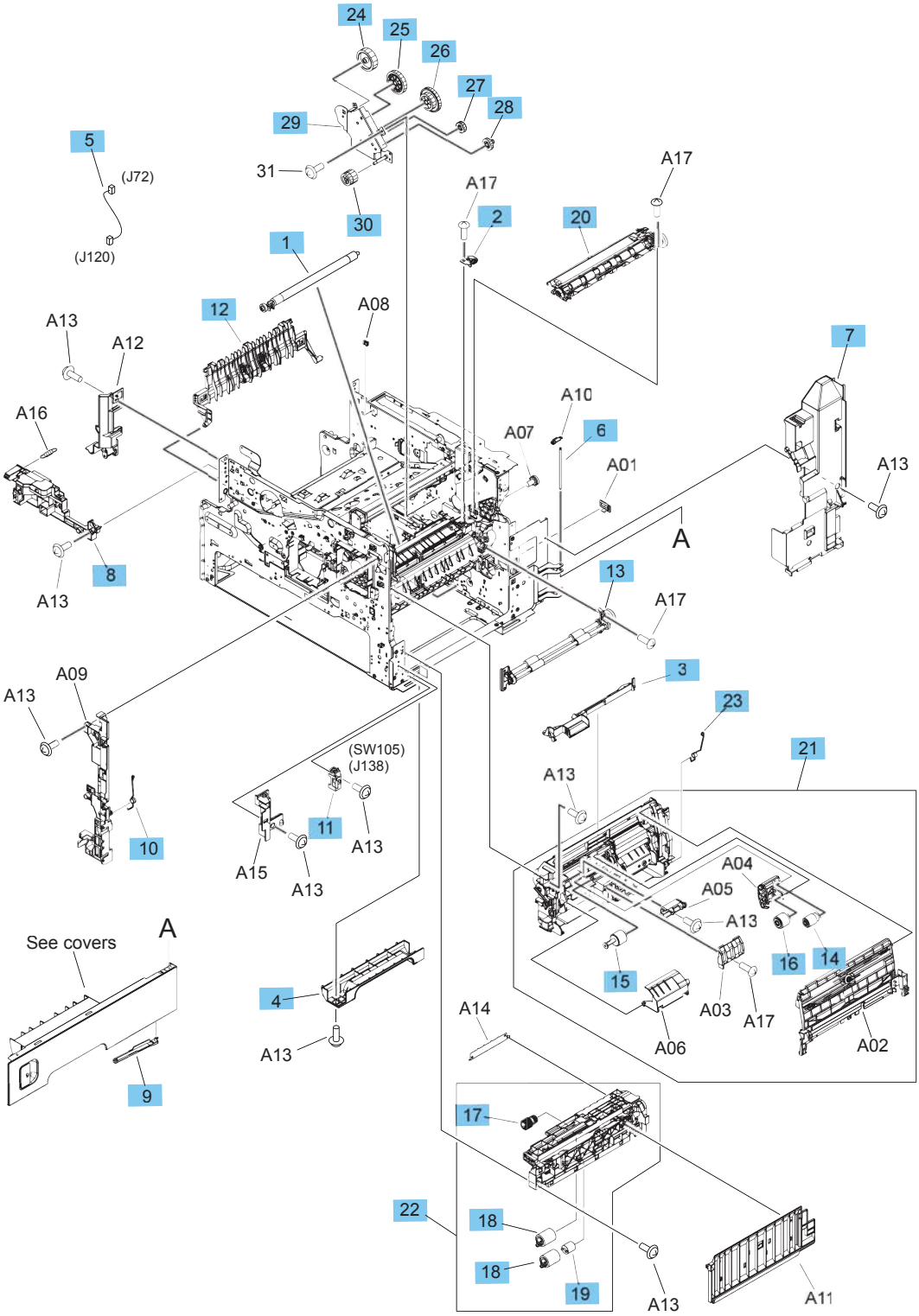


Table 2-14 Internal components (1 of 5)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Kit, transfer roller	B3G84-67901	1
2	Assembly, grounding plate	RM1-5461-000CN	1
3	Cover, envelope	RL1-2831-000CN	1
4	Cover, handle right lower	RC4-5706-000CN	1
5	Cable, size detect (SW102)	RM1-7179-000CN	1
6	Shaft, right door hinge	RU5-4142-000CN	1
7	Cover, MP (Tray 1) gear	RC4-1572-000CN	1
8	Assembly, lifter base	RM1-5913-000CN	1
9	Rod, link	RC1-2902-000CN	1
10	Spring, torsion	RC2-8085-000CN	1
11	Assembly, right door sensor (SW105)	RM1-1045-000CN	1
12	Kit, fuser-entrance guide	B3G84-67904	1
13	Assembly, paper feed roller	RM1-8411-010CN	1
14	Roller, Tray 1 pickup (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	B3G84-67906	1
15	Roller, Tray 1 separation (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	B3G84-67906	1
16	Roller, Tray 1 feed (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	B3G84-67906	1
17	Roller, Tray 2 pickup (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	1
18	Roller, Tray 2 feed (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	2
19	Limiter, torque	RC1-3293-000CN	1
20	Assembly, registration	RM1-8413-000CN	1
21	Assembly, MP (Tray 1) pickup	RM2-5822-000CN	1
22	Assembly, paper pickup	RM1-5919-000CN	1
23	Spring, torsion	RC3-1470-000CN	1
24	Gear, 33T	RU7-0292-000CN	1
25	Gear, 35T	RU7-0303-000CN	1
26	Gear, 91T/25T	RU7-0290-000CN	1
27	Gear, 15T	RU7-0294-000CN	1
28	Gear, 17T	RU7-0293-000CN	1
29	Side plate, fuser drive	RL1-3024-000CN	1
30	Gear, 23T/19T	RU7-0295-000CN	1

Internal components (2 of 5)

Figure 2-9 Internal components (2 of 5)

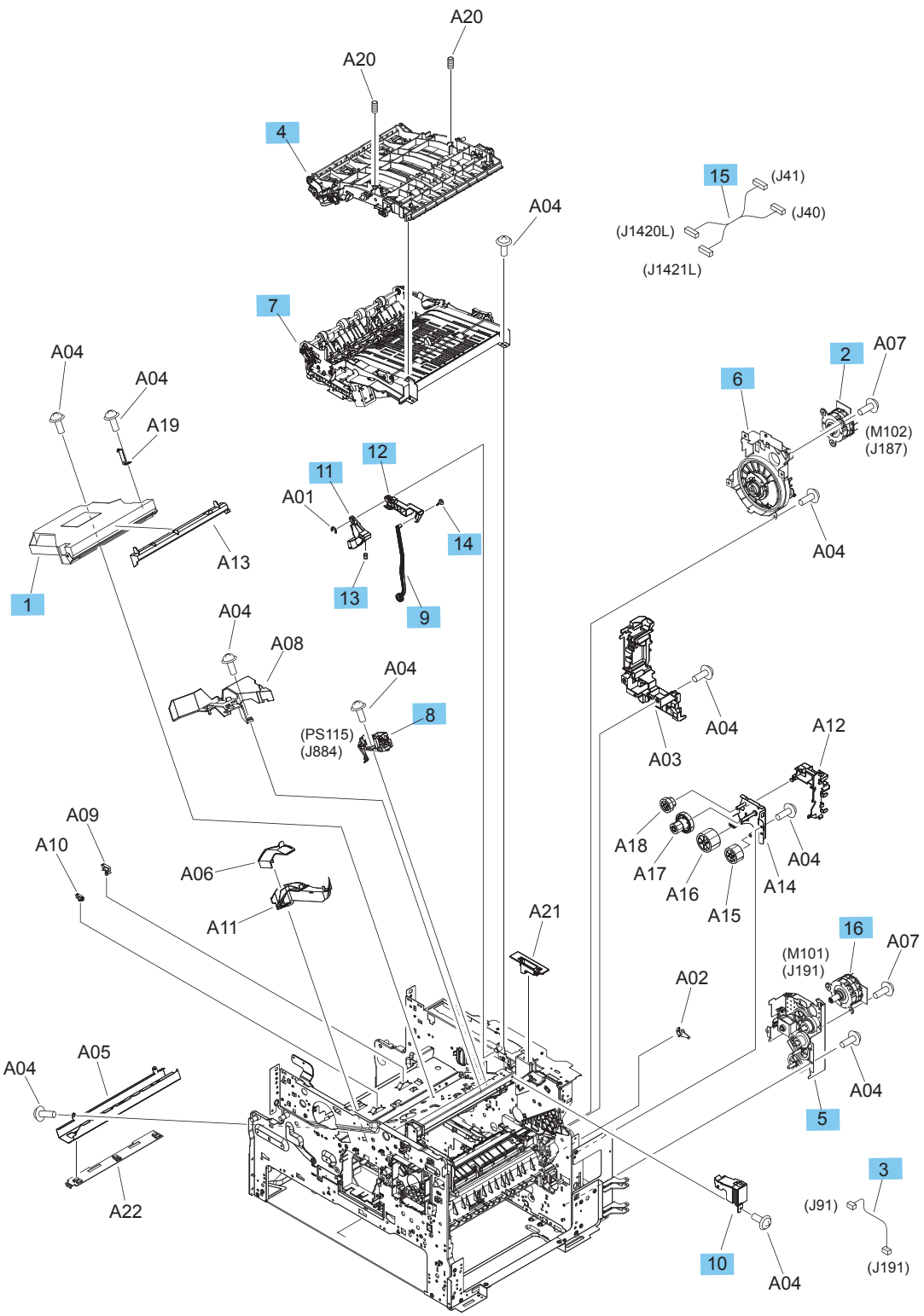


Table 2-15 Internal components (2 of 5)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Assembly, laser/scanner	RM1-8406-000CN	1
2	Assembly, drum motor (M102)	RM1-8358-000CN	1
3	Assembly, feed motor cable	RM2-7470-000CN	1
4	Assembly, reverse guide	RM2-5810-000CN	1
5	Assembly, paper pickup drive	RM2-5804-000CN	1
6	Assembly, drum drive	RM2-5918-000CN	1
7	Assembly, reverse	RM2-5799-000CN	1
8	Assembly, cartridge sensor (PS115)	RM1-8323-000CN	1
9	Rod, release	RC2-8086-000CN	1
10	Cover, door arm	RC1-2833-000CN	1
11	Arm, door B	RC2-7967-000CN	1
12	Arm, door 1	RC4-5728-000CN	1
13	Spring, compression	RU5-2265-000CN	1
14	Stopper, bushing arm	RC1-3090-000CN	1
15	Assembly, reverse joint cable	RM2-7487-000CN	1
16	Assembly, feed motor (M101)	RM2-5942-000CN	1

Internal components (3 of 5)

Figure 2-10 Internal components (3 of 5)

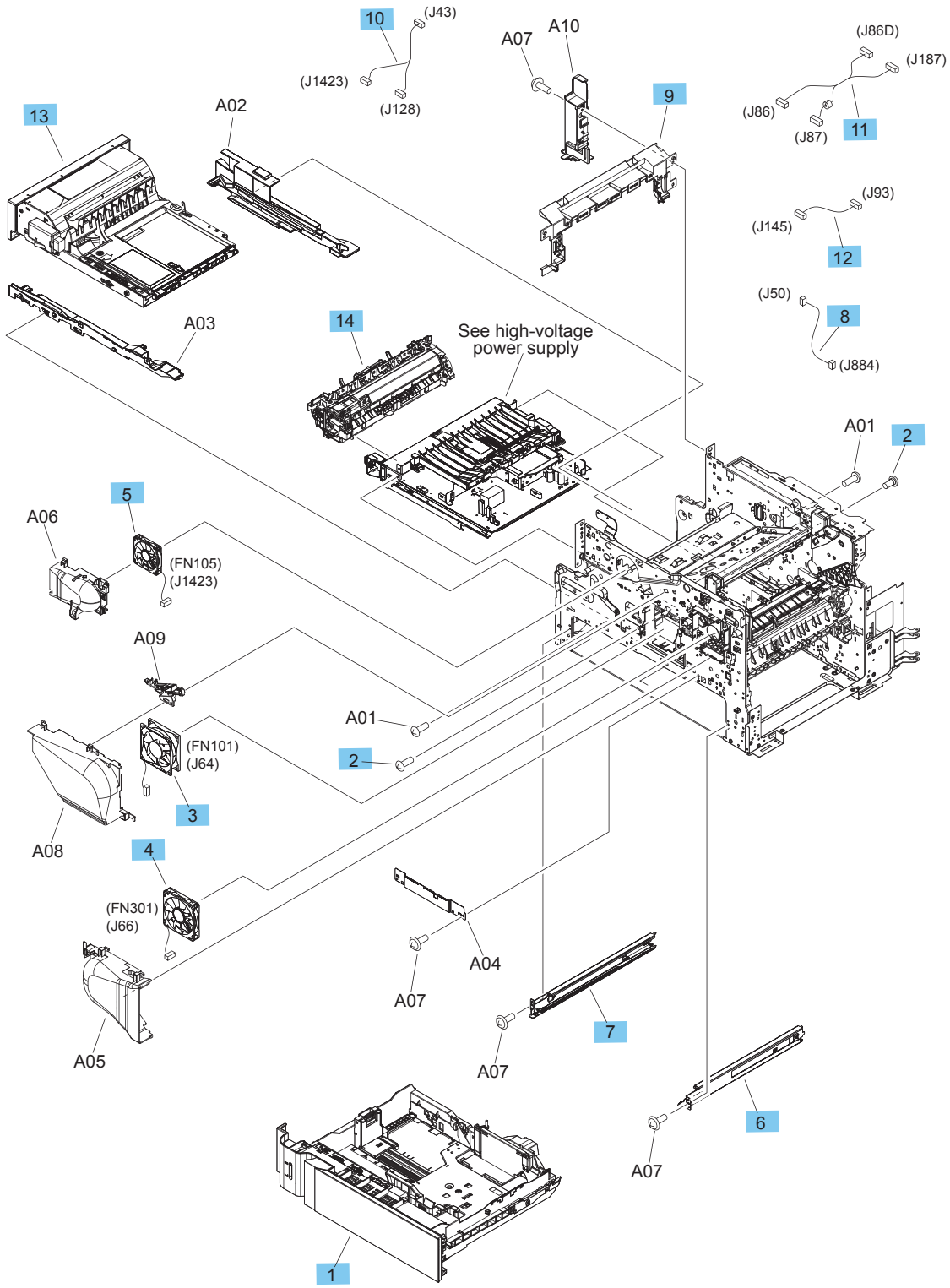


Table 2-16 Internal components (3 of 5)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Cassette (Tray 2)	RM2-5094-000CN	1
2	Screw, M4x5	RC2-2633-000CN	2
3	Fan (FN101)	RK2-1988-000CN	1
4	Fan (FN301)	RK2-3244-000CN	1
5	Fan (FN105)	RK2-0280-000CN	1
6	Assembly, cassette (Tray 2) right rail	RM1-5931-000CN	1
7	Assembly, cassette (Tray 2) left rail	RM1-5932-000CN	1
8	Assembly, cartridge sensor cable	RM2-7477-000CN	1
9	Shroud, center	RL2-0995-000CN	1
10	Assembly, reverse fan cable	RM2-7486-000CN	1
11	Assembly, scanner joint cable	RM2-7471-000CN	1
12	Assembly, laser scanner cable	RM2-7482-000CN	1
13	Kit, duplex assembly	B3G84-67903	1
14	Kit, fuser replacement, 110V	B3M77-67903	1
14	Kit, fuser replacement, 220V	B3M78-67903	1

Internal components (4 of 5)

Figure 2-11 Internal components (4 of 5)

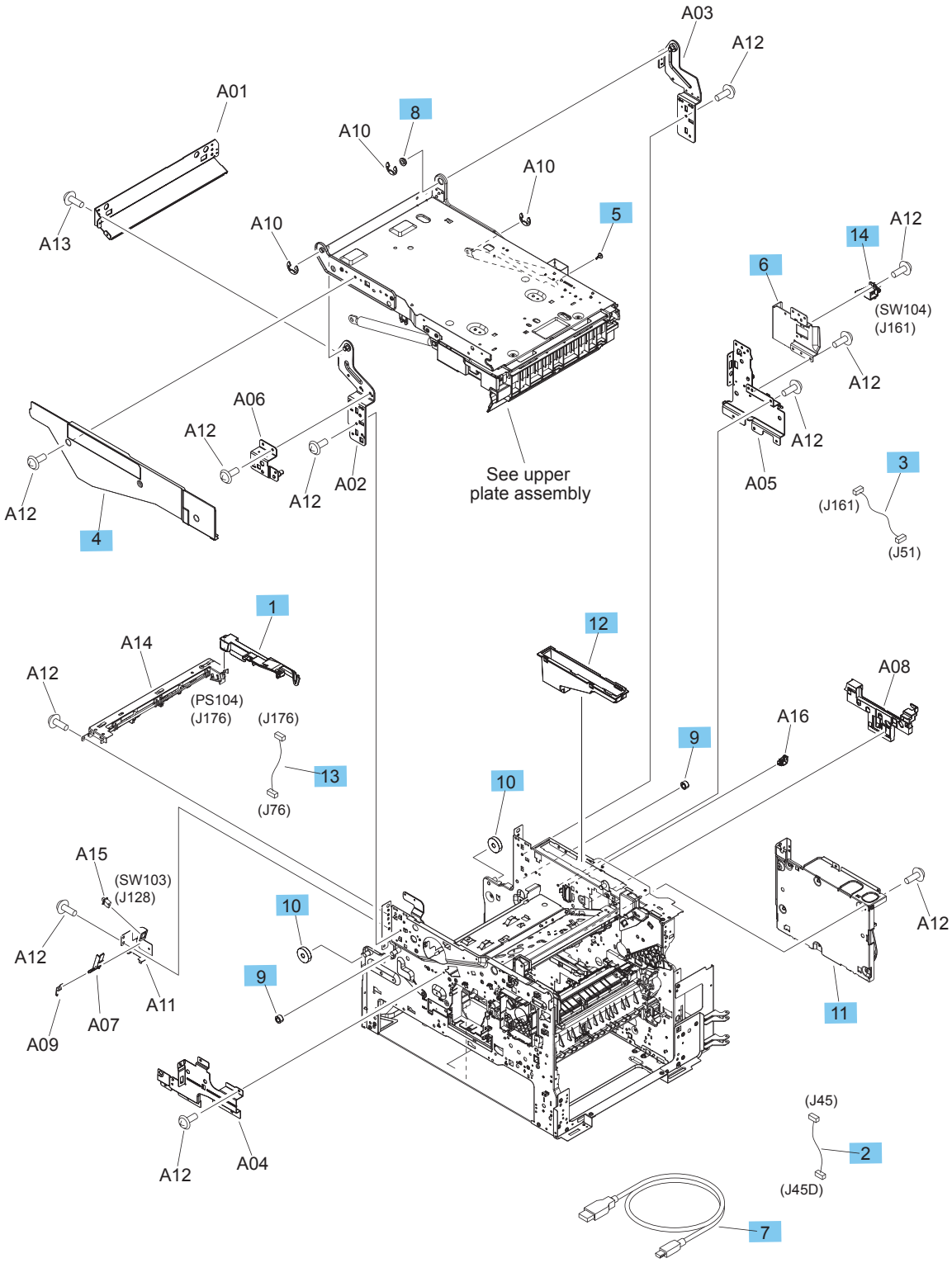


Table 2-17 Internal components (4 of 5)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Cover, reverse side rear	RC1-2852-000CN	1
2	Assembly, IS power cable	RM2-7491-000CN	1
3	Assembly, option sensor cable	RM2-7484-000CN	1
4	Cover, IS front	RL2-0996-000CN	1
5	Stopper, bushing arm	RC1-3090-000CN	1
6	Assembly, mounting plate	RM2-5917-000CN	1
7	Cable, USB	RK2-6506-000CN	1
8	Bushing	RC4-1569-000CN	1
9	Roller, delivery option 1	RC1-2892-000CN	2
10	Roller, delivery option 2	RC1-2893-000CN	2
11	Low-voltage power supply, 110V	RM2-5792-000CN	1
11	Low-voltage power supply, 220V	RM2-5793-000CN	1
12	Guard, gas spring edge, rear	RC1-2886-000CN	1
13	Assembly, full sensor cable	RM2-7480-000CN	1
14	Assembly, push button switch (SW104)	RM1-7374-000CN	1

Internal components (5 of 5)

Figure 2-12 Internal components (5 of 5)

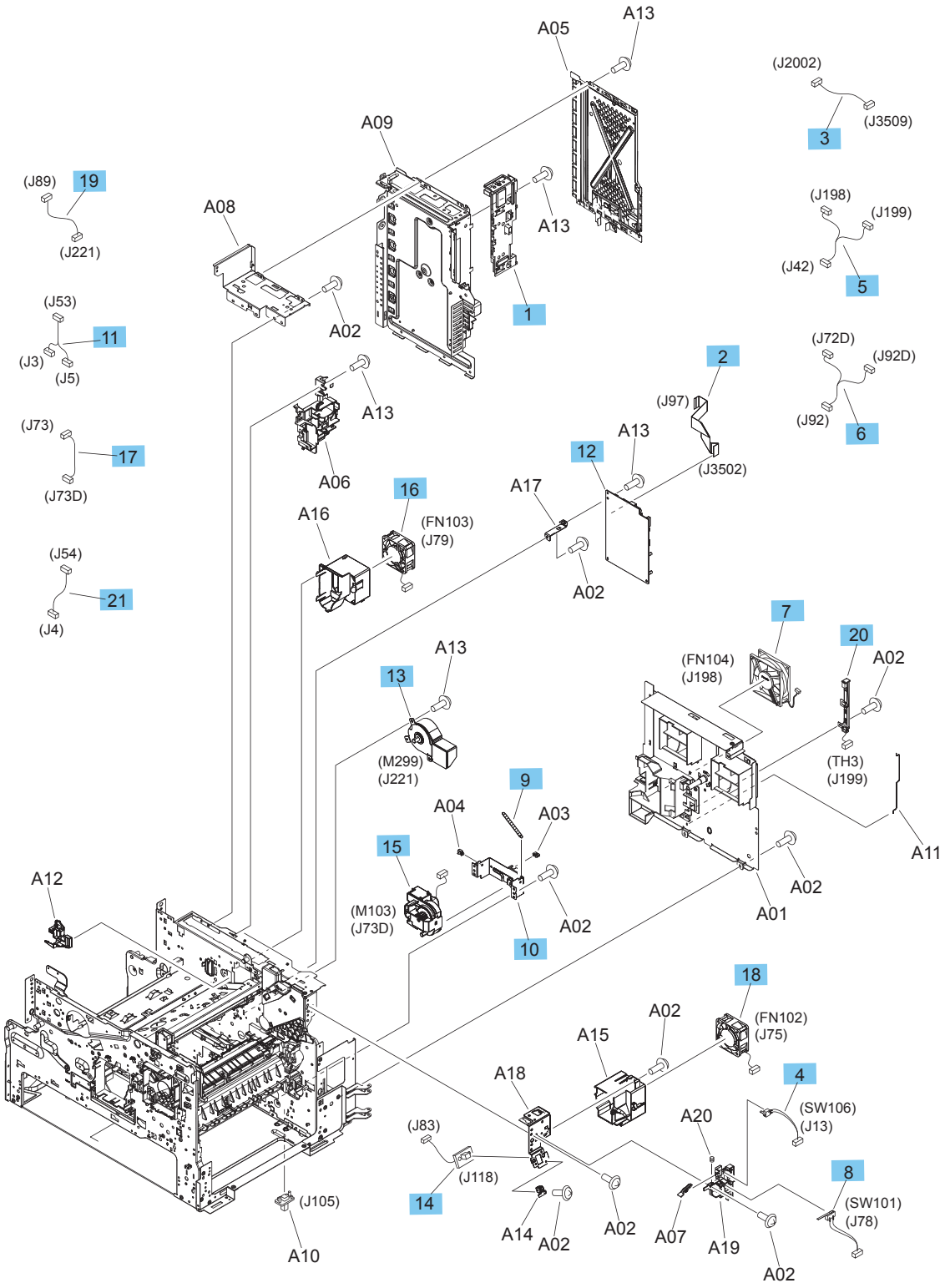


Table 2-18 Internal components (5 of 5)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Assembly, interconnect board (ICB) PCA	RM2-5791-000CN	1
2	Cable, flat	RK2-6508-000CN	1
3	Assembly, side band cable	RM2-7474-000CN	1
4	Assembly, door sensor cable (SW106)	RM2-7476-000CN	1
5	Assembly, environmental sensor cable	RM2-7473-000CN	1
6	Cable, P sensor solenoid	RM1-7170-000CN	1
7	Fan (FN104)	RK2-6509-000CN	1
8	Assembly, door switch cable (SW101)	RM2-7478-000CN	1
9	Spring, tension	RU6-2475-000CN	1
10	Support, lifter	RC2-6441-000CN	1
11	Assembly, DC controller cable	RM2-7479-000CN	1
12	Assembly, DC controller PCA	RM2-7458-000CN	1
13	Assembly, fuser motor (M299)	RM1-5051-020CN	1
14	Cable, envelope feeder	RM1-5085-000CN	1
15	Assembly, lifter (M103)	RM1-5914-000CN	1
16	Fan (FN103)	RK2-1992-000CN	1
17	Cable, lifter motor	RM1-7162-000CN	1
18	Fan (FN102)	RK2-1989-000CN	1
19	Cable, fuser motor	RM1-7159-000CN	1
20	Assembly, temperature sensor (TH3)	RM1-7420-000CN	1
21	Assembly, DC controller cable	RM2-7481-000CN	1

High-voltage power supply

Figure 2-13 High-voltage power supply

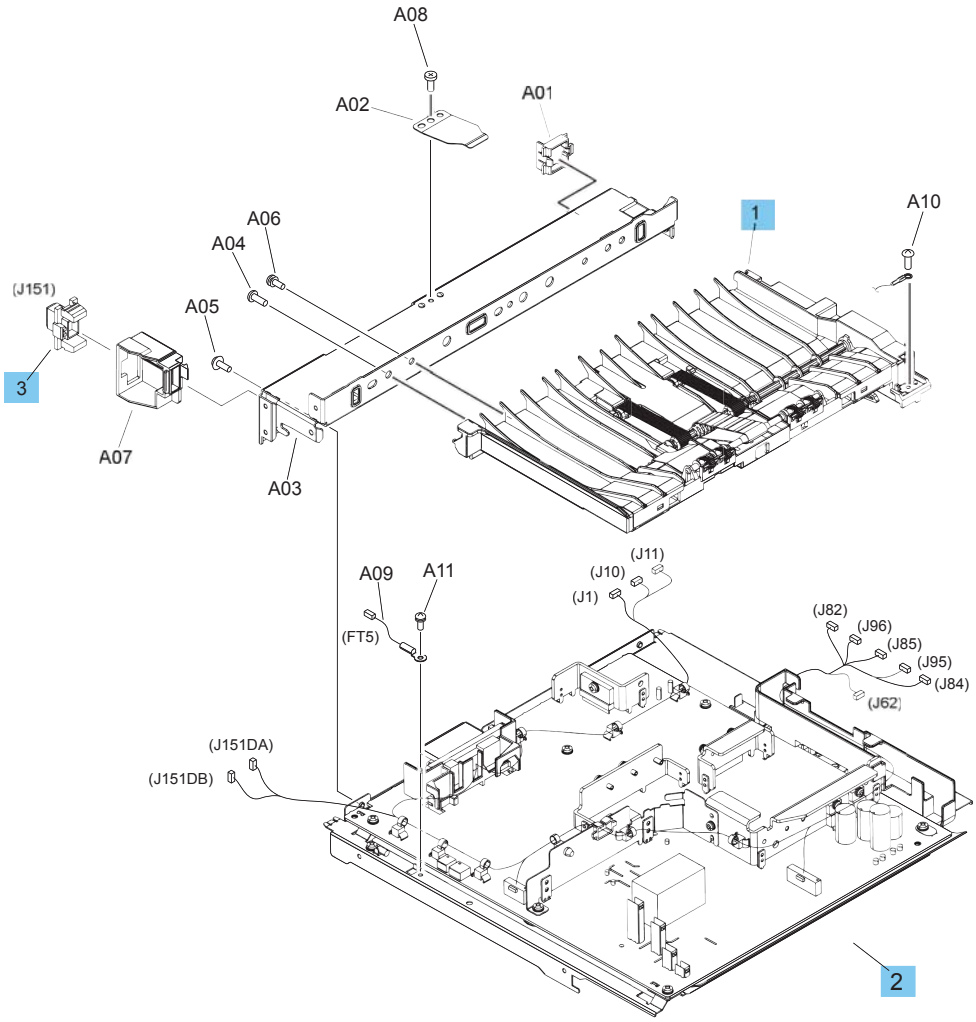


Table 2-19 High-voltage power supply

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Assembly, paper feed	RM1-4548-000CN	1
2	High-voltage power supply 110V	RM2-5826-000CN	1
2	High-voltage power supply 220V	RM2-5827-000CN	1
3	Connector, drawer	WS1-6336-000CN	1

1x500-sheet paper feeder

1x500-sheet paper feeder covers

Figure 2-14 500-sheet paper feeder covers

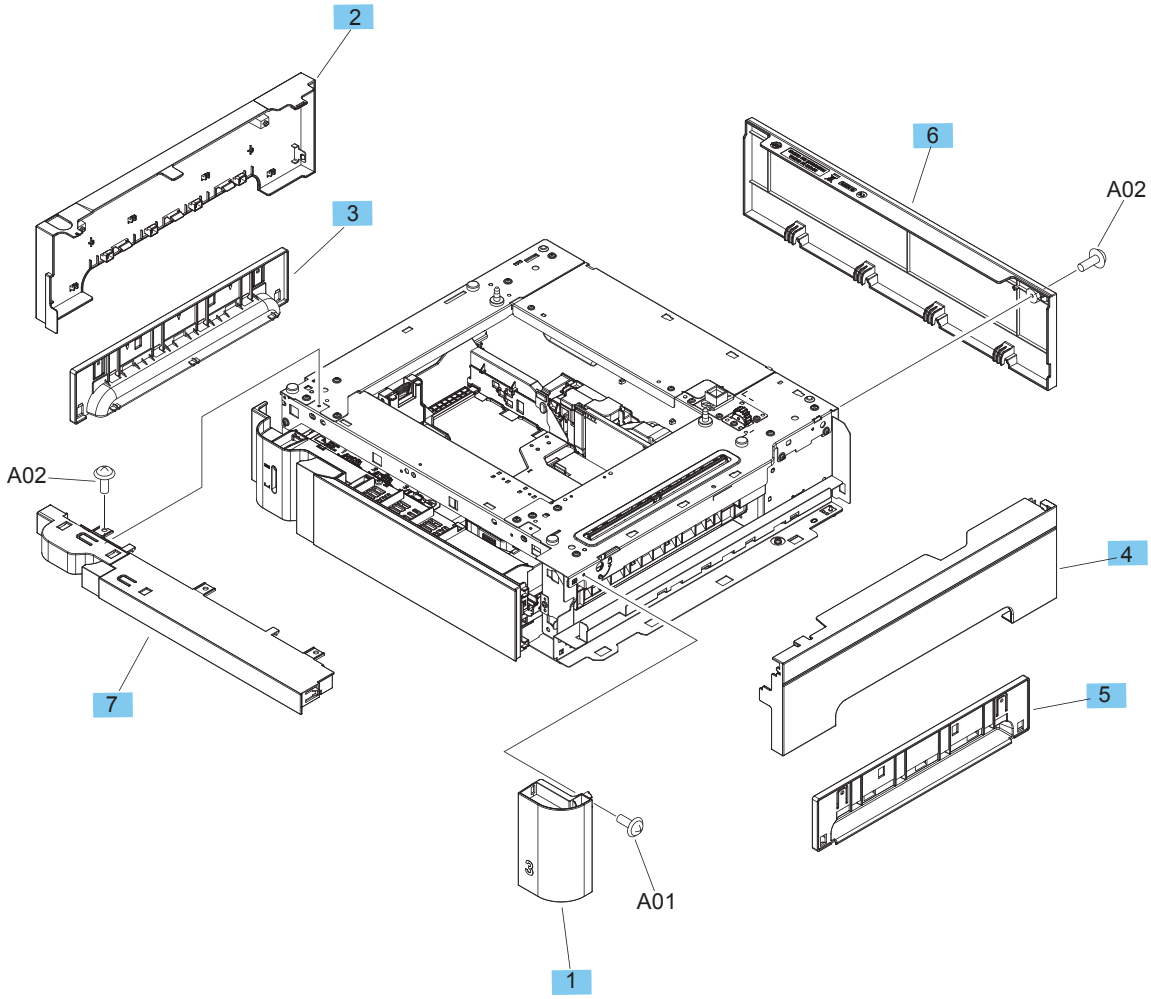


Table 2-20 1x500-sheet paper feeder covers

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Cover, right front (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1638-000CN	1
2	Cover, left (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1966-000CN	1
3	Cover, handle, left (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1967-000CN	1
4	Cover, right (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1968-000CN	1
5	Cover, handle, right (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1969-000CN	1
6	Cover, rear (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1970-000CN	1
7	Assembly, front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM2-5106-000CN	1

1x500-sheet paper feeder components

Figure 2-15 1x500-sheet paper feeder components

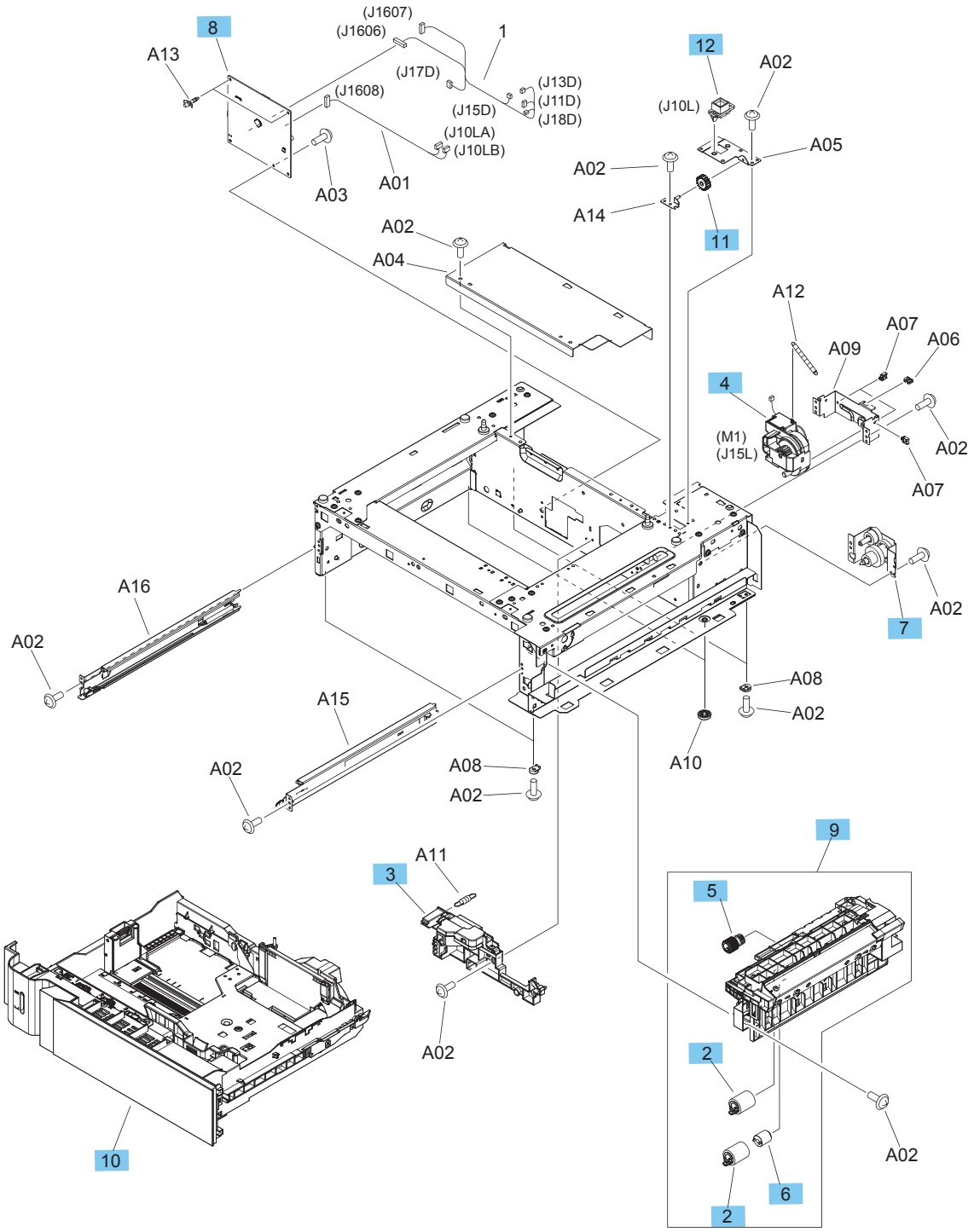


Table 2-21 1x500-sheet paper feeder components

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Roller, paper feed/separation (1x500-sheet paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	2
3	Assembly, lifter base (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM1-5913-000CN	1
4	Assembly, lifter (M1) (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM1-5914-000CN	1
5	Roller, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	1
6	Limiter, torque (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC1-3293-000CN	1
7	Assembly, paper pickup drive (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM1-5941-000CN	1
8	Assembly, controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM2-8002-000CN	1
9	Assembly, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM2-0341-000CN	1
10	Assembly, cassette (tray) (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM2-5094-000CN	1
11	Gear, 16T	RU5-0083-000CN	1
12	Connector, drawer 6P	VS1-7500-006CN	1

1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet

1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers

Figure 2-16 1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers

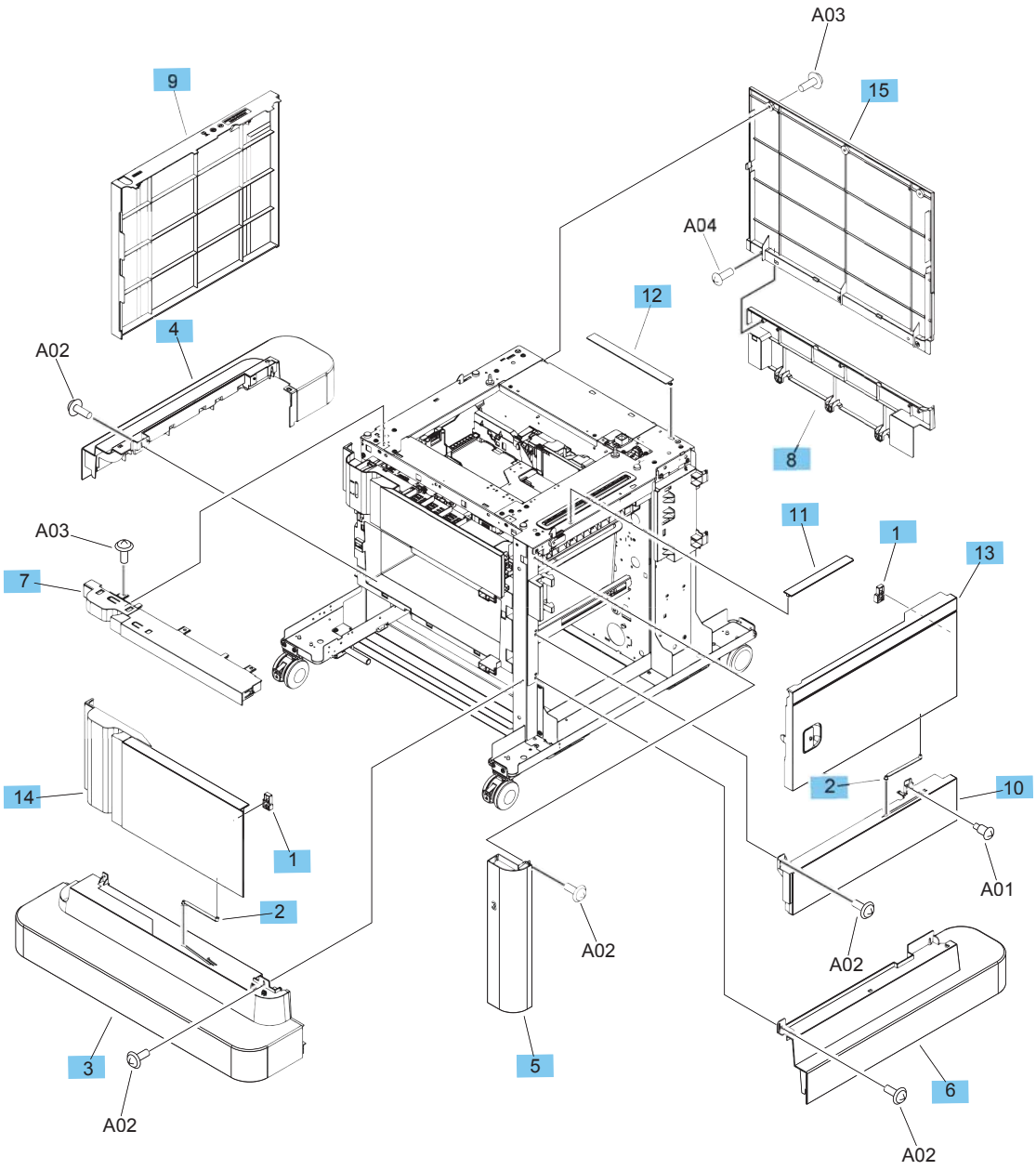


Table 2-22 1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Stopper, front door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC2-2666-000CN	2
2	Link, door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC2-6438-000CN	2
3	Cover, front lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1632-000CN	1
4	Cover, left lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1633-000CN	1
5	Cover, right front (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1636-000CN	1
6	Cover, right lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1643-000CN	1
7	Assembly, front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-5106-000CN	1
8	Cover, rear lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1958-000CN	1
9	Cover, left (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1959-000CN	1
10	Cover, right center (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1961-000CN	1
11	Cover, right upper (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1962-000CN	1
12	Cover, rear upper (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1964-000CN	1
13	Assembly, right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-5104-000CN	1
14	Assembly, stock door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-5105-000CN	1
15	Cover, rear (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1957-000CN	1

1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components

Figure 2-17 1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components

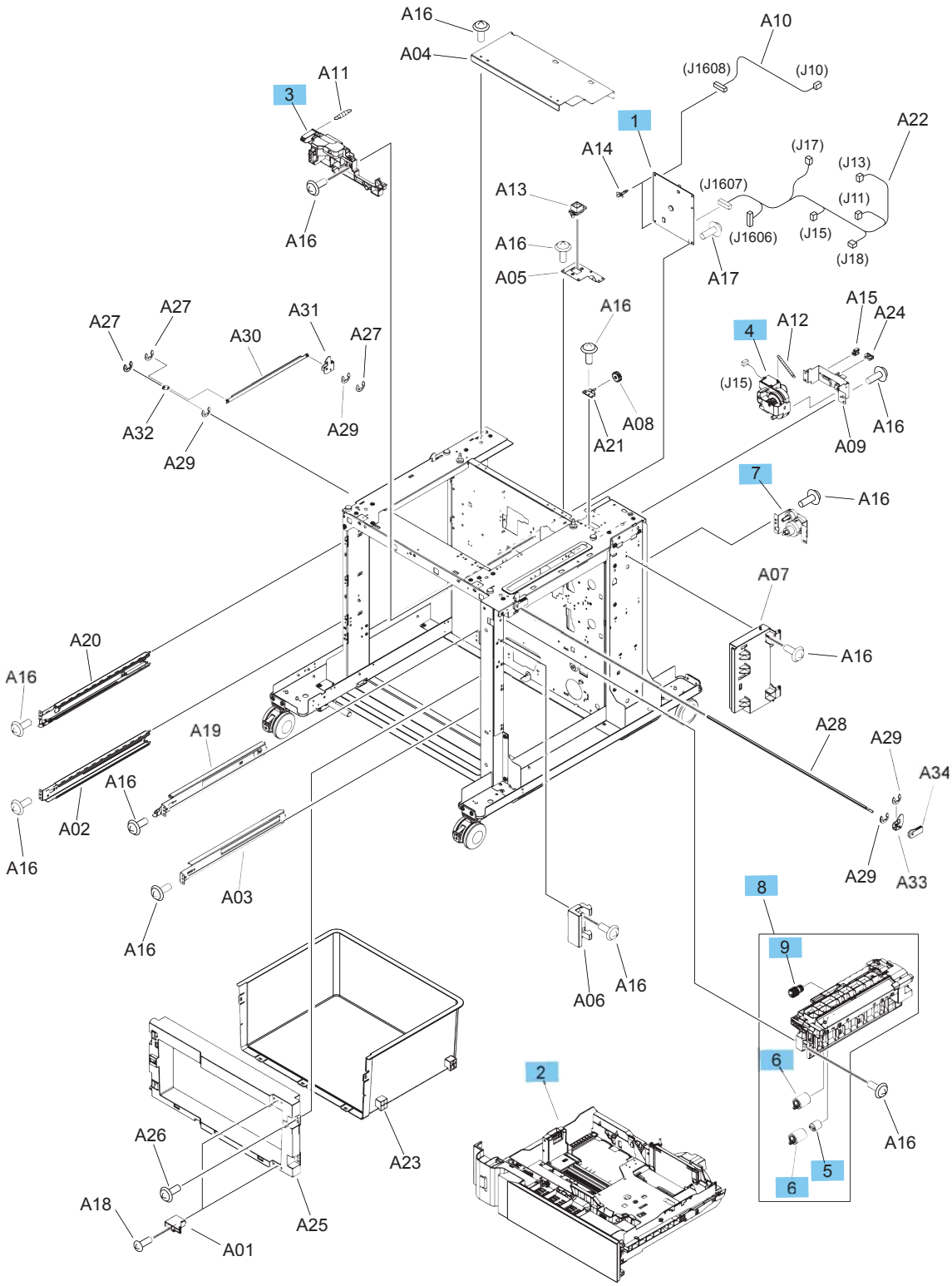


Table 2-23 1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Assembly, controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-8002-000CN	1
2	Assembly, cassette (tray) (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-5094-000CN	1
3	Assembly, lifter base (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM1-5913-000CN	1
4	Assembly, lifter (M1) (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM1-5914-000CN	1
5	Limiter, torque (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC1-3293-000CN	1
6	Roller, paper feed/separation (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	2
7	Assembly, paper pickup drive (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM1-5941-000CN	1
8	Assembly, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-0341-000CN	1
9	Roller, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	1

2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder

2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers

Figure 2-18 2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers

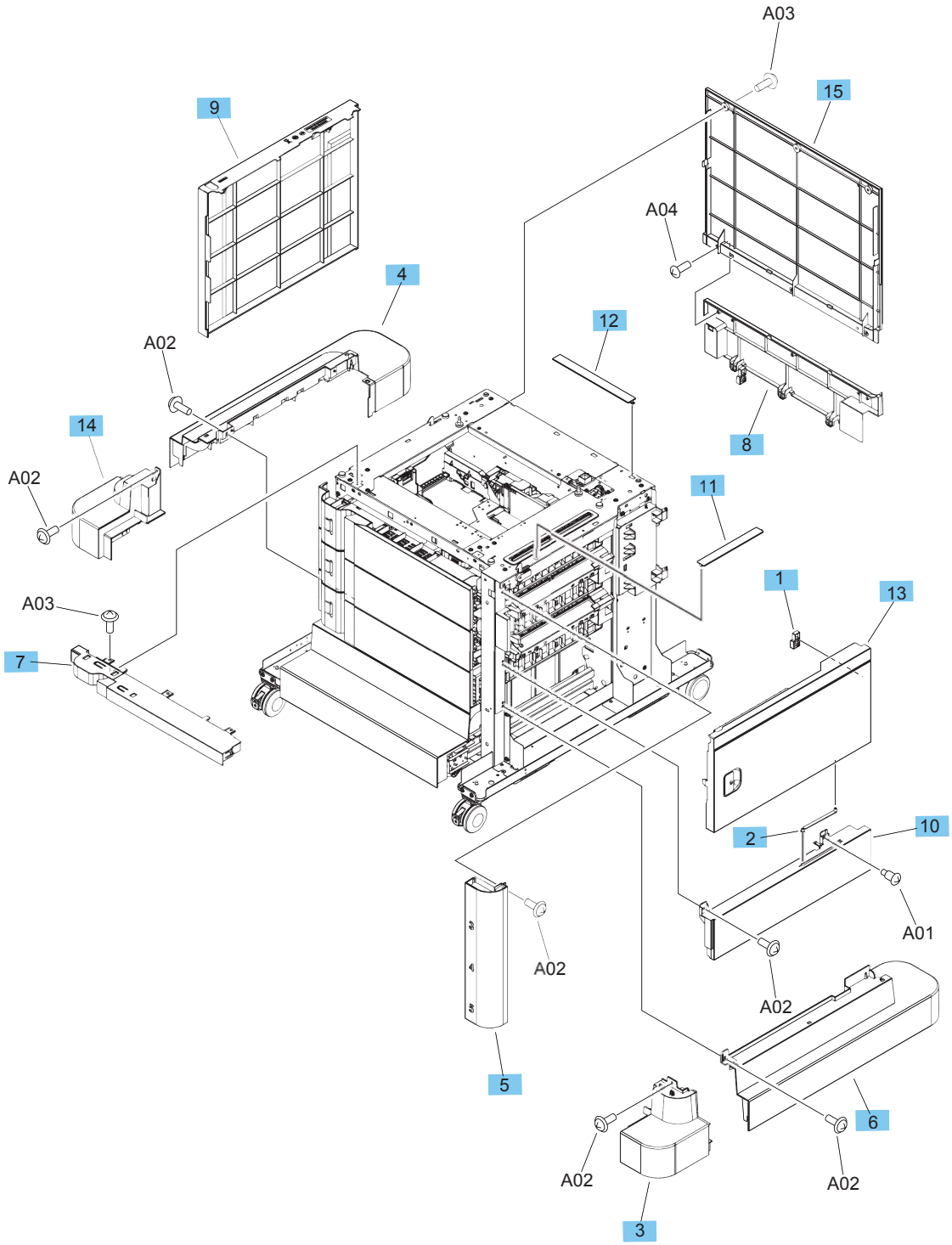


Table 2-24 2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Stopper, front door (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC2-2666-000CN	1
2	Link, door (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC2-6438-000CN	1
3	Cover, front lower right (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1639-000CN	1
4	Cover, left lower (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1633-000CN	1
5	Cover, right front (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1637-000CN	1
6	Cover, right lower (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1643-000CN	1
7	Assembly, front upper cover (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-5106-000CN	1
8	Cover, rear lower (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1958-000CN	1
9	Cover, left (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1959-000CN	1
10	Cover, right center (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1961-000CN	1
11	Cover, right upper (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1962-000CN	1
12	Cover, rear upper (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1964-000CN	1
13	Assembly, right door (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-5101-000CN	1
14	Cover, front lower left (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1640-000CN	1
15	Cover, rear (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1957-000CN	1

2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2)

Figure 2-19 2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2)

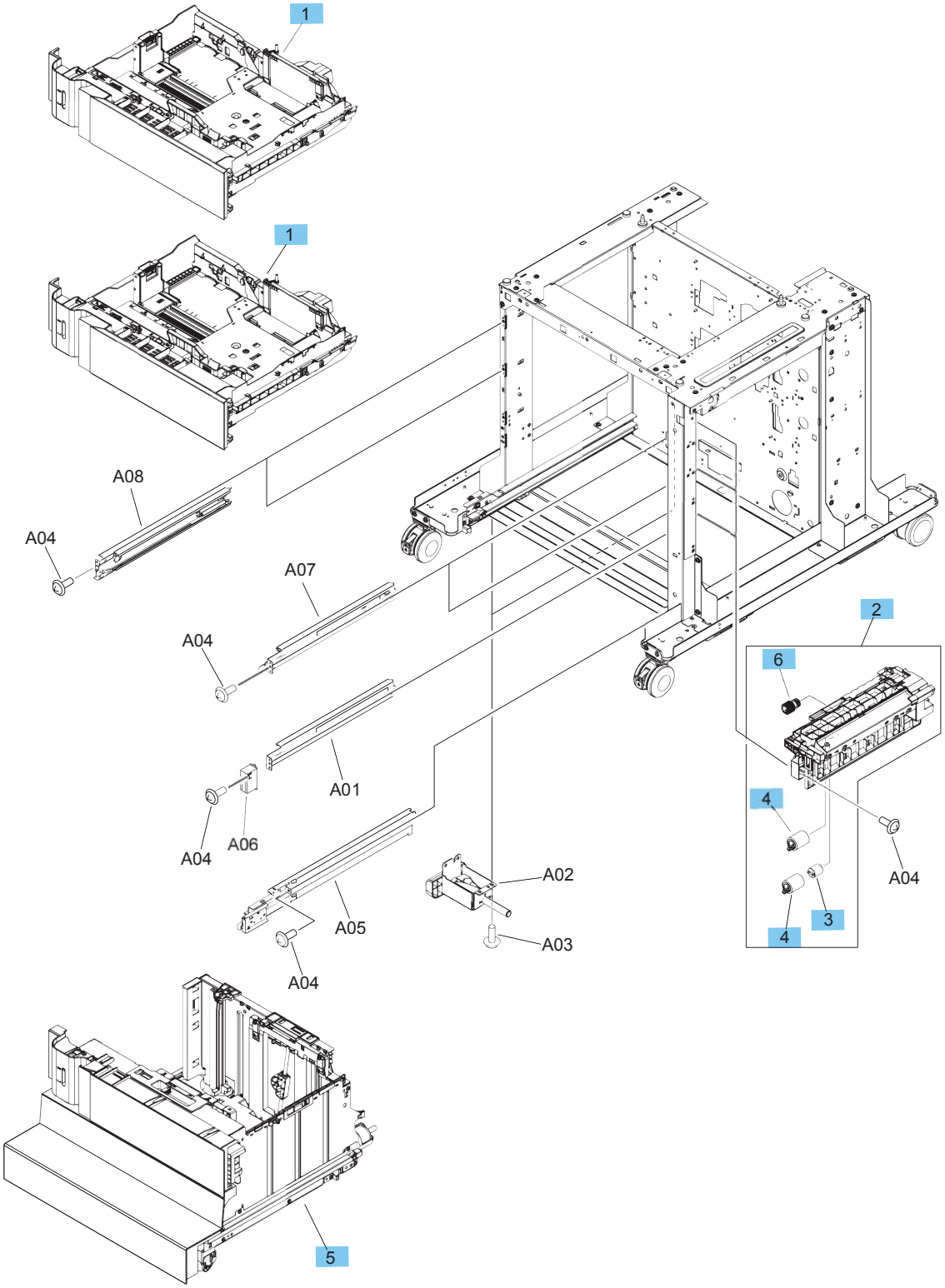


Table 2-25 2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Assembly, cassette (tray) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-5094-000CN	2
2	Assembly, paper pickup (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-0341-000CN	3
3	Limiter, torque (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC1-3293-000CN	3
4	Roller, paper feed/separation (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	6
5	Assembly, tray (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-5100-000CN	1
6	Roller, paper pickup (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	3

2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2)

Figure 2-20 2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2)

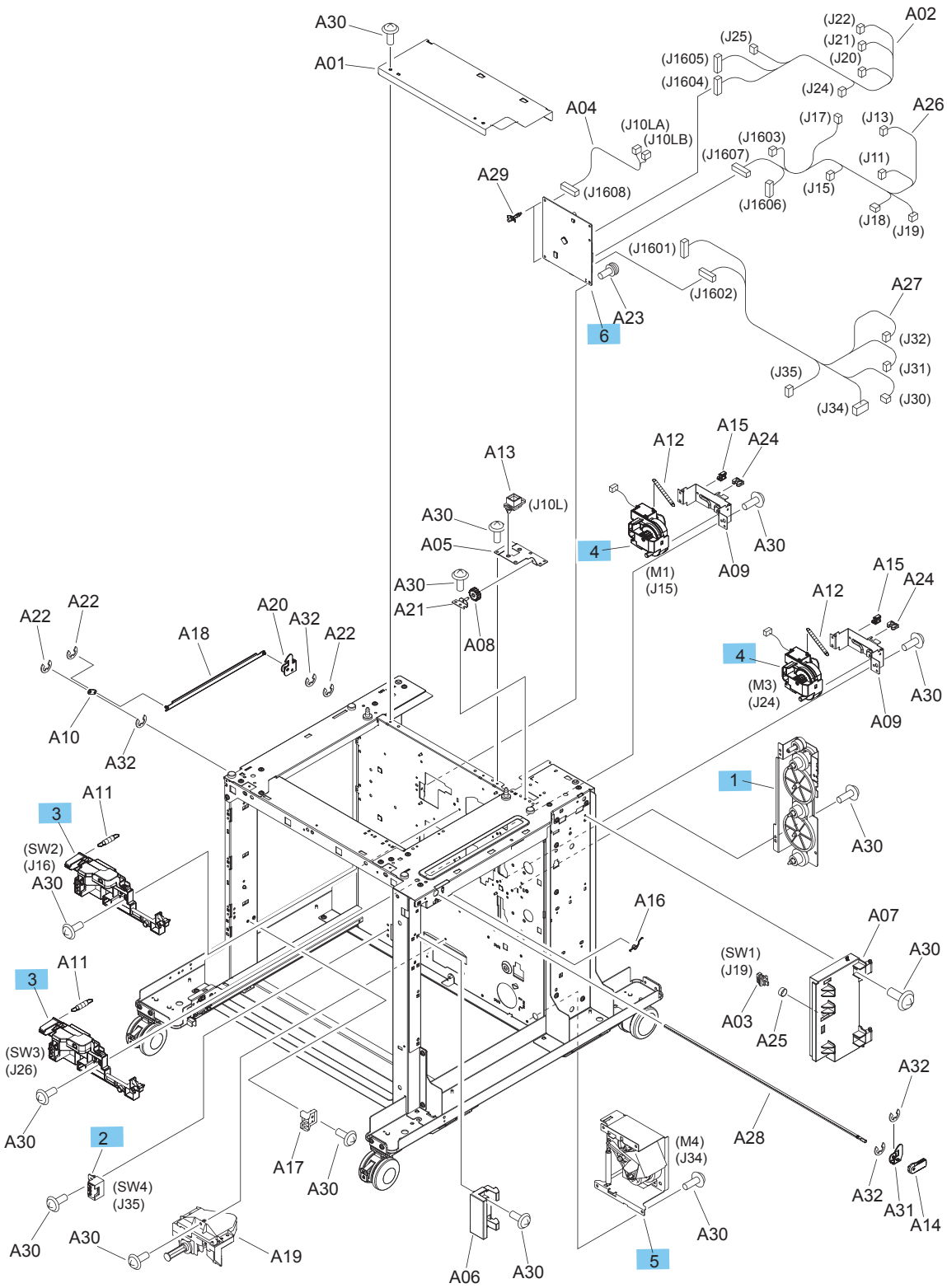


Table 2-26 2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Assembly, paper pickup drive (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM1-5942-000CN	1
2	Assembly, tray size sensor (SW4) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-0350-000CN	1
3	Assembly, lifter base (SW2, SW3) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM1-5913-000CN	2
4	Assembly, lifter (M1, M3) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM1-5914-000CN	2
5	Assembly, lifter drive (M4) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-0346-000CN	1
6	Assembly, controller PCA (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-8007-000CN	1

Stapling mailbox

Stapling mailbox covers

Figure 2-21 Stapling mailbox covers

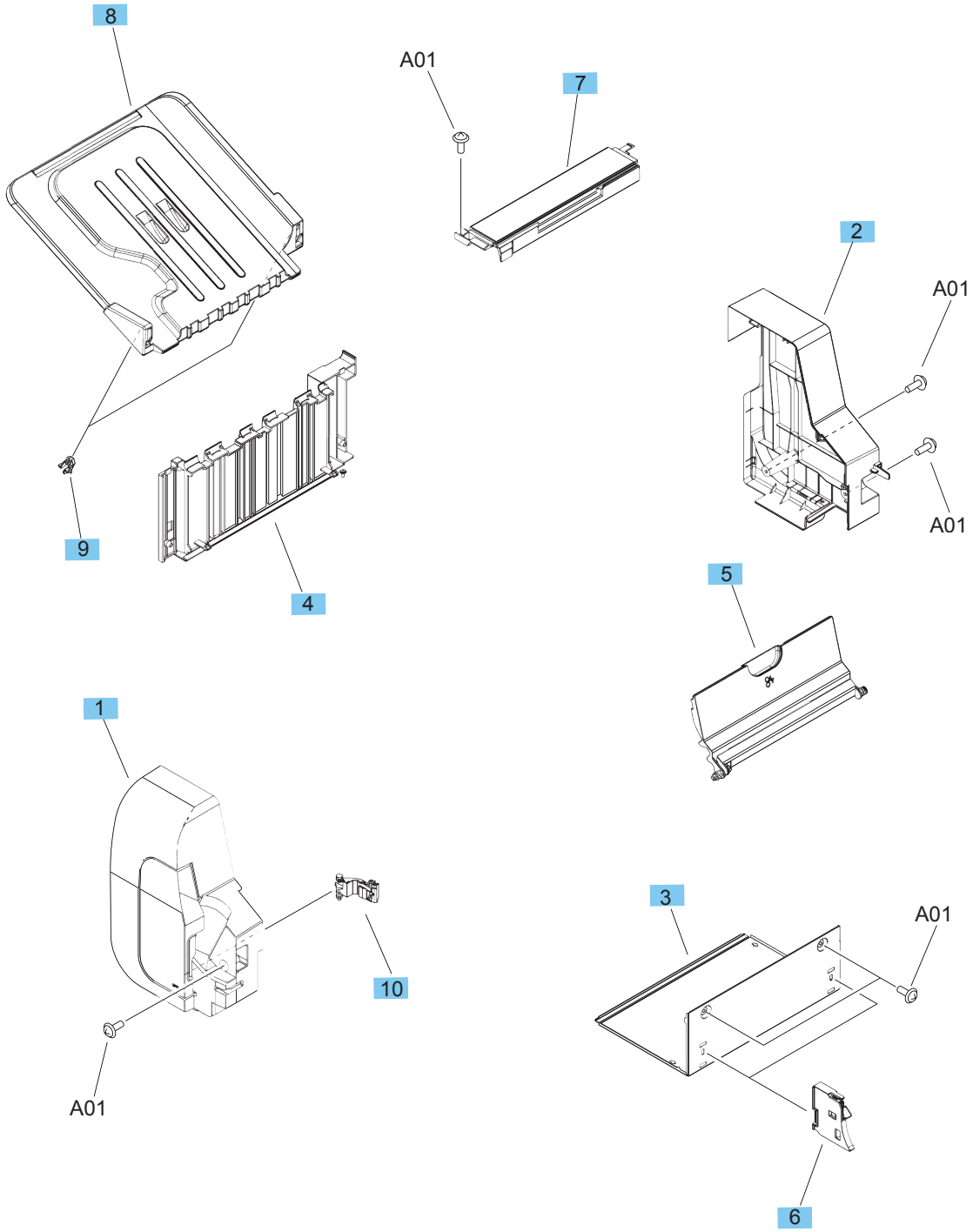


Table 2-27 Stapling mailbox covers

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Assembly, front cover (stapling mailbox)	RM2-5275-000CN	1
2	Cover, rear (stapling mailbox)	RC4-2039-000CN	1
3	Cover, bottom (stapling mailbox)	RL1-2438-000CN	1
4	Panel, stacking (stapling mailbox)	RL2-0501-000CN	1
5	Door, right (stapling mailbox)	RC4-2037-000CN	1
6	Assembly, lifter guide (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6330-000CN	2
7	Assembly, top cover (stapling mailbox)	RL2-0502-000CN	1
8	Output bin 3 (stapling mailbox)	RM2-5240-000CN	1
9	Stopper, tray (stapling mailbox)	RC2-5576-000CN	2
10	Assembly, interlock lever (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6335-000CN	1

Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2)

Figure 2-22 Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2)

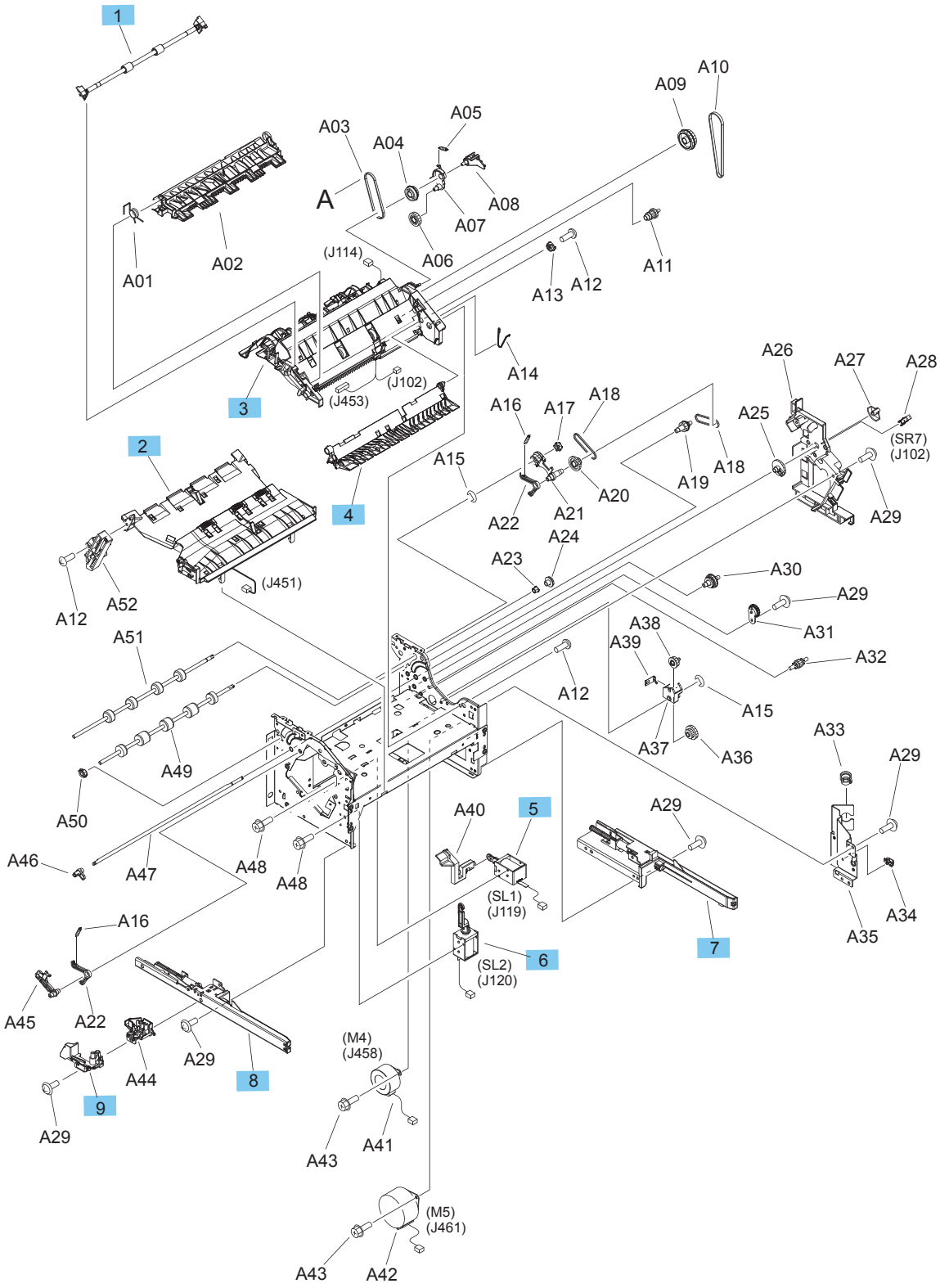


Table 2-28 Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Assembly, paper feed roller (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6332-000CN	1
2	Assembly, stage (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5159-000CN	1
3	Subassembly, stage top (stapling mailbox)	RM1-7437-010CN	1
4	Assembly, paper feed guide (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5173-000CN	1
5	Assembly, stamp solenoid (SL1) (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6664-000CN	1
6	Assembly, entrance solenoid (SL2)(stapling mailbox)	RM1-6663-000CN	1
7	Assembly, rail rear (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6327-000CN	1
8	Assembly, rail front (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6326-000CN	1
9	Assembly, interlock (stapling mailbox)	RM1-7431-000CN	1

Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2)

Figure 2-23 Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2)

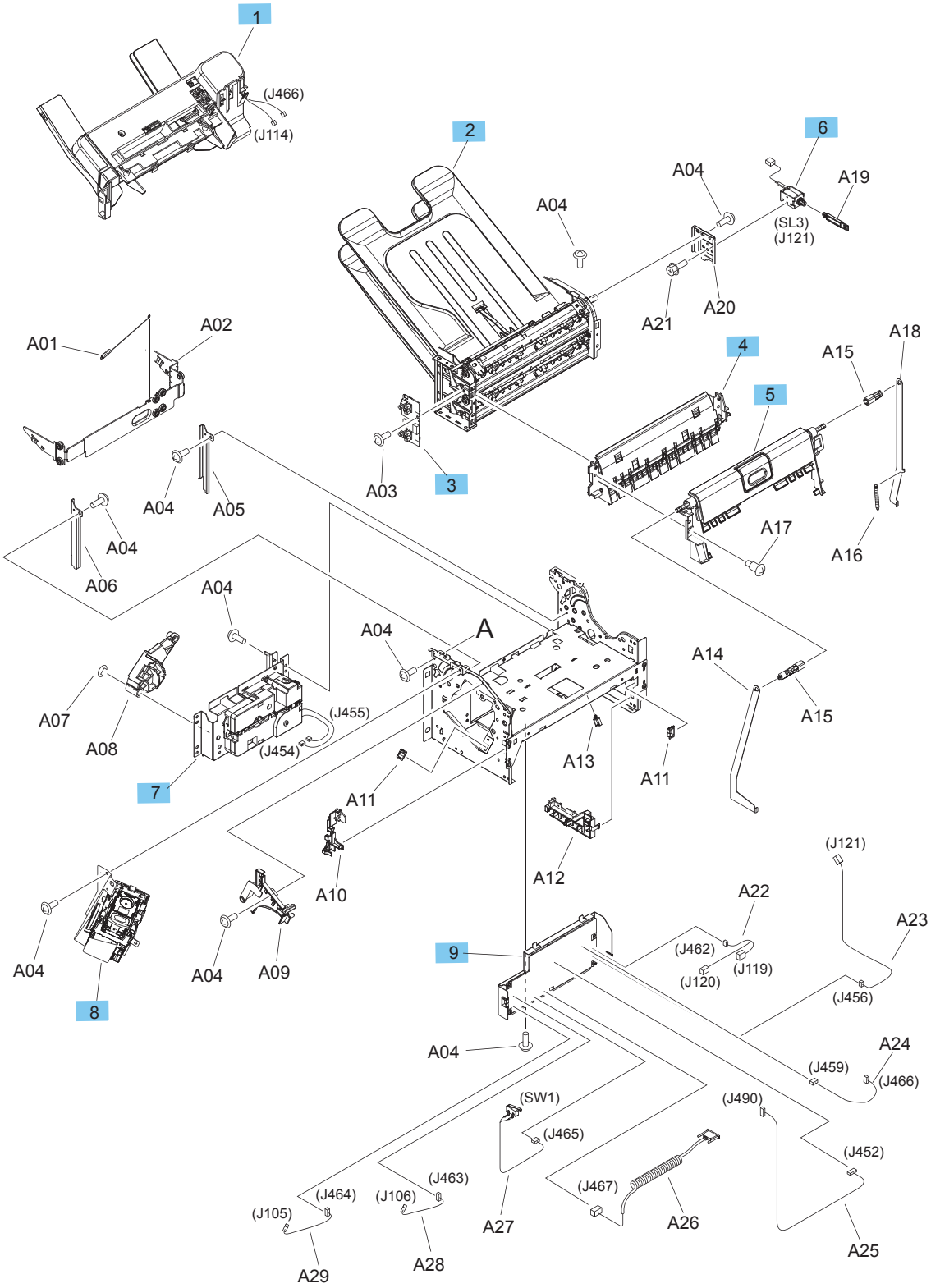


Table 2-29 Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Assembly, jog (stapling mailbox)	RM2-5235-000CN	1
2	Assembly, bin (stapling mailbox)	RM2-5242-000CN	1
3	Assembly, bin sensor PCA (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5894-000CN	1
4	Assembly, flapper (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5157-000CN	1
5	Assembly, handle	RM2-5277-000CN	1
6	Assembly, bin solenoid (SL3) (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5896-000CN	1
7	Assembly, output bin 3 drive (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5156-000CN	1
8	Assembly, stapler (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5166-000CN	1
9	Assembly, driver PCA (stapling mailbox)	RM2-5278-000CN	1

Envelope feeder

Envelope feeder covers

Figure 2-24 Envelope feeder covers

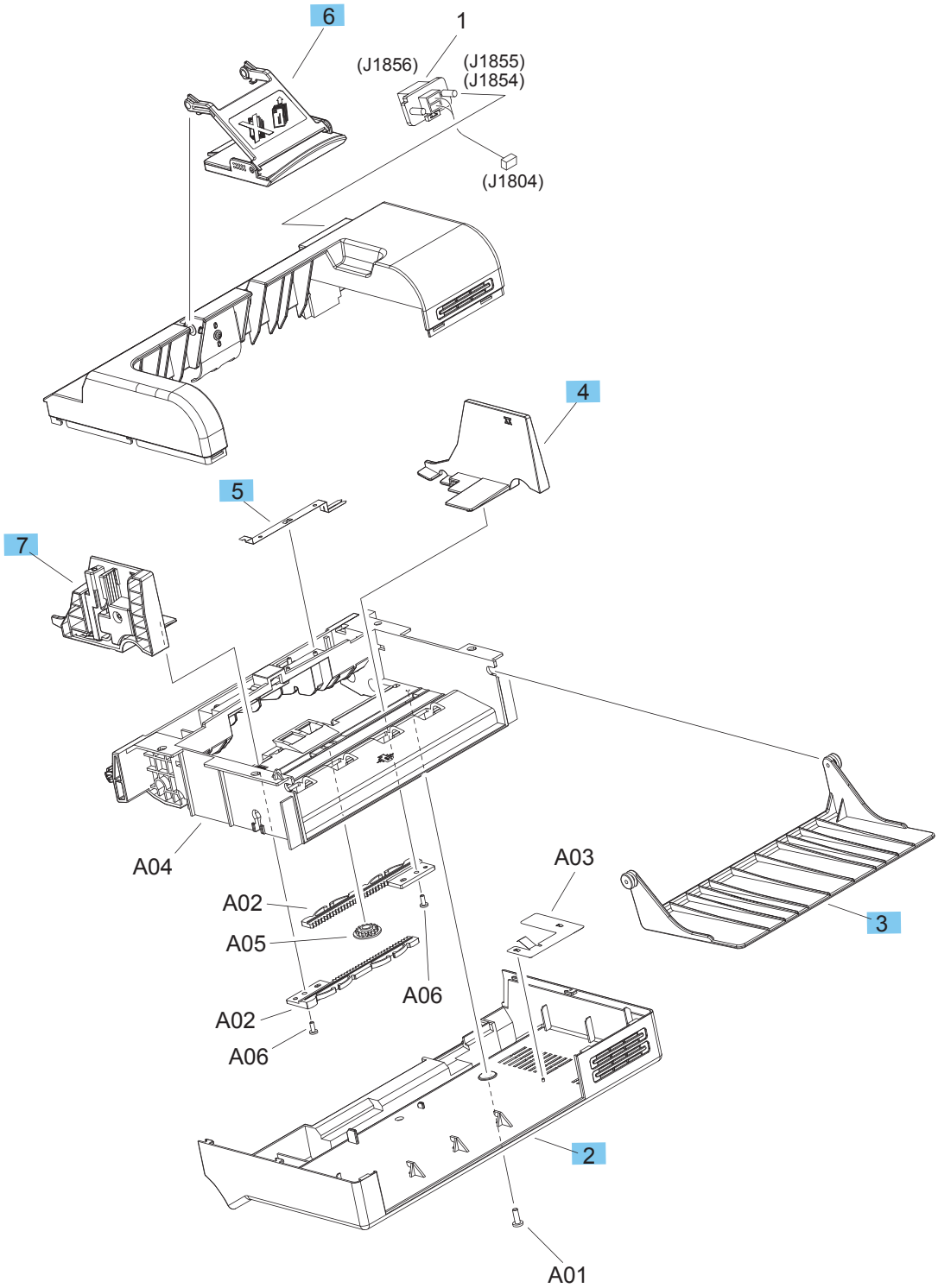


Table 2-30 Envelope feeder covers

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Cover, lower (envelope feeder)	RC4-6105-000CN	1
3	Tray, extension (envelope feeder)	RC4-6106-000CN	1
4	Plate, width limit right (envelope feeder)	RC4-6107-000CN	1
5	Plate, grounding 1 (envelope feeder)	RC2-5688-000CN	1
6	Assembly, weight (envelope feeder)	RM2-6170-000CN	1
7	Assembly, paper side end (envelope feeder)	RM2-6171-000CN	1

Envelope feeder components (1 of 2)

Figure 2-25 Envelope feeder components (1 of 2)

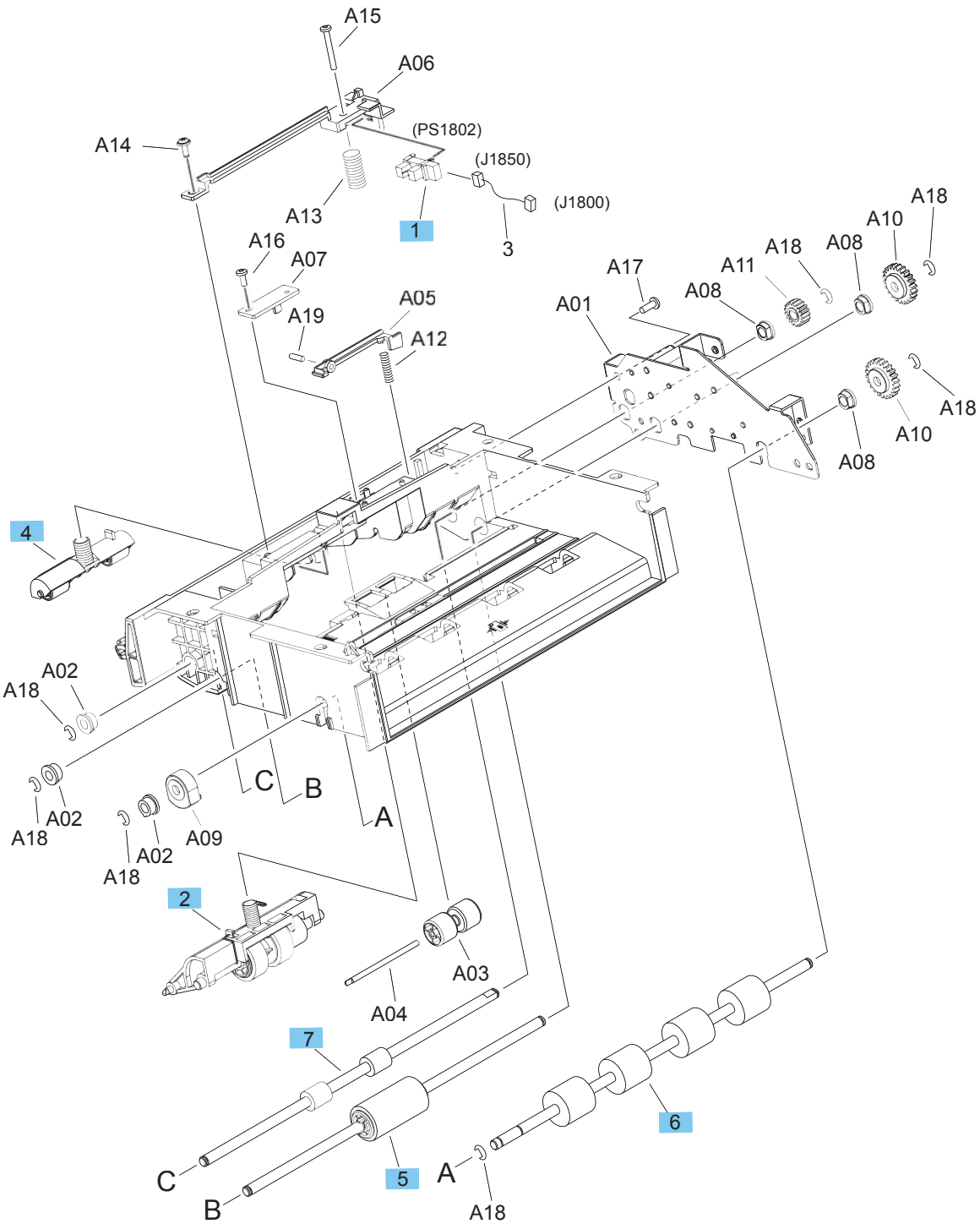


Table 2-31 Envelope feeder components (1 of 2)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Photointerrupter (PS1802) (envelope feeder)	WG8-5624-000CN	1
2	Assembly, separation roller (envelope feeder)	RM1-5224-000CN	1
4	Assembly, paper-feed roller (envelope feeder)	RM1-5223-000CN	1
5	Assembly, paper pickup roller (envelope feeder)	RM1-5221-000CN	1
6	Roller, paper pickup (envelope feeder)	RC2-5700-000CN	1
7	Roller, paper-feed (envelope feeder)	RC2-5701-000CN	1

Envelope feeder components (2 of 2)

Figure 2-26 Envelope feeder components (2 of 2)

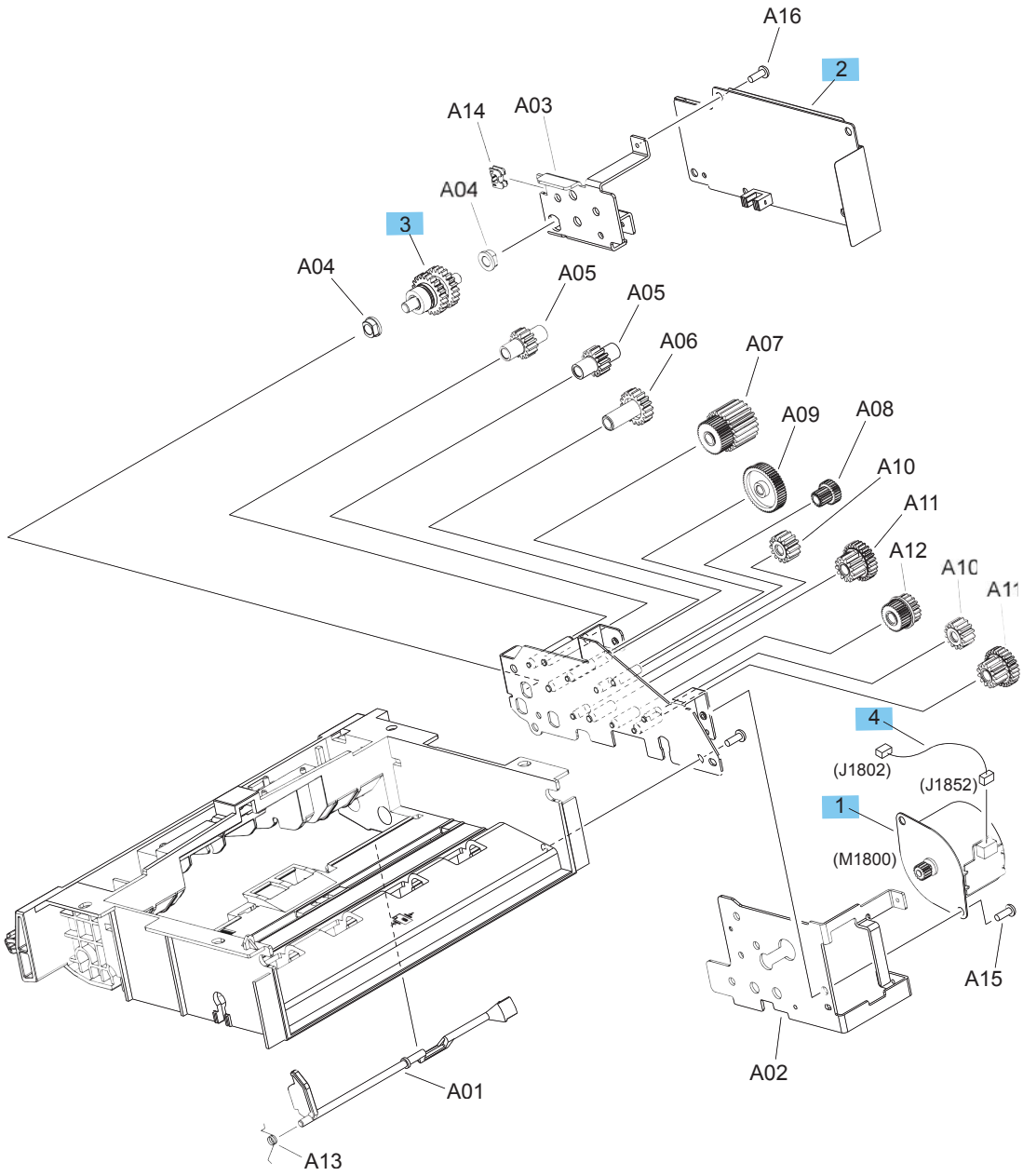


Table 2-32 Envelope feeder components (2 of 2)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Motor, stepping DC24V (M1800) (envelope feeder)	RK2-2162-000CN	1
2	Assembly, controller PCA (envelope feeder)	RM2-8134-000CN	1
3	Assembly, joint shaft (envelope feeder)	RM1-5222-000CN	1
4	Cable, paper feed motor (envelope feeder)	RM1-5238-000CN	1

Alphabetical parts list

Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list

Description	Part number	Table and page
Arm, door 1	RC4-5728-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Arm, door B	RC2-7967-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Assembly, bin (stapling mailbox)	RM2-5242-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
Assembly, bin sensor PCA (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5894-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
Assembly, bin solenoid (SL3) (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5896-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
Assembly, cartridge sensor (PS115)	RM1-8323-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Assembly, cartridge sensor cable	RM2-7477-000CN	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
Assembly, cassette (Tray 2) left rail	RM1-5932-000CN	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
Assembly, cassette (Tray 2) right rail	RM1-5931-000CN	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
Assembly, cassette (tray) (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-5094-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
Assembly, cassette (tray) (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM2-5094-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
Assembly, cassette (tray) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-5094-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815
Assembly, controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-8002-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
Assembly, controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM2-8002-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
Assembly, controller PCA (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-8007-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817
Assembly, controller PCA (envelope feeder)	RM2-8134-000CN	Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) on page 829
Assembly, DC controller cable	RM2-7479-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Assembly, DC controller cable	RM2-7481-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Assembly, DC controller PCA	RM2-7458-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801

Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Assembly, door sensor cable (SW106)	RM2-7476-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Assembly, door switch cable (SW101)	RM2-7478-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Assembly, driver PCA (stapling mailbox)	RM2-5278-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
Assembly, drum drive	RM2-5918-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Assembly, drum motor (M102)	RM1-8358-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Assembly, entrance solenoid (SL2)(stapling mailbox)	RM1-6663-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
Assembly, environmental sensor cable	RM2-7473-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Assembly, feed motor (M101)	RM2-5942-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Assembly, feed motor cable	RM2-7470-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Assembly, flapper (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5157-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
Assembly, front cover (stapling mailbox)	RM2-5275-000CN	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
Assembly, front top cover	RM2-5814-000CN	Covers on page 789
Assembly, front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-5106-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
Assembly, front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM2-5106-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805
Assembly, front upper cover (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-5106-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
Assembly, full sensor cable	RM2-7480-000CN	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
Assembly, fuser motor (M299)	RM1-5051-020CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Assembly, grounding plate	RM1-5461-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Assembly, handle	RM2-5277-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
Assembly, Hinge HR	B4A39-60008	Document feeder components (1 of 2) on page 781
Assembly, interconnect board (ICB) PCA	RM2-5791-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Assembly, interlock (stapling mailbox)	RM1-7431-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821

Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Assembly, interlock lever (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6335-000CN	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
Assembly, IS power cable	RM2-7491-000CN	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
Assembly, jog (stapling mailbox)	RM2-5235-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
Assembly, joint shaft (envelope feeder)	RM1-5222-000CN	Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) on page 829
Assembly, laser scanner cable	RM2-7482-000CN	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
Assembly, laser/scanner	RM1-8406-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Assembly, lifter (M1) (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM1-5914-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
Assembly, lifter (M1) (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM1-5914-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
Assembly, lifter (M1, M3) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM1-5914-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817
Assembly, lifter (M103)	RM1-5914-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Assembly, lifter base (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM1-5913-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
Assembly, lifter base (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM1-5913-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
Assembly, lifter base (SW2, SW3) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM1-5913-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817
Assembly, lifter base	RM1-5913-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Assembly, lifter drive (M4) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-0346-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817
Assembly, lifter guide (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6330-000CN	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
Assembly, mounting plate	RM2-5917-000CN	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
Assembly, MP (Tray 1) cover	RM2-5816-000CN	Covers on page 789
Assembly, MP (Tray 1) pickup	RM2-5822-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Assembly, option sensor cable	RM2-7484-000CN	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799

Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Assembly, output bin 3 drive (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5156-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
Assembly, paper delivery tray (part of output bin assembly kit)	B3G84-69702	Covers on page 789
Assembly, paper feed	RM1-4548-000CN	High-voltage power supply on page 803
Assembly, paper feed guide (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5173-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
Assembly, paper feed roller (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6332-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
Assembly, paper feed roller	RM1-8411-010CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Assembly, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-0341-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
Assembly, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM2-0341-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
Assembly, paper pickup (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-0341-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815
Assembly, paper pickup drive (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM1-5941-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
Assembly, paper pickup drive (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM1-5941-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
Assembly, paper pickup drive (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM1-5942-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817
Assembly, paper pickup drive	RM2-5804-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Assembly, paper pickup roller (envelope feeder)	RM1-5221-000CN	Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827
Assembly, paper pickup	RM1-5919-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Assembly, paper side end (envelope feeder)	RM2-6171-000CN	Envelope feeder covers on page 825
Assembly, paper-feed roller (envelope feeder)	RM1-5223-000CN	Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827
Assembly, power switch	RM2-5818-000CN	Covers on page 789
Assembly, push button switch (SW104)	RM1-7374-000CN	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
Assembly, rail front (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6326-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
Assembly, rail rear (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6327-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821

Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Assembly, registration	RM1-8413-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Assembly, reverse fan cable	RM2-7486-000CN	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
Assembly, reverse guide	RM2-5810-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Assembly, reverse joint cable	RM2-7487-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Assembly, reverse	RM2-5799-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Assembly, right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-5104-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
Assembly, right door (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-5101-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
Assembly, right door sensor (SW105)	RM1-1045-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Assembly, right lower door	RM2-5820-000CN	Covers on page 789
Assembly, scanner joint cable	RM2-7471-000CN	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
Assembly, separation roller (envelope feeder)	RM1-5224-000CN	Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827
Assembly, side band cable	RM2-7474-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Assembly, stage (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5159-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
Assembly, stamp solenoid (SL1) (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6664-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
Assembly, stapler (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5166-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
Assembly, stock door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-5105-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
Assembly, temperature sensor (TH3)	RM1-7420-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Assembly, top cover (stapling mailbox)	RL2-0502-000CN	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
Assembly, tray (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-5100-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815
Assembly, tray base (part of output bin assembly kit)	B3G84-69702	Covers on page 789
Assembly, tray size sensor (SW4) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-0350-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817

Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Assembly, weight (envelope feeder)	RM2-6170-000CN	Envelope feeder covers on page 825
Block upper guide support, front	RC4-1530-000CN	Upper plate assembly on page 791
Block upper guide support, rear	RC4-1531-000CN	Upper plate assembly on page 791
Bushing	RC4-1569-000CN	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
Cable, envelope feeder	RM1-5085-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Cable, flat	RK2-6508-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Cable, fuser motor	RM1-7159-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Cable, lifter motor	RM1-7162-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Cable, P sensor solenoid	RM1-7170-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Cable, paper feed motor (envelope feeder)	RM1-5238-000CN	Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) on page 829
Cable, SCB left	B3G84-60108	Scanner control board (SCB) on page 785
Cable, SCB right	B3G84-60107	Scanner control board (SCB) on page 785
Cable, SCB wire harness	B3G84-60109	Scanner control board (SCB) on page 785
Cable, size detect (SW102)	RM1-7179-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Cable, USB	RK2-6506-000CN	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
Cassette (Tray 2)	RM2-5094-000CN	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
Connector, drawer	WS1-6336-000CN	High-voltage power supply on page 803
Connector, drawer 6P	VS1-7500-006CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
Cover, bottom (stapling mailbox)	RL1-2438-000CN	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
Cover, cassette (Tray 2) left	RC4-1573-000CN	Covers on page 789
Cover, control panel access	5042-9118	Document feeder and scanner components on page 779
Cover, document-feeder roller	CC355-40013	Document feeder components (2 of 2) on page 783

Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Cover, door arm	RC1-2833-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Cover, envelope	RL1-2831-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Cover, front left	RC4-1515-000CN	Covers on page 789
Cover, front left lower	RC4-5717-000CN	Covers on page 789
Cover, front lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1632-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
Cover, front lower left (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1640-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
Cover, front lower right (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1639-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
Cover, handle right lower	RC4-5706-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Cover, handle, left (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1967-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805
Cover, handle, right (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1969-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805
Cover, HIP	5851-5361	Document feeder and scanner components on page 779
Cover, IS cable	RC4-1575-000CN	Covers on page 789
Cover, IS front	RL2-0996-000CN	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
Cover, IS left lower	RC4-5693-000CN	Covers on page 789
Cover, IS lock, front	RC4-5721-000CN	Upper plate assembly on page 791
Cover, IS lock, rear	RC4-1537-000CN	Upper plate assembly on page 791
Cover, IS right	RC4-1527-000CN	Covers on page 789
Cover, left (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1959-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
Cover, left (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1966-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805
Cover, left (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1959-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
Cover, left lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1633-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
Cover, left lower (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1633-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
Cover, lower (envelope feeder)	RC4-6105-000CN	Envelope feeder covers on page 825

Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Cover, MP (Tray 1) gear	RC4-1572-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Cover, MP (Tray 1) inner	RC4-3948-000CN	Covers on page 789
Cover, rear (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1957-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
Cover, rear (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1970-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805
Cover, rear (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1957-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
Cover, rear (stapling mailbox)	RC4-2039-000CN	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
Cover, rear left	RC4-5692-000CN	Covers on page 789
Cover, rear lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1958-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
Cover, rear lower (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1958-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
Cover, rear right	RL2-0999-000CN	Covers on page 789
Cover, rear top	RC4-1574-000CN	Covers on page 789
Cover, rear upper (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1964-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
Cover, rear upper (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1964-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
Cover, reverse side rear	RC1-2852-000CN	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
Cover, right (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1968-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805
Cover, right center (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1961-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
Cover, right center (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1961-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
Cover, right front (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1636-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
Cover, right front (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1638-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805
Cover, right front (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1637-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
Cover, right lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1643-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
Cover, right lower (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1643-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
Cover, right upper (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1962-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809

Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Cover, right upper (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1962-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
Cover, side rear	RC4-5716-000CN	Covers on page 789
Cover, USB	5851-5360	Document feeder and scanner components on page 779
Door, right (stapling mailbox)	RC4-2037-000CN	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
Fan (FN101)	RK2-1988-000CN	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
Fan (FN102)	RK2-1989-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Fan (FN103)	RK2-1992-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Fan (FN104)	RK2-6509-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Fan (FN105)	RK2-0280-000CN	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
Fan (FN301)	RK2-3244-000CN	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
Gear, 15T	RU7-0294-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Gear, 16T	RU5-0083-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
Gear, 17T	RU7-0293-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Gear, 23T/19T	RU7-0295-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Gear, 33T	RU7-0292-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Gear, 35T	RU7-0303-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Gear, 91T/25T	RU7-0290-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Guard, gas spring edge, rear	RC1-2886-000CN	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
Guide, cartridge, upper	RC4-1529-000CN	Upper plate assembly on page 791
Guide, legal	RC2-8029-000CN	Upper plate assembly on page 791
Handle, lock	RC4-5690-000CN	Upper plate assembly on page 791
High-voltage power supply 110V	RM2-5826-000CN	High-voltage power supply on page 803

Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
High-voltage power supply 220V	RM2-5827-000CN	High-voltage power supply on page 803
Holder, shutter, light	RC4-5707-000CN	Upper plate assembly on page 791
Kit, ADF roller maintenance (includes roller and separation pad)	L2725-60002	Document feeder components (2 of 2) on page 783
Kit, ADF separation pad spring	5851-4879	Document feeder components (2 of 2) on page 783
Kit, ADF white backing	5851-6084	Document feeder components (1 of 2) on page 781
Kit, background selector for backside scan	5851-5022	Document feeder components (2 of 2) on page 783
Kit, control panel (without keyboard)	B3G84-67908	Control panel on page 787
Kit, document feeder mylar strip	B3G86-67903	Document feeder components (2 of 2) on page 783
Kit, document feeder, complete with white backing[1]	B3G86-67901	Document feeder and scanner components on page 779
Kit, duplex assembly	B3G84-67903	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
Kit, front cover assembly	B3G85-67905	Covers on page 789
Kit, fuser replacement, 110V	B3M77-67903	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
Kit, fuser replacement, 220V	B3M78-67903	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
Kit, fuser-entrance guide	B3G84-67904	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Kit, image scanner assembly, complete with white backing[2]	B3G86-67905	Document feeder and scanner components on page 779
Kit, transfer roller	B3G84-67901	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Kit, U.K. English keyboard (M630z)	5851-5008	Control panel on page 787
Kit, U.S. English keyboard (M630z)	5851-5380	Control panel on page 787
Limiter, torque	RC1-3293-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Limiter, torque (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC1-3293-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
Limiter, torque (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC1-3293-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
Limiter, torque (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC1-3293-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815

Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Link, door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC2-6438-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
Link, door (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC2-6438-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
Link, handle	RC1-2822-000CN	Upper plate assembly on page 791
Low-voltage power supply, 110V	RM2-5792-000CN	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
Low-voltage power supply, 220V	RM2-5793-000CN	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
Motor, stepping DC24V (M1800) (envelope feeder)	RK2-2162-000CN	Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) on page 829
Output bin 3 (stapling mailbox)	RM2-5240-000CN	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
Panel, logo	RL2-1000-000CN	Covers on page 789
Panel, stacking (stapling mailbox)	RL2-0501-000CN	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
Photointerrupter (PS1802) (envelope feeder)	WG8-5624-000CN	Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827
Plate, grounding 1 (envelope feeder)	RC2-5688-000CN	Envelope feeder covers on page 825
Plate, width limit right (envelope feeder)	RC4-6107-000CN	Envelope feeder covers on page 825
Rod, link	RC4-5729-000CN	Upper plate assembly on page 791
Rod, link	RC1-2902-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Rod, release	RC2-8086-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Roller, delivery option 1	RC1-2892-000CN	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
Roller, delivery option 2	RC1-2893-000CN	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
Roller, paper feed/separation (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
Roller, paper feed/separation (1x500-sheet paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
Roller, paper feed/separation (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815
Roller, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811

Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Roller, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
Roller, paper pickup (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815
Roller, paper pickup (envelope feeder)	RC2-5700-000CN	Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827
Roller, paper-feed (envelope feeder)	RC2-5701-000CN	Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827
Roller, Tray 1 feed (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	B3G84-67906	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Roller, Tray 1 pickup (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	B3G84-67906	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Roller, Tray 1 separation (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	B3G84-67906	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Roller, Tray 2 feed (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Roller, Tray 2 pickup (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Scanner control board	B3G86-67904	Scanner control board (SCB) on page 785
Screw, M4x5	RC2-2633-000CN	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
Shaft, right door hinge	RU5-4142-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Shroud, center	RL2-0995-000CN	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
Side plate, fuser drive	RL1-3024-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Spring, compression	RU5-2265-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Spring, tension	RU6-2475-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Spring, torsion	RC2-8085-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Spring, torsion	RC3-1470-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Stopper, bushing arm	RC1-3090-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Stopper, bushing arm	RC1-3090-000CN	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
Stopper, front door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC2-2666-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809

Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Stopper, front door (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC2-2666-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
Stopper, tray (stapling mailbox)	RC2-5576-000CN	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
Subassembly, stage top (stapling mailbox)	RM1-7437-010CN	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
Support, lifter	RC2-6441-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Thumbscrew, control panel	5851-0660	Control panel on page 787
Tray, extension (envelope feeder)	RC4-6106-000CN	Envelope feeder covers on page 825

Numerical parts list

Table 2-34 Numerical parts list

Part number	Description	Table and page
5042-9118	Cover, control panel access	Document feeder and scanner components on page 779
5851-0660	Thumbscrew, control panel	Control panel on page 787
5851-4879	Kit, ADF separation pad spring	Document feeder components (2 of 2) on page 783
5851-5008	Kit, U.K. English keyboard (M630z)	Control panel on page 787
5851-5022	Kit, background selector for backside scan	Document feeder components (2 of 2) on page 783
5851-5360	Cover, USB	Document feeder and scanner components on page 779
5851-5361	Cover, HIP	Document feeder and scanner components on page 779
5851-5380	Kit, U.S. English keyboard (M630z)	Control panel on page 787
5851-6084	Kit, ADF white backing	Document feeder components (1 of 2) on page 781
B3G84-60107	Cable, SCB right	Scanner control board (SCB) on page 785
B3G84-60108	Cable, SCB left	Scanner control board (SCB) on page 785
B3G84-60109	Cable, SCB wire harness	Scanner control board (SCB) on page 785
B3G84-67901	Kit, transfer roller	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
B3G84-67903	Kit, duplex assembly	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
B3G84-67904	Kit, fuser-entrance guide	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
B3G84-67905	Roller, Tray 2 pickup (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
B3G84-67905	Roller, Tray 2 feed (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
B3G84-67905	Roller, paper feed/separation (1x500-sheet paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
B3G84-67905	Roller, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
B3G84-67905	Roller, paper feed/separation (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
B3G84-67905	Roller, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811

Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
B3G84-67905	Roller, paper feed/separation (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815
B3G84-67905	Roller, paper pickup (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815
B3G84-67906	Roller, Tray 1 pickup (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
B3G84-67906	Roller, Tray 1 separation (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
B3G84-67906	Roller, Tray 1 feed (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
B3G84-67908	Kit, control panel (without keyboard)	Control panel on page 787
B3G84-69702	Assembly, tray base (part of output bin assembly kit)	Covers on page 789
B3G84-69702	Assembly, paper delivery tray (part of output bin assembly kit)	Covers on page 789
B3G85-67905	Kit, front cover assembly	Covers on page 789
B3G86-67901	Kit, document feeder, complete with white backing[1]	Document feeder and scanner components on page 779
B3G86-67903	Kit, document feeder mylar strip	Document feeder components (2 of 2) on page 783
B3G86-67904	Scanner control board	Scanner control board (SCB) on page 785
B3G86-67905	Kit, image scanner assembly, complete with white backing[2]	Document feeder and scanner components on page 779
B3M77-67903	Kit, fuser replacement, 110V	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
B3M78-67903	Kit, fuser replacement, 220V	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
B4A39-60008	Assembly, Hinge HR	Document feeder components (1 of 2) on page 781
CC355-40013	Cover, document-feeder roller	Document feeder components (2 of 2) on page 783
L2725-60002	Kit, ADF roller maintenance (includes roller and separation pad)	Document feeder components (2 of 2) on page 783
RC1-2822-000CN	Link, handle	Upper plate assembly on page 791
RC1-2833-000CN	Cover, door arm	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RC1-2852-000CN	Cover, reverse side rear	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
RC1-2886-000CN	Guard, gas spring edge, rear	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799

Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RC1-2892-000CN	Roller, delivery option 1	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
RC1-2893-000CN	Roller, delivery option 2	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
RC1-2902-000CN	Rod, link	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RC1-3090-000CN	Stopper, bushing arm	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RC1-3090-000CN	Stopper, bushing arm	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
RC1-3293-000CN	Limiter, torque	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RC1-3293-000CN	Limiter, torque (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
RC1-3293-000CN	Limiter, torque (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
RC1-3293-000CN	Limiter, torque (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815
RC2-2633-000CN	Screw, M4x5	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
RC2-2666-000CN	Stopper, front door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
RC2-2666-000CN	Stopper, front door (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
RC2-5576-000CN	Stopper, tray (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
RC2-5688-000CN	Plate, grounding 1 (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder covers on page 825
RC2-5700-000CN	Roller, paper pickup (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827
RC2-5701-000CN	Roller, paper-feed (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827
RC2-6438-000CN	Link, door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
RC2-6438-000CN	Link, door (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
RC2-6441-000CN	Support, lifter	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RC2-7967-000CN	Arm, door B	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RC2-8029-000CN	Guide, legal	Upper plate assembly on page 791

Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RC2-8085-000CN	Spring, torsion	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RC2-8086-000CN	Rod, release	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RC3-1470-000CN	Spring, torsion	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RC4-1515-000CN	Cover, front left	Covers on page 789
RC4-1527-000CN	Cover, IS right	Covers on page 789
RC4-1529-000CN	Guide, cartridge, upper	Upper plate assembly on page 791
RC4-1530-000CN	Block upper guide support, front	Upper plate assembly on page 791
RC4-1531-000CN	Block upper guide support, rear	Upper plate assembly on page 791
RC4-1537-000CN	Cover, IS lock, rear	Upper plate assembly on page 791
RC4-1569-000CN	Bushing	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
RC4-1572-000CN	Cover, MP (Tray 1) gear	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RC4-1573-000CN	Cover, cassette (Tray 2) left	Covers on page 789
RC4-1574-000CN	Cover, rear top	Covers on page 789
RC4-1575-000CN	Cover, IS cable	Covers on page 789
RC4-1632-000CN	Cover, front lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
RC4-1633-000CN	Cover, left lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
RC4-1633-000CN	Cover, left lower (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
RC4-1636-000CN	Cover, right front (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
RC4-1637-000CN	Cover, right front (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
RC4-1638-000CN	Cover, right front (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805
RC4-1639-000CN	Cover, front lower right (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
RC4-1640-000CN	Cover, front lower left (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
RC4-1643-000CN	Cover, right lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809

Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RC4-1643-000CN	Cover, right lower (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
RC4-1957-000CN	Cover, rear (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
RC4-1957-000CN	Cover, rear (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
RC4-1958-000CN	Cover, rear lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
RC4-1958-000CN	Cover, rear lower (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
RC4-1959-000CN	Cover, left (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
RC4-1959-000CN	Cover, left (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
RC4-1961-000CN	Cover, right center (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
RC4-1961-000CN	Cover, right center (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
RC4-1962-000CN	Cover, right upper (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
RC4-1962-000CN	Cover, right upper (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
RC4-1964-000CN	Cover, rear upper (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
RC4-1964-000CN	Cover, rear upper (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
RC4-1966-000CN	Cover, left (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805
RC4-1967-000CN	Cover, handle, left (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805
RC4-1968-000CN	Cover, right (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805
RC4-1969-000CN	Cover, handle, right (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805
RC4-1970-000CN	Cover, rear (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805
RC4-2037-000CN	Door, right (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
RC4-2039-000CN	Cover, rear (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
RC4-3948-000CN	Cover, MP (Tray 1) inner	Covers on page 789
RC4-5690-000CN	Handle, lock	Upper plate assembly on page 791

Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RC4-5692-000CN	Cover, rear left	Covers on page 789
RC4-5693-000CN	Cover, IS left lower	Covers on page 789
RC4-5706-000CN	Cover, handle right lower	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RC4-5707-000CN	Holder, shutter, light	Upper plate assembly on page 791
RC4-5716-000CN	Cover, side rear	Covers on page 789
RC4-5717-000CN	Cover, front left lower	Covers on page 789
RC4-5721-000CN	Cover, IS lock, front	Upper plate assembly on page 791
RC4-5728-000CN	Arm, door 1	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RC4-5729-000CN	Rod, link	Upper plate assembly on page 791
RC4-6105-000CN	Cover, lower (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder covers on page 825
RC4-6106-000CN	Tray, extension (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder covers on page 825
RC4-6107-000CN	Plate, width limit right (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder covers on page 825
RK2-0280-000CN	Fan (FN105)	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
RK2-1988-000CN	Fan (FN101)	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
RK2-1989-000CN	Fan (FN102)	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RK2-1992-000CN	Fan (FN103)	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RK2-2162-000CN	Motor, stepping DC24V (M1800) (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) on page 829
RK2-3244-000CN	Fan (FN301)	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
RK2-6506-000CN	Cable, USB	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
RK2-6508-000CN	Cable, flat	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RK2-6509-000CN	Fan (FN104)	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RL1-2438-000CN	Cover, bottom (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
RL1-2831-000CN	Cover, envelope	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793

Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RL1-3024-000CN	Side plate, fuser drive	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RL2-0501-000CN	Panel, stacking (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
RL2-0502-000CN	Assembly, top cover (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
RL2-0995-000CN	Shroud, center	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
RL2-0996-000CN	Cover, IS front	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
RL2-0999-000CN	Cover, rear right	Covers on page 789
RL2-1000-000CN	Panel, logo	Covers on page 789
RM1-1045-000CN	Assembly, right door sensor (SW105)	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RM1-4548-000CN	Assembly, paper feed	High-voltage power supply on page 803
RM1-5051-020CN	Assembly, fuser motor (M299)	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RM1-5085-000CN	Cable, envelope feeder	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RM1-5156-000CN	Assembly, output bin 3 drive (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
RM1-5157-000CN	Assembly, flapper (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
RM1-5159-000CN	Assembly, stage (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
RM1-5166-000CN	Assembly, stapler (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
RM1-5173-000CN	Assembly, paper feed guide (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
RM1-5221-000CN	Assembly, paper pickup roller (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827
RM1-5222-000CN	Assembly, joint shaft (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) on page 829
RM1-5223-000CN	Assembly, paper-feed roller (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827
RM1-5224-000CN	Assembly, separation roller (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827
RM1-5238-000CN	Cable, paper feed motor (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) on page 829
RM1-5461-000CN	Assembly, grounding plate	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793

Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RM1-5894-000CN	Assembly, bin sensor PCA (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
RM1-5896-000CN	Assembly, bin solenoid (SL3) (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
RM1-5913-000CN	Assembly, lifter base	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RM1-5913-000CN	Assembly, lifter base (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
RM1-5913-000CN	Assembly, lifter base (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
RM1-5913-000CN	Assembly, lifter base (SW2, SW3) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817
RM1-5914-000CN	Assembly, lifter (M103)	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RM1-5914-000CN	Assembly, lifter (M1) (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
RM1-5914-000CN	Assembly, lifter (M1) (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
RM1-5914-000CN	Assembly, lifter (M1, M3) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817
RM1-5919-000CN	Assembly, paper pickup	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RM1-5931-000CN	Assembly, cassette (Tray 2) right rail	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
RM1-5932-000CN	Assembly, cassette (Tray 2) left rail	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
RM1-5941-000CN	Assembly, paper pickup drive (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
RM1-5941-000CN	Assembly, paper pickup drive (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
RM1-5942-000CN	Assembly, paper pickup drive (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817
RM1-6326-000CN	Assembly, rail front (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
RM1-6327-000CN	Assembly, rail rear (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
RM1-6330-000CN	Assembly, lifter guide (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819

Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RM1-6332-000CN	Assembly, paper feed roller (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
RM1-6335-000CN	Assembly, interlock lever (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
RM1-6663-000CN	Assembly, entrance solenoid (SL2)(stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
RM1-6664-000CN	Assembly, stamp solenoid (SL1) (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
RM1-7159-000CN	Cable, fuser motor	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RM1-7162-000CN	Cable, lifter motor	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RM1-7170-000CN	Cable, P sensor solenoid	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RM1-7179-000CN	Cable, size detect (SW102)	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RM1-7374-000CN	Assembly, push button switch (SW104)	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
RM1-7420-000CN	Assembly, temperature sensor (TH3)	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RM1-7431-000CN	Assembly, interlock (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
RM1-7437-010CN	Subassembly, stage top (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
RM1-8323-000CN	Assembly, cartridge sensor (PS115)	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RM1-8358-000CN	Assembly, drum motor (M102)	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RM1-8406-000CN	Assembly, laser/scanner	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RM1-8411-010CN	Assembly, paper feed roller	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RM1-8413-000CN	Assembly, registration	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RM2-0341-000CN	Assembly, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
RM2-0341-000CN	Assembly, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
RM2-0341-000CN	Assembly, paper pickup (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815

Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RM2-0346-000CN	Assembly, lifter drive (M4) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817
RM2-0350-000CN	Assembly, tray size sensor (SW4) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817
RM2-5094-000CN	Cassette (Tray 2)	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
RM2-5094-000CN	Assembly, cassette (tray) (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
RM2-5094-000CN	Assembly, cassette (tray) (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
RM2-5094-000CN	Assembly, cassette (tray) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815
RM2-5100-000CN	Assembly, tray (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815
RM2-5101-000CN	Assembly, right door (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
RM2-5104-000CN	Assembly, right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
RM2-5105-000CN	Assembly, stock door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
RM2-5106-000CN	Assembly, front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805
RM2-5106-000CN	Assembly, front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
RM2-5106-000CN	Assembly, front upper cover (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
RM2-5235-000CN	Assembly, jog (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
RM2-5240-000CN	Output bin 3 (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
RM2-5242-000CN	Assembly, bin (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
RM2-5275-000CN	Assembly, front cover (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
RM2-5277-000CN	Assembly, handle	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
RM2-5278-000CN	Assembly, driver PCA (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
RM2-5791-000CN	Assembly, interconnect board (ICB) PCA	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801

Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RM2-5792-000CN	Low-voltage power supply, 110V	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
RM2-5793-000CN	Low-voltage power supply, 220V	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
RM2-5799-000CN	Assembly, reverse	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RM2-5804-000CN	Assembly, paper pickup drive	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RM2-5810-000CN	Assembly, reverse guide	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RM2-5814-000CN	Assembly, front top cover	Covers on page 789
RM2-5816-000CN	Assembly, MP (Tray 1) cover	Covers on page 789
RM2-5818-000CN	Assembly, power switch	Covers on page 789
RM2-5820-000CN	Assembly, right lower door	Covers on page 789
RM2-5822-000CN	Assembly, MP (Tray 1) pickup	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RM2-5826-000CN	High-voltage power supply 110V	High-voltage power supply on page 803
RM2-5827-000CN	High-voltage power supply 220V	High-voltage power supply on page 803
RM2-5917-000CN	Assembly, mounting plate	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
RM2-5918-000CN	Assembly, drum drive	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RM2-5942-000CN	Assembly, feed motor (M101)	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RM2-6170-000CN	Assembly, weight (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder covers on page 825
RM2-6171-000CN	Assembly, paper side end (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder covers on page 825
RM2-7458-000CN	Assembly, DC controller PCA	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RM2-7470-000CN	Assembly, feed motor cable	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RM2-7471-000CN	Assembly, scanner joint cable	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
RM2-7473-000CN	Assembly, environmental sensor cable	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RM2-7474-000CN	Assembly, side band cable	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RM2-7476-000CN	Assembly, door sensor cable (SW106)	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801

Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RM2-7477-000CN	Assembly, cartridge sensor cable	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
RM2-7478-000CN	Assembly, door switch cable (SW101)	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RM2-7479-000CN	Assembly, DC controller cable	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RM2-7480-000CN	Assembly, full sensor cable	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
RM2-7481-000CN	Assembly, DC controller cable	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RM2-7482-000CN	Assembly, laser scanner cable	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
RM2-7484-000CN	Assembly, option sensor cable	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
RM2-7486-000CN	Assembly, reverse fan cable	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
RM2-7487-000CN	Assembly, reverse joint cable	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RM2-7491-000CN	Assembly, IS power cable	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
RM2-8002-000CN	Assembly, controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
RM2-8002-000CN	Assembly, controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
RM2-8007-000CN	Assembly, controller PCA (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817
RM2-8134-000CN	Assembly, controller PCA (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) on page 829
RU5-0083-000CN	Gear, 16T	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
RU5-2265-000CN	Spring, compression	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RU5-4142-000CN	Shaft, right door hinge	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RU6-2475-000CN	Spring, tension	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RU7-0290-000CN	Gear, 91T/25T	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RU7-0292-000CN	Gear, 33T	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RU7-0293-000CN	Gear, 17T	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793

Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RU7-0294-000CN	Gear, 15T	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RU7-0295-000CN	Gear, 23T/19T	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RU7-0303-000CN	Gear, 35T	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
VS1-7500-006CN	Connector, drawer 6P	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
WG8-5624-000CN	Photointerrupter (PS1802) (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827
WS1-6336-000CN	Connector, drawer	High-voltage power supply on page 803

Index

Symbols/Numerics

1x500-sheet paper feeder
  components 806
  covers 804
  part number 775
  parts lists and diagrams 804
1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet
  components 810
  covers 808
  part number 775
  parts lists and diagrams 808
2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder
  components 814, 816
  covers 812
  part number 775
  parts lists and diagrams 812
2,500-sheet tray
  rollers, removing and replacing 137
500-sheet trays
  rollers, removing and replacing 137

A

accessories
  ordering 771
  part numbers 775
ADF roller maintenance kit
  part number 772
ADF separation pad spring kit
  part number 772
ADF white backing
  location 781, 839, 843
  part number 781, 839, 843
  removing and replacing 161
ADF white backing kit
  part number 772
ADF whole unit kit
  part number 774
after-service checklist 6

B

backside background selector
  location 783, 839, 843
  part number 772, 783, 839, 843
  removing and replacing 18
before-service checklist 6

C

cartridge
  ordering 772
  part numbers 772
  removing and replacing 8
cartridge fan (FN301)
  location 797, 838, 848
  part number 797, 838, 848
  removing and replacing 467
cartridge front-side fan (FN103)
  location 801, 838, 848
  part number 801, 838, 848
  removing and replacing 460
cartridge sensor assembly
  location 795, 830, 851
  part number 795, 830, 851
  removing and replacing 378
cassette
  pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder), removing 671
  Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 712
  Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 716
  Tray 5 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 720
cassette lifter base assembly
  location 793, 832, 850
  part number 793, 832, 850
cassette pickup assembly
  location 793, 833, 850
  part number 793, 833, 850
  removing and replacing 614
cassette-door-open detection switch (SW105)
  removing and replacing 363
cautions iii
components
  1x500-sheet paper feeder 806
  1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet 810
  2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder 814, 816
  envelope feeder 826, 828
  HCI 814, 816
  stapling mailbox 820, 822
control panel
  parts lists and diagrams 786
control panel assembly
  part number 787, 839, 844
  removing and replacing 92
control panel replacement kit
  part number 772
control-panel assembly
  location 778
controller (1x500-sheet paper feeder)
  location 807, 830, 854

part number 807, 830, 854
PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder), removing 678
controller (HCI optional paper feeder)
PCA (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 731
controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
location 811, 830, 854
part number 811, 830, 854
removing and replacing 702
controller PCA (HCI optional paper feeder)
location 817, 830, 854
part number 817, 830, 854
removing and replacing 731
conventions, document iii
covers
1x500-sheet paper feeder 804
1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet 808
2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder 812
envelope feeder 824
front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet), removing 685
front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder), removing 667
front upper cover (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 709
HCI 812
left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet), removing 684
left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder), removing 659
left cover (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 711
output bin and bin base assembly, removing 68
rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet), removing 680
rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 705
rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder), removing 658
right center cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet), removing 689
right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 707
right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder), removing and replacing 663
right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet), removing 687
right door (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 706
right front cover (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 710
right lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 708
right-door hinge cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet), removing 690
right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet), removing 686
right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder), removing 666
stapling mailbox 818
stock box and rails (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet), removing 682
stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet), removing 681
covers, base product
parts lists and diagrams 788
covers, doors, and panels (product base)
location diagram 273
customer self-repair kits
part numbers 772

D

DC controller
location 801, 830, 853
part number 801, 830, 853
removing and replacing 391
DC controller shield-plate assembly
removing and replacing 382
DIMM
part number 772
removing and replacing 54
document conventions iii
document feeder (ADF)
location 779, 839, 844
part number 779, 839, 844
removing and replacing 201
document feeder and scanner components
parts lists and diagrams 778
document feeder components
parts lists and diagrams 780
document feeder maintenance kit
document-feeder roller and separation pad, removing and replacing 152
document feeder roller cover
removing and replacing 176
document feeder white backing
location 781, 839, 843
part number 781, 839, 843
removing and replacing 161
document-feeder hinge assembly
location 781, 831, 844
part number 781, 831, 844
removing and replacing 229
document-feeder hinge cover
removing and replacing 358
document-feeder mylar strip
location 783, 839, 844
part number 783, 839, 844
removing and replacing 170
document-feeder roller and separation pad
location 782, 783, 839, 844
part number 783, 839, 844
removing and replacing 152
document-feeder roller cover
location 783, 835, 844
part number 783, 835, 844
removing and replacing 176
documentation, related
user guide 771
drum motor (M102)
location 795, 831, 851
part number 795, 831, 851
removing and replacing 454
duplex accessory
location 797, 839, 843
part number 797, 839, 843
removing and replacing 70

duplex assembly kit
part number 772

E
electrostatic discharge (ESD) 3
envelope feeder
components 826, 828
covers 824
part number 775
parts lists and diagrams 824
envelope feeder cover
removing and replacing 282
environmental sensor
location 801, 834, 851
part number 801, 834, 851
ESD electrostatic discharge (ESD) 3

F
fax PCA
part number 775
removing and replacing 61
feed motor (M101)
location 795, 831, 853
part number 795, 831, 853
removing and replacing 443
feed roller assembly
location 793, 833, 851
part number 793, 833, 851
removing and replacing 584
field-replaceable units (FRUs)
replacing 3
formatter
part number 772
removing and replacing 23
front cover
location 789, 839, 844
part number 789, 839, 844
removing and replacing 274
front cover assembly kit
part number 774
front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
location 809, 831, 852
part number 809, 831, 852
removing and replacing 685
front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)
location 805, 831, 852
part number 805, 831, 852
removing and replacing 667
front upper cover (HCI optional paper feeder)
location 813, 831, 852
part number 813, 831, 852
removing and replacing 709
front-left cover
removing and replacing 307
front-left cover and logo cover assembly
removing and replacing 307
FRUs (field-replaceable units)
replacing 3
fuser
location 797, 839, 844
part number (110V) 797, 839, 844
part number (220V) 797, 839, 844
removing and replacing 83
fuser entrance guide kit
part number 772
fuser motor (M299)
location 801, 831, 849
part number 801, 831, 849
removing and replacing 455
fuser service kit
part number 772
fuser-entrance guide
location 793, 839, 843
part number 793, 839, 843
removing and replacing 76

H
hard disk drive (HDD)
part number 772
removing and replacing 40
HCI
components 814, 816
covers 812
high-voltage power supply
parts lists and diagrams 802
high-voltage power supply (HVPS)
location 803, 838, 853
part number (110V) 803, 838, 853
part number (220V) 803, 839, 853
removing and replacing 521
HP Jetdirect 2700w USB wireless print serve
part number 775
HP Jetdirect 2800w NFC/wireless direct accessory
part number 775
HP LaserJet MFP analog fax accessory 500
part number 775
HP LaserJet postcard media insert tray
part number 775

I
image scanner assembly
location 779, 839, 844
part number 779, 839, 844
removing and replacing 230
image scanner cable cover
removing and replacing 283
image scanner whole unit kit
part number 774
installation 3
screws 3
See also replacing parts
interconnect board (ICB)
location 801, 831, 852
part number 801, 831, 852
removing and replacing 426
interlock switch (SW101)
location 801, 831, 854
part number 801, 831, 854
interlock switch assembly (SW101 and SW106)
removing and replacing 471
internal components, product
parts lists and diagrams 792

K
keyboard assembly (M630z)
removing and replacing 110
keyboard kit
part number 772
keyboard overlay kit
part number 772
kit
document feeder (ADF) 201
instructions right-lower door instructions 345

instructions, 500-sheet trays and 2,500-sheet tray 137
instructions, backside background selector 18
instructions, cassette-door-open detection switch (SW105) 363
instructions, control panel assembly 92
instructions, document feeder maintenance 152
instructions, document feeder white backing 161
instructions, document-feeder mylar strip 170
instructions, duplex accessory 70
instructions, fax PCA 61
instructions, formatter 23
instructions, front cover 274
instructions, fuser 83
instructions, fuser-entrance guide 76
instructions, hard disk drive (HDD) and solid state memory (SSM) 40
instructions, image scanner assembly 230
instructions, image scanner cable cover 283
instructions, keyboard assembly (M630z) 110
instructions, memory DIMM 54
instructions, output bin and bin base assembly 68
instructions, power switch assembly 314
instructions, rear-left cover 327
instructions, rear-right cover 323
instructions, rear-top cover 335
instructions, scanner control board (SCB) 185
instructions, scanner rear cover 182
instructions, staple cartridge 14
instructions, toner cartridge 8
instructions, transfer roller 144
instructions, Tray 1 cover 287
instructions, tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers 127

L

laser scanner
warnings for servicing 3
laser/scanner assembly
location 795, 832, 851
part number 795, 832, 851
removing and replacing 375
laser/scanner fan (FN102)
location 801, 838, 848
part number 801, 838, 848
removing and replacing 458
left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
location 809, 836, 847
part number 809, 836, 847
removing and replacing 684
left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)
location 805, 836, 847
part number 805, 836, 847
removing and replacing 659
left cover (HCI optional paper feeder)
location 813, 836, 847
part number 813, 836, 847
removing and replacing 711
left-rear corner cover
location 789, 835, 846
part number 789, 835, 846
lifter assembly
location 801, 832, 850
part number 801, 832, 850
removing and replacing 518
lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
location 811, 832, 850
part numbers 811, 832, 850
removing and replacing 700
lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)
location 807, 832, 850
part number 807, 832, 850
removing and replacing 676
lifter base assembly
removing and replacing 516
lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
location 811, 832, 850
part number 811, 832, 850
removing and replacing 699
lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)
location 807, 832, 850
part number 807, 832, 850
removing and replacing 675
location diagram
covers, doors, and panels (product base) 273
logo cover
location 789, 840, 849
part number 789, 840, 849
removing and replacing 307
low-voltage power supply (LVPS)
location 799, 840, 853
part number 799, 840, 853
removing and replacing 479
low-voltage power supply fan (FN104)
location 801, 838, 848
part number 801, 838, 848
removing and replacing 462

M

main fan (FN101)
location 797, 838, 848
part number 797, 838, 848
removing and replacing 456
memory DIMM
part number 772
removing and replacing 54
motors
pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder), removing 669
mylar kit
part number 774

N

notes iii

O

order parts, accessories, and supplies 771
ordering
accessories 771
parts 771
supplies 771
toner cartridge 772
output accessory detection switch (SW104)
location 799, 833, 851

part number 799, 833, 851
removing and replacing 474
output bin and bin base assembly
location 789, 834, 844
part number 789, 834, 844
removing and replacing 68
output bin assembly kit
part number 772

P

paper feeder
controller PCA, removing 678, 731
front cover, removing 667
front upper cover, removing 709
left cover, removing 659, 711
lifter assembly, removing 676
lifter base assembly, removing 675
pickup assembly, removing 671
pickup drive assembly, removing 669
rear and rear lower cover, removing 705
rear cover, removing 658
right center cover, removing 707
right cover, removing 663
right door, removing 706
right front cover, removing 710
right lower cover, removing 708
right-front cover, removing 666
Tray 3 lifter assembly, removing 728
Tray 3 lifter base assembly, removing 724
Tray 3 pickup assembly, removing 712
Tray 4 lifter assembly, removing 729
Tray 4 lifter base assembly, removing 726
Tray 4 pickup assembly, removing 716
Tray 5 lifter drive assembly, removing 730
Tray 5 pickup assembly, removing 720
Tray pickup drive assembly, removing 722
paper pickup assembly
removing and replacing 614
paper pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
location 811, 833, 851
part number 811, 833, 851
paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
removing and replacing 695
part numbers
accessories 775
customer self-repair kits 772
service replacement kits 774
supplies 772
toner cartridge 772
parts
ordering 771
parts lists and diagrams 769
1x500-sheet paper feeder 804
1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet 808
2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder 812
control panel 786
covers, base product 788
document feeder and scanner components 778
document feeder components 780
envelope feeder 824
high-voltage power supply 802
internal components, product 792
scanner control board (SCB) 784
stapling mailbox 818
upper plate assembly 790
using 776
pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)
location 807, 833, 851
part number 807, 833, 851
removing and replacing 671
pickup drive assembly
location 795, 833, 853
part number 795, 833, 853
removing and replacing 585
pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
location 811, 833, 850
part number 811, 833, 850
removing and replacing 692
pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)
location 807, 833, 850
part number 807, 833, 850
removing and replacing 669
pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
location 817, 833, 850
part number 817, 833, 850
removing and replacing 722
pickup, feed, and separation rollers, replacing tray 1 127
power switch assembly
location 789, 833, 853
part number 789, 833, 853
removing and replacing 314

R

rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
location 809, 837, 847
part number 809, 837, 847
removing and replacing 680
rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder)
location 813, 837, 847
part number 813, 837, 847
removing and replacing 705
rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)
location 805, 837, 847
part number 805, 837, 847
removing and replacing 658
rear-left cover
location 789, 837, 848
part number 789, 837, 848
removing and replacing 327
rear-right cover
location 789, 837, 849
part number 789, 837, 849
removing and replacing 323
rear-top cover
location 789, 837, 846
part number 789, 837, 846
removing and replacing 335

registration assembly
location 793, 834, 851
part number 793, 834, 851
removing and replacing 362
removal order
removing order 6
removal strategy
removing and replacing 3
removing and replacing
500-sheet trays and 2,500-sheet tray 137
backside background selector 18
cartridge fan (FN301) 467
cartridge front-side fan (FN103) 460
cartridge sensor assembly 378
cassette pickup assembly 614
cassette-door-open detection switch (SW105) 363
control panel assembly 92
controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 702
controller PCA (HCI optional paper feeder) 731
DC controller 391
DC controller shield-plate assembly 382
document feeder white backing 161
document-feeder hing assembly 229
document-feeder hinge cover 358
document-feeder mylar strip 170
document-feeder roller and separation pad 152
drum motor (M102) 454
duplex accessory 70
envelope feeder cover 282
fax PCA 61
feed motor (M101) 443
feed roller assembly 584
formatter 23
front cover 274
front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 685
front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 667
front upper cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 709
front-left cover 307
front-left cover and logo cover assembly 307
fuser 83
fuser motor (M299) 455
fuser-entrance guide 76
hard disk drive (HDD) 40
high-voltage power supply (HVPS) 521
ifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 699
image scanner assembly 230
image scanner cable cover 283
interconnect board (ICB) 426
interlock switch assembly (SW101 and SW106) 471
keyboard assembly (M630z) 110
laser/scanner assembly 375
laser/scanner fan (FN102) 458
left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 684
left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 659
left cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 711
lifter assembly 518
lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 700
lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 676
lifter base assembly 516
lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 675
logo cover 307
low-voltage power supply (LVPS) 479
low-voltage power supply fan (FN104) 462
main fan (FN101) 456
memory DIMM 54
output accessory detection switch (SW104) 474
output bin and bin base assembly 68
paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 695
pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 671
pickup drive assembly 585
pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 692
pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 669
pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 722
power switch assembly 314
rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 680
rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 705
rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 658
rear-left cover 327
rear-right cover 323
rear-top cover 335
registration assembly 362
reverse assembly 371
reverse assembly fan (FN105) 464
reverse assembly upper guide assembly 369
right center cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 689
right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 707
right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 663
right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 687
right door (HCI optional paper feeder) 706
right front cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 710
right lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 708
right-door hinge cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 690
right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 686
right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 666
right-lower door 345
scanner rear cover 182

side-rear cover 296
solid state memory (SSM) 40
staple cartridge 14
stapling mailbox driver PCA 742
stapling mailbox handle assembly 735
stapling mailbox output bin 3 drive assembly 764
stapling mailbox output bin assembly 749
stapling mailbox output bin assembly cover 740
stapling mailbox stage assembly 761
stapling mailbox stage top assembly 751
stapling mailbox stapler unit 745
stapling mailbox, front cover 733
stapling mailbox, jogger assembly 746
stapling mailbox, output bin 3 738
stapling mailbox, output bin sensor PCA 744
stapling mailbox, output bin solenoid 747
stapling mailbox, rear cover 734
stapling mailbox, top cover 737
stock box and rails (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 682
stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 681
temperature sensor 380
toner cartridge 8
transfer roller 144
Tray 1 cover 287
Tray 1 pickup assembly 403
tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers 127
Tray 3 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 728
Tray 3 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 724
Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 712
Tray 4 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 729
Tray 4 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 726
Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 716
Tray 5 lifter drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 730
Tray 5 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 720
trays 295
removing parts
after-service checklist 6
before-service checklist 6
controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 678
service approach 5
tools, required 5
repair approach 5
replacing parts
about 3
after-service checklist 6
before-service checklist 6
screws 3
service approach 5
tools, required 5
reverse assembly
location 795, 834, 853
part number 795, 834, 853
removing and replacing 371
reverse assembly fan (FN105)
removing and replacing 464
reverse assembly upper guide assembly
removing and replacing 369
reverse fan (FN105)
location 797, 838, 848
part number 797, 838, 848
reverse guide assembly
location 795, 834, 853
part number 795, 834, 853
right center cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
location 809, 837, 847
part number 809, 837, 847
removing and replacing 689
right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder)
location 813, 837, 847
part number 813, 837, 847
removing and replacing 707
right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)
location 805, 837, 847
part number 805, 837, 847
removing and replacing 663
right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
location 809, 834, 852
part number 809, 834, 852
removing and replacing 687
right door (HCI optional paper feeder)
location 813, 834, 852
part number 813, 834, 852
removing and replacing 706
right front cover (HCI optional paper feeder)
location 813, 837, 846
part number 813, 837, 846
removing and replacing 710
right lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder)
location 813, 837, 847
part number 813, 837, 847
removing and replacing 708
right-door hinge cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
removing and replacing 690
right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
location 809, 837, 846
part number 809, 837, 846
removing and replacing 686
right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)
location 805, 837, 846
part number 805, 837, 846
removing and replacing 666
right-lower cover
location 789, 834, 853
part number 789, 834, 853
right-lower door
removing and replacing 345
rollers
2,500-sheet tray, removing and replacing 137
500-sheet trays, removing and replacing 137

transfer, removing and replacing 144
tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers, replacing 127

S

scanner control board
location 785, 841, 844
part number 785, 841, 844
removing and replacing 185
scanner control board (SCB)
parts lists and diagrams 784
scanner control board (SCB) kit
part number 774
scanner rear cover
removing and repaceing 182
SCB
location 785, 841, 844
part number 785, 841, 844
removing and replacing 185
screwdrivers, required 5
screws
installing 3
types of 5
secondary transfer roller
location 793, 839, 843
part number 793, 839, 843
service and support information v, 2, 770
service approach 5
service maintenance kit
part number 772
service replacement kits
part numbers 774
side-rear cover
removing and replacing 296
solid state memory (SSM)
removing and replacing 40
solid-state memory (SSM)
part number 772
staple cartridge
removing and replacing 14
staple cartridge replacement kit
part number 772
staples
part number 772
removing and replacing 14
stapling mailbox
components 820, 822
covers 818
part number 775
parts lists and diagrams 818
removal and repair 732
stapling mailbox driver PCA
location 823, 831, 852
part number 823, 831, 852
removing and replacing 742
stapling mailbox front cover
location 819, 831, 852
part number 819, 831, 852
stapling mailbox handle assembly
removing and replacing 735
stapling mailbox jogger
part number 823, 832, 852
stapling mailbox output bin 3
location 819, 840, 852
part number 819, 840, 852
stapling mailbox output bin 3 drive assembly
location 823, 833, 849
part number 823, 833, 849
stapling mailbox output bin assembly
location 823, 830, 852
part number 823, 830, 852
removing and replacing 749
stapling mailbox output bin assembly cover
removing and replacing 740
stapling mailbox output bin output bin 3 drive assembly
removing and replacing 764
stapling mailbox output bin sensor PCA
location 823, 830, 850
part number 823, 830, 850
stapling mailbox output bin solenoid
location 823, 830, 850
part number 823, 830, 850
stapling mailbox rear cover
location 819, 837, 847
part number 819, 837, 847
removing and replacing 734
stapling mailbox stage assembly
location 821, 834, 849
part number 821, 834, 849
removing and replacing 761
stapling mailbox stage top assembly
location 821, 842, 851
part number 821, 842, 851
removing and replacing 751
stapling mailbox stapler unit
location 823, 834, 849
part number 823, 834, 849
removing and replacing 745
stapling mailbox top cover
location 819, 834, 849
part number 819, 834, 849
stapling mailbox, front cover
removing and replacing 733
stapling mailbox, jogger assembly
removing and replacing 746
stapling mailbox, output bin 3
removing and replacing 738
stapling mailbox, output bin sensor PCA
removing and replacing 744
stapling mailbox, output bin solenoid
removing and replacing 747
stapling mailbox, top cover
removing and replacing 737
static, precautions for 3
stock box and rails (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
removing and replacing 682
stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
location 809, 834, 852
part number 809, 834, 852
removing and replacing 681
supplies
ordering 771
part numbers 772

T

temperature sensor
removing and replacing 380
tips iii
toner cartridge
ordering 772
part numbers 772
removing and replacing 8
tools, required 5
transfer roller
removing and replacing 144
transfer roller kit
part number 772
transfer roller, removing and replacing 144

tray 1
pickup, feed, and separation rollers, removing and replacing 127
Tray 1 cover
location 789, 832, 853
part number 789, 832, 853
removing and replacing 287
Tray 1 pickup assembly
location 793, 832, 853
part number 793, 832, 853
removing and replacing 403
tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers
location 793, 841, 844
part number 793, 841, 844
removing and replacing 127
Tray 1 roller kit
part number 772
Tray 2–5 roller kit
part number 772
Tray 3 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
location 817, 832, 850
part number 817, 832, 850
removing and replacing 728
Tray 3 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
location 817, 832, 850
part number 817, 832, 850
removing and replacing 724
Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
location 815, 833, 851
part number 815, 833, 851
removing and replacing 712
Tray 4 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
part number 817, 832, 850
removing and replacing 729
Tray 4 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
location 817, 832, 850
part number 817, 832, 850
removing and replacing 726
Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
location 815, 833, 851
part number 815, 833, 851
removing and replacing 716
Tray 4lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
location 817, 832, 850
Tray 5 lifter drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
location 817, 832, 852
part number 817, 832, 852
removing and replacing 730
Tray 5 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
location 815, 833, 851
part number 815, 833, 851
removing and replacing 720
trays
location 797, 807, 811, 815, 830, 835, 852
part number 797, 807, 811, 815, 830, 835, 852
removing and replacing 295
rollers, location 793, 841, 843
rollers, part number 793, 841, 843
rollers, removing and replacing 137
troubleshooting
service approach 5

U

upper plate assembly
parts lists and diagrams 790

W

warnings iii

© 2014 Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

www.hp.com

